27 " " " " " agt

A

TEXT-BOOK OF HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY.

BRUBAKER.

A
Druck, Morris,
TEXT-BOOK

OF

HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY.

BY

ALBERT P. BRUBAKER, A.M., M.D.,

PROFESSOR OF PHYSIOLOGY AND HYGIENE IN THE JEFFERSON MEDICAL COLLEGE; PROFESSOR
OF PHYSIOLOGY IN THE PENNSYLVANIA COLLEGE OF DENTAL SURGERY;

LECTURER ON PHYSIOLOGY AND HYGIENE IN THE DREXEL
INSTITUTE OF ART, SCIENCE, AND INDUSTRY.

With Color

Illustrations.

A. P. Brubaker, M.D.

PHILADELPHIA:

P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.,

1012 WALNUT STREET.

1904.

Blackiston

Copyright, 1904, by P. Blackiston's Son & Co.

B85

Biology
Library

TO

HENRY C. CHAPMAN, M.D.,

PROFESSOR OF INSTITUTES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL JURISPRUDENCE IN
THE JEFFERSON MEDICAL COLLEGE,

IN GRATEFUL RECOGNITION OF THE MANY KINDNESSES RECEIVED FROM
HIM, DURING A PERIOD OF TWENTY-FIVE YEARS, THIS
VOLUME IS RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED BY

THE AUTHOR.

W345898

PREFACE.

The object in view in the preparation of this volume was the selection and presentation of the more important facts of physiology, in a form which it is believed will be helpful to students and to practitioners of medicine. Inasmuch as the majority of students in a medical college are preparing for the practical duties of professional life, such facts have been selected as will not only elucidate the normal functions of the tissues and organs of the body, but which will be of assistance in understanding their abnormal manifestations as they present themselves in hospital and private work. Both in the selection of facts and in the method of presentation the author has been guided by an experience gained during twenty years of active teaching.

The description of physiologic apparatus and the methods of investigation, other than those having a clinical interest, have been largely excluded from the text, for the reason that both are more appropriately considered in works devoted to laboratory methods and laboratory instruction, and for the further reason that the student receives this information while engaged in the practical study of physiology in the laboratory, now an established feature in the curriculum of the majority of medical colleges. For those who have not had laboratory opportunities a brief account of some essential forms of apparatus and the purposes for which they are intended will be found in an appendix.

I wish to acknowledge my indebtedness to Professor Colin C. Stewart for many valuable suggestions in the preparation of different sections of the volume; to Dr. Carl Weiland for assistance in the chapter on vision; to Dr. Joseph P. Bolton for excellent suggestions on questions relating to physiologic chemistry.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION, -----	CHAPTER I.	PAGE 17
	CHAPTER II.	
CHEMIC COMPOSITION OF THE HUMAN BODY, -----		24
	CHAPTER III.	
PHYSIOLOGY OF THE CELL, -----		41
	CHAPTER IV.	
HISTOLOGY OF THE EPITHELIAL AND CONNECTIVE TISSUES, -----		47
	CHAPTER V.	
THE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE SKELETON, -----		58
	CHAPTER VI.	
GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY OF MUSCLE-TISSUE, -----		63
	CHAPTER VII.	
THE GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY OF NERVE-TISSUE, -----		103
	CHAPTER VIII.	
FOODS, -----		133
	CHAPTER IX.	
DIGESTION, -----		151
	CHAPTER X.	
ABSORPTION, -----		213
	CHAPTER XI.	
THE BLOOD, -----		229
	CHAPTER XII.	
THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD, -----		263
	CHAPTER XIII.	
RESPIRATION, -----		335
	CHAPTER XIV.	
ANIMAL HEAT, -----		385
	CHAPTER XV.	
SECRETION, -----		395

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	CHAPTER XVI.	PAGE
EXCRETION, -----		420
	CHAPTER XVII.	
THE CENTRAL ORGANS OF THE NERVE SYSTEM AND THEIR NERVES, -----		440
	CHAPTER XVIII.	
THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA; THE ISTHMUS OF THE ENCEPHALON; THE BASAL GANGLIA, -----		467
	CHAPTER XIX.	
THE CEREBRUM, -----		486
	CHAPTER XX.	
THE CEREBELLUM, -----		514
	CHAPTER XXI.	
THE CRANIAL NERVES, -----		522
	CHAPTER XXII.	
THE SYMPATHETIC NERVE SYSTEM, -----		561
	CHAPTER XXIII.	
PHONATION; ARTICULATE SPEECH, -----		572
	CHAPTER XXIV.	
THE SPECIAL SENSES, -----		585
	CHAPTER XXV.	
THE SENSE OF SIGHT, -----		598
	CHAPTER XXVI.	
THE SENSE OF HEARING, -----		637
	CHAPTER XXVII.	
REPRODUCTION, -----		650
	APPENDIX.	
PHYSIOLOGIC APPARATUS, -----		671
INDEX, -----		693

TEXT-BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

An animal organism in the living condition exhibits a series of phenomena which relate to growth, movement, mentality, and reproduction. During the period preceding birth, as well as during the period included between birth and adult life, the individual grows in size and complexity from the introduction and assimilation of material from without. Throughout its life the animal exhibits a series of movements, in virtue of which it not only changes the relation of one part of its body to another, but also changes its position relatively to its environment. If, in the execution of these movements, the parts are directed to the overcoming of opposing forces, such as gravity, friction, cohesion, elasticity, etc., the animal may be said to be doing work. The result of normal growth is the attainment of a physical development that will enable the animal, and, more especially, man, to perform the work necessitated by the nature of its environment and the character of its organization. In man, and probably in lower animals as well, mentality manifests itself as intellect, feeling, and volition. At a definite period in the life of the animal it reproduces itself, in consequence of which the species to which it belongs is perpetuated.

The study of the phenomena of growth, movement, mentality, and reproduction constitutes the science of **animal physiology**. But as these general activities are the resultant of and dependent on the special activities of the individual structures of which an animal body is composed, **physiology** in its more restricted and generally accepted sense is the science which investigates the actions or functions of the individual organs and tissues of the body and the physical and chemic conditions which underlie and determine them.

This may naturally be divided into:

1. *Special physiology*, the object of which is a study of the vital phenomena or functions exhibited by the organs of any individual animal.

2. *Comparative physiology*, the object of which is a comparison of the vital phenomena or functions exhibited by the organs of two or more animals of different species, with a view to unfolding their points of resemblance or dissimilarity.

Human physiology is that department of physiologic science which has for its object the study of the functions of the organs of the human body in a state of health.

Inasmuch as the study of function, or physiology, is associated with and dependent on a knowledge of structure, or anatomy, it is essential that the student should have a general acquaintance not only with the structure of man, but with that of typical forms of lower animal life as well.

If the body of any animal be dissected, it will be found to be composed of a number of well-defined structures, such as heart, lungs, stomach, brain, eye, etc., to which the term organ was originally applied, for the reason that they were supposed to be instruments capable of performing some important act or function in the general activities of the body. Though the term organ is usually employed to designate the larger and more familiar structures just mentioned, it is equally applicable to a large number of other structures which, though possibly less obvious, are equally important in maintaining the life of the individual—*e. g.*, bones, muscles, nerves, skin, teeth, glands, blood-vessels, etc. Indeed, any complexly organized structure capable of performing some function may be described as an organ. A description of the various organs which make up the body of an animal, their external form, their internal arrangement, their relations to one another, constitutes the science of **animal anatomy**.

This may naturally be divided into:

1. *Special anatomy*, the object of which is the investigation of the construction, form, and arrangement of the organs of any individual animal.
2. *Comparative anatomy*, the object of which is a comparison of the organs of two or more animals of different species, with a view to determining their points of resemblance or dissimilarity.

If the organs, however, are subjected to a further analysis, they can be resolved into simple structures, apparently homogeneous, to which the name tissue has been given—*e. g.*, epithelial, connective, muscle, and nerve tissue. When the tissues are subjected to a microscopic analysis, it is found that they are not homogeneous in structure, but composed of still simpler elements, termed cells and fibers. The investigation of the internal structure of the organs, the physical properties and structure of the tissues, as well as the structure of their component elements, the cells and fibers, constitutes a department of anatomic science known as **histology**,

or as it is prosecuted largely with the microscope, **microscopic anatomy**.

Human anatomy is that department of anatomic science which has for its object the investigation of the construction of the human body.

GENERAL STRUCTURE OF THE ANIMAL BODY.

The body of every animal, from fish to man, may be divided into—

1. An axial portion, consisting of the head, neck, and trunk; and—
2. An appendicular portion, consisting of the anterior and posterior limbs or extremities.

The **axial portion** of all mammals, to which class man zoologically belongs, as well as of all birds, reptiles, amphibians, and fish, is characterized by the presence of a bony, segmented axis, which extends in a longitudinal direction from before backward, and which is known as the vertebral column or backbone. In virtue of the existence of this column all the classes of animals just mentioned form one great division of the animal kingdom, the *Vertebrata*.

Each segment, or vertebra, of this axis consists of—

1. A solid portion, known as the body or centrum, and
2. A bony arch arising from the dorsal aspect and surmounted by a spine-like process.

At the anterior extremity of the body of the animal the vertebræ are variously modified and expanded, and, with the addition of new elements, form the skull; at the posterior extremity they rapidly diminish in size, and terminate in man in a short, tail-like process. In many animals, however, the vertebral column extends for a considerable distance beyond the trunk into the tail. The vertebral column may be regarded as the foundation element in the plan of organization of all the higher animals and the center around which the rest of the body is developed and arranged with a certain degree of conformity. In all vertebrate animals the bodies of the segments of the vertebral column form a partition which serves to divide the trunk of the body into two cavities—viz., the dorsal and the ventral. (See Fig. 1.)

The **dorsal cavity** is found not only in the trunk, but also in the head. Its walls are formed partly by the arches which arise from the posterior or dorsal surface of the vertebræ and partly by the bones of the skull. If a longitudinal section be made through the center of the vertebral column, and including the head, the dorsal cavity will be observed running through its entire extent. Though for the most part it is quite narrow, at the anterior ex-

tremity it is enlarged and forms the cavity of the skull. This cavity is lined by a membranous canal, the neural canal, in which are contained the brain and the neural or spinal cord. Through openings in the sides of the dorsal cavity nerves pass out which connect the brain and spinal cord with all the structures of the body.

The **ventral cavity** is confined mainly to the trunk of the body. Its walls are formed by muscles and skin, strengthened in most animals by bony arches, the ribs. Within the ventral cavity is contained a musculo-membranous tube or canal known as the alimentary or food canal, which begins at the mouth on the ventral side of the head, and, after passing through the neck and trunk, terminates at the posterior extremity of the trunk at the anus. It may be divided into mouth, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, small and large intestines.

In all mammals the ventral cavity is divided by a musculo-membranous partition into two smaller cavities, the thorax and abdomen. The former contains the lungs, heart and its great blood-vessels, and the anterior part of the alimentary canal, the gullet or esophagus; the latter contains the continuation of the alimentary canal—that is, the stomach and intestines—and the glands in connection with it, the liver and pancreas. In the posterior portion of the abdominal cavity are found the kidneys, ureters, and bladder, and in the female the organs of reproduction. The thoracic and abdominal cavities are each lined by a thin serous membrane, known,

FIG 1.—DIAGRAMMATIC LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF THE BODY. V, V. Bodies of the vertebræ which divide the body into the dorsal and ventral cavities. *a, a'*. The dorsal cavity. C, *p'*. The abdominal and thoracic divisions of the ventral cavity, separated from each other by a transverse muscular partition, the diaphragm *d*. B. The brain. Sp. C. The spinal cord. *e*. The esophagus. S. The stomach, from which continues the intestine to the opening at the posterior portion of the body. *l*. The liver. *p*. The pancreas. *k*. The kidney. *o*. The bladder. *v*. The lungs. *h*. The heart.

respectively, as the pleural and peritoneal membranes, which, in addition, are reflected over the surfaces of the organs contained within them. The alimentary canal and the various cavities connected with it are lined throughout by a mucous membrane.

The surface of the body is covered by the skin. This is composed of an inner portion, the derma, and an outer portion, the epidermis. The former consists of fibers, blood-vessels, nerves, etc.; the latter of layers of scales or cells. Embedded within the skin are numbers of glands, which exude, in the different classes of animals, sweat, oily matter, etc. Projecting from the surface of the skin are hairs, bristles, feathers, claws. Beneath the skin are found muscles, bones, blood-vessels, nerves, etc.

The appendicular portion of the body consists of two pairs of symmetric limbs, which project from the sides of the trunk, and which bear a determinate relation to the vertebral column. They consist fundamentally of bones, surrounded by muscles, blood-vessels, nerves and lymphatics. The limbs, though having a common plan of organization, are modified in form and adapted for prehension and locomotion in accordance with the needs of the animal.

Anatomic Systems.—All the organs of the body which have certain peculiarities of structure in common are classified by anatomists into systems—*e. g.*, the bones, collectively, constitute the bony or osseous system; the muscles, the nerves, the skin, constitute, respectively, the muscle, the nerve, and the tegumentary systems.

Physiologic Apparatus.—More important from a physiologic point of view than a classification of organs based on similarities of structure is the natural association of two or more organs acting together for the accomplishment of some definite object, and to which the term physiologic apparatus has been applied. While in the community of organs which together constitute the animal body each one performs some definite function, and the harmonious co-operation of all is necessary to the life of the individual, everywhere it is found that two or more organs, though performing totally distinct functions, are coöperating for the accomplishment of some larger or compound function in which their individual functions are blended—*e. g.*, the mouth, stomach, and intestines, with the glands connected with them, constitute the *digestive apparatus*, the object or function of which is the complete digestion of the food. The capillary blood-vessels and lymphatic vessels of the body, and especially those in relation to the villi of the small intestine, constitute the *absorptive apparatus*, the function of which is the introduction of new material into the blood. The heart and blood-vessels constitute the *circulatory apparatus*, the function of which is the distribution of blood to all portions of the body. The lungs and trachea,

together with the diaphragm and the walls of the chest, constitute the *respiratory apparatus*, the function of which is the introduction of oxygen into the blood and the elimination from it of carbon dioxide and other injurious products. The kidneys, the ureters, and the bladder constitute the *urinary apparatus*. The skin, with its sweat-glands, constitutes the *perspiratory apparatus*, the functions of both being the excretion of waste products from the body. The liver, the pancreas, the mammary glands, as well as other glands, each form a *secretory apparatus* which elaborates some specific material necessary to the nutrition of the individual. The functions of these different physiologic apparatus—*e. g.*, digestion, absorption of food, elaboration of blood, circulation of blood, respiration, production of heat, secretion, and excretion—are classified as *nutritive functions*, and have for their final object the preservation of the individual.

The nerves and muscles constitute the *nervo-muscular apparatus*, the function of which is the production of motion. The eye, the ear, the nose, the tongue, and the skin, with their related structures, constitute, respectively, the *visual*, *auditory*, *olfactory*, *gustatory*, and *tactile apparatus*, the function of which, as a whole, is the reception of impressions and the transmission of nerve impulses to the brain, where they give rise to visual, auditory, olfactory, gustatory, and tactile sensations.

The brain, in association with the sense organs, forms an apparatus related to mental processes. The larynx and its accessory organs—the lungs, trachea, respiratory muscles, the mouth and resonant cavities of the face—form the *vocal* and *articulating apparatus*, by means of which voice and articulate speech are produced. The functions exhibited by the apparatus just mentioned—*viz.*, motion, sensation, language, mental and moral manifestations—are classified as *functions of relation*, as they serve to bring the individual into conscious relationship with the external world.

The ovaries and the testes are the essential reproductive organs, the former producing the germ-cell, the latter the sperm element. Together with their related structures,—the fallopian tubes, uterus, and vagina in the female, and the urogenital canal in the male,—they constitute the *reproductive apparatus* characteristic of the two sexes. Their coöperation results in the union of the germ-cell and sperm element and the consequent development of a new being. The function of reproduction serves to perpetuate the species to which the individual belongs.

The animal body is therefore not a homogeneous organism, but one composed of a large number of widely dissimilar but related organs. As all vertebrate animals have the same general plan of organization, there is a marked similarity both in form and structure among corresponding parts of different animals. Hence it is

that in the study of human anatomy a knowledge of the form, construction, and arrangement of the organs in different types of animal life is essential to its correct interpretation; it follows also that in the investigation and comprehension of the complex problems of human physiology a knowledge of the *functions* of the organs as they manifest themselves in the different types of animal life is indispensable. As many of the functions of the human body are not only complex, but the organs exhibiting them are practically inaccessible to investigation, we must supplement our knowledge and judge of their functions by analogy, by attributing to them, within certain limits, the functions revealed by experimentation upon the corresponding organs of lower animals. This experimental knowledge, corrected by a study of the clinical phenomena of disease and the results of post-mortem investigations, forms the basis of modern human physiology.

CHAPTER II.

CHEMIC COMPOSITION OF THE HUMAN BODY.

Since it has been demonstrated that every exhibition of functional activity is associated with changes of structure, it has been apparent that a knowledge of the chemic composition of the body, not only when in a state of rest, but to a far greater degree when in a state of activity, is necessary to a correct understanding of the intimate nature of physiologic processes. Though the analysis of the dead body is comparatively easy, the determination of the successive changes in composition of the living body is attended with many difficulties. The living material, the bioplasm, is not only complex and unstable in composition, but extremely sensitive to all physical and chemic influences. The methods, therefore, which are employed for analysis destroy its composition and vitality, and the products which are obtained are peculiar to dead rather than to living material.

Chemic analysis, therefore, may be directed—

1. To the determination of the composition of the dead body.
2. To the determination of the successive changes in composition which the living bioplasm undergoes during functional activity.

A chemic analysis of the dead body, with a view to disclosing the substances of which it is composed, their properties, their intimate structure, their relationship to one another, constitutes what might be termed **chemic anatomy**. An investigation of the living material and of the successive changes it undergoes in the performance of its functions constitutes what has been termed **chemic physiology** or **physiologic chemistry**.

By chemic analysis the animal body can be reduced to a number of liquid and solid compounds which belong to both the inorganic and organic worlds. These compounds, resulting from a proximate analysis, have been termed proximate principles. That they may merit this term, however, they must be obtained in the form under which they exist in the living condition. The organic compounds consist of representatives of the carbohydrate, fatty, and proteid groups of organic bodies; the inorganic compounds consist of water, various acids, and inorganic salts.

The compounds or proximate principles thus obtained can be further resolved by an ultimate analysis into a small number of chemic elements which are identical with elements found in many other organic as well as inorganic compounds. The different chemic

elements which are thus obtained, and the percentages in which they exist in the body, are as follows—viz., oxygen, 72 per cent.; hydrogen, 9.10; nitrogen, 2.5; carbon, 13.50; phosphorus, 1.15; calcium, 1.30; sulphur, 0.147; sodium, 0.10; potassium, 0.026; chlorin, 0.085; fluorin, iron, silicon, magnesium, in small and variable amounts.

THE CARBOHYDRATES.

The carbohydrates constitute a group of organic bodies, consisting mainly of starches and sugars, having their origin for the most part in the vegetable world. In many respects they are closely related, and by appropriate means are readily converted into one another. In composition they consist of the elements carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. As their name implies, the hydrogen and oxygen are present in the majority of these compounds in the proportion to form water, or as 2 : 1. The molecule of the carbohydrates just mentioned consists of either *six* atoms of carbon or a multiple of six; in the latter case the quantity of hydrogen and oxygen taken up by the carbon is increased, though the ratio remains unchanged.

The carbohydrates may be divided into three groups—viz.: (1) *amyloses*, including starch, dextrin, glycogen, and cellulose; (2) *dextroses*, including dextrose, levulose, galactose; (3) *saccharoses*, including saccharose, lactose, and maltose. According to the number of carbon atoms entering into the second group (six), they are frequently termed monosaccharids; those of the third group, disaccharids—twice six; those of the first group, polysaccharids—multiples of six.

Though but few of the members of the carbohydrate group are constituents of the human body, yet on account of their importance as foods, and their relation to one another, a few of their chemic features will be stated in this connection.

1. AMYLOSES, $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$.

Starch is widely distributed in the vegetable world, being abundant in the seeds of the cereals, leguminous plants, and in the tubers and roots of many vegetables. It occurs in the form of microscopic granules, which vary in size, shape, and appearance, according to the plant from which they are obtained. Each granule presents a nucleus, or hilum, around which is arranged a series of eccentric rings, alternately light and dark. The granule consists of an envelope and stroma of cellulose, containing in its meshes the true starch material—*granulose*. Starch is insoluble in cold water and alcohol. When heated with water up to 70° C., the granules swell, rupture, and liberate the granulose, which forms an apparent solution; if present in sufficient quantity, it forms a gelatinous mass termed

starch paste. On the addition of iodine, starch strikes a characteristic deep blue color; the compound formed—iodide of starch—is weak, the color disappearing on heating, but reappearing on cooling.

Boiling starch with dilute sulphuric acid (twenty-five per cent.) converts it into dextrose. In the presence of vegetable diastase or animal ferments, starch is converted into maltose and dextrose, two forms of sugar.

Dextrin is a substance formed as an intermediate product in the transformation of starch into sugar. There are at least two principal varieties—*erythrodextrin*, which strikes a red color with iodine, and *achroödextrin*, which is without color when treated with this reagent. In the pure state dextrin is a yellow-white powder, soluble in water. In the presence of vegetable ferments erythrodextrin is converted into maltose.

Glycogen is a constituent of the animal liver, and, to a slight extent, of muscles and of tissues generally. In the tissues of the embryo it is especially abundant. When obtained in a pure state it is an amorphous, white powder. It is soluble in water, forming an opalescent solution. With iodine it strikes a port-wine color. In some respects it resembles starch, in others dextrin. Like vegetable starch, glycogen or animal starch can be converted by dilute acids and ferments into sugar (dextrose).

Cellulose is the basic material of the more or less solid framework of plants. It is soluble in ammoniacal solution of cupric oxide, from which it can be precipitated by acids. It is an amorphous powder; dilute acids can convert it into dextrose.

2. DEXTROSES, $C_6H_{12}O_6$.

Dextrose, glucose, or grape-sugar is found in grapes, most sweet fruits, and honey, and as a normal constituent of liver, blood, muscles, and other animal tissues. In the disease diabetes mellitus it is found also in the urine.

When obtained from any source, it is soluble in water and in hot alcohol, from which it crystallizes in six-sided tables or prisms. As usually met with, it is in the form of irregular, warty masses. It is sweet to the taste. When examined with the polariscope, dextrose turns the plane of polarized light to the right. It is therefore termed dextro-rotatory. It has for a long time been known that when sugar, cupric hydroxide, and an alkali—e. g., sodium or potassium—are present in solution, the sugar will abstract from the cupric hydroxide a portion of its oxygen, thus reducing it to a lower stage of oxidation giving rise to cuprous oxide. Sugar has a similar action on both silver and bismuth. On this property of sugar a standard solution of cupric hydroxide was suggested by Fehling which may be employed for both qualitative and quantitative tests for the presence of sugar in solution.

Fehling's Test Solution.—This is a solution of cupric hydroxid made alkaline by an excess of sodium or potassium hydroxid with the addition of sodium and potassium tartrate. It is made by dissolving cupric sulphate 34.64 grams, potassium hydroxid 125 grams, sodium and potassium tartrate 173 grams, in distilled water sufficient to make one liter.

The reaction is expressed by the following equation:

The object of the sodium and potassium tartrate is to hold the cupric hydroxid in solution.

For qualitative analysis it is only necessary to boil a few cubic centimeters of this solution in a test-tube; then add the suspected solution and again heat to the boiling-point. If sugar be present, the cupric hydroxid is reduced to the condition of a cuprous oxid, which shows itself as a red or orange-yellow precipitate. The color of the precipitate depends on the relative excess of either copper or sugar, being red with the former, orange or yellow with the latter. The delicacy of this test is shown by the fact that a few minims of this solution will detect in 1 c.c. of water the $\frac{1}{15}$ of a milligram of sugar.

For quantitative analysis, 10 c.c. of Fehling's solution, diluted with 40 c.c. of water, are heated in a porcelain capsule, to which the suspected solution is cautiously added from a buret until the blue color entirely disappears. The strength of this solution is such that 1 c.c. is decolorized by 5 milligrams of sugar (*dextrose*), from which the percentage of sugar in any solution can be determined.

All the sugars, with the exception of chemically pure saccharose, may be tested for with this solution.

The Fermentation Test.—All the sugars with the exception of lactose undergo reduction to simpler compounds, mainly alcohol and carbon dioxid, under the action of the yeast plant, *Saccharomyces cerevisiæ*. The change with dextrose is expressed in the following equation:

About 95 per cent. of the dextrose is so changed, the remaining 5 per cent. yielding secondary products—succinic acid, glycerin, etc. As a means of testing any solution for the presence of sugar this method may be adopted. It is generally very satisfactory. From the quantity of carbon dioxid and alcohol thus produced the quantity of sugar in the solution may be determined.

Levulose, or fruit-sugar, is found in association with dextrose as a constituent of many fruits. It is sweeter than dextrose and more soluble in both water and dilute alcohol. From alcoholic

solutions it crystallizes in fine, silky needles, though it usually occurs in the form of a syrup.

Levulose is distinguished from dextrose by its property of turning the plane of polarized light to the left; the extent to which it does so, however, varies with the temperature and concentration of the solution.

Under the influence of the yeast plant it slowly undergoes fermentation, yielding the same products as dextrose. It also has a reducing action on cupric hydroxid.

Galactose is obtained by boiling milk-sugar (lactose) with dilute sulphuric acid. In many chemic relations it resembles dextrose. It is less soluble in water, however, crystallizes more easily, and has a greater dextro-rotatory power. It also undergoes fermentation with the yeast plant.

3. SACCHAROSES, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$.

Saccharose, or **cane-sugar**, is widely distributed throughout the vegetable world, but is especially abundant in sugar-cane, sorghum cane, sugar-beet, Indian corn, etc. It crystallizes in large monoclinic prisms. It is soluble in water and in dilute alcohol. Saccharose has no reducing power on cupric hydroxid, and hence its presence can not be detected by Fehling's solution. It is dextro-rotatory. Boiled with dilute mineral, as well as with organic acids, saccharose combines with water and undergoes a change in virtue of which it rotates the plane of polarized light to the left, and hence the product was termed *invert* sugar. This latter has been shown to be a mixture of equal quantities of levulose and dextrose. This inversion of saccharose through hydration and decomposition is expressed in the following equation:

Saccharose is not directly fermentable by yeast, but through the specific action of a ferment, *invertin* or *invertase*, secreted by the yeast plant, or the inverting ferment of the small intestine, it undergoes inversion, as previously stated, after which it is readily fermented, yielding alcohol and carbon dioxid.

Lactose is the form of sugar found exclusively in the milk of the mammalia, from which it can be obtained in the form of hard, white, rhombic prisms united with one molecule of water. It is soluble in water, insoluble in alcohol and ether. It is dextro-rotatory. It reduces cupric hydroxid, but to a less extent than dextrose. Dilute acids decompose it into equal quantities of dextrose and galactose. Lactose is not fermentable with yeast, but in the presence of the

lactic acid bacillus it is decomposed into lactic acid, and finally into butyric acid, as expressed in the following equation:

Maltose is a transformation product of starch, and arises whenever the latter is acted on by malt extract or the diastatic ferments in saliva and pancreatic juice. The change is expressed by the following equation:

Maltose crystallizes in the form of white needles, which are soluble in water and in dilute alcohol. It is dextro-rotatory. In the presence of ferments and dilute acids maltose undergoes hydration and decomposition, giving rise to two molecules of dextrose. It has a reducing action on cupric hydroxid. Fermentation is readily caused by yeast, but whether directly or indirectly by inversion is somewhat uncertain.

Osazones.—All the sugars which possess the power of reducing cupric hydroxid are capable of combining with phenyl-hydrazin, with the formation of compounds termed osazones. The osazones so formed are crystalline in structure, but have different melting-points, varying degrees of solubility and optic properties, all of which serve to detect the various sugars and to distinguish one from the other. Of the different osazones, phenyl-glucosazone is the most characteristic, and occurs in the form of long, yellow needles. It may be obtained from dextrose by the following method: To 50 c.c. of a dextrose solution add 2 gm. of phenyl-hydrazin and 2 gm. of sodium acetate, and boil for an hour. On cooling, the osazone crystallizes in the form of long, yellow needles.

THE FATS.

The fats constitute a group of organic bodies found in the tissues of both vegetables and animals. In the vegetable world they are largely found in fruits, seeds, and nuts, where they probably originate from a transformation of the carbohydrates. In the animal body the fats are found largely in the subcutaneous tissue, in the marrow of bones, in and around various internal organs and in milk. In these situations fat is contained in small, round or polygon-shaped vesicles, which are united by areolar tissue and surrounded by blood-vessels. (At the temperature of the body the fat is liquid, but after death it soon solidifies from the loss of heat.)

The fats are compounds consisting of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, of which the first is the chief ingredient, forming by weight about 75 per cent., while the last is present only in small quantity. The fat found in animals is a mixture, in varying proportions in different animals, of three neutral fats—*stearin*, *palmitin*, and *olein*. Each fat is a derivative of glycerin and the particular acid indicated by its name—*e. g.*, stearic acid, in the case of stearin, etc. The reaction which takes place in the combination of glycerin and the acid is expressed in the following equation:

Hence, strictly speaking, the fats are compound ethers, in which the hydrogen of the organic acid is replaced by the trivalent radicle, tritenyl, C_3H_5 .

Stearin, $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{35}\text{O}_2)_3$, is the chief constituent of the more solid fats. It is solid at ordinary temperatures, melting at $55^\circ \text{C}.$, then solidifying again as the temperature rises, until at $71^\circ \text{C}.$ it melts permanently. It crystallizes in square tables.

Palmitin, $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{31}\text{O}_2)_3$, is a semifluid fat, solid at $45^\circ \text{C}.$ and melting at $62^\circ \text{C}.$ It crystallizes in fine needles, and is soluble in ether.

Olein, $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{33}\text{O}_2)_3$, is a colorless, transparent fluid, liquid at ordinary temperatures, only solidifying at $0^\circ \text{C}.$ It possesses marked solvent powers, and holds stearin and palmitin in solution at the temperature of the body.

Saponification.—When subjected to the action of superheated steam, a neutral fat is saponified—*i. e.*, decomposed into glycerin and the particular acid indicated by the name of the fat used: *e. g.*, stearic, palmitic, or oleic. The reaction is expressed as follows:

The fatty acids thus obtained are characterized by certain chemical features, as follows:

Stearic acid is a firm, white solid, fusible at $69^\circ \text{C}.$ It is soluble in ether and alcohol, but not in water.

Palmitic acid occurs in the form of white, glistening scales or needles, melting at $62^\circ \text{C}.$

Oleic acid is a clear, colorless liquid, tasteless and odorless when pure. It crystallizes in white needles at $0^\circ \text{C}.$

If this saponification takes place in the presence of an alkali,—*e. g.*, potassium hydroxid or sodium hydroxid,—the acid produced combines at once with the alkali to form a salt known as a soap, while the glycerin remains in solution. The reaction is as follows:

All soaps are, therefore, salts formed by the union of alkalies and fatty acids. The sodium soaps are generally hard, while the potassium soaps are soft. Those made with stearin and palmitin are harder than those made with olein. If the soap is composed of lead, zinc, copper, etc., it is insoluble in water.

Emulsification.—When a neutral oil is vigorously shaken with water or other fluid, it is broken up into minute globules that are more or less permanently suspended; the permanency depending on the nature of the liquid. The most permanent emulsions are those made with soap solutions. The process of emulsification and the part played by soap can be readily observed by placing on a few cubic centimeters of a solution of sodium carbonate (0.25 per cent.) a small quantity of a perfectly neutral oil to which has been added 2 or 3 per cent. of a fatty acid. The combination of the acid and the alkali at once forms a soap. The energy set free by this combination rapidly divides up the oil into extremely minute globules. A spontaneous emulsion is thus formed.

In addition to the ordinary fats, there are present in different tissues several compounds which, though usually regarded as fats, nevertheless differ materially from them in composition, containing, as they do, both nitrogen and phosphorus. These nitrogenized or phosphorized fats are as follows:

Lecithin, $C_{44}H_{90}N.PO_6$, is found in blood, lymph, red and white corpuscles, nerve tissue, yolk of eggs, etc. When pure, it presents itself generally under the form of a white, crystalline powder, though sometimes as a white, waxy mass. Lecithin is easily decomposed, yielding, with various reagents, glycerophosphoric acid, cholin and stearic acid.

Protagon, $C_{160}H_{308}N_5PO_{35}$, is found most abundantly in the brain tissue, especially in the white portion. It crystallizes from warm alcoholic solutions, on cooling, in the form of white needles, generally arranged in groups. It melts at $200^{\circ}C.$, and forms a syrupy liquid.

Cerebrin, $C_{17}H_{33}N.O_3$, is found largely in the brain, in nerves, and in pus-corpuscles. It is a soft, white, amorphous powder, insoluble in water, but swelling up like starch in boiling water. When boiled with dilute acids, it is decomposed, yielding a fermentable dextro-rotatory sugar, identical with galactose. Cerebrin may, therefore, be regarded as a glucosid.

THE PROTEIDS.

The proteids constitute a group of organic bodies which are found in both vegetable and animal tissues. Though present in all animal tissues, they are especially abundant in muscles and

bones, where they constitute 20 per cent. and 30 per cent. respectively. Though genetically related, and possessing many features in common, the different members of the proteid group are distinguished by characteristic physical and chemic properties which serve not only for their identification, but for their classification into more or less well-defined groups as follows:

1. NATIVE PROTEIDS.

The members of this group are soluble in water, in dilute saline solutions, and in saturated solutions of sodium chlorid and magnesium sulphate. They are coagulated by heat, and when dried form an amber-colored mass.

- (a) **Serum-albumin** is found in blood, lymph, chyle, tissue fluids, and milk. It is obtained readily by precipitation from blood-serum, after the other proteids have been removed, on the addition of ammonium sulphate. When freed from saline constituents, it presents itself as a pale, amorphous substance, soluble in water and in strong nitric acid. It is coagulated at a temperature of 73°C. , as well as by various acids—*e. g.*, citric, picric, nitric, etc. It has a rotatory power of -62.6° .
- (b) **Egg-albumin.**—Though not a constituent of the human body, egg-albumin resembles the foregoing in many respects. When obtained in the solid form from the white of the egg, it is a yellow mass without taste or odor. Though similar to serum-albumin, it differs from it in being precipitated by ether, in coagulating at 54°C. , and in having a lower rotatory power, -35.5° .

2. GLOBULINS.

The members of this group are insoluble in water and in saturated solutions of sodium chlorid and magnesium sulphate and ammonium sulphate. They are soluble, however, in dilute saline solutions—*e. g.*, sodium chlorid (1 per cent.), potassium chlorid, ammonium chlorid, etc. They are coagulated by heat.

- (a) **Serum-globulin or Paraglobulin.**—This proteid, as its name implies, is found in blood-serum, though it is present in other animal fluids. When precipitated by magnesium sulphate or carbon dioxid, it presents itself as a flocculent substance, insoluble in water, soluble in dilute acids and alkalis, and coagulating at 75°C.
- (b) **Fibrinogen.**—This proteid is found in blood-plasma in association with serum-globulin and serum-albumin. It is also present in lymph-tissue fluids and in pathologic transudates. It can be obtained from blood-plasma which has been previously treated with magnesium sulphate on the addition of

a saturated solution of sodium chlorid. It is soluble in dilute acids and alkalies, and coagulates at 56° C.

- (c) **Myosinogen.**—This proteid is a constituent of the protoplasm of the muscle-fibers. During the living condition it is liquid, but after death it readily undergoes decomposition into an insoluble portion known as myosin and a soluble albumin. It is soluble in dilute hydrochloric acid and dilute alkalies. It coagulates at 56° C.
- (d) **Globin.**—This is a product of the spontaneous decomposition of the coloring-matter of the blood,—hemoglobin,—and arises when the latter is exposed to the air.
- (e) **Crystallin or Globulin.**—This is obtained by passing a stream of CO_2 through a watery extract of the crystalline lens.

3. DERIVED ALBUMINS OR ALBUMINATES.

The proteids of this group are derived from both native albumins and globulins by the gradual action of dilute acids and alkalies, and may be regarded as compounds of a proteid with an acid or an alkali.

- (a) **Acid-albumin.**—This is formed when a native albumin is digested with dilute hydrochloric acid (0.2 per cent.) or dilute sulphuric acid for some minutes. It is precipitated by neutralization with sodium hydroxid (0.1 per cent. solution). After the precipitate is washed, it is found to be insoluble in distilled water and in neutral saline solutions. In acid solutions it is not coagulated by heat.
- (b) **Alkali-albumin.**—This is formed when a native albumin is treated with a dilute alkali—*e. g.*, 0.1 per cent. of sodium hydroxid—for five or ten minutes. On careful neutralization with dilute hydrochloric acid, it is precipitated. It is also insoluble in distilled water and in saline solutions; it is not coagulable by heat.
- (c) **Caseinogen.**—This is the principal proteid of milk, in which it exists in association with an alkali, and hence was formerly regarded as a native alkali-albumin. It is *precipitated* by acetic acid and by magnesium sulphate. It is *coagulated* by rennet—that is, separated into an insoluble proteid, casein or tyrein, and a soluble albumin. Calcium phosphate seems to be the natural alkali necessary to this process, for if it be removed by dialysis, or precipitated by the addition of potassium oxalate, coagulation does not take place.

4. COAGULATED PROTEIDS.

Although these proteids are not found as constituents of the animal organism, they possess much interest on account of their

relation to prepared foods and to the digestive process. They are produced when solutions of egg-albumin, serum-albumin, or globulins are subjected to a temperature of 100° C. or to the prolonged action of alcohol. They are insoluble in water, in dilute acids, and in neutral saline solutions. In this same group may be included also those coagulated proteids which are produced by the action of animal ferments on soluble proteids—*e. g.*, fibrin, myosin, casein.

Fibrin.—Fibrin is derived from a soluble proteid—fibrinogen—by the action of a special ferment. It is not present under normal circumstances in the circulating blood, but makes its appearance after the blood is withdrawn from the vessels and at the time of coagulation. It can also be obtained by whipping the blood with a bundle of twigs, on which it accumulates. When freed from blood by washing under water, it is seen to consist of bundles of white elastic fibers or threads. It is insoluble in water, in alcohol, and ether. In dilute acids it swells, becomes transparent, and finally is converted into acid-albumin. In dilute alkalies a similar change takes place, but the resulting product is an alkali-albumin. Fibrin possesses the property of decomposing hydrogen dioxid, H_2O_2 ,—*i. e.*, liberating oxygen, which accumulates in the form of bubbles on the fibrin. On incineration fibrin yields an ash which contains calcium phosphate and magnesium phosphate.

5. PROTEOSES AND PEPTONES.

During the progress of the digestive process, as it takes place in the stomach and intestines, there is produced by the action of the gastric and pancreatic juices, out of the proteids of the food, a series of new proteids, known as proteoses and peptones. The chemical properties of these substances will be considered in connection with the process of digestion.

6. ALBUMINOIDS.

The albuminoids constitute a group of substances similar to the proteids in many respects, though differing from them in others. When obtained from the tissues, in which they form an organic basis, they are found to be amorphous, colloid, and when decomposed yield products similar to those of the true proteids. The principal members of this group are as follows:

- (a) **Mucin.**—This is the viscid, tenacious constituent of mucus secreted by the epithelial cells of mucous membranes. It is also present in the intercellular substance of the connective tissue. It is readily precipitated by acetic acid.
- (b) **Collagen, Ossein.**—These are two closely allied, if not identical, substances, found respectively in the white fibrous connec-

tive tissue and in bone. When the tendons of muscles, the ligaments, or decalcified bone are boiled for several hours, the collagen and ossein are converted into soluble gelatin, which, when the solution cools, becomes solid.

- (c) **Chondrigen**.—This is supposed to be the organic basis of the more permanent cartilages. When they are boiled, they yield a substance which gelatinizes on cooling, and to which the name chondrin has been given.
- (d) **Elastin** is the name given to the substance composing the fibers of the yellow, elastic connective tissue.
- (e) **Keratin** is the substance found in all horny and epidermic tissues, such as hairs, nails, scales, etc. It differs from most proteids in containing a high percentage of sulphur.
- (f) **Nuclein**.—This is an amorphous substance obtained from the nuclei of both animal and vegetable cells. The chief constituent appears to be nucleic acid. Chemic analysis shows that nuclein contains not less than three per cent. of phosphorus. On boiling with strong alkalies, nuclein is partially decomposed, yielding a proteid resembling globulin and phosphoric acid. A nucleo-proteid is a compound of nuclein and a proteid.

The average percentage composition of several proteids is shown in the following analyses:

	C.	H.	N.	O.	S.
Egg-albumin, -----	52.9	7.2	15.6	23.9	0.4 (Würtz).
Serum-albumin, -----	53.0	6.8	16.0	22.29	1.77 (Hammersten).
Casein, -----	53.3	7.07	15.91	22.03	0.82 (Chittenden and Painter).
Myosin, -----	52.82	7.11	16.77	21.90	1.27 (Chittenden and Cummins).

The molecular composition of the proteids is not definitely known, and the formulæ which have been suggested are therefore only approximative. Leow assigns to albumin the formula $C_{72}H_{112}N_{18}O_{22}S$, while Schützenberger raises the numbers to $C_{240}H_{392}N_{65}O_{75}S_3$, either of which shows that the proteid molecule is extremely complex.

As a class, the proteids are characterized by the following properties:

- 1. Indiffusibility**.—None of the proteids normally assumes the crystalline form, and hence they are not capable of diffusing through parchment or an animal membrane. Peptone, a product of the digestion of proteids, is an exception as regards its diffusibility. As met with in the body, all proteids are amorphous, but vary in consistence from the liquid to the solid state. The colloid character of the proteids permits of their separation and purification from crystalloid diffusible compounds by the process of dialysis.
- 2. Solubility**.—Some of the proteids are soluble in water, others in solutions of the neutral salts of varying degrees of concentration,

in strong acids and alkalis. All are insoluble in alcohol and ether.

3. **Coagulability.**—Under the influence of heat and various acids and animal ferments, the proteids readily pass from the soluble liquid state to the insoluble solid state, attended by a permanent alteration in their chemic composition. To this change the term coagulation has been given. The various proteids not only coagulate at different temperatures, but with different chemic reagents—distinctive features which permit not only of their detection, but separation. Proteids are capable of precipitation without losing their solubility by ammonium sulphate, sodium chlorid, and magnesium sulphate.
4. **Fermentability.**—In the presence of specific microorganisms—bacteria—the proteids, owing to their complexity and instability, are prone to undergo disintegration and reduction to simpler compounds. This decomposition or putrefaction occurs most readily when the conditions most favorable to the growth of bacteria are present—viz., a temperature varying from 25° C. to 40° C., moisture, and oxygen. The intermediate as well as the terminal products of the decomposition of the proteids are numerous, and vary with the composition of the proteid and the specific physiologic action of the bacteria. Among the intermediate products is a series of alkaloid bodies, some of which possess marked toxic properties, known as ptomains or toxins. The toxic symptoms which frequently follow the ingestion of foods in various stages of putrefaction are to be attributed to these compounds. The terminal products are represented by hydrogen sulphid, ammonia, carbon dioxid, fats, phosphates, nitrates, etc.

Color Tests for Proteids.—When proteids are present in solution, they may be detected by the following color reactions—viz.:

1. **Xanthoproteic.** The solution is boiled with nitric acid for several minutes, when the proteid assumes a light yellow color. After the solution has cooled, the addition of ammonia changes the color to an orange or amber-red.
2. **The rose-red reaction.** The solution is boiled with acid nitrate of mercury (Millon's reagent) for a few minutes, when the coagulated proteid turns a purple-red color.
3. **The blue-violet reaction.** A few drops of copper sulphate solution are first added to the proteid solution, and then an excess of sodium hydroxid. A blue-violet color is produced, which deepens somewhat on heating, but no further change ensues.

INORGANIC CONSTITUENTS.

The inorganic compounds and mineral constituents obtained from the solids and fluids of the body are very numerous, and, in some instances, quite abundant. Though many of the compounds thus obtained are undoubtedly derivatives of the tissues and necessary to their physical and physiologic activity, others, in all probability, are decomposition products, or transitory constituents introduced with the food. Of the inorganic compounds, the following are the most important:

WATER.

Water is the most important of the inorganic constituents, as it is indispensable to life. It is present in all the tissues and fluids without exception, varying from 99 per cent. in the saliva to 80 per cent. in the blood, 75 per cent. in the muscles to 2 per cent. in the enamel of the teeth. The total quantity contained in a body weighing 75 kilograms (165 pounds) is 52.5 kilograms (115 pounds). Much of the water exists in a free condition, and forms the chief part of the fluids, giving to them their characteristic degree of fluidity. Possessing the capability of holding in solution a large number of inorganic as well as some organic compounds, and being at the same time diffusible, it renders an interchange of materials between all portions of the body possible. It aids in the absorption of new material into the blood and tissues, and at the same time it transfers waste products from the tissues to the blood, from which they are finally eliminated, along with the water in which they are dissolved. A portion of the water is chemically combined with other tissue constituents and gives to the tissues their characteristic physical properties. The consistency, elasticity, and pliability are, to a large extent, conditioned by the amount of water they contain. The total quantity of water eliminated by the kidneys, lungs, and skin amounts to about 3 kilograms (6½ pounds).

CALCIUM COMPOUNDS.

Calcium phosphate, $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$, has a very extensive distribution throughout the body. It exists largely in the bones, teeth, and to a slight extent in cartilage, blood, and other tissues. Milk contains 0.27 per cent. The solidity of the bones and teeth is almost entirely due to the presence of this salt, and is, therefore, to be regarded as necessary to their structure. It enters into chemic union with the organic matter, as shown by the fact that it can not be separated from it except by chemic means, such as hydrochloric acid. Though insoluble in water, it is held in solution in the blood and milk by the proteid constituents, and in the urine by the acid

phosphate of soda. The total quantity of calcium phosphate which enters into the formation of the body has been estimated at 2.5 kilograms. The amount eliminated daily from the body has been estimated at 0.4 gm., a fact which indicates that nutritive changes do not take place with much rapidity in those tissues in which it is contained.

Calcium carbonate, CaCO_3 , is present in practically the same situations in the body as the phosphate, and plays essentially the same rôle. It is, however, found in the crystalline form, aggregated in small masses in the internal ear, forming the otoliths, or ear stones. Though insoluble, it is held in solution by the carbonic acid diffused through the fluids.

Calcium fluorid, CaF_2 , is found in bones and teeth.

SODIUM COMPOUNDS.

Sodium chlorid, NaCl , is present in all the tissues and fluids of the body, but especially in the blood, 0.6 per cent., lymph, 0.5, and pancreatic juice, 0.25 per cent. The entire quantity in the body has been estimated at about 200 gm. Sodium chlorid is of much importance in the body, as it determines and regulates to a large extent the phenomena of diffusion which are there constantly taking place. This is illustrated by the fact that a solution of albumin placed in the rectum without the addition of this salt will not be absorbed. When the salt is added, absorption takes place. The ingested water is absorbed into the blood largely in consequence of the percentage of this salt which it contains. The normal percentage of sodium chlorid in the blood-plasma assists in maintaining the shape and structure of the red blood-corpuscles by determining the amount of water entering into their composition. The same is true of other tissue elements.

Sodium chlorid also influences the general nutritive process, increasing the disintegration of the proteids, as shown by the increased amount of urea excreted. During its existence in the body it undergoes chemic transformations or decompositions, yielding its chlorid to form the potassium chlorid of the blood-corpuscles and muscles and to form the hydrochloric acid of the gastric juice.

Sodium phosphate, Na_2HPO_4 , is found in all solids and fluids of the body, to which, with but few exceptions, it imparts an alkaline reaction. This is especially true of blood, lymph, and tissue fluids generally. It is essential to physiologic action that all tissue elements should be bathed by an alkaline medium.

Sodium carbonate, Na_2CO_3 , is generally found in association with the preceding salt. As it is an alkaline compound, it also assists in giving to the blood and lymph their characteristic alkalinity. In carnivorous animals the sodium phosphate is the more abundant,

while in the herbivorous animals the sodium carbonate is the more abundant.

Sodium sulphate, Na_2SO_4 , is present in many of the tissues and fluids, especially in the urine. Though introduced in the food, it is also, in all probability, formed in the body from the decomposition and oxidation of the proteids.

POTASSIUM COMPOUNDS.

Potassium chlorid, KCl , is met with in association with sodium chlorid in almost all situations in the body. It preponderates, however, in the tissue elements, especially in the muscle tissue, nerve tissue, and red corpuscles. The plasma with which these structures are bathed contains but a very small amount of this salt, but, as previously stated, a relatively large quantity of sodium chlorid. Though introduced to some extent in the food, it is very likely that it is also formed through the decomposition of the sodium chlorid.

Potassium phosphate, K_2HPO_4 , is found in association with sodium phosphate in all the fluids and solids. As it has similar chemic properties, its functions are practically the same.

Potassium carbonate, K_2CO_3 , is generally found with the preceding salt.

MAGNESIUM COMPOUNDS.

Magnesium phosphate, $\text{Mg}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$, is found in all tissues, in association with calcium phosphate, though in much smaller quantity.

Magnesium carbonate, MgCO_3 , occurs only in traces in the blood.

Both of these compounds have functions similar to the calcium compounds, and exist, in all probability, under similar conditions.

IRON COMPOUNDS.

Iron is a constituent of the coloring-matter of the blood. Traces, however, are also found in lymph, bile, gastric juice, and in the pigment of the eyes, skin, and hair. The amount of iron contained in a body weighing 75 kilograms is about 3 gm. It exists under various forms—*e. g.*, ferric oxid, and in combination with organic compounds.

Chemic analysis thus shows that the chemic elements into which the compounds may be resolved by an ultimate analysis do not exist in the body in a free state, but only in combination, and in characteristic proportions, to form compounds whose properties are the resultant of those of the elements. Of the four principal elements which make up 97 per cent. of the body, O, H, N are extremely mobile, elastic, and possessed of great atomic heat. C, H, N are distinguished for the narrow range of their affinities, and for their

chemic inertia. C possesses the great atomic cohesion. O is noted for the number and intensity of its combinations.

As the properties of the compounds formed by the union of elements must be the resultants of the properties of the elements themselves, it follows that the ternary compounds, starches, sugars, and fats must possess more or less inertia, and at the same time instability; while in the more complex proteids, in which sulphur and phosphorus are frequently combined with the four principal elements, molecular instability attains its maximum. As all the foregoing compounds possess in varying degrees the properties of inertia and instability, it follows that living matter must possess corresponding properties, and the capability of undergoing unceasingly a series of chemic changes, both of composition and decomposition, in response to the chemic and physical influences by which it is surrounded, and which underlie all the phenomena of life.

PRINCIPLES OF DISSIMILATION.

In addition to the previously mentioned compounds,—viz., carbohydrates, fats, proteids, and inorganic salts,—there is obtained by chemic analysis from the tissues and fluids of the body:

1. A number of organic acids, such as acetic, lactic, oxalic, butyric, propionic, etc., in combination with alkaline and earthy bases.
2. Organic compounds, such as alcohol, glycerin, cholesterin.
3. Pigments, such as those found in bile and urine.
4. Crystallizable nitrogenized bodies, such as urea, uric acid, xanthin, hippuric acid, creatin, creatinin, etc.

While some few of these compounds may possibly be regarded as necessary to the physiologic integrity of the tissues and fluids, the majority of them are to be regarded as products of dissimilation of the tissues and foods in consequence of functional activity, and represent stages in their reduction to simpler forms previous to being eliminated from the body.

CHAPTER III.

PHYSIOLOGY OF THE CELL.

A microscopic analysis of the tissues shows that they can be resolved into simpler elements, termed cells, which may, therefore, be regarded as the primary units of structure. Though cells vary considerably in shape, size, and chemic composition in the different tissues of the adult body, they are, nevertheless, descendants from typical cells, known as embryonic or undifferentiated cells, examples of which are the leukocytes of the blood and lymph and the first offspring of the fertilized ovum. Ascending the line of embryonic development, it will be found that every organized body originates in a single cell—the ovum. As the cell is the elementary unit of all tissues, the function of each tissue must be referred to the function of the cell. Hence the cell may be defined as the primary anatomic and physiologic unit of the organic world, to which every exhibition of life, whether normal or abnormal, is to be referred.

Structure of Cells.—Though cells vary in shape and size and internal structure in different portions of the body, a typical cell may be said to consist mainly of a gelatinous substance forming the body of the cell, termed *protoplasm* or *bioplasm*, in which is embedded a smaller spheric body, the *nucleus*. The shape of the adult cell varies according to the tissue in which it is found; when young and free to move in a fluid medium, the cell assumes a spheric form, but when subjected to pressure, may become cylindric, fusiform, polygonal, or stellate. Cells vary in size within wide limits, ranging from $\frac{1}{3200}$ of an inch, the diameter of a red blood-corpuscle, to $\frac{1}{200}$ of an inch, the diameter of the large cells in the gray matter of the spinal cord. (See Fig. 2.)

The **cell protoplasm** consists of a soft, semifluid, gelatinous material, varying somewhat in appearance in different tissues. Though frequently homogeneous, it often exhibits a finely granular appearance under medium powers of the microscope. Young cells consist almost entirely of clear protoplasm. Mature cells contain, according to the tissue in which they are found, material of an entirely different character—e. g., small globules of fat, granules of glycogen, mucigen, pigments, digestive ferments, etc. Under high powers of the microscope the cell protoplasm is found to be pervaded by a network of fibers, termed *spongioplasm*, in the meshes of which is contained a clearer and more fluent substance, the *hyaloplasm*.

The relative amount of these two constituents varies in different cells, the proportion of hyaloplasm being usually greater in young cells. The arrangement of the fibers forming the spongioplasm also varies, the fibers having sometimes a radial direction, in others a concentric disposition, but most frequently being distributed evenly in all directions. In many cells the outer portion of the cell protoplasm undergoes chemic changes and is transformed into a thin, transparent, homogeneous membrane,—the cell membrane,—which completely incloses the cell substance. The cell membrane is permeable to water and watery solutions of various inorganic and organic substances. It is, however, not an essential part of the cell.

The **nucleus** is a small vesicular body embedded in the protoplasm near the center of the cell. In the resting condition of the cell

FIG. 2.—DIAGRAM OF A CELL. Microsomes and spongioplasm are only partly drawn.

it consists of a distinct membrane, composed of *amphipyrenin*, inclosing the nuclear contents. The latter consists of a homogeneous amorphous substance,—the nuclear matrix,—in which is embedded the nuclear network. It can often be seen that a portion of one side of the nucleus, called the pole, is free from this network. The main cords of the network are arranged as V-shaped loops about it. These main cords send out secondary branches or twigs, which, uniting with one another, complete the network. The nuclear cords are composed of granules of *chromatin*,—so called because of its affinity for certain staining materials,—held together by an achromatin substance known as *linin*. Besides the nuclear network, there are embedded in the nuclear matrix one or more small bodies composed

of *pyrenin*, known as nucleoli. At the pole of the nucleus, either within or just without in the protoplasm, is a small body, the *centrosome*, or pole corpuscle.

Chemical Composition of the Cell.—The composition of living protoplasm is difficult of determination, for the reason that all chemical and physical methods employed for its analysis destroy its vitality, and the products obtained are peculiar to dead rather than to living matter. Moreover, as protoplasm is the seat of constructive and destructive processes, it is not easy to determine whether the products of analysis are crude food constituents or cleavage or disintegration products. Nevertheless, chemical investigations have shown that even in the living condition protoplasm is a highly complex compound—the resultant of the intimate union of many different substances. About 75 per cent. of protoplasm consists of water and 25 per cent. of solids, of which the more important compounds are various nucleo-proteids (characterized by their large percentage of phosphorus), globulins, traces of lecithin, cholesterin, and frequently fat and carbohydrates. Inorganic salts, especially the potassium, sodium, and calcium chlorids and phosphates, are almost invariable and essential constituents.

MANIFESTATIONS OF CELL LIFE.

Growth, Nutrition.—All cells exhibit the three fundamental properties of life—viz., growth, nutrition, reproduction. All cells when newly reproduced are extremely small, but by the absorption of nutritive material from their surrounding medium, they gradually grow until they attain their mature size. This is accomplished by the power which living material possesses of transforming, vitalizing, and organizing crude nutritive material, through a series of upward changes, into material similar to itself. To all these changes the term *assimilation*, or *anabolism*, has been given. Some of the absorbed material, in all probability, never becomes an integral part of the living bioplasm, but undergoes disruption and oxidation, giving rise at once to heat and force. Coincident with the assimilative processes, a series of disintegrative processes is constantly taking place, whereby the living material is reduced, through a series of downward chemical changes, to simpler compounds, such as water, carbon dioxide, urea, etc. To all these downward changes the term *dissimilation*, or *katabolism*, has been given. As a result, also, of these various changes, the protoplasm gives rise to the production of material of an entirely different character, such as globules of fat, granules of glycogen, mucigen, digestive ferments, etc. The sum total of all changes which go on in the cell, both assimilative and dissimilative, are embraced under the general term nutrition, or

metabolism. Every cell presents in its nutritive activities an epitome of the nutritive activities of the body as a whole.

Physiologic Properties of Protoplasm.—All living protoplasm possesses properties which serve to distinguish and characterize it—viz., irritability, conductivity, and motility.

Irritability, or the power of reacting in a definite manner to some form of external excitation, whether mechanic, chemic, or electric, is a fundamental property of all living protoplasm. The character and extent of the reaction will vary, and will depend both on the nature of the protoplasm and the character and strength of the stimulus. If the protoplasm be muscle, the response will be a contraction; if it be gland, the response will be secretion; if it be nerve, the response will be a sensation or some other form of nerve activity.

Conductivity, or the power of transmitting molecular disturbances arising at one point to all portions of the irritable material, is also a characteristic feature of all protoplasm. This power, however, is best developed in that form of protoplasm found in nerves, which serves to transmit, with extreme rapidity, molecular disturbances arising at the periphery to the brain, as well as in the reverse direction. Muscle protoplasm also possesses the same power in a high degree.

Motility, or the power of executing apparently spontaneous movements, is exhibited by many forms of cell protoplasm. In addition to the molecular movements which take place in certain cells, other forms of movement are exhibited, more or less constantly, by many cells in the animal body—e. g., the waving of cilia, the ameboid movements and migrations of white blood-corpuscles, the activities of spermatozooids, the projection of pseudopodia, etc. These movements, arising without any recognizable cause, are frequently spoken of as spontaneous. Strictly speaking, however, all protoplasmic movement is the resultant of natural causes, the true nature of which is beyond the reach of present methods of investigation.

Reproduction.—Cells reproduce themselves in the higher animals in two ways—by direct division and by indirect division, or karyokinesis. In the former the nucleus becomes constricted, and divides without any special grouping of the nuclear elements. It is probable that this occurs only in disintegrating cells, and never in a physiologic multiplication. In division by karyokinesis (Fig. 3) there is a progressive rearranging and definite grouping of the nucleus, the result of which changes is the division of the centrosoma, the chromatin, and the rest of the nucleus into two equal portions, which form the nuclei. Following the division of the nuclei, the protoplasm divides. The process may be divided into three phases:

- i. Prophase.—The centrosoma, at first small and lying within the nucleus, increases in size and moves into the protoplasm, where

it lies near the nucleus, surrounded by a clear zone, from which delicate threads radiate through an area known as the *attraction sphere*. The nucleus enlarges and becomes richer in chromatin. The lateral twigs of the chromatin cords are drawn in, while the main cords become much contorted. These cords have a general direction transverse to the long axis of the cell, and parallel to the plane of future cleavage. They are seen as V-shaped segments or loops, *chromosomes*, having their closed ends directed toward a common center, the *polar field*, while the other ends interdigitate on the opposite side of the nucleus

FIG. 3.—KARYOKINETIC FIGURES OBSERVED IN THE EPITHELIUM OF THE ORAL CAVITY OF A SALAMANDER. The picture in the upper right-hand corner is from a section through a dividing egg of *Siredon pisciformis*. Neither the centrosomes nor the first stages of the development of the spindle can be seen by this magnification. $\times 560$.

—the anti-pole. The polar field corresponds to the area occupied by the centrosoma. This arrangement is known as the *close skein*; but as the process goes on, the chromosomes become thicker, shorter and less contorted, producing a much looser arrangement, known as the *loose skein*. During the formation of the loose skein, the centrosoma divides into two portions, which move apart to positions at the opposite ends of the long axis of the nucleus. At the same time delicate achromatin fibers make their appearance, arranged in the form of a double

cone, the apices of which correspond in position to the centrosoma. This is known as the *nuclear spindle*. During the prophase the nuclear membrane and the nucleoli disappear.

- 2 The Metaphase.—The two centrosomes are at opposite ends of the long axis of the nucleus, each surrounded by an attraction sphere, now called the *polar radiation*. The chromosomes become yet shorter and thicker, and move toward the equator of the nucleus, where they lie with their closed ends toward the axis, presenting the appearance, when seen from the poles, of a star,—the so-called mother star, or monaster. While moving toward the equator of the nucleus, and often earlier, each chromosome undergoes longitudinal cleavage, the sister loops remaining together for a time. Upon the completion of the monaster, one loop of each pair passes to each pole of the nucleus, guided, and perhaps drawn by the threads of the nuclear spindle. The separation of the sister segments begins at their apices, and as the open ends are drawn apart they remain connected by delicate achromatin filaments drawn out from the centrosomes. This separation of the daughter chromosomes, and their movement toward the daughter centrosomes, is called *metakinesis*. As they approach their destination, we have the appearance of two stars in the nucleus—the *daughter stars*, or diasters.
3. Anaphase.—The daughter stars undergo, in reverse order, much the same changes that the mother star passed through. The chromosomes become much convoluted, and perhaps united to one another, the lateral twigs appear, and the chromatin resumes the appearance of the resting nucleus. The nuclear spindle, with most of the polar radiation, disappears, and the nucleoli and the nuclear membrane reappear, thus forming two complete daughter nuclei. Meanwhile the protoplasm becomes constricted midway between the young nuclei. This constriction gradually deepens until the original cell is divided, with the formation of two complete cells.

CHAPTER IV.

HISTOLOGY OF THE EPITHELIAL AND CONNECTIVE TISSUES.

I. EPITHELIAL TISSUE.

The **epithelial tissue** consists of one or more layers of cells resting on a homogeneous membrane, the other side of which is abundantly supplied with blood-vessels and nerves. The form of the epithelial cell varies in different situations, and may be flattened, cuboid, spheroid, or columnar. (See Figs. 4, 5, and 6.) The form of the cell in all instances is related to some specific function. When arranged in layers or strata, the cells are cemented together by an intercellular substance.

FIG. 4.—EPITHELIAL CELLS OF RABBIT, ISOLATED. $\times 560$. 1. Squamous cells (mucous membrane of mouth). 2. Columnar cells (corneal epithelium). 3. Columnar cells, with cuticular border, *s* (intestinal epithelium). 4. Ciliated cells; *h*, cilia (bronchial epithelium).

The epithelial tissue forms a continuous covering for the surfaces of the body. The external investment (the skin) and the internal investment (the mucous membrane, which lines the entire alimentary canal and its associated body cavities) are both formed, in all situations, by the homogeneous basement membrane, covered with one or more layers of cells. All materials, therefore, whether nutritive, secretory, or excretory, must pass through epithelial cells before they can enter into the formation of the tissues or be eliminated from them. The nutrition of the epithelial tissue is maintained by the nutritive material derived from the blood diffusing itself into and through the basement membrane. Chemically, the epithelial cells of the epidermis—hair, nails, etc.—are composed of an albuminoid material

(keratin), a small quantity of water, and inorganic salts. In other situations, especially on the mucous membranes, the cells consist largely of mucin, in association with other albuminoids. The consistency of epithelium varies in accordance with external influences, such as the presence or absence of moisture, pressure, friction, etc. This is well seen in the skin of the palms of the hands and the soles of the feet—situations where it acquires its greatest density. In the alimentary canal, in the lungs, and in other cavities, where the reverse conditions prevail, the epithelium is extremely soft. Epithelial tissues also possess varying degrees of cohesion and elasticity—physical properties which enable them to resist considerable pressure and distention without having their physiologic integrity destroyed. Inasmuch as these tissues are poor conductors of heat, they assist in

preventing too rapid radiation of heat from the body, and coöperate with other mechanisms in maintaining the normal

FIG. 5.—STRATIFIED SQUAMOUS EPI-
THELIUM (LARYNX OF MAN).
× 240. 1. Columnar cells. 2.
Prickle-cells. 3. Squamous cells.

FIG. 6.—STRATIFIED CILIATED EPI-
THELIUM. × 560. From the res-
piratory nasal mucous membrane
of man. 1. Oval cells. 2. Spindle-
shaped cells. 3. Columnar cells.

temperature. The physiologic activity of all epithelial tissue depends on a due supply of nutritive material derived from the blood, which not only maintains its nutrition, but affords those materials out of which are formed the secretions of the glands, whether of the skin or mucous membrane.

Functions of Epithelial Tissue.—In succeeding chapters the form, chemic composition, and functions of epithelial cells will be considered in connection with the functions of the organs of which they constitute a part. In this connection it may be stated in a general way that the functions of the epithelial tissues are:

1. To serve on the surface of the body as a protective covering to the underlying structures which collectively form the true skin, thus

protecting them from the injurious influences of moisture, air, dust, microorganisms, etc., which would otherwise impair their vitality. Wherever continuous pressure is applied to the skin, as on the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, the epithelium increases in thickness and density, and thus prevents undue pressure on the nerves of the true skin. The density of the epidermis enables it to resist, within limits, the injurious influence of acids, alkalies, and poisons.

2. To promote absorption. Inasmuch as the skin and mucous membranes cover the surfaces of the body, it is obvious that all nutritive material entering the body must first traverse the epithelial tissue. Owing to their density, however, the epithelial cells covering the skin play but a feeble rôle as absorbing agents in man and the higher animals. The epithelium of the mucous membrane of the alimentary canal, particularly that of the small intestine, is especially adapted, from its situation, consistency, and properties, to play the chief rôle in the absorption of new materials into the blood. The epithelium lining the air-vesicles of the lungs is engaged in promoting the absorption of oxygen and the exhalation of carbon dioxide.
3. To form secretions and excretions. Each secretory gland connected with the surfaces of the body is lined by epithelial cells, which are actively concerned in the formation of the secretion peculiar to the gland. Each secretory organ is similarly provided with epithelial cells, which are engaged either in the production of the constituents of the excretion or in their removal from the blood.

2. THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES.

The **connective tissues**, in their collective capacity, constitute a framework which pervades the body in all directions, and, as the name implies, serve as a bond of connection between the individual parts, at the same time affording a basis of support for the muscle, nerve, and gland tissues. The connective-tissue group includes a number of varieties, among which may be mentioned the areolar, adipose, retiform, white fibrous, yellow elastic, cartilaginous and osseous. Notwithstanding their apparent diversity, they possess many points of similarity. They have a common origin, developing from the same embryonic material; they have much the same structure, passing imperceptibly into one another, and perform practically the same functions.

Areolar Tissue.—This variety is found widely distributed throughout the body. It serves to unite the skin and mucous membrane to the structures on which they rest; to form sheaths for the support of blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics; to unite into com-

pact masses the muscular tissue of the body, etc. Examined with the naked eye, it presents the appearance of being composed of bundles of fine fibers interlacing in every direction. In the embryonic state the elements of this form of connective tissue are united by a ground substance, gelatinous in character. In the adult state this substance shrinks and largely disappears, leaving intercommunicating spaces of varying size and shape, from which the tissue takes its name. When subjected to the action of various reagents, and examined microscopically, the bundles can be shown to consist of extremely delicate, colorless, transparent, wavy fibers, which are cemented together by a ground substance composed largely of mucin. Other fibers are also observed, which are distinguished by a straight course, a sharp, well-defined outline, a tendency to branch and unite with adjoining fibers, and to curl up at their extremities when torn. From their color and elasticity they are known as yellow elastic fibers.

FIG. 7.—ADIPOSE TISSUE.

Distributed throughout the meshes of the areolar tissue are found flattened, irregularly branched, or stellate corpuscles, connective-tissue corpuscles, plasma cells, and granule cells.

FIG. 8.—FAT-CELLS FROM THE AXILLA OF MAN. 1. The equator of the cell in focus. 2. The objective somewhat elevated. 3, 4. Forms changed by pressure. *p*. Traces of protoplasm in the vicinity of the flat nucleus *k*.

Adipose Tissue.—This tissue, which exists very generally throughout the body, though found most abundantly beneath the skin, around the kidneys, and in the bones, is practically but a modification of areolar tissue. In these situations it presents itself in small masses or lobules of varying size and shape, surrounded and penetrated by the fibers of connective tissue. (See Fig. 7.) Microscopic examination shows that these masses consist of small vesicles or cells, round, elliptical, or polyhedral in shape, depending somewhat on pressure. (See Fig. 8.) Each vesicle consists of a thin,

colorless, protoplasmic membrane, thickened at one point, in which a nucleus can usually be detected. This membrane incloses a globule of fat, which during life is in the liquid state. It is composed of olein, stearin, and palmitin. The origin of the fat is to be referred to a retrograde change in the protoplasmic material of the connective-tissue cells. When this protoplasm becomes rich in carbon and hydrogen, it is speedily converted into fat, which makes its appearance in the form of minute drops in different portions of the cell. As the drops accumulate, at the expense of the cell protoplasm, they gradually coalesce, until there remains but a thin stratum of the protoplasm, which forms the wall of the vesicle. Adipose tissue may, therefore, be regarded as areolar tissue, in which, and at the expense of some of its elements, fat is stored for the future needs of the organism. A diminution of food, especially of fat and carbohydrates, is promptly followed by an absorption of fat by the blood-vessels and by its transference to the tissues, where it is either utilized for tissue construction or for oxidation purposes. In the situations in which adipose tissue is found it seems, by its chemic and physical properties, to assist in the prevention of a too rapid radiation of heat from the body, to give form and roundness, and to diminish angularities, etc.

Retiform and adenoid tissue are also modifications of areolar tissue. The meshes of the former contain but little ground substance, its place being taken by fluids; the meshes of the latter contain large numbers of lymph corpuscles.

Fibrous Tissue.—This variety of connective tissue is widely distributed throughout the body. It constitutes almost entirely the ligaments around the joints, the tendons of the muscles, the membranes covering organs such as the heart, liver, nervous system, bones, etc. All fibrous tissue, wherever found, can be resolved into elementary bundles, which on microscopic examination are seen to consist of delicate, wavy, transparent, homogeneous fibers, which pursue an independent course, neither branching nor uniting with adjoining fibers. (See Fig. 9.) A small amount of ground substance serves to hold them together. Fibrous tissue is tough and inextensible, and in consequence is admirably adapted to fulfil various mechanical functions in the body. It is, however, quite pliant, bending easily in all directions. When boiled, fibrous tissue yields gelatin, a derivative of collagen.

FIG. 9. — CONNECTIVE-TISSUE BUNDLES OF VARIOUS THICKNESSES OF THE INTERMUSCULAR CONNECTIVE TISSUE OF MAN. $\times 240$.

Elastic Tissue.—The fibers of elastic tissue are usually associated in varying proportions with the white fibrous tissue; but in some structures—as the ligamentum nuchæ, the ligamenta subflava, the middle coat of the larger blood-vessels—the elastic fibers are almost the only elements present, and give to these structures a distinctly yellow appearance. The fibers throughout their course give off many branches, which unite with adjoining branches to form a more or less close network. As the name implies, these fibers are highly elastic, and are capable of being extended as much as 60 per cent. before breaking. (See Fig. 10.)

Cartilaginous Tissue.—This form of connective tissue differs from the preceding varieties chiefly in its density. As a rule, it is

FIG. 10.—ELASTIC FIBERS. $\times 560$. A. Fine elastic fibers, *f*, from intermuscular connective tissue of man; *b*, connective-tissue bundles swelled by treatment with acetic acid. B. Very thick elastic fibers, *f*, from ligamentum nuchæ of ox; *b*, connective-tissue bundles. C. From a cross-section of the ligamentum nuchæ of ox; *f*, elastic fibers; *b*, connective-tissue bundles.

firm in consistency, though somewhat elastic. It is opaque, bluish-white in color, though in thin sections translucent. All cartilaginous tissues consist of connective-tissue cells embedded in a solid ground substance. According to the amount and texture of the ground substance, three principal varieties may be distinguished:

1. *Hyaline cartilage*, in which the cells, relatively few in number, are embedded in an abundant quantity of ground substance (Fig. 11). The body of the cells is in many instances distinctly marked off from the surrounding substance by concentric lines or fibers, which form a capsule for the cell. Repeated division of the cell substance takes place, until the whole capsule is completely

occupied by daughter cells. The ground substance is pervaded by minute channels, which communicate on one hand with the spaces around the cells, and on the other with lymph-spaces in the connective tissue surrounding the cartilage. By means of these channels, nutritive fluid can permeate the entire structure. Hyaline cartilage is found on the ends of the long bones, where it enters into the formation of the joints; between the ribs and sternum, forming the costal cartilage, as well as in the nose and larynx.

2. *White fibro-cartilage*, the ground substance of which is pervaded by white fibers, arranged in bundles or layers, between which

FIG. 11.—HYALINE CARTILAGE. $\times 240$. A. Surface view of the ensiform process of frog, fresh; *p*, protoplasm of cartilage-cell, which entirely fills the lacuna; *k*, nucleus; *g*, hyaline matrix. B. Portion of cross-section of human rib-cartilage several days after death; examined in water: the protoplasm, *z*, of the cartilage-cells has withdrawn from the walls of the lacunæ, *h*; the nuclei are invisible. 1. Two cells within one capsule, *k*; *x*, a developing partition. 2. Five cartilage-cells within one capsule; the lowest cell has fallen out, and here only the empty-space is seen. 3. Capsule cut obliquely, and apparently thicker on one side. 4. Capsule not cut, but showing the cell within. *g*. Hyaline matrix transformed into rigid fibers, *f*.

are scattered the usual encapsulated cells. (See Fig. 12.) White fibro-cartilage is tough, resistant, but flexible, and is found in joints where strength and fixedness are required. Hence it is present between the vertebræ, forming the intervertebral discs, between the condyle of the lower jaw and the glenoid fossa, in the knee-joint, around the margins of the joint cavities, etc. In these situations it assists in maintaining the apposition of the bones, in giving a certain degree of mobility to the joints, and in diminishing the effects of shock and pressure imparted to the bones.

3. *Yellow fibro-cartilage*, the ground substance of which is pervaded by opaque, yellow elastic fibers, which form, by the interlacing of their branches, a complicated network, in the meshes of which

FIG. 12.—FROM A HORIZONTAL SECTION OF THE INTERVERTEBRAL DISC OF MAN. *g*. Fibrillar connective tissue. *z*. Cartilage-cell (nucleus invisible). *k*. Capsule surrounded by calcareous granules. $\times 240$.

are to be found the usual corpuscles. (See Fig. 13.) As these fibers are elastic, they impart to the cartilage a very considerable degree of elasticity. Yellow fibro-cartilage is well adapted, therefore, for entering into the formation of the external ear, epiglottis, Eustachian tube, etc.—structures which require for their functional activity a certain degree of flexibility and elasticity.

Osseous Tissue.—Osseous tissue, as distinguished from bone, is a member of the connective-tissue group, the ground substance of

which is permeated with insoluble lime salts, of which the phosphate and carbonate are the most abundant. Immersed in dilute solutions of hydrochloric acid, they can be converted into soluble salts and dis-

FIG. 13.—ELASTIC CARTILAGE. $\times 240$. 1. Portion of section of vocal process (anterior angle) of arytenoid cartilage of a woman thirty years old; the elastic substance in the form of granules. 2 and 3. Portions of sections of epiglottis of a woman sixty years old; a fine network of elastic fibers in 2, a coarser network in 3. *z*. Cartilage-cell, nucleus not visible; *k*, capsule.

solved out. The osseous matrix left behind is soft and pliable. When boiled, it yields gelatin.

A thin, transverse section of a decalcified bone, when examined microscopically, reveals a number of small, round, or oval openings,

which represent transverse sections of canals which run through the bone, for the most part in a longitudinal direction, though frequently anastomosing with one another. These so-called Haversian canals in the living state contain blood-vessels and lymphatics. (See Fig. 14.)

Around each Haversian canal is a series of concentric laminae, composed of white fibers. Between every two laminae are found small cavities (lacunae), from which radiate in all directions small canals (canaliculi), which communicate freely with one another. The Haversian canals, with their associated lacunae and canaliculi, form a system of intercommunicating passages, which circulate lymph destined for the nourishment of bone. Each lacuna contains the bone corpuscle, which bears a close resemblance to the

FIG. 14.—FROM A CROSS-SECTION OF A METACARP OF MAN. $\times 50$. The Haversian canals contain a little marrow (fat-cells). Resorption line at *h*.

usual branched connective-tissue corpuscle, and whose function appears to be the maintenance of the nutrition of the bone.

The surface of every bone in the living state is invested with a fibrous membrane, the periosteum, except where it is covered with cartilage. The inner surface of this membrane is loose in texture, and supports a fine plexus of capillary blood-vessels and numerous protoplasmic cells—the osteoblasts. As this layer is directly concerned in the formation of bone, it is spoken of as the *osteogenetic* layer.

A section of a bone shows that it is composed of two kinds of tissue—compact and cancellated. The compact is dense, resembling ivory, and is found on the outer portion of the bone; the cancellated is spongy, and appears to be made up of thin, bony plates, which intersect one another in all directions, and is found in greatest abun-

dance in the interior of the bones. The shaft of a long bone is hollow. This central cavity, which extends from one end of the bone to the other, as well as the interstices of the cancellated tissue, is filled in the living state with marrow. The marrow or medulla is composed of a connective-tissue framework supporting blood-vessels. In its meshes are to be found characteristic bone cells or osteoblasts, the function of which is supposed to be the formation of bone. In the long bones the marrow is yellow, from the presence in the connective-tissue corpuscle of fat globules, which arise through the transformation of the cell protoplasm. In the cancellated tissue, near the extremities of the long bones, this fatty transformation does not take place to the same extent, and the marrow appears red. The cells of the red marrow are believed to give birth indirectly to the red blood-corpuscles.

Physical and Physiologic Properties of Connective Tissues.

—Among the physical properties may be mentioned consistency, cohesion, and elasticity. Their *consistency* varies from the semi-liquid to the solid state, and depends on the quantity of water which enters into their composition. Their *cohesion*, except in the softer varieties, is very considerable, and offers great resistance to traction, pressure, torsion, etc. In all the movements of the body, in the contraction of muscles, in the performance of work, the consistence and cohesion of these tissues play most important rôles. Wherever the various forms of connective tissue are found, their chemic composition and structure are in relation to their functions. If traction be the preponderating force, the structure becomes fibrous, as in ligaments and tendons, and the cohesion greatest in the longitudinal direction. If pressure be exerted in all directions, as upon membranes, the fibers interlace and offer a uniform resistance. When pressure is exerted in a definite direction, as on the extremities of the long bones, the tissue becomes expanded and cancellated. The lamellæ of the cancellated tissue arrange themselves in curves which correspond to the direction of the greatest pressure or traction. Extensibility is not a characteristic feature, except in those forms containing an abundance of yellow elastic fibers. The elasticity is an essential factor in many physiologic actions. It not only opposes and limits forces of traction, pressure, torsion, etc., but on their cessation returns the tissues or organs to their original condition. Elasticity thus assists in maintaining the natural form and position of the organs by counterbalancing and opposing temporarily acting forces.

The Skeleton.—The connective tissues in their entirety constitute a framework which presents itself under two aspects: (1) As a solid, bony skeleton, situated in the trunk and limbs, affording attachment for muscles and viscera; (2) as a fine, fibrous skeleton, found everywhere throughout the body, connecting the various

viscera and affording support for the epithelial, muscle, and nerve tissues.

THE ANIMAL BODY AS A MACHINE FOR DOING WORK.

The animal body is characterized by the power of executing a great variety of movements, all of which have reference to a change of relation of one part of the body to another, or to a change of position relatively to the environment, as in the various acts of locomotion. Since in the execution of these movements the different parts are of necessity applied or directed to the overcoming of opposing forces in the environment, the animal is said to be doing work. In the conception of the animal body as a machine for the accomplishment of work the skeleton, the muscle and nerve tissues constitute the three primary mechanisms, all of which bear certain definite relations one to another.

CHAPTER V.

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE SKELETON.

The Skeleton is the passive framework of the body, the axial portion of which (the vertebral column, head, ribs, and sternum) imparts more or less fixity and rigidity, while the appendicular portions (the bones of the arms and legs) impart extreme mobility. The bones of the arms and legs more especially may be looked upon as constituting a system of levers, the fulcra of which, the points of rest around which they move, lie in the joints.

That a lever may be effective as an instrument for the accomplishment of work, it must not only be capable of moving around its fulcrum, but it must at the same time be acted on by two opposing forces, one passive, the other active. In the movement of the bony levers of the animal body, the *passive* forces are largely those connected with the environment, *e. g.*, gravity, cohesion, friction, elasticity, etc. The *active* forces by which these latter are opposed and overcome through the intermediation of the bony levers are found in the muscles attached to them. For the execution of all these movements, it is essential that the relation of the various portions of the bony skeleton to one another shall be such as to permit of movement while yet retaining close apposition. This is accomplished by the mechanical conditions which have been evolved at the points of union of bones, and which are technically known as articulations or joints.

A consideration of the body movements involves an account of (1) the static conditions, or those states of equilibrium in which the body is at rest—*e. g.*, standing, sitting; (2) the dynamic conditions, or those states of activity characterized by movement—*e. g.*, walking, running, etc. In this connection, however, only those physical and physiologic peculiarities of the skeleton, especially in its relation to joints, will be referred to, which underlie and determine both the static and dynamic states of the body.

Structure of Joints.—The structures entering into the formation of joints are:

1. *Bones*, the articulating surfaces of which are often more or less expanded, especially in the case of long bones, and at the same time variously modified and adapted to one another in accordance with the character and extent of the movements which there take place.

2. *Hyaline cartilage*, which is closely applied to the articulating end of each bone. The smoothness of this form of cartilage facilitates the movements of the opposing surfaces, while its elasticity diminishes the force of shocks and jars imparted to the bones during various muscular acts. In a number of joints, plates or discs of white fibro-cartilage are inserted between the surfaces of the bones.
3. *A synovial membrane*, which is attached to the edge of the hyaline cartilage, entirely inclosing the cavity of the joint. This membrane is composed largely of connective tissue, the inner surface of which is lined by endothelial cells, which secrete a clear, colorless, viscid fluid—the synovia. This fluid not only fills up the joint-cavity, but, flowing over the articulating surfaces, diminishes or prevents friction.
4. *Ligaments*,—tough, inelastic bands, composed of white fibrous tissue,—which pass from bone to bone in various directions on the different aspects of the joint. As white fibrous tissue is inextensible but pliant, ligaments assist in keeping the bones in apposition, and prevent displacement while yet permitting of free and easy movements.

Classification of Joints.—All joints may be divided, according to the extent and kind of movements permitted by them, into (1) diarthroses; (2) amphiarthroses; (3) synarthroses.

1. *Diarthroses*.—In this division of the joints are included all those which permit of free movement. In the majority of instances the articulating surfaces are mutually adapted to each other. If the articulating surface of one bone is convex, the opposing but corresponding surface is concave. Each surface, therefore, represents a section of a sphere or a cylinder, which latter arises by rotation of a line around an axis in space. According to the number of axes around which the movements take place all diarthrodial joints may be divided into:

1. *Uniaxial Joints*.—In this group the convex articulating surface is a segment of a cylinder or cone, to which the opposing surface more or less completely corresponds. In such a joint the single axis of rotation, though nearly, is not exactly at right angles to the long axis of the bone, and hence the movements—flexion and extension—which take place are not confined to one plane. Joints of this character—*e. g.*, the elbow, knee, ankle, the phalangeal joints of the fingers and toes—are, therefore, termed *ginglymi*, or hinge-joints. Owing to the obliquity of their articulating surfaces, the elbow and ankle are *cochleoid* or *screw-ginglymi*. Inasmuch as the axes of these joints on the opposite sides of the body are not coincident, the right elbow and left ankle are right-handed screws; the left elbow and right ankle,

left-handed screws. In the knee-joint the form and arrangement of the articulating surfaces are such as to produce that modification of a simple hinge known as a *spiral hinge*, or *helicoid*. As the articulating surfaces of the condyles of the femur increase in convexity from before backward, and as the inner condyle is longer than the outer, and, therefore, represents a spiral surface, the line of translation or the movement of the leg is also a spiral movement. During flexion of the leg there is a simultaneous inward rotation around a vertical axis passing through the outer condyle of the femur; during extension a reverse movement takes place. Moreover, the slightly concave articulating surfaces of the tibia do not revolve around a single fixed transverse axis, as in the elbow-joint, for during flexion they slide backward, during extension forward, around a shifting axis, which varies in position with the point of contact.

In some few instances the axis of rotation of the articulating surface is parallel with rather than transverse to the long axis of the bone, and as the movement then takes place around a more or less conic surface, the joint is termed a *trochoid* or pulley—*e. g.*, the odonto-atlantal and the radio-ulnar. In the former the collar formed by the atlas and its transverse ligament rotates around the vertical odontoid process of the axis. In the latter the head of the radius revolves around its own long axis upon the ulna, giving rise to the movements of pronation and supination of the hand. The axis around which these two movements take place is continued through the head of the radius to the styloid process of the ulna.

2. **Biaxial Joints.**—In this group the articulating surfaces are unequally curved, though intersecting each other. When the surfaces lie in the same direction, the joint is termed an *ovoid* joint—*e. g.*, the radio-carpal and the atlanto-occipital. As the axes of these surfaces are vertical to each other, the movements permitted by the former joint are flexion, extension, adduction, and abduction, combined with a slight amount of circumduction; the latter joint permits of flexion and extension of the head, with inclination to either side. When the surfaces do not take the same direction, the joint, from its resemblance to the surfaces of a saddle, is termed a *saddle-joint*—*e. g.*, the trapezio-metacarpal. The movements permitted by this joint are also flexion, extension, adduction, abduction, and circumduction.
3. **Polyaxial Joints.**—In this group the convex articulating surface is a segment of a sphere, which is received by a socket formed by the opposing articulating surface. In such a joint, termed an *enarthrodial* or ball-and-socket joint,—*e. g.*, the shoulder-joint, hip-joint,—the distal bone revolves around an indefinite number

of axes, all of which intersect one another at the center of rotation. For simplicity, however, the movement may be described as taking place around axes in the three ordinal planes—viz., a transverse, a sagittal, and a vertical axis. The movements around the transverse axis are termed flexion and extension; around the sagittal axis, adduction and abduction; around the vertical axis, rotation. When the bone revolves around the surface of an imaginary cone, the apex of which is the center of rotation and the base the curve described by the hand, the movement is termed circumduction.

2. *Amphiarthroses*.—In this division are included all those joints which permit of but slight movement—*e. g.*, the intervertebral, the interpubic, and the sacro-iliac joints. The surfaces of the opposing bones are united and held in position largely by the intervention of a firm, elastic disc of fibro-cartilage. Each joint is also strengthened by ligaments.
3. *Synarthroses*.—In this division are included all those joints in which the opposing surfaces of the bones are immovably united, and hence do not permit of any movement—*e. g.*, the joints between the bones of the skull.

The Vertebral Column.—In all static and dynamic states of the body the vertebral column plays a most essential rôle. Situated in the middle of the back of the trunk, it forms the foundation of the entire skeleton. It is composed of a series of superimposed bones, termed vertebræ, which increase in size from above downward as far as the brim of the pelvic cavity. Superiorly, it supports the skull; laterally, it affords attachment for the ribs, which in turn support the weight of the upper extremities; below, it rests upon the pelvic bones, which transmit the weight of the body to the inferior extremities. The bodies of the vertebræ are united one to another by tough elastic discs of fibro-cartilage, which, collectively, constitute about one-quarter of the length of the vertebral column. The vertebræ are held together by ligaments situated on the anterior and posterior surfaces of their bodies, and by short, elastic ligaments between the neural arches and processes. These structures combine to render the vertebral column elastic and flexible, and enable it to resist and diminish the force of shocks communicated to it.

The amphiarthrodial character of the intervertebral joints endows the entire column with certain forms of movement which are necessary to the performance of many body activities. While the range of movement between any two vertebræ is slight, the sum total of movement of the entire series of vertebræ is considerable. In different regions of the column the character, as well as the range of movement, varies in accordance with the form of the vertebræ and the inclination of their articular processes. In the cervical and lumbar

regions extension and flexion are freely permitted, though the former is greater in the cervical, the latter in the lumbar region, especially between the fourth and fifth vertebræ. Lateral flexion takes place in all portions of the column, but is particularly marked in the cervical region. A rotatory movement of the column as a whole takes place through an angle of about twenty-eight degrees. This is most evident in the lower cervical and dorsal regions.

The skeleton may, therefore, be regarded as a highly developed framework, which determines not only the form of the body, and affords support and protection to the various softer organs and tissues, but also, through the mobility of its joints, permits of a great variety of complicated movements.

CHAPTER VI.

GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY OF MUSCLE-TISSUE.

The **muscle-tissue**, which closely invests the bones of the body and which is familiar to all as the flesh of animals, is the immediate cause of the active movements of the body. This tissue is grouped in masses of varying size and shape, which are technically known as muscles. The majority of the muscles of the body are connected with the bones of the skeleton in such a manner that, by an alteration in their form, they can change not only the position of the bones with reference to one another, but can also change the individual's relation to surrounding objects. They are, therefore, the active organs of both motion and locomotion, in contradistinction to the bones and joints, which are but passive agents in the performance of the corresponding movements. In addition to the muscle masses which are attached to the skeleton, there are also other collections of muscle-tissue surrounding cavities such as the stomach, intestine, blood-vessels, etc., which impart to their walls motility, and so influence the passage of material through them.

Muscles produce movement of the structures to which they are attached by the property with which they are endowed of changing their shape, shortening or contracting under the influence of a stimulus transmitted to them from the nervous system. Muscles are divided into:

1. Voluntary muscles, comprising those the activity of which is called forth by an act or effort of volition.
2. Involuntary muscles, comprising those the activity of which is entirely independent of the volition.

The voluntary muscles are also known from their attachment to the skeleton as skeletal, and from their microscopic appearance as striped or striated muscles. Though for the most part these muscles are red, there are certain muscles in man and other animals which are pale in color. The involuntary muscles, from their relation to the viscera of the body, are known also as visceral, and from their microscopic appearance as plain, smooth, or non-striated muscles.

THE VOLUNTARY OR SKELETAL MUSCLE.

All skeletal muscles consist of a central fleshy portion, the body or belly, provided at either extremity with a tendon in the form of a

cord or membrane. The body is the active, contractile region, the source of the movement; the tendon is the inactive region, the passive transmitter of the movement to the bones.

A skeletal muscle is a complex organ consisting of a framework of connective tissue, supporting muscle-fibers, blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics. The general body of the muscle is covered by a dense layer of connective tissue, the epi-mysium, which blends with and partly forms the tendon. From the under surface of this covering, septa of connective tissue pass inward, dividing and grouping the

fibers into larger and smaller bundles, termed fasciculi. The fasciculi, invested by a special sheath, the peri-mysium, are prismatic in shape and on cross-section present an irregular outline. The muscle-fibers composing the fasciculi are separated one from another and supported by a very delicate connective tissue, the endo-mysium. The connective tissue thus surrounding and penetrating the muscle binds the fibers into a distinct organ and affords support to all remaining structures (Fig. 15).

FIG. 15.—FROM A CROSS-SECTION OF THE ADDUCTOR MUSCLE OF A RABBIT. *P*, Peri-mysium, containing two blood-vessels, at *g*; *m*, muscle-fibers; many are shrunk and between them the endo-mysium, *p*, can be seen; at *x* the section of muscle-fiber has fallen out. $\times 60$.

Histology of the Skeletal Muscle-fiber.

—The muscle-fibers for the most part are arranged parallel one to another and in a direction corresponding to the long axis of the muscle. They vary in length from 30 to 40 millimeters and in breadth from

20 to 30 micromillimeters. There are exceptional fibers, however, which have a much greater length. As the fibers have but a limited length in the vast majority of muscles, each end, more or less pointed or beveled, is united to adjoining fibers by cement. In this way a muscle is increased in length.

When examined with the microscope, the muscle-fiber is seen to be cylindric or prismatic in shape and to consist of a thin transparent membrane, the sarcolemma, in which is contained the true muscle or sarcous substance. The sarcolemma is elastic and adapts itself

to all changes of form the sarcous substance undergoes. Beneath the sarcolemma there are several nuclei surrounded by granular material. Each fiber also presents a series of transverse bands alternately dim and bright which give to it a striated appearance. If the bright bands are examined with high magnifying powers, each one is seen to be crossed by a fine dark line which at the time of its discovery was regarded as the optic expression of a membrane attached laterally to the sarcolemma. It has since been resolved into a row of granules (Fig. 16).

FIG. 16.—MUSCLE-FIBER OF A RABBIT.
a. Dark band. b. Light band.
c. Intermediate line. n. Nucleus.

The muscle-fiber also presents a longitudinal striation which indicates that it is composed of finer elements placed side by side, termed fibrillæ. The fibrillæ extend throughout the entire length of the fiber, though they are not of uniform thickness (Fig. 17). That

FIG. 17.—A. Diagram of arrangement of the contractile substance according to the view of Rollett; the granular figures represent the contractile elements, the intervening light areas the sarcoplasm. B. Small muscle-fiber of man; the corresponding parts in the two figures are indicated; *t*, *i*, *l*, respectively the transverse, the intermediate, and lateral discs. *n*. Muscle nuclei.—(*Piersol*.)

portion of the fibril corresponding in position to the dim band is thick, prismatic, or rod-like in shape, and termed a sarcostyle; that portion corresponding in position to the bright band is extremely thin and narrow and presents at its middle a slight enlargement or granule. The fibrillæ are embedded in a clear transparent fluid which, from its supposed nutritive character, is termed sarcoplasm. The diminution in caliber of the fibrillæ at different levels permits of the accumulation and storage of a larger amount of nutritive material than could otherwise be the case. It is for this reason that the fiber at these points presents a brighter appearance.

When the muscle-fiber is examined under crossed Nichol prisms, the dim band appears bright and the bright band appears dim against a dark background, indi-

cating that the former is doubly refracting or anisotropic, the latter singly refracting or isotropic.

The Blood-supply.—Muscles in the physiologic condition require for the maintenance of their activity a large amount of nutritive material. This is obtained from the blood furnished by the blood-vessels. The vascular supply to the muscles is very great and the disposition of the capillary vessels with reference to the muscle-fiber is very characteristic. The arterial vessels, after entering the muscle, are supported by the peri-mysium; in this situation they give off short, transverse branches, which immediately break up into a capillary network of rectangular shape within which the muscle-fibers are contained. The muscle-fiber, in intimate relation with the capillary, is bathed with lymph derived from it. Its contractile

FIG. 18.—RELATION OF THE BLOOD-VESSEL TO THE MUSCLE-FIBER.

substance, however, is separated from the lymph by its own investing membrane, through which all interchange of nutritive and waste materials must take place. The relation of the capillary vessel to the muscle-fiber is shown in Fig. 18.

The nutritive material passes through the capillary wall into the lymph-space, then through the sarcolemma into the interior of the fiber, where it comes into relation with the living muscle material. (The waste products arising in the muscle as a result of nutritive changes pass in the reverse direction into the blood, by which they are carried away to eliminating or-

gans. Lymphatics are present in muscle, but confined to the connective tissue, in the spaces of which they take their origin.

The Nerve-supply.—The nerves which carry the stimuli to a muscle enter near its geometric center. Many of the fibers pass directly to the muscle-fibers with which they are connected; others are distributed to blood-vessels. Every muscle-fiber is supplied with a special nerve-fiber except in those instances where the nerve-trunks entering a muscle do not contain as many fibers as the muscle. In such cases the nerve-fibers divide near their termination until the number of branches equals the number of muscle-fibers. The

individual muscle-fiber is penetrated near its center by the nerve where it terminates; the ends being practically free from nerve influence. The stimulus that comes to the muscle-fiber acts primarily upon its center, the effect of which then travels in both directions to the ends. The manner in which the nerve-fibers terminate in muscle will be more fully described in connection with the histology of the nerve tissue. #

CHEMIC COMPOSITION OF MUSCLE.

The chemic composition of living muscle is but imperfectly understood owing to the fact that shortly after death some of its constituents undergo a spontaneous coagulation and for the reason that the methods employed for analysis also tend to alter its composition. To human muscle, the following average percentage composition has been given:

Water, -----	73.5	---
Proteids, including those of sarcolemma, connective-tissue, pigments, -----	18.02	
Gelatin, -----	1.99	
Fat, -----	2.27	
Extractives, -----	0.22	
Inorganic salts, -----	3.12.	(Halliburton.)

(The composition of muscles of different animals, consumed as foods, will be found in the chapter on Foods.)

When fresh muscle is freed from fat and connective tissue, frozen, rubbed up in a mortar, and expressed through linen, a slightly yellow syrupy alkaline or neutral liquid is obtained which has been termed muscle-plasma. This fluid at normal temperatures coagulates spontaneously, the phenomena resembling in many respects those observed in the coagulation of blood-plasma. The coagulum subsequently contracts and squeezes out an acid muscle-serum. The coagulated proteid is known as myosin and belongs to the class of globulins. Inasmuch as it is not present in living muscle and only makes its appearance under conditions not strictly physiologic, it is regarded as a derivative of a pre-existing proteid which has been termed myosinogen. According to Halliburton, the proteids of living muscle are four in number, distinguished by their varying solubilities in different salts and by the varying temperatures at which they coagulate. From muscle-plasma may then be obtained: (1) Para-myosinogen and (2) myosinogen, the former coagulating at 47° C., the latter at 56° C. It is myosinogen which is converted into myosin under the influence of some special ferment, though both enter into the formation of the muscle-clot. From the muscle-serum may also be obtained at 68° C. a globulin body termed myoglobulin and a small quantity of myoalbumin. Among the proteids may be men-

Plasma
on Coagulation

tioned hemoglobin, which gives the color to the muscles. Spectroscopic investigation reveals the presence of a special pigment, myohematin, which is supposed to have a respiratory function, inasmuch as its absorption bands change by oxidation and reduction.

Among the extractives containing nitrogen may be mentioned creatin, creatinin, xanthin, carnin, urea, uric acid, carnic acid, etc. Among the extractives free of nitrogen, glycogen, dextrose, inosite, lactic acid, fat, are the most important. Inorganic salts are relatively abundant, of which potassium is the most abundant among the bases, and phosphoric acid among the acids.

THE PHYSICAL AND PHYSIOLOGIC PROPERTIES OF MUSCLE-TISSUE.

Consistency.—The consistency of muscle-tissue during life varies considerably in accordance with different states of the muscle. In a state of tension it is hard and resistant; in the absence of tension it is soft and fluctuating to the sense of touch. Tension alone gives rise to hardness.

Cohesion.—The cohesion of a muscle is largely dependent on the quantity of connective tissue it contains. A band of fresh human muscle one square centimeter in cross-section was able to resist a weight of 14 kilograms without rupture (McAlister). Cohesion resists the forces of traction and pressure.

Elasticity.—Muscle, in common with many other organic as well as inorganic substances, is capable of being extended beyond the normal length through the action of external forces and of resuming the normal length when these forces cease to act. All such bodies are said to be elastic; and the greater the variations between the natural and acquired lengths, the greater is their elasticity said to be. Muscle therefore possesses extensibility and elasticity.* If the muscle of a frog, preferably the sartorius, the fibers of which are arranged in a practically parallel manner, be fastened at one extremity by a clamp, and then extended by a series of successive weights which differ by a common increment, it will be found that the extensibility of muscle does not follow the law of elasticity as determined for inorganic bodies; *i. e.*, directly proportional to the weight and to the length of the body extended; but that while increasing in length with each successive weight, the increase is always in a diminishing ratio. Thus, for example, as shown in Fig. 19: The extension produced by 5 grams is 5 millimeters, that produced by 10 grams is only 4 millimeters more, and so on with additional

*By this latter term is here meant the power by virtue of which the muscle returns to its original length, and is used synonymously with perfect retractibility.

weights until the increase in passing from 25 to 30 grams is only 1 millimeter. The extensibility is thus shown to be proportionately greater with small than with larger weights. It is, however, actually greater with the larger weights. The extension curve A B formed by joining the ends of the muscle approximates that of a parabola. The muscle in returning to its original length also shows a variation from the behavior of inorganic bodies. With the successive removal of the weights, the elasticity of the muscle asserts itself with gradually increasing energy until its normal length is nearly, if not entirely, regained (Fig. 20). Though it is usually stated that the elasticity of muscle is incomplete, it must be borne in mind that the experiments have usually been made on muscles removed from the body, deprived of blood and nerve influences, and hence under abnormal conditions. It is highly probable that in the living body muscles possess perfect elasticity which enables them to completely return to their normal length after extension. The extension and elastic recoil of muscle depends on the maintenance of physiologic conditions. If the nutrition is impaired by fatigue, deficient blood-supply, or any pathologic condition, the elasticity is at once impaired.)

FIG. 19.—EXTENSION CURVE OF MUSCLE.—(Gad.)

FIG. 20.—CURVE OF ELASTICITY PRODUCED BY CONTINUOUS EXTENSION AND RECOIL OF A FROG'S MUSCLE. *o* *x*. Abscissa before; *x'*, after extension.

Tonicity.—This is a property possessed by all muscles in the body in consequence of being stretched to a slight extent beyond their normal length. This may be due to the action of antagonistic muscles or to their mode of growth, the muscles growing somewhat more slowly than the bones to which they are attached. That muscles are so stretched is shown by the shortening which at once takes place when their tendons are divided. This muscle tonus or tension is closely connected with the elasticity and

plays an important rôle in muscle contraction; being always on the stretch, the muscle loses no time in acquiring that degree of tension necessary to immediate action on the bone to which it is attached. The working power of a muscle is also increased by the presence, within limits, of some resistance to the act of contraction. Accord-

ing to Marey, the amount of work is considerably increased when the muscle energy is transmitted by an elastic body to the mass to be moved, while at the same time the shock of the contraction is lessened. The position of a passive limb is the resultant also of the elastic tension of antagonistic groups of muscles.

Another explanation for the tonicity of muscle is found in the fact that the skeletal muscles of the body receive continuously nerve impulses from the thermogenic centers. The chief function of the tonicity would thus be the production of heat, other functions which the tone subserves being merely secondary.

Irritability, Contractility.—These are terms employed to denote that property of muscle-tissue in virtue of which it responds by a change of form, becoming shorter and thicker on the application of any external agent which acts as a stimulus. On the withdrawal of the stimulus the muscle again undergoes a change of form, becoming longer and narrower, and returns to its original condition. All muscles which possess this capability are irritable and contractile; and all agents which excite the muscle to action are stimuli. The rapid change of form which a highly irritable muscle undergoes in response to the action of a stimulus of short duration is usually termed a twitch or pulsation. With appropriate apparatus it can be shown that the muscle at the time of the twitch becomes warmer and exhibits electric phenomena. The muscle is therefore (an apparatus for the conversion of potential into kinetic energy, viz., heat, electricity, and mechanic motion.)

Though usually associated with the activity of the nervous system, and to some extent dependent on it, irritability is nevertheless an independent endowment of the muscle and persists for a longer or shorter period, as shown by many experiments, after all nerve connections have been destroyed. Among the proofs which may be presented in support of this view is the following: The introduction of the drug curara into the body of an animal produces in a short time complete paralysis. Experiment has shown that curara suspends the conductivity of the intramuscular terminations of the nerve-fiber and thus separates the muscle entirely from the nerve. Though the animal is incapable of executing a single movement, its muscles respond promptly on the application of a stimulus. Moreover, portions of muscles exhibit irritability in which there is no trace of nerve structure. This is the case with the ends of the sartorius muscle of the frog and the anterior end of the retractor muscle of the eyeball of the cat. These and other facts demonstrate the independence of muscle irritability.

In the living body irritability and nutritive activity, with which it is closely associated, are maintained by a due supply of oxygen, of nutritive material, the removal of waste products, and a nor-

mal temperature. The muscles of the cold-blooded animals, and especially the frog, retain their irritability for a much longer period than the muscles of the warm-blooded animals. This is the case also with the individual muscles after removal from the body of the animal. The reason for this is found in all probability in the difference in the rate of their nutritive activities and in the quantity of nutritive material stored up in their cells. The duration of the irritability of isolated muscles can be considerably prolonged by keeping them moist.

Muscle Stimuli.—Though consisting of a highly irritable tissue, muscles do not possess spontaneity of action. They require for the manifestation of their characteristic activity the application of a stimulus. In the living body all contractions, at least of the skeletal muscles, occurring under normal or physiologic conditions are caused by the action of "nerve impulses" transmitted by the nerves from the central nervous system to the muscles. The nerve impulse is the normal or physiologic stimulus. After removal from the body and freed from nerve connections muscles can be excited to action by various agents—*e. g.*, mechanic, chemic, thermic, electric. These are artificial or non-physiologic stimuli.

1. *Mechanic Stimuli.*—Cutting, pinching, sharply tapping the muscle will cause it to contract, providing the stimulus has sufficient intensity. With each stimulation a short, fleeting contraction ensues. If repeated with sufficient rapidity, a series of continuous but irregular pulsations are produced.
2. *Chemic Stimuli.*—Various chemic substances in solution will excite single or continuous pulsations if the strength of the solution is not such as to destroy at once the irritability. They owe their efficiency as stimuli to the rapidity with which they alter the composition of the muscle-substance. Among these may be mentioned solutions of potassium and sodium, weak solutions of the mineral and organic acids, ammonium vapor, distilled water, glycerin, and sugar.
3. *Thermic Stimuli.*—The application of a heated object, such as a hot wire, causes the muscle to rapidly contract.
4. *Electric Stimuli.*—The most efficient stimulus and the one least injurious to the tissue is the electric current. Either the constant or the induced current may be used.*

The Constant Current.—If the ends of the wires in connection with an electric cell be provided with non-polarizable electrodes and the

* Since the study of the physiologic properties of both muscle-tissue and nerve-tissue involves the employment of electricity as a stimulus, it becomes necessary for the student to familiarize himself with certain forms of apparatus by which it is generated, controlled, and applied. For the purpose of not interrupting the continuity of the text this information is embodied in an appendix. The facts therein contained should be mastered by the student.

latter placed on opposite ends of a freshly prepared sartorius muscle of a frog which has been previously curarized, it will be found on closing or making the circuit that the muscle will exhibit a short quick pulsation. During the actual passage of the current, especially if it is weak, there may be no apparent change in the muscle. If the current is strong, the muscle may, on the contrary, remain in a state of continuous contraction. With the opening or breaking of the current the muscle at once relaxes, or perhaps again contracts and then relaxes. The extent of the contraction depends mainly on the strength of the current, being greater with strong, less with weak currents. When the current is sufficiently strong to elicit both making and breaking contractions, it is found that the contraction occurring on the make or closure of the circuit is always greater than that occurring on the break or opening of the circuit. Moreover, it has been shown in many ways that the contraction occurring on the closure of the circuit has its origin at the point where the current is leaving the muscle—*i. e.*, in the immediate neighborhood of the negative pole or cathode—and propagates itself to the opposite extremity; while the contraction occurring on the opening of the circuit has its origin at the point where the current is entering the muscle, *i. e.*, in the neighborhood of the positive pole or anode.

The Induced Current.—If the primary spiral of the inductorium be connected with an electric cell and the secondary spiral be connected with a muscle, it will be found that the current induced in the secondary circuit, both on the make and break of the primary, will also cause the muscle to sharply and rapidly pulsate if the two spirals are sufficiently near each other. Observation, however, makes it evident that the pulsation occurring with the break of the primary circuit is more energetic than that occurring with the make, a result the opposite of that obtained with the constant current. This is not due to any difference in the electricity, however, but to peculiarities in the construction of the inductorium. When the primary circuit is interrupted with sufficient frequency, as it can be by throwing into the circuit Neef's hammer or some other form of interrupter, the contractions excited by the induced currents may be made to succeed one another so rapidly that they become fused together, producing a *spasm* or *tetanus* of the muscle. The rapidity with which the induced current appears and disappears, its brief duration, the ease with which its strength can be regulated, combine to render it a most efficient stimulus for either muscle or nerve.

Conductivity.—All muscle protoplasm possesses conductivity. The change excited in a muscle-fiber by the arrival of a nerve impulse is at once conducted with great rapidity in opposite directions to the end of the fiber; the advance of the excitation process is immediately succeeded by the contraction process, the change of form

which constitutes the contraction. With the disappearance of the former, the latter also disappears and the muscle resumes its previous passive condition. There is no evidence, however, that the excitation process travels transversely,—that is, into adjoining fibers,—being prevented from doing so by the presence of the limiting membranes, the sarcolemmata. The fact that each muscle-fiber receives its own, or at least a branch of a nerve-fiber, and hence its own nerve impulse or stimulus, would also indicate that the excitation process can not be conducted longitudinally into adjoining fibers, or at least with sufficient rapidity for the purposes of ordinary muscle actions. Nevertheless if a long muscle, such as the sartorius, from a curarized frog be stimulated at one end with an induced electric current, the excitation and the contraction processes will be conducted with extreme rapidity to the opposite end of the muscle. The rapidity of conduction in human muscles has been estimated at from 10 to 13 meters per second, and in frog's muscle at from 3 to 4.5 meters per second. The contraction process, the thickening of the muscle, is termed the contraction wave. As it is the result of the excitation process and immediately succeeds it, its rate of conduction must be the same as that given above. With appropriate apparatus the duration of the wave at any given point has been shown to be, in the frog's muscle, one-tenth of a second and its length three-tenths of a meter.

PHENOMENA ATTENDING A MUSCLE CONTRACTION.

PHYSICAL PHENOMENA.

The most obvious change in a muscle during the contraction is that relating to its form. The muscle not only becomes shorter, but at the same time thicker. The extent to which it may shorten when unopposed may amount to 30 per cent. or more of its original length. The increase in thickness practically compensates for the diminution in length, for there is no observable diminution in volume. The change in form of the entire muscle results from a corresponding change of form of its individual fibers as determined by microscopic examination, each of which becomes shorter and thicker. The successive changes in both the muscle and the individual fibers are represented in Fig. 21.

When the contraction begins, the dim band increases and the bright band diminishes in width. This Engelmann attributes to the passage of fluid material from the bright into the dim band. At the time of relaxation there is a return of this material and the bands assume their original shape and volume. As the contraction wave reaches its maximum the optic properties of the bright and dim bands change. The former now becomes darker and less transparent

until at the crest of the wave it assumes the appearance of a distinct dark band; the latter now becomes clear and bright in comparison. This change in the appearance of the fiber is due to an increase in refrangibility of the bright and a decrease in the refrangibility of the dim band coincident with the passage of the fluid from the former into the latter. There is at the height of the contraction a complete reversal in the positions of the striations. At a certain stage between the beginning and the crest of the wave the striæ almost entirely disappear, giving to the fiber an appearance of homogeneity. There is, however, no change in refractive power as shown by the polarizing apparatus. When the contraction wave has reached the stage of greatest intensity, there is a reversal of the above phenomena as the fiber returns to its former condition, that of relaxation.

FIG. 21.—SHOWING THE CHANGES IN A MUSCLE AND MUSCLE-FIBER DURING CONTRACTION.

Elasticity.—During the contraction of a muscle there is a greater or less alteration in its elasticity, as shown by the fact that it is extended to a greater degree by the same weight in the active than in the passive condition. The degree to which the extensibility is increased and the elasticity decreased is dependent on the amount of the resisting force. These facts, as determined experimentally, are represented in Fig. 22. Let AB and $A'b$ represent the length of the normal unweighted muscle, passive and active states respectively; the line BB' , the extension curve of the passive muscle produced by successive weights, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 grams, differing by a common increment; the line bB' , the extension curve of the active contracted muscle when weighted with the same weights; $A'B'$ the length of the muscle when the weight is sufficiently great to prevent shortening. It will be observed from these facts that while the muscle is extended in both the passive and active states by corresponding

weights, the extension during the latter is progressively greater, until with a given weight the length of the muscle is the same. Under such circumstances, there being no shortening of the muscle, the energy of its contraction manifests itself physically merely as tension. In the successive actions of the muscle represented in the same figure there is to be observed also a combination of a change of length and

FIG. 22.—EXTENSION CURVES: B B', of the resting; b B', of the contracting muscle.

a change of tension, the ratio of the one to the other being determined by the amount of the supported weights. When the weight is slight in amount, the shortening of the muscle reaches a maximum and the tension a minimum; when the weight is large in amount, the reverse conditions obtain.

THE CONTRACTION PROCESS. METHODS OF INVESTIGATION.

The contraction of a muscle as it takes place in the living body and under normal physiologic conditions is a complex act, persisting for a variable length of time in accordance with the number of stimuli transmitted to it in a given unit of time, and as determined experimentally is the resultant of the fusion of a greater or less number of separate and individual contractions or pulsations. To this enduring contraction the term *tetanus* has been given. With the aid of appropriate apparatus it has become possible to obtain and record single muscle contractions, to analyze and decompose them into their constituent elements, or to combine them in such a manner as to produce practically a normal physiologic tetanus. As in the experimental study of the phenomena of a muscle contraction it frequently becomes necessary to remove the muscle from the body of the animal, the muscles of warm-blooded animals are not well adapted for this purpose, owing to the rapid alteration in composition they undergo,

with a consequent loss of irritability, when deprived of their normal blood-supply. The excised muscles of cold-blooded animals, particularly of the frog,—in which, owing to the relatively slow rate of the nutritive activities, the irritability and contractility endure for a long period of time, even though deprived of blood,—are particularly valuable for experimental studies. The muscles generally employed are the gastrocnemius, the sartorius, and the hyoglossus. If kept at a normal temperature and moistened with 0.6 per cent. solution of sodium chlorid, such a muscle will contract for a long period of time on the application of any form of stimulus, but especially the electric.

Graphic Record of a Muscle Contraction.—Inasmuch as the changes in the form of a muscle during a single contraction take place with extreme rapidity, their succession, peculiarities, and time re-

FIG. 23.—MYOGRAPH. K. Recording cylinder. M. Moist chamber. L. Recording lever. W. Weight. I. Induction coil.

lations cannot be determined with any degree of accuracy by the unaided eye. This difficulty can largely be overcome by the employment of the graphic method, the principle of which consists in recording the movements by means of a pen on some appropriate moving and receiving surface. To accomplish this object the muscle is attached at one extremity by a clamp to a firm support, and at the other extremity to a weighted lever, which is, however, sufficiently light to enable it to take up, reproduce, and magnify its movements. The end of the lever provided with a pen is applied to a smooth surface, such as glazed paper on a cylinder or plate, and covered with lamp-black. If the surface is stationary, the contraction is recorded as a vertical line; if it is placed in movement at a uniform rate by clock-

work, the contraction is recorded in the form of a curve, the width of the arms of which will depend on the rate of movement. The time relations of the phases of the contraction can be obtained by placing beneath the lever a pen attached to an electro-magnet thrown into action by a turning-fork vibrating in hundredths of a second. In order to determine the rapidity with which the contraction follows the stimulation, it is essential that the moment of the latter be also recorded. This is accomplished by an automatic key, the opening or closing of which develops the stimulus which excites the muscle. A combination of these different appliances constitutes a *myograph* and the curve of contraction a *myogram*. (See Fig. 23.)

The Isotonic Myogram.—With the object of obtaining a curve of successive changes in the length of a muscle during a single contraction and at the same time avoiding changes in tension, the weight

FIG. 24.—THE ISOTONIC MYOGRAM.

attached to the lever should be applied close to its axis, a mechanic condition which practically maintains a uniform tension throughout the contraction. To this method the term "isotonic" has been given and the curve so obtained an isotonic myogram.*

The Character of an Isotonic Myogram.—With the muscle arranged as previously described and stimulated directly with a single induction shock, the contraction will be recorded in the form of a curve similar to that represented in Fig. 24, in which the line *t t* represents the abscissa of time; *a*, the moment of stimulation; and *b c d*, the degree of shortening at each successive moment. The undulating line shows the time relations, the distance from crest to crest represent-

* In the ordinary method of recording a muscular movement, *i. e.*, with the weight attached to the lever immediately beneath the muscle and known as the "loaded method," a certain momentum is imparted to the weight, which continues after the muscle has ceased to act, both when shortening and relaxing, and so imparts to the recording lever additional movements which vitiate the true character of the curve.

ing hundredths of a second. The curve may be divided into three portions:

1. A short but measurable portion between the point of stimulation and the first evidence of the shortening, a b, known as the "latent period." The duration of this period for the skeletal muscle of the frog was originally determined to be 0.01 second, but with the employment of more accurate apparatus it has been reduced to 0.0025 to 0.004 second. During this period it is supposed that certain chemic changes are taking place preparatory to the exhibition of the movement. The duration of the latent period is influenced by a variety of conditions, *e. g.*, temperature, fatigue, strength of stimulus, etc.
2. An ascending portion, b c, the contraction or period of increasing energy. The contraction as shown by the character of the curve begins slowly, then proceeds rapidly, and again slowly as the shortening reaches its maximum. The contraction may be said to end when the tangent to the curve becomes parallel with the abscissa.
3. A descending portion, c d, the relaxation or period of decreasing energy. The relaxation as shown by the character of the curve begins slowly, then proceeds rapidly, and again slowly as the muscle attains its original length. The termination of the relaxation is at the point where the curve cuts the abscissa. The curve beyond this point may be complicated by the presence of one or more residual or after-vibrations, which are probably due to the inertia of the lever as well as to changes in the muscle elasticity.

The duration of the period of shortening is about 0.04 second, and of the period of relaxation 0.05 second. A single pulsation of the isolated muscle of the frog therefore occupies, from the moment of stimulation to termination, the tenth of a second. Muscles of many other animals have a contraction period the duration of which varies considerably from this. Thus, in man the time of a single contraction is one-twentieth of a second, in some insects one three-hundredth of a second, and in the turtle one second. Pale muscles have a shorter period than the red.

Influences Modifying the Contraction Process.—The contraction process in its entirety as well as in its individual parts is considerably modified by external conditions, among which may be mentioned the following:

1. *Stimulus.* (As the contraction is the response of the muscle to a stimulus, the vigor of the former is proportional, within limits, to the strength of the latter.) Thus, with single induction shocks the height of the contraction or the degree of shortening increases as the strength of the stimulus increases from a minimum to a

maximum value (Fig. 25). The rate at which the muscle is stimulated with a given stimulus will also influence the character of the contraction process. If the intervals between the successive stimulations be such as permit the muscle to recover from the effects of the contraction, it may contract as many as a thousand times without showing any particular variation from the normal form. In the earlier period of stimulation there is apparently a decrease in the irritability and consequently in the energy of the contraction for a short time. This is followed by an increase in the irritability, as shown by a gradual increase in the height of the curve until a certain maximum is reached and maintained (Fig. 26). These so-called staircase contractions have been observed in the muscles of both cold-blooded and warm-blooded animals. In time, however, as the muscle becomes fatigued the effects of repeated contractions manifest themselves in a lengthening of the latent period, a diminution in the rapidity and extent of the contraction, and an increase in the

FIG. 25.—SHOWING THE EFFECTS OF INCREASING STRENGTH OF STIMULUS.

FIG. 26.—SHOWING STAIRCASE CONTRACTIONS.

time of relaxation. If the intervals between successive stimulations be not sufficient for the muscle to recover itself, the same phenomena arise, though more quickly.

2. *Temperature.* The temperature at which all phases of the contraction process, as represented by the myogram, attain their physiologic maximum value is about 30° C. If the temperature of the muscle falls to 20° C. there is a corresponding decline in activity, as shown by an increase of the latent period, a decrease in the height of curve,—i. e., in the shortening of the muscle,—an increase both in the contraction and relaxation periods. As the temperature approaches 0° C. the height of the curve again suddenly increases, indicating, for some unknown reason, an increase in the irritability. This is, however, scarcely a physiologic condition. At a temperature of 40° C. to 50° C. the muscle suddenly contracts and passes into the condition of heat rigor. The proteid constituents of the muscle are coagulated and the irritability destroyed (Fig. 27).

3. *The Load.* The extent to which a muscle is loaded or weighted will not only determine the height of the contraction, but also the time relations of all its phases. This is apparent from an examination of Fig. 28, in which it is shown that with an increase in load there is a decrease in the height of the contraction, an increase in the latent period, and a general decrease in the duration of both the periods of rising and falling energy.

FIG. 27.—SINGLE CONTRACTIONS OF THE GASTROCNEMIUS AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES. TIME TRACING, 200 PER SECOND.—(Brodie.)

4. *Muscle Fatigue.* Prolonged or excessive activity of our own muscles is accompanied by a feeling of stiffness or soreness and lassitude. There is at the same time a diminution in the rate and vigor of the contractions and the power of doing work. To this condition the term fatigue has been given. The cause of the fatigue is attributed to a diminution in the amount of the energy-holding compounds as well as to the production and accumulation

FIG. 28.—CONTRACTIONS OF A GASTROCNEMIUS WITH DIFFERENT LOADS.—(Brodie.)

of waste products resulting from activity. Among the waste products phosphoric acid, potassium phosphate, lactic acid, and carbon dioxide are the most important. The more rapidly they are removed, the sooner is a fatigued muscle restored to its normal condition. It is highly probable that the nerve-centers are more easily fatigued than the muscles. The condition of fatigue with

its attendant phenomena is shown by an excised frog muscle when stimulated for a long period of time by induction shocks at intervals of one second. In a variable period of time the muscle shows an increase in the duration of the latent period, a diminution of the height of the contraction, in the power of doing work, and an increase in the time required for relaxation. If the stimulation continues, the contractions gradually decline as the muscle becomes exhausted. (See Fig. 29.)

FIG. 29.—FATIGUE CURVES. EVERY TWENTIETH CONTRACTION RECORDED.

5. *Nutrition*.—The irritability of a muscle which conditions the contraction process is dependent on the maintenance of its nutrition; hence a continuous and sufficient supply of nutritive material and a rapid removal of waste products are essential conditions for the exhibition of normal contractions. A diminution of blood-supply or an accumulation of waste products sooner or later impairs the irritability and diminishes the vigor and extent of the contraction. Various drugs—*e. g.*, veratrin, barium, etc.—introduced into the circulation and finding their way into the muscle modify the contraction process, as shown by a very great increase in the duration of the relaxation period.

The Isometric Myogram.—With the object of obtaining a curve of the increase and decrease in the tension of a muscle during a single contraction, with the exclusion as far as possible of a change in length, the muscle may be made to contract against a strong spring or similar resistance sufficient to practically though not absolutely prevent shortening. To this method the term isometric has been given, and the curve so obtained an *isometric myogram* or a *tonogram*. The recording portion of the lever is prolonged some distance so that the

FIG. 30.—a. DIAGRAM OF ISOTONIC; b, OF ISOMETRIC MUSCLE CURVES.

very slight upward movement at its axis, close to which the muscle is attached, will be considerably magnified. That the ordinate value of an isometric curve may be known, the apparatus must be graduated by subjecting the spring to a series of weights playing over a pulley supported by the muscle clamp.

The curve of the variation in tension obtained by the isometric method is shown in Fig. 30, b, in which the two curves are contrasted. The form of the curve indicates that the muscle attains its maximum of tension more rapidly than its maximum of shortening; that the tension endures for a certain period of time unchanged; that the fall in tension takes place more rapidly than the muscle relaxes.

The Work Accomplished by a Muscle during the Time of a Single Contraction.—By work is meant the overcoming of opposing forces. In the physiologic activities of the body the muscles at each contraction not only overcome the resistances of antagonistic muscles, the weight of the limbs, the friction of joints, etc., but in addition overcome various external resistances connected with the environment—*e. g.*, gravity, cohesion, friction, elasticity, etc. The muscles may therefore be regarded as machines for the accomplishment of work. Experimentally the work done by an isolated muscle may be calculated by multiplying the weight by the height through which it is lifted. In the following table it will be observed that the extent to which a muscle will shorten in response to a maximal stimulus is greatest when it is unweighted; but as weights differing by a common increment are added, the height of the contraction diminishes until with a given weight it is *nil*. The work done is shown in the following table:

WEIGHT.	HEIGHT.	WORK DONE.
0 grams	14 mm.	0 gram-millimeters
50 "	9 "	450 "
100 "	7 "	700 "
150 "	5 "	750 "
200 "	2 "	400 "
250 "	0 "	0 "

From the preceding figures it is evident that the mechanical work of a muscle increases with increasing weights up to a certain maximum, and then declines to zero. Equally when the muscle contracts to its maximum without being weighted, and when it does not contract at all from being overweighted, no work is done. Between these two extremes the muscle performs varying amounts of work.

The maximum amount of force which a muscle puts forth during a contraction is naturally measured by the amount of work done; but as this varies with the degree to which the muscle is weighted, another measure has been adopted, to which the term absolute muscle force or static force has been given. The absolute force is measured by

the weight which is sufficient to prevent the muscle from shortening. This is best determined by the method of after-loading in which the muscle is not extended by the weight previous to the contraction. It has been found that the absolute force of a muscle is directly dependent on the number and not the length of the fibers it contains and proportional to the physiologic transverse section of the muscle. The transverse section of a muscle is obtained by dividing the volume 1058 (obtained by dividing its weight by the specific weight of muscle-tissue) by the average length of the fibers.

For purposes of comparison it is customary to refer the absolute force to units of diameter—viz., one square centimeter. Rosenthal estimates the force for the square centimeter of the muscle of the frog at from 2 to 8 kilograms; for the muscles of man at 6 to 8 kilograms; Koster at about ten kilograms for the muscles of the leg and 7 or 8 kilograms for the muscles of the arm.

Action of Successive Stimuli.—If a series of successive stimuli be applied to a muscle, the effect will vary according to the rapidity with which they follow one another. As previously stated, if the

FIG. 31.—SUMMATION CURVE.

FIG. 32.—SUMMATION CURVE.

interval preceding each stimulus be sufficiently long to enable the muscle to recover from the effects of the previous contraction, there will be no effect for a long time except a slight increase, in the early period, of the irritability as shown by the increased height of the curve or shortening of the muscle. If, however, a second stimulus be applied to a muscle during the period of relaxation, a second contraction immediately follows which is added to or superposed on the first; the effect produced will be greater than that produced by either stimulus separately.

A third stimulus applied during the relaxation of the second contraction produces a third contraction which adds itself to the second, and so on (Fig. 31). The increment of increase in the extent of the successive contractions gradually diminishes, however, until the muscle reaches a maximum of contraction. The superposition of the second contraction on the first, the third on the second, and so on, is termed *summation of effects*. Experiment has shown that the greatest effect of a second stimulus—that is, the highest contraction—is produced

when the stimulus is applied during the last third of the period of rising energy, when the sum of the two contractions is almost twice as great as the first contraction (Fig. 32). The effects following both maximal and submaximal stimuli indicate that the muscle cannot attain its maximum of shortening except through a summation of several stimuli. If a second maximal stimulus enter a muscle during the latent period following the first, the effect produced will be no greater than that produced by a single stimulus. The muscle during this period is said to be refractory or non-responsive to a second stimulus. If, however, the stimuli are submaximal they add themselves together, and though the effect is but a single contraction, it is larger than either would have produced separately. This is termed the summation of stimuli.

Still further, if a series of subminimal stimuli, each of which is alone insufficient to produce a contraction of the muscle, be applied in rapid succession, a contraction frequently results. This is termed the summation of subminimal stimuli.

Tetanus.—When a muscle is stimulated by a series of induction shocks at the rate of four or six per second, it undergoes a corresponding number of contractions of about equal extent. If the rate of stimulation is increased up to the point when the interval before each stimulus is less than the duration of the entire contraction process, the muscle does not have time to completely relax between each successive stimulus, and hence remains in a more or less contracted state, during which it exhibits a series of alternate partial contractions and relaxations. To this condition of muscle activity the term incomplete tetanus or clonus is applied. A graphic record of an incomplete tetanus is given in Fig. 33.

In such a tracing it is observed that the second stimulation, occurring before the muscle had time to relax, gave rise to a second contraction, which was superposed on the first; the same result followed the third stimulus, the fourth, the fifth, and so on. Owing largely to this summation of the contractions there is a gradual rise in the height of the contraction curve. This condition of the muscle, viz., continued contraction, combined with diminished power of relaxation, is termed contracture. The tracing also shows that as the stimulus continues, the base line, that connecting the lowest points of the contractions, gradually rises and takes the form of a curve which increases in height with the stimulation. The apex line, that connecting the highest points of the contractions, also rises at the same time, indicating a continuous increase in the height of the contractions. The duration of incomplete tetanus depends on a variety of circumstances, *e. g.*, character of muscle, rate and strength of stimulation, etc., but mainly on the rapidity with which the muscle becomes fatigued. With the oncoming of fatigue the muscle begins

to relax, and ultimately returns to its normal condition, notwithstanding the continued stimulation. If the stimulation be withdrawn, the muscle does not at once return to its original length but remains more or less contracted for a variable time. This contraction after stimulation is known as the contraction-remainder.

If the stimulation be still further increased in frequency, the individual contractions become fused together and the curve described by the lever becomes a continuous line. (See Fig. 33.) Notwithstanding the fact that the individual contractions are no longer visible, it can be shown by other methods that the muscle is undergoing a series of slight alternate contractions and relaxations or vibrations at least. After a varying length of time the muscle becomes fatigued, relaxes, and returns to its natural condition even though the stimulation continues. The number of stimuli per second necessary to develop tetanus will depend under normal circumstances on the

FIG. 33.—CURVES SHOWING THE ANALYSIS OF TETANUS OF A FROG'S MUSCLE (GASTROCNEMIUS). The numbers under the curves indicate the number of shocks per second applied to the muscle. There is almost complete tetanus with twenty-five per second, and it is a little lower than the previous one because the muscle was slightly fatigued.—(*Stirling.*)

period of duration of the individual contractions. The longer this period, the less the number of stimuli required, and the reverse. Hence the number of stimuli will vary for different classes of animals and for different muscles in the same animal, *e. g.*, 2 or 3 for the muscles of the tortoise, 10 for the muscles of the rabbit, 15 to 20 for the frog, 70 to 80 for birds, 330 to 340 for insects.

Voluntary Tetanus.—The voluntary contractions as they occur in the living body are to be regarded as states of tetanus more or less complete; for the simplest voluntary contraction, however rapidly it takes place, has always a longer duration than a single contraction caused by a single induction shock. As tetanus experimentally produced is the result of a certain number of successive stimulations per second, it is assumed that a voluntary tetanus is the result of the transmission to the muscles of a certain number of nerve

stimuli per second. In other words, the voluntary tetanus is also the result of a discontinuous stimulation. The number of stimuli transmitted to a muscle has been estimated by the employment of the graphic method to vary from 8 to 13 per second, 10 being about the average. Unless the contraction process of human muscle differs from that of frogs, it is difficult, however, to see how 10 stimulations per second can give rise to even an incomplete tetanic contraction.

Muscle Sound.—Providing a muscle be kept in a state of tension during its contraction, the intermittent variations in tension cause the muscle to emit an audible sound. This so-called muscle-sound or tone is an evidence that the stimulation of the muscle is not continuous, but discontinuous. If the muscle is tetanized by induction shocks, the pitch of the tone will correspond with the number of stimuli. A voluntary contraction is attended by a tone having a vibration frequency of about 36 to 40 per second, which is regarded as the first overtone of the muscle tone, which would have a vibration frequency in consequence of from 18 to 20 per second. This was formerly regarded as an indication of the rate of stimulation of voluntary contraction. This view, however, is no longer sustained.

CHEMIC PHENOMENA.

The chemic changes which underlie the transformation of energy in the living muscle even when in a state of rest are active and complex, though but little is known as to their exact character. As shown by an analysis of the blood flowing to and from the resting muscle, it has, while flowing through the capillaries, lost oxygen and gained carbon dioxid. The amount of oxygen absorbed by the muscle (9 per cent.) is greater than the amount of carbon dioxid (6.7 per cent.) given off. Notwithstanding the relation of the oxygen absorbed to the carbon dioxid produced, there is no parallelism between these two processes, as the carbon dioxid will be given off in the absence of oxygen or in an atmosphere of nitrogen.

In the active or contracting muscle all the chemic changes are increased, as shown both by an increased absorption of oxygen and an increased production of carbon dioxid, though the ratio existing between them differs considerably from that of the resting muscle. Thus, according to Ludwig, an active muscle absorbs 12.26 per cent. of oxygen and gives off 10.8 per cent. carbon dioxid. During the activity of a muscle its tissue changes from a neutral to an acid reaction, from the development of sarcolactic acid and possibly phosphoric acid. The degree of the acidity depends to some extent on the duration of the contraction periods. Chemic analysis of a tetanized muscle shows that it contains less glycogen than a resting muscle, and that it contains a larger amount of water. Coincident

with muscular contraction, the blood-vessels become widely dilated, leading to a large increase in the blood-supply and a rapid removal of the products of decomposition.

Rigor Mortis.—A short time after death the muscles pass into a condition of extreme rigidity or contraction which lasts from one to five days. In this state they offer great resistance to extension. Their tonicity disappears, their cohesion diminishes, and their irritability ceases. The time of the appearance of this postmortem rigidity varies from a quarter of an hour to seven hours. Its onset and duration are influenced by the condition of the muscle irritability at the time of death. (When the irritability is impaired from any cause, such as chronic disease or defective blood-supply, the rigidity appears promptly but is of short duration.) After death from acute diseases it is apt to be delayed, but will continue for a longer period. The rigidity first appears in the muscles of the lower jaw and neck; next in the muscles of the abdomen and upper extremities; finally in the trunk and lower extremities. It disappears in practically the same order. Chemic changes of a marked character accompany this process. The muscle becomes acid in reaction from the development of sarcolactic acid and there is a large increase in the amount of carbon dioxid given off. The immediate cause of the rigidity appears to be coagulation of the myosinogen within the sarcolemma with the formation of an insoluble proteid, myosin. In the early stages of the coagulation restitution is possible by the circulation of arterial blood through the vessels. The final disappearance of this postmortem rigidity is due to the action of acids which render the myosin soluble, and possibly to the action of various micro-organisms which give rise to putrefactive changes.

Source of the Muscle Energy.—Notwithstanding many investigations, the nature of the materials which are the immediate source of the muscle energy is not known. The absence of any noticeable increase in the quantity of urea or other nitrogen-holding compounds excreted renders it probable that the energy does not come from the metabolism of proteid materials. The marked production of carbon dioxid and sarcolactic acid points to the decomposition of some unstable compound, of a carbohydrate character, rich in carbon and oxygen. It has been suggested that glycogen furnishes the energy, inasmuch as this substance, generally present in muscle, disappears during activity. A muscle which has been tetanized contains less glycogen than the corresponding muscle at rest. A muscle which has been separated from the nervous system by division of its nerves and thus prevented from contracting accumulates glycogen. Bunge is of the opinion that though the carbohydrates are the main, they are not the only sources of muscle energy. If there is a deficiency or absence of carbohydrate food, the muscle will utilize fat and pro-

teid, for experiment has shown that the available glycogen is entirely consumed the second or third day. The mechanism by which the energy is liberated, whether by decomposition or direct oxidation, is unknown. The fact that muscle will contract in an atmosphere free of oxygen, that no free oxygen can be obtained from muscle, would support the idea that the mechanism is one of decomposition. Hermann suggests that the energy of a contraction is liberated by the splitting and subsequent re-formation of a complex body belonging neither to the carbohydrates nor fats, but to the proteids—to this hypothetical body the term inogen is given. This complex molecule, the product of the nutritive activity of the muscle-cell in undergoing decomposition, would yield carbon dioxid, sarcolactic acid, and a proteid residue resembling myosin. On the cessation of the contraction the muscle-cell recombines the proteid residue with oxygen, carbohydrates, and fats, and again forms the energy-holding compound, inogen. The phenomena of rigor mortis support this view. At the moment of this contraction the muscle gives off CO_2 in large amount, develops sarcolactic acid and myosin. There is thus a close analogy between the two processes; in other words, a contraction is a partial death of the muscle. If this view is correct, then the oxygen is required mainly for heat production through oxidation processes.

THERMIC PHENOMENA.

The potential energy liberated during a contraction is transformed into kinetic energy—viz., heat and mechanic motion. Though heat production is taking place even during the passive condition, probably through oxidation processes, it is largely increased by muscle activity. The skeletal muscle of the frog, the gastrocnemius, shows after tetanization an increase in temperature from 0.14°C. to 0.18°C. , and after a single contraction from 0.001°C. to 0.005°C. The amount of heat thus produced will vary with a variety of conditions, as strength of stimulus, tension, work done, etc.

Stimulus.—It has been experimentally determined that an increase in the strength of the stimulus from a minimal to a maximal value increases the amount of heat liberated. This is the direct result of increased chemic change naturally following increased stimulation.

Tension.—The greater the tension of a muscle, the greater, other conditions being the same, is the amount of heat liberated. If the muscle is securely fastened at both extremities so that shortening is practically impossible during the stimulation, the maximum of heat production is reached. In the tetanic state the great increase in temperature is due to the tension of antagonistic and strongly contracted muscles. In both instances, mechanic motion being prevented, the liberated energy is transformed into heat.

Mechanic Work.—If the muscle is permitted to shorten and raise a weight, some of the energy liberated takes the form of mechanic motion. If the weight is removed at the height of the contraction, external work is accomplished. The greater the weight raised, within limits, the greater is the percentage of energy which takes the direction of mechanic motion. In accordance with the law of the conservation of energy, the heat produced, stated in calories, plus the energy required in the raising of the weight, expressed in kilogram-meters of work, must equal the potential energy transformed.

A muscle during a tetanic contraction of short duration accomplishes more work than during a single contraction; the weight in each case being the same. In the former condition the height of contraction through summation, and hence the work done, is greater than in the latter. The work done by a short tetanic contraction may be two or three times that of a single contraction, but after the muscle reaches its maximum degree of shortening and then continues in a state of tetanus, no further work is done. Internal work is done, however, as shown by an increase in the temperature.

When a weight which is lifted by a muscle during a single contraction is allowed to act on the muscle during the relaxation, no external work is accomplished. All the energy set free manifests itself as heat. Internal work is done, as shown by the fact that the muscle becomes fatigued.

ELECTRIC PHENOMENA.

Electric Currents from Injured Muscles.—The energy liberated during a muscle contraction is not only transformed into heat and mechanic motion, but to some extent also into electric energy. The presence of points of different potential on the surface of the muscle, the necessary condition for the development of electric currents, is tested by means of non-polarizable electrodes connected by wires with a sensitive galvanometer or capillary electrometer. When such electrodes are brought in contact with a muscle properly prepared, there is at once developed and conducted to the galvanometer an electric current the intensity and direction of which are indicated by the deflection of the galvanometer needle. The existence of this current is most conveniently demonstrated with single muscles the fibers of which are parallel—*e. g.*, the sartorius, or the semimembranosus of the frog. If the tendinous ends of either of these muscles be removed by a section made at right angles to the long axis, a muscle prism is obtained which presents a natural longitudinal surface and two artificial transverse surfaces. A line drawn around the surface of such a muscle prism at a point midway between the two transverse sections constitutes the equator.

When the natural longitudinal and artificial transverse surfaces are connected with the wires of a galvanometer the terminals of which are provided with non-polarizable electrodes, an electric current is at once developed. In all instances the current, as shown by the deflection of the needle, originates at the transverse surface, passes through the muscle to the longitudinal surface, thence through the galvanometer to the transverse surface. The longitudinal surface is, therefore, electropositive, the transverse surface electronegative. The two points exhibiting the greatest difference of potential, and

FIG. 34.—DIAGRAM TO ILLUSTRATE THE CURRENT IN MUSCLE. The arrowheads indicate the direction; the thickness of the lines indicates the strength of the currents.

hence the most powerful current, lie in the equator and in the center of the transverse surface. Currents of gradually diminishing intensity are obtained when the electrode placed on the longitudinal surface is removed toward either end. Feeble currents are developed when two points situated at unequal distances, either on corresponding or opposite sides of the equator, are connected; in either case the current flows from the point lying nearest the equator to the point farthest from it. Similar currents are obtained when two points on the cross-section situated at unequal distances from the central axis are connected, in which case the direction of the current will be from the point lying nearest the periphery toward the center. On the contrary, no current is developed when two points on the longitudinal surface equally distant from the equator, or two points on the transverse surface equally distant from the central axis, are connected. Such points are said to be isoelectric. These facts

are shown in Fig. 34. The natural ends of the muscle, enclosed by sarcolemma and tendon, do not exhibit, if carefully preserved from injury, the negativity characteristic of the artificial transverse ends.

Similar electric conditions are exhibited by the muscles of man and other mammals, by the muscles of birds, reptiles, amphibia, etc. The currents developed by connecting the equator on the longitudinal surface with the axis of the transverse surface have an electromotive force in the frog muscle of from 0.037 to 0.075 of a Daniell cell.

The electric currents in the muscle are intimately associated with

the chemic changes underlying its nutrition, and hence their intensity rises and falls with all the conditions which maintain or impair muscle nutrition and irritability. The currents observed in the injured muscle during the inactive state have been termed *currents of rest*. du Bois-Reymond regarded them as preexistent, intimately connected with the living condition of the muscle, and essential to the performance of its functions, and to be explained by the view that the entire muscle is composed of molecules each of which exhibits the same difference of potential on its longitudinal and transverse surfaces as the muscle prism itself. Hermann denies the existence of currents in normal resting muscle and attributes them to injuries of the surface, due to methods of preparation, in consequence of which the tissue dies and becomes electronegative to the uninjured area, which remains electropositive. These currents Hermann terms "demarkation currents."

Negative Variation of the Muscle Current.—If a muscle exhibiting a current of injury be excited to activity by tetanizing induced currents applied to the opposite end of the muscle, it will be observed that as the contraction wave passes over the muscle there is a movement of the galvanometer needle toward the zero point, indicating a diminution of the potential on the longitudinal surface. To this diminution in the strength of the current the term *negative variation* was

FIG. 35.—THE NEGATIVE VARIATION OF THE DEMARCATION CURRENT. A. The contraction wave, which as it passes beneath the electrode at B causes a diminution of potential.

given. On the withdrawal of the stimulus the needle again returns in a short time to its former position. The diminution of potential on the longitudinal surface of the muscle is now attributed to the passage of the excitation and contraction processes, to a temporary disintegration of the muscle substance (Fig. 35). With their disappearance and the subsequent restoration of the nutrition of the muscle, the former electric condition returns.

The primary deflection of the galvanometer needle is due to the demarcation current which arises as a result of the difference in electric potential produced by the destructive chemic changes taking place at the cut end of the muscle. The negative variation is caused by the fact that the activity of the muscle, with its attendant chemic changes, will always be greater in the uninjured equatorial region, and hence will always tend to counterbalance the original source of difference in electric potential.

Electric Currents from Non-injured Muscles.—Though perfectly normal resting muscle, according to Hermann, is isoelectric, nevertheless electric currents are developed during activity to which he has given the term action currents, and which are attributed to the propagation of the contraction wave.

Action Currents.—When two isoelectric points on the longitudinal surface of a muscle are connected with a galvanometer and a single stimulus applied directly to one extremity, it can be shown that as the contraction wave passes beneath A, Fig. 36, the muscle-tissue at that point becomes electronegative toward B and a current at once passes through the galvanometer from B to A, as shown by the deflection of the needle toward A. As the contraction wave passes beneath B it in turn becomes electronegative,

FIG. 36.—THE CONDITION LEADING TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE FIRST ACTION CURRENT.

and a temporary condition of equal potential is established when the needle returns to the zero point. In a very short time the nutrition of A is restored and becomes electropositive toward B, when a current will pass through the galvanometer in the opposite direction from A to B, as shown by the movement of the needle toward B, Fig. 37. As the contraction wave passes beyond B its nutrition is restored and becomes of equal potential with A. The term phasic is applied to these currents. The first current flows in the muscle in the direction of progress of the contraction wave—first phase; the second current flows in the reverse direction—second phase; the current is therefore diphasic. When a muscle is tetanized, there is but a single current observed, which, however, endures so long as the tetanic contrac-

tion is maintained. To this current the term decremental is given. When a muscle is excited to action by the nerve impulse which enters at its center, two contraction waves are developed, one in each half of the muscle, and hence there are two sets of diphasic action currents.

The presence of action currents in the muscle of the living body during a single contraction was demonstrated by Hermann in the muscles of the forearm. The arrangement of the experiment was, briefly, as follows: The forearm was surrounded by two twine electrodes saturated with zinc solution, one being placed at the physiologic middle—the nervous equator—the other at the wrist. Both electrodes were then connected with the galvanometer. When the brachial plexus was stimulated in the axillary space, the deflections of the galvanometer

FIG 37.—THE CONDITION LEADING TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE SECOND ACTION CURRENT.

needle, when analyzed with the repeating rheotome, indicated phasic currents with a single contraction. In the first phase—atterminal—the wrist became positive and the current passed in the muscle toward its termination; and in the second—abterminal—it became negative and the current now passed in the reverse direction. The action currents which are observed in the frog's muscle were thus shown to be present in the living human muscle, with this difference, however: that the second phase,—abterminal,—instead of being weaker in man, is equally strong with the atterminal. This experiment also revealed the fact that the rapidity of propagation of the excitation wave was much greater in man, amounting to about twelve meters per second. Hermann therefore denies the preexistence of electric currents and regards them as due to localized temporary disintegra-

tion of the muscle in consequence of activity, as they disappear on the restoration of the muscle to its normal condition.

Work Done Daily.—The muscle system in its entirety is to be regarded as a machine for the transformation of potential into kinetic energy, and in so doing accomplishes work. Through the intermediations of the bones of the skeleton which play the part of levers the individual not only changes his position in space, but overcomes to some extent the resistances offered by the environment. The employment of artificial levers, tools, as distinguished from natural levers, bones, materially adds to the effectiveness of the muscle machine. The amount of work which a man of average physical development weighing 72 kilos can perform in eight hours has been variously estimated. It will naturally vary according to the character of the occupation. If the work done be calculated from the number of kilograms raised one meter, the average laboring-man performs about 300,000 kilogrammeters.

SPECIAL ACTION OF MUSCLE GROUPS.

The individual muscles of the axial and appendicular portions of the body are named with reference to their shape, action, structure, etc.; *e. g.*, deltoid, flexor, penniform, etc. In different localities a group of muscles having a common function is named in accordance with the kind of motion it produces or to which it gives rise: *e. g.*, groups of muscles which alternately diminish or increase the angular distance between two bones are known respectively as flexors and extensors; such muscle groups are usually found in association with ginglymus joints. Muscles which rotate the bone to which they are attached around its own axis without producing any great change of position are known as rotators, and are found in association with enarthrodial or ball-and-socket joints. Muscles which impart an angular movement to the extremities to and from the median line of the body are termed adductors and abductors respectively.

In addition to the actions of individual groups of muscles in producing special movements, in some regions of the body, several groups of muscles are coordinated for the accomplishment of certain definite functions; *e. g.*, the functions of respiration, mastication, etc. The coordination of axial and appendicular muscles enables the individual to assume certain postures, such as standing, sitting, and lying; to engage in various acts of locomotion, as walking, running, dancing, swimming.

Levers.—The function or special mode of action of individual muscles can be understood only when the bones with which they are connected are regarded as levers whose fulcra or fixed points lie in the joints where the movement takes place, and the muscles as sources

of power for imparting movement to the levers with the object of overcoming resistance.

In mechanics levers of three kinds or orders are recognized according to the relative positions of the fulcrum or axis of motion, the applied power, and the weight to be moved. (See Fig. 38.)

In levers of the first order the fulcrum, F, lies between the weight or resistance, W, and the power or moving force, P. The distance P F is known as the power arm and the distance W F as the weight arm. As examples of this form of lever found in the human body may be mentioned:

1. The elevation of the trunk from the flexed position. The axis of movement, the fulcrum, lies in the hip-joint; the weight, that of the trunk, acting as if concentrated at the center of gravity, which lies close to the tenth dorsal vertebra; the power, the muscles attached to the tuberosity of the ischium. The opposite movement is equally one of the first order, but the relative positions of P and W are reversed.

2. The head in its movement backward and forward on the atlas.

In levers of the second order the weight lies between the power and the fulcrum. As illustration of this form of lever may be mentioned:

1. The depression of the lower jaw, in which movement the fulcrum is the temporomaxillary articulation; the resistance, the tension of the elevator muscles; the power, the contraction of the depressor muscles.
2. The raising of the body on the toes, in which movement the fulcrum is the toes, the weight that of the body acting through the ankle, the power the gastrocnemius muscle applied to the heel bone.

In levers of the third order the power is applied at a point lying between the fulcrum and the weight. As examples of this form of lever may be mentioned:

1. The flexion of the forearm, in which the fulcrum is the elbow-joint, the power the biceps and brachialis anticus muscles applied at their points of insertion, the weight that of the forearm and hand.
2. The extension of the leg on the thigh.

When levers are employed in mechanic operations, the object aimed at is the overcoming of a great resistance by the application of a small force acting through a great distance, so as to obtain mechanic advantage. In the mechanism of the human body the reverse gener-

FIG. 38.—THE THREE ORDERS OF LEVERS.

ally obtains, viz., the overcoming of a small resistance by the application of a large force acting through a short distance. As a result there is a gain in the extent and rapidity of the movement of the lever. The power, however, owing to its point of application, acts at a great mechanic disadvantage in many instances, especially in levers of the third order.

Postures.—Owing to its system of joints, levers, and muscles the human body can assume a series of positions of equilibrium, such as standing and sitting, to which the term posture has been given. In order that the body may remain in a state of stable equilibrium in any posture, it is essential that the vertical line passing through its center of gravity shall fall within the base of support.

Standing is that position of equilibrium in which a line drawn through the center of gravity of the entire body falls within the base of support. This position is maintained largely by the mechanical conditions of the joints, apparently for the purpose of reducing to a minimum muscular action, so that it can be prolonged for some time without giving rise to fatigue. In the military position, which may be assumed as the normal position, all the joints must be in such a condition of extension and fixation that the body will represent a rigid column resting on the astragalus and supported by the arch of the foot. This is accomplished:

1. By balancing the head on the apex of the vertebral column. This is done by the action of the muscles on the back of the neck. The muscular effort is, however, very slight, as the center of gravity of the head lies but a short distance in front of the articulation.
2. By making the vertebral column erect and rigid. This is brought about by the action of the common extensor muscles of the trunk. In this condition the center of gravity lies just in front of the tenth dorsal vertebra. The head, trunk, and upper extremities are now supported by the hip-joints; and in order that this support may give to the body a certain degree of stable equilibrium, independent of muscular action, the line of gravity falls behind the line uniting the center of rotation of the two joints. In consequence the body would fall backward were it not prevented by the tension of the iliofemoral ligament and the fascia lata.

The line of gravity, continued downward, passes through the knee-joint posterior to the axis of rotation, and hence the body would now fall backward were it not prevented by the tension of the lateral ligaments and the contraction of the quadriceps femoris muscle. Though the body is supported by the astragalus, the line of gravity does not pass through the line uniting the two joints, for in so doing constant muscular effort would be required to maintain stable equilibrium; passing a short distance in advance of this line, there

would be a tendency of the body to fall forward, which is prevented by the extensor muscles of the foot. When the body is in the erect or military position, the center of gravity lies between the sacrum and last lumbar vertebra. Standing is thus an act of balancing, and requires not only the static conditions of joints, but the dynamic conditions of various groups of muscles, and hence is not a position of absolute ease and cannot be maintained for any length of time without experiencing discomfort and fatigue. Sitting erect is an attitude of equilibrium in which the body is balanced on the tubera ischii, when the head and trunk together form a rigid column.

Locomotion is the act of transferring the body as a whole through space, and is accomplished by the combined action of its own muscles. The acts involved consist of walking, running, jumping, etc.

Walking is a complicated act involving almost all the voluntary muscles of the body either for purposes of progression or for balancing the head and trunk, and may be defined as a progression in a forward horizontal direction due to the alternate action of both legs. In walking one leg becomes for the time being the active or supporting leg, carrying the trunk and head; the other the passive but progressing leg, to become in turn the active leg when the foot touches the ground. Each leg is therefore alternately in an active and passive state.

Running is distinguished from walking by the fact that at a given moment both feet are off the ground and the body is raised in the air.

THE VISCERAL MUSCLE.

The **visceral muscle**, as the name implies, is found in the walls of hollow viscera, where it is arranged in the form of a membrane or sheet. It is present in the walls of the alimentary canal, blood-vessels, respiratory tract, ureter, bladder, vas deferens, uterus, fallopian tubes, iris, etc. In some situations it is especially thick and well developed—*e. g.*, uterus and pyloric end of the stomach; in others it is thin and slightly developed.

The Histology of the Visceral Muscle-fiber.—When examined with the microscope, the muscle sheet is seen to be composed of fibers, narrow, elongated, and fusiform in shape. As a rule, they are extremely small, measuring only from 40 to 250 micromillimeters in length and from 4 to 8 micromillimeters in breadth. The center of each fiber presents a narrow, elongated nucleus. The muscle-protoplasm which makes up the body of the fiber appears to be enclosed by a delicate elastic membrane resembling in some respects the sarcolemma of the skeletal muscle. In some animals the visceral fiber presents a longitudinal striation suggesting the existence of fibrillæ surrounded by sarcoplasm (Fig. 39). The fibers are united

longitudinally and transversely by a cement material. The muscle is increased in thickness by the superposition of successive layers. At varying intervals the fibers are grouped into bundles or fasciculi by septa of connective tissue (Fig. 40). Blood-vessels ramify in the connective tissue and furnish the necessary nutritive material.

The visceral muscle receives stimuli from the spinal cord, not directly, however, as in the case of the skeletal muscle, but indirectly

FIG. 39.—TWO SMOOTH MUSCLE-FIBERS FROM SMALL INTESTINE OF FROG. $\times 240$. Isolated with 35 per cent. potash-lye. The nuclei have lost their characteristic form through the action of the lye.—(Stohr.)

through the intermediation of ganglion cells, which may be located at some distance from the muscle or near the walls of the viscera. Non-medullated fibers from the ganglion pass directly into the muscle, where they frequently unite to form a general plexus. From this plexus fine branches take their origin and ultimately become physiologically associated with the muscle-fiber.

Physiologic Properties.—The visceral muscles which have been subjected to experiment are mainly those of the stomach, intestine, bladder, ureter, and iris.

From the results of the experiments which have been published, it is evident that all visceral muscles possess elasticity, tonicity, irritability, and conductivity.

FIG. 40.—SECTION OF THE CIRCULAR LAYER OF THE MUSCULAR COAT OF THE HUMAN INTESTINE.—(Stohr.)

The elasticity of the bladder muscle of the cat was strikingly shown in the experiments published by Dr. Colin C. Stewart. When this muscle was weighted with weights differing by a common increment, it was extended on the addition of each weight,

though to a progressively less extent. On the removal of the weights the muscle eventually returned to its former length. The records of the extension were similar to, if not identical with, those of the skeletal muscle.

Tonicity is a property common to all visceral muscles. Each muscle is continuously in a state of contraction intermediate between that of complete contraction and that of relaxation. In how far this is due to local and inherent causes or to stimuli reflected from the

nervous system as a result of peripherally acting causes is not in individual instances readily determinable. From time to time the tonicity varies, increasing and decreasing in response to these various stimuli and in accordance with the functional activities of the organs in which the muscle is found.

The **irritability** manifests itself by a change of form, and doubtless by the liberation of heat on the application of any form of stimulus—mechanic, chemic, thermic, electric.

The **conductivity** is less marked in the visceral than in the skeletal muscle, and, contrary to what is observed in the latter, the conduction extends laterally as well as longitudinally from fiber to fiber. This is shown by stimulation of the exposed intestine. Shortly after the stimulus is applied the muscle contracts longitudinally—i. e., in a direction at right angles to the long axis of the intestine, partially obliterating its lumen. From this point the conduction process indicated by the contraction wave passes in opposite directions for some distance along the canal. As to whether this is accomplished by protoplasmic processes extending from fiber to fiber, or whether the uniting membrane differs in conducting power from the sarcolemma, is as yet a matter of doubt. From the fact that the upper two thirds of the ureter, though free of nerve-cells, exhibits lateral conduction, it is evident that it may take place independent of the nervous system.

The Contraction of the Visceral Muscle.—The general character of the contraction may be witnessed on opening the abdomen of a recently killed animal, especially the rabbit. Shortly after exposure to the air the walls of the intestine begin to contract in a most vigorous manner. The contraction wave beginning at various points is propagated in both directions, running along the intestinal wall for a variable distance. A succession of similar waves may be observed for some minutes. To the alternate contraction and relaxation of the muscle-fibers, which are circularly arranged, the term peristalsis is usually given. The excised stomach of a dog kept under suitable conditions will exhibit similar movements. The same holds true of the bladder muscle of the cat, the muscle of the ureter, etc. Careful observation shows a certain periodicity in the movements. Inasmuch as the cause is not apparent, these contractions are termed spontaneous or automatic.

Graphic Record of the Contraction.—For experimental purposes narrow transverse sections of the stomach of the frog or the entire bladder muscle of the cat, excised or *in situ*, according to the method of Dr. Colin C. Stewart, may be employed. If kept moist, they will retain their irritability for some hours. The changes of form may be recorded with the usual muscle lever. When thus prepared, the muscle may exhibit for several hours a series of pulsations, rhythmic in character. With spontaneously acting mammalian

muscle the contraction and relaxation periods are of equal duration. With the amphibian muscle they are of unequal duration, as a rule. In both classes of animals the character of the record, a succession of large and small contractions, would indicate that the general rhythmic movement is compounded of two or three secondary rhythms which differ in rate and character. A single pulsation may be recorded by stimulating the bladder muscle with the induced or the make and break of the constant current. A curve of such a contraction is shown in Fig. 41. The contraction takes place more rapidly than the relaxation; the two phases occupying five and thirty-five seconds respectively. The latent period covered 0.25 second. With other muscles the time relations are slightly different. Tetanization

FIG. 41.—THE CURVE OF CONTRACTION OF THE BLADDER MUSCLE AT BODY-TEMPERATURE IN RESPONSE TO A SINGLE INDUCTION CURRENT. THE TIME IS INDICATED IN SECONDS.—(Stewart.)

of the bladder muscle of the cat occurred when the stimuli succeeded each other with a certain rapidity; the interval between stimuli approximating a period somewhat less than two seconds. This muscle responds to variations in temperature, to strength of stimulus, to the load, in a manner similar to, if not identical with, the skeletal muscle.

The Function of the Visceral Muscle.—

In a general way it may be said that the visceral muscle determines and regulates the passage through the viscus or organ of the material contained within it. The food in the stomach and intestines is subjected to a churning process by the muscles, in consequence of which the digestive fluids are more thoroughly incorporated and their characteristic action increased. At the same time the food is carried through the canal, the absorption of the nutritive material promoted, and the indigestible residue removed from the body. The blood is delivered in larger or smaller volumes according to the needs of the tissues through a relaxation or contraction of the muscle-fibers of the blood-vessels. The urine is forced through the ureter and from the bladder by the contraction of their respective muscles. The mode of action of the individual muscles will be described in successive chapters.

according to the needs of the tissues through a relaxation or contraction of the muscle-fibers of the blood-vessels. The urine is forced through the ureter and from the bladder by the contraction of their respective muscles. The mode of action of the individual muscles will be described in successive chapters.

Ciliary Movement.—The free surface of the epithelium covering the mucous membrane in certain regions of the body is characterized by the presence of delicate filamentous processes termed cilia. (See Fig. 42.) Ciliated epithelium is found in man and mammals generally, in the nose, Eustachian tube, larynx, with the exception of the vocal membranes, trachea and bronchial tubes as

far as the pulmonary lobules, Fallopian tubes, uterus, and epididymis. The lumen of the central canal of the spinal cord and the cavities of the brain are lined, especially in childhood, by cells provided with similar cilia. Ciliated epithelium is also found in all classes of animals, and especially in the invertebrates.

The cilia found in the human body vary in length from 0.003 mm. to 0.005 mm. They are apparently structureless and colorless, and appear to have their origin in and to be a prolongation of a transparent material on the outer surface of the cell material. The number of cilia present on the surface of any individual cell varies approximately from five to twenty-five. When ciliated epithelial cells, freshly removed from the mucous membrane and moistened with normal saline, are examined with the microscope, it will be found that the cilia are in continuous and rapid vibratile movement, so much so that the individual cilium cannot be distinguished. In time, however, their vitality declines and the rapidity of movement diminishes. When the movement of the individual cilium falls to about eight or ten per second, its character can be readily determined. It will then be seen that the movement is, as a rule, alternately a backward and a forward one, the cilium lowering and then raising itself, the latter taking place more quickly and energetically than the former. As the cilium raises itself it becomes somewhat flexed in a direction corresponding to that of the general movement. The movement, however, varies in character in different situations and in different animals. The cause of the movements and the mechanism of their coordination are unknown. They are, as far as known, independent of the nervous system. The force of ciliary motion is very great. A load of twenty grams can be supported and carried forward by the cilia on the mucous membrane of the mouth and esophagus of the frog. The activity of the cilia is associated with the nutrition of the cell of which they are a part and rises and falls with it. Experimentally it has been found that the rate and energy of the movement are greatest at a temperature of about 35° to 40° C., especially if they are bathed with normal saline, rendered slightly alkaline. Low temperatures, acids, alkalis, carbon dioxid, etc., retard the movement.

The function of the cilia, though not always apparent, is associated with the function of the passages in which they are found. As the surfaces of these passages are swept by a current of considerable power, it is probable that they assist in the passage of the materials

FIG. 42.—CILIATED EPI-
THELIUM.

which ordinarily traverse them. Mucus and particles of dust are carried upward through the air-passages; the ovarian cell is carried from the ovary toward the uterus; the spermatozoa, as well as the fluid in which they are contained, are carried forward through the epididymis ducts.

CHAPTER VII.

THE GENERAL PHYSIOLOGY OF NERVE-TISSUE.

The **nerve-tissue**, which unites and coordinates the various organs and tissues of the body and brings the individual into relationship with the external world, is arranged in two systems, termed the *encephalospinal* or *cerebrospinal* and the *sympathetic*.

The **encephalospinal system** consists of:

1. The brain and spinal cord, contained within the cavities of the cranium and the spinal column respectively, and
2. The cranial and spinal nerves.

The **sympathetic system** consists of:

1. A double chain of ganglia situated on each side of the spinal column and extending from the base of the skull to the tip of the coccyx.
2. Various collections of ganglia situated in the head, face, thorax, abdomen, and pelvis. All these ganglia are united by an elaborate system of intercommunicating nerves, many of which are connected with the cerebrospinal system.

HISTOLOGY OF NERVE-TISSUE.

The Neuron.—The nerve-tissue has been resolved by the investigations of modern histologists into a single morphologic unit, to which the term neuron has been applied. The entire nervous system has been shown to be but an aggregate of an infinite number of neurons, each of which is histologically distinct and independent. Though having a common origin, as shown by embryologic investigations, they have acquired a variety of forms in different parts of the nervous system in the course of development. The old conception that the nervous system consisted of two distinct histologic elements, nerve-cells and nerve-fibers, which differed not only in their mode of origin, but also in their properties, their relation to each other, and their functions, has been entirely disproved.

The neuron, or neurologic unit, is histologically a nerve-cell, the surface of which presents a greater or less number of processes in varying degrees of differentiation. As represented in figure 43, A, the neuron may be said to consist of: (1) The nerve-cell, neurocyte, or corpus; (2) the axon, or nerve process; (3) the end-tufts, or terminal branches. Though these three main histologic features are everywhere recognizable, they exhibit a variety of secondary features in

different situations in accordance with peculiarities of function. Though the nerve-cell and the nerve-fiber are but part of the same neuron, it is convenient at present to describe them separately.

The Nerve-cell.—The nerve-cell, or body of the neuron, presents a variety of shapes and sizes in different portions of the nervous system. Originally ovoid in shape, it has acquired, in course of development, peculiarities of form which are described as pyramidal, stellate, pear-shaped, spindle-shaped, etc. The size of the cell varies considerably, the smallest having a diameter of not more than $\frac{1}{3000}$ of an inch, the largest not more than $\frac{1}{400}$ of an inch. Each cell

FIG. 43.—A. Efferent neuron. B. Afferent neuron.

consists of granular, striated protoplasm, containing a distinct vesicular nucleus and a well-defined nucleolus. A cell membrane has not been observed. From the surface of the adult cell portions of the protoplasm are projected in various directions, which portions, rapidly dividing and subdividing, form a series of branches, termed dendrites or dendrons. In some situations the ultimate branches of the dendrites present short lateral processes, known as *lateral buds*, or *gemmules*, which impart to the branches a feathery appearance. This characteristic is common to the cells of the cortex of the cerebrum and of the cerebellum. The ultimate branches of the den-

drites, though forming an intricate feltwork, never anastomose with one another nor unite with dendrites of adjoining cells. According to the number of axons, nerve-cells are classified as monaxonic, diaxonic, polyaxonic. Most of the cells of the nervous system of the higher vertebrates are monaxonic. In the ganglia of the posterior or dorsal roots of the spinal and cranial nerves, however, they are diaxonic. In this situation the axons, emerging from opposite poles of the cell, either remain separate and pursue opposite directions, or unite to form a common stem, which subsequently divides into two branches, which then pursue opposite directions. (See Fig. 43, B.) The nerve-cell maintains its own nutrition, and presides over that of the dendrites and the axon as well. If the latter be separated in any part of its course from the cell, it speedily degenerates and dies.

The *axon*, or *nerve process*, arises from a cone-shaped projection from the surface of the cell, and is the first outgrowth from its protoplasm. At a short distance from its origin it becomes markedly differentiated from the dendrites which subsequently develop. It is characterized by a sharp, regular outline, a uniform diameter, and a hyaline appearance. In structure, the axon appears to consist of fine fibrillæ embedded in a clear, protoplasmic substance. Schäfer advocates the view that the fibrillæ are exceedingly fine tubes filled with fluid. The axon varies in length from a few millimeters to one meter. In the former instance the axon, at a short distance from its origin, divides into a number of branches, which form an intricate feltwork in the neighborhood of the cell. In the latter instance the axon continues for an indefinite distance as an individual structure. In its course, however, especially in the central nervous system, it gives off a number of *collateral* branches, which possess all its histologic features. The long axons serve to bring the body of the cell into direct relation with peripheral organs, or with more or less remote portions of the nervous system, thus constituting association or commissural fibers.

The more or less elongated ~~axon~~ becomes invested, as a rule, at a short distance from the cell with nucleated oblong cells, which subsequently become modified and constitute the medullary or myelin sheath. This is invested by a thin, cellular membrane—the neurilemma. These three structures thus constitute what is known as a medullated nerve-fiber. In the central nervous system the outer sheath is frequently absent. In the sympathetic system the myelin is also frequently absent, though the axon is inclosed by the neurilemma, thus constituting a non-medullated nerve-fiber.

The *end-lufts* or *terminal organs* are formed by the splitting of the axon into a number of filaments, which remain independent of one another and are free from the medullary investment. The histologic peculiarities of the terminal organs vary in different situations, and in

many instances are quite complex and characteristic. In peripheral organs, as muscles, glands, blood-vessels, skin, mucous membrane, the tufts are in direct histologic and physiologic connection with their cellular elements. In the central nervous system the tufts are in more or less intimate relation with the dendrites of adjacent neurons.

Nerve-fibers.—The axons with their secondary investments together constitute the nerve-fibers, and according as they possess or do not possess the medullary sheath, they may be divided into two groups—viz., medullated and non-medullated fibers.

Medullated Nerve-fibers.—These consist for the most part of three distinct structures:

1. An external investing sheath, tubular in shape, termed the neurilemma.
2. An intermediate semifluid substance—the medulla or myelin.
3. An internal dark thread—the axis-cylinder.

The *neurilemma* is a thin, transparent, homogeneous membrane closely adherent to the medulla. Owing to its colorless appearance, it can be seen only with difficulty in fresh tissue. When treated with various reagents, it becomes distinct. Physically, it is quite resistant and elastic. Its function is doubtless that of a protective agent to the structures within.

The *medulla*, *myelin*, or *white substance of Schwann* completely fills the neurilemma and closely invests the axis-cylinder or axon. In fresh tissue the medulla is clear, homogeneous, semifluid, and highly refracting. In composition it is oleaginous. When the nerve is treated with various reagents which alter its composition, the medulla becomes opaque and imparts a white, glistening appearance. The function of the medulla is quite unknown.

At intervals of about seventy-five times its diameter, the medullated nerve-fiber undergoes a remarkable diminution in size, due to an interruption of the medullary substance, so that the neurilemma lies directly on the axis-cylinder. These constrictions, or nodes of Ranvier, taking their name from their discoverer, occur at regular intervals along the course of the nerve, separating it into a series of segments. The portion between the nodes is termed the internodal segment. It has been suggested that in consequence of the absence of the myelin at these nodes, a free exchange of nutritive material and decomposition products can take place between the axis-cylinder and the surrounding plasma.

The *axis-cylinder*, or axon, the direct outgrowth of the nerve-cell, is the most essential element of the nerve-fiber, as it alone is uniformly continuous throughout. In the natural condition it is transparent and invisible; but when treated with proper reagents, it presents itself as a pale, granular, flattened band, more or less solid and somewhat elastic. It is albuminous in composition. With

high magnification the axis presents a longitudinal striation, indicating a fibrillar structure. The fibrillæ appear to be embedded in an intervening semifluid substance, the neuroplasm.

Non-medullated Nerve-fibers.—These consist, for the most part, only of the axis-cylinder, though in some portions of the nervous system a neurilemma is also present. Though much less abundant than the former variety, they are distributed largely throughout the nervous system, but are particularly abundant in the sympathetic. Owing to the absence of a medulla, they present a rather pale or grayish appearance.

Structure of Nerve-trunks.—After their emergence from the brain and spinal cord, the nerve-fibers become bound together, by

FIG. 44.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF A NERVE (MEDIAN). *ep*. Epineurium. *pe*. Perineurium. *ed*. Endoneurium.

connective tissue, into the form of continuous bundles, which connect the brain and cord with all the remaining structures of the body. The bundles are technically known as *nerve-trunks* or *nerves*. Each nerve is invested by a thick layer of lamellated connective tissue, known as the *epineurium*. A transverse section of a nerve shows (see Fig. 44) that it is made up of a number of small bundles of fibers, each of which possesses a separate investment of connective tissue—the *perineurium*. Within this membrane the nerve-fibers are supported by a fine stroma—the *endoneurium*. After pursuing a longer or shorter course, the nerve-trunk gives off branches, which interlace very freely with neighboring branches, forming plexuses, the fibers of which are distributed to associated organs and regions

of the body. From their origin to their termination, however, nerve-fibers retain their individuality, and never become blended with adjoining fibers.

As nerves pass from their origin to their peripheral terminations, they give off a number of branches, each of which becomes invested with a lamellated sheath—an offshoot from that investing the parent trunk. This division of nerve-bundles and sheath continues throughout all the branchings down to the ultimate nerve-fibers, each of which is surrounded by a sheath of its own, consisting of a single layer of endothelial cells. This delicate transparent membrane, the sheath of Henle, is separated from the nerve-fiber by a considerable space, in which is contained lymph destined for the nutrition of the fiber. Near their ultimate terminations the nerve-fibers themselves undergo division, so that a single fiber may give origin to a number of branches, each of which contains a portion of the parent axis-cylinder and myelin.

Blood-supply.—Nerves being parts of living cells require for the maintenance of their nutrition a certain amount of blood. This is furnished by the blood-vessels ramifying in and supported by the connective-tissue framework. Here as elsewhere there is a constant exchange, through the capillary wall and the neurilemma, of nutritive material to the nerve proper and of waste materials to the blood.

The Chemic Composition and Metabolism.—Chemic analysis of nerve-tissue has shown the presence of water, proteids (two globulins and a nucleo-proteid), neurokeratin and nuclein, two phosphorized bodies (protagon and lecithin), several cerebrosides (nitrogen-holding bodies of a glucoside character, as shown by their yielding the reducing carbohydrate galactose), inorganic salts, and a series of nitrogen-holding bodies such as creatin, xanthin, urea, leucin, etc. As to the metabolism that is taking place in nerve-cells and fibers, practically nothing definite is known. That such changes, however, are taking place would be indicated first by the blood-supply, and second by the fact that withdrawal of the blood-supply is followed by a loss of irritability. The metabolism of the central nervous system is more active and extensive. In this situation any withdrawal of blood from compression or occlusion of blood-vessels is followed by impairment of nutrition and loss of function.

The Relation of the Nerves to the Central Nervous System.

The nerve-trunks in connection with the spinal cord, thirty-one pairs in number, pass through the intervertebral foramina. Near the outer limits of the foramina each nerve-trunk divides into two branches, generally termed roots, one of which, curving slightly forward and upward, enters the spinal cord on its anterior or ventral surface, while the other, curving backward and upward, enters on the posterior or dorsal surface. The former is termed the anterior or ventral

root; the latter, the posterior or dorsal root. Each dorsal root presents near its union with the ventral root a small ovoid grayish enlargement known as a ganglion. Both roots previous to entering the cord subdivide into from four to six fasciculi. ||

A microscopic examination of a cross-section of the spinal cord shows that the fibers of the ventral roots can be traced directly into the body of the nerve-cells in the anterior horns of the gray matter. The fibers of the dorsal roots are not so easily traced, for they diverge in several directions shortly after entering the cord. In their course they give off collateral branches which, in common with the main fiber, end in tufts which become associated with nerve-cells in both the anterior and posterior horns of the gray matter.

Of the nerves in connection with the base of the brain, some present a similar ganglionic enlargement, and therefore may be regarded as dorsal nerves, while others may be regarded as ventral nerves. Their relations within the medulla oblongata are similar to those within the spinal cord.

Efferent and Afferent Nerves.—Nerves are channels of communication between the brain and spinal cord, on the one hand, and the muscles, glands, blood-vessels, skin, mucous membrane, viscera, etc., on the other. Some of the nerve-fibers serve for the transmission of nerve energy from the brain and spinal cord to certain peripheral organs, and so increase or retard their activities; others serve for the transmission of nerve energy from certain peripheral organs to the brain and spinal cord which gives rise to sensation or other modes of nerve activity. The former are termed *efferent* or *centrifugal*, the latter *afferent* or *centripetal* nerves. Experimentally it has been determined that the anterior or ventral roots contain all the efferent fibers, the posterior or dorsal roots all the afferent fibers. Eg
9/10
note

THE PERIPHERAL ENDINGS OF NERVES.

Ant. horns
The **efferent nerves** as they approach their ultimate terminations lose both the neurilemma and myelin sheath. The axon or axis-cylinder then divides into a number of branches which become directly and intimately associated with tissue-cells. The particular mode of termination varies in different situations. These terminations are generally spoken of as end-organs, terminal organs, or end-tufts.

¶ In the *skeletal* muscle the nerve-fiber loses both neurilemma and myelin sheath at the point where it comes in contact with the muscle-fiber. ¶ After penetrating the sarcolemma, the axon or axis-cylinder divides into a number of small branches which appear to be embedded in a relatively large mass of sarcoplasm and nuclei, the whole forming the so-called "motor plate." Each muscle-fiber possesses one such plate or end-organ in mammalia, several in the frog. X

In the *visceral* muscle the terminal nerve-fibers derived from sympathetic or peripheral neurons are primarily non-medullated. The axons divide and subdivide and form plexuses which surround the muscle-cell bundles. Fine fibers from the plexuses are given off

FIG. 45.—MOTOR NERVE-ENDINGS OF INTERCOSTAL MUSCLE-FIBERS OF A RABBIT.
× 150.

which ultimately come into relation with each individual cell, on the surface of which they terminate in the form of one or more granular masses.

In the *glands*, taking as an illustration the parotid and mammary glands, the nerve-fibers, also derived from sympathetic or peripheral neurons, pass into the body of the gland and ultimately reach the acini, on the outer surface of which they ramify and form a plexus. From this plexus fine fibers penetrate the acinus wall and end on the gland-cell. The fibers present a varicose appearance (Fig. 46).

FIG. 46.—TERMINATIONS OF NERVE-FIBERS IN THE GLAND-CELLS. A. Cell of the parotid gland of a rabbit. B. Cells of the mammary gland of a cat in gestation.—(Doyen and Morat.)

The afferent nerves as they approach their ultimate terminations undergo similar changes.

The end-tufts become associated, in some situations, with specialized end-organs which are extremely complex; *e. g.*, the retina in the eye, the organ of Corti in the ear, the taste-beakers in the tongue, the olfactory cells in the nose.

In the *skin* and *mucous* membranes the mode of termination varies considerably. The following are some of the principal modes:

1. Free endings in the epithelium.
2. Tactile cells of Merkel.
3. Tactile corpuscles in the papillæ of the true skin.
4. Pacinian corpuscles found attached to the nerves of the hand and feet, to the intercostal nerves, and to nerves in other situations.
5. End-bulbs of Krause in the conjunctiva, clitoris, penis, etc.

(A consideration of these end-organs will be found in the chapters devoted to the organs of which they form a part.)

In the *skeletal muscles* afferent fibers become associated with small spindle-shaped structures known as muscle-spindles or neuromuscle end-organs. These spindles vary in length from 1 mm. to 4 mm. They consist of a capsule of fibrous tissue containing from five to twenty muscle-fibers. After penetrating the several layers of the capsule, the nerve-fibers lose the neurilemma and myelin sheaths. The axons or axis-cylinders then divide into several long narrow branches which wind themselves in a spiral manner around the contained muscle-fiber and terminate in small oval-shaped discs. Similar endings have been observed in the tendons of muscles.

Development and Nutrition of Nerves.—The **efferent nerve-fibers**, which constitute some of the cranial nerves and all the ventral roots of the spinal nerves, have their origin in cells located in the gray matter beneath the aqueduct of Sylvius, beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle, and in the anterior horns of the gray matter of the spinal cord. These cells are the modified descendants of independent, oval, pear-shaped cells—the neuroblasts—which migrate from the medullary tube. As they approach the surface of the cord their axons are directed toward the ventral surface, which eventually they pierce. Emerging from the cord, the axons continue to grow, and become invested with the myelin sheath and neurilemma, thus constituting the ventral roots.

The **afferent nerve-fibers**, which constitute some of the cranial nerves and all the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves, develop outside

FIG. 47.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE MODE OF ORIGIN OF THE VENTRAL AND DORSAL ROOTS.

of the central nervous system and only subsequently become connected with it. (See Fig. 47.) At the time of the closure of the medullary tube a band or ridge of epithelial tissue develops near the dorsal surface, which, becoming segmented, moves outward and forms the rudimentary spinal ganglia. The cells in this situation develop two axons, one from each end of the cell, which pass in opposite directions, one toward the spinal cord, the other toward the periphery. In the adult condition the two axons shift their position, unite, and form a T-shaped process, after which a division into two branches again takes place. In the ganglia of all the sensori-cranial and sensori-spinal nerves the cells have this histologic peculiarity.

The efferent fibers are therefore to be regarded as outgrowths from the nerve-cells in the ventral horns of the gray matter, and serve to bring the cells into anatomic and physiologic relationship directly with the skeletal muscles and indirectly, through the intermediation of ganglia (see sympathetic nervous system), with visceral muscles and glands.

The afferent fibers are to be regarded as outgrowths from the cells of the dorsal nerve ganglia, and serve to bring the skin, mucous membrane, and certain visceral structures into relation with specialized centers in the central nervous system.

Nerve Degeneration.—If any one of the cranial or spinal nerves be divided in any portion of its course, the part in connection with the periphery in a short time exhibits certain structural changes, to which the term degeneration is applied. The portion in connection with the brain or cord retains its normal condition. The degenerative process begins simultaneously throughout the entire course of the nerve, and consists in a disintegration and reduction of the medulla and axis-cylinder into nuclei, drops of myelin, and fat, which in time disappear through absorption, leaving the neurilemma intact. Coincident with these structural changes there is a progressive alteration and diminution in the excitability of the nerve. Inasmuch as the central portion of the nerve, which retains its connection with the nerve-cell, remains histologically normal, it has been assumed that the nerve-cells exert over the entire course of the nerve-fibers a nutritive or a trophic influence. This idea has been greatly strengthened since the discovery that the axis-cylinder, or the axon, has its origin in and is a direct outgrowth of the cell. When separated from the parent cell, the fiber appears to be incapable in itself of maintaining its nutrition.

The relation of the nerve-cells to the nerve-fibers, in reference to their nutrition, is demonstrated by the results which follow section of the ventral and dorsal roots of the spinal nerves. If the anterior root alone be divided, the degenerative process is confined to the peripheral portion, the central portion remaining normal. If the

posterior root be divided on the peripheral side of the ganglion, degeneration takes place only in the peripheral portion of the nerve. (See Fig. 48.) If the root be divided between the ganglion and the cord, degeneration takes place only in the central portion of the root. From these facts it is evident that the trophic centers for the ventral and dorsal roots lie in the spinal cord and spinal nerve ganglia, respectively, or, in other words, in the cells of which they are an integral part. The structural changes which nerves undergo after separation from their centers are degenerative in character, and the

FIG. 48.—DEGENERATION OF SPINAL NERVES AND NERVE-ROOTS AFTER SECTION. A. Section of nerve-trunk beyond the ganglion. B. Section of anterior root. C. Section of posterior root. D. Excision of ganglion. *a*. Anterior root. *p*. Posterior root. *g*. Ganglion. —(Dalton.)

process is usually spoken of, after its discoverer, as the *Wallerian degeneration*.

When the degeneration of the efferent nerves is completed, the structures to which they are distributed, especially the muscles, undergo an atrophic or fatty degeneration, with a change or loss of their irritability. This is, apparently, not to be attributed merely to inactivity, but rather to a loss of nerve influences, inasmuch as inactivity merely leads to atrophy and not to degeneration.

CLASSIFICATION OF NERVES.

The **efferent nerves** may be classified, in accordance with the characteristic form of activity to which they give rise, into several groups, as follows:

1. *Muscle* or motor nerves, those which convey nerve energy or nerve impulses to muscles and excite them to activity.
2. *Gland* or secretory nerves, those which convey nerve impulses to glands, and cause the formation and discharge of the secretion peculiar to the gland.
3. *Vascular* or vaso-motor nerves, those which convey nerve impulses to blood-vessels, and cause, either by stimulation or inhibition of

the mechanism of their walls, a contraction (vaso-constrictors) or dilatation (vaso-dilators) of the vessel.

4. *Inhibitory* nerves, those conveying nerve impulses that cause a slowing or complete cessation of the rhythmic action of organs.
5. *Accelerator* nerves, those conveying impulses that cause an increase in the rhythmic action of certain organs.

The efferent nerves have been somewhat differently classified by Gaskell as follows:

1. Nerves to **skeletal muscles**.
2. Nerves to **vascular muscles**.
 - (a) *Vaso-motor*, i. e., vaso-constrictors; accelerators and augmentors of the heart.
 - (b) *Vaso-inhibitory*, i. e., vaso-dilators; and inhibitors of the heart.
3. Nerves of the **visceral muscles**.
 - (a) *Viscero-motor*.
 - (b) *Viscero-inhibitory*.
4. Nerves to **glands**.

The **afferent nerves** may also be classified, in accordance with the character of the sensations or other modes of nerve activity to which they give rise, into several groups, as follows:

1. *Sensorifacient* nerves, those conveying nerve impulses that give rise in the brain to conscious sensations. They may be subdivided into—
 - (a) Nerves of special sense—e. g., olfactory, optic, auditory, gustatory, tactile, thermal, pain, pressure, muscle—giving rise to correspondingly named sensations.
 - (b) Nerves of general sense—e. g., the visceral afferent nerves—those which give rise normally to vague and scarcely perceptible sensations, such as the general sensations of well-being or discomfort, hunger, thirst, fatigue, sex, want of air, etc.
2. *Reflex* nerves, those which convey nerve impulses to the nerve-centers and cause a discharge and transmission of nerve impulses outward through efferent nerves to muscles, glands, or blood-vessels, and thus influence their activity. It is quite probable that one and the same nerve may subserve both sense and reflex action, owing to the collateral branches which are given off from the posterior roots as they ascend the posterior column of the cord.
3. *Inhibitor* nerves, those which are capable *reflexly* of retarding or inhibiting the activity of either nerve-centers or peripheral organs.

PHYSIOLOGIC PROPERTIES OF NERVES.

Nerve Irritability or Excitability and Conductivity.—These terms are employed to express that condition of a nerve which enables it to develop and to conduct nerve impulses from the center to the periphery, from the periphery to the center, in response to the action of stimuli. A nerve is said to be excitable or irritable so long as it possesses these capabilities or properties. For the manifestation of these properties the nerve must retain a state of physical and chemic integrity; it must undergo no change in structure or chemic composition. The irritability of an *efferent* nerve is demonstrated by the contraction of a muscle, by the secretion of a gland, or by a change in the caliber of a blood-vessel, whenever a corresponding nerve is stimulated. The irritability of an *afferent* nerve is demonstrated by the production of a sensation or a reflex action whenever it is stimulated. The irritability of nerves continues for a certain period of time after separation from the nerve-centers and even after the death of the animal, the time varying in different classes of animals. In the warm-blooded animals, in which the nutritive changes take place with great rapidity, the irritability soon disappears—a result due to disintegrative changes in the nerve, caused by the withdrawal of the blood-supply and other non-physiologic conditions. In cold-blooded animals, on the contrary, in which the nutritive changes take place relatively slowly, the irritability lasts, under favorable conditions, for a considerable time. Other tissues besides nerves possess irritability, that is, the property of responding to the action of stimuli—*e. g.*, glands and muscles, which respond by the production of a secretion or a contraction.

Independence of Tissue Irritability.—The irritability of nerves is distinct and independent of the irritability of muscles and glands, as shown by the fact that it persists in each a variable length of time after their histologic connections have been impaired or destroyed by the introduction of various chemic agents into the circulation. Curara, for example, induces a state of complete paralysis by modifying or depressing the conductivity of the end-organs of the nerves just where they come in contact with the muscles, without impairing the irritability of either nerve-trunks or muscles. Atropin induces complete suspension of glandular activity by impairing the terminal organs of the secretory nerves just where they come into relation with the gland-cells, without destroying the irritability of either gland-cell or nerve.

Nerve-fibers Stimuli.—Nerves do not possess the power of spontaneously generating and propagating nerve impulses; they can be aroused to activity only by the action of an external stimulus. In the physiologic condition the stimuli capable of throwing the nerve

into an active condition act for the most part on either the central or peripheral end of the nerve. In the case of motor nerves the stimulus to the excitation, originating in some molecular disturbance in the nerve-cells, acts upon the nerve-fibers in connection with them. In the case of sensory or afferent nerves the stimuli act upon the peculiar end-organs with which the sensory nerves are in connection, which in turn excite the nerve-fibers. Experimentally, it can be demonstrated that nerves can be excited by a sufficiently powerful stimulus applied in any part of their extent.

Nerves respond to stimulation according to their habitual function; thus, stimulation of a sensory nerve, if sufficiently strong, results in the sensation of pain; of the optic nerve, in the sensation of light; of a motor nerve, in contraction of the muscle to which it is distributed; of a secretory nerve, in the activity of the related gland, etc. It is, therefore, evident that peculiarity of nerve function depends neither upon any special construction or activity of the nerve itself nor upon the nature of the stimulus, but entirely upon the peculiarities of its central and peripheral end-organs.

Nerve stimuli may be divided into—

1. *General stimuli*, comprising those agents which are capable of exciting a nerve in any part of its course.
2. *Special stimuli*, comprising those agents which act upon nerves only through the intermediation of the end-organs.

The end-organs are specialized highly irritable structures placed between the nerve-fibers and the surface. They are especially adapted for the reception of special stimuli and for the liberation of energy, which in turn excites the nerve-fiber to activity.

General stimuli:

1. Mechanic: Sharp taps, sudden pressure, cutting, etc.
2. Thermic: Sudden application of heated object.
3. Chemic: Contact of various substances which alter their chemic composition quickly, *e. g.*, strong acids or alkalies, sol. sodium chlorid 15 per cent., sugar, urea, etc.
4. Electric: Either the constant or induced current.

Special stimuli:

For afferent nerves—

1. Light or ethereal vibrations acting upon the end-organs of the optic nerve in the retina.
2. Sound or atmospheric undulations acting upon the end-organs of the auditory nerve.
3. Heat or vibrations of the air acting upon the end-organs in the skin.
4. Chemic agencies acting upon the end-organs of the olfactory and gustatory nerves.

For efferent nerves—

A molecular disturbance in the central nerve-cells from which they arise, the nature of which is unknown.

Nature of the Nerve Impulse.—As to the nature of the nerve impulse generated by any of the foregoing stimuli, either general or special, but little is known. It has been supposed to partake of the nature of a molecular disturbance, a combination of physical and chemic processes attended by the liberation of energy, which propagates itself from molecule to molecule. The passage of the nerve impulse is accompanied by changes of electric tension, the extent of which is an indication of the intensity of the molecular disturbance. Judging from the deflections of the galvanometer needle it is probable that when the nerve impulse makes its appearance at any given point it is at first feeble, but soon reaches a maximum development, after which it speedily declines and disappears. It may, therefore, be graphically represented as a wave-like movement with a definite length and time duration. Under strictly physiologic conditions the nerve impulse passes in one direction only; in efferent nerves from the center to the periphery, in afferent nerves from the periphery to the center. Experimentally, however, it can be demonstrated that when a nerve impulse is aroused in the course of a nerve by an adequate stimulus it travels equally well in both directions from the point of stimulation. When once started, the impulse is confined to the single fiber and does not diffuse itself to fibers adjacent to it in the same nerve-trunk.

Rapidity of Conduction of the Nerve Impulse.—The passage of a nerve impulse, either from the brain to the periphery or in the reverse direction, requires an appreciable period of time. ^{Sensory 5} ^{motor 30} The velocity with which the impulse travels in human sensory nerves has been estimated at about 50 meters a second, and for motor nerves at from 28 to 33 meters a second. The rate of movement is, however, somewhat modified by temperature, cold lessening and heat increasing the rapidity; it is also modified by electric conditions, by the action of drugs, the strength of the stimulus, etc. The rate of transmission through the spinal cord is considerably slower than in nerves, the average velocity for voluntary motor impulses being only 11 meters a second, for sensory impulses 12 meters, and for tactile impulses 40 meters a second.

Nerve Fatigue.—Inasmuch as nerves are parts of living cells, the seat of nutritive changes, it might be supposed that the passage of nerve impulses would be attended by the disruption of energy-holding compounds, the production of waste products, the liberation of heat, and in time by the phenomena of fatigue. Though it is probable that changes of this character occur, yet no reliable experimental data have been obtained which afford a clue as to the nature or extent of any such changes. Stimulation of motor nerves with the induced electric current for four hours appears to be without influence either on the intensity of the nerve impulse or the rate of its conduction.

Identity of Efferent and Afferent Nerves and Nerve Impulses.

—Notwithstanding the classification of nerve-fibers based on differences of physiologic actions, there are no characters, either histologic or chemic, which serve to distinguish them from one another. Moreover, as the nerve impulse is conducted through a nerve-fiber equally well in both directions, as determined by experiments, it is probable that it does not differ in character in the two classes of nerves. That the efferent fibers conduct the nerve impulses from the nerve-centers to the periphery, and the afferent nerves from the periphery to the centers, is because of the fact that they receive their stimulus physiologically only in the centers or at the periphery. The fundamental reason for difference of effects produced by stimulation of different nerves is the character of the organ to which the nerve impulse is

conducted. A nerve is merely the transmitter of the nerve impulse, which if conducted to a muscle excites contraction; to a gland, secretion; to a blood-vessel, variation in caliber; to special areas in the brain, sensations of light, sound, pain, etc.

FIG. 49.—NERVE-MUSCLE PREPARATION OF A FROG. F. Femur. S. Sciatic nerve. I. Tendo Achillis.

Electric Excitation of Nerves.—For the purpose of studying the physiologic activities of nerves it has been found convenient to employ the nerve-muscle preparation (the gastrocnemius muscle and sciatic nerve) and to use as a stimulus the induced electric current. (See Fig. 49.) When kept moist, this preparation is extremely sensitive to either the galvanic or the induced current.

Though the development and conduction of a nerve impulse may be demonstrated by the deflection of the galvanometer needle or the movement of the mercury in the capillary electrometer, it is more conveniently demonstrated by the contraction of a muscle, the vigor of which, within limits, may be taken as a measure of the intensity of the impulse. The preparation should be enclosed in a moist chamber and the nerve connected with the inductorium through the intervention of non-polarizable electrodes. The muscle may be attached to the muscle-lever and its contractions recorded.

contraction of a muscle, the vigor of which, within limits, may be taken as a measure of the intensity of the impulse. The preparation should be enclosed in a moist chamber and the nerve connected with the inductorium through the intervention of non-polarizable electrodes. The muscle may be attached to the muscle-lever and its contractions recorded.

A single shock of an induced current develops, it is believed, a single nerve impulse followed by a single muscle contraction. A minimal contraction following a minimal electric stimulus presupposes the development of a nerve impulse of low intensity. Within certain limits a maximal contraction following a maximal electric stimulus presupposes the development of a nerve impulse of high intensity.

Intermediate contractions indicate nerve impulses of corresponding intensity.

Tetanzation of a muscle indicates that the nerve impulses arrive at the muscle with a frequency so great that the muscle does not succeed in relaxing from the effect of one stimulus before the next arrives. Incomplete as well as complete tetanus may be developed by gradually increasing the frequency of the stimulus. The character of the contraction caused by indirect stimulation—*i. e.*, though the nerve—does not differ in any essential respect from that due to direct stimulation.

ELECTRIC PHENOMENA OF NERVES.

Electric Currents from Injured Nerves.—It was discovered by du Bois-Reymond that electric currents can be obtained from nerves as well as from muscles, and that the electric properties of the former correspond in most respects to those of the latter. The laws governing the development and mode of action of the currents derived from muscles are equally applicable to the currents derived from nerves.

A nerve-cylinder obtained by making two transverse sections of any given nerve presents, as in the case of muscles, a natural and two artificial transverse surfaces. A line drawn around the cylinder at a point lying midway between the two end surfaces constitutes the equator. From such a cylinder strong currents are obtained when the natural longitudinal surface and the transverse surface are connected with the electrodes of the galvanometer circuit. The strength of the current thus obtained will diminish or increase according as the electrode on the longitudinal surface is removed from or brought near to the equator. If two symmetric points on the longitudinal surface equidistant from the equator are united, no current is obtainable. When asymmetric points on the longitudinal surface are connected, weak currents are obtained, in which case the point lying nearer the equator becomes positive to the point more distant, which becomes negative. From

FIG. 50.—DIAGRAM TO ILLUSTRATE THE CURRENTS IN NERVES. The arrowheads indicate the direction; the thickness of the lines indicates the strength of the currents.

these facts it is evident that all points on the longitudinal surface are electrically positive to the transverse surface and that the point of greatest positive tension is situated near the equator (Fig. 50).

The electromotive force of the nerve-current varies in strength with the length and thickness of the nerve. The strongest current obtained from the nerve of the frog is equal to the 0.002 of a Daniell cell; that obtained from the nerve of the rabbit, 0.026 of a Daniell. The existence of the nerve, its strength, duration, etc., depend largely on the maintenance of physiologic conditions. All influences which impair the nutrition of the nerve diminish the current. With the death of the nerve all electric phenomena disappear.

Negative Variation of the Nerve Current.—During the passage of the nerve impulse the resting nerve current, or the demarcation current, diminishes more or less completely in intensity, undergoes a *negative variation*, as shown by the return of the galvanometer needle, due to a change in its electromotive condition or to a diminution of the difference in potential between the positive longitudinal and negative transverse sections. This negative variation of the demarcation current is observed equally well from either the central or peripheral end of the nerve. If the two ends of the nerve are connected with galvanometers and the nerve stimulated in the middle, the demarcation currents simultaneously undergo a negative variation. This may be taken as a proof that the excitation process propagates itself equally well in both directions. The negative variation is intimately connected with changes in the molecular condition of the nerve and is not due to any extraneous electric or other influence. And du Bois-Reymond was also enabled to obtain a negative variation of the current in the nerves of a living frog which were yet in connection with the spinal cord. In this experiment the sciatic nerve was divided at the knee and freed from its connections up to the spinal column; the transverse and longitudinal surfaces were then placed in connection with the electrodes of the galvanometer wires and the current permitted to influence the needle. The animal was then subjected to the action of strychnin. Upon the appearance of the muscle spasms the needle was observed to swing backward toward the zero point to the extent of from 1 to 4 degrees, and upon the cessation of the spasms to return to its previous position. In an experiment of this nature it is obvious that the negative variation was the result of a physiologic stimulation of the nerve arising within the spinal cord.

The question also here arises as to whether the negative variation is due to a steady, continuous decrease of the natural current, or whether it is due to successive and rapidly following variations in its intensity, similar to that observed in muscles. Though this cannot be demonstrated with the physiologic rheoscope, as was the case with the muscle, there can be no doubt, both from experimentation and

analogy, that the latter supposition is the correct one. It has been shown that when non-polarizable electrodes connected with Siemen's telephone are placed in connection with the longitudinal and transverse sections of a nerve, low, sonorous vibrations are perceived during tetanic stimulation,—a proof that the active state of the nerve is connected with the production of discontinuous electric currents. The oscillations of the mercurial column of the capillary electrometer also reveal similar electric changes. It was also demonstrated by Bernstein with a specially devised apparatus, the repeating rheotome, that the negative variation is composed of a large number of single variations which succeed each other in rapid succession and summarize themselves in their effect on the needle.

Electric Currents from Uninjured Nerves.—The pre-existence of electric currents in living and wholly uninjured nerves while at rest has also been denied by Hermann, who regards all portions of the nerve as isoelectric, any difference of potential being the result of some injury to its surface. ✓

Action Currents.—For reasons to be stated below, it is very difficult to determine the presence of diphasic action currents during the passage of an excitatory impulse through the nerve-fiber. The so-called negative variation of the resting nerve current,—the demarcation current,—which is occasioned by tetanic stimulation, Hermann regards as the expression of an *action current* which flows in the nerve in a direction opposite to the demarcation current. The origin of this action current is to be sought for in the continuous negativity of that portion of the longitudinal surface of the nerve in contact with the diverting electrode, while the dying substance of the transverse surface takes no part in the excitation. This *tetanic* action current, or negative variation, was discovered by du Bois-Reymond, and Bernstein later succeeded in obtaining this action current during the passage of a single excitation process. That the return of the galvanometer needle toward the zero point is not due to an annulment of the demarcation current itself, but to the appearance of an action current, is shown by the fact that if the former be compensated by a battery current until the needle rests on the zero point the appearance of the latter current will cause the needle to swing in a direction the opposite of that caused by the demarcation current. The negative variation and action current may therefore be regarded as one and the same thing. It is the expression of the change the nerve is undergoing during the passage of the nerve impulse. The rapidity with which the negative variation or action current travels, the variation in its intensity from moment to moment, the time required for it to pass a given point, would express the change in the nerve to which the term nerve impulse is given. From experiments made with the differential rheotome, Bernstein calculated that the speed of the

negative variation is about 28 meters a second; that it is at first feeble, soon rises to a maximum, and then declines; that it requires 0.0006 to 0.0008 of a second to pass a given point. From these data it is evident that the negative variation or action current has a space value of about 18 mm. Transferring these statements to the nerve impulse, it may be said that it is a molecular disturbance, traveling at the rate of about 28 meters a second, is wave-like in character, 18 millimeters in length, and occupies 0.0006 to 0.0008 of a second in passing any given point.

Absence of Diphasic Action Currents.—When any two points on the longitudinal surface which do not exhibit a current are connected with the galvanometer and a single wave of excitation passes beneath the electrodes, it might be expected that, as in the case of the muscle, a diphasic action current would be observed, from the fact that the portions of the nerve beneath the electrodes become alternately negative with reference to all the rest of the nerve. This, however, is not the case, the absence of the two opposing phases of the action current being explained on the supposition that the negativity of the two led-off points is of equal amount, and that, owing to the great rapidity with which the excitation wave travels, the two phases fall together too closely in time to alternately influence the galvanometer needle. During stimulation of the nerve, when two currentless or isoelectric points are connected, there is also an absence of the action current, as was observed first by du Bois-Reymond, and which is to be explained on similar grounds. It is true that an apparent action current is sometimes seen when the stimulating current is very powerful or the seat of stimulation too near the diverting electrodes. This, however, must be attributed to an electrotonic state of the nerve.

The Effects of a Galvanic Current on a Nerve.—When a constant galvanic current of medium strength is made to pass through a portion of a nerve, several distinct effects are produced:

1. *The development of a nerve impulse* at the moment the current enters and at the moment the current leaves the nerve, *i. e.*, at the moment the circuit is made and at the moment it is broken. The development of the nerve impulse is made evident by the contraction of the muscle if the nerve-muscle preparation be used. If the current be either very weak, or very strong, the muscle contraction may not always take place.

2. *The development of electric currents* on each side of the positive pole or anode, and the negative pole or cathode (see Fig. 51), which can be led off by means of wires into a galvanometer circuit from either the artificial transverse and longitudinal surfaces, or from any two points on the longitudinal surface as shown by the deflection of the galvanometer needle. The direction of these electric currents in the nerve coincides with that of the galvanic or "polarizing

current." The "natural nerve currents," the currents of injury or demarcation currents, as they are variously termed, are at the same time increased and decreased at opposite extremities of the nerve according to the direction of the polarizing current.

To this changed condition of the electromotive forces in a nerve the term *electrotonus* was given (du Bois-Reymond). The currents themselves are known as *electrotonic currents*; from their relation to the anode and cathode, they are termed *anelectrotonic* and *catelectrotonic* currents. The condition of the nerve around the poles both in the intra-polar and extra-polar regions is known as *anelectrotonus* and *catelectrotonus*.

The electrotonic currents vary considerably in strength and extent, according to the intensity of the polarizing current, increasing steadily with the intensity of the latter up to the point at which the polarizing current begins to destroy the physical and chemic integrity of the nerve. The electrotonic currents are strongest in the immediate neighborhood of the electrodes, but gradually diminish in strength

FIG. 51.—ELECTROTONIC CURRENTS.

as the distance between the polarized and led-off portions is increased. The distance to which the electrotonic currents extend along the nerve will depend very largely upon the strength of the polarizing current, though it is conditioned by the physical state of the nerve; for if it be ligated or injured beyond the polarized portion, the electrotonic currents are abolished. The electrotonic currents have no necessary connection with the natural nerve currents, nor are they to be regarded as branchings of the galvanic current. They are in all probability of artificial origin, due to an inner positive and negative polarization of the nerve which extends for a variable distance on each side of the poles, and due to the action of the polarizing or the galvanic current.

3. *An alteration in the excitability and conductivity* of the nerve in the neighborhood of the poles, whereby the results of nerve stimulation—that is, muscle contraction, sensation, and inhibition—are increased or decreased according to the strength and direction of the current. To this condition the term *electrotonus* was also given (Pflüger). This word has thus been employed to express two distinct

series of effects exhibited by a nerve through a portion of which a constant galvanic current is passing. It appears desirable, for the sake of clearness, to limit the term *electrotonus* to the electric or electrotonic currents which can be led off from either extremity of the nerve, and to apply to the modifications of irritability which accompany electrotonus the expression, *electrotonic alteration of excitability and conductivity*.

During the passage of the current the excitability of the intra-polar as well as the extra-polar regions undergoes a change which, as shown on examination, is found to be *diminished* in the neighborhood of the *anode* or positive pole and *increased* in the neighborhood of the *cathode* or negative pole. These alterations in the excitability are most marked in the immediate vicinity of the electrodes, though they extend for some distance into both the extra-polar and intra-polar regions, though with gradually diminishing intensity, until they finally disappear. Between the electrodes there

FIG. 52.—SCHEME OF THE ELECTROTONIC EXCITABILITY.

is a point where the excitability is unchanged and known as the neutral or indifferent point (Fig. 52). The extent to which the excitability is modified as well as the position of the neutral point will depend largely on the strength of the polarizing or galvanic current.

The electrotonic alterations of excitability and conductivity can be experimentally demonstrated on the muscle-nerve preparation in the following manner:

1. With a descending current of medium strength. Previous to the closure of the polarizing current, the nerve is stimulated first in the extra-polar anodic region and the extra-polar cathodic region with an induction shock of medium intensity and the height of the contraction recorded. On repeating the stimulation *after* closure of the polarizing current the contraction resulting from stimulation of the anodic region will be enfeebled or may be entirely wanting, while the contraction from stimulation of the cathodic region will be decidedly increased. (See Fig. 53.)

Centripetal - Anode is just the same

2. With an ascending current of the same strength. After preliminary testing of the excitability and the subsequent closure of the polarizing current, it will be found that stimulation of the extrapolar anodic region will provoke a much less energetic

FIG. 53.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE REGION OF INCREASED EXCITABILITY CAUSED BY THE PASSAGE OF A GALVANIC CURRENT, STIMULATION OF WHICH GIVES RISE TO INCREASED CONTRACTION.

contraction or perhaps none at all. Stimulation of the extracathodic region, though of increased excitability, as shown by the previous experiment, may also fail to provoke a contraction, owing to the diminished conductivity of the region in the neighbor-

FIG. 54.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE REGION OF DECREASED EXCITABILITY CAUSED BY THE PASSAGE OF A GALVANIC CURRENT, STIMULATION OF WHICH GIVES RISE TO DECREASED CONTRACTION.

hood of the anode. The impulse on reaching this region is blocked in its passage. A similar if not more marked decrease

in the conductivity may be developed in the region of the cathode if the current strength be very great. (See Fig. 54.)

The Law of Contraction; Polar Stimulation.—It was stated in a previous paragraph that when a galvanic current of medium strength is made to enter a nerve, and when it is withdrawn from the nerve, there is a contraction of its related muscle. These are generally known as the make and break effects. During the actual passage of the current no effect is observed so long as its strength remains uniform. Any sudden variation in the strength of the current at once arouses the nerve to activity, as shown by a muscle contraction.

The muscle response to the make and break of the constant current is more or less variable unless the direction of the current as well as its strength be taken into consideration. If the current is made to flow from the central toward the peripheral end of the nerve it is termed a *direct, descending, or centrifugal* current; if it is made to flow in the reverse direction, it is termed an *indirect, ascending, or centripetal* current. The strength of the current is determined and regulated by means of a rheocord.

The make and break of currents of different but known strengths and directions give rise to contractions which occur with more or less regularity. The order in which they occur under these varying conditions of experimentation has been determined and tabulated as follows by Pflüger, and is termed the *law of contraction*:

CURRENT INTENSITY.	ASCENDING CURRENT.		DESCENDING CURRENT.	
	Make.	Break.	Make.	Break.
Weak, -----	Contraction.	Rest.	Contraction.	Rest.
Medium, -----	Contraction.	Contraction.	Contraction.	Contraction.
Strong, -----	Rest.	Contraction.	Contraction.	Rest or weak contraction.

The results as above tabulated are sometimes complicated on the opening of the circuit by a series of irregular pulsations of the muscle, an apparent tetanus, and long known as the opening tetanus of Ritter, which is attributed to rapid changes in the irritability of the nerve, in the region of the anode. A similar tetanic contraction of the muscle is sometimes observed on the closure of the circuit due to continued excitation in the region of the cathode. This is known as the closing tetanus of Wundt. All the phenomena of the law of contraction were explained by Pflüger on the assumption that the current stimulates the nerve only at the one electrode, at the cathode on closing, and at the anode on opening, or, in other words, by the appearance of catelectrotonus or by the disappearance of anelectrotonus, both conditions being attended by a rise of excitability—not, however, by the opposite changes. It is further assumed that the

appearance of catelectrotonus is more effective as a stimulus than the disappearance of anelectrotonus. For these reasons the term *polar stimulation* is generally employed in discussing the make and break effects of the galvanic current. The law of contraction may then be explained as follows: Very feeble currents, either ascending or descending, produce contraction only upon the closure of the circuit, the sudden increase of the excitability in the catelectrotonic area being alone sufficient to generate an impulse. The contraction which follows the closing of the weak ascending current depends upon the fact that the decrease of excitability and conductivity at the anode is insufficient to interfere with the conduction of the cathodal stimulus. Medium currents, either ascending or descending, produce contraction both on closing and opening the circuit. The appearance of catelectrotonus and the disappearance of anelectrotonus are both sufficiently powerful to generate an impulse without, however, seriously impairing the conductivity of the nerve.

Very strong currents produce contraction only upon the opening of the ascending and closure of the descending currents, or upon the passage of the excitability in the former from the marked anelectrotonic decrease to the normal condition, and in the latter from the normal to that of catelectrotonic increase. The absence of contraction upon the closure of the ascending current is dependent upon the blocking of the cathodal stimulus by the decrease of the excitability and conductivity at the anode. With the opening of the descending current the disappearance of anelectrotonus should also be followed by contraction, which would indeed be the case if the stimulus so generated was not blocked by the decrease of the conductivity at the cathode.

The order in which the contractions occur may be tabulated as follows:

With Ascending Current.			With Descending Current.		
Weak, -----1.	K. C. C.*	--	K. C. C.	--	
Medium, -----2.	K. C. C.	A. O. C.†	K. C. C.	A. O. C.	
Strong, -----3.	--	A. O. C.	K. C. C.	A. O. C. (?)	

Polar Stimulation of Human Nerves.—The preceding statements as to changes in the excitability caused by the passage of a constant current, as well as to the law of contraction, are based entirely on experiments made with the isolated nerve of the frog. It is probable, however, that the same phenomena would have been observed had the nerve of a mammal been used and its excitability been maintained.

If the electrodes connected with the wires of a sufficiently strong galvanic battery be applied to the skin over the course of a superficially

* K. C. C., cathodal closing contraction. † A. O. C., anodal opening contraction.

lying nerve, *e. g.*, the brachial, it will be found that there occurs on the closure of the circuit an *increase* in the excitability in the extra-polar anelectrotonic region and a *decrease* in the excitability in the extra-polar catelectrotonic region, as shown by stimulating the nerve in the extra-polar regions with the induced current—results which are in apparent contradiction to those obtained with the isolated nerve. This want of accordance in the results of the two classes of experiments arises from a failure to recognize the fact that the physiologic anode and cathode do not coincide with the physical anode and cathode.

It has been experimentally demonstrated that owing to the large amount of readily conducting tissue by which the nerve is surrounded, the current density, though great immediately under the electrode, quickly decreases at a short distance from it, so that for the nerve it becomes almost *nil*. The current, therefore, shortly after entering, again leaves the nerve at various points which become physiologic cathodes. Stimulation of this physiologic cathode with the induced current gives rise, therefore, to the phenomenon of increased excitability in the region of the anode. If, however, the galvanic and stimulating current be combined in one circuit and both be applied to the same tract of nerve, results will be obtained which harmonize with those obtained with the frog's nerve.

The changes in the excitability of a nerve of a living man and the contractions which follow the closing and opening of the constant current have been thoroughly studied by Waller and de Watteville. These observers employed a method similar to that of Erb, conjoining in one circuit the testing and polarizing currents. By the graphic method they recorded first the contraction produced by an induction shock alone; and, secondly, the contraction produced by the same stimulus under the influence of the polarizing current. As a result of many experiments, they also demonstrated an increase of the excitability in the polar region when it is cathodic, and a decrease when it is anodic. Following the suggestion of Helmholtz, that the current density quickly decreases with the distance from the electrodes, they recognize, at the point of entrance and exit of the current from the nerve, two regions—a polar, having the same sign as the electrode, and a peripolar, having the opposite sign (Figs. 55 and 56). The peripolar regions also experience similar alterations of excitability, though less in degree, according as they are cathodic or anodic.

As it is impossible to confine the current to the trunk of the nerve when surrounded by living tissues, as is easily the case when experimenting with the frog's nerves, it is incorrect to speak of either ascending or descending currents. Waller,* who has thoroughly

* "Human Physiology," p. 363, 1891.

studied the electrotonic effects of the galvanic current from this point of view, sums up his conclusions in the following words: "We must apply one electrode only to the nerve and attend to its effects alone, completing the circuit through a second electrode, which is applied according to convenience to some other part of the body.

"Confining our attention to the first electrode, let us see what will happen according as it is *anode* or *cathode* of a galvanic current (Figs. 55 and 56). If this electrode be the anode of a current, the latter enters the nerve by a series of points and leaves it by a second series of points; the former, or proximal series of points, collectively constitutes the *polar* zone or region; the latter, or distal series of points, collectively constitutes the *peripolar* zone or region. In such case the polar region is the seat of entrance of current into the nerve—*i. e.*, is *anodic*; the peripolar region is the seat of exit of current from the nerve—*i. e.*, is *cathodic*. If, on the contrary, the electrode under observation be the cathode of a current, the latter enters the nerve

FIG. 55.—ANODE OF BATTERY. Polar region of nerve is anodic. Peripolar region of nerve is cathodic.

FIG. 56.—CATHODE OF BATTERY. Polar region of nerve is cathodic. Peripolar region of nerve is anodic.

by a series of points which collectively constitute a 'peripolar' region, and it leaves the nerve by a series of points which collectively constitute a 'polar' region. The current, at its entrance into the body, diffuses widely, and at its exit it concentrates; its 'density' is greatest close to the electrode, and, the greater the distance of any point from the electrode, the less the current density at that point; hence it is obvious that the current density is greater in the polar than in the peripolar region. These conditions having been recognized, we may apply to them the principles learned by study of frogs' nerves under simpler conditions. Seeing that, with either pole of the battery, whether anode or cathode, the nerve has in each case points of entrance (constituting a collective anode) and points of exit to the current (constituting a collective cathode), and admitting as proved that make excitation is cathodic, break excitation anodic, we may, with a sufficiently strong current, expect to obtain a contraction at make and at break with either anode or cathode applied to the nerve; and

we do so, in fact. When the cathode is applied, and the current is made and broken, we obtain a *cathodic make contraction* and a *cathodic break contraction*; when the anode is applied, and the current is made and broken, we obtain an *anodic make contraction* and an *anodic break contraction*. These four contractions are, however, of very different strengths; the cathodic make contraction is by far the strongest; the cathodic break contraction is by far the weakest; the cathodic make contraction is stronger than the anodic make contraction; the anodic break contraction is stronger than the cathodic break contraction. Or, otherwise regarded, if, instead of comparing the contractions obtained with a sufficiently strong current, we observe the order of their appearance with currents gradually increased

FIG. 57.—MOTOR POINTS OF THE MEDIAN AND ULNAR NERVES, WITH THE MUSCLES SUPPLIED BY THEM.

from weak to strong, we shall find that the cathodic make contraction appears first, that the cathodic break contraction appears last, and the formula of contraction for man reads as follows:

“Weak current, -----	K. C. C.			
Medium current, ----	K. C. C.	A. C. C.	A. O. C.	
Strong current, ----	K. C. C.	A. C. C.	A. O. C.	K. O. C.”

The constant or the galvanic current is frequently used for therapeutic and diagnostic purposes. In accordance with the statements above quoted, one electrode should be applied to the part to be investigated, the other to some indifferent region. The electrode con-

veying the current to or from this part should be of a size sufficient to localize the current and to increase its density. It was discovered by Duchenne that there are certain points all over the body stimulation of which is more quickly followed by muscle contraction than others. It was subsequently discovered by Remak that these points coincide with the entrance of the nerve into the muscle. It is to these motor points that the one electrode should be applied. The position of some of these points on the forearm is shown in Fig. 57.

Reactions of Degeneration.—In consequence of the degeneration and changes in irritability which occur in nerves and muscles when separated, either experimentally or as the result of disease, the response of these structures to the induced and the make and break of the constant current differs from that observed in the physiologic condition. The facts observed under the application of these two forms of electricity are of importance in the diagnosis and therapeutics of the precedent lesions. The principal difference of behavior is observed in the muscles, which exhibit diminished or abolished excitability to the induced current, while at the same time manifesting an increased excitability to the constant current, so much so is this the case that a closing contraction is just as likely to occur at the positive as at the negative pole. This peculiarity of the muscle response is termed the *reaction of degeneration*. The synchronous diminished excitability of the nerves is the same for either current. The term “*partial reaction of degeneration*” is used when there is a normal reaction of the nerves, with the degenerative reaction of the muscles. This condition is observed in progressive muscular atrophy.

Reflex Action.—Inasmuch as many of the muscle movements of the body, as well as the formation and discharge of secretions from glands, variations in the caliber of blood-vessels, inhibition and acceleration in the activity of various organs, are the result of stimulations of the terminal organs of afferent nerves, they are termed, for convenience, reflex actions, and, as they take place for the most part through the spinal cord and medulla oblongata and independently of the brain or of volitional influences, they are also termed involuntary actions. As many of the processes to be described in succeeding chapters are of this character, requiring for their performance the coöperation of several organs and tissues associated through the intermediation of the nervous system, it seems advisable to consider briefly, in this connection, the parts involved in a reflex action, as well as their mode of action. As shown in Fig. 58, the necessary structures are as follows:

1. A sentient surface, skin, mucous membrane, sense-organ, etc.
2. An afferent nerve-fiber and cell.
3. An emissive cell, from which arises —

4. An efferent nerve, distributed to a responsive organ, as
5. Muscle, gland, blood-vessel, etc.

Such a combination of structures constitutes a reflex mechanism or arc, the nerve portion of which is composed of but two neurons—an afferent and an efferent. An arc of this simplicity would of necessity subserve but a simple movement. The majority of reflex activities, however, are extremely complex, and involve the coöperation and coördination of a number of structures frequently situated at distances more or less remote from one another. This implies that a number of neurons are associated in function. The afferent neurons are brought into relation with the dendrites of the efferent neurons by the end-tufts of the collateral branches, which may extend

FIG. 58.—DIAGRAM SHOWING STRUCTURES CONNECTED WITH REFLEX ACTIONS. A. Transverse section of spinal cord with centers in the anterior horn of the gray matter for muscles, *m*, glands, *g*, and blood-vessels, *b*. *e.f.n.* Efferent nerves which convey nerve impulses to these organs. *s*. Sensory surface. *a.f.n.* Afferent nerve conveying nerve impulses to the centers in the spinal cord.

for some distance up and down the cord before passing into the various segments.

For the excitation of a reflex action it is essential that the stimulus applied to the sentient surface be of an intensity sufficient to develop in the terminals of the afferent nerve a series of nerve impulses, which, traveling inward, will be distributed to and received by the dendrites

of the emissive or motor cell. With the reception of these impulses there is apparently a disturbance of the equilibrium of its molecules, a liberation of energy, and, in consequence, a transmission outward of impulses through the efferent nerve to muscle, gland, or blood-vessel, separately or collectively, with the production of muscular contraction, glandular secretion, vascular dilatation or contraction, etc. (The reflex actions take place, for the most part, through the spinal cord and medulla oblongata, which, in virtue of their contained centers, coördinate the various organs and tissues concerned in the performance of the organic functions. The movements of mastication; the secretion of saliva; the muscular, glandular, and vascular phenomena of gastric and intestinal digestion; the vascular and respiratory movements; the mechanism of micturition, etc., are illustrations of reflex activity.

CHAPTER VIII.

FOODS.

The functional activity of every organ and tissue of the body is accompanied by a more or less active disintegration of the living material, the bioplasm, of which it is composed. The complex and highly unstable molecules of this living material are continually undergoing disruption and falling into less complex and more stable compounds; these, through oxidative processes, are eventually reduced through a series of descending chemic stages to a small number of simpler compounds which, being of no further value to the organism, are eliminated by the various eliminating or excretory organs, the lungs, skin, kidney, liver. Among these excreted compounds the more important are urea, uric acid, and carbon dioxide. Many other compounds, organic as well as inorganic, are also eliminated from the body in the various excretions, though they are present in but small amounts. Coincident with this disintegration of living material there is a transformation of its potential into kinetic energy, which manifests itself for the most part as heat and mechanic motion.

In order that the organs and tissues may continue in the performance of their functions, it is essential that they be supplied with nutritive materials similar to those which enter into their own composition: viz., proteids, fat, carbohydrates, water, and inorganic salts. These compounds, though originally derived from the food, are immediately derived from the blood as it flows through the capillary blood-vessels. The blood is therefore to be regarded as a reservoir of nutritive material in a condition to be absorbed and transformed into utilizable and living material. Inasmuch as the materials lost to the body daily, through disintegration and oxidation, though considerable, are supplied by the blood, it is evident that this fluid would diminish rapidly in volume, with a corresponding decline in functional activity, were it not restored by the introduction into the body of new material in the food. With the diminution of the volume of the blood and an insufficient supply to the tissues, there arise the sensations of hunger and thirst, which lead to the consumption of food and the subsequent restoration of the physiologic condition of the tissues. These two sensations are also partially dependent on the empty condition of the stomach and the dryness of the mucous membrane of the mouth and throat.

The foods which are consumed daily in response to the sensations of hunger and thirst are complex in composition and contain, though in varying amounts, proteids, fats, carbohydrates, water, and inorganic salts, which, in contradistinction to foods, are termed food principles or nutritive principles. In these compounds is also to be found the potential energy necessary to maintain the dynamic equilibrium of the body and which will become manifest as heat and mechanic motion in the transformations of the material underlying the nutritive processes.

The animal body may be therefore regarded as a machine capable each day of performing a certain amount of work by the expenditure of a definite amount of energy. In the performance of its work, whether it be the raising of weights against gravity, the overcoming of friction, cohesion, or elasticity, the machine suffers disintegration and loses a portion of its available energy. Unlike other machines, however, it possesses the power, within limits, of self-renewal, self-adjustment, when supplied with foods in proper quantity and quality.

QUANTITIES OF FOOD PRINCIPLES REQUIRED DAILY.

In order that the body may continue in the performance of its work and yet retain a given weight, it is essential that the loss to the body daily shall be exactly compensated by the introduction and assimilation of a corresponding amount of food principles. If this condition is realized, the body neither gains nor loses, but remains in a condition of nutritive equilibrium. The determination of the exact quantities of the different food principles required daily and their ratio one to another is made from an examination of the quantity and composition of the daily excretions. Since the proteids disintegrated are represented in the excretions by urea and similar nitrogen-holding compounds and the fats and carbohydrates by carbon dioxide it becomes possible to determine from them the quantities required to restore equilibrium under any given condition. But as the activity of the nutritive changes will vary in accordance with climatic conditions, work done, etc., and as the excreted products will vary in the same ratio, it is obvious that the required amounts of food will vary in accordance with these varying conditions, if equilibrium is to be maintained.

Various estimates have been made by different investigators as to the amounts of the excreted products and the food principles required daily, which, though differing to some extent, have, nevertheless, an average nutritive and energy-producing value. The following table shows the diet scale of Vierordt and the excretions to which it would give rise. As the income and outgo practically balance, there would be no change in the weight.

COMPARISON OF THE INCOME AND OUTGO.

INCOME.	GRAMS.	OUNCES.	OUTGO.	GRAMS.	OUNCES.
Proteid, -----	120	4.25	Water, -----	2818	99.30
Fat, -----	90	3.17	Urea, -----	40	1.40
Carbohydrates, -----	330	11.64	Feces, dry, -----	38	1.60
Salts, -----	32	1.13	Salts, -----	32	1.13
Water, -----	2818	99.30	Carbon dioxid, -----	922	32.37
Oxygen, -----	756	26.66	Water formed in body,	296	10.33
	4146	146.13		4146	146.15

Other estimates as to the amounts of the organic food principles required daily are as follows:

	Ranke. Grams.	Voit. Grams.	Moleschott. Grams.	Atwater. Grams.	Hultgren. Grams.
Proteid, -----	100	118	130	125	134
Fat, -----	100	56	84	125	79
Starch, -----	250	500	550	400	522

In arranging tables showing the relation between the income and the outgo, it is generally customary to state merely the amounts by weight of the nitrogen and carbon each contains. This method furnishes sufficiently accurate information regarding the metabolism of the body, for the reason that the nitrogen represents the proteid, and the carbon, with the exception of that contained in the proteid, the fat and carbohydrates which have undergone disintegration or metabolism.

The following balance table, as given by Ranke, shows the relation of the nitrogen to the carbon in the average mixed diet and in the excretions of a man weighing 70 kilograms, in a condition of nutritive equilibrium:

INCOME.	GRAMS.	N.	C.
Proteid, -----	100	15.5	53.0
Fat, -----	100	---	79.0
Carbohydrates, -----	250	---	93.0
		15.5	225.0
OUTGO.	GRAMS.	N.	C.
Urea, -----	31.5	14.4	6.16
Uric acid, -----	0.5		
Feces, -----	---	1.1	10.84
CO ₂ , -----	---	---	208.00
		15.5	225.00

From the above it will be observed that the daily discharge for each kilogram of body-weight is 0.21 gram nitrogen and 3.03 grams of carbon; the relation of the two being $\frac{C}{N} = 14.5$. On a diet in which there is an excess of either proteid or carbohydrates this ratio necessarily changes.

CLASSIFICATION OF FOOD PRINCIPLES.

Though the food principles are grouped as proteids, fats, carbohydrates, etc., the members of each group differ somewhat in chemic composition, digestibility, and nutritive value. These groups are as follows:

I. PROTEIDS.

Principle.	Where found.
Myosin, -----	Flesh of animals.
Albumin, vitellin, -----	White of egg, yolk of egg.
Caseinogen, -----	Milk.
Serum-albumin, fibrin, -----	Blood contained in meat.
Glutin, -----	Grain of wheat and other cereals.
Vegetable albumin, -----	Soft-growing vegetables.
Legumin, -----	Peas, beans, lentils, etc.

2. FATS.

Animal fats, -----	In adipose tissue of animals.
Vegetable oils, -----	In seeds, grains, nuts, fruits, and other vegetable tissues.

3. CARBOHYDRATES.

Dextrose or grape-sugar, -----	} In fruits.
Levulose or fruit-sugar, -----	
Lactose or milk-sugar, -----	Milk.
Saccharose or cane-sugar, -----	Sugar-cane, beet roots.
Maltose, -----	Malt and malted foods.
Starch, -----	{ Cereals, tuberous roots, and leguminous plants.
Glycogen, -----	
	Liver, muscles.

4. INORGANIC.

Water, -----	} In nearly all animal and vegetable foods.
Sodium and potassium chlorid, -----	
Sodium, potassium, and calcium phosphates and carbonates, -----	
Iron, -----	

5. VEGETABLE ACIDS.

Citric, tartaric acetic, malic, -----	In fruit and vegetables.
---------------------------------------	--------------------------

6. ACCESSORY FOODS.

Coffee, Tea, Cocoa, Alcohol.

Disposition of Food.—The proteid principles of the food, after undergoing digestion and conversion into peptones, are absorbed into the blood. During the act of absorption they are transformed into the form of proteids characteristic of blood. After being distributed by the blood-stream to the tissues, they are brought into relation with the living cells. The disposition made of the proteid material by the bioplasm of the cell has not been definitely determined. According to Voit, of the proteid thus brought into contact with the living tissues, only a small percentage is utilized and assimilated for tissue repair. This he terms tissue or organ proteid. The remaining large percentage circulating in the interstices of the tissues, though not forming an integral part of them, is acted on directly by them, merely in virtue of contact—split up, oxidized, and reduced to simpler compounds. This he terms circulating proteid.

According to Pflüger and others, this view is not tenable. Pflüger asserts that, as material changes or metabolism can only take place within living cells, all the proteid must first be assimilated and organized by the cells before it can undergo metabolic changes. Metabolism by contact action is denied, and the division of proteids into organ and circulating proteid is not justifiable.

In the process of metabolism the proteid suffers disintegration, giving rise through oxidation to some carbon-holding compound, possibly fat, and to some nitrogen-holding compounds, which eventually give rise to urea. The intermediate stages, though not definitely known, are possibly represented by glycin, creatin, ammonium carbamate, etc. The disintegration of the proteids is attended by the disengagement of heat, thus contributing to the general store of the energy of the body.

The fat principles, after digestion, are absorbed by the lymphatic vessels and discharged by the thoracic duct into the blood, from which they rapidly disappear. // Though it is possible that a portion of the fat enters directly into the formation of the living material, it is generally believed that it is at once oxidized and reduced to carbon dioxid and water with the liberation of energy. // The natural supposition that a portion of the ingested fat was directly stored up in the cells of the areolar connective tissue, thus giving rise to adipose tissue, has been a subject of much controversy, though modern experimentation renders this very probable. // The body-fat, under physiologic conditions, is also a product of the metabolic activity of connective-tissue cells and is a derivative of both proteids and carbohydrates. //

The carbohydrate principles, after digestion, are absorbed into the blood as dextrose. // This compound is then stored up in the liver and muscles as glycogen. // The intermediate stages which glycogen passes through before it is reduced to carbon dioxid and water are only imperfectly known. Though a large part of the carbohydrate material is at once oxidized, it is now well established that another

portion contributes to the formation of, if it is not directly converted into, fat. As the carbohydrates form a large portion of the food, they contribute materially to the production of energy.

The *inorganic* principles, though not playing apparently as active a part in the metabolism of the body as the organic, are nevertheless essential to its physiologic activity.

Water is promptly absorbed after ingestion and becomes a part of the circulating fluids—blood and lymph. In the digestive apparatus it favors the occurrence of those chemic changes in the food necessary for their absorption, it promotes absorption of the food, holds various constituents of the blood and other fluids in solution, hastens the general metabolism of the body, holds in solution various products of metabolic activity, and, leaving the body through the excretory organs, promotes their elimination.

Sodium chlorid is absorbed into the blood and, unless taken in excess, is utilized in replacing that which is lost to the organism daily. The exact rôle which sodium chlorid plays in the nutritive process is unknown; but, as it is present as a necessary constituent in all the fluids and solids of the body, and as it is instinctively employed as a condiment, it may be assumed to have a more or less important function.

When taken as a condiment, it imparts sapidity to the food and excites the flow of the digestive fluids; it ultimately furnishes the chlorin for the hydrochloric acid of the gastric juice. Judging from the impairment of the nutrition as observed in animals after deprivation of salt for a long period of time, it favorably influences the growth and functional activity of all tissues.

It is well known that herbivorous animals, races of men as well as individuals who live largely on vegetable foods, require a larger additional amount of sodium chlorid than carnivorous animals, or human beings who live largely on animal foods, even though the two classes of foods contain relatively the same amounts. The explanation is that the vegetable foods contain potassium salts which, meeting in the blood with sodium chlorid, undergo decomposition into potassium chlorid and sodium carbonate or phosphate, all of which, when in excess, are at once eliminated by the kidneys. The blood, therefore, becomes poorer in sodium chlorid, one of its necessary constituents.

Potassium phosphate and *carbonate* are also essential to the normal composition of the solids and fluids. They impart a certain degree of alkalinity to the blood and lymph, one of the conditions necessary to the life and activity of the tissue-cells bathed by them. When administered in small doses, they increase the force of the heart, raise the arterial pressure, and increase the activity of the circulation.

Calcium phosphate and *carbonate* are partly utilized in maintain-

ing the solidity of the bones and teeth, replacing the amount metabolized daily. Inasmuch as the metabolism of these two tissues is slight, there is not much need in the adult for lime as an article of food. In young animals lime is essential to the solidification and development of bone. When deprived of it, the skeleton undergoes a defective development similar to the pathologic condition known as rickets. Lime is present in milk to the extent of 0.15 per cent., as well as in eggs and peas in relatively large quantities.

Iron is contained in both animal and vegetable foods, not, however, in the form of inorganic iron, nor in the form of an organic salt, but as a compound with nuclein, thus forming an integral part of the proteid molecule. After absorption the iron is utilized in the formation of the coloring-matter of the blood-corpuscles—hemoglobin. The organic compounds of iron and the nucleins have been termed *hematogens*. The amount of iron ingested has been estimated at from 10 to 90 milligrams, the larger part of which is eliminated in the feces. The relatively small part eliminated by the kidneys and liver is usually taken as the amount metabolized, though it is probable that this is not wholly true, as there is evidence that iron can be retained in the body and utilized again in the formation of new hemoglobin. Contrary to what might be expected, milk contains but a very small quantity of iron, not more than 3 or 4 milligrams in 1000 grams (human milk)—an amount insufficient for the development of the necessary hemoglobin. This is compensated for, however, by the accumulation of iron in the liver during intrauterine life. According to Bunge, the liver of a newly born rabbit contains as much as 18.2 milligrams per 100 grams of body-weight, while at the end of twenty-four days it only contains 3.2 milligrams per 100 grams of body-weight.

Vegetable acids increase the secretions of the alimentary canal, and are apt, in large amounts, to produce flatulence and diarrhea. After entering into combination with bases to form salts, they stimulate the action of the kidneys and promote a greater elimination of all the urinary constituents. In some unknown way they influence nutrition; when deprived of these acids, the individual becomes scorbutic.

The *accessory* foods,—coffee, tea, and cocoa,—when taken in moderation have a stimulating influence on the nervous system, as shown by the removal of both mental and physical fatigue, by an increased capacity for sustained mental work, by the persistent wakefulness among those unaccustomed to their use. Coffee more especially increases the frequency and force of the heart-beat, raises the arterial pressure, and hastens the general blood-flow. It has no influence either in the way of increasing or decreasing proteid metabolism.

Tea frequently acts as an astringent on the alimentary canal on account of the tannin which passes into the water when the infusion

is made. Inasmuch as tannin also coagulates peptones, the excessive use of tea as a beverage is apt to derange the digestive organs and the general process of digestion.

Cocoa is more nutritive than either coffee or tea, on account of the large amount of fat and proteid it contains. It is, however, less stimulating.

The active principles in coffee, tea, and cocoa, and to which their effects are to be attributed, are *caffein*, *thein*, and *theobromin* respectively. These alkaloids are chemically closely related one to the other and to the compound xanthin. They are present in the coffee seeds, the tea leaves, and the cocoa bean to the extent of 1.7 per cent., 1.4 per cent., and 1.6 per cent. respectively. When prepared as a beverage, however, there is three times as much *caffein* in coffee as *thein* in tea.

Alcohol when taken in small quantities stimulates the digestive glands to increased activity and thus promotes digestive power. Its absorption into the blood is followed by increased action of the heart, dilatation of the cutaneous blood-vessels, a sensation of warmth, and an excitation of the brain. In large quantities it acts as a paralyzant, depressing more especially the vaso-constrictor nerve-centers and certain areas of the brain, as shown by an impairment in the power of sustained attention, clearness of judgment, and muscle coördination.

Alcohol is undoubtedly oxidized in the body, as only about 2 per cent. can be obtained from the urine and expired air. It thus contributes to the store of the body-energy. As to whether for this reason it can be regarded as a food,—that is, whether it can be substituted in part at least for fat or carbohydrate material without impairing the proteid metabolism,—is at present a subject of experimentation and discussion. According to some investigators, alcohol does not retard proteid metabolism, for when it is introduced into the body in amounts equivalent to the carbohydrates withdrawn from the food there is at once a rise in the amount of nitrogen excreted. Hence it cannot be regarded as a food. According to other investigators, alcohol retards or protects proteid metabolism just as effectually as an equivalent amount of starch or sugar. Many more experiments are required to decide this question. When taken habitually in large quantities, alcohol deranges the activities of the digestive organs, lowers the body-temperature, impairs muscle power, lessens the resistance to depressing external conditions, diminishes the capacity for sustained mental work, and leads to the development of structural changes in the connective tissues of the brain, spinal cord, and other organs. In zymotic diseases and in cases of depression of the vital powers it is most useful as a restorative agent.

THE ENERGY OR HEAT VALUE OF FOOD PRINCIPLES.

The food consumed not only restores the material metabolized and discharged from the body, but also the energy which has been expended as heat and mechanic motion. The food principles are products of the constructive processes taking place in the vegetable world during the period of growth and activity. At the time of their formation there is an absorption and storing of the sun's energy which then exists in a potential condition. During the metabolism of the animal body these compounds are reduced through oxidation to relatively simple bodies, such as carbon dioxid, water, urea, etc., with the liberation of their contained energy. All of the energy of the body, whatever its manifestations may be, can be traced to chemic changes going on in the tissues, and more particularly to those changes involved in the oxidation of the food principles.

The amount of heat or energy which any given food principle will yield can be determined by burning a definite amount (*e. g.*, 1 gram) to carbon dioxid and water and ascertaining the extent to which the heat thus liberated will raise the temperature of a given amount of water (*e. g.*, 1 kilogram). The amount of heat may be expressed in gram or kilogram degrees or calories, a gram calorie or kilogram calorie being the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of a gram or a kilogram (1000 grams) of water 1° C. The apparatus employed for this purpose is termed a calorimeter, and consists essentially of a closed chamber in which the oxidation takes place, surrounded by a water jacket, the rise in temperature of the water indicating the amount of heat produced.

The results obtained by investigators employing different calorimeters and different food principles of the same group vary, though within certain limits: *e. g.*, 1 gram casein yields 5.867 kilogram calories; 1 gram of lean beef, 5.656 calories; 1 gram of fat yields 9.353, 9.423, 9.686 calories; 1 gram of carbohydrate, 4.182, 4.479, etc., calories. These numbers represent the physical heat values of these food principles.

In the human body as determined by calorimetric methods the oxidation of the food principles yields practically the same amount of heat they yield when oxidized outside the body, with the exception of the proteids, which are oxidized only to the stage of urea. As this compound is capable of further reduction in the calorimeter to carbon dioxid and water with the liberation of heat, the quantity of heat it contains must therefore be deducted from the calorimetric heat value of the proteid. According to Rubner, 1 gram urea will yield 2.523 kilogram calories. As the urea which results from the oxidation of 1 gram of proteid is about $\frac{1}{3}$ of a gram, the amount of heat to be deducted from the heat value of the proteid is $\frac{1}{3}$ of 2.523, or 841 calories. It has also been shown that some of the ingested

proteid escapes in the feces, the heat value of which must also be determined and deducted. This having been done, the *physiologic* heat value becomes 4.124 calories.

The following estimates give approximately the number of kilogram calories produced when the food is burned to carbon dioxid, water, and urea in the body:

1	gram	proteid	yields,	-----	4.124	calories
1	"	fat	"	-----	9.353	"
1	"	carbohydrate	yields	-----	4.116	"

The total number of kilogram calories or kilogram degrees of heat yielded by any of the previously given diet scales can be readily determined by multiplying the quantities of food principles consumed by the above-mentioned factors. The diet scale of Vierordt, for example, yields the following:

120	grams	of	proteid	yields,	-----	494.88	calories.
90	"		fat	"	-----	841.77	"
330	"		starch	"	-----	1358.28	"
						2694.93	

The total calories obtained from other diet scales would be as follows: Ranke, 2335; Voit, 3387; Moleschott, 2984; Atwater, 3331; Hultgren, 3436.

Starvation.—The relation of the different food principles to the general nutritive process becomes more apparent from an examination of the excretions from the body during the process of starvation combined with an examination of the organs and tissues after death. If an animal be deprived entirely of food, a decline in body-weight at once sets in, which continues until about 40 per cent. of the weight has been lost, when death generally ensues. This results from the fact that the active tissue cells consume, for the purpose of maintaining the normal temperature of the body, not only their own reserve food material, but that of the less active or storage tissues as well; and, in consequence, there is a progressive diminution in weight.

The phenomena which characterize this non-physiologic condition are as follows: hunger, intense thirst, gastric and intestinal uneasiness and pain, diminished pulse-rate and respiration, muscular weakness and emaciation, a lessening in the amount of urine and its constituents, diminished exhalation of carbon dioxid, an exhalation of a fetid odor from the body, vertigo, stupor, delirium, at times convulsions, a sudden fall in body-temperature, and finally death. The duration of life after complete deprivation of food varies from eight to thirteen days or more, though this period can be prolonged if the animal be supplied with water, this being more essential under the circumstances than the organic materials which can be supplied by the organism itself. The duration of the starvation period will vary in accordance with the previous condition of the animal and the amount

of reserved food the body contains. The excretion of urea declines very rapidly during the first two days—a fact which has been attributed to a rapid consumption of the surplus proteid food. After this period, when the tissues begin to metabolize their own proteid, the excretion remains fairly constant until toward the close, when the amount eliminated falls very rapidly. As proteids contain about 16 per cent. of nitrogen, 1 part of nitrogen equals 6.25 parts of proteid. Hence, for every 1 gram of nitrogen or 2.14 grams urea excreted, it may be assumed that 6.25 grams of proteid or, according to Voit, 30 grams of flesh have been metabolized. The daily excretion of urea, therefore, indicates the extent of the proteid metabolism. It has been observed also that there is a steady diminution in the excretion of carbon dioxid, though this is greatest in the last few days. As fat contains about 76 per cent. of carbon, 1 part of carbon equals 1.31 parts of fat. Hence, for every 1 gram of carbon or 3.66 grams carbon dioxid excreted it may be assumed that 1.31 grams of fat have been metabolized. The daily excretion of carbon, therefore, indicates the extent of fat metabolism. The carbohydrates are here left out of consideration, as they constitute only about 1 per cent. of the body-weight. It must be borne in mind, however, that in the metabolism of proteid a certain quantity of fat is produced which also undergoes oxidation. The amount of the carbon or the fat that the proteid would give rise to, as previously determined, must therefore be subtracted from that eliminated by the lungs, etc., in order to determine the amount of body-fat metabolized. Observations of human beings in the fasting condition show that for a period of ten days there is a daily excretion of about 21 grams of urea, equivalent to about 70 grams of proteid. This amount, however, may be reduced to from 50 to 60 per cent. if the individual has a surplus of body-fat. Human beings under similar circumstances may lose during the first few days 200 grams of fat daily.

The following table shows the excretion of nitrogen and carbon and the calculated amounts of proteid and fat metabolized from an experiment made by Ranke on himself during a fast of twenty-four hours, beginning twenty-four hours after the last meal:

DISINTEGRATION OF TISSUE. (CALCULATED.)			EXPENDITURE.		
	Nitrogen.	Carbon.		Nitrogen.	Carbon.
Proteid, 50 gm.,-----	7.8	26.5	Urea, 17 gm.,----- } Uric acid, 0.2 gm., --- }	7.2	3.4
Fat, 199.6 gm.,-----	0.0	157.5	Carbon dioxid,-----	0.0	180.6
	7.8	184.0		7.2	184.0

Coincidentally with these losses to the body there is also a gradual loss of inorganic salts, and toward the termination of the period a sudden fall in temperature of several degrees centigrade, in consequence of the final consumption of all available food, when death ensues, in all probability, from a cessation in the action of the heart.

Postmortem Appearances.—It has been experimentally determined that animals die when the body-weight has declined to about 40 per cent. Postmortem examination shows that the loss of material, though very generally distributed throughout the body, is greatest in organs and tissues least essential to life.

The results of an analysis of the organs and tissues of a cat after a thirteen-day period of starvation, during which the animal lost 1017 grams in weight, are given in the following table, based on data furnished by Voit:

ORGAN.	PERCENTAGE.	ACTUAL LOSS OF TISSUE.
		Grams.
Adipose tissue, -----	97	267
Spleen, -----	67	6
Liver, -----	54	49
Testes, -----	40	1
Muscles, -----	31	429
Blood, -----	27	37
Kidneys, -----	26	7
Skin and hair, -----	21	89
Lungs, -----	18	3
Intestines, -----	18	21
Pancreas, -----	17	1
Bones, -----	14	55
Heart, -----	3	0
Nervous system, -----	3	1

It will be observed from this table that the adipose tissue suffers the greatest loss, the entire amount disappearing with the exception of a small portion in the posterior part of the orbital cavity and around the kidneys. The muscles, though only losing 31 per cent. of their weight, yet furnish 429 grams of presumably proteid material, for nutritive purposes. The heart and nervous system experience but slight loss.

Mixed Diet.—The chemic composition of the tissues, taken in connection with their metabolism during starvation, implies that no one article of food is sufficient for tissue repair and heat production; but that all classes of foods—in other words, a mixed diet—are essential to the maintenance of a normal nutrition. Experimental investigation has also conclusively established this fact. Moreover, the amounts of nitrogen and carbon eliminated daily, and the ratio

existing between them, indicate the amounts of proteid, fat, and carbohydrate which are required to cover the loss.

Metabolism on a Purely Proteid Diet.—Notwithstanding the chemic composition of the proteids and the possibility of their giving rise to both fat and a carbohydrate during their metabolism, it has been found extremely difficult to maintain the normal nutrition for any length of time on a pure proteid or fat-free flesh diet. This, however, has been accomplished with dogs. It was found, however, that, in order to maintain the equilibrium, it was necessary to increase the proteids from two to three times the usual amount. Thus, a dog weighing 30 to 35 kilograms required from 1500 to 1800 grams of flesh daily in order to get the requisite amount of carbon to prevent consumption of its own adipose tissue. Under similar circumstances, a human being weighing 70 kilograms would require more than 2000 grams of lean beef—an amount which, from the nature of the digestive apparatus, it would be practically impossible to digest and assimilate for any length of time. Even the slight habitual excess beyond the amount normally required is imperfectly assimilated and gives rise to the production of nitrogen-holding compounds which, on account of the difficulty with which they are eliminated by the kidneys, accumulate within the body and develop the gouty diathesis, with all its protean manifestations.

Metabolism on a Fat and Carbohydrate Diet.—As nitrogen is an indispensable constituent of the tissues, it is evident that neither fat nor carbohydrates can maintain nutritive equilibrium except for very short periods. On such a diet the tissues consume their own proteids, as shown by the continuous excretion of urea, though the amount is less than during starvation. An excess of fat retards the metabolism of proteids. The same holds true for the carbohydrates.

Thus, in any well-arranged dietary there should be a combination of proteids, fats, and carbohydrates in amounts sufficient to maintain nutritive equilibrium; in other words, to repair the loss of tissue and to furnish the requisite amount of heat in accordance with work done, as well as with climatic and seasonal variations.

COMPOSITION OF FOODS.

The food principles essential to the maintenance of the nutrition of the body are contained in varying proportions in compound substances termed foods; *e. g.*, meat, milk, wheat, potatoes, etc. Their nutritive value depends partly on the amounts of their contained food principles and partly on their digestibility. The dietary of civilized man embraces foods derived from both the animal and vegetable worlds.

Composition of Animal Foods.—The following table shows the average percentage composition of various kinds of meats, cow's milk, and eggs:

IN 100 PARTS.	BEEF.	VEAL.	MUTTON.	PORK.	FOWL.	FISH.	Cow's MILK.	EGGS.
Water, -----	76.25	77.82	75.59	72.57	70.80	79.30	86.87	73.67
Proteid, -----	20.24	19.86	17.11	19.31	22.70	18.30	4.75	12.55
Fat, -----	1.68	0.82	5.47	5.82	4.10	0.70	3.50	12.11
Carbohydrates, -----	0.50	0.80	0.60	0.60	1.20	0.90	4.00	0.55
Salts, -----	1.38	0.70	1.23	1.70	1.20	0.80	0.17	1.13

Meats.—It will be observed from these analyses that the meats contain from 18 to 20 per cent. of a proteid which belongs in virtue of its chemic relations to the group of globulins. In the living condition this body, known as myosinogen, is in a semi-fluid condition, but shortly after death undergoes coagulation, giving rise to solid myosin and a soluble albumin. There are also present in meat small percentages of other forms of proteid; *e. g.*, myoalbumin, myoglobulin, paramyosinogen, etc. After being subjected to the cooking process, meats contain the albuminoid body gelatin, a product of the transformation of the proteids of the connective tissue.

The percentage of fat, contained within the meat substance, is very small except in mutton and pork, where it rises to 5.4 per cent. and 5.8 per cent. respectively. The fat-globules in these meats are packed closely between the muscle-fibers, and prevent the easy entrance of the digestive fluids, and hence they are more difficult of digestion than beef.

The carbohydrates vary from 0.5 to 1 per cent., and are represented by glycogen. The principal inorganic salts are potassium phosphate and sodium chlorid.

Cooking, when properly done, not only makes the meat more palatable and appetizing from the development of agreeable flavors, but converts the connective tissue, which, in old animals especially, is tough and resisting, into gelatin, thus rendering it more easy of mastication and digestion. At the same time parasitic organisms, such as the embryonic forms of tenia or tapeworm, trichina spiralis, as well as bacterial growths, which frequently infest the bodies of animals, are destroyed and made harmless.

Milk is the natural food of the young of all mammals, and is usually regarded as typical on account of the ratio existing among its nutritive principles. The analysis given above is that of cow's milk. Examined microscopically, milk is seen to consist of a clear fluid, the milk plasma, holding in suspension an enormous number of small, highly refractive oil globules, which measure on the average

about $\frac{1}{10000}$ of an inch in diameter. Each globule is supposed by some observers to be surrounded by a thin albuminous envelope, which enables it to maintain the discrete form. Others deny the existence of such a membrane. The chief proteid constituent of milk, caseinogen, is held in solution by the presence of phosphate of lime. On the addition of acetic acid or sodium chlorid up to the point of saturation the caseinogen is *precipitated* as such and may be collected by appropriate chemic methods. When taken into the stomach, caseinogen is *coagulated*; that is, it is separated into casein or tyrein and a small quantity of a new soluble proteid. This change is brought about by the presence in the gastric juice of a special ferment known as rennin or pexin.

The fat of milk is more or less solid at ordinary temperatures. It is a combination of olein, palmitin, and stearin, with a small quantity of butyryn and caproin. When milk is allowed to stand for some time, the fat-globules rise to the surface and form a thick layer known as cream. When subjected to the churning process, the fat-globules run together and form a coherent mass—butter.

Lactose is the particular form of sugar found in milk. In the presence of *Bacillus acidi lactici*, the lactose is decomposed into lactic acid and carbon dioxid, the former of which not only imparts a sour taste to the milk, but causes a *precipitation* of the caseinogen. (The chief salt found in milk is phosphate of lime, and this is the chief source of this agent in the formation of bones.

Eggs are also to be regarded as complete natural foods, inasmuch as they contain all the necessary food principles. The analysis given in the above table represents the composition of the entire egg. The white of the egg contains 12 per cent. of proteid and 2 per cent. of fat. The yolk, however, contains 15 per cent. of proteid and 30 per cent. of fat.

Composition of Cereal Foods.—The average composition of the principal cereals is shown in the following table:

IN 100 PARTS.	WHEAT.	RYE.	BARLEY.	OATS.	CORN.	RICE.	BUCK- WHEAT.
Water, -----	13.56	12.65	13.77	12.37	13.10	13.12	12.62
Proteid, -----	12.35	12.55	11.14	10.41	9.85	7.88	10.02
Fat, -----	1.75	1.97	2.16	5.23	4.57	0.85	2.24
Carbohydrate, -----	67.90	67.95	64.93	57.78	68.42	76.55	64.43
Cellulose, -----	2.63	3.00	5.31	11.19	2.50	0.55	8.67
Salts, -----	1.81	1.88	2.69	3.02	1.56	1.05	2.02

That the cereals are most important and useful articles of diet is evident from their composition, consisting, as they do, of proteids and carbohydrates in large proportion. Owing to the cellulose or

woody fiber which envelops and penetrates the grain, they are somewhat difficult of digestion. A section of a grain of wheat shows the external cellulose envelope, the husk, beneath which is a layer of large cells containing the chief proteid—the gluten. The interior of the grain consists of small cavities, the walls of which are formed of cellulose and which contain the granules of starch, fat, small quantities of proteid, and inorganic salts. All other cereals have a similar structure.

In the preparation of white flour from wheat it is customary to remove the husk, a process which involves the removal also of a portion, if not all, of the gluten cells, so that such flour contains less nitrogenized material than the original grain. It is possible, however, in the milling of wheat, to remove only the husk and retain the gluten in the flour, as in the preparation of whole wheat flour.

Bread is an artificially prepared food made either of wheat or rye. Owing to the fact that the proteids of the other cereals do not possess the same adhesive properties when kneaded with water, they can not be used for bread-making purposes. In the making of bread, the flour is kneaded with water until a glutinous mass—dough—is formed. During this process, salt, sugar, and yeast are added. It is then placed in a temperature of about 100° F. In the presence of heat and moisture the natural ferment of the flour—diastase—converts a portion of the starch into sugar, which in turn is split up into carbon dioxid and alcohol by the yeast plant. The bubbles of carbon dioxid, becoming entangled in the dough, cause it to swell or rise and subsequently give the porous or spongy character to the bread. When baked at a temperature of 400° F., the alcohol is driven off; yeast cells and other organisms are destroyed; the starch, particularly that on the surface, is dextrinized. Thus prepared, white bread consists of water, 32 per cent.; proteid, 8.8 per cent.; fat, 1.7 per cent.; carbohydrate, 56.3 per cent.; salts, 0.9 per cent. The principal salts are potassium and magnesium phosphate. Whole wheat bread consists of water, 40 per cent.; proteid, 12.2 per cent.; fat, 1.2 per cent.; carbohydrate, 43.5 per cent.; salts, 1.3 per cent.; cellulose, 1.8 per cent.

Composition of Vegetable Foods.—The average composition of some of the principal vegetables is shown in the following table:

IN 100 PARTS.	BEANS.	PEAS.	POTA- TOES.	BEETS.	TUR- NIPS.	TOMA- TOES.	ASPA- RAGUS.	CAB- BAGE.
Water, -----	13.74	14.99	75.47	82.20	89.42	96.30	93.75	89.97
Proteid, -----	23.21	22.85	1.95	1.80	1.35	0.90	1.79	1.89
Fat, -----	2.14	1.79	0.15	0.30	0.18	0.50	0.25	0.20
Carbohydrates,-----	53.67	52.36	20.69	13.00	7.36	2.80	2.63	4.87
Cellulose, -----	3.69	5.43	0.76	--	0.94	--	1.04	1.84
Salts, -----	3.55	2.58	0.98	1.60	0.75	0.40	0.54	1.23

The vegetable foods, as a class, vary considerably in nutritive value and digestibility, the latter depending on the amount of cellulose they contain. A section of a vegetable shows not only the presence of an external cellulose envelope, but also an inner framework which penetrates its substance in all directions. The nutritive principles are contained in small cavities, the walls of which are formed by the framework. Nearly all vegetables require cooking before being eaten. When subjected to heat and moisture, not only is the texture of the vegetable softened and disintegrated, but the starch grains are hydrated and partially prepared for conversion into dextrin and sugar. At the same time various savory substances are set free, which make the food more palatable.

Beans and peas contain large quantities of a proteid, legumin, and starch, and hence are especially valuable as nutritive foods. The presence of the cellulose envelope, especially in ripe beans and peas, combined with rather a dense texture, renders them somewhat difficult of digestion. **Potatoes**, though largely employed as food, are extremely poor in proteids, 2 per cent., and carbohydrates, 20 per cent. When sufficiently cooked they are easily digested, owing to the small amount of cellulose they contain.

Green vegetables,—*e. g.*, lettuce, spinach, tomatoes, asparagus, onions, etc., though containing food principles in small amounts, are, nevertheless, valuable adjuncts to the dietary, for the reason that they contain inorganic as well as organic salts, which appear to be necessary to the maintenance of the normal nutrition. The want of green vegetables has been supposed to be the cause of scurvy.

Ripe fruits, grapes, cherries, apples, pears, peaches, strawberries, lemons, oranges, etc., though consumed largely, possess but little nutritive value. They consist largely of water, 75 to 85 per cent., proteids a trace, sugar from 5 to 13 per cent., organic acids (citric, malic, tartaric), pectose, and various inorganic salts.

Relative Value of Animal and Vegetable Foods.—Though both animal and vegetable foods contain the different classes of food principles, it is not a matter of entire indifference as to which are consumed. It has been found by experiment that animal proteids are more easily and completely digested and absorbed than vegetable proteids; that cellulose is not only highly indigestible, but by its presence in large quantities retards the digestive process and impairs the activity of the entire digestive mechanism, though in moderate quantity it undoubtedly aids digestion indirectly by mechanically promoting peristalsis. The following table shows the relative digestibility of the two classes of foods:

WEIGHT OF FOOD.	VEGETABLE.		ANIMAL.	
	Digested.	Undigested.	Digested.	Undigested.
Of 100 parts of solids, -----	75.5	24.5	89.9	11.1
Of 100 parts of proteid, -----	46.6	53.4	81.2	18.8
Of 100 parts of fats or carbohydrates, -----	90.3	9.7	96.9	3.1

Construction of Dietaries.—Inasmuch as neither animal nor vegetable foods contain the food principles in proper quantities and proportions, the instinctive choice of mankind has led to a combination of the two classes of foods. From the analyses tabulated above it becomes comparatively easy to construct a suitable dietary, composed of different articles of food, in which the food principles shall bear the proper ratio one to the other—a ratio based on the total quantity of nitrogen (15 to 20 grams) and carbon (225 to 300 grams) eliminated from the body daily.

It is only necessary, therefore, to combine two or more foods, the composition of which is known, in quantities sufficient to furnish the requisite amount of nitrogen and carbon, or their equivalents in proteid, fat, and carbohydrates. As illustrations of such combinations the following examples are given:

Foods.			Food Principles.		N.	C.
Meat, -----	250 gm.,	8.8 oz. }	} Proteid, -----	100 gm.	15	50
Bread, -----	400 gm.,	14.2 oz. }				
Fat, -----	100 gm.,	3.5 oz. }		100 gm.	--	75
Sugar, -----	70 gm.,	2.5 oz. }		250 gm.	--	100
					15	225

Foods.			N.	C.
Meat, -----	225 gm.,	$\frac{1}{2}$ lb	7.5 gm.	34 gm.
Bread, -----	450 gm.,	1 lb.	5.5 gm.	117 gm.
Fats, -----	113 gm.,	$\frac{1}{4}$ lb.	---	84 gm.
Potatoes, -----	450 gm.,	1 lb.	1.3 gm.	45 gm.
Milk, -----	225 gm.,	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint	1.7 gm.	20 gm.
Eggs, -----	113 gm.,	$\frac{1}{4}$ lb.	2.0 gm.	15 gm.
Cheese, -----	56 gm.,	$\frac{1}{3}$ lb.	3.0 gm.	20 gm.
			21.0	335

(Waller.)

DAILY RATION OF THE UNITED STATES SOLDIER.

Fresh beef, -----	20 oz.
or pork, -----	12 oz.
or bacon, -----	12 oz.
Flour, -----	18 oz.
or soft bread, -----	18 oz.
or hard bread, -----	16 oz.
Potatoes, -----	16 oz.
or potatoes $11\frac{1}{5}$ and tomatoes $4\frac{1}{5}$ -----	16 oz.
Beans or peas, -----	2.4 oz
Rice or hominy, -----	1.6 oz.
Coffee, -----	1.6 oz.
Sugar, -----	2.00 oz.
Vinegar, -----	0.32 gill
Salt, -----	0.60 gill

CHAPTER IX.

DIGESTION.

Foods are heterogeneous compounds consisting of organic and inorganic nutritive principles associated with a varying amount of non-nutritive material, such as the dense parts of the connective tissue of the animal foods and the woody fiber or cellulose of the vegetable foods. Before the nutritive principles can be utilized they must be dissociated from the non-nutritive material. Even when consumed in the free state, the food principles are seldom in a condition to be absorbed into the blood and assimilated by the tissues. When foods are consumed in their natural state or after they have been subjected to the cooking process, they are subjected while in the food canal to the solvent action of various fluids by which they are disintegrated and reduced to the liquid condition. The nutritive principles freed from their combinations are changed in chemical composition and transformed into substances capable of absorption. To all the physical and chemical changes which foods undergo in the food canal the term digestion has been given.

The **digestive apparatus** comprises the entire alimentary or food canal and its various appendages: the teeth, the tongue, the mouth, the gastric and intestinal glands, the pancreas, and the liver (Fig. 59).

The canal itself is a musculo-membranous tube about thirty-two feet in length, and extends from the mouth to the anus. It may be subdivided into several distinct portions, as mouth, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, small and large intestines. The mouth is provided (1) with teeth, by which the food is divided, (2) with the tongue, and (3) with glands, by which a solvent fluid, the saliva, is secreted. The glands, though situated for the most part outside the mouth, are connected with it by means of ducts. Posteriorly the mouth opens into the pharynx or throat, a somewhat pyramidal-shaped structure about five inches in length, which in turn is followed by the esophagus or gullet, a tube about nine inches in length. As the esophagus passes through the diaphragm it expands into the stomach, a curved pyriform organ, which serves as a reservoir for the reception and retention of the food for a varying length of time. The small intestine is that portion of the alimentary canal extending from the end of the stomach to the beginning of the large intestine; owing to its length, about twenty-two feet, it presents a very convoluted appearance in the abdominal cavity. Embedded in its walls are the intestinal glands which open on its surface and secrete the intestinal

fluid. In the upper portion of the small intestine, within five inches of the stomach, there are generally two orifices, the terminations of the ducts of the liver and pancreas, organs which secrete the bile and pancreatic juice respectively. The large intestine is from five to six feet in length and extends from the end of the small intestine to the anus. Its walls contain a large number of glands.

FIG. 59.—DIAGRAM OF THE ALIMENTARY CANAL.

The general process of digestion is largely accomplished by the chemic action of the digestive fluids: the saliva, the gastric, intestinal, and pancreatic juices, and the bile. Though taking place throughout a large portion of the food canal, the process may be subdivided into several stages: viz., mouth digestion, gastric digestion, and intestinal digestion.

As a result of the action of these fluids the nutritive principles are prepared for absorption into the blood; the non-nutritive principles, along with certain waste products, pass into the large intestine to be finally extruded from the body.

MOUTH DIGESTION.

The digestion of the food as it takes place in the mouth comprises a series of physical and chemic changes, the result of the action of the teeth, the tongue, and the saliva. The mechanic division of the food and the incorporation of the saliva with it are termed respectively mastication and insalivation.

MASTICATION.

Mastication is the mechanic division of the food, and is accomplished by the teeth and the movements of the lower jaw under the influence of muscle contractions. Complete mechanic disintegration of the food is essential to its subsequent solution and chemic transformation; for when finely divided it presents a larger surface to the action of the digestive fluids and thus enables them to exert their respective actions more effectively and in a shorter period of time.

The Teeth.—In man passing from childhood to adult life two sets of teeth make their appearance. The first set constitute the temporary, deciduous, or milk teeth; the second set constitute the permanent teeth, which should last with proper care through life or to an advanced age.

The temporary teeth, twenty in number, ten in each jaw, though smaller than the permanent teeth, have the same general conformation. They are divided into four incisors, two cuspids or canines, and four molars for each jaw.

The permanent teeth, thirty-two in number, sixteen in each jaw, are divided into four incisors, two cuspids or canines, four bicuspids or premolars, and six molars for each jaw.

Each tooth may be said to consist of three portions: (1) the crown, or that portion which projects above the gums; (2) the root or fang, that portion embedded in the alveolar socket; (3) the constricted portion or neck, which is surrounded by the free margin of the gum. The teeth are firmly secured in their sockets by a fibrous membrane, the peridental membrane, which is attached, on the one hand, to the alveolar process, and, on the other, to the cementum.

A vertical section of a tooth shows that it consists of three distinct solid structures, the enamel, the dentine, and the cementum, which have the anatomic relationship as represented in Fig. 60. In the center of the dentine there is a cavity the general shape of which varies in different teeth, and which is occupied during the living condition by the tooth pulp.

Microscopic examination of the tooth reveals the presence of

irregular stellate spaces, the interglobular spaces, between the dentine and the cementum, which are occupied by connective-tissue cells. Clefts of varying size are also observed at the junction of the dentine and the enamel, and which extend for some distance into the latter.

The *enamel* is composed of dense hard cylinders which, on account of their small size and close relationship, appear to be hexagonal in shape. These cylinders are held together by cement substance. The free border of the enamel is covered, in early life at least, by a thin membrane known as the cuticle or membrane of Nasmyth.

FIG. 60.—VERTICAL SECTION OF TOOTH IN JAW. E. Enamel. D. Dentine. P. M. Periodontal membrane. P. C. Pulp cavity. C. Cement. B. Bone of lower jaw. V. Vein. a. Artery. N. Nerve.

The *dentine* is somewhat less dense than the enamel. It is composed of connective-tissue fibers embedded in a ground-substance, both of which have undergone calcification in the course of development. The dentine is penetrated by a series of fine canals, the dentine canals or tubules, which begin by open mouths on the pulp side. From this point the tubules pass outward to the cementum and enamel, where their terminal branches communicate with and terminate in the interglobular spaces and clefts. In their course the tubules give off a series of branches which communicate freely with one another. The dentine bordering the tubule is somewhat more dense than the intertubular portion and constitutes what is known as the dentinal sheath or Neumann's sheath.

The *cementum* resembles bone because it contains both lacunæ and canaliculi, though it is, as a rule, devoid of Haversian canals.

The *pulp* consists of a framework of connective tissue which affords support to blood-vessels and nerves, both of which enter the pulp chamber through a small foramen at the apex of the root. The outer surface of the pulp is covered with a layer of large spheric cells, the odontoblasts. Each cell presents on its inner surface short processes which pass into the pulp; on its outer surface it presents a long process which enters a dentine tubule and extends as far as its ultimate terminations. Collectively these processes are known as the dentine fibers. Inasmuch as the fibers do not completely occupy

the lumen of the tubule, it is probable that there is a free circulation of lymph from the pulp chamber through the dentine tubules into the enamel clefts, into the interglobular spaces, and possibly into the lacunæ of the cementum.

The *peridental membrane* is composed of connective-tissue fibers abundantly supplied with blood-vessels and nerves.

Movements of the Lower Jaw.—The lower jaw is capable of a downward and upward, an antero-posterior, and a lateral movement, all dependent on the peculiar construction of the—

Temporo-maxillary Articulation.—This articulation is formed by the anterior portion of the glenoid cavity, the eminentia articularis, and the condyle of the inferior maxilla, all of which are united by means of ligaments. Situated between the glenoid cavity and the condyle is a plate of fibro-cartilage oval in shape and biconcave. This cartilage divides the joint into two cavities,—one above, the other below,—each of which is provided with a synovial membrane. The function of the cartilage is to present constantly an articulating surface to the condyle in the various movements of the lower jaw, which it is enabled to do by virtue of its mobility.

In the downward movement of the lower jaw each condyle glides forward, carrying with it the interarticular fibro-cartilage the upper concave surface of which is applied to the convex surface of the eminentia articularis. In the upward movement of the jaw both the condyles and the cartilages pass backward and resume their normal position. The movements of depression and elevation are made possible by the transverse direction of the condyle. In the carnivorous animals, whose food requires considerable cutting, these movements are especially well developed. In the antero-posterior movement the jaw moves in a horizontal direction and the condyles and the articular cartilages glide forward and backward in the glenoid fossæ. In the rodent animals the long axis of the condyle runs in the antero-posterior direction, which allows of a considerable gliding movement. When the jaw performs a lateral movement, the condyle and cartilage of one side remain in their normal position, while the opposite condyle and cartilage glide forward in the glenoid fossa, directing the symphysis of the jaw to the opposite side of the median line. The lateral movements are well exhibited by the herbivorous animals, in which they are quite extensive, and made possible by the small size of the condyle and the large extent of articulating surface. In man the structure of the joint is such as to admit of all these possibilities, and the lower jaw acquires in consequence great freedom of movement.

The Functions of the Muscles of Mastication.—The movements of the lower jaw are caused by the action of numerous muscles, which, having a fixed point of origin, are attached to various

points on its surface. The muscles concerned in the movements of mastication are presented in the following table:

Anterior belly of digastric	}	Depress the lower jaw and open the mouth.
Mylohyoid		
Geniohyoid		
Temporal	}	Elevate the lower jaw and close the mouth.
Internal portion of masseter		
Internal pterygoid		
External pterygoids	}	Draw the lower jaw forward and cause the lower teeth to project beyond the upper.
External portion of masseter		
Anterior fibers of temporal		
Posterior fibers of temporal	}	Draw the lower jaw back to its normal position.
Internal portion of masseter		
Digastric, mylohyoid, and geniohyoid		
Internal pterygoids	}	Contracting alternately, draw the jaw to the opposite side.
External pterygoids		
Pterygoids, external and internal	}	Produce grinding movements of the lower jaw.
Temporal		
Masseter		

The action of the depressor muscles becomes apparent when their points of origin and insertion are considered. The anterior belly of the digastric, the mylohyoid, the geniohyoid muscles, agree in having a similarity of origin—the hyoid bone—and a common area of insertion, the anterior portion of the inferior maxillary. Their anatomic relation is such that their combined action will depress the lower jaw and open the mouth.

The elevator muscles arise from various points on the side of the head, and are inserted into the coronoid process, ramus, and internal surface of the angle of the lower jaw. When the mouth has been opened, the simultaneous contraction of these muscles elevates the jaw and closes the mouth with considerable force. The power of these muscles is very great, and depends on the shortness and thickness of the muscle-bundles.

The action of the rotator muscles, those which give rise to the lateral movements of the jaw, depends in like manner on their origin and insertion. Arising from the superior maxillary and sphenoid bones, they are inserted into the neck of the condyle and angle of the lower jaw respectively. When they contract, the condyle on the corresponding side is drawn forward, while the opposite condyle remains stationary. As a result, the symphysis of the jaw is directed to the opposite side. The grinding movements of the jaw are produced by the coördinated action of all the groups of muscles acting more or less successively.

For the proper mastication of the food it is essential that it be kept between the opposing surfaces of the teeth. This is accomplished by the contraction of the orbicularis oris and buccinator muscles from without and the tongue muscles from within.

Nerve Mechanism of Mastication.—The movements of mastication, though originating in efforts of the will and under its control, are for the most part of an automatic or reflex character; for when once initiated by a voluntary effort they continue for an indefinite period—so long, in fact, as the impressions which the food makes upon the afferent nerves are received by the nerve-centers which regulate and control them. That the masticatory movements are of this reflex nature is shown by the fact that they will be maintained even though the voluntary effort which called them forth has subsided and the attention has been directed to some entirely different subject. It would appear that all that is necessary under such conditions is the exciting action of the food upon the periphery of the afferent nerves distributed to the tongue and mouth.

The nerves involved in this reflex are shown in the following table:

Afferent or Excitor Nerves.	Efferent or Motor Nerves.
1. Lingual branch of fifth nerve.	1. Inferior maxillary division of fifth nerve.
2. Glossopharyngeal.	2. Hypoglossal or sublingual.
	3. Facial or portio dura.

The nerve-center coördinating the movements of mastication is situated in the medulla oblongata. The afferent or excitor nerves which receive the impressions of the food are distributed largely to the mucous membrane of the tongue. When these impressions are received by the center in the medulla oblongata, it discharges nerve impulses, which, passing outward through motor nerves, excite contraction in the masticatory muscles. The motor nerves innervating the muscles are: (1) The small root of the fifth nerve, which, after emerging from the cavity of the cranium through the foramen ovale, joins the inferior maxillary division of the large-sensory root. It then is distributed to the masseter, temporal, internal, and external pterygoids, anterior belly of the digastric, and mylohyoid muscles, and controls their movements. (2) The hypoglossal nerve, which, after emerging through the anterior condyloid foramen, passes downward and forward to be distributed to the extrinsic and intrinsic muscles of the tongue. (3) The facial or portio dura, which, after emerging from the stylomastoid foramen, is distributed to the muscles of the face. Irritation of any one of these nerves produces convulsive movements in the muscles to which it is distributed, while their division is followed by paralysis of these muscles. The medulla not only generates the impulses which are directly responsible for the movements of mastication, but also coördinates them in such a manner that the movements of mastication may be directed toward the accomplishment of a definite purpose.

INSALIVATION.

Insalivation is the incorporation of the saliva with the food, and takes place for the most part during mastication. The saliva ordinarily present in the mouth is a complex fluid composed of the various secretions of the parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual glands and the muciparous follicles of the mouth, which collectively constitute the salivary apparatus (Fig. 61).

The **parotid gland** is situated in front of and partly below the

FIG. 61.—SALIVARY GLANDS. 1, 2. Parotid. 3. Duct of Steno. 4. Submaxillary. 5. Sublingual. 6. Mylohyoid muscle. 7. Lingual branch of the fifth nerve. 8. Duct of Wharton. 9. Digastric muscle. 10. Sternomastoid muscle. 11. External jugular vein. 12. Facial vein. 13. Temporal vein. 14, 15. Internal jugular vein. 16. Branch of the cervical plexus. 17. Sublingual nerve.—(*Le Bon.*)

external ear, where it is held in position by the fascia and skin. From the anterior border of the gland there emerges a duct (Stensen's), which, after crossing the masseter muscle to its anterior border, turns inward, pierces the buccinator, and opens on the surface of the cheek opposite the second upper molar tooth.

The **submaxillary gland** is situated below the jaw in the anterior part of the submaxillary triangle. From the gland there emerges a duct (Wharton's) which opens into the mouth by a minute orifice on the surface of a papilla by the side of the tongue.

The **sublingual gland** is situated just beneath the mucous membrane in the anterior part of the mouth, where it forms a projection

between the gums and tongue. The posterior part of the gland gives origin to a duct (the duct of Rivinus, described also by Bartholin) which opens into the mouth with or very near to the duct of Wharton. The anterior part of the gland gives origin to a varying number of ducts (Walthers) which open separately along the edge of the sublingual plica of the mucous membrane.

Histologic Structure of the Salivary Glands.—In their ultimate structure the salivary glands bear a close resemblance to one

another. They are compound tubulo-alveolar glands composed of small irregularly shaped lobules united by areolar tissue and connected by branches of the salivary ducts. Each lobule is made up of a number of small alveoli or acini more or less tubular in shape which are the terminal expansions of the smallest ducts. (See Fig. 62.) The wall of the acinus is formed by a reticulated basement membrane, surrounded externally by blood-vessels, the spaces between which constitute lymph-spaces or channels. The inner surface of the acinus membrane supports a single layer of irregular spheric or polygonic epithelial cells. The cells do not entirely fill up the cavity of the acinus, but leave an intercellular space, the lumen, which constitutes the beginning of the duct for the transmission of the secretion to the mouth. From each acinus there passes a narrow intercalary duct lined by a layer of flattened cells. The common excretory duct—formed by the union of the intralobular and interlobular ducts—consists also of a basement membrane, lined, however, by tall columnar epithelial cells. The salivary glands are abundantly supplied with blood-vessels and nerves which are closely related to their activity.

Based partly on the character of their secretions and partly on the microscopic appearance of their secreting cells, the salivary glands have been divided by Heidenhain into two classes: viz., serous or albuminous, and mucous glands. To the first class belong the parotid, a portion of the submaxillary, and a portion of the glands of the tongue. To the second class belong a portion of the submaxillary gland, the sublingual, a portion of the glands of the tongue, the glands of the cheeks, lips, palate, and pharynx. It is possible that a single alveolus of any gland may contain both albuminous and mucous cells.

In the *serous* glands the cells are more or less spheric in shape, nucleated, and almost completely filled with dark granular material (Fig. 63). In the *mucous* glands the cells are large, clear in appearance, and loaded with a highly refracting material resembling mucin (Fig. 64). Between the basement membrane and the clear cells are to be found in the acini of the submaxillary glands small crescentic shaped cells filled with granular material which stains deeply with vari-

FIG. 62.—SCHEME OF THE HUMAN SUBMAXILLARY GLAND.

ous coloring-matters. These are known as the demilunes of Heidenhain. At one time it was supposed that they were young cells destined to take the place of the clear cells which were believed to be exhausted and to have undergone disintegration. At the present time they are regarded as albuminous or serous cells which exhibit changes similar to the cells of the parotid gland.

The glands embedded in the mucous membrane covering the tongue, lips, cheek, palate, and pharynx are for the most part lined with epithelial cells which contain a highly refracting matter similar to, if not identical with, that found in the cells of the submaxillary and sublingual glands.

Nerve-supply.—Experimental research has demonstrated that each salivary gland receives nerve-fibers which influence the production of the secretion (secretory nerves) and fibers which dilate or constrict the blood-vessels (vaso-dilator and vaso-constrictor nerves).

FIG. 63.—SECTION OF HUMAN PAROTID GLAND INCLUDING SEVERAL ACINI. *d*. Cut intralobular duct. —(*Piersol*.)

FIG. 64.—SECTION OF HUMAN SUBLINGUAL GLAND. Among the clear cells lining the mucous acini are nests (*g, g*) of granular elements which constitute the demilunes of Heidenhain.

The secretory fibers penetrate the basement membrane and finally terminate between and on the surface of the secretory cells. The vaso-motor fibers terminate between and on the muscle-cells in the walls of the blood-vessels. The nerve-fibers in direct relation with the cells and blood-vessels of the parotid gland are derived from the otic ganglion. The cells of this ganglion are, however, invested by the terminal branches of other nerve-fibers (preganglionic) derived from the medulla oblongata. The relation of these preganglionic fibers to the blood-vessels and cells is shown by the increase in secretion and a change in the caliber of the vessels when they are subjected to electric stimulation. The nerve-fibers which are in direct relation with the vessels and cells of the submaxillary and sublingual glands are derived from the submaxillary, the sublingual, and the superior cervical ganglia. These local ganglion cells are also closely invested by the terminal branches or arborizations of the

fibers of nerves (preganglionic fibers) coming direct from the medulla oblongata and spinal cord.

The Parotid Saliva.—The parotid saliva, as it flows from the orifice of Stensen's duct, is clear, limpid, free from viscosity, distinctly alkaline in reaction, with a specific gravity of 1.003. Chemic analysis shows that it consists of water, a small quantity of proteid matter, a trace of a sulphocyanogen compound, and inorganic salts. The secretion is increased during mastication, and especially on the side engaged in mastication. Dry food causes a larger flow than moist food. The situation of the orifice of the parotid duct is such that as the secretion is poured into the mouth it is at once incorporated with the food by the movements of the lower jaw, and thus fulfils the physical function of softening and moistening it.

The Submaxillary Saliva.—The submaxillary saliva is clear, slightly viscid, alkaline in reaction, and has a specific gravity of 1.002. It consists of water, proteid matter (mucin), and inorganic salts.

The Sublingual Saliva.—The sublingual saliva is clear, extremely viscid, and strongly alkaline in reaction. It consists of water, proteid matter (chiefly mucin), and inorganic salts.

The small racemose glands embedded in the mucous membrane on the inner surface of the cheeks and lips, on the hard and soft palate, on the tongue and pharynx, secrete a fluid which is grayish in color, extremely viscid and ropy. It contains a large amount of mucin.

Mixed Saliva.—The saliva of the mouth is a complex fluid composed of the secretions of all the salivary glands. As obtained from the mouth it is frothy, colorless, slightly turbid, and somewhat viscid. The specific gravity is low, ranging from 1.003 to 1.006. The reaction is usually distinctly alkaline. It may, however, be neutral or even acid in reaction if there is any fermentation of food particles in the mouth or as a result of disorders of the alimentary canal. When examined with the microscope, the saliva is seen to contain epithelial cells, salivary corpuscles resembling leukocytes, particles of food, various microorganisms, and especially *Leptothrix buccalis*.

The chemic composition of the saliva is shown in the following table:

COMPOSITION OF HUMAN SALIVA.

Water, -----	995.16	994.20
Epithelium, -----	1.62	2.20
Soluble organic matter, -----	1.34	1.40
Potassium sulphocyanid, -----	0.06	0.04
Inorganic salts, -----	1.82	2.20
	1000.00	1000.04
	(Jacubowitsch.)	(Hammerbacher.)

Water constitutes the main ingredient, amounting to 99.5 per cent. The soluble organic matter is proteid in character and is a mixture of mucin, globulin, and serum-albumin. The potassium sulphocyanid is mainly derived from the parotid gland. Its presence can be demonstrated by the addition of a few minims of a dilute solution of slightly acidulated ferric chlorid, when a characteristic red color is developed. The inorganic constituents comprise the sodium, calcium and magnesium phosphates, sodium carbonate, sodium and potassium chlorids.

Quantity of Saliva.—The estimation of the total quantity of mixed saliva secreted in twenty-four hours is exceedingly difficult, and the results obtained must be only approximative. It is, of course, subject to considerable variation, depending upon habit, the nature of the food, etc. The experiments of Professor Dalton and the results obtained by him are eminently trustworthy, and in all probability represent as nearly as possible the exact amount secreted. He found that without any artificial stimulus he was enabled to collect from the mouth about 36 grams (540 grains) of saliva per hour, but that upon the introduction of any stimulating substance into the mouth the quantity could be greatly increased. During mastication the saliva was poured out in greater abundance, the amount depending upon the relative dryness of the food. He found that wheaten bread absorbed 55 per cent. of its weight, and fresh cooked meat 48 per cent. If, therefore, the average quantity of bread and meat required daily by a man of ordinary physical development and activity be assumed to be 540 grams (19 oz.) of the former and 450 grams (16 oz.) of the latter, these two substances would absorb respectively 297 grams (4573.8 grains) and 216 grams (3326.4 grains), making a total of 513 grams (7900 grains). If, therefore, the amount secreted and mixed with the food during an estimated two hours of mastication be added to the amount secreted during the remaining twenty-two hours, supposing that it continues at the rate of 36 grams per hour, we have a total amount of $513 + 792$ grams, or 1305 grams (19,780 grains), or about 2.8 pounds.

Histologic Changes in the Salivary Glands during Secretion.

—During and after secretion very remarkable changes take place in the cells lining the acini, which are in some way connected with the production of the essential constituents of the salivary fluids. In the case of the parotid gland, which may be regarded as the type of a serous or albuminous gland, the following changes have been observed by Langley (Fig. 65). During the period of rest and just previous to secretory activity, the epithelial cells are enlarged and swollen, and encroach on the lumen of the acinus. The protoplasm of the cells is so completely filled with dark fine granules as not only to obscure the nucleus, but to almost obliterate the line of union of the cells.

As soon as secretion becomes active, however, the granules begin to disappear from the outer region of the cell and move toward the inner border and into the lumen of the acinus. From these observations it might be inferred that during rest the protoplasm of the cells gives rise to granular material, and that during and after secretory activity

FIG. 65.—CELLS OF THE ALVEOLI OF A SEROUS OR WATERY SALIVARY GLAND. A. After rest. B. After a short period of activity. C. After a prolonged period of activity.—(*Yeo's "Text-Book of Physiology."*)

there is an absorption of new material from the lymph and a reconstruction of the granular material.

In the submaxillary gland, a portion of which may be taken as a type of a mucous gland, similar changes have been observed (Fig. 66). During rest the epithelial cells are large, clear in appearance, highly refractive, and loaded with small globules resembling mucin. The nucleus, surrounded by a small quantity of protoplasm, lies near the margin of the cell. That the granules are not protoplasmic in character is shown by the fact that they do not stain on the addition of carmine. When treated with water or dilute acids, the globules swell up, coalesce, and form a uniform mass. The chemic relations of this substance indicate that it is the precursor of mucin—namely, mucigen. During secretory activity the cells discharge these mucigen granules into the lumen of the acinus, where they are transformed into mucin. Though the appearance of the gland-cell appears to indicate it, there is no evidence for the view that the cell itself undergoes disintegration in the process.

FIG. 66.—THE APPEARANCE PRESENTED BY THE CELLS OF THE SUBMAXILLARY GLAND OF THE DOG AFTER PROLONGED SECRETION.

The Physiologic Actions of Saliva.—The constant presence of salivary glands in the different classes of animals and the large amount

of secretion they pour daily into the alimentary canal point to the conclusion that this mixed fluid plays an important rôle in the general digestive process. Experiment has demonstrated that it has a two-fold action, physical and chemical.

Physically, saliva softens and moistens the food, unites its particles into a consistent mass by means of its contained mucin, and thus facilitates swallowing.

Chemically it converts starch into sugar. This action is more marked with boiled than with raw starch, a fact which depends on the physical structure of the starch grain. In the natural condition each starch grain consists of a cellulose envelope or stroma in the meshes of which is contained the true starch material, the granulose. When boiled for some minutes, the starch grain absorbs water, the granulose swells and ruptures the cellulose envelope, after which it passes into an imperfect opalescent solution more or less viscid, depending on the relative amounts of water and starch. This is the change largely brought about by the process of cooking. If a portion of this hydrated starch be kept in the mouth for a few minutes it will be converted into sugar, a fact made evident by the sense of taste.

The chemic action of saliva in converting starch into sugar, as well as the intermediate stages, can be experimentally shown in the following manner: To 5 volumes of a thin starch solution in a test-tube add two volumes of filtered saliva. Place the mixture in a water-bath at a temperature of 35°C . In a few minutes the starch passes into a soluble condition and the fluid becomes clear and transparent. On testing the solution from time to time with iodine the characteristic blue reaction will be found to gradually disappear, the color passing from blue to violet, to red, to yellow. If now the solution be boiled with a solution of cupric hydroxid (Fehling's solution) a copious red or yellow precipitate of cuprous oxid is formed, which indicates the presence of sugar. The polariscope shows that this sugar is maltose, $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_{11}$. During the conversion of the starch intermediate substances are formed to which the term dextrin is applied. After the starch has been rendered soluble it undergoes a cleavage into maltose and a dextrin, which, as it gives rise to a red color with iodine, is termed erythrodextrin. At a later stage this erythrodextrin also undergoes a cleavage into maltose and a second variety of dextrin, which, as it does not give rise to any color with iodine, is termed achroödextrin. It is claimed by some investigators that this form can also in time be transformed into sugar. It is possible that a small quantity of dextrose is also formed.

The successive stages of the conversion of starch into sugar may be represented by the following schema:

This change consists in the assumption by the starch of a molecule of water, and for this reason the process is termed hydrolysis. The nature of the chemic change is shown in the following formula:

The amylolytic or starch-changing action of saliva depends on the presence of an unorganized ferment or enzyme known as *ptyalin*. This enzyme is present in the secretion of each of the salivary glands. The chemic character of ptyalin is unknown, though there are reasons for believing that it partakes of the nature of a proteid. It is a product in all probability of the katabolic activity of the secretory cells. According to Latimer and Warren, ptyalin is a derivative of the zymogen, ptyalogen. This latter compound has been shown to be present in the glands of the dog, cat, and sheep. Ptyalin effects the transformation of starch merely by its presence, and undergoes no perceptible consumption in the process. The activity of this enzyme is very great, and unless interfered with by an excess of sugar and dextrin, it acts practically indefinitely.

The activity of ptyalin is modified by various external conditions, among which may be mentioned the chemic reaction of the medium in which it is placed. It is most active when the medium is moderately alkaline. Its activity is arrested either by strong alkalis or acids, though the presence of a small percentage of an acid does not appear to have any effect in either hastening or retarding the process. This fact has a bearing upon the question as to whether the action of the saliva is interfered with in the stomach by the presence of the gastric juice. At present it is a disputed matter, but the weight of authority is in favor of the view that the transforming action may continue for almost half an hour during the early stages of gastric digestion. The temperature also influences the rapidity with which the transformation of the starch is effected. At a temperature of 95° to 106° F. the ptyalin acts most energetically, while its activity is entirely arrested by reducing the temperature to the freezing-point or raising it to the boiling-point.

The Nerve Mechanism of Secretion.—The secretion of the saliva is a complex act and involves the coöperation of gland-cells, blood-vessels, and nerves. During the intervals of mastication the glands are practically at rest as far as the *discharge* of saliva is concerned. The cells, however, are actively engaged in absorbing from the surrounding lymph-spaces materials derived from the blood from which they construct their characteristic contents. The blood-

vessels possess that degree of dilatation necessary for nutritive purposes.

With the beginning of mastication the blood-vessels suddenly dilate, the blood-supply is increased, and the gland-cells begin to discharge water, inorganic salts, and their organic constituents into the lumen of the acinus. This continues until mastication ceases, when all the structures return to their former condition of relative inactivity. The entire process is reflex in character and takes place through the medulla oblongata. It requires the usual mechanism necessary for all reflex acts—viz., a sentient surface, afferent nerves, emissive cells, efferent nerves, and the responsive organs.

With the introduction of food into the mouth impressions are made on the terminal branches of the afferent nerves distributed in the mucous membrane. Nerve impulses developed by the mechanic and chemic action of the food are then transmitted to the medulla oblongata and received by emissive cells. These in turn discharge nerve impulses which are transmitted through efferent nerves to the structures, producing the vascular and secretory effects already stated.

The nerves and nerve-centers which constitute the reflex mechanism for the secretion of saliva are shown in the following table:

Afferent Nerves.	Nerve-centers.	Efferent Nerves.
1. Lingual branch of fifth nerve.	Medulla oblongata.	Chorda tympani for the submaxillary and sublingual glands, auriculotemporal branch of the fifth nerve for the parotid gland.
	<i>P. has brain in G.P. thus</i>	
2. Glossopharyngeal.		Sympathetic nerve.

That the secretion of the saliva is regulated by the above mechanism, and that the lingual branches of the fifth nerves and the glossopharyngeals are the *afferent nerves*, can be demonstrated by exposing the glands and their nerve connections and subjecting them to experiment. Under such circumstances, if a cannula be placed in the duct of the submaxillary gland, and the lingual nerve stimulated by an induced electric current of moderate strength, a copious flow of saliva at once takes place. If now the glossopharyngeal nerve be stimulated in a similar manner, the effect on the secretion will be the same. Division of these two nerves in an animal, in such a way as to prevent the nerve impulses from reaching the medulla oblongata, is followed by a marked diminution in the amount of saliva secreted. The reflex centers, however, may receive impulses and be excited to activity by impulses coming through other nerves—*e. g.*, the pneumogastric, when the mucous membrane of the stomach is stimulated; the sciatic, when after division its central end is stimulated; through nerve-fibers that originate higher up in the brain and are stimulated by ideas and emotions.

Whenever these centers are stimulated, either by nerve impulses coming through afferent nerves, from the periphery or from the brain, impulses are generated which pass outward through *efferent nerves*—the chorda tympani nerve to the submaxillary and sublingual glands, and the auriculo-temporal nerve to the parotid gland.

The chorda tympani nerve is a branch of the facial, the trunk of which it leaves in the aqueduct of Fallopius. It then crosses the tympanic cavity, emerges through the glaserian fissure, and joins the lingual branch of the inferior maxillary division of the fifth

FIG. 67.—SCHEME OF THE NERVES INVOLVED IN THE SECRETION OF SALIVA.

nerve. After passing forward as far as the sublingual gland, nearly all of the original fibers leave the lingual nerve by four or five strands to become connected by terminal branches with nerve-ganglion cells in relation with the submaxillary and sublingual glands. (See Fig. 67.)

The nerve-fibers which conduct nerve impulses outward from the medulla to the parotid gland are believed to pass through the glossopharyngeal nerve, through the tympanic branch or nerve of Jacobson, to the otic ganglion, with which they become connected.

From this ganglion new nerve-fibers arise, the terminal branches of which become connected with the secretory cells of the gland.

The effects on the secretion and flow of saliva from the submaxillary gland which follow division and stimulation of the chorda tympani nerve are shown in the following way: a cannula is inserted into Wharton's duct and the rate of flow estimated; the nerve is then divided, after which the flow ceases. The peripheral end of the nerve is then stimulated with the induced electric current, when a copious secretion of a thin saliva takes place, accompanied by a marked dilatation of the blood-vessels of the gland. The quantity of blood passing through the vessels is so great as to give to the venous blood an arterial hue and to the small veins a distinct pulsation. It would appear from these effects that the chorda contains two sets of fibers, one of which inhibits the action of a local vaso-motor mechanism permitting the blood-vessels to dilate (vaso-dilator fibers), the other of which stimulates the secretory cells to activity, either directly or through the intermediation of local ganglia. That local ganglia are involved is shown by the effects which follow the injection of nicotin into the circulation. After a sufficient dose—10 milligrams for the cat—stimulation of the chorda has no effect. Stimulation of the nerve-plexus beyond the ganglion, however, is at once followed by vascular dilatation and secretion.

It might be inferred that the increase in the flow of saliva is due to filtration, the result of the increased blood-supply to the gland, and not to the influence of any true secretory fibers stimulating the activities of the secretory cells. That this is not the case, however, can be demonstrated in several ways: First, the pressure in the duct of the submaxillary gland, as shown by the mercurial manometer, rises, when the gland is secreting, considerably above the pressure in the carotid artery, which could not be the case if it were due to a mere filtration; for if pressure alone were the cause, the flow of saliva would cease as soon as the pressure in the tube equaled the pressure in the blood-vessels. Second, even in the absence of blood the gland can be made to yield a secretion, as shown by stimulating the nerve in a recently killed animal. Third, after the injection of atropin into the circulation the secretion is abolished, but the local vasomotor mechanism is unimpaired, for stimulation of the nerve, as in the previous instance, gives rise to a dilatation of the vessels and an increased blood-supply. There is thus abundant proof that the chorda tympani contains two sets of fibers—one regulating the blood-supply to the gland, the other stimulating the secretory cells.

The influence of the auriculo-temporal branch of the fifth nerve upon the parotid gland is similar to the action of the chorda tympani on the submaxillary gland. The active fibers of this nerve are probably derived from the ninth nerve or glossopharyngeal. If the nerve

be stimulated by the induced electric current, there follows a dilatation of the blood-vessels and an abundant discharge of a thin saliva, rich in water and salts, but containing a small amount of organic matter. Division of the nerve, extirpation of the otic ganglion, division of Jacobson's nerve, is followed by a loss of reflex secretion. Stimulation of Jacobson's nerve, as shown by Heidenhain, gives rise to the secretion.

The sympathetic fibers which influence the salivary secretion emerge from the spinal cord mainly through the second, third, and fourth thoracic nerves. After passing into the sympathetic chain they ascend to the superior cervical ganglion, with the cells of which they become connected through the intermediation of fine terminal branches. From this point non-medullated nerve-fibers follow the branches of the external carotid artery to the different glands. There is no evidence that these fibers have any connection, anatomic or physiologic, with local ganglia at or near the submaxillary or sublingual glands. If the sympathetic nerve in the neck, especially in the dog, be divided and the peripheral end stimulated with the induced electric current, there is at once a contraction of the smaller blood-vessels of the gland and a diminution of the blood-supply, a result showing the presence of vaso-constrictor fibers. Nevertheless both the submaxillary and sublingual glands pour out a saliva which is different from that poured out when the chorda tympani is stimulated. The quantity is less, it is more viscid, richer in organic matter, of a higher specific gravity, and more active in the transformation of starch into sugar. Stimulation of the fibers passing to the parotid gland is followed by contraction of the vessels and an abolition of the secretion; but at the same time there is an increased activity of the secretory cells, for subsequent stimulation of the auriculo-temporal nerve not only causes an increase in the amount of water and inorganic salts, but an increase also in the amount of organic matter far beyond that produced when the auriculo-temporal has alone been stimulated. Histologic examination shows that the small ducts of the gland are filled with thick organic matter after stimulation of the cervical sympathetic.

DEGLUTITION.

Deglutition is that part of the digestive process which is concerned in the transference of the food from the mouth through the pharynx and esophagus into the stomach. This is an extremely complex act and involves the action of a large number of structures, all of which are made to act in proper sequence under the coördinating influence of the nervous system. The deglutitory canal consists of the mouth, pharynx, and esophagus, each of which presents certain anatomic features on which its physiologic action depends.

The cavity of the mouth communicates posteriorly with the pharynx by a narrow orifice, the isthmus of the fauces. This orifice is bounded above by the soft palate, laterally by the anterior and posterior half arches, and below by the tongue.

The pharynx is an oval-shaped cavity extending from the base of the skull to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage, a distance of

FIG. 68.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE NASAL FOSSA AND MOUTH. 1. Left nares. 2. Lateral cartilage of the nose. 3. Portion of the internal alar cartilage forming the skeleton of the lower part. 4. Superior meatus. 5. Middle meatus. 6. Inferior meatus. 7. Sphenoidal sinuses. 8. External boundary of the posterior nares. 9. Internal elliptical opening of the Eustachian tube. 10. Soft palate. 11. Vestibule of the mouth. 12. Vault of palate. 13. Genioglossus muscle. 14. Geniohyoid muscle. 15. Cut margin of the mylohyoid muscle. 16. Anterior pillar of the palate (anterior half-arch), presenting a triangular figure with the base inferiorly, covering partly the tonsil. 17. Posterior pillar (posterior half-arch) of the palate. 18. Tonsil. 19. Follicular (mucous) glands at the base of the tongue. 20. Cavity of the larynx. 21. Ventricle of the larynx. 22. Epiglottis. 23. Cut os hyoides. 24. Cut thyroid cartilage. 25. Thyrohyoid membrane. 26. Section of posterior portion of the cricoid cartilage. 27. Section of the anterior portion of the same cartilage. 28. Crico-thyroid membrane.

about 12 centimeters. (See Fig. 68.) Its walls are formed mainly by three pairs of muscles—the superior, middle, and inferior constrictors—each consisting of red, striated muscle-fibers, and hence capable of rapid and energetic contractions. Superiorly the pharynx is attached to and supported by the basilar process of the occipital

bone; inferiorly it becomes continuous with the esophagus. The anterior wall of the pharynx is imperfect and presents openings which communicate with the nasal chambers, the mouth, and the larynx. The lateral wall on either side presents the opening of the Eustachian tube which leads directly into the cavity of the middle ear. The interior of the pharynx is lined by mucous membrane. The pharynx is partially separated from the mouth by the velum pendulum palati, a muscular structure attached above to the hard palate; its lower edge or border is directed downward and backward and presents in the middle line a conical process, the uvula. On either side the palate presents two curved arches, the anterior and posterior, formed respectively by the palato-glossei and palato-pharyngei muscles. The laryngeal orifice or glottis is placed just beneath the base of the tongue. It is triangular in shape, wide in front, narrow behind, and directed downward and backward. It is bounded above by a thin plate of cartilage, *the epiglottis*, placed just behind the tongue and so arranged that it can easily be depressed and elevated.

The esophagus, the continuation of the deglutitory canal, extends downward from the lower border of the cricoid cartilage for a distance of from 22 to 25 centimeters, to a point opposite the ninth thoracic vertebra, where it expands into the stomach. Its walls are composed of an internal or mucous and an external or muscular coat, united by areolar tissue. The muscular coat consists of an external layer of longitudinal fibers arranged in three bands and of an internal layer composed of fibers arranged circularly in the upper part and obliquely in the lower part of the esophagus. In the upper third the fibers are striated; in the middle third they are a mixture of both striated and non-striated; in the lower third they are entirely non-striated. H

The deglutitive act may be for convenience divided into three stages, viz.:

1. The passage of the food from the mouth into the pharynx.
2. The passage of the food through the pharynx into the esophagus.
3. The passage of the food through the esophagus into the stomach.

In the first stage the bolus of food is placed on the superior surface of the tongue. The mouth is then closed and respiration is momentarily suspended. The tip of the tongue is placed against the posterior surfaces of the teeth. The tongue, because of its intrinsic musculature, then arches from before backward against the roof of the mouth and pushes the bolus of food through the isthmus of the fauces into the pharynx. This completes the first stage. It is a voluntary effort and accomplished partly by the tongue, though, as shown by Meltzer, mainly by the mylohyoid muscles.

The second and third stages, or the passage of the food through the pharynx and esophagus into the stomach, have been attributed

until quite recently entirely to peristaltic movements of their musculature. It has been stated that with the passage of the food through the isthmus of the fauces the posterior wall of the pharynx advances and seizes the food, and in consequence of a rapid peristaltic movement running through its constrictor muscles from above downward is transferred to the esophagus; that with the entrance of the food into the esophagus a similar peristalsis, varying in rapidity in different sections in consequence of a change in the character of its musculature, gradually transfers the food into the stomach. There can be but slight doubt that by this method the bolus of food, especially if it is of firm consistence and of a size sufficient to distend the esophagus, is transferred into the stomach, but that it is the exceptional rather than the usual method has been demonstrated by Kronecker, Falk, and Meltzer.

In 1880 the first of these experimenters made the observation that the sensation in the stomach following the swallowing of a mouthful of cold water occurred too quickly to be explained by the prevalent belief that its transference was caused by ordinary peristalsis, the rate of progression of which was known to be slow. Falk then discovered the fact, by introducing through the mouth into the pharynx a tube connected externally with a water manometer, that during the act of swallowing there is a sudden rise of pressure equal to about twenty centimeters of water.

These experiments demonstrated that at the beginning of deglutition there is a sudden rise of pressure, the result of a quickly acting force resident in the mouth or pharynx, in consequence of which the food is rapidly thrown down into the stomach, peristalsis playing no part in the process. The proof, however, of these statements was furnished by Meltzer. This observer introduced into the pharynx and esophagus rubber tubes, the ends of which were provided with thin-walled rubber balloons which could be distended with air. The outer ends of the tubes were connected with Marey's recording tambours. Any compression of the balloon would be followed by the passage of the air into the tambour and an elevation of the lever. With one balloon in the pharynx and the other in the esophagus at varying depths, and the recording levers of the tambours applied against the surface of a revolving cylinder, it became possible, with the addition of a chronogram, to obtain a graphic representation of the time relations of simultaneous and successive compressions of the two balloons.

It was found as the result of many experiments that no matter how deep the position of the esophageal balloon, it was compressed simultaneously with the pharyngeal balloon, as shown by the rise of the levers on swallowing a mouthful of water. The interval of time between the rise of the two levers did not amount to more than the

tenth of a second. The inference was that the water was projected or shot down the pharynx and esophagus in this period of time, and in its passage compressed both balloons practically at the same instant. The same was found to be true when small masses of more consistent food were swallowed.

The curves of the entire deglutitive act recorded by the two levers are, however, different in form. (See Fig. 69.) The pharyngeal curve, 1, presents two crests, the first, A, being due to the compression caused by the passage of the bolus, the second, B, due to the compression exerted by the contraction of the pharyngeal muscles. The interval of time between these two crests amounts to not more than 0.3 second. In the esophageal curve, 3, the elevation, C, corresponds to the elevation, A, and is likewise due to the compression exerted

FIG. 69.—TRACING OF THE ACT OF DEGLUTITION. 1. A indicates the compression of the elastic bag caused by the bolus projected by the contraction of the mylohyoid muscles. B. Contraction of the pharynx. 2. Line marking seconds. 3. Tracing of the bag in the esophagus 12 cm. from the teeth. C. Compression of the bag by the bolus corresponding to A. D. Compression by the residues of the bolus carried on by the contraction of the pharynx, B. E. Contraction of the esophagus.

by the bolus. The interval of time between the beginning of the first and second curves was not more than 0.1 second, regardless of the depth to which the esophageal balloon was plunged. At a later period a second rise of the lever was recorded; the time of its appearance, height, duration, etc., were found to increase with the depth of the balloon.

These facts demonstrate that deglutition consists of two phases: (1) a rapid rise of pressure in the pharynx, as a result of which the bolus is suddenly shot down to the stomach; (2) a peristaltic contraction of the musculature of the canal, which, acting as a supplementary force, carries onward any particles of food in the canal and forces the bolus through the closed sphincter at the end of the esophagus.

The immediate cause of the sudden rise of pressure was shown by Meltzer to be the contraction of the mylohyoid muscles. When the nerves going to these muscles were divided in a dog, deglutition was practically abolished. These muscles are probably assisted in their action by the contraction of the hyoglossus muscles as well as the tongue itself.

It was also demonstrated in these experiments that the contraction of the esophagus did not partake of the character of ordinary peristalsis. It was found that the esophagus contracted in three distinct segments, corresponding in all probability to the difference in the character of their muscular fibers. The first segment, about six centimeters in length, was found to begin to contract about 1.2

seconds after the beginning of the first curve and lasting 2 seconds; the second segment, about twelve centimeters in length, beginning to contract about 1.8 seconds or 3 seconds after the beginning of the first section, and lasting for from 5 to 7 seconds; the third segment, six centimeters in length, contracting from 6 to 7 seconds. The beginning and the end of the contraction for each segment occurred simultaneously throughout its entire extent. If, however, a series of deglutitory acts follow each other in quick succession, there is an inhibition of the peristaltic contractions until after the final swallow.

FIG. 70.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE MANNER OF CLOSURE OF THE POSTERIOR NARES AND LARYNX DURING DEGLUTITION.

Closure of the Posterior Nares and Larynx.—

Notwithstanding the rise of pressure in the pharynx during the act of swallowing, it is seldom under normal circumstances that any portion of the bolus ever finds its way either into the larynx or nasal chambers, for the reason that the openings of these cavities are fully closed by appropriate means.

At the moment the food passes into the pharynx the posterior nasal openings are closed against the entrance of the food by a septum formed by the pendulous veil of the palate and the posterior half arches. The palate is drawn upward and backward until it meets the posterior wall of the pharynx, and at the same time is made tense,

by the action of the levator palati and tensor palati muscles respectively (Fig. 70). This septum is completed by the advance toward the middle line of the posterior half arches caused by the contraction of the muscles which compose them—the palato-pharyngei. When these structures are impaired in their functional activity, as in diphtheritic paralysis and ulcerations, there is not infrequently a regurgitation of food, especially liquids, into the nose. The larynx is equally protected against the entrance of food during deglutition under normal circumstances. That this accident occasionally happens, giving rise to severe spasmodic coughing, and even in extreme cases to suffocation, is abundantly shown by the records of clinical medicine. Usually it does not occur, for in addition to other methods there is a complete suspension of the act of inspiration by which particles of food might be drawn into the larynx. At the same time the larynx is drawn well up under the base of the tongue and closed by the descent of the epiglottis. The glottis itself is also closed by the constrictor muscles which surround it.

Nerve Mechanism of Deglutition.—Deglutition is almost exclusively a reflex act throughout its entire extent, and requires for its inauguration merely a stimulus to some portion of the mucous membrane of the deglutitory canal. The first stage is primarily voluntary, but from inattention to the process may become secondarily reflex. The origin and course of the afferent nerves, stimulation of which excite reflexly the movements of the pharynx and esophagus, however, are practically unknown. In the rabbit deglutition can be excited by stimulating the anterior central part of the soft palate. In man it has not yet been possible to locate an area stimulation of which will give rise to a reflex deglutitory act. Though electric stimulation of the superior laryngeal nerve will cause reflex deglutitory movements, it is obvious that the terminals of this nerve can not be the source of the natural afferent impulses. Stimulation of the glossopharyngeal nerve causes an inhibition of the movements.

The center from which emanate nerve impulses which excite the various muscles to action has been located experimentally in the medulla oblongata just above the *alæ cinereæ*. The efferent nerves comprise branches of the facial, hypoglossal, motor filaments of the third division of the fifth nerve, motor filaments of the glossopharyngeal and vagus derived in all probability from the spinal accessory. Inasmuch as the different mechanisms act not only in a coördinate but sequential manner, it is possible that the deglutition center is not a single circumscribed collection of cells, but a series of centers corresponding to the origin of the efferent nerves, the activities of which are coördinated by some single true deglutition center.

GASTRIC DIGESTION.

After the food has passed through the esophagus it is received by the stomach, where it is retained for a variable length of time, during which important changes are induced in its physical and chemic composition. The disintegration of the food inaugurated by mastication and insalivation is still further carried on in the stomach by the solvent action of the acid fluid there present, until the entire mass is reduced to a liquid or semi-liquid condition.

The **stomach** is a dilated and highly specialized portion of the alimentary canal intervening between the esophagus and small intestine. When moderately distended with food, it is somewhat conical or pyriform in shape and slightly curved on itself. It is situated obliquely and in some individuals almost vertically in the upper part of the abdominal cavity, extending from the left hypochondrium to the right of the epigastrium. The dimensions and capacity of the stomach undergo considerable periodic variation according to the extent to which it is distended by food. In the average condition it measures in its long diameter from 25 to 35 centimeters, in its vertical diameter at the cardia 15 centimeters, in its antero-posterior diameter from 11 to 12 centimeters. The capacity of the stomach varies from 1500 to 1700 c.c. In the empty condition its walls are collapsed and partly in contact, and the entire organ is drawn up into the upper part of the abdominal cavity. The opening through which the food passes into the stomach is known as the esophageal orifice or the cardia. The opening through which it passes into the intestine is known as the pylorus, the pyloric or gastro-duodenal orifice. Between these two orifices the stomach along its upper border presents a curve and along its lower border a much larger curve, known as the lesser and greater curvatures respectively. The left end of the stomach is termed the fundus or cardiac end; the right, the pyloric end. Passing from the fundus toward the pylorus, the stomach gradually narrows, and at a point situated about 5 cm. from the pyloric opening it frequently presents a constriction which divides the general cavity into two portions: viz., the fundus and the antrum of the pylorus.

The walls of the stomach are formed by four distinct coats united by areolar tissue and named, from without inward, as the serous, muscle-, submucous, and mucous.

The external or serous coat is thin and transparent and formed by a reduplication of the general peritoneal membrane.

The middle or muscle-coat consists of three layers of non-striated muscle-fibers, named from their direction the longitudinal, circular, and oblique (Fig. 71). The longitudinal fibers are most abundant along the lesser curvature and are a continuation of those of the

esophagus; over the remainder of the stomach they are thinly scattered, but toward the pyloric orifice they are more numerous and form a tolerably thick layer which becomes continuous with the fibers of the small intestine. The circular fibers form a complete layer encircling the entire organ, with the exception, perhaps, of a portion of the fundus. The fibers of this coat cross the longitudinal fibers at right angles. At the junction of the fundus with the pyloric antrum the circular fibers are arranged in a well-defined bundle termed the *sphincter antri pylorici*. In the pyloric region the circular fibers are more closely arranged, forming thick annular rings. At the pyloric opening the circular fibers are again crowded together and

FIG. 71.—FIBERS SEEN WITH THE STOMACH EVERTED. 1, 1. Esophagus. 2. Circular fibers at the esophageal opening. 3, 3. Circular fibers at the lesser curvature. 4, 4. Circular fibers at the pylorus. 5, 5, 6, 7, 8. Oblique fibers. 9, 10. Fibers of this layer covering the greater pouch. 11. Portion of the stomach from which these fibers have been removed to show the subjacent circular fibers.—(Sappey.)

form a distinct muscle band,—the *sphincter pylori*,—which projects for some distance into the interior of the stomach. It has been stated by Rüdinger that the inner fibers of the longitudinal coat become connected with this circular band and constitute a distinct muscle, the *dilatator pylori*. The oblique fibers are most distinct over the cardiac portion of the stomach, but extend from left to right as far as the junction of the middle and last thirds of the stomach. They are continuations of the circular fibers of the esophagus.

The *submucous coat* consists of loose areolar tissue carrying blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics. It serves to unite the muscle

to the mucous coat. Its inner surface bears a thin layer of muscular tissue, the *muscularis mucosa*, which supports the mucous membrane.

The *internal* or *mucous coat* is loosely attached to the muscular coat. In the empty and contracted state of the stomach it is thrown into longitudinal folds or *rugæ*, which are, however, obliterated when the organ is distended with food. The mucous membrane in adult life is smooth and velvety in appearance, gray in color, and covered with a layer of mucus. Its average thickness is about one millimeter.

FIG. 72.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF THE WALL OF A HUMAN STOMACH. $\times 15$. The tunica propria contains glands standing so close together that its tissue is visible only at the base of the glands toward the muscularis mucosæ.

The surface of the membrane is covered with a layer of columnar epithelial cells, each of which possesses a nucleus and nucleolus. At the pylorus there is a circular involution of the mucous membrane which is known as the *pyloric valve*. This is strengthened by fibrous tissue and embraced by the sphincter muscle previously described.

Gastric Glands.—

The surface of the mucous membrane when examined with a low magnifying power presents throughout innumerable depressions polygonal in shape and separated by slightly elevated ridges. At the bottom of these spaces are to be seen small orifices, which are the

mouths of the glands embedded in the mucous membrane. A vertical section of the gastric walls (Fig. 72) shows not only the position and appearance of the glands, but the relation of the various tissues which enter into the formation of these walls. An examination of the mucous membrane in different regions of the stomach reveals two distinct types of glands, *cardiac* or *fundic*, and *pyloric*, which differ not only in histologic structure, but also in function. Both types extend through the entire thickness of the mucosa.

The *cardiac*, *fundic*, or peptic glands, are formed by an involution of the basement membrane of the mucosa and lined by epithelial cells. Each gland may be said to consist of a short duct, or neck, and a body or fundus (Fig. 73). The latter portion is wavy or tortuous and frequently subdivided into as many as 8 to 10 distinct and separate tubules. The duct is lined by columnar epithelial cells similar to those covering the surface of the mucosa. The lumen of the fundus is bordered by epithelial cells, cuboid in shape, and consisting of a granular protoplasm containing a distinct spherical nucleus. These cells are generally spoken of as the *chief* or *central* cells. In addition to the chief cells, the fundus contains a second variety of cell, which is of a larger size,

FIG. 73.—PEPTIC GLAND FROM STOMACH OF DOG. *a*. Wide mouth and duct which receive the terminal divisions of the gland. *b*, *c*. Neck and fundus of the tubes. *e*. Central or chief cells. *d*. Parietal or acid cells.—(After Piersol.)

FIG. 74.—SECTION OF FUNDUS GLAND OF MOUSE. Left upper half drawn after an alcohol preparation, right upper half after a Golgi preparation. The entire lower portion is a diagrammatic combination of both preparations.—(Stöhr.)

of a triangular or oval shape, and consisting of a finely granular protoplasm. From this situation just beneath the gland wall they have been termed *parietal* or *border* cells. Each parietal cell appears to be surrounded and penetrated by a system of passages which open into the lumen of the gland by means of a delicate cleft or canaliculus

(Fig. 74). Glands with these histologic features are most abundant in the middle zone of the stomach. Toward the extreme left end of the fundus the glands are largely, if not entirely, devoid of parietal cells.

The *pyloric glands* are also formed by an involution of the mucous membrane and lined by epithelial cells (Fig. 75). The ducts are much longer than the ducts of the fundic glands. At its extremity each duct becomes branched, giving rise to a number, from 2 to 16, of short tubes, each of which has a large lumen and communicates with the duct by a narrow short neck. The ducts are lined throughout by columnar epithelium. According to Mall, the total number of openings on the surface of the mucous membrane of the dog's stomach is somewhat over 1,000,000, and the total number of blind tubes opposite the muscularis mucosa exceeds 16,500,000. According to Sappey, the surface of the mucous membrane of the human stomach presents over 5,000,000 orifices of gastric glands.

FIG. 75.—SECTION OF PYLORIC GLANDS FROM HUMAN STOMACH. *a*. Mouth of gland leading into long, wide duct (*b*), into which open the terminal divisions. *c*. Connective tissue of the mucosa.—(After Piersol.)

Blood-vessels, Nerves, and Lymphatics.—The *blood-vessels* of the stomach after entering the mucosa break up into a number of branches which are distributed to the muscular and mucous coats. The branches to the latter soon form a capillary network with oblong meshes which not only surround the tubules but form a network just beneath the surface of the mucosa. Veins gradually arise from the capillaries which empty into the larger veins of the mucosa. The glands are also supported by processes of smooth muscle-fibers passing up from the muscularis mucosa.

The *nerve-fibers* distributed to the stomach are derived from the vagus and the sympathetic branches of the solar plexus. After piercing the serous coat the fibers form or unite with a plexus of fibers situated between the circular and longitudinal layers of the muscle-coat. At the nodal points of this plexus large nerve-ganglion cells are to be found, the whole forming the mechanism known as Auerbach's plexus. A similar plexus of cells and fibers in more or less intimate anatomic connection with the foregoing is found between the muscle and submucous coats, and is known as Meissner's plexus. From this plexus fine nerve filaments are distributed

to muscle-fibers, blood-vessels, and glands. In the latter structure terminal arborizations have been detected in close contact with the secreting cells themselves.

The *lymphatics*, which are quite numerous, originate in the meshes of the mucosa. The larger trunks enter lymph-glands lying along the greater and lesser curvatures of the stomach.

Gastric Fistulæ.—The general process of digestion, as it takes place in the stomach, has been studied in human beings and animals with a fistula in the walls of the stomach and abdomen, the result either of accident or of necessary surgical or experimental procedures.

The earliest observations on gastric digestion were made by Dr. Beaumont on Alexis St. Martin, who, as the result of a gunshot wound, was left with a permanent fistulous opening into the fundus of the stomach. This opening two years after the accident was about two and a half inches in circumference and usually closed from within by a fold of mucous membrane which prevented the escape of the food. This valve could be readily displaced by the finger and the interior of the stomach exposed to view. After the complete recovery of St. Martin, Dr. Beaumont during the years between 1825 and 1831 at intervals made numerous experiments on the nature of gastric digestion. As the result of an admirable series of investigations it was established that the digestion of the food is largely a chemic act, due to the presence of an acid fluid secreted by the mucous membrane; that this fluid is secreted most abundantly after the introduction of food into the stomach; that different articles of food possess varying degrees of digestibility; that the duration of digestion varies according to the nature of the food, exercise, mental states, etc., and that the process is aided by continuous movements of the muscular walls.

Since Dr. Beaumont's time the establishing of a gastric fistula in human beings has been necessitated by pathologic conditions of the esophagus. After recovery these cases offered fair facilities for the study of the process when the food was introduced through the opening. Similar fistulæ have been established in both carnivorous and herbivorous animals with a view of studying the process as it takes place in them. The results obtained in these instances in many respects corroborate those obtained by Dr. Beaumont, though many new facts, unobserved by him, have been brought to light.

Gastric Juice.—The gastric juice obtained from the human stomach free from mucus and other impurities is a clear, colorless fluid with a constant acid reaction, a slightly saline and acid taste, and a specific gravity varying from 1.002 to 1.005. The juice obtained from the dog's stomach possesses essentially the same characteristics, though its acidity as well as its specific gravity are slightly greater. When kept from atmospheric influences, it resists putrefactive change for a long period of time, undergoes no apparent

change in composition, and loses none of its digestive power. It will also prevent and even arrest putrefactive change in organic matter. The chemic composition of the gastric juice has never been satisfactorily determined, owing to the fact that the secretion as obtained from fistulous openings has not been absolutely normal. The following analyses represent the composition of a sample obtained by Schmidt from the stomach of a woman who had a fistula, but who was nevertheless in good health; also the composition of the juice from a dog:

COMPOSITION OF GASTRIC JUICE.

	Human.	Dog.
Water, -----	994.40	973.06
Organic matter, -----	3.19	17.13
Hydrochloric acid, -----	0.26?	3.34
Calcium chlorid, -----	0.00	0.26
Sodium chlorid, -----	1.46	2.50
Potassium chlorid, -----	0.55	1.12
Calcium phosphate } -----		1.73
Magnesium " } -----	0.12	0.23
Ferric " } -----		0.08
Ammonium chlorid, -----	---	0.47

The organic matter present in gastric juice is a mixture of mucin and a proteid, products of the metabolic activity of the epithelial cells on the surface of the mucous membrane and of the chief or central cells of the gastric glands respectively. Associated with the proteid material are two ferment or enzyme bodies, termed pepsin and rennin. As is the case with other enzymes, their true chemic nature is practically unknown.

Pepsin, though present in gastric juice, is not present as such in the chief cells of the glands, but is derived from a zymogen, propepsin or pepsinogen, when the latter is treated with hydrochloric acid. This antecedent compound is related to the granules observed in and produced by the cell protoplasm during the period of rest. Though pepsin is largely produced by the central cells of the fundic glands, it is also produced, though in less amount, by the cells of the pyloric glands. Pepsin is the chief proteolytic agent of the gastric juice and exerts its influence most energetically in the presence of hydrochloric acid and at a temperature of about 40° C. Other acids—e. g., phosphoric, nitric, lactic, etc.—are also capable of exciting it to activity, though with less intensity.

Rennin or *pexin* is present in the gastric juice not only of man and all the mammalia, but also of birds and even fish. In its origin from a zymogen substance, in its relation to an acid medium and an optimum temperature, it bears a close resemblance to pepsin. Its specific action is the curdling of milk, a condition due to the coagulation of caseinogen.

Hydrochloric acid is the agent which gives to the gastric juice its normal acidity. Though the juice frequently contains lactic, acetic, and even phosphoric acids, it is generally believed that they are the result of fermentation changes occurring in the food, the result of bacterial action. The percentage of hydrochloric acid has been the subject of much discussion. The analysis of human gastric juice made by Schmidt shows a percentage of 0.02, while that of the dog is 0.34. It is probable, however, that the low percentage of HCl in human gastric juice was due to the admixture with saliva. At present it is believed from analyses made for clinical purposes that the acid is present to the extent of at least 0.2 per cent. This degree of acidity is not constant during the entire process of digestion. In the earlier as well as in the later stages it is much less.

The immediate origin of the hydrochloric acid is difficult of explanation. That it is derived, however, primarily from the chlorids of the food and secondarily from the blood-plasma has been established by direct experiment. ~~If~~ If all the chlorids be removed from the food and all chlorids be withdrawn from the animal tissue by the administration of various diuretics,—*e. g.*, potassium nitrate,—there will be a total disappearance of hydrochloric acid from the stomach. On the addition of sodium or potassium chlorids to the food, there is at once a reappearance of the acid. ff

As to the nature of the process by which the acid is formed, nothing definite is known. Various theories of a chemic and physical character have been offered, all of which are more or less unsatisfactory. As no hydrochloric acid is found either in the blood or lymph, the most plausible view as to its origin is that which regards it as one of the products of the metabolism of the gland-cells, and more particularly of the parietal or border cells, and which for this reason have been termed acid-producing or *oxyntic* cells. From the chlorids furnished by the blood the chlorin is derived, which, uniting with hydrogen, forms the HCl. The base set free returns to the blood, which in part accounts for its increased alkalinity during digestion as well as the diminished acidity of the urine. The acid thus formed passes through the canaliculi, which penetrate and surround the cells, into the lumen of the gland.

Hydrochloric acid exerts its influence in a variety of ways. It is the main agent in the derivation of pepsin and rennin or pexin from their antecedent zymogen compounds, pepsinogen and pexinogen (Warren); it imparts activity to these ferments; it prevents and even arrests fermentative and putrefactive changes in the food by destroying micro-organisms; it softens connective tissue, it dissolves proteids and acidifies the proteids, thus making possible the subsequent action of pepsin.

The inorganic salts of the gastric juice are probably only incidental and play no part in the digestive process.

Mode of Secretion.—The observations of Dr. Beaumont and the experiments of many physiologists have made it certain that the secretion of the gastric juice is intermittent and not continuous, that it is only on the introduction and digestion of the food that the normal amount is poured out. During the intervals of digestive activity the stomach is practically free from all traces of the juice. The mucous membrane is pale and covered with a layer of mucus having an alkaline or neutral reaction. The introduction, however, of small portions of food or irritation with a glass rod causes a change in the appearance of the mucous membrane. At the points of irritation the membrane becomes red and vascular and in a few minutes small drops of the secretion make their appearance; these coalesce and run down the sides of the stomach. The chemic reaction then changes from alkalinity to acidity.

Though the secretion of the gastric juice can be excited by these artificial means, the amount secreted, owing to the local character of the stimulation, is but slight compared with the quantity secreted when the natural stimulus—well-masticated food saturated with alkaline saliva—passes into the stomach. Under such circumstances, the stimulus being general, the blood-vessels dilate, the mucous membrane becomes uniformly red, and in a short time the secretion makes its appearance.

From experimental investigations there is reason to believe that the physical contact of the food with the mucous membrane is not sufficient to maintain a continuous secretion, and that other factors must be invoked. For it is not until digestion is well under way that the juice is secreted in normal and necessary quantity. Attempts have been made to determine the relative degree of influence of different articles of food on the rate of secretion. Of all substances capable of increasing the flow none are so efficient as peptones, their introduction into the stomach being followed by a copious secretion. For this reason it has been asserted that after the primary physical stimulation of the food there is a secondary chemic stimulation by peptones, the result of the digestive process. As to whether they are absorbed by the mucous membrane and directly stimulate the gland-cells, or whether they act as chemic stimuli to afferent nerves in the mucosa, nothing definite can be stated.

Histologic Changes in the Gastric Cells during Secretion.—During the periods of rest and secretory activity the cells of the gastric glands undergo changes in histologic structure which are believed to be connected with the production of the ferments and acid. In the resting period the protoplasm of the chief or central cells of the fundus glands becomes crowded with large and well-defined granules, which during the period of secretory activity largely disappear, so much so, that only the luminal border of the cell is

occupied by them, the outer border being clear and hyaline in appearance. The parietal cells during rest are large and finely granular, but after secretion they are smaller in size though still granular. (See Fig. 76, *A* and *B*.)

The cells of the pyloric glands, though containing granules, do not show any marked difference between the resting and active condition. According to some observers, they contain pepsinogen; according to others, mucin. The epithelial cells lining the ducts of the pylorus and fundus glands, if not identical with the epithelial cells on the surface of the mucous membrane, pass by transitional forms into them. Among these cells are found many goblet cells which secrete a portion

FIG. 76.—SECTIONS OF DEEP ENDS OF FUNDUS GLANDS OF THE CAT IN DIFFERENT SECRETIVE PHASES. $\times 1000$.—(Bensley.) *A*. From a fasting stomach. The chief cells are filled with large zymogen granules; nuclei near the outer ends of cells. Gentian-violet preparation. *b b b*. Border cells. *B*. Six hours after an abundant meal of raw flesh. The chief cells exhibit two zones, the inner occupied by large zymogen granules, the outer by a deeply staining, obscurely fibrillar element, *prozymogen*; the nuclei lie at the junction of the two zones. *b b b*. Border cells. *pr*. Prozymogen. *c*. Mucin-secreting cell, similar to those found in the neck of the gland. Gentian-violet preparation.

of the mucus found in the stomach and gastric juice. In the period of rest the protoplasm of the epithelial cells absorbs and assimilates from the surrounding lymph-spaces material which eventually makes its reappearance as a product of metabolism in the form of granules and hydrochloric acid. With the onset of digestive activity there is a dilatation of the blood-vessels, an increase in the blood-supply, a stimulation through the nerve-supply of the cells, and an output of a fluid to which the name gastric juice is given.

Influence of the Nervous System.—The secretion of gastric juice is largely a reflex act and under the control and influence of the

central nervous system. Though the mechanism involved is obscure, it has frequently been observed that the sight of food or the chewing of food without its passage into the stomach is attended by a dilatation of the blood-vessels and a copious flow of gastric juice within a few minutes, showing the coöperation of vaso-motor and secretory nerve influences, a result similar to that which occurs when the food comes into contact with the mucous membrane itself. It was also observed by Dr. Beaumont that mental emotions, such as fear and anger, will arrest the normal secretion.

Many attempts have been made with varying degrees of success to determine the paths of the efferent impulses to the glands. As the vagus is the only cranial nerve connecting the stomach with the central nervous system, it has been the subject of much experimentation. The results obtained, however, have not been uniform. The recent investigations of Pawlow are most reliable. He found that division of both vagi was followed by a loss of reflex action. Stimulation of the peripheral ends with induction shocks, one per second, after a latent period of about seven minutes, caused a flow of gastric juice.

Physiologic Action of Gastric Juice.—In the study of the physiology of gastric digestion as it takes place under normal conditions it is important to bear in mind that the foods introduced into the stomach are heterogeneous compounds consisting of both nutritive and non nutritive materials, and that before the former can be digested and utilized for nutritive purposes they must be freed from their combinations with the latter. This is accomplished by the solvent action of the gastric juice, which in virtue of the chemic activity of its constituents on proteids, gradually disintegrates the food and reduces it to the liquid or semi-liquid condition.

The nature of this change and the respective influence which the acid and pepsin exert can be studied with almost any form of proteid. The most suitable form, however, is coagulated fibrin obtained from blood by whipping and thoroughly freed from blood by washing under a stream of water. The chemic features of proteids, as well as the typical forms contained in the different articles of food, have been considered in connection with the chemic composition of the body and the composition of foods (see pages 31 and 136). For purposes of experimentation artificial gastric juice may be employed. This is as effective as the normal secretion and in no essential respect differs from it. A glycerin extract of the mucous membrane acidulated with 0.2 per cent. hydrochloric acid is probably the best.

If small pieces of fibrin be suspended in clear gastric juice and kept at a temperature of 104° F. (40° C.) for an hour or two, they will be dissolved and will entirely disappear, giving rise to a slightly opalescent mixture. In the early stages of the process the fibrin be-

comes swollen and transparent and partly dissolved. If at this time the solution be carefully neutralized, the dissolved portion can be regained in the form of acid-albumin or syntonin—a fact which indicates that the first effect of the gastric juice is the acidification of the proteids. This having been accomplished, the pepsin becomes operative, and in a varying length of time transforms the acid-albumin into a new form of proteid, termed peptone, of which, as indicated by chemic tests, there are probably two forms—antipeptone and hemipeptone. This form of proteid differs from all other forms of proteid in being soluble in both acids and alkalies and non-coagulable by heat. In the transformation of acid-albumin into peptones it is possible to isolate by the addition of ammonium sulphate intermediate bodies to which the term *albumoses* or *proteoses* has been given, and which differ somewhat in their solubility. The albumoses are termed, in the order in which they make their appearance, primary and secondary. Inasmuch as two forms of peptone can be isolated after complete digestion of any given proteid, it is assumed from this and other facts that their appearance has been preceded by two forms of albumose. This supposed change is represented by the following scheme:

From the fact that one form of peptone, under the influence of the pancreatic ferment trypsin, can be decomposed into leucin, tyrosin, aspartic acid, etc., it is believed that all the simple proteids contain two distinct groups or radicles, termed hemi and anti groups, and that it is this fact which determines the line of cleavage and the characteristics of the cleavage products. The two forms of peptone, hemipeptone and anti-peptone, are frequently included under the term *ampho-peptones*.

Nearly all forms of proteid are in a similar manner transformed into peptones by gastric juice. Beyond this stage, however, there does not seem to be any further change, peptones apparently being the final products of gastric digestion. The intimate nature of this change is practically unknown, but there are reasons for thinking that it is a process of hydration, attended by cleavage, with increasing solubility of the resulting products.

Characters of Peptones.—The peptones resulting from the digestion of different proteids, though resembling each other in many respects, yet possess different chemic characteristics, as shown by their reaction to various chemic reagents. Though having some resemblance to the proteids from which they are derived, they are to be distinguished from them by the following general characteristics:

1. They are not coagulable either by heat or by nitric acid.
2. They are soluble in water, either hot or cold, and in acid and alkaline solutions.
3. They are diffusible, passing through animal membranes with great rapidity. It has been demonstrated that peptones diffuse about twelve times as rapidly as the proteids from which they are derived.

Neither on fat nor starch has gastric juice any appreciable effect, and when these substances are introduced into the stomach they pass into the intestine unchanged. Notwithstanding the fact that dilute solutions of hydrochloric acid (0.3 per cent.) will promptly invert cane-sugar into dextrose and levulose, and that gastric juice will accomplish the same result in test-tubes, there is no strong evidence for the belief that the inversion of cane-sugar takes place to any marked extent in the stomach under normal conditions. The starch, however, which has been subjected to the action of the saliva still continues to be converted into maltose during the first fifteen to thirty minutes or possibly longer. Even though gastric juice is being secreted and though hydrochloric acid solutions with a strength of 0.3 per cent. will arrest the action of ptyalin, starch digestion continues for the reason that the acid combines with the proteids and is thus rendered inoperative. After the above-mentioned period, free acid makes its appearance when salivary digestion ceases.

Action of Gastric Juice on Foods.—The action of gastric juice on proteids affords a key to its influence in the reduction of foods to the liquid or semi-liquid condition. It is evident that it will be most active in the digestion of food consisting largely of proteid materials, such as meat, eggs, milk, etc. Meat is disintegrated first by the conversion of the proteids of the connective tissue, which have been more or less gelatinized by cooking, into peptones. The sarcolemma of the muscle-fibers which have been thus separated is in a similar manner attacked and converted into peptones. The true muscle or sarcous substance, consisting largely of myosin, undergoes a corresponding change. If the quantity of meat be not too large and the gastric juice be secreted in proper amount, it is possible that all the meat will be digested in the stomach. It is quite probable, however, that this is not the case and that a portion of the semi-digested meat passes into the intestine, where its final solution is effected.

The white of egg, especially when slightly boiled, is much more readily digested than when raw or firmly coagulated by prolonged boiling. In either condition, however, the connective tissue is dissolved and peptonized, after which the native albumin undergoes the same change. The yolk of the egg consists largely of fat held in suspension by a proteid substance, vitellin, which is also capable of transformation into peptone.

Adipose tissue is similarly reduced. The proteids of the connective tissue and of the fat vesicles are dissolved and peptonized and the fat-drops set free. Milk undergoes a peculiar change in composition before its proteid constituents can be transformed into peptones. The caseinogen in the presence of calcium salts is always in the soluble state. When acted on by the gastric juice, the caseinogen undergoes coagulation which consists in the formation of a solid compound, casein, and a soluble albumin. This change is due to the presence and activity of the ferment rennin. The necessity for this change, however, is not apparent. The coagulated casein presents itself in the form of a flocculent curd, which is finer in human than in cow's milk, and hence more easily digestible. The casein is digested by the hydrochloric acid and then converted into peptone.

Vegetables, though consisting of a woody or cellulose framework, undergo a partial disintegration in the stomach. When boiled and physically disintegrated by the teeth, the gastric juice is enabled to penetrate the framework and dissolve and peptonize the various proteid constituents. As a general rule, the vegetable proteids are more difficult of digestion than the animal proteids.

Duration of Gastric Digestion.—The length of time the food remains in the stomach and the relative digestibility of different articles of food were carefully studied by Dr. Beaumont on St. Martin, and though the results obtained by him may not be absolutely correct, viewed in the light of recent knowledge of the digestive process, yet in the main they have been corroborated in various ways. As a result of many observations Dr. Beaumont came to the conclusion that the average length of time an ordinary meal consisting of meat, bread, potatoes, etc., remained in the stomach undergoing digestion was about three and a half hours, the duration of the process, however, being increased when an excessive quantity of food was taken or the quantity and quality of the gastric juice impaired by abnormal conditions of the system. As soon as the food is liquefied by the gastric juice that portion not absorbed by the gastric vessels passes into the intestines, this continuing for two to three hours until the stomach is completely emptied. The relative digestibility of the different foods was also made the subject of many experiments by Dr. Beaumont. After repeating and verifying his observations made under varying conditions, he summed up his results in a table, of

which the following is an abstract, in which the mode of preparation and the time required for the digestion of different foods are exhibited:

TABLE SHOWING DIGESTIBILITY OF VARIOUS ARTICLES OF FOOD.

	Hours.	Minutes.
Eggs, whipped, -----	1	20
“ soft boiled, -----	3	--
“ hard boiled, -----	3	30
Oysters, raw, -----	2	55
“ stewed, -----	3	30
Lamb, broiled, -----	2	30
Veal, broiled, -----	4	--
Pork, roasted, -----	5	15
Beefsteak, broiled, -----	3	--
Turkey, roasted, -----	2	25
Chicken, boiled, -----	4	--
“ fricasseed, -----	2	45
Duck, roasted, -----	4	--
Soup, barley, boiled, -----	1	30
“ bean, “ -----	3	--
“ chicken, “ -----	3	--
“ mutton, “ -----	3	30
Liver, beef, broiled, -----	2	--
Sausage, “ -----	3	20
Green corn, boiled, -----	3	45
Beans, “ -----	2	30
Potatoes, roasted, -----	2	30
“ boiled, -----	3	30
Cabbage, “ -----	4	30
Turnips, “ -----	3	30
Beets, “ -----	3	45
Parsnips, “ -----	2	30

Movements of the Stomach.—During the period of gastric digestion the muscle walls of the stomach become the seat of a series of movements, peristaltic in character, which not only incorporate the gastric juice with the food, but also serve to eject the liquefied portions of the food into the small intestine.

The movements of the human stomach as described by Beaumont, as well as the movements of the dog's stomach as stated by different observers, are not in agreement in all respects, and are, moreover, open to question for the reason that they were not observed under strictly physiologic conditions. The more recent investigations of Cannon have thrown new light on this subject. By means of the Röntgen rays he has been enabled to study the movements in the living animal and under normal conditions. The animal (the cat) was fed with bread and milk, to which was added subnitrate of bismuth. This substance, being opaque, rendered the movements of the stomach walls visible on the fluorescent screen. With paper placed over the screen it was possible to sketch the changes in shape that the stomach undergoes at different periods of the digestive act. Some of these changes are represented in Fig.

77. The anatomic features of the cat stomach of interest in this connection are represented in Fig. 78.

These investigations show that different portions of the stomach walls exhibit different forms of activity, which for convenience of description are separately described by Cannon as follows:

FIG. 77.—SHADOW SKETCHES OF THE OUTLINES OF THE STOMACH OF A CAT IMMEDIATELY AFTER A MEAL (11.0), AND AT VARIOUS INTERVALS AFTERWARD (AT 12.0, AT 2.0, 3.30, 4.30).—(W. B. Cannon.)

1. *The Movements of the Pyloric Part.*—Within five minutes after a cat has finished a meal of bread there is visible near the duodenal end of the antrum a slight annular contraction which moves peristaltically to the pylorus; this is followed by several waves recurring at regular intervals. Two or three minutes after the first movement is seen, very slight constrictions appear near the middle of the stomach, and, pressing deeper into the greater curvature, course slowly toward the pyloric end. As new regions enter

FIG. 78.—The cardiac portion is all that part to the left, as the stomach lies in the body, of WX. The cardia is at C. The pylorus is at P, and the pyloric portion is the part between P and WX. This has two divisions: the antrum, between P and YZ, and the pre-antral part, between WX and YZ. The lesser curvature is on the top of the outline between C and P, and the greater curvature between the same points along the lower border.—(Amer. Jour. of Physiology.)

into constriction, the fibers just previously contracted become relaxed, so that there is a true moving wave, with a trough between two crests. When a wave swings round the bend in the pyloric part, the indentation made by it deepens; and as digestion goes on the antrum

elongates and the constrictions running over it grow stronger, but, until the stomach is nearly empty, they do not entirely divide the cavity. After the antrum has lengthened, a wave takes about thirty-six seconds to move from the middle of the stomach to the pylorus. At all periods of digestion the waves recur at intervals of almost exactly ten seconds. It results from this rhythm that when one wave is just beginning several others are already running in order before it. Between the rings of constriction the stomach is bulged out, as shown in the various outlines in Fig. 77.

Movements of the Pyloric Sphincter.—During the first ten or fifteen minutes after the first constriction of the antrum the pylorus is tightly closed. After this period it opens at irregular intervals to permit the passage of liquefied food which is ejected by peristaltic waves for a distance of two or three centimeters into the duodenum. The frequency with which the pylorus opens depends apparently on the degree to which the food is softened. When the food is hard, the pylorus closes more tightly and remains closed a longer period than when it is soft.

The Activity of the Cardiac Portion.—As digestion proceeds, the pre-antral part of the stomach elongates and assumes the shape of a tube, which becomes the seat also of peristaltic constriction waves. As a result, some of the food is gradually forced into the antrum to succeed that which has been prepared and ejected into the duodenum. As the pre-antral tube is emptied of its contents the longitudinal and circular fibers of the fundus steadily contract and gradually force its contents into the tubular portion. This continues until the fundus is completely emptied. The changes in shape which the cardiac portion undergoes during digestion are represented in Fig. 77. The fundus acts as a reservoir for the food and forces out its contents a little at a time as the antral mechanism is ready to receive them. Since peristaltic movements are absent from the cardiac portion the food is not mixed with gastric juice, and therefore salivary digestion can continue for a considerable period. There is no evidence of a circulation of food in the stomach as usually described. On the contrary, the movement through the pre-antral tube and antrum is in general a progressive though an oscillating one. As the constriction waves rapidly pass over the food it is advanced toward the pyloric opening, but as this is closed the food is forced backward through the advancing constricted ring for a variable distance.

The effect of the constriction waves is to mix the food with the gastric juice, triturate and soften it. So soon as this is effected, the pylorus relaxes, when the advancing constriction wave expels it into the intestine. With its expulsion room is afforded for an additional quantity of food, and hence there is a general advance of the food mass toward the pylorus.

Though these observations were made on the cat, evidence is accumulating which goes to show that in human beings the walls of the stomach exhibit constriction waves which are similar in all respects to those above described.

The Nerve Mechanism of the Stomach.—The movements of the stomach are to some extent independent of the nervous system, though they are coördinated and regulated by it. The isolated stomach of the dog and of other animals as well, if kept warm and moist, will exhibit rhythmic peristaltic movements for a period varying from an hour to an hour and a half. Though nerve-cells and fibers are present in the walls of the stomach, between the layers of muscle-fibers, it is not believed that they are the immediate sources of the stimulus to the contraction. The stimulus lies within the muscle substance itself, and is therefore myogenic. When once initiated, the contraction process propagates itself from fiber to fiber. The stomach, however, receives nerve impulses from the central nervous system by way of the vagi and the splanchnic nerves, which determine the movements in accordance with the needs of digestion. Experimentally it has been shown that the vagus is the augmentor, the splanchnic the inhibitor, nerve of the stomach movements. Experimentally it has been shown that stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided vagus augments the vigor of the peristalsis of the pyloric region and at the same time increases the contraction of the sphincter pylori muscle. Stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided splanchnic is followed by inhibition of the peristalsis and a loss of tone.

INTESTINAL DIGESTION.

The physical and chemic changes which the alimentary principles undergo in the small intestine, and which collectively constitute intestinal digestion, are probably more important and complex than those taking place in the stomach, for the food is, in this situation, subjected to the solvent action of the pancreatic and intestinal juices, as well as to the action of the bile, each of which exerts a transforming influence on one or more substances and still further prepares them for absorption into the blood.

To rightly appreciate the physiologic actions of the digestive juices poured into the intestine the nature of the partially digested food as it comes from the stomach must be kept in mind. This consists of water, inorganic salts, acidified proteids, hemipeptones and antipeptones, starch, maltose, liquefied fat, saccharose, lactose, cellulose, and the indigestible portion of meats, cereals, and fruits. Collectively they are known as chyme. As this acidified mass passes through the duodenum its contained acids excite a reflex secretion

chyme

and discharge of the intestinal fluids: *e. g.*, pancreatic juice, bile, and intestinal juice. Inasmuch as these fluids are alkaline in reaction they exert a neutralizing and precipitating influence on various constituents of the chyme. As soon as this has taken place, gastric digestion ceases and those chemic changes are inaugurated which eventuate in the transformation of all the remaining undigested nutritive materials into absorbable and assimilable compounds which collectively constitute intestinal digestion.

THE SMALL INTESTINE.

The small intestine, in which this stage of digestion takes place, is a convoluted tube, measuring about seven meters in length and 3.5 cm. in diameter, and extending from the pyloric orifice of the stomach to the beginning of the large intestine.

The intestine consists of four coats: viz., serous, muscular, submucous, and mucous.

The *serous coat* is the most external and is formed by a reflection of the general peritoneal membrane.

The *muscle coat*, situated just beneath the former, surrounds the entire intestine. It is composed of non-striated fibers which are more abundant and better developed in the upper than in the lower portions of the intestine. The muscle coat consists of two layers of fibers: (1) an external or longitudinal, and (2) an internal or circular layer. The longitudinal fibers are most marked at that border of the intestine free from peritoneal attachment, though they form a thin layer all over the intestine. The circular fibers are much more numerous, and completely encircle the intestine throughout its entire extent.

The *submucous coat* consists of areolar tissue and serves to unite the muscular with the mucous coat. A thin layer of muscle-fibers, the *muscularis mucosa*, is placed on its inner surface.

The *mucous coat* is soft and velvety in appearance and covered by a single layer of columnar epithelium. Its entire surface is covered with small conical projections termed villi. Throughout its entire extent, with the exception of the lower portion of the ileum, the mucous membrane presents a series of transverse folds—the valvulæ conniventes, or valves of Kirkring. These folds vary from one-fourth to half an inch in width and extend one-half to two-thirds of the distance around the interior of the bowel. Each valve consists of two layers of the mucous membrane permanently united by fibrous tissue. It is believed that the valves retard to some extent the passage of the food through the intestine and present a greater surface for absorption.

Blood-vessels, Nerves, and Lymphatics.—The blood-vessels,

of the small intestine, which are very numerous, are derived mainly from the superior mesenteric artery. After penetrating the intestinal walls the smaller vessels ramify in the submucous coat and send branches to the muscle and mucous coats, supplying all their structures with blood. After circulating through the capillary vessels the blood is returned by small veins, which subsequently unite to form the superior mesenteric vein, which, uniting with the splenic and gastric veins, forms the portal vein. The nerves are derived from the lower part of the solar plexus. The branches follow the blood-vessels and become associated with two plexuses, one (Auerbach's) lying between the muscle coats, the other (Meissner's) lying in the submucous coat. The lymphatics, which originate in the mucous and muscle coats, are very abundant. They unite to form those vessels seen in the mesentery and empty into the thoracic duct.

Intestinal Glands.—The gland apparatus of the intestine by which the intestinal juice is secreted consists of the duodenal (Brunner's) and the intestinal (Lieberkühn's) glands.

The *duodenal glands* are situated beneath the mucous membrane and open by a short wide duct on its free surface. They are racemose glands lined by nucleated epithelium. The secretion of these glands is clear, slightly viscid, and alkaline. Its chemic composition and function are unknown.

The *intestinal glands* or follicles are distributed throughout the entire mucous membrane in enormous numbers. They are formed mainly by an inversion of the mucous membrane and hence open on its free surface. Each tubule consists of a thin basement membrane lined by a layer of spheric epithelial cells, some of which undergo distention by mucin and become converted into mucous or goblet cells. The epithelial secreting cells consist of granular protoplasm containing a well-defined nucleus. The intestinal follicles constitute the apparatus which secretes the chief portion of the intestinal juice.

Intestinal Juice.—Owing to its admixture with other secretions and to the profound disturbance of the digestive function, caused by the establishment of intestinal fistulæ, this fluid has rarely been obtained in a state of purity or in quantities sufficient for accurate analyses or for experimental purposes. Its physiologic properties and functions are therefore imperfectly known. Various attempts have been made by physiologists, by the employment of different methods, to obtain this secretion. The method usually employed is that of Thiry and Vella. This consists in dividing the intestine at two places, about eight or ten inches apart, restoring the continuity of the intestine, and then uniting the two ends of the resected portion to the edges of two openings in the abdominal walls. The resected portion, being supplied with blood-vessels and nerves, maintains its nutrition and secretes a more or less normal juice.

When obtained from a dog under these circumstances the intestinal juice is watery in consistence, slightly opalescent, light yellow in color, alkaline in reaction, with a specific gravity of 1.010. Chemic analysis reveals the presence of proteids, mucin, and sodium carbonate.

The intestinal juice obtained by Tubbey and Manning from a small portion of the human intestine (ileum) was opalescent, occasionally brownish in color, alkaline, and had a specific gravity of 1.006. On the addition of hydrochloric acid, carbonic acid was given off, showing the presence of carbonates. It contained proteids and mucins.

PANCREAS.

The **pancreas** is a long flattened gland, situated deep in the abdominal cavity, lying just behind the stomach. It measures from six to eight inches in length, two and a half in breadth, and one in thickness. It is usually divided into a head, body, and tail. The head is directed to the right side and is embraced by the curved portion of the duodenum; the tail is directed to the left side and extends as far as the spleen (Fig. 81). The pancreas communicates

FIG. 81.—PANCREAS AND DUODENUM REMOVED FROM THE BODY AND SEEN FROM BEHIND. THE GLAND IS CUT TO SHOW THE DUCTS.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

with the intestine by means of a duct. This duct commences at the tail and runs transversely through the body of the gland. As it approaches the head of the gland it gradually increases in size until it measures about one-tenth of an inch in diameter. It then curves downward and forward and opens into the duodenum. In its course through the gland it receives branches which enter it nearly at right angles. The pancreas is richly supplied with blood-vessels and nerves, the latter coming from the solar plexus.

Histologic Structure.—In its structure the pancreas resembles the salivary glands. It consists of a connective-tissue framework

which divides the gland tissue into lobules. Each lobule is composed of a number of acini or alveoli, more or less elongated or tubular in shape. Each acinus gives origin to a small duct which, uniting with adjoining ducts, forms the lobular duct, which becomes tributary to the main duct. The acinus is lined by a layer of cylindric epithelial cells characterized by a difference in structure between the central and peripheral ends (Fig. 82). The central end, that bordering the lumen of the acinus, is dark in appearance and filled with dark granules, while the peripheral end is clear and homogeneous. The relative depth of these two zones varies according to the functional activity of the gland. During the intervals of digestion the granular layer is very deep and occupies almost the entire cell; after active digestion the granular layer is very narrow, while the

FIG. 82.—SECTION OF HUMAN PANCREAS, INCLUDING SEVERAL ACINI AND TWO DUCTS. THE CELLS PRESENT A CENTRAL GRANULAR AND A PERIPHERAL CLEAR ZONE. —(Piersol.)

FIG. 83.—SECTION OF HUMAN PANCREAS SHOWING, *a, a*, ISLANDS OF LANGERHANS, AND *b* THE USUAL ACINI.—(Piersol).

clear zone is largely increased in depth. The blood-vessels of the pancreas are arranged around the acini in a manner similar to that observed in the salivary glands. The ultimate terminations of the nerves in the epithelium are probably by means of the usual end-tufts.

The Islands of Langerhans.—Throughout the body of the pancreas and especially in the outer extremity there are found between and among the acini collections of globular cells arranged in the form of rods or columns, separated from the acini and from one another by layers of connective tissue in which ramify large tortuous capillary blood-vessels. These columnar bodies, seen in cross-section in Fig. 83, have been named, after their discoverer, the islands of Langerhans.

Embryologic investigations have shown that these cells are

outgrowths from the primitive acini, to which they remain attached for some time by means of a foot-stalk. This subsequently becomes constricted by the connective tissue and the cells become completely detached. The cells then assume the columnar arrangement, after which vascularization takes place.

From the fact that complete extirpation of the pancreas as well as its various diseases is followed by serious disturbances of the carbohydrate metabolism it has been suggested that the islands of Langerhans have a function separate and distinct from that of the glandular portion of the pancreas; that they secrete a specific material which partakes of the nature of an internal secretion which is absorbed by the blood circulating around them and carried to different tissues. The effect on the metabolism of the body which follows extirpation of the pancreas will be referred to in a subsequent chapter.

Pancreatic Juice.—The pancreatic juice may be obtained by introducing a silver cannula, through an opening in the abdominal wall, into the duct, and securing it by a ligature. In a short time the juice flows from the distal end of the cannula, when it can be collected. According to Bernard, normal juice can only be obtained during the first twenty-four hours. The juice obtained from a temporary fistula is clear, slightly opalescent, viscid, of a decidedly alkaline reaction, and has a specific gravity in the dog of 1.040. When cooled to 0° C., it assumes a gelatinous consistence. At 100° C. it completely coagulates. When obtained from a permanent fistula, the juice is watery and the solid constituents are very much diminished in amount.

The chemic composition of the pancreatic juice of the dog as determined by Schmidt is as follows: water, 900.76; organic matter, 90.44; inorganic salts, 8.80. Of the inorganic salts, sodium carbonate is probably the most essential, as it is this salt which gives to the juice its alkaline reaction.

Mode of Secretion.—The secretion of the juice is, in the rabbit and dog at least, almost continuous during a period of twenty-four hours after a single average meal, though the rate of flow varies considerably during this period. As soon as food enters the stomach the flow of the pancreatic juice begins and steadily increases in amount until about the third hour, when it reaches its maximum; after this period the flow diminishes until the sixth hour, when it again increases for about an hour. It then gradually diminishes until it ceases entirely. During the period of secretory activity the gland becomes red and vascular from a dilatation of the blood-vessels.

The discharge of the juice associated with the introduction of food into the stomach is brought about in all probability through the agency of the nervous system, though the exact mechanism is imperfectly understood. It is probable that impressions made on

the terminal filaments of the pneumogastric nerve ascend to the medulla, whence impulses pass outward through vaso-motor and secretory nerves to the blood-vessels and secreting cells of the glands. Stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided vagus gives rise to increased secretion. Inasmuch as various agents, such as mineral and organic acids, placed on the duodenal mucous membrane excite the flow, it is quite probable that the passage of the acid contents of the stomach through the duodenum also acts as a powerful stimulus to the secretion and discharge of the juice. According to Bayliss and Starling, the secretory activity of the pancreas is initiated and maintained by the action of a specific substance to which they have given the term *secretin*. This substance is developed in the duodenal glands in consequence of the action of the acids in the chyme and then carried by the blood-stream to the pancreas. The total amount of pancreatic juice secreted in twenty-four hours has been only approximately determined; the estimates based upon the amount obtained from dogs vary from 175 to 800 grams.

Histologic Changes in the Cells during Secretory Activity.—

Reference has already been made to the fact that the cells lining the

acini consist of two zones: an outer one, clear and homogeneous; and an inner one, dark and granular. The position of the nucleus of the cell varies, being at one time in the outer, at another time in the inner, zone. If the pancreas be examined microscopically during the intervals of digestion, it will be observed that the inner zone is broad, highly granular, occupying nearly the entire cell, while the outer zone is narrow

FIG. 84.—ONE SACCULE OF THE PANCREAS OF THE RABBIT IN DIFFERENT STATES OF ACTIVITY. *A.* After a period of rest, in which case the outlines of the cells are indistinct and the inner zone—*i. e.*, the part of the cells (*a*) next the lumen (*c*)—is broad and filled with fine granules. *B.* After the gland has poured out its secretion, when the cell outlines (*d*) are clearer, the granular zone (*a*) is smaller, and the clear outer zone is wider.—(*Yeo's "Text-book of Physiology," after Kühne and Lea.*)

and clear. If, however, the gland be examined shortly after a period of active secretion, the reverse conditions will be observed; that is, the inner zone will be narrow, containing relatively few granules, while the outer zone will be clear and wide. This change in the cell has been witnessed in the pancreas of the living

animal—rabbit—by Kühne and Lea. They observed that as soon as digestion set in, the granules of the broad inner zone began to pass toward the lumen of the acinus and to gradually disappear as the secretion was poured out, while the outer zone increased in width until almost the entire cell became clear and homogeneous. (See Fig. 84.) After secretion ceased the granules again made their appearance, the result, in all probability, of metabolic activity.

Physiologic Action of Pancreatic Juice.—Experimental investigations have demonstrated the fact that pancreatic juice is the most complex in its physiologic action of all the digestive fluids. In virtue of its contained enzymes, pancreatic juice acts:

1. On starch. When normal pancreatic juice or a glycerin extract of the gland is added to a solution of hydrated starch, the latter is speedily transformed into maltose, passing through the intermediate stage of dextrin. The process is in all respects similar to that observed in the digestion of starch by saliva. Pancreatic juice, however, is more energetic in this respect than saliva. The enzyme which effects this change is termed amyllopsin. When the starch which escapes salivary digestion passes into the small intestine and mingles with pancreatic juice, it is very promptly converted into maltose by the action or in the presence of this enzyme.

2. On proteid. When proteid bodies are subjected to the action of pancreatic juice, they are transformed into peptones which do not differ in essential respects from those formed by gastric juice. The intermediate stages, however, are believed to be somewhat different. The enzyme which effects this change is termed trypsin.

When fibrin, for example, is added to trypsin in a solution rendered alkaline by sodium carbonate, it does not swell up and become translucent, as it does when treated with hydrochloric acid and pepsin. On the contrary, it becomes corroded on the surface, fragile, and in a short time undergoes solution. The first product is a compound termed alkali-albumin. After solution has taken place, various chemical changes are initiated which eventuate in the production of peptone and certain nitrogenized bodies, leucin, tyrosin, aspartic acid, etc. The intermediate stages in this process have not been satisfactorily determined. At no time during artificial pancreatic digestion is there any evidence of the presence of the primary proteoses (proto-albumose and hetero-albumose). The secondary proteoses (deutero-albumose) are usually present. It will be recalled that when the amphopeptone of peptic digestion is subjected to the action of trypsin a portion of it, approximately one-half, is decomposed into leucin and tyrosin, while the remaining half retains its peptone characteristics. This latter portion is termed anti-peptone; the former portion is termed hemi-peptone, though it has never yet been isolated and is therefore only a hypothetical compound.

Inasmuch as during pancreatic digestion antipeptone is present as well as leucin and tyrosin, it is believed by some investigators that both antipeptone and hemipeptone are formed from the deuterio-albumose, the latter speedily undergoing decomposition. This view is illustrated in the following scheme:

When the proteids which have escaped digestion in the stomach pass into the small intestine and mingle with the pancreatic juice, they are doubtless digested in the course of the intestinal canal, passing through the stages just described. As leucin and tyrosin are found in the intestine during digestion, it is probable that a portion of the peptone undergoes decomposition into these bodies; but as to the extent to which this takes place or in how far it is a necessary process under normal conditions, nothing definite can be said. It is probable that it takes place when there is an excess of proteid food or when for any reason digestion is prolonged or absorption is delayed.

3. On *fat*. If pancreatic juice be added to a perfectly neutral fat—olein, palmitin, or stearin—and kept at a temperature of about 100° F. (38° C.), it will at the end of an hour or two be partially decomposed into glycerin and the particular fatty acid indicated by the name of the fat used—*e. g.*, oleic, palmitic, stearic. The oil will then exhibit an acid reaction. The reaction is represented in the following formula:

If to this acidified oil there be added an alkali, *e. g.*, potassium or sodium carbonate, the latter will at once combine with the fatty acid to form a salt known as a soap. The reaction is expressed in the following equation:

Coincident with the formation of the soap the remaining neutral oil undergoes division into drops of microscopic size, which float in the soap solution, forming what has been termed an emulsion, which is white and creamy in appearance. The action of the pancreatic juice

may then be said to consist in the cleavage of the neutral fats into fatty acids and glycerin, after which the formation of the soap and the division of the fat takes place spontaneously. The enzyme which produces the cleavage of the neutral fats has been termed *steapsin*. The extent to which the cleavage of the fat takes place in the intestine has not been definitely determined. There are some who think the amount is relatively small, while others consider that it is large, practically all of the fat undergoing this decomposition, with the formation of soap and glycerin prior to their absorption.

According to Pawlow, the relative amounts of the pancreatic enzymes produced are conditioned by the character and amounts of the food principles consumed. Thus, if chyme contains an excess of either starch, proteid, or fat, there is a corresponding increase in the amount of either amyllopsin, trypsin, or steapsin produced. The pancreas apparently adapts its activities to the character of the food. Though it is probable that each enzyme is a derivative of a special zymogen, it is only positively known that this is the case with trypsin. This enzyme is a derivative of the zymogen, trypsinogen. The pancreatic juice at the moment of its discharge into the intestine does not contain trypsin but trypsinogen. The transformation of the latter into the former is accomplished, according to Pawlow, by a special ferment secreted by the epithelium of the small intestine and termed *enterokinase*.

The rapidity with which pancreatic juice in the presence of bile and hydrochloric acid (under conditions such as are present in the duodenum) can develop sufficient fatty acid to form an emulsion was determined by Rachford to be two minutes. The activity of steapsin is thus shown to be very great.

Physiologic Action of the Intestinal Juice.—The part played by the intestinal juice in the digestive process is yet a subject of discussion, as the results obtained by different observers are in some respects contradictory, due to the fact that animals, including human beings, have been the subjects of experimentation. Notwithstanding the actions of saliva, gastric and pancreatic juice, there yet remain in the food saccharose, maltose, and lactose, three forms of sugar which are believed by most observers to be non-assimilable and therefore require some change before they can be absorbed and assimilated. An extract of the intestinal mucous membrane or the intestinal juice of a dog, added to a solution of saccharose, will in a very short time convert it into dextrose and levulose, which together constitute invert sugar. The enzyme by which this inversion is produced, though nothing definite is known as to its nature, has been termed *invertin*. Tubbey and Manning state that the human intestinal juice as obtained by them has the same action. In the case of intestinal fistulæ reported by Busch, which were supposed to be

located in the upper third of the intestine, it was found that when saccharose was introduced into the lower opening, it was not inverted but appeared in the feces unchanged.

Maltose is also rapidly transformed into dextrose. Lactose appears to be unaffected by the pure juice. As it is non-assimilable it has been supposed to undergo conversion into dextrose while passing through the epithelial cells of the intestinal mucosa.

Intestinal juice also has a slight diastatic action on starch.

THE LIVER.

The **liver** is a highly vascular conglomerate gland situated in the right hypochondriac region and connected with the intestine by a duct.

Inasmuch as the liver performs several functions related to both secretion and excretion, a consideration of its structure and its various functions will be deferred to a subsequent chapter. In this connection the bile, its physical properties and chemic composition in relation to the digestive process, will only be considered.

The **bile** is a product of the secretory activity of the liver cells. As it is poured into the intestine in man and most mammals at a point corresponding to the orifice of the pancreatic duct, and most abundantly at the time the food is passing through the duodenum, it is usually regarded as a digestive fluid possessing an influence favorable if not necessary to the completion of the general digestive process.

Anatomic Relations of the Biliary Passages.—After its formation by the liver cells the bile is conveyed from the liver by the bile capillaries, which uniting finally form the main hepatic duct. This duct emerges from the liver at the transverse fissure. At a distance of about 5 centimeters it is joined by the cystic duct, the distal extremity of which expands into a pear-shaped reservoir, the gall-bladder, in which the bile is temporarily stored (Fig. 85). The duct formed by the union of the hepatic and cystic ducts, the common bile-duct, passes downward and forward for a distance of about 7 centimeters, pierces the walls of the intestine and passes obliquely through its coats for about a centimeter and opens on the surface of a papilla in conjunction with the pancreatic duct. Near its termination it presents a sphincter-like constriction. The walls of the biliary passages are composed of a mucous membrane internally, a fibrous and muscular coat externally. Small racemose glands are embedded in the mucous membrane of the main ducts.

Physical Properties and Chemic Composition of Bile.—The bile obtained directly from the liver through a fistulous opening in the hepatic duct is always thin and watery, while that obtained from

the gall-bladder is more or less viscid from admixture with mucin, the degree of this viscosity depending on the length of time it remains in this reservoir. The specific gravity of human bile varies within normal limits from 1.010 to 1.020. The reaction is invariably alkaline in the human subject when first discharged from the liver, but may become neutral in the gall-bladder. The alkalinity depends on the presence of sodium carbonate and sodium phosphate. When fresh, it is inodorous; but it readily undergoes putrefactive changes, and soon becomes offensive. Its taste is decidedly bitter. When

FIG. 85.—GALL-BLADDER, HEPATIC, CYSTIC, AND COMMON DUCTS. 1, 2, 3. Duodenum. 4, 4, 5, 6, 7, 7, 8. Pancreas and pancreatic ducts. 9, 10, 11, 12, 13. Liver. 14. Gall-bladder. 15. Hepatic duct. 16. Cystic duct. 17. Common duct. 18. Portal vein. 19. Branch from the celiac axis. 20. Hepatic artery. 21. Coronary artery of the stomach. 22. Cardiac portion of the stomach. 23. Splenic artery. 24. Spleen. 25. Left kidney. 26. Right kidney. 27. Superior mesenteric artery and vein. 28. Inferior vena cava.—(*Sappey.*)

shaken with water, it becomes frothy—a condition which lasts for some time and which is due to the presence of mucin.

The color of bile obtained from the hepatic duct is variable, usually a shade between a greenish-yellow and a brownish-red. In different animals the color varies. In the herbivorous animals it is usually green; in the carnivorous animals it is orange or brown. In man it is green or a golden yellow. The colors are due to the presence of pigments. Microscopic examination does not show the presence of structural elements.

Human bile obtained from an accidental biliary fistula was shown by Jacobson to contain the following ingredients, viz.:

COMPOSITION OF HUMAN BILE.

Water, -----	977.40
Sodium glycocholate, -----	9.94
Cholesterin, -----	0.54
Free fat, -----	0.10
Sodium palmitate and stearate, -----	1.36
Lecithin, -----	0.04
Other organic matters, -----	2.26
Sodium chlorid, -----	5.45
Potassium chlorid, -----	0.28
Sodium phosphate, -----	1.33
Calcium phosphate, -----	0.37
Sodium carbonate, -----	0.93
	<hr/>
	1000.00

In this analysis the solid ingredients constitute 22.5 parts per 1000, of which two-thirds are organic and one-third inorganic. The amount of solids varies according to the animal from which the bile is obtained.

Sodium Glycocholate and Taurocholate.—Of the various ingredients of the bile none are more important than these two salts, usually known as the bile salts. The sodium glycocholate is found most abundantly in the bile of herbivora, the sodium taurocholate in the bile of the carnivora. These salts are compounds of sodium and glycocholic and taurocholic acids. When separated from the sodium, the acids will crystallize in the form of fine acicular needles. Under the influence of hydrating agents, such as dilute acids and alkalies, both acids will undergo cleavage into their respective components—*e. g.*, glycocoll and cholalic acid, taurine and cholalic acid. Glycocoll and taurine are crystallizable nitrogenized compounds known chemically as amido-acetic and amido-isothionic acids respectively. The bile salts are produced in the liver by a true act of secretion, as they are not found in any of the tissues and fluids of the body. After being discharged into the intestine they undergo chemic changes, after which they can no longer be recognized. In all probability they are reabsorbed into the blood and play some ulterior part in the nutrition of the body.

Cholesterin.—Cholesterin is a constant ingredient of bile, though it is not confined to this fluid, as its presence has been determined in the crystalline lens, blood-corpuscles, nerve-tissue, and various pathologic fluids. It is an organic non-nitrogenized substance resembling the fats in some particulars, but differing from them in not being capable of saponification with alkalies. It presents itself in the form of thin transparent rectangular crystals, insoluble in water but soluble

in ether and boiling alcohol (Fig. 86). It is held in solution in bile by the bile salts. If they are deficient in amount, the cholesterin may pass out of solution, collect around some foreign matter, and form a gall-stone. Cholesterin is a product of the metabolism largely of

FIG. 86.—CHOLESTERIN CRYSTALS.—(Landois and Stirling.)

nerve-tissue, from which it is absorbed by the blood, carried to the liver, and excreted. In the intestine it is converted into stercorin and discharged from the body in the feces.

Bilirubin, Biliverdin.—These two pigments impart to the bile its red and green colors respectively. Bilirubin is present in the bile of human beings and the carnivora, biliverdin in the bile of the herbivora. As the former pigment readily undergoes oxidation in the gall-bladder, giving rise to the

latter pigment, almost any specimen of bile may present any shade of color between red and green. Bilirubin is regarded as a derivative of hematin, one of the cleavage products of hemoglobin, the coloring-matter of the blood. In the liver the hematin combines with water, loses its iron, and is changed to bilirubin. By continuous oxidation there are formed biliverdin, bilicyanin, and choletelin. After their discharge into the intestine the bile pigments are finally reduced to hydrobilirubin, which becomes one of the constituents of the feces. An oxidation of the bilirubin can be produced by nitroso-nitric acid. If this agent is added to a thin layer of bile on a porcelain surface, a series of colors will rapidly succeed one another, commencing with green and passing to blue, orange, purple, and yellow. This is the basis of the well-known test for bile pigments suggested by Gmelin.

Lecithin is one of the products of the metabolism of nerve-tissue. It is removed from the blood by the liver cells and thus becomes one of the constituents of the bile, in which it is held in solution by the bile salts.

Mode of Secretion of Bile.—The manner in which the bile flows from the liver into the main hepatic ducts, the variations in the rate of its discharge into the intestine, as well as the total quantity secreted daily, have been approximately determined by fistulous openings either in the hepatic ducts or in the gall-bladder. Although the liver presents some physiologic peculiarities, there is no reason to believe that the conditions of secretion therein are different from those in any other secretory organ, or that any other structure than the cell is engaged in this process. As shown by chemic analysis, the bile consists of compounds, some of which, like the bile salts, are formed in the liver cells out of material furnished by the blood, by a true act of secretion, while others, such as cholesterin and lecithin, principles of waste, are merely excreted from the blood to be finally

eliminated from the body. ~~The bile is thus a compound of both secretory and excretory principles.~~ 7

The flow of bile from the liver is continuous but subject to considerable variation during the twenty-four hours. The introduction of food into the stomach at once causes a slight increase in the flow, but it is not until about two hours later that the amount secreted reaches its maximum; after this period it gradually decreases up to the eighth hour, but never entirely ceases. During the intervals of digestion though a small quantity passes into the intestine, the main portion is diverted into the gall-bladder, where it is retained until required for digestive purposes. When acidulated food passes over the surface of the duodenum there is excited, through reflex action, a contraction of the muscular walls of the gall-bladder and ducts and a gush of bile into the intestine, the discharge continuing intermittently until digestion ceases and the intestine is emptied of its contents.

~~The total quantity of bile secreted daily has been estimated to be from 500 to 800 grams.~~ 1-1 1/2
pint

Physiologic Action of Bile.—Notwithstanding our knowledge of the complex composition of bile, the quantity discharged daily, and the time and place of its discharge, its exact relation to the digestive process has not been fully determined. ~~No specific action can be attributed to it.~~ It has but a slight, if any, diastatic action on starch. It is without influence on proteids. By virtue of the bile salts it contains, it hastens the action of pancreatic juice in splitting neutral oils into fatty acids and glycerin, and in this way aids in their digestion. The bile salts also dissolve insoluble soaps, which may be formed during digestion.

Bile favors the digestion of fat. If it be excluded from the intestine there is found in the feces from 22 to 58 per cent. of the ingested fats. At the same time the chyle, instead of presenting the usual white creamy appearance, is thin and slightly yellow. The manner in which the bile promotes fat digestion is yet a subject of investigation. If all the fat is converted into fatty acid and glycerin, with the formation of soaps, as seems probable, the action of the bile becomes more apparent from the fact, already stated, that it dissolves and holds in solution the soaps so formed which would be necessary to their absorption by the epithelial cells. As an aid to digestion the bile has been regarded as important, for the reason that its entrance into the intestine is attended by a neutralization and precipitation of the proteids which have not been fully digested and are yet in the stage of acid-albumin. In this way gastric digestion is arrested and the foods are prepared for intestinal digestion.

Though bile possesses no antiseptic properties outside the body, itself undergoing putrefactive changes very rapidly, it has been

believed that in the intestine it in some way prevents or retards putrefactive changes in the food. There can be no doubt that if the bile be prevented from entering the intestine there is an increase in the formation of gases and other products which impart to the feces certain characteristics which are indicative of putrefaction. As to the manner in which bile retards this process nothing definite can be stated.

Bile has been supposed to be a stimulant to the peristaltic movements of the intestine, inasmuch as these movements diminish when bile is diverted from the intestine.

Though no definite nor specific action on any of the different classes of food principles can be attributed to the bile, there is abundant evidence to show that its presence in the alimentary canal during digestion is essential to the maintenance of the nutrition of the body. That the bile as a whole, or at least part of its constituents, favorably influences digestion and general nutrition is evident from the phenomena which follow its total exclusion from the intestine, as when the common bile-duct is ligated and a fistula of the gall-bladder is established. The following phenomena were observed in a young dog so prepared by Professor Flint. During the first five days succeeding the operation the abdomen was tumid and there was some rumbling in the bowels. Though the animal ate every day, the discharge of fecal matter became infrequent, the matter passed being grayish in color and highly offensive. After two weeks the alvine discharges took place three and four times daily. For four days the weight remained normal; afterward it began to diminish, and from this time the animal continued to lose strength and weight until its death, thirty-eight days after the operation. Ten days after the operation the appetite, which had been very good, increased, but did not become ravenous until a few days before death. The animal usually ate from a pound to a pound and a half of beef-heart daily, always refusing fat. There was an absence at all times of jaundice, fetor of the breath, and falling of the hair. Postmortem examination showed that the bile-duct was obliterated, and there was no evidence that any bile could have passed into the intestine. The results of this and similar cases go to show that that portion of the bile which is secretory in character is essential to digestion and the nutrition of the body—that, though large quantities of food are consumed, progressive diminution of weight takes place until nearly 40 per cent. of the body is consumed. In some instances the breath becomes fetid and there is a falling of the hair, showing some profound disturbance of the general nutritive process.

Intestinal Peristalsis.—During digestion the walls of the intestine exhibit a series of contractions which, beginning at the pylorus, run along the canal to its termination in the large intestine. These

contractions, known as the vermicular or peristaltic, are extremely slow, creeping along the canal in a progressive manner from above downward. The peristalsis is produced by the contraction of both the circular and longitudinal muscle-fibers. By the contraction of the former the caliber of the canal is constricted behind a portion of the food, and as the wave of constriction advances it carries the food with it. At the same time, the longitudinal fibers contracting, the segment of the canal is shortened and drawn up over the advancing portion of the food. The result of these movements is to push the food through the canal, to turn it over and to incorporate the digestive fluids with it.

Though the general movement of the intestinal contents is gradually downward, Cannon has shown that the result of the peristaltic movements is to divide the mass into segments, and that the mere presence of a segment in the lumen of the intestine seems to excite the overlying circular fibers to activity in such a way that each segment is again divided. The lower half of each segment then unites with the upper half of the segment below, to commingle with it and to expose new surfaces of the food mass to contact with the actively absorbing mucosa. A continual repetition of this process results in a thorough mixing of the food with the digestive juices and materially aids the process of absorption.

Influence of the Nervous System.—The peristaltic movements of the small intestine, though independent of the central nervous system, are nevertheless at times largely influenced by it. Stimulation of the vagus nerve generally increases the vigor of the contraction; stimulation of splanchnic nerves inhibits or diminishes the contraction. These nerve pathways serve to transmit to the intestinal walls nerve impulses, which increase or diminish the force and extent of their contractions.

An excised portion of intestine (removed from the body) will exhibit rhythmic movements for some time. Stimulation either by electric or chemic agencies will also develop contractions which will be propagated in the usual direction. As to the manner in which the contraction wave is propagated to adjoining fibers, practically nothing is known. It may be connected with the nerve-fiber plexuses (Meissner's and Auerbach's) in the walls of the intestine.

The Large Intestine.—The large intestine is that portion of the alimentary canal situated between the termination of the ileum and the anus. It varies in length from four and a half to five feet, in diameter from one and a half to two and a half inches. It is divided into the cecum, the colon (subdivided into an ascending, transverse, and descending portion, including the sigmoid flexure), and the rectum.

The cecum is situated in the right iliac fossa. It is that dilated

portion of the large intestine below the orifice of the small intestine. The posterior and inner wall presents a small opening which leads into a narrow round process about four inches in length—the vermiform appendix. The opening of the small intestine into the cecum is narrow and elongated and bordered by two folds of mucous membrane strengthened by fibrous and muscle-tissue. These folds constitute the so-called ileo-cecal valve. When the cecum is distended the margins of these folds are approximated and effectually prevent the return of material into the small intestine.

The colon ascends to the under surface of the liver, where it bends at a right angle, crosses the abdominal cavity to the spleen, bends again, and descends to the left iliac fossa. At this point it turns upon itself to form the sigmoid flexure. The rectum is a dilated pouch, situated within the true pelvis. It measures from 15 to 18 centimeters in length. Within an inch of its termination at the anus it presents a constriction formed by a circular band of muscle-fibers—the internal sphincter.

The walls of the large intestine consist of three coats: viz., serous, muscular, and mucous.

The *serous* is a reflection of the general peritoneal membrane.

The *muscular* is composed of both longitudinal and circular fibers. The longitudinal fibers are collected into three narrow bands which are situated at points equidistant from one another. At the rectum they spread out so as to completely surround it. As the longitudinal bands are shorter than the intestine itself, its surface becomes sacculated, each sac being partially separated from adjoining sacs by narrow constrictions. The circular fibers are arranged in the form of a thin layer over the entire intestine. Between the sacculi, however, they are more closely arranged. In the rectum they are well developed, and at a point an inch above the anus they form, as stated above, the internal sphincter.

The mucous membrane of the large intestine possesses neither villi nor valvulae conniventes. It contains a large number of tubules consisting of a basement membrane lined by columnar epithelium. They resemble the follicles of Lieberkühn. The secretion of these glands is thick and viscid and contains a large quantity of mucin.

Contents of the Large Intestine.—As a result of the actions of saliva, of gastric, intestinal, and pancreatic juice, and of the bile, the food is disintegrated and liquefied. The nutritive principles, proteid, starches, sugars, and fats, undergo chemic changes and are transformed into peptones, dextrose, soap and glycerin, fatty acids, under which forms they are absorbed. After the absorption of these nutritive substances the residue of the food, comprising the indigestible and undigested matter, passes out of the small intestine into the large intestine and forms a portion of its contents. This residue consists

of the hard parts of the cereals, vegetable seeds, cellulose, etc., the quantity and variety of which depend on the nature of the food. These substances, passing into the large intestine along with the excrementitious matters of the bile, become incorporated with the mucous secretions and assist in the formation of the feces. Under the influence of a peristaltic movement similar to that witnessed in the small intestine, all this excrementitious matter is deprived by absorption of the excess of contained water and is gradually carried downward to the sigmoid flexure, where it accumulates prior to its extrusion from the body.

Intestinal Fermentation.—Owing to the favorable conditions in the intestine for fermentative and putrefactive processes—*e. g.*, heat, moisture, oxygen, and the presence of various microorganisms—the food, when consumed in excessive quantity or when acted on by defective secretions, undergoes a series of decomposition changes which are attended by the production of gases and various chemic compounds. ~~Dextrose and maltose are partially reduced to lactic acid; this to butyric acid, carbon dioxid, and hydrogen.~~ Fats are reduced to glycerol and fatty acids; ~~the glycerol, according to the organisms present, yields succinic acid, carbon dioxid, and hydrogen.~~ ~~The proteids under the prolonged action of the pancreatic juice are decomposed, with the production of leucin and tyrosin.~~ These crystalline compounds are in turn reduced to simpler forms. The former yields valerianic acid, ammonia, and carbon dioxid; the latter gives rise to *indol*, which is the antecedent of indican, found in the urine. Skatol, another derivative of the proteid molecule, due to bacterial action, gives the characteristic odor to the feces.

Feces.—The feces consist of water, mucin, the indigestible residue of the food, decomposition products, and inorganic salts. The consistency of the fecal matter varies from fluid to semi-fluid, depending largely on the length of time it remains in the intestine and the extent to which absorption of its watery portion has taken place. ~~The odor is due to the presence of sulphuretted hydrogen and skatol.~~ ~~The color is due partly to the altered coloring-matter of the bile, hydrobilirubin or stercobilin, and partly to the character of the food.~~ The total quantity discharged daily varies from four to six ounces.

Defecation.—Defecation is the final act of the digestive process and consists in the expulsion of the indigestible residue of the food from the intestine. This act usually takes place in the human being but once in twenty-four hours, as the diet contains but a minimum quantity of indigestible matter. Previous to their expulsion the feces which have accumulated in the sigmoid flexure must pass downward into the rectum. In so doing they develop the sensation which leads to the act of defecation. The descent of the feces is accomplished by the peristaltic contraction of the intestinal wall. Coincident with the

passage of the feces into the rectum there is a relaxation of the sphincter muscles and a contraction of the longitudinal and circular muscular fibers, in consequence of which the feces are expelled. These complex muscular actions are also aided by the voluntary contractions of the diaphragm and abdominal muscles.

Nerve Mechanism of Defecation.—The act of defecation is primarily reflex, though somewhat influenced by voluntary efforts. Under normal conditions the sphincter muscles governing the anal orifice are firmly contracted, thus preventing the escape of gases or semi-solid matter. This tonic contraction is maintained by a nerve-center located in the lumbar region of the spinal cord. This center can be inhibited and the sphincter muscle relaxed, either *reflexly*, by impressions made on the mucous membrane of the rectum, or *directly*, by volitional impulses from the brain. When the desire to evacuate the bowels is experienced, the impressions made by the feces on the afferent nerves of the rectal mucous membrane develop nerve impulses, which are transmitted to the rectal center and to the brain. If the act of defecation is to take place, the inhibitory effect of the rectal impulses is strengthened by volitional impulses descending the cord, followed by a relaxation of the sphincter. At the same time motor impulses are transmitted to the rectal and abdominal muscles, which, coöperating, expel the rectal contents. If the act is to be suppressed, the controlling influence of the rectal or sphincter center is strengthened and the reflex mechanism for a while held in abeyance. The exact course of the afferent and efferent nerves concerned in this reflex is yet a subject of investigation.

CHAPTER X.

ABSORPTION.

Absorption is the process by which nutritive material is transferred from the tissues, from the serous cavities, and from the mucous surfaces of the body, into the blood. The most important of these surfaces, especially in its relation to the formation of blood, is the mucous surface of the alimentary canal, for it is from this organ that the new materials are derived which maintain the quantity and quality of the blood. The absorption of material from the interstices of the tissues and from the serous cavities may be regarded as an act of resorption, or a return to the blood of liquid nutritive material which has escaped through the walls of the capillary blood-vessels for purposes of nutrition, and which, if not returned, would lead to an accumulation and the development of edematous conditions.

The anatomic mechanisms involved in the absorptive process are, primarily, the *tissue* or *lymph-spaces*, the *lymph-* and *blood-capillaries*; secondarily, the *lymph-vessels* and the *veins*.

Tissue or Lymph-spaces; Lymph-capillaries.—Everywhere throughout the body, in the connective-tissue system and in the interstices of the several structures of which an organ is composed, are found spaces or clefts of irregular shape and size, determined largely by the structure of the organ in which they are found, which have been termed tissue or lymph-spaces, from the fact that they contain a clear fluid, lymph. These spaces are devoid for the most part of any endothelial lining, but as they communicate more or less freely one with another, there is a circulation of lymph through them and around the islets of tissue (Fig. 87). In addition to the connective-tissue lymph-spaces, different observers have described special spaces or clefts in organs such as the kidney, liver, spleen, testicle, and in all secreting glands between their basement membrane and the surrounding blood-vessels, all of which contain a greater or less quantity of lymph. Within the brain, spinal cord, bone, and other tissues it has been shown that the smallest blood-vessels and capillaries are bounded and limited by a cylindrical sheath containing lymph, which is known as a perivascular lymph-space. A similar sheath surrounds the smallest nerve-bundles and fibers, enclosing a perineural lymph-space. The large serous cavities of the body, pleural, peritoneal, pericardial, etc., are also to be regarded as lymph-spaces. The surfaces of these cavities, however, are covered with a layer of endo-

thelial cells with sinuous margins. At intervals between these cells are to be found small free openings which have received the name of *stomata*.

The **lymph-capillaries** in which the lymph-vessels proper take their origin are arranged in the form of plexuses of quite irregular shape. In most situations they are intimately interwoven with the blood-vessels, from which they can be readily distinguished by their larger caliber and irregular expansions. The wall of the lymph-capillary is formed by a single layer of endothelial cells with characteristic sinuous outlines. These capillaries anastomose

FIG. 87.—ORIGIN OF LYMPHATICS FROM THE CENTRAL TENDON OF THE DIAPHRAGM STAINED WITH NITRATE OF SILVER. *s.* The lymph-spaces and lymph-canals, communicating at *x* with the lymphatics. *a.* Origin of the lymphatics by the confluence of several juice canals. *B.* Capillary blood-vessel.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

very freely one with another and communicate, on the one hand, with the lymph-spaces and on the other with the lymph-vessels proper. As the shape, size, etc., of both lymph-spaces and capillaries are determined largely by the nature of the tissue in which they are found, it is not always possible to separate one from the other. Their function, however, may be regarded as similar: viz., the reception and collection of the lymph which has transuded through the walls of the blood-vessels and its transmission onward into the regular lymph-vessels.

The **blood-capillaries** not only permit of a transudation of the liquid nutritive material from the blood through their delicate walls, but are also engaged, if not in the reabsorption of a portion of this transudate, at least in the absorption of waste products resulting from tissue metabolism.

Lymph-vessels.—The lymph-vessels constitute a system of minute, delicate, transparent vessels found in nearly all the organs and tissues of the body, and take their origin from the lymph-capillaries and spaces above described. From their origin they gradually converge toward the trunk of the body, and finally empty into the thoracic duct. In their course they anastomose very

freely with adjoining vessels. The diameter of a lymph-vessel varies from 1 to 2 mm. After the lymphatics have emerged from the lymph-capillaries they acquire three distinct coats, each of which possesses definite histologic features.

The *internal coat* is composed of a delicate lamina of longitudinally disposed elastic fibers covered with a layer of flattened nucleated endothelial cells with wavy outlines.

The *middle coat* consists of white fibrous tissue arranged longi-

FIG. 88.—LYMPH-VESSELS AND LYMPH-GLANDS OF THE HEAD AND NECK.—(From Gould's Dictionary.)

tudinally and of non-striated muscle and elastic fibers arranged transversely.

The *external coat* consists of practically the same structures, though the muscle-fibers are longitudinally disposed.

The lymphatics are provided with valves which are so numerous and located at such short intervals as to give the vessels a beaded appearance. These valves are arranged in pairs and consist of two semilunar folds with their concavities directed toward the larger vessels. They are formed by a reduplication of the lining membrane,

which is strengthened by fibrous tissue derived from the middle coat.

Lymph-glands.—In their course toward the thoracic duct the lymph-vessels pass through a number of small lenticular bodies termed lymph-glands. These are exceedingly abundant in some situations, as the cervical, axillary, and inguinal regions, and the abdominal cavity. As the lymph-vessels approach a gland they divide into a number of branches before entering it, known as the afferent vessels. From the opposite side of the gland the lymphatics again emerge as efferent vessels to unite to form larger trunks. A section of a gland shows that it consists of an outer dense cortical and an inner soft pulpy medullary portion. Each gland is covered externally by a dense membrane of fibrous tissue containing in its meshes non-striated muscle-fibers. From the inner surface of this membrane there pass inward septa of connective tissue which, as they converge toward the center of the gland, divide the outer zone of the gland into small conical compartments or alveoli. When the septa reach the medullary portion, they subdivide and form bands or cords which interlace in every direction and constitute a loose meshwork the spaces of which communicate with one another and with the alveoli (Fig. 90). Within the meshes of this framework the proper gland substance is contained. In the cortical compartments it is moulded into pear-shaped masses; in the medullary meshwork it assumes

FIG. 89.—LYMPH-VESSELS OF THE ARM.—(Deaver.)

the form of rounded cords which are connected with one another. In both regions, however, it is separated from the septa by a space termed a *lymph sinus*, through which the lymph flows as it passes

through the gland. The lymph sinus is crossed by a network of retiform connective tissue which offers considerable resistance to the passage of the lymph. The gland substance consists also of a framework of retiform connective tissue in the meshes of which large numbers of lymph-corpuscles are contained. The gland substance is separated from the lymph sinus by a dense layer of a reticulum, which, however, does not prevent lymph and even corpuscles from passing through it into the lymph sinus.

The lymph-glands are abundantly supplied with blood-vessels. The arteries enter the gland at the hilum, penetrate into the medullary substance, and terminate in a fine capillary plexus which is supported by the connective tissue. The veins arising from this plexus leave the gland also at the hilum.

FIG. 90.—DIAGRAMMATIC SECTION OF A LYMPH-GLAND. *a. l.*, Afferent, *e. l.*, efferent lymphatics. *C.* Cortical substance. *M.* Reticular cords of medulla. *l. s.* Lymph sinus. *c.* Capsule, with trabeculae, *tr.*—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

The lymph-vessels which enter a gland first ramify in the investing membrane and then open directly into the lymph sinus. The vessels which leave the gland are also in communication with the sinus. After the lymphatics enter the gland they lose their external and middle coats, retaining only the internal or endothelial coat, which lines the inner surface of the lymph sinus. The current of lymph, therefore, is from the afferent vessels through the lymph sinus into the efferent vessels. In addition to this primary current, there is a secondary current flowing from the capillary blood-vessels outward and into the sinus, which carries with it large numbers of lymph-corpuscles. It is quite probable that the movement of the

lymph through this complicated system of passages is aided by the contraction of the muscle-fibers in the capsule of the gland.

The lymph-corpuscles or lymphocytes originate for the most part in the gland substance of the cortical alveoli. In this situation there

FIG. 91.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE COURSE OF THE MAIN TRUNKS OF THE ABSORBENT SYSTEM. The lymphatics of lower extremities (D) meet the lacteals of intestines (LAC) at the receptaculum chyli (RC), where the thoracic duct begins. The superficial vessels are shown in the diagram on the right arm and leg (S), and the deeper ones on the arm to the left (D). The glands are here and there shown in groups. The small right duct opens into the veins on the right side. The thoracic duct opens into the union of the great veins of the left side of the neck (T).—(Yeo's "Text-book of Physiology.")

are groups of cells, so-called germ centers, which divide very rapidly by mitosis and give rise constantly to groups of young cells which soon find their way into the lymph stream.

The Thoracic Duct.—The thoracic duct is the general trunk of

the lymph system, into which the vessels of the lower extremities, of the abdominal organs, of the trunk, of the left arm, and of the left side of the head empty their contents. It is about twenty inches in length and an eighth of an inch in diameter. It extends upward from the third lumbar vertebra along the vertebral column to the seventh cervical vertebra, where it empties into the venous system at the *junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins* on the left side. The thoracic duct wall has the same general structure as the wall of the lymph-vessel: viz., an internal or endothelial; a middle elastic and muscular; an external or fibrous. It is also provided with numerous valves.

The lymph-vessels of the right side of the head, of the right arm, and a portion of the right side of the trunk terminate in the *right thoracic duct*, which is about 25 to 30 mm. in length and which empties into the venous system at the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins on the right side. The general arrangement of the lymphatic system is diagrammatically shown in Fig. 91.

LYMPH.

Properties of Lymph.—The lymph obtained from the thoracic duct during the intervals of digestion or from one of the large trunks of the leg is a clear, colorless or slightly opalescent fluid having an alkaline reaction and a specific gravity of 1.020 to 1.040. Examined microscopically it is seen to hold in suspension a large number of *corpuscles* similar to those seen in the lymphatic glands and to the *white corpuscles* of the blood. Their number has been estimated at about 8200 per cubic millimeter, though this count will vary within wide limits according as the lymph examined has passed through a large or small number of glands. The lymph corpuscle consists of a small quantity of protoplasm in which is embedded a distinct nucleus. Some of these lymphocytes contain distinct granules, more or less refractive, which impart to the corpuscle a distinctly granular appearance. When withdrawn from the vessels lymph undergoes a spontaneous coagulation, though the coagulum is never as firm as that observed in the coagulation of the blood. (The cause of the coagulation is the appearance of fibrin.) After a variable length of time the coagulum separates into a liquid and a solid portion, the serum and the clot.

Chemic Composition.—Although the lymph obtained from the tissue spaces, from the lymph-vessels, as well as from the so-called serous cavities has the same general chemic characteristics, there is reason for the view that it varies in its ultimate composition according as it is derived from one region of the body or from another. The needs of any individual tissue as well as the character of its metabolic

products will in all probability not only change its normal composition, but also the relative amounts of its normal constituents.

Chemical analysis has shown that the lymph from the thoracic duct contains from 3.4 to 4.1 per cent. of proteids (serum-albumin, fibrinogen), 0.046 to 0.13 per cent. of substances soluble in ether (probably fat), 0.1 per cent. of sugar, and from 0.8 to 0.9 per cent. of inorganic salts, of which sodium chlorid (0.55 per cent.) and sodium carbonate (0.24 per cent.) are the most abundant (Munk). There are usually in most specimens small quantities of potassium, calcium, and magnesium salts. Fibrinogen is seldom present beyond 0.1 per cent., which will account for the feeble and slow coagulation. Lymph contains both free oxygen and carbon dioxide. Of the former, however, there is but a small percentage; of the latter, about 45 vols. per cent., partially in the free state and partially combined with sodium. Urea is also present in very small amounts. This analysis indicates that lymph resembles blood-plasma in the character of its constituents, though their relative quantities vary considerably. With the exception that it contains no red corpuscles, lymph may be regarded as a diluted blood.

Production of Lymph.—Though blood is the common reservoir of nutritive material, the latter is not available for nutritive purposes as long as it is confined within the blood-vessels. The capillary wall, thin as it is, and composed of but a single layer of endothelial cells, would be sufficient to prevent its utilization by the tissues, if it were not permeable to the liquid portion of the blood. As this is the case, however, it is found that as the blood flows through the capillary vessels a portion of the blood-plasma passes through the capillary wall and is received into the tissue spaces, where it comes into intimate contact with the tissue-cells.

The forces concerned in the passage of the constituents of the blood-plasma across the capillary wall have been the subject of much investigation. According to some investigators, diffusion and filtration are sufficient to account for all the phenomena. It is assumed that the capillary wall, being an animal membrane, is freely permeable to water and crystalloid bodies generally; less so, however, to colloid bodies, such as the proteids of the blood-plasma; moreover, that the physiologic conditions of the capillary walls are such as to permit of a diffusion from the blood to the tissues and the reverse, according to laws similar at least to those determining the passage of substances through animal membranes as determined experimentally. The force giving rise to filtration is the difference between the pressure exerted by the blood within the capillary vessels and the pressure exerted by the fluid in the tissue spaces, any increase or decrease of this pressure being attended by an increase or decrease in the production of lymph. Thus compression of the veins of a part

which interferes with the outflow of blood from the capillaries, or a dilatation of the arterioles which increases the inflow of blood, will increase both the capillary pressure and the production of lymph. The reverse conditions will, of course, diminish lymph production. Hemorrhages which lower the general blood-pressure may so lower the capillary pressure as not only to stop the flow to the tissues, but give rise to a diffusion current from the tissues into the blood.

The quantitative composition of the lymph compared with that of the blood indicates that it is produced by diffusion and filtration. In the lymph the concentration of the inorganic salts is practically the same as in the blood; the concentration of the proteids, however, is somewhat less. These facts are in accordance with what is known regarding the diffusibility of both crystalloids and colloids through animal membranes.

According to other investigators, the production of lymph is not so much due to intracapillary pressure as it is to the specialized activities of the endothelial cells, activities which indicate that lymph is a secretion the composition of which varies in different situations in virtue of a difference in the molecular structure of the endothelial cells. As is the case with many of the secreting cells of the body, the injection of various substances into the blood apparently increases the activity of the endothelial cells, as shown by an increased lymph production without any appreciable increase of intracapillary pressure. Thus it has been shown that after the injection into the blood of sugar, sodium chlorid, sodium sulphate, urea, etc., there is an increase in the flow of lymph from the thoracic duct. The lymph, however, under these circumstances is richer in water than normally. As the blood at the same time increases its percentage of water, it is assumed that the water is extracted from the tissues, by reason of an increased percentage of salts in the tissue spaces due to increased activity of the endothelial cells. A higher percentage of salts in the lymph than in the blood is difficult to account for on the diffusion-filtration theory. The injection of peptones, albumin, the extract of the muscles of the leech, crab, mussel, etc., is also followed by an increase in the amount of lymph discharged from the thoracic duct; but in this instance the lymph possesses a higher degree of concentration, being richer not only in inorganic but also organic constituents. The cause of this increase in both the quantity and quality of the lymph is believed to be an increased activity in the secreting power of the endothelial cells. It is possible that all these facts may be otherwise interpreted; the subject is yet a matter of investigation.

Functions of Lymph.—The lymph, from its situation, its relation to the tissues, and its composition, must be regarded as the source of the nutritive material from which the tissues derive those substances necessary for their growth and repair, as well as for the

storage and liberation of energy. It may also be regarded as a reservoir for the reception of all those compounds which arise from tissue metabolism prior to their removal by the blood-vessels and lymphatics.

Absorption of Lymph.—The production of lymph is apparently a continuous process, and as a result there is more lymph passing through the capillary vessels than is necessary for the immediate needs of the tissues. Should this accumulate, there would arise the condition of ~~edema~~ and an interference with the functional activity of the tissues. As soon as a certain pressure arises in the tissue spaces there is a movement of the lymph into the lymph-capillaries and vessels toward the termination of the thoracic duct, where the pressure is relatively low. In consequence of this difference in pressure the lymph is withdrawn from the tissues.

It is quite possible under even normal conditions of pressure in the tissue spaces that some of the more diffusible constituents of the lymph should be absorbed by the capillary blood-vessels. As to whether the relatively feebly diffusible colloids should be so resorbed is as yet a matter of investigation.

ABSORPTION OF FOODS.

The most important of the absorbing surfaces, especially in its relation to the absorption of new material, is the mucous membrane of the alimentary canal, and more particularly that portion lining the small intestine, provided as it is with specialized absorbing structures—the villi. Though certain substances can be absorbed from the mouth, it is not probable that any food is so absorbed. From the changes which the food principles undergo in the stomach it might naturally be inferred that their absorption would promptly follow. Experimental researches have demonstrated, however, that this takes place, if at all, but to a slight extent. If, however, solutions of inorganic salts, sugars, and peptones possessing a concentration of at least 5 per cent.—a degree of concentration seldom realized under normal conditions—are introduced into the stomach, their absorption will be effected, the rate of absorption following in a general way the increase, within limits, in concentration. Water is practically not absorbed from the stomach. The absorption of the products of digestion—*i. e.*, dextrose, levulose, peptones, soaps, glycerin, fatty acids, salts, along with water, in which for the most part they are held in solution—is therefore limited very largely to the small intestine, and is accomplished by the villous processes projecting from the surface of the mucous membrane.

Structure of the Villi.—The villi are small filiform or conical processes, from 0.5 to 1 mm. in length, and from 0.2 to 0.5 mm. in

breadth, covering the surface of the mucous membrane from the pyloric orifice to the upper surface of the ileo-cecal valve. Each villus consists of a basement membrane (see Fig. 92) supporting tall columnar epithelial cells. Each cell is composed of granular bio-plasm containing a distinct nucleus. At its free extremity a narrow

FIG. 92.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF A VILLUS FROM INTESTINE OF THE DOG, HIGHLY MAGNIFIED. *a*. Columnar epithelium containing goblet-cells (*b*) and migratory leukocytes (*h*). *c*. Basement membrane. *d*. Plate-like connective-tissue elements of core. *e*, *e'*. Blood-vessels. *f*. Absorbent radical or lacteal.—(Piersol.)

FIG. 93.—SECTION OF INJECTED SMALL INTESTINE OF CAT. *a*, *b*. Mucosa. *g*. Villi. *i*. Their absorbent vessels. *h*. Simple follicles. *c*. Muscularis mucosæ. *j*. Submucosa. *g*, *e'*. Circular and longitudinal layers of muscle. *f*. Fibrous coat. All the dark lines represent blood-vessels filled with the injection mass.—(Piersol.)

border of the cell presents a striated appearance, as if it were composed of small rods embedded in some cement substance. Goblet or mucin-holding cells are also to be found among the columnar cells. The body of the villus, that portion within the basement membrane, consists of a reticulated connective tissue supporting

arteries, capillaries, veins, and lymphoid corpuscles. In the center of the villus there is usually a single though at times a double club-shaped lymph-capillary, the walls of which are composed of epithelioid cells with sinuous margins. This capillary probably begins by a blind extremity and opens at the base of the villus into the subjacent lymph-vessels. The communicating orifice is guarded by a valve. It is also surrounded by a layer of non-striated muscle-fibers, arranged longitudinally, derived from the muscularis mucosæ and attached to the apex of the body of the villus.

The arteries which penetrate the villi are derived from those of the

FIG. 94.—DIAGRAM OF THE PORTAL VEIN (*pu*) ARISING IN THE ALIMENTARY TRACT AND SPLEEN (*s*), AND CARRYING THE BLOOD FROM THESE ORGANS TO THE LIVER.—(*Yeo's "Text-book of Physiology."*)

submucous coat of the intestine, which are the ultimate branches of the intestinal artery, and serve the purpose of delivering nutritive material to the capillary plexus (Fig. 93).

While passing through the latter a portion of the blood-plasma transudes through the capillary walls into the spaces of the reticulated tissue, constituting lymph. At the same time products of tissue metabolism pass through the capillary walls into the blood. The blood then passes into the venules, which, leaving the villus at its base, unite with the veins of the submucous coat to form the intestinal veins. These finally unite with the gastric and splenic veins to form the portal vein, which enters the liver at the transverse fissure (Fig. 94).

The excess of lymph within the villus passes into the club-shaped lymph-capillary, to be finally carried by the lymph-

atics of the mesentery into the thoracic duct. During the intervals of digestion and in the absence of food from the intestine there is, of course, no absorption of food nor the removal from the villus of anything but the excess of lymph and metabolic products.

Function of the Villi.—The villi, and especially the epithelial cells covering them, are the essential agents in the absorption of the products of digestion. It is by the activity of these cells that the

new materials are taken out of the alimentary canal and transferred into the lymph-spaces, in the body of the villi, from which they are subsequently removed by the blood-vessels and lymphatics. As to the mechanism by which the epithelial cells accomplish this result, nothing definite can be asserted. Inasmuch as the absorption of food does not take place in accordance with the laws of osmosis as at present understood, it has been suggested that the cells possess a "selective action" dependent on their organization and living condition, an action which is to a great extent conditioned and limited by the degree of diffusibility of the substances to be absorbed.

Absorption of Water and Inorganic Salts.—Water and inorganic salts after their absorption from the intestine and transference into the lymph-spaces of the villi pass through the walls of the capillary blood-vessels and are carried by the way of the portal vein into the liver. Unless water be present in excessive amounts, there is no appreciable absorption of water by the lymphatics.

Absorption of Sugar.—As previously stated, all the carbohydrates, with the exception possibly of lactose, are transformed by the digestive fluids into either dextrose or levulose, under which forms they are absorbed by the epithelial cells. It is possible, however, that soluble dextrin may also be absorbed. Whatever the form under which the carbohydrates are absorbed, they never leave the epithelial cells except as dextrose and levulose. Direct experimentation has shown that the sugars are taken up by the capillary blood-vessels and carried direct to the liver. Analysis of the blood of the portal vein after the ingestion of large quantities of sugar may reveal an increase of 0.25 per cent.; while after the injection of sugar into the intestine the percentage may rise as high as 0.4. As chemic analysis of lymph obtained from the thoracic duct shows no increase in the percentage of sugar beyond that normally present (0.1 per cent.), it is assumed that sugar is not removed from the villi by the lymphatics.

Absorption of Proteids.—Since most of the proteids are transformed through hydration and cleavage by the action of the gastric and pancreatic enzymes into peptones, there is reason to believe that this change is necessary to their complete and rapid absorption. Nevertheless it has been shown by the results of experimentation that unchanged native proteids, such as egg-albumin, and partially digested proteids, such as acid and alkali albumin, albumoses, may likewise be absorbed from the small intestine, though in far less amounts. It has also been demonstrated that native proteids can be absorbed from the large intestine. Inasmuch as chemic analysis has failed to detect more than a trace of either peptone or native proteid in the portal blood or in the lymph of the thoracic duct, it must be assumed that the epithelium after absorbing must also synthesize them into some form of coagulable proteid (serum-albumin) which is

readily assimilable by the blood. That such a reconversion is necessary would appear from the fact that the introduction of peptones even in small amounts into the blood is followed by their elimination unchanged in the urine. When injected into the blood in large amounts, they act as toxic agents, giving rise to a fall of blood-pressure, a diminished coagulability of the blood, coma, and death.

After passing through the epithelium into the spaces of the villi they are removed by the blood-vessels and carried direct to the liver. Even though there is no appreciable increase in the amount of proteid in the portal blood during digestion, there is every reason to think that this is the route by which it reaches the general circulation. Ligation of the thoracic duct does not interfere with proteid absorption nor with the normal elimination of urea nor with the weight of the animal.

Absorption of Fat.—As previously stated, there are two views as to the changes which fats undergo during digestion. According as the one or the other is accepted will depend the view as to the nature of the absorptive process. If it be assumed that the final stage in the digestion of fat is a purely physical one, the production of an emulsion in which the fats present themselves as fine granules, it is difficult to give any satisfactory explanation of the mechanism by which the epithelial cells take them up. Various theories have been advanced to explain the process, but none are free from serious objections. This view of fat absorption has largely been based on the observation that during digestion fatty granules can be seen in all portions of the cell apparently passing toward the interior of the villus. If, on the contrary, it be admitted that the final stage in the digestion of fats is the formation of soaps and glycerin, both of which are soluble, their absorption can more readily be accounted for. According to this view, the soaps and glycerin are again synthesized by a process the reverse of that which is produced by the pancreatic enzyme, with the appearance of minute granules of fat. That this is the more probable view as to the mechanism of fat absorption is evident from the fact that when animals are fed with alkaline soaps and glycerin, or with fatty acids alone, globules of fat are found in the epithelial cells and in the interior of the villus.

With the passage of the fat-granules into the interior of the villus they at once enter the lymph-radicle and become constituents of the lymph-stream, to which they impart a white, milky appearance. If the abdomen of an animal in full digestion be opened, the lymph-vessels of the mesentery present themselves as distinct white threads. An examination of the fluid they contain, known as *chyle*, shows the presence of fat-granules of microscopic size. With the passage of the chyle into the thoracic duct it also presents the same milky appearance. For this reason the lymphatics of the mesentery were

erroneously termed *lacteals*. The chyle as obtained from these lymph-vessels possesses the same qualitative though not quantitative composition as lymph, the difference being mainly in the large excess of fat in the former. Indeed, chyle may be regarded as lymph plus fat.

Routes for the Absorbed Food.—Physiologic experiments have demonstrated that the agents concerned in the removal of the products of digestion after their absorption from the interior of the villus are:

1. The blood-vessels of the gastro-intestinal tract, which unite to form the portal vein.
2. The lymph-vessels of the small intestine, which converge to empty into the thoracic duct.

The products of digestion find their way into the general circulation by these two routes, as follows:

The water, inorganic salts, proteids, and sugar after entering the blood-vessels of the villus are carried by the blood directly into the liver by the portal vein; after circulating through the capillaries of the liver and being influenced by the liver cells, they are discharged by the hepatic veins into the ascending vena cava.

The fats after entering the lymph-radicle of the villus are carried by the lymph-stream into the thoracic duct, by which they are poured into the blood at the junction of the left subclavian and internal jugular veins.

Forces Aiding the Movement of Lymph and Chyle.—The force which primarily determines the movement of the lymph has its origin in the beginnings of the lymph-vessels, the lymph-spaces, and depends on a difference in pressure here and at the termination of the thoracic duct. The rise of pressure in the lymph-spaces is due to the continual production of lymph, either by filtration or secretory activity of the capillary walls. As soon as the pressure rises above that in the thoracic duct a forward movement of lymph takes place. Other things being equal, the rate of movement will be proportional to the difference of pressure. The first movement of the chyle, its passage from the lymph-capillary in the villus into the subjacent lymph-vessel, has been attributed to a shortening of the villus and a compression of the capillary by the contraction of the non-striated muscle-fibers by which it is surrounded. With the entrance of the chyle into the subjacent lymph-vessel there is a distention of the vessel and a rise in pressure. When the muscle-fibers relax, regurgitation is prevented by the closure of the valves at the base of the villus. The elastic tissue of the lymph-vessel now recoils and forces the chyle toward the thoracic duct. After the emptying of the lymph-capillary the conditions as far as pressure is concerned are favorable to the absorption of new material. The

rhythmic contractions of the intestinal wall undoubtedly aid in the movement of lymph and chyle.

It is quite possible that the walls of the general lymphatic system aid the forward movement of lymph by more or less rhythmic contractions of their contained muscle-fibers.

Inasmuch as the lymph-vessels lie in situations in which they are subject to compression by muscles during contraction, it is probable that the fluid in the vessels will be forced onward toward the thoracic duct at each compression, a backward movement being prevented by the closure of the valves which are everywhere present in the vessels. Experimental observations have demonstrated the truth of this supposition. Alternate contraction and relaxation of the muscles of the leg will, in an animal at least, increase considerably the flow as well as the production of lymph from the thoracic duct. Massage has a similar influence. The respiratory movements also aid the flow of both lymph and chyle from the thoracic duct and larger lymph-vessels into the venous blood. During inspiration the negative pressure of the thorax is increased, the increase being proportional to the extent of the inspiration. The positive pressure of the air within the lungs on the thoracic structures, venæ cavæ, thoracic duct, etc., being at the same time diminished, there is an expansion of and a fall of pressure in the thoracic duct and venæ cavæ. As the lymph in the abdominal portion of the thoracic duct is subjected to the higher intra-abdominal pressure, its contents are forced energetically toward the end of the thoracic duct. During expiration the reverse conditions obtain. As the negative pressure diminishes and the positive intrapulmonary pressure increases the upper part of the thoracic duct is compressed and the lymph is forced into the subclavian vein at its junction with the internal jugular. Regurgitation here is prevented by a closure of the valves.

CHAPTER XI.

THE BLOOD.

The blood is a highly complex nutritive fluid, the presence and proper circulation of which in the living organism are essential to the maintenance and activity of all physiologic processes. The escape of the blood from the vessels, especially in the higher animals, is followed by a loss of the physiologic properties of all the tissues within a short period of time. The immediate dependence of the functional activities of the tissues and organs on the presence of the blood can be demonstrated by the following experiment: If the nozzle of a syringe, adapted to the size of the animal, be introduced through the jugular vein into the right side of the heart and the blood be suddenly withdrawn, there is an immediate cessation in the activity of all the organs; the return of the blood to the vessels within a limited period of time is promptly followed by a renewal of their activity.

Though contained within a practically closed system of vessels, the blood is brought into intimate relation with all the tissue elements through the intermediation of the capillaries. As the blood flows through these delicate vessels, portions of its soluble nutritive constituents, including oxygen, are given up to the tissues, by which they are utilized for growth, repair, and functional activity. At the same time the tissues yield up to the blood a series of decomposition products, resulting from their activity, which vary in quantity and quality according as the blood traverses the muscles, nerves, glands, or other tissues.

The blood may be regarded, therefore, as a reservoir of nutritive materials prepared by the digestive apparatus and absorbed from the food canal; of oxygen, absorbed from the respiratory surface of the lungs; of decomposition products, produced by and absorbed from the tissues. Though the blood varies in composition in different parts of the body in consequence of the introduction of both nutritive material and decomposition products, it nevertheless presents certain average physical, morphologic, and chemic properties which distinguish it as an individual tissue.

Constituents of Blood.—A microscopic examination of the blood as it flows through the capillary vessels of the web of the frog or the mesentery of the rabbit shows that it is not a homogeneous fluid, but that it consists of two distinct portions: viz., (1) a clear, transparent, slightly yellow fluid, the plasma or liquor sanguinis; (2) small par-

ticles termed corpuscles floating in it, of which there are two varieties, the red and white, including among the latter two smaller bodies, the blood-plates and elementary granules. The different constituents can be roughly separated by appropriate means when the blood is withdrawn from the body. If the blood of the horse is allowed to flow directly into a tall cylindric glass vessel, surrounded by ice, it separates in the course of a few hours into three distinct layers in accordance with their specific gravities. The lower layer is dark red and consists of the red corpuscles; the middle layer is grayish in color and consists of the white corpuscles; the upper layer is clear and transparent and consists of the plasma. The red corpuscles occupy almost one-half, the white one-fortieth, the plasma a trifle more than one-half of the height of the entire blood-column, which indicates approximately the different volumes of each. The same result can be obtained with human blood by the use of the centrifuge or hematocrit.

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF BLOOD.

1. **Color.**—Within the blood-vessels two kinds of blood are distinguished—the arterial, the color of which is a bright scarlet, and the venous, the color of which is a dark bluish-red or purple. The cause of the color as well as the difference in color is the presence in the red corpuscles of a coloring-mater, hemoglobin, in different degrees of combination with oxygen. The intensity of the color in either kind of blood is dependent on the thickness of the blood-stream, for in the finest capillaries, as seen under the microscope, there is an almost total absence of color. As the arterial blood passes into and through the systemic capillaries, the hemoglobin yields up a portion of its oxygen to the tissues and changes in color, though the change is not appreciable by the eye. On passing into the veins, however, the blood-stream soon presents its characteristic dark bluish color, which deepens as it approaches the lungs. On passing into and through the capillary vessels of the lungs the hemoglobin absorbs a new volume of oxygen, changes in color, and on emerging from the lungs the blood presents its characteristic scarlet color.

2. **Opacity.**—Owing to the fact that the corpuscles have a refracting power different from the plasma, the blood, even in thin layers, is opaque. The repeated refractions and reflections which light undergoes in passing through plasma and corpuscles is attended by such a dissipation that it is impossible to see printed matter through it. That the opacity is due to the shape of the corpuscles rather than to their contained coloring-matter is evident from the fact that when the hemoglobin is caused to separate from the corpuscles by the addition of chemic reagents, the blood, though it deepens in color, becomes at once transparent.

3. **Odor.**—When freshly drawn the blood possesses a peculiar characteristic odor which has been attributed to the presence of a volatile fatty acid in combination with an alkaline base. The intensity of the odor may be increased by the addition of concentrated sulphuric acid, by means of which the volatile acid is set free.

4. **Specific Gravity.**—The specific gravity of blood lies within the limits of 1.051 and 1.059, averaging in man 1.056 and in woman 1.053. Normally, variations from these values are only temporary and are connected with variations in physiologic processes. The specific gravity is diminished by the ingestion of liquids and abstinence from solid food. It is increased by abstinence from liquids, by the ingestion of dry food, and by the elimination of large quantities of water by the lungs, skin, and kidneys.

5. **Alkalinity.**—The reaction of the blood is alkaline from the presence of the disodium phosphate (Na_2HPO_4) and the sodium carbonate, Na_2CO_3 . The alkalinity can be readily shown by allowing the blood to remain for a few seconds on slightly reddened glazed litmus paper. On washing off the blood a distinct blue color presents itself against a red or violet background. The alkalinity varies within narrow limits in consequence of variations in physiologic processes. It is increased in the early stages of digestion and decreased after the absorption of the hydrochloric acid and the peptones, and decreased after muscular exercise in consequence of the increased production and absorption of acids. According to v. Jaksch, the alkalinity corresponds to from 260 to 300 milligrams of sodium hydrate, NaOH , for every 100 c.c. of blood; according to Löwy, from 300 to 325 milligrams. The hitherto unavoidable error in these estimates is about 30 milligrams.

6. **Temperature.**—The temperature varies from 36.7°C . (98.2°F .) in the superior vena cava to 39.7°C . (103.4°F .) in the hepatic vein, the mean being about 38°C . (100°F .).

Coagulation of the Blood.—Within a few minutes after the blood is withdrawn from the vessels of a living animal it begins to lose its fluidity, becomes somewhat viscid, and if left undisturbed passes rapidly into a semi-solid or jelly-like state. To this change in the physical condition of the blood the term coagulation has been applied. The blood, during the progress of coagulation, not only assumes the shape of the vessel in which it is contained, but becomes so firmly adherent to its walls that it may be inverted without the coagulum becoming dislodged. If a portion of such a jelly-like mass be examined microscopically, it will be found to be penetrated in all directions by a felt-work of extremely fine delicate fibrils, which, having made their appearance before the corpuscles had time to settle to the bottom of the fluid, have entangled them in the meshes

so that the entire mass retains its characteristic color. These fibrils are collectively known as fibrin (Fig. 95).

If the coagulated blood be allowed to remain undisturbed, a clear, transparent, slightly yellowish fluid makes its appearance on the surface of the mass, which as it accumulates forms a layer of varying degrees of thickness. Within a few hours the blood-mass detaches itself from the sides of the vessel in consequence of the retraction of the fibrils, while at the same time the clear fluid increases in amount and accumulates along the sides and bottom of the vessel. The shrinkage in the volume of the red coagulum and the increase of the volume of the clear fluid which is expressed from its meshes continue for a period varying from ten to fifteen hours, according to certain external conditions. The blood has now become separated into two distinct portions: viz., a solid contracted red mass, termed clot, and a clear fluid, termed serum. The clot consists of the fibrin containing in its meshes the red and white corpuscles; the serum

FIG. 95.—DIAGRAM TO ILLUSTRATE THE PROCESS OF COAGULATION. 1. Fresh blood, plasma, and corpuscles. 2. Coagulating blood (birth of fibrin). 3. Coagulated blood (clot and serum).—(Waller.)

consists of all the constituents of the plasma except the antecedents of the fibrin. The stages of coagulation are shown in Fig. 95.

If the blood coagulates slowly the red corpuscles, owing to their greater specific gravity, subside to the bottom of the blood-mass, giving to it a deeper color; the white corpuscles, owing to their lesser specific gravity, remain near the surface of the clot and give to it a more or less whitish appearance, producing the so-called *buffy coat*. In certain inflammatory conditions the coagulating power of the blood is much diminished, and the corpuscles, having time to subside, a well-developed buffy coat is formed which at one time had much interest for pathologists. As the contraction of the fibrin takes place more actively in the center, there being here less resistance than at the sides of the coagulum, the upper surface usually becomes depressed or cupped.

Coagulation of Plasma.—Clear plasma may be obtained by means of the centrifuge from blood to which sufficient magnesium sulphate has been added to prevent coagulation, or from horse's

blood which has been allowed to flow into a tall vessel surrounded by a cooling mixture so as to prevent coagulation and thus permit the red corpuscles to subside. If such plasma be subjected to room-temperature, it very shortly undergoes coagulation, exhibiting practically the same phenomena as blood itself. After a variable length of time it also separates into a soft, colorless coagulum or clot consisting of fibrin, and a clear fluid, the serum. (The presence of the red corpuscles is therefore not essential to the process of coagulation.)

Rapidity of Coagulation.—The rapidity with which the blood coagulates varies in different classes of animals under the same conditions: *e. g.*, the blood of the pigeon coagulates immediately; that of the dog, in from one to three minutes; that of the horse, in from five to thirteen minutes; that of man, in from four to seven minutes. The time, however, can be lengthened or shortened by either changing the external conditions or by altering temporarily the normal composition of the blood.

Coagulation is retarded or prevented by the following agents, viz.: (1) A low temperature, especially that of melting ice. (2) The addition of magnesium sulphate (1 volume of a 25 per cent. solution to 3 volumes of blood); of sodium sulphate (1 volume of a saturated solution to 7 volumes of blood). (3) The addition of potassium oxalate (1 volumes of a 1 per cent. solution to 3 volumes of blood). (4) The injection into the blood of commercial peptone. (5) The mouth secretion of the leech.

Coagulation is hastened by the following agents, viz.: (1) A gradually increasing temperature from 38° C. to 50° C. (2) The addition of water in not too large amounts. (3) The presence of foreign bodies. (4) Agitation of the blood—*e. g.*, stirring.

Fibrin and Defibrinated Blood.—If freshly drawn blood is stirred with a bundle of twigs or glass rods for a few minutes, the fibrin collects on them in the form of thick bundles or strands; after washing it with water the entangled corpuscles are removed, when the fibrin assumes its natural white appearance. The strands can be resolved into a large number of delicate fibers which possess extensibility and retractibility, and are therefore elastic. The chemical features of fibrin have already been considered (see page 34). The remaining fluid, similar in its physical appearance to the blood, is termed *defibrinated blood*. When such blood is allowed to remain at rest for a few days, the remaining red corpuscles gradually sink to the bottom of the fluid, above which will be found the clear serum.

COMPOSITION OF PLASMA AND SERUM.

Plasma.—The plasma obtained by any of the methods previously described is a clear, colorless, transparent, slightly viscid fluid, with

a specific gravity of 1.026 to 1.029. It is composed largely of water holding in solution proteids, sugar, fatty matter, inorganic salts, urea, cholesterin, lecithin, etc. In composition it is quite complex, containing as it does not only the nutritive materials derived from the digestion of the food, but also the substances resulting from the disintegration of the tissues consequent on their functional activity.

Serum.—The serum is the clear, transparent, slightly yellow fluid expressed from the coagulated blood during the contraction of the fibrin. It consists practically of the ingredients of the plasma, with the exception of those substances which entered into the formation of fibrin. The average composition of plasma is shown in the following table:

COMPOSITION OF PLASMA.

Water,	-----	90.00
Proteids {	Serum-albumin, -----	4.50
	Paraglobulin, -----	3.40
	Fibrinogen, -----	0.30
Fatty matters,	-----	0.25
Sugar,	-----	0.10
Extractives,	-----	0.60
Inorganic salts,	-----	0.85
		<hr/> 100.00

Serum-albumin.—Of the proteid constituents of the blood, serum-albumin is the most abundant, existing to the extent of from 4 to 5 per cent. From its similarity to egg-albumin it is regarded as holding an important position as a nutritive agent, for it is out of this common proteid that in all probability each individual tissue elaborates the special proteid characteristic of it, since during starvation the albumin steadily diminishes in amount. As it passes through the walls of the capillary vessels it is found in the lymph, pericardial fluid, and similar secretions in various parts of the body, as well as in various pathologic transudates. It is also present in serum. While circulating in the lymph-spaces the serum-albumin is utilized in replacing the proteids which have undergone disintegration during tissue metabolism. Its supply in the blood is maintained by the absorption of peptones which are formed from the proteids of the food and which during the time of absorption are changed in some unknown way into serum-albumin. It is readily obtained from plasma or serum by saturating either of these fluids with magnesium sulphate, when all the proteids except serum-albumin are precipitated. After their removal the remaining fluid is subjected to a temperature of from 70° to 75° C., when the serum-albumin is precipitated in a coagulable form, after which it can be removed and its chemico features determined.

Paraglobulin.—This proteid, though present in plasma, is best

Serum Globulin—

obtained from serum when this fluid is saturated with magnesium sulphate. As the line of saturation is approached the fluid becomes turbid, and after a few minutes a fine white precipitate occurs. It can then be collected on a filter, dried, and its chemic properties determined. In its reactions it resembles the various members of the globulin class. The amount varies from 2 to 4 per cent. in the blood of man. As to the physiologic importance or antecedents of paraglobulin nothing is definitely known. Its constant presence in the blood would indicate that it plays an equally important, though perhaps different, part with serum-albumin in the nutrition of the body.

Fibrinogen.—This proteid can be obtained from plasma, lymph, pericardial, and peritoneal fluids, as well as from hydrocele fluid. It is, however, not to be obtained from serum, as it is removed from the blood during the formation of solid fibrin. It is normally present in the blood in very small quantity, amounting to not more than 22 to 33 parts per thousand. Fibrinogen may be obtained from plasma which has been prevented from coagulating, by the addition of magnesium sulphate in certain quantities or by the addition of a saturated solution of sodium chlorid. In a few minutes a flaky precipitate occurs. By repeated washing and precipitation with sodium chlorid solutions of varying strength the fibrinogen may be obtained in a pure state. The history of fibrinogen is unknown. Beyond the fact that it contributes to the formation of fibrin there is no positive knowledge either as to its origin, its nutritive value, or its final disposition in the blood under normal conditions.

Fat.—The plasma as well as the serum contains a very small quantity of fat in the form of microscopic globules. Though the percentage is normally not above 0.25, yet just after a meal rich in fatty matter the amount may be so great as to give to the blood a milky or opalescent appearance. Within a few hours, however, this excess of fat disappears from the blood, though its immediate disposition is unknown. Soaps or alkaline salts of the fatty acids, though formed during the digestion of fats, are not present in the blood. Lecithin and cholesterin are present in very small quantities.

Sugar.—Sugar is present in the blood in the form of dextrose, and is now regarded as a normal constituent. The amount is about 1 part per thousand, though it may be present to the extent of 3 parts per thousand. Beyond this, the excess soon appears in the urine.

Extractives.—The blood contains a series of nitrogenized bodies, such as urea, uric acid, creatin, creatinin, xanthin, etc., which result from the katabolic changes in nerve- and muscle-tissues as well as from subsequent chemic combinations and decompositions. Though constantly absorbed from the tissues, they seldom accumu-

*Capex-
Dextrin*

late beyond a small amount, since they are constantly being eliminated from the blood by the various excretory organs.

Inorganic Salts.—The inorganic salts of the plasma are chiefly sodium and potassium chlorids, sulphates, and phosphates, together with calcium and magnesium phosphates. Of the salts, sodium chlorid is the most abundant, amounting to 5.5 parts per thousand. Some of the salts are alkaline and impart to the blood its alkalinity. Calcium phosphate is present in small quantity—2 parts per 1000. This salt is wanting in serum for the reason that it became a constituent of fibrin at the time of coagulation. In other respects serum differs but slightly from plasma in the proportions of its saline constituents.

HISTOLOGY OF THE RED CORPUSCLES OR ERYTHROCYTES.

The histologic features of the red corpuscles are readily observed in a drop of freshly drawn blood when examined microscopically. The field of the microscope will be seen to be crowded with red corpuscles floating in a clear transparent fluid—the plasma. Here and

FIG. 96.—CORPUSCLES FROM HUMAN SUBJECT. A few colorless corpuscles are seen among the colored discs, many of which are arranged in rouleaux.—(Funke.)

there will also be seen a white corpuscle, round or irregular in shape, and granular in appearance. Within a short time a characteristic phenomenon takes place: viz., the arranging of the corpuscles in the form of columns of varying length, resembling rolls of coins. These rolls interlace with each other at all angles and form a network in the meshes of which lie individual red and white corpuscles. (See Fig. 96.) The cause of this tendency of the corpuscles to adhere to one another is not definitely known. Since it does not

take place in circulating blood, and since it is to a great extent prevented by defibrinating the blood, it has been supposed to be dependent on the formation of some adhesive substance connected with the formation of fibrin.

Color.—When viewed by transmitted light, a single corpuscle is slightly yellow or greenish in color; but when a number are grouped

together, the color deepens and the corpuscles appear red. In either case the color is due to the presence in the corpuscle of a specific coloring-matter, hemoglobin.

Shape.—The red corpuscle is a circular, flattened disk with rounded edges. Each surface is perfectly smooth and presents a shallow depression in its center, so that it is also biconcave. A longitudinal section of a corpuscle would present, when viewed edgewise, an outline similar to that of Fig. 97. This difference in the thickness of the peripheral and central portions of the corpuscle gives rise to differences in optical appearances when examined microscopically. At a certain distance of the object-glass the corpuscle presents in its peripheral portion a bright rim, and in its central portion a dark spot. If the objective be brought nearer and the center accurately focused, the reverse appearance obtains; the central portion becomes bright and the peripheral portion dark. The cause of this difference in optical appearance is the unequal distribution of the transmitted light in consequence of the shape of the corpuscle.

FIG. 97.—IDEAL TRANSVERSE SECTION OF A HUMAN RED CORPUSCLE. (Magnified 5000 times.)
a, b. Diameter. c, d. Thickness.

Size.—The diameter of a typical well-developed red corpuscle under normal conditions is 0.0075 mm.; its greatest thickness is 0.0019 mm. Though this may be assumed as the average diameter, there is a small percentage of distinctly smaller and a small percentage of distinctly larger corpuscles. The following table shows the results of measurement made by different observers:

	Normal Limits.	Average Diameter.
Welcker,-----diameter	0.0045-0.0095	0.0070
Hayem,-----"	0.0060-0.0088	0.0075
Gram,-----"	0.0067-0.0093	0.0078
Melassez,-----"	-----	0.0076
		0.00747
		($\frac{1}{3200}$ inch)

Structure.—The red corpuscle of man as well as all other mammals possesses neither a nucleus nor a limiting membrane, but appears to consist of a homogeneous substance more or less semisolid in consistence. Under the influence of certain reagents the corpuscle separates into two distinct portions: viz., a colorless protoplasmic stroma and a coloring-matter which diffuses into the surrounding liquid. The presence of the former can be demonstrated by the addition of iodine, which imparts to it a faint yellow color. The stroma is elastic, and determines not only the shape of the corpuscle but gives to it the properties of extensibility and retractibility.

Number of Red Corpuscles.—In any given specimen of blood the corpuscles are so numerous and the spaces between them so small that it seems almost impossible to determine their number. This, however, has been accomplished for a cubic millimeter of blood by various observers employing different methods with comparatively uniform results. The average normal number of corpuscles in one cubic millimeter of blood is, for men, 5,000,000; and for women, 4,500,000. This value, however, will vary within slight limits, with variations in the activity of physiologic processes and to a large extent at times in pathologic states of the blood or body. The number is increased in the cutaneous veins by all influences which cause a diminution in the quantity of water in the blood—*e. g.*, copious sweating, acute watery diarrhea, fasting, abstinence from liquids; the number is diminished by influences which dilute the blood—*e. g.*, the ingestion of liquids, the absorption of fluids from the tissue spaces, etc. But it is well to remember that these influences which produce changes in the number of corpuscles per cubic millimeter do not necessarily produce corresponding changes in the total number of red corpuscles in the body. In women lactation, menstruation, and the act of parturition diminish the number. High altitudes apparently increase the number of corpuscles, as shown by their increase in the blood of the peripheral vessels. Whether this is an indication that there is a corresponding increase of the total number in the general volume of the blood is uncertain. The following table will show the increase in the count per cubic millimeter at different altitudes:

PLACE.	HEIGHT ABOVE SEA-LEVEL.	RED CELLS.	AUTHOR.
Christiana, -----	0 meter	4,974,000	Laache.
Göttingen, -----	148 meters	5,225,000	Schaper.
Tübingen, -----	314 "	5,322,000	Reinert.
Zürich, -----	414 "	5,752,000	Steirlin.
Auerbach, -----	425 "	5,748,000	Köppe.
Reibaldsgrün, -----	700 "	5,900,000	"
Arosa, -----	1800 "	7,000,000	Egger.
The Cordilleras, -----	4392 "	8,000,000	Viault.
Moro cocha.			(Köppe.)

This increase in the number of corpuscles takes place, according to Viault's observations, within two or three weeks, and is apparently not connected with either diet or mode of life, but rather with diminished atmospheric, if not oxygen, pressure. On returning to sea-level there is a gradual reduction, without any apparent destruction of the corpuscles, to their normal number. The reason for these variations is not clear.

The method of counting corpuscles introduced by Vierordt and

Welcker has been modified by different observers, and especially by Thoma and Zeiss. On account of the great number of corpuscles in 1 cubic millimeter of blood, it becomes necessary for purposes of enumeration that the blood be diluted a definite number of times and that the diluted mixture be placed in a counting chamber possessing a definite capacity. By means of the pipette or *mélangeur* of Potain and the counting chamber of Thoma both these objects are attained.

The pipette consists of a capillary tube (Fig. 98) provided with an enlargement containing a freely movable small glass ball, *a*. One end of the tube is pointed, while to the other end is attached a rubber tube for the purpose of facilitating the introduction of the blood and the diluting fluid. The capillary tube, which is accurately calibrated, carries marks, $\frac{1}{2}$, 1, 101, which signify that if the tube be filled with blood up to the mark 1 and the diluting fluid be sucked into the tube up to the mark 101, the blood will be diluted 100 times. If the blood be sucked up to the mark $\frac{1}{2}$ and the diluting fluid to 101, then the blood will be diluted 200 times. In using the pipette the point is introduced into a drop of blood derived from a small wound in the skin of the lobe of the ear or finger and sucked into the tube by introducing the rubber tube into the mouth. The tube is then quickly inserted into a solution, similar in specific gravity to the plasma, which will preserve the shape and size of the corpuscles, such as Gowers's sodium sulphate solution, sp. gr. 1.025, or a 3 per cent. sodium chlorid solution,* and the fluid sucked into the tube up to the mark 101. On shaking the pipette for a few minutes, the admixture will take place, aided by the movements of the glass ball.

Fig. 99 shows both a section view, A, and a surface view, C, of the counting chamber. This consists of an oblong glass plate on which are cemented two small pieces of glass, one of which has in the center a circular opening in which is placed the other, a circular disc or

FIG. 98.—MÉLAN-GEUR OR PIPETTE.
—(Landois and Stirling.)

* Various solutions have been devised for diluting blood, any one of which may be employed, *e. g.*:

Hayem's Fluid:

Hydrarg. bichlor., ----	0.5 gm.
Sodium sulphate, ----	5.0 "
Sodium chlorid, ----	2.0 "
Aquæ destillat., ----	200.0 "

Toisson's Fluid:

Aquæ destillat., ---	160.00 parts.
Glycerinæ, -----	30.00 "
Sodium sulphate, --	8.00 "
Sodium chlorid, ---	1.00 "
Methyl-violet, ----	0.025 part.

Gowers's Fluid:

Sodium sulphate, -----	gr. 104
Acid. acetic., -----	3j
Aquæ dest., -----	-q. s. ad 3iv.

stage. Their relation is such that a narrow groove or moat separates the one from the other, the floor of which is formed by the glass plate. The surface of the circular stage is exactly 0.1 mm. lower than that of the cover-glass, a. On the surface of the glass stage a series of small squares is engraved, each one of which has a side length of $\frac{1}{20}$ mm. and an area of $\frac{1}{400}$ square mm., B. To facilitate counting, a group of 16 squares is

FIG. 99.—APPARATUS OF THOMA AND ZEISS FOR COUNTING THE CORPUSCLES. A. In section. B. Microscopic appearance with the blood-corpuscles.—(Landois and Stirling.)

surrounded by a heavy dark line. This group is separated from adjoining groups, also enclosed by dark lines, by an intermediate light line, which serves as a guide in passing from one group to another. When a cover-glass is accurately applied to the glass, b, each one of the small squares will have a cubic capacity of $\frac{1}{400} \times 0.1$, or $\frac{1}{4000}$ cubic millimeter, and every four such squares will have therefore a capacity of $\frac{1}{1000}$ cubic millimeter.

Before placing the diluted blood on the counting stage, the fluid in the tube of the pipette should be blown out and discarded, as it contains no portion of the blood. A few drops are then placed on the glass stage and covered with the cover-glass. After a few minutes the corpuscles settle over the ruled spaces and are ready for counting. The number of corpuscles in a horizontal series of 4

squares is then counted; this number is then multiplied by 1000 in order to get the number in 1 cubic millimeter of the diluted blood, and this product by 100 or 200 according to the extent of the dilution: *e. g.*, four squares contain 50 corpuscles; multiplied by 1000 and then by 100 = 5,000,000. The accuracy of the counting is proportional to the number of squares counted. If 200 squares are counted and the average taken, the probable limit of error will not be more than 2 per cent.

Effects of Reagents on the Red Corpuscles.—Within the blood-vessels the composition of the plasma is such that both the

form and composition of the corpuscles are maintained under normal physiologic conditions. This fluid, therefore, is preservative of the structure and function of the corpuscle. When examined microscopically with a view of determining their histologic features, the plasma must be diluted, and in consequence they rapidly undergo physical and chemic changes from the absorption or loss of water. To prevent these effects the corpuscles must be immersed in a fluid containing a percentage of salts approximating that of the plasma. Under such circumstances they will neither absorb nor give up water. Such a fluid is found in the physiologic salt solution, which contains 0.64 per cent. sodium chlorid. This fluid maintains the chemic equilibrium of the corpuscles, and is therefore said to be isotonic to the corpuscle.

If distilled water be added to the drop of blood, the corpuscle absorbs it, swells up, and assumes a more or less spherical form, sometimes cup-shaped. The hemoglobin dissolves out and the stroma becomes almost invisible. Its presence can be detected by the addition of iodine. The addition of salt solutions,—*e. g.*, sodium chlorid, sodium sulphate, ammonium chlorid, etc.,—which increase the density of the plasma, cause a shrinkage of the corpuscles so that they assume a crenated or notched appearance. Dilute solutions of acetic acid, of alkalies, especially potassium and sodium hydrate, cause the corpuscles to swell, to lose their color, dissolve, and entirely disappear. Many other agencies of a physical and chemic nature, such as heat 60° C., electricity, bile salts, the vapor of chloroform, ether, ammonium sulphocyanid, etc., also destroy the integrity of the corpuscles, and cause the hemoglobin to separate from the stroma and diffuse into the plasma without itself undergoing any appreciable change in composition. The blood at the same time will become transparent and change to a dark red color, to which the term "lake color" has been given.

The Corpuscles of Other Vertebrated Animals.—In all mammals, with the exception of the camel, llama, and dromedary, the red corpuscles present the same shape and structure as the corpuscles of man, and may be described as circular, flattened, biconcave disks. In the animals excepted the corpuscles are oval. The size, however, varies in different animals from 0.0092 mm. ($\frac{1}{2745}$ inch) in the elephant to 0.0023 mm. ($\frac{1}{12325}$ inch) in the musk-deer, while in most animals the average lies between 0.0084 mm. and 0.0050 mm. Inasmuch as the question may arise as to whether the corpuscles of any given specimen of blood are those of a human being or of some other mammal, a knowledge of the size of the corpuscles becomes a matter of medicolegal as well as of physiologic interest. Though the differences in size are slight, yet it is possible for skilled microscopists, when examining fresh blood, to make a diagnosis between the cor-

puscles of man and those of the domesticated animals, with the exception, perhaps, of the guinea-pig. The diagnosis of the corpuscles of dried blood which have been altered by the action of various external agents, even though capable of a certain degree of restoration, is most difficult, and should not be attempted in criminal cases without large experience in microscopy, in measurements and methods of preparation of all kinds of blood-corpuscles, and a proper perception of corpuscular forms and sizes. In the following table the average results of the measurements of the corpuscles in different classes of animals are given (abstracted from Formad's compilation):

	GULLIVER.		WORMLEY.		C. SCHMIDT. MALLININ.		FRENCH MEDICO- LEGAL SOC. WELCKER.		FORMAD.	
	Inch.	Mm.	Inch.	Mm.	Inch.	Mm.	Inch.	Mm.	Inch.	Mm.
Man,	1.3200	0.0079	1.3250	0.0078	1.3300	0.0077	1.3257	0.0078	1.3200	0.0079
Guinea-pig, ..	1.3538	0.0071	1.3223	0.0079	1.3300*	0.0077	1.3213†	0.0079	1.3400	0.0075
Dog,	1.3532	0.0071	1.3501	0.0071	1.3036	0.0070	1.3485	0.0073	1.3580	0.0071
Rabbit,	1.3607	0.0070	1.3653	0.0070	1.3968	0.0064	1.3653	0.0069	1.3662	0.0069
Ox,	1.4267	0.0060	1.4219	0.0060	1.4354	0.0058	1.4545	0.0056	1.4200	0.0060
Pig,	1.4230	0.0060	1.4268	0.0059	1.4098	0.0062	1.4098	0.0062	1.4250	0.0060
Horse,	1.4600	0.0057	1.4243	0.0059	1.4464	0.0057	1.4545	0.0056	1.4310	0.0059
Cat,	1.4404	0.0058	1.4372	0.0058	1.4545	0.0056	1.3922	0.0065	..	..
Sheep,	1.5300	0.0048	1.4912	0.0031	1.5649	0.0045	1.5076	0.0059	1.5000	0.0051
Goat,	1.6366	0.0040	1.6189	0.0041	1.6369	0.0040	1.5525	0.0046	1.6100	0.0042

In birds, reptiles, and amphibians the corpuscles are larger than in mammals, are oval in shape, and nucleated. (See Fig. 100.) As the scale of animal life is descended the corpuscles increase in size, until in the proteus and amphiuma the long diameter attains an average length of 0.058 mm. and 0.077 mm. respectively. In fish the corpuscles are smaller, oval, and nucleated, with the exception of the lamprey eels, in which they are circular, biconcave, and nucleated, though the nucleus is generally concealed in the peripheral portion of the corpuscle. As they are almost twice the size of the human red corpuscles, they can, notwithstanding the similarity of shape, be readily distinguished from them.

Function of the Red Corpuscles.—The red corpuscles, in virtue of the capacity of their contained hemoglobin for oxygen absorption, may be regarded as carriers of oxygen from the lungs to the tissues, and therefore important factors in the general respiratory

FIG. 100.—AMPHIBIAN COLORED BLOOD-CORPUSCLES. 1. On the flat; 2, on edge. —(Landois and Stirling.)

* Masson.

† Woodward.

process. The size as well as the number of the corpuscles in different classes of animals appears to be directly related to the activity of the respiratory process. In those animals in which the corpuscles are small and numerous and the total superficial area large, respiration is active, the quantity of oxygen absorbed is large, and the energy evolved through oxidation great. In those animals, on the contrary, in which the corpuscles are large and relatively few in number, the reverse conditions obtain. This is in accordance with the fact that the superficial area of any given volume of substance is increased in proportion to the extent to which it is subdivided.

The superficial area of a single human red corpuscle has been estimated at 0.000128 sq. mm. If the number of corpuscles in 1 cubic millimeter of blood averages 5,000,000, the superficial area would amount to 640 square millimeters; and if the amount of blood in the body of a man weighing 75 kilos is taken as one-thirteenth of this weight,—that is, 5769 grams (5463 c.c.),—the total area of the corpuscular surface will amount to 3496 square meters.

Life-history of Red Corpuscles.—In the performance of their functions the red corpuscles undergo more or less disintegration and final destruction; but as the average number is maintained under normal physiologic conditions, there must be a constant renewal from day to day. The evidence of destruction of red corpuscles is furnished by the presence in the blood in various situations of the body of a pigment containing iron and the presence of pigments in the bile and urine, all of which are believed to be derivatives of effete hemoglobin. The blood-pigment (hematin), which contains the iron of the hemoglobin, is found in the capillaries of the liver, in the cells of the splenic pulp, and in the marrow of the bones. Whether the presence of the pigment in these organs is a proof that the corpuscles are destroyed here, or whether they are to be regarded merely as agents concerned in the further reduction and elimination of the hematin, is uncertain. The genetic relationship between bile-pigment and hemoglobin is shown by the fact that any artificial destruction of hemoglobin or its injection into the blood is attended by an increase in the quantity of bile-pigment eliminated. It appears also from chemic considerations that the hemoglobin will undergo cleavage into a globulin body and hematin, which by the loss of its iron is readily converted into the bile-pigment, bilirubin. The amount of this latter pigment may therefore be taken as an index of the extent of corpuscular destruction.

This gradual decay of corpuscles as well as the losses occasioned by hemorrhages necessitate a continuous formation of new corpuscles, so that the normal number may be maintained. The rapidity with which corpuscles may be renewed, in the woman at least, is shown by a computation of Mr. Charles L. Mix. A woman loses

Note
during a menstrual period 150 c.c. of blood. At the end of twenty-eight or thirty days this volume is restored, so that in one day 5 c.c., or 5000 c.mm., of blood must be formed, or 208 c.mm. per hour and $3\frac{1}{2}$ c.mm. per minute. That is, during a certain number of years 15,750,000 corpuscles must be formed every minute, and this independent of the daily loss due to functional activity.

At the present time there is a general agreement among histologists that in adult life the red corpuscles are derived from embryonic forms, the so-called erythroblasts, which are found chiefly in the marrow of the long bones. In this situation both arterial and venous capillaries are relatively large and the blood is separated from the surrounding marrow by extremely thin walls. In the passages of this capillary network the erythroblasts make their appearance most probably by a transformation of preexisting marrow cells. At first they are large, homogeneous, colorless, perhaps slightly tinged with hemoglobin and distinctly nucleated. They increase in number by karyokinesis and at the same time increase in their hemoglobin content. The nucleus is finally extruded, carrying with it a portion of the perinuclear cytoplasm, after which the remainder of the corpuscle assumes the shape and size of the adult corpuscle and is carried out into the general circulation. After severe hemorrhage the formative processes in the marrow may become so active that erythroblasts make their appearance in the blood-stream before the extrusion of the nucleus has taken place.

CHEMIC COMPOSITION OF RED CORPUSCLES.

X
Hemoglobin.—The red corpuscle consists of a stroma and a coloring-matter, hemoglobin. In the normal condition the latter is amorphous and in some unknown way combined with the former and not merely diffused in its meshes. The amount of hemoglobin per corpuscle is estimated at 90 per cent., so that the corpuscle may be conceived of as a mass of hemoglobin supported and enclosed by a protoplasmic stroma.

If blood which has been rendered laky, by water or any other of the known agencies, be allowed to slowly evaporate, the dissolved hemoglobin undergoes crystallization. The rapidity with which the crystals form varies in the blood of different animals under similar conditions. According to the ease with which crystallization takes place, Preyer has classified various animals as follows: (1) Very difficult—calf, pigeon, pig, frog; (2) difficult—man, monkey, rab-

* For an admirable résumé of the various views regarding the origin and formation of red corpuscles see the paper of Mr. Charles L. Mix, Boston Med. and Surg. Journal, 1892, Nos. 11 and 12; also paper by Prof. W. H. Howell, Journal of Morphology, vol. IV, 1892.

bit, sheep; (3) easy—cat, dog, mouse, horse; (4) very easy—guinea-pig, rat.

The hemoglobin crystals vary in shape according to the blood from which they are obtained (Fig. 101). Those obtained from the guinea-pig are tetrahedral; those from man and most mammals are prismatic rhombs; those from the squirrel are in the form of hexagonal plates. Notwithstanding these slight differences, all forms belong to the same crystal system, with the exception of those from the squirrel.

A simple but very effective method of obtaining blood-crystals suggested by Reichert is to take defibrinated blood, especially that of the dog, rat, guinea-pig, and horse, with acetic or ethylic ether and then add a solution, 1 to 5 per cent., of ammonium oxalate. A drop of this mixture placed under the microscope will show crystal formation in a very few minutes.

Chemic Composition of Hemoglobin.—By appropriate methods hemoglobin can be obtained in a practically pure form, and when subjected to a temperature of 100° C. its water of crystallization is driven off, after which it can be analyzed. In the subjoined table the results of several analyses are given for 100 parts of hemoglobin.

FIG. 101.—CRYSTALLIZED HEMOGLOBIN. *a, b.* Crystals from venous blood of man. *c.* From blood of cat. *d.* Of Guinea-pig. *e.* Of marmot. *f.* Of squirrel.—(Gautier).

	DOG.	HORSE.	DOG.	GUINEA-PIG.
C, -----	53.91	51.15	53.85	54.12
O, -----	22.62	23.43	21.84	20.68
H, -----	6.62	6.76	7.32	7.36
N, -----	15.98	17.94	16.17	16.78
S, -----	0.54	0.39	0.39	0.58
F ₂ , -----	0.33	0.33	0.43	0.48
	Jaquet.	Zinofsky.	Hoppe-Seyler.	

The elementary composition of hemoglobin is thus seen to vary slightly in different animals, suggesting that there may be different kinds of hemoglobin. The rational molecular formula is not known. On the assumption that each molecule contains one atom of iron, Preyer suggested the following empirical formula: $C_{600}H_{960}N_{154}O_{179}S_3Fe$, with a molecular weight of 13,332; Jaquet has suggested a different formula: viz., $C_{758}H_{1203}N_{195}O_{218}S_3Fe$, with a molecular weight of 16,669. It is very evident from this that the molecule is of enormous size and exceedingly complex.

Quantity of Hemoglobin.—The quantity of hemoglobin in blood as determined by chemic, chromometric, and spectro-photometric methods amounts to about 14 per cent. in man and 13 per cent. in woman. Of the chemic methods, that based on the amount of iron is the most familiar. Chemic analysis has shown that hemoglobin contains 0.43 per cent. and blood 0.056 per cent. of iron; with these two factors the quantity of hemoglobin can be determined by the following formula: $x = \frac{100 \times 0.056}{0.42} = 13.33$ per cent. The total quantity of hemoglobin in the blood, assuming the latter to be about 5769 grams (one-thirteenth of the body-weight, 75 kilos) will therefore amount to 769 grams; *e. g.*, $x = \frac{5769 \times 13.33}{100} = 769$. The total amount of iron in the blood is obtained by the following formula: viz., $x = \frac{5769 \times 0.056}{100} = 3.23$ grams.

Under normal physiologic conditions the percentage of hemoglobin undergoes but slight variation. In pathologic states there is frequently a great diminution in the amount, especially in chlorosis, splenic leukemia, and pernicious anemia, diseases in which it diminishes to $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. in many instances. For the determination of these variations in the hemoglobin for clinical purposes two chromometric methods are at present largely employed, that of Gowers and v. Fleischl. All chromometric methods are based on the principle that if two equally thick and equally well-illuminated solutions present the same intensity of color, their richness in coloring-matter is the same. There are two methods by which this can be done: (1) By diluting the blood to be examined with water until the shade of color corresponds to that of a solution of hemoglobin of known strength (Gowers). (2) Diluting a given quantity of blood with a given quantity of water and then finding an identical color which represents a previously determined quantity of hemoglobin (v. Fleischl).

Gowers' hemoglobinometer consists (Fig. 102) of two glass tubes of exactly the same size. One, A, contains glycerin jelly colored with picro-carmin the shade of which corresponds to that of normal blood diluted 100 times, 20 c.mm. in 2000 c.mm. of water representing a 1 per cent. solution. The other tube, B, is ascendingly graduated with 120 divisions, each one of which corresponds to 20

c.mm. With a graduated pipette 20 cubic millimeters of blood are accurately measured and blown into the bottom of the tube B, in which a few drops of distilled water have been placed so as to prevent coagulation. Water is then added drop by drop until the color of the diluted blood is exactly that of the standard. The division of the scale reached by the dilution will represent the relative percentage of hemoglobin. If this tint is not obtained until the dilution reaches 100 divisions, the quantity of hemoglobin is normal. If more water must be added, it is in excess; if less, it is diminished. If, for example, the 20 cubic millimeters of blood from an anemic patient gave the standard tint at 60 divisions, the blood contained but 60 per cent. of the normal amount of hemoglobin.

FIG. 102.—GOWERS' HEMOGLOBINOMETER. A. Pipette bottle for distilled water. B. Capillary pipette. C. Graduated tube. D. Tube with standard dilution. F. Lancet for pricking the finger.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

Von Fleischl's hemometer consists of a metallic cell divided into two compartments, a and a', by a vertical partition (Fig. 103). In the former a definite quantity of blood is placed and diluted with a known quantity of water. Beneath the compartment a' is placed a glass wedge stained with the golden purple of Cassius or similar pigment, the color of which passes from a deep red at one end to clear glass at the other (Fig. 104). To the side of this wedge is placed a scale ranging from 0 to 120. By means of the screw, R T, the glass wedge is moved until the color of the glass and diluted blood is identical. The illumination of the blood and glass wedge is accompanied by lamplight reflected from the white reflecting surface beneath. The depth of color of the glass opposite 100 on

the scale corresponds to that of normal blood. If, therefore, the colors are identical at 75 divisions, the blood contains but 75 per cent. of hemoglobin.

Very frequently the diminution of corpuscles and hemoglobin

FIG. 103.—VON FLEISCHL'S HEMOMETER. K. Red colored wedge of glass moved by R. G. Mixing vessel with two compartments, *a* and *a'*. M. Table with hole to read off the percentage of hemoglobin on the scale P. T. To move K. S. Mirror of plaster-of-Paris.

proceeds along parallel lines, in which case the amount of hemoglobin per corpuscle is supposed to be normal and the color-index = 1. If the hemoglobin diminution is greater than the corpuscles, as is the case in many pathologic conditions, the color-index is less than unity. If the percentage of corpuscles is determined by the method

of counting to be 80 per cent. (4,000,000 per cubic millimeter) and the percentage of hemoglobin 60, the color-index is obtained by dividing the latter by the former; *e. g.*, $\frac{60}{80} = 0.75$. In other words, each corpuscle has but 0.75 per cent. of the normal amount of hemoglobin.

FIG. 104.—TINTED GLASS WEDGE OF THE VON FLEISCHL HEMOMETER. — (Da Costa's Hematology)

Absorption Spectra.—Both oxyhemoglobin and reduced hemoglobin, like other soluble pigments, have an absorbing influence on certain waves of light, and hence give rise to absorption bands which

can be studied with the spectroscope, and which are so characteristic as to serve for their identification.

In principle a spectroscope consists of a prism which decomposes the light from a narrow slit into a band of all the spectral colors. A form of spectroscope in common use is that shown in Fig. 105. It consists of a tube, B, which has at one end a slit that can be narrowed or widened by means of a screw. The light, having passed through it, falls on an achromatic convex lens (called the collimator) at the opposite end of the tube which renders the divergent rays of light parallel. These parallel rays subsequently fall on the prism, by which they are dispersed and directed into the

FIG. 105.—THE SPECTROSCOPE. A. Telescope. B. Tube for the admission of light and carrying the collimator. C. Tube containing a scale, the image of which when illuminated is reflected above the spectrum. D. The fluid examined.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

tube, A, which is nothing more than a small telescope. On looking into it at the ocular end the spectral colors are seen. If the light has been derived from the sun, the spectrum will present vertical dark lines, the so-called Fraunhofer's lines. They are given from A to F in Fig. 106. If a colored medium be held in front of the slit so that the light has to pass through it first, certain dark bands will appear in the spectrum, owing to the absorption of certain rays.

Dilute solutions of arterial blood show two absorption bands between the Fraunhofer lines, D and E, in the green and yellow

portion of the spectrum. (See Fig. 106.) The band nearest D frequently designated as alpha is dark in the center and sharply defined. The band which lies toward E is broader and less sharply defined.

As the amount of light absorbed varies with the concentration of the solution as well as its thickness, and gives rise to absorption bands of different widths and intensities, it becomes necessary, in order to obtain the characteristic bands, to employ only dilute solutions.

The absorption spectra, as seen with different strengths of solution one centimeter thick, are shown graphically in Fig. 107. It will be observed that solutions varying in strength from 0.1 per cent. to 0.6 per cent. give rise to the two characteristic bands, but with gradually

FIG. 106.—SPECTRA OF HEMOGLOBIN AND SOME OF ITS COMPOUNDS.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

increasing breadths. With a percentage greater than 0.65 per cent. the light between D and E, the yellow-green, becomes extinguished and the two bands fuse together, forming a single band overlapping slightly the lines D and E. At the same time there is a progressive darkening of the violet end of the spectrum. At 0.85 per cent., all the light is absorbed with the exception of a small amount of the red. Solutions less than 0.01 per cent. to 0.003 per cent. show but a single absorption band—that nearest D.

A solution of venous blood or of reduced hemoglobin shows but a single absorption band (see Fig. 106), frequently designated as gamma, broader and less marked between the lines D and E, but extending slightly beyond D. Fig. 108 shows in the same graphic

manner the increasing breadth of the absorption band with increasing strengths of solution, as well as the simultaneous absorption of light at both the red and violet ends of the spectrum.

Compounds of Hemoglobin.—The coloring-matter of the blood is characterized by the property of combining with and of again yielding up oxygen. The union is a chemic one, taking place under certain pressure conditions. It therefore may exist in two states of oxidation, distinguished by a difference in color and their absorption spectra. If hemoglobin either in blood or in solution be shaken with air, it at once combines with oxygen and is converted into oxyhemoglobin, which imparts to the blood or solution a bright red or scarlet color. If the blood or solution be now deprived

FIG. 107.—GRAPHIC REPRESENTATION OF THE ABSORPTION OF LIGHT IN A SPECTRUM BY SOLUTIONS OF OXYHEMOGLOBIN OF DIFFERENT STRENGTHS. The shading indicates the amount of absorption of the spectrum, and the numbers at the side the strength of the solution.

FIG. 108.—GRAPHIC REPRESENTATION OF THE ABSORPTION OF LIGHT IN A SPECTRUM BY SOLUTIONS OF HEMOGLOBIN OF DIFFERENT STRENGTHS. The shading indicates the amount of absorption of the spectrum, and the numbers at the side the strength of the solution.

of oxygen, the oxyhemoglobin is converted into reduced hemoglobin, which imparts to the blood or solution a dark bluish or purple color.

The quantity of oxygen absorbed by 1 gram of hemoglobin is estimated at 1.56 c.c. measured at 0° C. and 760 mm. of mercury. The compound formed by the union of oxygen and hemoglobin is a very feeble one; for when the pressure is lowered the union becomes less stable, and as the zero point is approached, as in the Torricellian vacuum, a rapid dissociation of the oxygen takes place. This, however, is not due entirely to a fall of pressure but partly to the dissociating force of heat, which increases in power as the pressure falls. The same dissociation of oxygen can be brought about by passing through blood indifferent gases, such as hydrogen, nitrogen, carbon

dioxid, which lower oxygen pressure, or by the addition of reducing agents, such as ammonium sulphid or Stokes' fluid.

These experimental determinations of the relation of oxygen to hemoglobin partly explain the oxidation and deoxidation of the hemoglobin in the lungs and tissues. As the blood passes through the lungs and is subjected to the oxygen pressure there, the hemoglobin combines with a definite quantity of oxygen, and on emerging from the lungs exhibits a bright red or scarlet color; as the blood passes through the systemic capillaries where the oxygen pressure in the surrounding tissues is low, the oxyhemoglobin yields up a portion of its oxygen, becoming deoxidized or reduced, and the blood on emerging from the tissues exhibits a dark bluish color. The portion of oxygen given up to the tissues is termed respiratory oxygen. In 100 parts of arterial blood the coloring-matter presents itself almost exclusively in the form of oxyhemoglobin. In passing through the capillaries about 5 per cent. only gives up its oxygen and becomes reduced, so that both kinds are present in venous blood. In asphyxiated blood only reduced hemoglobin is present. It is this capability of combining with and of again yielding up oxygen, that enables hemoglobin to become the carrier of oxygen from the lungs to the tissues.

Carbon Monoxid Hemoglobin.—Carbon monoxid is a constituent of both coal-gas and water-gas. From either source it is likely to accumulate in the air, and if inspired for any length of time produces a series of effects which may eventuate in death. If blood be brought into contact with this gas, it assumes a bright cherry-red color, which is quite persistent and due to the displacement of the loosely combined oxygen and the union of the carbon monoxid with the hemoglobin. The compound thus formed is very stable and resists the action of various reducing agents. The passage of air or of some neutral gas through the blood for a long period of time will gradually displace the carbon monoxid and enable the hemoglobin to again absorb oxygen. It is for this reason that partial poisoning with the gas is not fatal. It is to its power of displacing oxygen and forming a stable compound with hemoglobin and thus interfering with its respiratory function that carbon monoxid owes its poisonous properties. Examined spectroscopically, solutions of carbon monoxid hemoglobin exhibit two absorption bands closely resembling in position and extent those of oxyhemoglobin; but careful examination shows that they are slightly nearer the violet end of the spectrum and closer together. (See Fig. 106.) A useful test for CO blood is the addition of caustic soda, which produces a cinnabar red precipitate.

Methemoglobin.—This is a pigment, closely related to oxyhemoglobin, found in the blood after the administration of various

drugs, in cysts and in the urine in hematuria and hemoglobinuria. It is also produced when a solution of hemoglobin is exposed to the air and becomes acid in reaction and brown in color. The spectrum shows two absorption bands similar to oxyhemoglobin, but in addition a new and quite distinct band near the line C, in the red. If the acid solution be rendered alkaline by the addition of ammonia, this band disappears and another makes its appearance near the line D. The addition of ammonium sulphid develops reduced hemoglobin, which, on the absorption of oxygen, produces again oxyhemoglobin, as shown by the spectroscope.

Hematin.—Boiling hemoglobin or adding to it acids or alkalis decomposes it and develops one or more proteid bodies to which the general term globulin has been given, and an iron-holding pigment termed hematin. This is regarded as an oxidation product of hemoglobin and constitutes about 4 per cent. of its composition. When obtained in a pure state, it is a non-crystallizable blue-black powder with a metallic luster. According as it is treated with acids or alkalis, two forms of hematin can be obtained (acid and alkaline), each of which has special properties, giving rise to different absorption bands. #

Hemochromogen.—This pigment is derived from hemoglobin, of which it constitutes about 96 per cent., during decomposition in the absence of oxygen. In solution it produces a purple color, but soon absorbs oxygen and is converted into hematin.

Hemin.—This pigment is a derivative of hematin, presenting itself in the form of microscopic rhombic plates or rods (Teichmann's crystals), which are so characteristic as to serve as tests for blood-stains in medico-legal inquiries. These crystals are readily obtained by adding to a small quantity of dried blood on a glass slide a few drops of glacial acetic acid and a crystal of sodium chlorid; after heating gently for a few minutes over a spirit lamp and then allowing the mixture to cool, crystallization of the hemin soon takes place. #

Hematoidin.—This term has been applied to a pigment which occurs in the form of yellow crystals in old blood-clots or in blood which has been extravasated into the tissues. In its chemic composition and in its reactions it closely resembles bilirubin, the pigment of the bile, exhibiting the same characteristic play of colors on the addition of nitric acid.

The Stroma.—The stroma of the red corpuscles obtained by the methods which dissolve out the hemoglobin has been shown by analysis to consist of from 60 to 70 per cent. of water and 40 to 30 per cent. of solid material, containing a proteid resembling cell-globulin, lecithin, cholesterin, and inorganic salts, among which potassium phosphate is especially abundant.

HISTOLOGY OF THE WHITE CORPUSCLES OR LEUKOCYTES.

The histologic features of the white corpuscles can readily be observed under the same conditions as in the case of the red corpuscles. Within the smaller blood-vessels they are seen adhering to the walls of the vessel; in a drop of freshly drawn blood they are found in the spaces between the rouleaux of red corpuscles. (See Fig. 96, p. 236.)

Shape and Size.—In the resting condition, whether seen in the vessel or on the stage of the microscope, the white corpuscle, as its name implies, is grayish in color, round or globular in form, though often presenting a more or less irregular surface. Its diameter varies from 0.0004 to 0.0013 mm., though the average is about 0.0011 mm. or about $\frac{1}{2500}$ inch.

Structure.—A typical white corpuscle consists of a ground-substance uniformly transparent and apparently homogeneous, in which are embedded a number of granules of varying size, some of which are very fine, while others are larger. By various reagents it has been demonstrated that the granules are fatty, proteid, and carbohydrate (glycogen) in character. In the fresh cells the existence of a nucleus is difficult of detection, though its presence can be demonstrated by the addition of acetic acid, which renders the perinuclear cytoplasm more transparent and makes the nucleus conspicuous and sharply defined. From its structure it is apparent that the white corpuscle belongs to the group of undifferentiated tissues and resembles the cells of the embryo in its earliest stages as well as the unicellular organism, the amœba.

Number of White Corpuscles.—The number of white corpuscles per cubic millimeter of blood is much less than the number of red corpuscles, the ratio being in the neighborhood of 1 white to 700 red. This ratio, however, varies within wide limits in different portions of the body and under normal variations in physiologic conditions. In the blood of the splenic artery there is but 1 white to 2260 red, while in the splenic vein there is 1 white to every 60 red; or about thirty-eight times as many as in the artery. In the portal vein there is 1 white to 740 red, while in the hepatic vein there is 1 white to 170 red.

The total number of white corpuscles per cubic millimeter has been estimated at from 5000 to 10,000, though the average is about 7500. The number, however, is influenced by a variety of physiologic conditions. The ingestion of food rich in proteid material raises the count from 30 to 40 per cent., as compared with the count before the meal. Fasting for a few days always lowers the count, and in a case of total abstinence of food for a week, reported by Luciani, the count fell to 861 per cubic millimeter, after which it rose to 1530, where it practically remained for the succeeding three

weeks of the fasting period. In the new-born the number is greater than in adults—17,000 to 20,000 per cubic millimeter. Cabot states that 30,000 is never a high count after a meal in infants under two years. In the later months of pregnancy, especially in primiparæ, the number increases to 16,000 to 18,000. Many pathologic conditions of the body also influence the count very considerably.

The method for counting the white corpuscles is similar to that used in counting the red. The given volume of blood should, however, be diluted with 10 volumes of a one-third of one per cent. solution of acetic acid, which renders the red corpuscles invisible and thus facilitates the counting of the white. The pipette should have a larger bore than that used for the red, and a greater number of squares in the counting chamber should be counted, so as to diminish the percentage of error.

Physiologic Properties.—The white corpuscles possess the

FIG. 109.—HUMAN LEUKOCYTES SHOWING AMOEBOID MOVEMENTS.

FIG. 110.—SMALL VESSEL OF A FROG'S MESENTERY SHOWING DIAPEDESIS. *w, w.* Vascular walls. *a, a.* Poiseuille's space. *r, r.* Red corpuscles. *l, l.* Colorless corpuscles adhering to the wall, and, *c, c,* in various stages of extrusion. *f, f.* Extruded corpuscles.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

characteristic property of exhibiting movements similar to those observed in the amœba, and are therefore termed amoeboid. These movements consist in alternate protrusions and retractions of portions of the cell body, as a result of which they exhibit a great variety of forms. (See Fig. 109.) The protruded process can also attach itself to some point of the surface on which it rests, and then draw the body of the corpuscle after it. By a repetition of this process the corpuscle can slowly

creep about and change its position in space. In virtue of these

ameboid movements the corpuscle can appropriate small particles of pigment, such as indigo or carmine, and after a short time eliminate them from various parts of the surface. It is also capable of thrusting a process into and through the wall of the capillary vessel, after which the remainder of the corpuscle follows (Fig. 110). This continues until the corpuscle is outside the vessel and in the lymph-space, where it resumes its original shape and movement. This process is best observed in inflammatory conditions, when the blood has come to rest and the vessels are occluded with both red and white corpuscles. To this passage of the white blood-corpuscles through the capillary wall the term *diapedesis* is given. The movements of the white corpuscles are increased by a rise in temperature up to 40° C., beyond which they cease, owing to the coagulation of the cell-substance. A low temperature also arrests the movements. Induced electric currents also cause contraction and death of the cell. Moisture and oxygen are necessary to their activity. From their similarity to lower organisms the white corpuscles may be regarded as independent organisms living in the animal fluids, just as the amoeba lives in its natural liquid medium.

Classification.—With the aid of the tricolor staining fluid of Ehrlich four distinct forms of white corpuscles or leukocytes can be demonstrated to be present in the blood, viz.:

1. *Small lymphocytes*, so called from their resemblance to the corpuscles of the lymph-glands, consisting of a small dark nucleus surrounded by a very thin layer of cytoplasm. *Not Amoeboid Phagocyte*
2. *Large mononuclear lymphocytes*, which represent the preceding type at a later stage of development and in the possession of a large amount of perinuclear cytoplasm more or less hyaline and devoid of granules. The nucleus is often deeply notched, resembling a horseshoe in shape. This cell is capable of executing ameboid movements.
3. *Polymorphonuclear leukocytes* or *neutrophiles*, which represent the adult condition of the cell. The nucleus is irregular and assumes a variety of shapes in different cells, a feature which has suggested the name given to the cell. The perinuclear cytoplasm contains a number of granules which are made evident when stained with the neutral mixture of Ehrlich. These cells exhibit active ameboid movements. They make up about 60 to 70 per cent. of the whole number of the white blood-cells.
4. *Eosinophile cells*, the granules of which stain most readily with acid stains like eosin. The granules are spheric and larger than in the previous cell. The nucleus is pale and irregular in shape. The eosinophile cell is regarded as the old or "over-ripe" cell and is the most actively ameboid of all the cells. It is present to the extent of from $\frac{1}{4}$ to 4 per cent.

(*Triacid Stain.*)

1, 2, 3, 4. **Small Lymphocytes.**

Contrast the faintly colored protoplasm of these cells in the triple stained specimen with their intensely basic protoplasm in the film stained with eosin and methylene-blue, 17 and 18. The cell body of 1 is invisible. Note the kidney-shaped nucleus in 4.

5, 6. **Large Lymphocytes.**

With this stain the nucleus reacts more strongly than the protoplasm; with eosin and methylene-blue (19, 20), on the contrary, the protoplasm is so deeply stained that the nucleus appears pale by contrast. This peculiarity is also observed in the smaller forms of lymphocytes.

7, 8. **Transitional Forms.**

Note the moderately basic and indented nucleus, and the almost hyaline non-granular protoplasm. Compare 8 with the myelocyte, 7, Plate I, these cells differing chiefly in that the myelocyte contains neutrophile granules.

9, 10, 11. **Polynuclear Neutrophiles.**

These cells are characterized by a polymorphous or polynuclear nucleus, surrounded by a cell body filled with fine neutrophile granules. In 11 the nuclear structure is obviously separated into four parts; in 9 it is moderately, and in 10 markedly, polymorphous.

12, 13. **Eosinophiles.**

The nuclei are not unlike those of the polynuclear neutrophile, except that they are somewhat less convoluted, and poorer in chromatin, staining less intensely. The protoplasm is filled with coarse eosinophile granules, the characteristics of which are clearly illustrated by 13, a "fractured" eosinophile.

14. **Eosinophilic Myelocyte.**

Compare with 15.

15, 16. **Myelocytes.** (*Neutrophilic.*)

These cells are morphologically similar to 14, except that they contain neutrophile instead of eosinophile granules. Note that the granules of the myelocyte are identical with those of the polynuclear neutrophile. A dwarf form of myelocyte is represented by 16.

(*Eosin and Methylene-blue.*)

17, 18. **Small Lymphocytes.**

Note the narrow rim of pseudo-granular basic protoplasm surrounding the nucleus, and the pale appearance of the latter.

19, 20. **Large Lymphocytes.**

Budding of the basic zone of protoplasm is represented by 20. Both of these cells belong to the same type as 5 and 6.

21, 22. **Large Mononuclear Leukocytes.**

Compared with 19 and 20, these cells have a decidedly less basic protoplasm, but a somewhat more basic nucleus. In the triple stained film these differences cannot be detected, so that they must be classed as large lymphocytes.

23. **Transitional Form.**

The distinction between this cell and 24 is not marked; the nucleus of the latter simply being somewhat more basic and convoluted.

24, 25, 26, 27. **Polynuclear Neutrophiles.**

With this stain these cells show a feebly acid protoplasm, and lack granules. Note that the more twisted the nucleus the deeper it is stained. Compare with 9, 10, and 11.

28, 29. **Eosinophiles.**

Compare with 12 and 13.

30. **Eosinophilic Myelocyte.**

Compare with 14.

31. **Basophile.** (*Finely granular.*)

This cell is characterized by the presence of exceedingly fine δ -granules, staining the *pure* color of the basic dye. The nucleus is markedly convoluted and deficient in chromatin. The cell here shown was found in normal blood.

32, 33, 34, 35, 36. **Mast Cells.**

The granules take a *modified* basic color, as shown by their royal-purple tint in this illustration. Note their unusually large size and ovoid shape in 35, their peculiar distribution in 35 and 36, and their irregularity in size in 32 and 36. With the triacid mixture these granules, as well as those of the finely granular basophile, 31, remain unstained, showing as dull-white stippled areas in the cell body. The nuclear chromatin of the mast cell is so delicate and so feebly stained that it is barely visible. These cells were found in the blood of a case of spleno-medullary leukemia.

PLATE I.

THE LEUKOCYTES.

(1-16, *Triacid Stain*; 17-36, *Eosin and Methylene-blue*.)

(E. F. FABER, *fec.*)

(From *DaCosta's "Clinical Hematology."*)

Origin of White Corpuscles.—The white corpuscles which are present in the blood are believed to be derived from the lymphocytes or lymph-corpuscles which find their way into the blood at the points where the lymph-ducts discharge their lymph: viz., at the junctions of the internal jugular and subclavian veins. Along the course of the lymph-vessels are to be found, in different regions of the body, numerous lymph-glands the meshes of which are filled with small, colorless, nucleated cells, which arise by self-division and represent the early stages in the development of lymphocytes. Similar corpuscles are found in the mucous membranes, skin, spleen, and the fluids of the tissues. As the lymph flows through the glands these cells are washed out and carried direct to the blood. In their passage they grow in size by increasing the amount of their cytoplasm and eventually become normal adult leukocytes. After an unknown period of life they undergo dissolution and disappear.

Chemic Composition.—The chemic composition of the white corpuscles has been inferred from an analysis of pus-corpuscles, with which they are practically identical, and of lymph-corpuscles from the lymph-glands. Of the corpuscle about 90 per cent. is water and the remainder solid matter consisting mainly of proteids, of which nuclein, nucleo-albumin, and cell globulin are the most abundant. The two former are characterized by the presence of a considerable quantity of phosphorus, amounting to as much as 10 per cent. Lecithin, fat, glycogen, and earthy and alkaline phosphates are also present.

Functions.—The functions of the white corpuscles are but imperfectly known, and at present no positive statements can be made. It has been suggested that wherever found in the body, whether in blood or tissues, they are engaged in the removal of more or less insoluble particles of disintegrated tissues, in attacking and destroying more or less effectively various forms of invading bacteria and thus protecting the body against their deleterious activity. This they do by surrounding, enveloping, and incorporating either the tissue particle or bacterium and digesting it. On account of this swallowing action these cells were termed by Metchnikoff *phagocytes* and the process *phagocytosis*. He regards them as the general scavengers of the body. It has been suggested that they are also engaged in the absorption of fat from the lymphoid tissue of the intestine. In their dissolution they contribute to the blood-plasma certain proteid materials which assist under favorable circumstances in the coagulation of the blood.

HISTOLOGY OF THE BLOOD-PLATES.

The blood-plates or plaques are small histologic elements circulating in the blood-plasma. They were discovered by Hayem, who

applied to them the term hematoblasts, on the supposition that they were the early stages in the development of the red corpuscles. This is now known to be erroneous. On account of their specific, distinct characters, and their constant presence in the blood of living animals (guinea-pig and bat), they are now regarded as normal constituents of the blood and designated as the third corpuscle. When blood is freshly drawn from the body, the plaques rapidly undergo disintegration and disappear; but by treating the blood with osmic acid, the form and structure of the plaque may be retained.

The blood-plaque may be defined as a colorless, grayish-white, homogeneous or finely granular protoplasmic disk, varying in diameter from 1.5 to 3.5 micro-millimeters. The edges are rounded and well defined, but it is not certain whether they are only flattened or are slightly biconcave. There is, however, no nucleus. The ratio of the plaques to the red corpuscles is 1 to 18 or 20, and the total number per cubic millimeter has been estimated to be 250,000 to 300,000.

When blood is shed they tend to adhere to each other and form irregular masses known as Schultze's granular masses. If threads are suspended in blood, the plaques accumulate in enormous numbers upon them and appear to form a center from which fibrin filaments radiate as coagulation proceeds. The white thrombi which form in blood-vessels in consequence of diseased states—*e. g.*, endocarditis, atheromatous ulceration, etc.—are composed very largely of blood-plaques and fibrin threads. The function of the blood-plaques is unknown, but it has been surmised that in some way they are, like the leukocytes, concerned in the coagulation of the blood. Whenever they are diminished in number, as in purpura and hemophilia, coagulation tends to take place very slowly.

The blood-plaques can be seen with high powers of the microscope in the blood-vessels of the omentum of the guinea-pig and rat, especially when the blood-stream begins to slow. They are also readily seen in the blood-vessels of subcutaneous connective tissue of various animals, and especially in that of the new-born rat. A small quantity of this tissue moistened with normal saline and examined microscopically with suitable powers will show large numbers of plaques within the blood-vessels.

THE TOTAL QUANTITY OF THE BLOOD; ITS GENERAL COMPOSITION.

The determination of the total quantity of the blood in an animal is best made by the chromometric method, somewhat modified at present, of Welcker. This consists, first, in bleeding an animal, collecting all the blood it yields, and weighing it; second, in washing out the vessels with a normal saline solution until the fluid comes from the veins clear and free from blood; third, in mincing the tissues

of the body, after removal of the contents of the alimentary canal, soaking them in water for twenty-four hours, and then expressing them. All the washings are collected and weighed. A given volume of the normal defibrinated blood, treated with carbon monoxid so as to give it uniform color, is then diluted with water until its tint is identical with that of the washings similarly treated with carbon monoxid. From the quantity of water necessary to dilute the blood the quantity of blood in the washings is readily determined. The animal having been previously weighed and the weight of the contents of the alimentary canal deducted, the ratio of the total weight of the blood to the weight of the body at once becomes apparent. By this method it has been shown that the ratio of blood to body-weight in a human adult is 1:13; in an infant, 1:19; in a dog, 1:13; in a cat, 1:21. Thus an adult man of 75 kilos weight would have 5769 grams of blood.

The amount of blood in the different organs has been determined by ligating the blood-vessels in the living animal, removing the organ, and after allowing the blood to escape subjecting the tissues to the chromometric methods described above. According to Ranke, the volume of the blood is distributed as follows: Heart, lungs, arteries, and veins, $\frac{1}{4}$; liver, $\frac{1}{4}$; muscles, $\frac{1}{4}$; other organs, $\frac{1}{4}$.

General Composition.—The results of the analyses of the blood will vary with the animal and the methods employed. The following table, taken from Gad, shows the average composition, expressed in whole numbers, of horse's blood. In essential respects the ratio of the constituents in human blood would not be materially different.

One thousand parts of blood contain:

Cells, ----- 328	{	Water, ----- 200	{	Hemoglobin, ----- 116
		Solids, ----- 128		Other organic matter, ----- 10
				Salts, ----- 2
Plasma, ----- 672	{	Water, ----- 604	{	Fibrin, ----- 7
				Albumin, ----- 52
				Fat, ----- 1
				Other organic matter, ----- 3
				Potassium and sodium salts, ----- 4
				Calcium and magnesium salts, ----- 1

CHEMISTRY OF COAGULATION.

The changes which eventuate in the formation of fibrin, and hence all the subsequent phenomena of coagulation, are chemic in character; but as these changes take place in organic compounds the composition of which is but imperfectly known, the intimate nature of the process is quite obscure. All the theories which have been advanced in explanation, though approximating the truth, are more or less incomplete and in some respects contradictory. Since the

coagulation is coincident with the appearance of the fibrin, the antecedents of this substance, the physical and chemic conditions which condition its development, and the succession of chemic changes involved must be determined, before any consistent theory can be established.

Extra-vascular Coagulation. At present it is generally believed that the immediate factors concerned in extra-vascular coagulation are fibrinogen, a calcium salt, and a ferment-body. As to the manner in which these three bodies react one with another there is a diversity of opinion. At least five different theories are current at the present time, all of which have some features in common, though presenting points of difference.

Alexander Schmidt long contended that fibrin was the result of a union of fibrinogen and paraglobulin; that the union was brought about by a ferment-body; that the presence of the neutral salts of the plasma was necessary to the activity of the ferment. Previous to his death in 1893 Schmidt modified his view as follows: The insoluble fibrin is developed out of a soluble fibrin derived from paraglobulin, which in turn is a product of general cell disintegration; the conversion of the fibrinogen into fibrin is due to the activity of a ferment, *thrombin*, a derivative of pro-thrombin, a product of the disintegration of leukocytes, lymph-cells, etc.; that the production of thrombin is conditioned by the presence of the neutral salts of the plasma in normal percentages; that no one of these salts, calcium included, acts in a specific manner; finally, that fibrin is not a compound of a proteid and calcium.

Hammersten, as a result of many years of investigation, believes that paraglobulin is not necessary to the process, fibrinogen alone being transformed into fibrin under the influence of the ferment, in the presence of a neutral salt, especially calcium, which acts specifically in a manner different from the sodium salts. Inasmuch as the quantity of fibrin produced is always less than the quantity of fibrinogen previously present, Hammersten concludes that the latter substance, under the influence of the ferment, undergoes a cleavage into two unequal portions, one of which remains in solution, the other solidifying as fibrin. While admitting that the calcium salts act specifically, he believes that they are concerned rather with the production of the ferment than the fibrin, for if the ferment is present in sufficient quantity coagulation takes place in a typical manner even in the total absence of calcium.

Arthus and Pagés conclude that for the transformation of fibrinogen into fibrin the calcium salts are absolutely essential and act in a specific manner; that the ferment causes a cleavage of fibrinogen into two substances, one of which remains in solution, the other combines with calcium to form fibrin. They offer in support of this

view the fact that if a 1 per cent. solution of potassium oxalate be added to blood in quantity sufficient to precipitate the calcium, coagulation will not take place; but if calcium is restored coagulation proceeds in the usual manner. They transfer the sphere of influence of calcium to the formation of the fibrin rather than to the formation of the ferment.

Pekelharing's researches led him to the conclusion that there arises from the disintegration of the leukocytes a nucleo-proteid, pro-thrombin, which combining with the calcium salt forms the ferment thrombin. This compound then transfers the calcium to the fibrinogen, which in turn becomes fibrin; the latter is therefore a proteid-calcium compound.

Lilienfeld asserts that fibrin formation is a cleavage process by which fibrinogen is separated into two bodies, one an albumose which remains in solution, the other a proteid to which he has given the name *thrombosin*. This cleavage is attributed to the action of the usual ferment, a product of the disintegration of leukocytes. Thrombosin combines, according to Lilienfeld, with calcium to form fibrin.

In a critical examination of these different theories Hammersten denies that fibrin is a compound of a proteid and calcium; for chemic analysis of both fibrinogen and fibrin shows that the former contains as much calcium as the latter, and that therefore the view of coagulation according to which fibrinogen unites with calcium to form fibrin is without foundation. On the contrary, he maintains that the specific influence of the calcium is directed toward the production of the ferment, for if this be present in sufficient quantity coagulation takes place in a typical manner, no matter whether the blood has been decalcified by potassium oxalate or not.

Intra-vascular Coagulation.—So long as the relations of the blood and the vascular system remain physiologic no coagulation occurs in the vessels. The reason assigned for this is that the ferment, though continually being produced, is as rapidly being destroyed, and hence never accumulates in amount sufficient to develop fibrin. This view is supported by the fact that if a solution of cell-protoplasm, leukocytes, lymph-corpuscles, etc., presumably containing a large amount of the ferment, be injected into the blood-vessels, extensive intra-vascular coagulation promptly follows. It is also believed that the lining of the blood-vessel in some unknown way restrains the coagulation process even though the circulation has come to rest.

Under pathologic conditions of the circulatory apparatus, especially of the internal lining, intra-vascular coagulation frequently arises, though the process can not be considered as identical with extra-vascular coagulation. Many pathologists assert that in its origin, mode of formation, and structure the intra-vascular coagulum

or thrombus is not a true coagulum as ordinarily understood, but rather a conglutination of blood-elements. Whenever the integrity of the internal wall of the vessel is impaired by disease or by the introduction of foreign bodies, there is primarily a deposition and accumulation of blood-plaques at the injured area or on the foreign body which constitutes to a large extent the mass of the thrombus which at once forms. The thrombi which form on the surface of atheromatous ulcers, on the valves of the heart, and in the veins in consequence of diseased states, on threads or needles passed through the vessels, at the orifices of torn blood-vessels, consist largely of blood-plaques. A thrombus so formed may contain a number of delicate fibrin threads, which, however, present a different appearance from the fibrin of the extra-vascular clot. In the thrombi which form around foreign bodies there is always a larger quantity of fibrin than in those originating from causes wholly within the vessel.

CHAPTER XII.

THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD.

Each organ and tissue of the body is the seat of a more or less active metabolism, the maintenance of which is essential to its physiologic activity. This metabolism is characterized by the assimilation of food materials and the production of waste products; that it may be maintained it is imperative that there shall be a continuous supply of the former and a continuous removal of the latter. Both conditions are subserved by the blood. In order, however, that this fluid may fulfil these functions it must be kept in continuous movement, must flow into and out of the tissues in volumes varying with their activity, under a given pressure and with a certain velocity.

The apparatus by which these results are attained is termed **the circulatory apparatus**. This consists of a central organ, the heart; a series of branching diverging tubes, the arteries; a network of minute passageways with extremely delicate walls, the capillaries; a series of converging tubes, the veins. These structures are so arranged as to form a closed system of vessels within which the blood is kept in continuous movement mainly by the pressure produced by the pumping action of the heart, though aided by other forces. (See Fig. 111.)

In this system a particle of blood which passes any given point will eventually return to the same point, no matter how intricate or tortuous the route may be through which it in the mean while travels; for this reason the blood is said to move in a circle, and the movement itself is termed the circulation.

In order to understand the reasons for the movement of the blood in one direction only, as well as for many other phenomena connected with the circulation, a knowledge of the structure of the heart and its internal mechanism is of primary importance.

THE PHYSIOLOGIC ANATOMY OF THE HEART.

The heart is a cone or pyramid shaped hollow muscular organ situated in the thorax just behind the sternum. The base is directed upward and to the right side; the apex downward and to the left side, extending as far as the space between the cartilages of the fifth and sixth ribs. In this situation the heart is enclosed and suspended in a fibrous sac, the *pericardium*, attached to the great vessels at its base.

The heart is a double organ, consisting of a *right* and a *left* half, separated by a vertical septum. The general cavity of each side is partially subdivided by a transverse constriction into two smaller cavities, an upper and a lower, known respectively as the *auricle* and the *ventricle*. The heart may therefore be said to consist of four cavities, the walls of which are composed of muscle-tissue. Of these four cavities, the right auricle and the right ventricle constitute the *venous* heart; the left auricle and the left ventricle, the *arterial* heart.

The right auricle is quadrangular in shape and presents on its posterior aspect two large openings, the terminations of the two final trunks of the venous system, the *superior* and *inferior venæ cavæ* (Fig. 112). Below, the auricle communicates with the ventricle by a large opening which, from its position, is termed the *auriculo-ventricular* opening. The walls of the auricle are extremely thin, not measuring more than two millimeters in thickness.

The right ventricle, as shown on cross-section, is crescentic in shape owing to the projection of the ventricular septum. It presents at its upper left angle a cone-shaped prolongation, the *conus arteriosus*. From this prolongation, and continuous with it, arises the pulmonary artery. The wall of the ventricle measures in the middle about four millimeters in thickness. The inner surfaces of the ventricle show: (1) a complicated system of muscle ridges and bands, the *columnæ carneæ* (fleshy columns), and (2) a set of muscle projections, the *musculi papillares* (papillary muscles), which arise by a broad base from the walls of the ventricle and project upward toward the auriculo-

FIG. III.—DIAGRAM OF CIRCULATION. 1. Heart. 2. Lungs. 3. Head and upper extremities. 4. Spleen. 5. Intestine. 6. Kidney. 7. Lower extremities. 8. Liver.—(Dalton.)

walls of the ventricle and

ventricular opening. From the apex of each papillary muscle there are given off fine tendinous cords, the *chordæ tendineæ*, which become attached above to the auriculo-ventricular valve.

FIG. 112.—THE RIGHT AURICLE AND VENTRICLE OPENED, AND A PART OF THEIR RIGHT AND ANTERIOR WALLS REMOVED, SO AS TO SHOW THEIR INTERIOR. $\frac{1}{2}$ —1. Superior vena cava. 2. Inferior vena cava. 2'. Hepatic veins cut short. 3. Right auricle. 3'. Placed in the fossa ovalis, below which is the Eustachian valve. 3''. Is placed close to the aperture of the coronary vein. ++. Placed in the auriculo-ventricular groove, where a narrow portion of the adjacent walls of the auricle and ventricle has been preserved. 4, 4. Cavity of the right ventricle; the upper figure is immediately below the semilunar valves. 4'. Large columna carnea or musculus papillaris. 5, 5', 5''. Tricuspid valve. 6. Placed in the interior of the pulmonary artery, a part of the anterior wall of that vessel having been removed, and a narrow portion of it preserved at its commencement, where the semilunar valves are attached. 7. Concavity of the aortic arch close to the cord of the ductus arteriosus. 8. Ascending part or sinus of the arch covered at its commencement by the auricular appendix and pulmonary artery. 9. Placed between the innominate and left carotid arteries. 10. Appendix of the left auricle. 11, 11. The outside of the left ventricle, the lower figure near the apex.—(Allen Thomson.)

The left auricle, similar in general shape to the right, presents posteriorly four openings, the terminations of the four final trunks of the venous system of the lungs, the pulmonary veins. Below is

FIG. 113.—THE LEFT AURICLE AND VENTRICLE OPENED AND A PART OF THEIR ANTERIOR AND LEFT WALLS REMOVED. $\frac{1}{2}$.—The pulmonary artery has been divided at its commencement; the opening into the left ventricle is carried a short distance into the aorta between two of the segments of the semilunar valves; and the left part of the auricle with its appendix has been removed. The right auricle is out of view. 1. The two right pulmonary veins cut short; their openings are seen within the auricle. 1'. Placed within the cavity of the auricle on the left side of the septum and on the part which forms the remains of the valve of the foramen ovale, of which the crescentic fold is seen toward the left hand of 1'. 2. A narrow portion of the wall of the auricle and ventricle preserved round the auriculo-ventricular orifice. 3, 3'. The cut surface of the walls of the ventricle, seen to become very much thinner toward 3", at the apex. 4. A small part of the anterior wall of the left ventricle which has been preserved with the principal anterior columna carnea or musculus papillaris attached to it. 5, 5. Musculi papillares. 5'. The left side of the septum, between the two ventricles, within the cavity of the left ventricle. 6, 6'. The mitral valve. 7. Placed in the interior of the aorta, near its commencement and above the three segments of its semilunar valve which are hanging loosely together. 7'. The exterior of the great aortic sinus. 8. The root of the pulmonary artery and its semilunar valves. 8'. The separated portion of the pulmonary artery remaining attached to the aorta by 9, the cord of the ductus arteriosus. 10. The arteries rising from the summit of the aortic arch.—(*Allen Thomson.*)

placed the corresponding auriculo-ventricular opening. The wall of the auricle measures about 3 mm. in thickness. The left ventricle (Fig. 113) is conic in shape from above downward and oval or circular in shape on cross-section. At its upper right angle it presents a circular orifice, the margins of which give attachment to the walls of the aorta, the main arterial trunk of the systemic circulation. The inner surfaces of the ventricle show a similar though better developed system of columnæ carneæ, muscoli papillares, chordæ tendineæ, etc. The wall of the left ventricle measures about 11.5 mm. in thickness in the middle.

The Endocardium.—The cavities of both the right and left sides of the heart are lined by a thin firm connective-tissue membrane, closely adherent to the muscle-tissue, termed the endocardium. It also contains elastic fibers and smooth muscle-fibers. Its entire surface is covered over with a layer of polygonal endothelial cells. This membrane serves to resist undue distention of the heart during contraction and to prevent separation of the muscle-fibers. The endocardium is continuous with the lining membrane of the blood-vessels.

The Cardio-pulmonary Vessels.—Though the two sides of the heart are separated from each other by a vertical septum, they are anatomically and physiologically connected by the intermediation of the pulmonary system of vessels: viz., the pulmonary artery, capillaries, and veins (Fig. 114).

The *pulmonary artery* arises from the conus arteriosus of the right ventricle. After a short upward course it divides into a right and a left branch, which enter corresponding lungs. The vessel at once divides and subdivides into a number of branches, which, after following the bronchial tubes to their termination, give origin to capillaries that surround the air-cells of the pulmonary lobules.

The *capillaries* in this situation are extremely abundant and well

FIG. 114.—DIAGRAM OF THE HEART AND PULMONARY CIRCULATION IN MAMMALS. *a*. Right auricle. *b*. Right ventricle. *c*. Pulmonary artery. *d*. Lungs. *e*. Pulmonary vein. *f*. Left auricle. *g*. Left ventricle. *h*. Aorta. *i*. Vena cava. —(Dalton.)

developed. They lie close to the inner surfaces of the air-cells. The blood is thus brought into intimate relationship with the pulmonary air, and the exchange of gases—the excretion of carbon dioxide and the absorption of oxygen—for which the cardio-pulmonary vessels exist, is readily accomplished.

The *pulmonary veins* which return the blood to the heart are formed by the convergence and union of the small veins which emerge from the capillary system. The final trunks thus formed, the four pulmonary veins,—two from each lung,—enter the posterior wall of the left auricle.

The Course of the Blood through the Heart.—There is thus established a pathway between the venæ cavæ on the right side and the aorta on the left side, by way of the right side of the heart, the cardio-pulmonary vessels, and the left side of the heart.

The venous blood flowing toward the heart is emptied by the superior and inferior venæ cavæ into the right auricle, from which it passes through the auriculo-ventricular opening into the right ventricle (Fig. 115); thence into and through the pulmonary artery and its branches to the pulmonary capillaries, where it is arterialized by the exchange of gases—the giving up of a portion of carbon dioxide to the lungs and the absorption of oxygen—and changed in color from bluish-red to scarlet. The arterialized blood, flowing toward the heart, is emptied by the pulmonary veins into the left auricle, from which it passes through the auriculo-ventricular opening into the left ventricle; thence into the aorta and its branches to the systemic capillaries, where it is

FIG. 115.—DIAGRAM OF COURSE OF BLOOD THROUGH THE HEART. 1, 2. Superior and inferior venæ cavæ. 3. Right auricle. 4. Right ventricle. 5, 6. Pulmonary artery and branches. 7, 8. Left auricle. 9. Aorta. 10. Innominate artery. 11. Left carotid artery. 12. Left subclavian artery.—(After Morat and Doyon.)

laries, where it is arterialized by the exchange of gases—the giving up of a portion of carbon dioxide to the lungs and the absorption of oxygen—and changed in color from bluish-red to scarlet. The arterialized blood, flowing toward the heart, is emptied by the pulmonary veins into the left auricle, from which it passes through the auriculo-ventricular opening into the left ventricle; thence into the aorta and its branches to the systemic capillaries, where it is

de-arterialized by a second but opposite exchange of gases—the giving up of a portion of its oxygen to the tissues and the absorption of carbon dioxide from the tissues—and changed in color from scarlet to bluish-red. The venous blood is again returned by the systemic veins to the venæ cavæ. Though the blood is thus described as flowing first through the right side and then through the left side, it must be kept in mind that the two sides fill synchronously; that while the blood is flowing into the right side from the venæ cavæ, it is also flowing from the pulmonary veins into the left side in equal quantities and velocities. //

Though there is but one set of capillaries, as a rule, between arteries and veins, there is an exception in the case of the arteries and veins of the abdominal viscera. Thus the veins emerging from the capillaries of the stomach, intestines, pancreas, and spleen, instead of passing directly to the inferior vena cava, unite to form a large vein—the portal vein—which enters the liver. In this organ the portal vein divides to form a second capillary system which is in close relation to the liver cells and from which arise the veins which unite to form the hepatic veins. These latter vessels empty into the inferior vena cava just below the diaphragm.

From the foregoing facts physiologists frequently divide the general circulation into:

1. The *pulmonary circulation*, which includes the course of the blood from the right side of the heart through the lungs, to the left side of the heart.
2. The *systemic circulation*, which includes the course of the blood from the left side of the heart through the aorta and its branches, through the capillaries and veins to the right side of the heart.
3. The *portal circulation*, which includes the course of the blood from the capillaries of the stomach, intestines, pancreas, and spleen through the portal vein to the liver.

Orifices and Valves.—The movement of the blood along the path of the circle above outlined is accomplished by the alternate *contraction* and *relaxation* of the muscle walls of the heart. That the movement may be a progressive one, that there shall be no regurgitation during the relaxation, it is essential that some of the orifices of the heart be closed. This is accomplished by the heart valves.

The right auriculo-ventricular opening is surrounded and strengthened by a ring of fibrous tissue to which is attached a membrane partially subdivided into three portions or cusps, which during the period of relaxation are directed into the ventricle (Fig. 116); during the period of contraction they are raised and placed in complete apposition, when they act as a valve preventing a backward flow into the auricle (Fig. 117). In the former position the valve is open; in the

latter, shut. For these reasons this structure is known as the *tricuspid valve*. This valve is formed of fibrous tissue derived from the fibrous ring, some muscle-fibers, covered over by a reduplication of the endocardium. To the under surface and to the edges of this valve the tendinous cords of the papillary muscles are firmly and intricately attached. These cords are just sufficiently long to permit closure of the valve and to prevent their being floated into the auricle.

FIG. 116.—RIGHT CAVITIES OF THE HEART. Auriculo-ventricular valves open, arterial valves closed.—(Dalton.)

The orifice of the pulmonary artery is also surrounded by a ring of fibrous tissue to which are attached three semilunar or pocket-shaped membranes, the

semilunar valves. Each valve is formed by a reduplication of the endocardium strengthened by fibrous tissue. In the center of the free edge of the valve there is a small nodule of fibrocartilage (the corpus Aurantius). The outer edge of the valve is strengthened by a delicate fibrous band. A similar band strengthens the convex attached portion of the valve just where it is joined to the fibrous ring. A third set of fibers pass toward the nodule, interlacing in all directions. Two narrow crescent-shaped areas (the lunulæ) near the free edge are devoid of these fibers. During the period of *relaxation* of the heart the edges of the valves are in close apposition and prevent a

FIG. 117.—RIGHT CAVITIES OF THE HEART. Auriculo-ventricular valves closed, semilunar valves open.—(Dalton.)

return of the blood into the ventricle (Fig. 116); during the contraction they are directed into the artery (Fig. 117). In the former position they are shut; in the latter, they are open.

The left auriculo-ventricular opening is provided with a similar though better developed fibrous ring and membranous valve. It is, however, subdivided into but two portions or cusps, and is therefore termed the *bicuspid valve*, or, from its fancied resemblance to a bishop's mitre, the *mitral valve*. The general arrangement, connections, and mode of action of this valve are similar in all respects to those of the tricuspid valve. The orifice of the aorta is also surrounded by a ring of fibrous tissue to which are attached three semilunar or pocket-shaped valves (Fig. 113), which in their arrangement, connections, and mode of action are similar in all respects to those at the orifice of the pulmonary artery. The anatomic relations of the cardiac orifices one to the other and the appearance presented by the valves when closed are represented in Fig. 118.

FIG. 118.—VALVES OF THE HEART. 1. Right atriculo-ventricular orifice, closed by the tricuspid valve. 2. Fibrinous ring. 3. Left atriculo-ventricular orifice, closed by the mitral valve. 4. Fibrinous ring. 5. Aortic orifice and valves. 6. Pulmonic orifice and valves. 7, 8, 9. Muscular fibers.—(Bonamy and Beau.)

FIG. 119.—MUSCLE-FIBERS FROM THE HEART OF A MAMMAL. — (Landois and Stirling.)

The Heart Muscle-fibers and Their Arrangement.—The muscle-fibers of the heart, though transversely striated and nucleated, differ in shape and arrangement from those found in any other situation. The individual fiber is short and broad and usually divided at one or both ends. By this means the fibers are united not only longitudinally, but laterally. (See Fig. 119.) The fibers are devoid of a sarcolemma and united one to the other by a cementum material. The entire musculature is permeated and supported by connective tissue which is so arranged as to group the fibers in bundles or fasciculi of varying size.

The arrangement of the muscle bundles is quite complicated and in accordance with the functions of the individual portions of the

heart. In the auricles the bundles are arranged in two sets: an outer transverse set, which pass from auricle to auricle, and an inner longitudinal set, which pass over the auricles to be attached anteriorly and posteriorly to the connective tissue of the auriculo-ventricular groove. The longitudinal fibers of each auricle are practically independent of each other. Circularly arranged fibers are present near the terminations of the venæ cavæ and pulmonary veins.

In the ventricles the muscle-bundles are also arranged in two

FIG. 120.—MUSCLE-FIBERS OF THE VENTRICLES.

1. Superficial fibers, common to both ventricles.
2. Fibers of the left ventricle.
3. Deep fibers, passing upward toward the base of the heart.
4. Fibers penetrating the left ventricle.

—(Sappey, after Bonamy and Beau.)

sets, a superficial longitudinal and a deep transverse, though their arrangement is somewhat more complicated than that observed in the auricles. In a general way it may be said that the superficial longitudinal fibers on both the anterior and posterior surfaces from their origin in the connective tissue of the auriculo-ventricular groove pass obliquely downward and forward from right to left toward the apex, where they turn backward and inward in a vortex, after which they ascend to terminate in the wall of the septum, the columnæ carneæ and muscoli papillares.

Longitudinal fibers are also found on the inner surface. The transverse fibers are very abundant and surround each ventricle separately.

Between the superficial longitudinal and deep transverse fibers there are several layers of fibers which possess varying degrees of obliquity. The general arrangement of the fibers is such as to ensure a complete and simultaneous discharge of blood from both auricles and ventricles (Fig. 120).

THE MECHANICS OF THE HEART.

The immediate cause of the movement of the blood through the vessels is the contraction and relaxation of the muscle-walls of the heart, and more particularly of the walls of the ventricles, each of which plays alternately the part of a force-pump, and to a slight extent of a suction-pump. The motive power is furnished by the heart itself, by the transformation of potential energy, stored up during the period of rest, into kinetic energy—*i. e.*, heat and mechanic motion.

The contraction of any part of the heart is termed the *systole*; the relaxation, the *diastole*. As each side of the heart has two cavities the walls of which contract and relax in succession, it is customary to speak of an *auricular systole and diastole*, and a *ventricular systole and diastole*. As the two sides of the heart are in the same anatomic relation to each other, they contract and relax in the same periods of time.

The movements of the heart, as well as many phenomena connected with the flow of blood through its cavities, have been determined by observation of, and experiment on, the exposed heart of a mammal,—*e. g.*, dog, cat, rabbit,—supplemented and corrected by experiments on the heart in its normal relations. Valuable information as to the heart-beat and the influences which modify it has been obtained from experiments made on the isolated heart of the turtle, frog, and allied animals.

If the thorax of a dog completely anesthetized is opened and artificial respiration established, the heart will be observed in active movement inside the pericardium. If this sac is divided and turned aside, the heart will be fully exposed to view. At the normal rate of movement characteristic of the dog it will be almost impossible to determine either the succession of events or their duration. But by observing the heart under different conditions at different rates of movement and with instrumental aids physiologists have succeeded not only in analyzing the movements, but in describing their sequence and in estimating their time duration.

Thus it has been determined that the heart presents two distinct movements which alternate with each other in quick succession. One is the movement of contraction, or the *systole*, by which the blood contained within its cavities is ejected into the arteries—pulmonary artery and aorta; the other is the movement of relaxation, or the *diastole*, followed by a pause during which the cavities again fill up with blood from the *venæ cavæ* and pulmonary veins.

Sequence of Events.—It has been ascertained that though occurring with extreme rapidity neither the contraction nor the relaxation of either the auricle or the ventricle is a simultaneous process;

that the contraction process passes over the heart in the form of a wave, that it begins, indeed, at the terminations of the great veins, then passes to and over the auricles, thence to and over the ventricles from base to apex with great rapidity, but occupying in these different regions unequal periods of time; that the relaxation immediately succeeds the contraction, in the same order, and that at the close of the ventricular relaxation there is a period during which the whole heart is in repose, passively filling with blood.

Changes in Position and Form.—In passing from the diastolic to the completed systolic condition the exposed heart undergoes changes both of position and form as the contraction rises to its maximum. This having been attained, the heart undergoes reverse changes until the original diastolic condition is regained. Thus at the time of the ventricular systole the apex is tilted upward, the entire heart is twisted on its axis from left to right and forced downward by the expansion and elongation of the pulmonary artery and aorta. At the time of the diastole, the reverse movements take place.

It is probable, however, that these movements are not permitted to the same extent in the unopened chest, for the following reasons: the heart is enclosed in the pericardium, is supported posteriorly by the expanded lungs, and both posteriorly and inferiorly by the diaphragm, all of which coöperate in keeping the heart, and more particularly the right ventricle, in close contact with the chest-wall and limiting its movements. By means of needles inserted into the apex of the heart, through the chest-walls, it has been shown by their slight movement that the apex is practically a fixed point.

In the diastolic condition the shape of the heart near the base is elliptic on cross-section, the long diameter extending from side to side. In the completed systolic condition the shape of the same cross-section is that of a circle. In passing from the diastolic to the systolic condition the transverse diameter diminishes while the antero-posterior diameter increases, while the whole heart becomes somewhat more conic in shape. It is questionable if the vertical diameter perceptibly shortens. During the systole the heart hardens, increases in convexity, and is more forcibly pressed against the chest-wall. As this takes place suddenly, it gives rise to a marked vibration of the chest-wall, known as the *cardiac impulse*. This is principally observed in the space between the fourth and fifth ribs, between the left edge of the sternum and a line drawn vertically through the nipple. The cardiac impulse is synchronous with the cardiac systole.

The Cardiac Cycle.—The entire period of the heart's pulsation may be divided into three phases, viz.:

1. The auricular contraction.
2. The ventricular contraction.
3. The pause or period of repose, during which both auricles and ventricles are at rest.

These three phases collectively constitute a cardiac cycle or a cardiac revolution. The duration of a cycle, as well as the duration of each of its three phases, varies in different animals in accordance with the number of cycles which recur in a unit of time. In human beings in adult life there are about 72 cycles to the minute; the average duration therefore is 0.83 second. From this it follows that the time occupied by any one of the three phases must be extremely short and difficult of determination. From observations made on human beings and from experiments on animals the following estimates have been made and accepted as approximately correct:

1. The auricular systole, 0.16 second.
2. The ventricular systole, 0.32 second.
3. The period of rest for both auricles and ventricles, 0.32 second.

The relations of these three phases to one another may be illustrated by the following diagram (Fig. 121), in which the space 1-2 is the duration of a cardiac cycle divided into eight equal spaces, each of which represents one-tenth of a second.

The line A represents the auricular, the line V the ventricular phase. The rise in the line A represents the contraction; the fall and subsequent continuation, the relaxation and pause. The rise in the line V and its continuation represent the contraction; the fall and subsequent continuation, the relaxation and the pause. From this it is apparent that the auricular contraction or systole has a

brief duration, 0.16 second, while the relaxation or diastole has a long duration, 0.64 second; that the ventricular contraction immediately following the auricular has a duration of 0.32 second, while the relaxation and diastole have a duration of 0.48 second; that the pause of the entire heart, that is, the period between the termination of the ventricular systole and the beginning of the next auricular systole, is only 0.32 second.

The frequency of the heart-beat varies with a variety of conditions: *e. g.*, age, sex, posture, exercise, etc.

Age.—The most important normal condition which modifies the activity of the heart is age. Thus:

Before birth, the number of beats a minute averages.....	140
During the first year it diminishes to.....	128
During the third year it diminishes to.....	95
From the eighth to the fourteenth year it averages.....	84
In adult life it averages.....	72

FIG. 121.—THE PHASES OF THE HEART'S PULSATION.

Sex.—The heart-beat is more rapid in females than in males. Thus while the average beat in males is 72, in females it is usually 8 or 10 beats more.

Posture.—Independent of muscle efforts the rate of the beat is influenced by posture. It has been found that when the body is changed from the lying to the sitting and to the standing position, the heart will vary as follows—from 66 to 71 to 81 on the average.

Exercise and digestion also temporarily increase the number of beats.

The Action of the Valves.—As previously stated, the forward movement of the blood is permitted and regurgitation prevented by the alternate action of the auriculo-ventricular and the semilunar valves. As a point of departure for a consideration of the action of the valves and their relation to the systole and diastole of the heart, the close of the ventricular systole may be conveniently selected.

At this moment, if the blood is not to be returned to the ventricles, the *semilunar valves* must be instantly and completely closed. This is accomplished in the following manner: During the outflow of blood from the ventricles the valves are pushed outward toward the walls of the vessels, though not coming into contact with them; for behind them are the pouches of Valsalva, containing blood, continuous with and under the same pressure as that in the vessels themselves. With the cessation of the outflow and the beginning of the relaxation the pressure of the blood behind the valves suddenly forces them inward until their free edges, including the lunulæ, come into complete apposition. By this means the orifices of the pulmonary artery and aorta are securely closed and a return flow prevented. Reversal of the valves is prevented by their mode of attachment to the fibrous rings of the orifices.

During the ventricular systole the relaxed auricles have been filling with blood. With the ventricular relaxation this volume, or its equivalent, flows readily into the empty and easily distensible ventricles, its place being taken by an additional volume of blood flowing from the venæ cavæ and pulmonary veins. Whether the ventricles exert a suction power at the moment of their relaxation is an undecided question. A steady stream of blood into the auricles and ventricles continues throughout the entire period of rest until both cavities are filled. The tricuspid and bicuspid valves which hang down into the ventricular cavities are now floated up by currents of blood welling up behind them until they are nearly closed. The auricles now contract, forcing their contained volumes, or at least the larger portions of them, into the ventricles, which become fully distended. —

Note With the cessation of the auricular systole the ventricular systole begins. If the blood is not to be returned to the auricles at this

moment, the *tricuspid* and *mitral* valves must be suddenly and completely closed. This is readily accomplished by reason of the position of the valves, which have been floated up and placed almost in apposition by the blood itself. With the beginning of the ventricular pressure the blood is forced upward against the valves until their free edges are brought together and the orifices closed. Reversal of these valves is prevented by the contraction and shortening of the *papillary muscles*, which in consequence exert a traction on their under surfaces. The blood now confined in the ventricle between the closed auriculo-ventricular and semilunar valves is subjected to pressure from all sides. As the pressure rises proportionately to the vigor of the contraction, there comes a moment when the *intra-ventricular* pressure exceeds that in the aorta and pulmonary artery. Immediately the semilunar valves of both vessels are thrown open and the blood discharged. Both contraction and outflow continue until the ventricles are practically empty, after which ventricular relaxation sets in, attended by a rapid fall of pressure. Under the influence of the positive pressure of the blood in the sinuses of Valsalva the semilunar valves are again closed, the column of blood supported, and regurgitation is prevented. With the accumulation of blood in the auricles the cardiac cycle is completed.

Relative Functions of Auricles and Ventricles.—Though both auricles and ventricles are essential to the continuous movement of blood, they possess unequal values in this respect. The passage of the blood through the pulmonary and systemic vessels is accomplished by the driving power of the right and left ventricles respectively, aided, however, by minor extra-cardiac forces. They may be regarded therefore as force-pumps. #

If the heart consisted of ventricles only, the flow of blood from the venæ cavæ and pulmonary veins would be temporarily arrested during their systole and their subsequent refilling delayed. This is obviated, however, by the addition of the auricles; for during the ventricular systole the blood continues to flow into the auricles, in which it is temporarily stored until the ventricular relaxation sets in. With this event the accumulated blood passes into the ventricles, which are thus practically filled before the auricular systole occurs by which the filling is completed. By this means there is no delay in the filling of the ventricles, and hence their effective working as force-pumps is more readily secured. The auricles may therefore be regarded as feed-pumps. For this reason it is probable, notwithstanding the contraction of the circular muscle-fibers at the terminations of the venous system, the flow of blood into the auricles is never entirely arrested. Regurgitation in these vessels does not occur for the reason that the pressure in the auricles is not higher than, if as high as, in the great veins. X

Synchronism of the Two Sides of the Heart.—If the balance of the circulation is to be maintained, the two sides of the heart must act synchronously. That they do so can be shown by attaching levers to their walls and thus recording their activities. The synchronism is so perfect that until recently it was generally believed to be dependent on nerve connections; but Porter has shown that if the ventricles are cut away from the auricles, in which the nerve mechanism seemed to lie, the synchronism of the former is not interfered with; that the apical halves of the ventricles will beat synchronously if perfused with blood through an artery; that a very small bridge of muscle-tissue will carry the wave of excitation from one part to neighboring parts of the ventricle. It is therefore probable that the synchronism is accomplished through muscle connections only. The left ventricle, in keeping with the greater work it has to do, has a greater development than the right, and therefore contracts more energetically. The ratio between the energy of the left and right sides is approximately 3 to 1.

Intra-cardiac Pressure.—It has been stated that during the

FIG. 122.—V. FRANK'S VALVE.

This is placed in the course of the tube between heart and manometer, so that the latter may be used as a maximum, minimum, or ordinary manometer according to the tap which is left open.—(Starling.)

pause of the heart when its cavities are filling with blood the semilunar valves are kept closed by the pressure of the blood in the pulmonary artery and aorta, a pressure due to the resistance, as will be explained later, offered to the flow of the blood mainly by the smaller arteries and capillaries; that they are opened only when the pressure of the blood within the ventricle exceeds that in the arteries. It becomes, therefore, a matter of importance to determine the extent of this pressure as well as its variations during the course of a cardiac cycle. This can be done by inserting a long catheter into either the right or left ventricle, through the jugular vein or the carotid artery respectively, and connecting its free extremity with a mercurial manometer. By the inter-

position of a double valve such as represented in Fig. 122, it becomes possible, according to the direction the blood is permitted to flow, to obtain either the maximal or the minimal pressure that occurs in the heart during a series of cycles. Thus Goltz found in the left ventricle of the dog a maximal pressure of 114 to 135 mm.; in the right ventricle, a pressure of 35 to 62 mm. Minimal pres-

tures of -23 to -52 mm. for the left ventricle have also been obtained.

The maximal pressure in the ventricles during the systole, though always higher than that in the arteries, is not a fixed or an invariable pressure, as it rises and falls with the latter from moment to moment. Within limits the cardiac power, and therefore the intra-cardiac pressure, is capable of considerable increase. The function of the heart is to drive the blood through the vessels with a given velocity. This is only possible by first overcoming the resistance to the flow offered by the vessels, as indicated by the arterial pressure. As this is a variable factor, rising and falling very considerably at times, the heart must meet and exceed each rise, if the circulation is to be maintained. The power put forth by the heart is proportional to the work it has to perform. If the arterial pressure continues higher than the average for any length of time, the heart meets the condition by an hypertrophy of its walls.

The Intra-ventricular Pressure Curve.—An accurate interpretation of the play of the heart mechanism necessitates the obtaining of a graphic record of the course of the intra-ventricular pressure, its variations and time relations. With such a record may be compared the records of the pressures in the venæ cavæ, on the one hand, and in the aorta, on the other hand, and their relations one to another accurately defined.

The intra-ventricular pressure has been obtained by specially devised manometers or *tonometers* or *tonographs*, as they are variously termed, the construction of which is such as to enable them to respond instantly to the very rapid variations of the pressure which occur during the brief cardiac cycle. One of the best is that of Hürthle. This consists of a small metallic tambour 5 or 6 millimeters in diameter, covered by a thin rubber membrane. A small button resting on the membrane plays against an elastic steel spring, by the tension of which the pressure of the blood is counterbalanced. The movements of the membrane are taken up, magnified, and recorded by a suitable lever. A long cannula is inserted into the right ventricle through the jugular vein or into the left ventricle through the carotid artery. Both cannula and tambour are filled with an alkaline solution to prevent coagulation of the blood, and then joined air-tight. The pressure of the blood in the ventricle is thus transmitted by a liquid column to the tambour and to its attached lever. With such a manometer a curve is registered similar to that shown in Fig. 123. To obtain the absolute value of this curve in millimeters of mercury it is necessary to previously graduate the instrument. An examination of the curve shows that previous to the ventricular contraction there is a very slight rise of pressure above that of the atmosphere, represented by the line $a - b$. This may be due to the inflow of blood

from the auricle during the diastole. At 0 the pressure suddenly rises, passes quickly to its maximum value, (2), which is maintained with slight variations for some time, and then suddenly (3) begins to fall, and, rapidly reaches the line of atmospheric pressure, or even passes below it, becoming negative in fact for a short period. The curve may also be taken as a record of the ventricular contraction, for there are reasons to believe that the two closely coincide throughout their entire course. A characteristic feature of this curve is the more or less horizontal portion comprised between the points 2 and 3, marked by several elevations and depressions, which has been termed the systolic plateau.

With other forms of elastic manometers, especially those in which the transmission of the intra-ventricular pressure is effected by air or by a combination of air and liquid, this portion of the curve is

FIG. 123.—V. Curve of the pressure in the ventricle of the dog.—(Hürthle.) A. Curve of the pressure in the aorta. The curves were taken simultaneously. S. Tuning-fork vibrations, 100 per second.

represented by a single peak, which is taken as an indication that the maximum pressure once reached is not maintained, but immediately begins to fall to its original level, notwithstanding the continued contraction of the ventricle. Those who adhere to this view attribute the plateau to the closure of the orifice of the catheter by the contracting and approximating walls of the ventricle. There are reasons for believing, however, that the former curve is the more correct representation of the course of the intra-ventricular pressure. Bayliss and Starling photographed on a

moving surface the oscillations of a fluid, a solution of sodium sulphate, in a capillary glass tube one end of which was closed, the other end placed in connection with an intracardiac catheter, the oscillations representing the variations in pressure. The photogram thus obtained resembles the curve obtained by Hürthle's membrane manometer.

The Relation of the Intra-ventricular Pressure Curve to the Intra-cardiac Mechanisms.—By itself the curve of the intra-ventricular pressure affords no indication as to events occurring within the heart: *i. e.*, as to the times during the systole, of the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves and the opening of the semilunar valves, or the times during the diastole, of the closure of the semilunar valves and the opening of the auriculo-ventricular valves.

By registering the curve of pressure in the aorta simultaneously

with the pressure in the left ventricle (Fig. 123), and by comparing these with the curve of the successive differences of pressure in these two cavities as determined by the "differential manometer," it becomes possible to mark on the ventricular pressure curve the points at which the foregoing events take place.

During the systolic plateau the blood is passing from the ventricle into the aorta. Independent of the slight elevations and depressions there is an absolute fall of pressure between the beginning and the end of the plateau. There is also a corresponding fall in the aortic pressure, corresponding to these two points. The curve of the difference of pressure shows, however, that the ventricular pressure is slightly higher than the aortic. This fall in both ventricular and aortic pressures is due to the escape of blood from the arterial into and through the capillary system. At 3, however, whether completely emptied or not, the ventricle suddenly relaxes, and its pressure soon falls below that in the aorta. As soon as this takes place the semilunar valves must close, if regurgitation into the ventricular cavity is to be prevented. A comparison of the aortic pressure curve shows a slight notch, the "dicotic notch," just preceding a slight elevation, the "dicotic" wave. This notch is taken as the moment when the semilunar valves close. The corresponding point on the ventricular pressure curve has been placed just where the ordinate 4 cuts the descending portion. As yet, however, the pressure is higher in the ventricle than in the auricle, and so continues until near the line of atmospheric pressure. At this point the pressure in the auricle, due to the accumulation of blood during the ventricular systole, now forces open the mitral valve and the blood flows into the ventricle. The opening of the mitral valve occurs about the point where the ordinate 5 cuts the curve.

The ventricular pressure curve affords but slight, if any, indication of the auricular systole. It apparently does not give rise to any noticeable increase in the ventricular pressure. The slight rise in the pressure curve, which just precedes the abrupt rise due to the ventricular systole, may be taken as an indication of an increasing pressure due to the inflow of blood from the auricle. As soon as the pressure in the ventricle exceeds that in the auricle the mitral valve closes. This is marked on the curve where the ordinate cuts it, at 0. Coincident with this, the ventricular systole begins, and as the blood is contained within a closed cavity the pressure abruptly rises. A comparison of the aortic curve shows that for a short time during the ventricular systole, the pressure is falling, but at one point it turns at a sharp angle and rapidly rises. This is an indication that the semilunar valves are suddenly thrown open and the blood begins to pass into the aorta. This event occurs at a moment marked on the ventricular curve by the ordinate 1. Beyond this point the pres-

sure continues to rise, for the aortic pressure must not only be exceeded, but a certain velocity must be imparted to the blood. Between the ordinates 1 and 4, the semilunar valves remain open and the blood passes into the aorta.

In accordance with the foregoing the ventricular systole may be subdivided into two periods:

1. The period of rising tension, from the beginning of the systole to the opening of the semilunar valves, occupying from 0.02 to 0.04 second.
2. The period of ejection, from the opening of the semilunar valves to the end of the systole, occupying about 0.2 second.

The ventricular diastole may also be divided into two periods:

1. The period of falling tension or relaxation, from the end of the systole to the time of lowest pressure in the ventricle, occupying about 0.05 second.
2. The period of filling, from the opening of the mitral valve to the beginning of the systole.

Negative Pressure.—As shown by the ventricular pressure curve there is a moment when the pressure falls below atmospheric pressure, becoming negative to it. The extent to which this takes place, its duration and frequency, have never been satisfactorily determined. The cause of the negative pressure, its influence on the opening of the auriculo-ventricular valves, and on the entrance of blood into the ventricles are equally unknown. The most probable cause is an expansion of the base of the ventricles due to the enlargement of the aorta and pulmonary artery. That it is not due to the expansion of the thorax is evident from the fact that it occurs when the thorax is open and the heart exposed.

Heart-sounds.—Two sounds accompany each pulsation of the heart, both of which may be heard by applying the ear or the stethoscope to the chest-walls, especially over the region of the heart. One of these sounds is low in pitch, dull and prolonged; the other is high in pitch, clear and short. These sounds can be approximately reproduced by pronouncing the syllables lubb-dupp, lubb-dupp. The long dull sound occurs with the systole, the first phase of a new cardiac cycle, and is therefore termed the first sound; the short clear sound occurs at the beginning of the diastole, with the second phase of the cardiac cycle, and is therefore termed the second sound. The first sound is the systolic, the second the diastolic, sound. With the ear it can readily be determined that there is a brief pause between the first and second sounds, and a longer pause between the second and the first sounds. The duration of the first sound is almost equal to the duration of the systole—viz., 0.3 second; the duration of the second sound is not more than 0.1 second. The systolic sound is heard most distinctly over the body of the heart; the diastolic sound is

heard most distinctly in the neighborhood of the third rib to the right of the sternum.

The causes of the heart-sounds have enlisted the attention of clinicians and physiologists for years, and many factors have been assigned for their production. At present it is generally believed that the first sound is the product of at least two, possibly three, factors: viz., the contraction of the muscular walls of the ventricles, the simultaneous closure and subsequent vibration of the tricuspid and mitral valves, and the sudden increase of pressure of the apex of the heart against the chest-wall. #

That the contraction of the ventricular muscle gives rise to a sound is certain from the fact that it is perceptible in an excised heart when the cavities are free from blood and when the valves are prevented from closing. The explanation of this sound is extremely difficult, as the contraction, though prolonged, is not of the nature of a tetanus and therefore not characterized by rapid variations of tension. The apex element may be eliminated by placing the individual in the recumbent position.

The second sound is the product of the simultaneous closure and subsequent vibration of the aortic and pulmonary valves which occurs at the beginning of the ventricular diastole as the blood surges back against the closed valves. This has been definitely proved by the fact that the sound disappears when the valves are destroyed or held back by hooks introduced into the aorta and pulmonary artery. It is also possible that the vibration of the column of blood produces an additional tone which adds itself to that produced by the valves.

The relation of the sounds to the systole and diastole of the heart is represented in Figs. 124 and 121.

The Blood-supply to the Heart.—The nutrition of the heart, its contractility, the force and frequency of the beat, are dependent on and maintained by the introduction of arterialized blood into and the removal of waste products from its tissue. This is accomplished by the coronary arteries, on the one hand, and the coronary veins, on the other. The arteries, two in number, the right and left, arise from the aorta in the pouches of Valsalva just above the right and left semilunar valves. Turning in opposite directions, they ultimately anastomose, forming a circle around the base of the ventricles. From both the right and left artery branches are given off which run

FIG. 124.—SCHEME OF A CARDIAC CYCLE. The inner circle shows what events occur in the heart, and the outer, the relation of the sounds and silences to these events.

Laud
says they
not.

over the walls of both auricles and ventricles, the most important of which in man are the anterior and posterior interventricular. These main vessels lie in grooves on the surface of the heart beneath the visceral pericardium, surrounded by connective tissue and fat. Small branches penetrate the heart-muscle in which they break up into capillaries. From the capillary areas small veins arise which, passing backward, converge to form the coronary veins. These follow the course of the arteries and finally terminate in the coronary sinus, located in the auriculo-ventricular groove on the posterior surface of the heart. This sinus opens into the right auricle between the opening of the inferior vena cava and the auriculo-ventricular opening. Its orifice is guarded by a valve, which is usually single, though sometimes double.

While by far the larger portion of the blood is returned by the coronary veins, it is also certain that some of it is returned by small veins which open into little pits or depressions on the inner surface of the heart-walls, known as the foramina Thebesii. It has been lately shown by Pratt that these foramina are present not only in the auricular wall, as generally stated, but in the walls of all the cavities. These foramina communicate through a capillary plexus with both arteries and veins, and by special large passages with the veins alone.

During the systole the intra-mural vessels are compressed and the blood driven out of the capillaries into the veins; during the diastole, the vessels again dilate and permit the blood to re-enter freely from the arteries. The greater the force and frequency of the beat, the greater the volume of blood passing through the coronary system.

The period of time in the cardiac cycle during which the coronary arteries are filled with blood, whether during the systole or the diastole, has been a subject of much discussion. At present, however, as the result of many experiments it is generally believed that they are filled at the time of the systole. A comparison of the tracings of the pulse-wave taken simultaneously in the carotid and coronary arteries shows that the pressure rises and falls simultaneously in both vessels; that there is a complete agreement between the two tracings, and as a corollary both vessels are filled during the systole. But because of the pressure which the heart muscle must exert upon the smaller arteries and veins within its own substance during systole, it is probable that there is a freer circulation in the coronary vessels during the period of diastolic repose.

In mammals the nutrition of the heart-muscle, its irritability and contractility, depend on the blood-supply derived from the coronary vessels. This is shown by the effects which follow its withdrawal. Ligation of both coronary arteries in the dog is followed by a diminution in the force and frequency of the heart-beat, and in a few minutes by complete cessation. Ligation of even a single branch of a coro-

nary artery, provided it supply a sufficiently large territory,—*e. g.*, the *arteria circumflexa*,—is sufficient to cause arrest in at least 80 per cent. of animals (Porter). With the ligation of this vessel there occurs a gradual diminution in the force and frequency of the systole. As the power of coördinate contraction ceases the heart-muscle frequently exhibits a series of independent contraction of individual fibers and cells known as fibrillary contraction. All the results which follow ligation are to be attributed in the light of experiment to the sudden anemia which is thus established. The removal of the ligature and the return of the blood will restore the nutrition and re-establish coördinate contractions. The excised heart of the mammal may be again made to beat by passing warm defibrinated blood through the coronary vessels under a suitable pressure.

In frogs and allied animals the heart is nourished by blood flowing, during the diastole, from the interior of the heart into a system of irregular channels which penetrate the walls in all directions. With the systole the blood is returned to the cavities. The excised heart of the mammal—*e. g.*, the cat—may be partially nourished in a similar manner through the foramina Thebesii. If the warm defibrinated blood of the same animal be introduced into the ventricle under a pressure of about 75 mm. of blood, the heart will recommence and continue to beat for a period varying from one to several hours.

The Causation of the Heart-beat.—The beat of the heart, its frequency and regularity, its continuance from the early stages of fetal development till death, has long been an interesting subject for physiologic investigation. Though related to the functional activities of the body at large, the activity of the heart is in a sense independent of them, for it will continue for a variable length of time after they have ceased. The heart of the frog and the turtle will continue to beat under appropriate conditions for some hours after separation of all its anatomic connections and removal from the body. The heart of the dog or cat will, however, beat but for a few minutes. The human heart would in all probability act in the same way.

The reason for the longer continuance of the beat of the excised heart of the cold-blooded animal beyond that of the warm-blooded animal lies probably in the difference in the rate of their respective metabolisms. There is reason to believe that each cell of the heart-muscle, in common with other tissue-cells, during life stores up and holds in reserve a larger quantity of nutritive material than is necessary for its immediate needs. When separated from the general blood-supply, the cells at once begin to utilize this reserved material. With its exhaustion the irritability declines and in a short time disappears. As the metabolism is far more rapid in the warm-blooded than in the cold-blooded animal, it is probable that the reserved nutritive material is utilized much more quickly in the former than in the latter. So

long as it lasts in either class, the irritability and contractility persist. The passage of defibrinated blood through the vessels of the excised heart of the dog may maintain the duration of the irritability for a period of from one to six hours.

Whatever the immediate or exciting cause of the heart contraction may be, the fundamental condition for its manifestation is the maintenance of the irritability. So long as this persists at the normal level the heart-muscle will contract in response to the appropriate stimulus.

Nature of the Stimulus.—As the heart continues to beat after removal from the body, it is evident that the stimulus does not originate in the central nerve system but in the heart itself. Two views have been held as to its origin and nature:

1. That it originates in the nerve-cells found in various parts of the heart-muscle; that it is a nerve impulse rhythmically and automatically discharged by these cells and transmitted by their axons to the heart-muscle cells.
2. That it originates in the muscle-cells themselves; that it is chemic in character and due to a reaction between the inorganic salts in the muscle cells and those in the lymph by which they are surrounded.

According to the first view the stimulus is *neurogenic*, according to the second view *myogenic*, in origin.

The presence of nerve-cells; their relation to the muscle-cells; the pronounced rhythmic activity of the sinus and auricles in which the nerve-cells are abundant; the feeble activity of the apex, in which they are wanting,—these and other facts lend support to the view that the stimulus originates in the nerve-cells. To them have been attributed the power of automatic activity.

The fact, however, that portions of the heart-muscle in which nerve-cells have not yet been shown to exist can be made to exhibit rhythmic contractions for even a long period of time shows that the stimulus does not necessarily originate in nerve-cells. Porter has conclusively shown that the apex of the dog's heart, which is generally believed to be totally devoid of nerve-cells, can be made to beat for hours by feeding it through its nutrient artery with warm defibrinated blood. Unless it be assumed that the heart-muscle contracts automatically, without cause, it is evident there must be present in the blood some agent or agents which by individual or collective action act as a stimulus to the muscle-cell. Attempts have been made to isolate these agents, to determine not only their individual, but also their coöperative action, when combined in proportions approximating those in which they exist in the blood. The agents known to be directly concerned in exciting and sustaining the heart-beat are sodium chlorid, calcium phosphate or chlorid, and potassium chlorid. Ringer's combination of these salts is made by saturating a 0.65 per cent.

solution of sodium chlorid with calcium phosphate, and then adding to each 100 c.c., 2 c.c. of a 1 per cent. solution of potassium chlorid. A frog's heart immersed in this solution will continue to beat for several hours. // A combination of the chlorids of sodium, calcium, and potassium is equally efficient in maintaining the heart-beat. //

The collective as well as the individual actions of these salts have been strikingly brought out by the experiments of Professors Howell and Green, from whose papers the following statements are derived. In these experiments strips from the terminations of the venæ cavæ and from the ventricle of the terrapin's heart were employed. The proportion of these salts most favorable to the contraction of the venæ cavæ strips is the following: viz., sodium chlorid, 0.7 per cent.; calcium chlorid, 0.026 per cent.; potassium chlorid, 0.03 per cent.; for the contraction of the ventricular strips a larger percentage of the calcium is required: viz., 0.04 to 0.05. From this fact it is inferred that the venæ cavæ region is more sensitive to the action of the combined salts than the ventricle. With the latter strength of the solution, the ventricular strips may contract for several days. In the first proportion as well as in serum the ventricular strips do not contract, but are kept in good condition for contraction for several days. An increase in the quantity of the calcium chlorid sufficient to raise the percentage to 0.04 or 0.05 will after a brief latent period give rise to rapid and energetic contractions.

The action of the individual salts is also best shown with ventricular strips. In a 0.7 per cent. sodium chlorid solution the strip beats rhythmically and energetically, but for a short period and with gradually diminishing force, until it entirely ceases. A reason assigned for this is the removal of other salts necessary to the excitation of the contraction. In a calcium chlorid solution 0.7 per cent.—*i. e.*, isotonic with the sodium chlorid—the heart strip is thrown into strong tone, but does not rhythmically contract. If, however, the strip is placed in normal saline, and calcium chlorid added in amounts equal to that present in the blood, it will after a very short latent period begin to contract rapidly and energetically and for a longer time than when in sodium chlorid solution alone. The contractions not infrequently occur before relaxation is completed, so that the strip passes into the condition of contracture.

In potassium chlorid solutions isotonic—0.9 per cent.—with sodium chlorid solution the heart strip also fails to contract. This is the case also when the potassium is added to the sodium chlorid in amount practically equal to that found in the blood. // With the foregoing combination of inorganic salts it is believed that the sodium chlorid maintains the osmotic pressure between the heart tissues and the surrounding fluid; that the calcium salt prevents the washing out of the calcium salts, and at the same time acts as a stimulus to the

heart-cells; that the potassium chlorid acts antagonistically to the calcium. From these facts it may be inferred that the stimulus is chemic in character and, though continuously acting, calls forth but periodic contractions.

PROPERTIES OF THE HEART-MUSCLE.

1. **Irritability.**—The heart-muscle in common with other muscles possesses irritability in virtue of which it responds by a change of form to the action of a stimulus. Whatever the stimulus, here, as elsewhere, there is a conversion of potential into kinetic energy—heat and mechanic motion. The normal physiologic stimulus is at present undetermined. In common with other forms of muscle tissue, the heart may be made to contract by artificial stimuli—*e. g.*, mechanic, thermic, chemic, and electric. The irritability depends on the nutrition, and so long as this is maintained the muscle will respond by a contraction to any stimulus. The irritability is most marked in the neighborhood of the *venæ cavæ terminations*. It is least marked in the ventricles.

2. **Conductivity.**—The heart-muscle possesses conductivity. The excitation process and the subsequent contraction wave, both of which take their rise under physiologic conditions near the *venæ cavæ terminations*, are conducted over the auricles, thence to the ventricles from base to apex. The propagation of both processes is accomplished by muscle-tissue alone, independently of the nerve systems. The conductivity, however, is not equally well developed in every part of the heart. This is especially true of

FIG. 125.—RECORD OF THE CONTRACTION OF THE FROG'S HEART.

the tissue at the auriculo-ventricular junction. At this point the contraction wave is delayed for an appreciable period, a condition due to the embryonic character of the muscle-tissue. In the frog's heart the excitation process begins in the sinus venosus, from which it passes to the auricles, thence to the ventricles. The excitation process as well as the contraction wave is delayed both at the sinu-auricular and auriculo-ventricular junctions. In Fig. 125, which is a graphic record of the heart-beat, the two elevations of the lever on the up-stroke, *a* and *b*, represent the contraction of the sinus and the auricle respectively, while the two depressions *c* and *d* indicate the delay in the transmission of the contraction wave at the two junctions. There is here an anatomic obstacle to the conduction of the contraction. This may be artificially increased by compressing the heart between the

auricles and ventricles with a clamp. By carefully regulating the pressure it is possible to so block the wave that three or four auricular contractions may occur before a single ventricular contraction (Fig. 126).

3. **Rhythmicity.**—The beat of the heart is a uniform movement, occurring at regular intervals. Each phase of each beat occupies a regular measure of time. The beat is therefore rhythmic in character. The heart-muscle as a whole varies in rhythmic power in its different parts. It is best developed in the frog and tortoise, in the sinus venosus, less so in the auricles, least in the ventricles. This may be shown by division of the tissue between sinus and auricles *in situ*. At once the auriculo-ventricular portion ceases to beat, while the sinus continues contracting as usual. In a short time the auricles and ventricles begin to beat, though less rapidly than formerly. Separation of the auricle from the ventricle is again followed by rest. In due time the auricle begins

FIG. 126.—RECORD OF THE AURICULAR AND VENTRICULAR CONTRACTIONS BEFORE AND AFTER THE CLOSURE OF THE CLAMP AT *a*.

to beat, while the ventricle remains quiescent. If the ventricle be now stimulated in a rhythmic manner, it may resume rhythmic activity. These facts are taken as an indication that the rhythmic power is developed in unequal degree in the three parts of the heart.

4. **Automaticity.**—The heart-muscle continuing to contract rhythmically, even after removal from the body and without the aid of any external stimulus is said to be automatic in action. This, however, does not exclude the action of an internal stimulus.
5. **Tonicity.**—The heart-muscle, like the vascular muscle, maintains continuously a certain degree of contraction, upon which the efficiency of the heart as a pumping organ is largely dependent. This tone may, however, be increased or decreased by the action of various external agents. Thus the passage of dilute solutions of various drugs—*e. g.*, alkalies, digitalis—

through the cavities of the excised heart will so increase the tone, or the contractile power, that complete relaxation is prevented, until finally the heart comes to a standstill in the condition of systole. The passage of dilute solutions of lactic acid, muscarine, etc., through the heart has the opposite effect—a gradual diminution in contractile power, the heart finally coming to a standstill in diastole. In the first instance the tonicity is said to be increased; in the second instance, decreased.

The Response of the Heart to the Action of a Stimulus.—

The heart in many animals may be brought to a standstill by ligation of the tissues between the sinus venosus and the auricles—the first Stannius ligature. Under such circumstances the heart may be made to contract by stimulating it with the induced electric current. With each passage of the current the muscle contracts. Contrary to what is observed in other muscles, the heart-muscle, if it contracts at all, at once reaches its maximal value. Increase or decrease in the strength of the stimulus has no effect on the extent or force of the contraction.

If a series of successive stimuli be thrown into a muscle, the effect

FIG. 127.—THE EXTRA CONTRACTION AND THE COMPENSATORY PAUSE. The break in the horizontal line indicates the moment the electric current passes through the heart.

will vary in accordance with their time intervals. Should this be less than about three seconds, there will be a gradual increase in the height for some half-dozen contractions, a result to which the term “staircase” contractions has been given. If a second stimulus is thrown into the muscle during the period of relaxation, a second contraction is developed, which superposes itself on the first, but the height of the contraction is not any greater than the height of the

first (Fig. 127). There is here no summation of effects. With the relaxation of the heart after the second contraction, a considerable pause in the heart's action is noticed, to which the term “compensatory” is given. During this pause the muscle accumulates a new supply of contractile material sufficient for the next contraction. If the stimulus be thrown into the heart during the period of contraction, it will have no effect. For this reason the heart is said to be refractory to the second stimulus during the entire contraction period. The explanation at hand is that the irritability is very much lowered from the decomposition of energy-holding compounds. In the case of the skeletal muscle the refractory period is confined to the latent period. Since there is no summation of the contractions of the heart-muscle, tetanization of the muscle can not be produced.

Though many of the experiments relating to the properties of the heart-muscle have been made on the hearts of frogs, turtles, and

allied animals, there is every reason for believing that the results so obtained hold true, with minor exceptions, for the heart of the mammal.

THE RELATION OF THE NERVE SYSTEM TO THE HEART.

In all classes of vertebrates the heart not only contains localized collections of nerve-cells, but is also connected with the central nerve system by two or three sets of nerve-fibers.

|| In the frog heart a group of nerve-cells is found in the sinus at its junction with the auricle, known as the crescent or ganglion of Remak; a second group is found at the base of the ventricle on its anterior aspect, and known as the ganglion of Bidder; a third group is found in the auricular septum, known as the septal ganglion, or v. Bezold's or Ludwig's. The majority of the cells are situated on the surface of the heart just beneath the pericardium. From the cell-body fine non-medullated fibers pass into the substance of the heart, to be histologically and physiologically related with the muscle-fiber. These nerve-cells were formerly regarded as the sources of the stimuli for the heart's activities. ^{now} They are regarded by Gaskell as trophic in function, and exerting a favorable influence on the nutrition of the heart-muscle. ||

In the dog heart the nerve-cells are not arranged in such definite groups, but are distributed in the terminations of the venæ cavæ, pulmonary veins, the walls of the auricles, and in the neighborhood of the base of the ventricles.

The nerves which connect the heart with the central nerve system are two: viz., the vagus or pneumogastric, and the sympathetic.

|| **The Vagus.** || Histologic investigation has shown that the vagus nerve-trunk contains medullated fibers of large and small size. || Experiment has shown that the large fibers are afferent, the small fibers efferent in function. || The small efferent fibers are the peripherally coursing axons of nerve-cells situated in the gray matter beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle at the tip of the calamus scriptorius. The exact course of these fibers is not definitely known. According to some investigators, they leave the medulla by way of the spinal accessory nerve and enter the trunk of the vagus through the internal or anastomotic branch; according to recent investigations made by Schaternikoff and Friedenthal, they leave the medulla along the path by which the afferent fibers enter and never become associated with the spinal accessory nerve at its origin.

|| Below the origin of the inferior or recurrent laryngeal nerves, branches containing the efferent fibers are given off, which pass to the heart. || The terminal branches of the fibers are not distributed

directly to the heart-muscle, but to the nerve-cells, around the body of which they end in basket-like formations. The fibers in the vagus are pre-ganglionic; those of the nerve-cells post-ganglionic. (See Fig. 128.)

The Sympathetic. Histologic investigation has shown that the sympathetic nerves which pass to the heart are non-medullated. Experiment has shown that they are also efferent in function. The fibers are peripherally coursing axons of nerve-cells situated in the ganglion stellatum. After reaching the heart they may terminate directly in the muscle-cell or indirectly through the intervention of the heart nerve-cells. The former method is the more probable. The nerve-cells in the ganglion stellatum are in relation with small medullated nerve-fibers which emerge from the cord in the anterior roots of the second and third thoracic nerves, pass through the white rami communicantes, and thence to the ganglion stellatum, where their end branches arborize around the nerve-cells. The nucleus of origin of these medullated fibers is probably in the medulla oblongata. The fibers emerging from the cord are pre-ganglionic, those emerging from the ganglion, post-ganglionic.

FIG. 128.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATION OF THE VAGUS TO THE HEART MUSCLE-CELL.

ascend, passing successively through the second sympathetic ganglion, the annulus of Vieussens, the first sympathetic ganglion, to the ganglion on the trunk of the vagus, at which point they enter the sheath of this nerve. For this reason the common trunk which descends to the heart is generally spoken of as the *vago-sympathetic* nerve. The pre-ganglionic fibers emerge from the cord in the anterior roots of the third spinal nerve, pass through the rami communicantes to the third sympathetic ganglion, around the cells of which the nerve-fibers arborize.

Physiologic Action of the Vagus.—The information now possessed regarding the influence which the central nerve system exerts upon the heart has been derived largely from experiments made on the nerves of the frog, toad, and turtle. To demonstrate

the respective actions of the two sets of fibers they must be stimulated or divided before their union at the vagus ganglion.

Stimulation of the intra-cranial roots of the vagus with very weak induced currents is followed by a gradual diminution in the rate or rhythm and a diminution in the force of the heart-beat. If the induced currents are moderate in strength, the heart will at once come to a standstill in diastole. Since stimulation of the nerve, which in all probability exaggerates its normal function, is followed by a period

FIG. 129.—TRACING SHOWING THE DIMINUTION IN THE RATE OF THE HEART-BEAT FOLLOWING WEAK TETANIZATION OF THE VAGUS TRUNK.

of rest or inactivity, the vagus is said to have a retarding or an inhibitory influence on the automatic pulsations of the heart.

After cessation of the stimulation, the heart resumes its activity. At first the beat usually is slow and feeble, but with each succeeding beat both rate and force increase, until they attain or exceed that observed prior to the stimulation. The duration of the inhibitory effect varies with the duration of the stimulation. Thus during and after a stimulation of thirty-eight seconds the heart of the toad remained at rest for 292 seconds (Gaskell). Stimulation of the sym-

FIG. 130.—TRACING SHOWING COMPLETE INHIBITION FOLLOWING STRING TETANIZATION OF THE VAGUS TRUNK.

pathetic fibers prior to their union with the vagus is followed by an increase in the rate or an augmentation in the force of the heart, or both at the same time. With the cessation of the stimulus the heart returns to its normal condition. From the foregoing facts the vagus is said to be the inhibitor, the sympathetic, the accelerator or augmentor nerve of the heart, according as it increases the rate or force.

Stimulation of the trunk of the vagus in the frog or the toad with weak tetanizing induced electric currents is followed merely by a

diminution in the rate of the beat (Fig. 129). Stimulation with strong tetanizing currents is followed by complete inhibition, and

for a short time the heart remains quiescent; but notwithstanding the continued stimulation, the heart commences again to beat (Fig. 130). Though at first the beat is feeble, it soon regains and far exceeds its former rate and force. This may be attributed to a fatigue of the terminals of the inhibitory fibers or to an overpowering action of the augmentor fibers arising after a rather long latent period.

FIG. 131.—TRACING SHOWING DIMINISHED AMPLITUDE AND SLOWING OF THE PULSATIONS OF THE AURICLE AND VENTRICLE WITHOUT COMPLETE STOPPAGE DURING IRRITATION OF THE VAGUS.—(From Brunton, after Gaskell.)

The foregoing facts are also illustrated in Figs. 131 and 132, as published by Gaskell. In these experiments the heart was suspended and clamped in the auriculo-ventricular groove, thus permitting both auricle and ventricle to be attached to recording levers.

In addition to the changes in the rate and force of the heart caused by stimulation of the inhibitor and the augmentor nerves, it is stated by Gaskell that there is also during inhibition a *decrease* in the conductivity of the heart at both the sinu-auricular and auriculo-ventricular junctions, and an *increase* in the conductivity during acceleration. The decrease in conductivity may be so pronounced that only every second or third contraction of the auricle will be followed by a contraction of the ventricle. In other instances both auricles and ventricles remain at rest while the sinus maintains its usual rate.

FIG. 132.—TRACING SHOWING THE ACTIONS OF THE VAGUS ON THE HEART. *Aur.*, Auricular; *Vent.*, ventricular tracing. The part between perpendicular lines indicates period of vagus stimulation. *C.8* indicates that the secondary coil was 8 cm. from the primary. The part of tracing to the left shows the regular contractions of moderate height before stimulation. During stimulation, and for some time after, the beats of auricle and ventricle are arrested. After they commence again they are single at first, but soon acquire a much greater amplitude than before the application of the stimulus.—(From Brunton, after Gaskell.)

The increase in conductivity is shown by first artificially blocking the contraction wave at the auriculo-ventricular junction with the

clamp, until only every second or third auricular contraction is conducted to the ventricle, and then stimulating the sympathetic. At once the auricular contraction forces the block, and passes to the ventricle, calling forth a normal contraction. In the mammal the same effects follow stimulation of the vagus and the sympathetic as in the frog. If the thorax of a dog is opened and artificial respiration maintained, the heart will continue to beat in a practically normal manner for a long time. Stimulation of the vagus with induced currents of moderate strength will be followed by a complete standstill of the heart in diastole, during which the walls are relaxed and the heart-cavities filled with blood. If the currents are of feeble strength, the heart will come to rest gradually through a gradual diminution in the rate and force of the contraction. Stimulation of the sympathetic may be followed by only a slight increase in the rate, especially if the heart action is normally

FIG. 133.—INCREASE IN THE FORCE OF THE VENTRICULAR CONTRACTION (CURVE OF PRESSURE IN RIGHT VENTRICLE) FROM STIMULATION OF THE SYMPATHETIC FIBERS. THERE IS LITTLE OR NO CHANGE IN FREQUENCY.—(Franck.)

very rapid. There is, however, an augmentation of the force and an increase in conductivity (Fig. 133).

The Cardio-inhibitor Center.—In the dog, and probably in many other mammals also, the cardio-inhibitory center, in the medulla, exerts a more or less constant inhibitory or restraining influence on the heart's activity. This is indicated by the fact that the rate of the heart-beat is very much increased by simultaneous division of both vagi. For this and other reasons it is believed that this center is in a state of tonic activity, discharging nerve impulses which exert a regulative influence on the cardiac mechanism in accordance with its needs, and especially in reference to the variable resistances offered to the flow of blood which the heart must overcome. The question has been raised as to whether the tonic activity of the center is maintained by causes within itself, the result of an interaction of cell substance and the surrounding lymph, or by nerve impulses

reflected to it through afferent or sensory nerves. The latter supposition is supported by the results of experimentation, though both factors are undoubtedly of importance.

Stimulation of the sensory nerves in almost any region of the body is followed by a slowing of the heart's action. Thus stimulation of the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, the trunks of the cranial sensory nerves, the splanchnic nerves, the pulmonary branches of the vagus, etc., give rise to a more or less pronounced inhibition. As a rule, stimulation of the peripheral terminations of these nerves is more effective than stimulation of their trunks, hence an explanation is at hand for the cardiac inhibition which results from sudden distention of the stomach, intestines, or lungs.

The Cardio-accelerator Center.—The exact location of this center is not as yet determined. It is probably in the medulla oblongata. The experiments of Hunt would indicate that this center is also in a condition of tonic activity, increasing both the rate and force of the heart's action; that it antagonizes the action of the inhibitory center and is in time antagonized by it; that the normal rate of the heart from moment to moment is the resultant of the action of these two opposing forces. These experiments also support the view that the acceleration of the heart observed during stimulation of certain afferent nerves is not due to a reflex stimulation of the accelerator center, but to an inhibition of the cardio-inhibitor center. It must therefore be assumed that the afferent nerves contain two sets of nerve-fibers, one of which inhibits, the other excites, the cardio-inhibitor center.

The Depressor Nerve.—The vagus trunk also contains afferent fibers stimulation of which not only brings about a reflex inhibition of the heart, but also a dilatation of the peripheral arteries and a fall of blood-pressure through an influence exerted on the vaso-motor centers. To this nerve the term depressor has been given. A consideration of the physiologic action of this nerve will be found in the section devoted to the nerve mechanisms concerned in the maintenance of the blood-pressure.

THE VASCULAR APPARATUS: ITS STRUCTURE AND FUNCTIONS.

The systemic vascular apparatus consists of a closed system of vessels extending from the left ventricle to the right auricle, and includes the arteries, capillaries, and veins. Though serving as a whole to transmit blood from the one side of the heart to the other, each one of these three divisions has separate but related functions, which are dependent partly on differences in structure and physiologic properties, and partly on their relation to the heart and its physiologic activities.

THE ARTERIAL CIRCULATION.

Structure and Properties of the Arteries.—The arteries serve to transmit the blood ejected from the heart to the capillaries; that this may be accomplished they divide and subdivide and ultimately penetrate each and every area of the body. Their repeated division is attended by a diminution in size, a decrease in the thickness and a change in the structure of their walls.

A typical artery consists of three coats: an internal, the *tunica intima*; a middle, the *tunica media*; an external, the *tunica adventitia*.

The internal coat consists of a structureless elastic basement membrane, on the inner surface of which rests a layer of elongated spindle-shaped epithelial cells. The middle coat consists of several layers of circularly disposed, non-striated muscle-fibers, between which are networks of elastic fibers. The external coat consists of bundles of connective tissue of the white fibrous and yellow elastic varieties. Between the external and middle coats there is an additional elastic membrane. In the small arteries there is but a single layer of muscle-fibers. In the large arteries the elastic tissue is very abundant, exceeding largely in amount the muscle-tissue. It is also more closely and compactly arranged. The external coat is well developed in the large arteries (Figs. 135 and 136).

In virtue of the presence in their walls of both elastic and contractile elements, the arteries possess the two properties of elasticity and contractility.

The *elasticity* is especially well developed in the large arteries, which are capable, therefore, of both distention and elongation, and, when the distending force is withdrawn, of returning to their previous condition. The elasticity permits of a wide variation in the amount of blood the arterial system can hold between its minimum and maximum distention. Thus the capacity of the aorta and carotid artery of the rabbit can be increased four times and six times respec-

FIG. 134.—COATS OF A SMALL ARTERY. *a*. Endothelium. *b*. Internal elastic lamina. *c*. Circular muscular fibers of the middle coat. *d*. The outer coat.—(Landois and Stirling.)

tively by raising the intra-arterial pressure from 0 to 200 mm. of mercury.

The *contractility* permits of a variation in the amount of blood passing into a given area in a unit of time. Normally each artery has a certain average caliber due to a given contraction of the muscular coat. Beyond this average condition the artery can pass in one direction or the other by either a relaxation or increased contraction of the muscular coat. During the functional activity of any organ or tissue there is need for an increase in the amount of blood beyond that supplied during inactivity or rest. This is accomplished by a relaxation of the muscle-fibers, an increase in diameter, and an increase in the outflow of blood. With the cessation of

FIG. 135.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF PART OF THE WALL OF THE POSTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY (MAN).—(Schäfer.) *a.* Endothelium lining the vessel, appearing thicker than natural from the contraction of the outer coats. *b.* The elastic layer of the intima. *c.* Middle coat composed of muscle-fibers and elastic tissue. *d.* Outer coat consisting chiefly of white fibrous tissue.—(From Yeo's "Physiology.")

activity the muscle-fibers contract, the diameter diminishes, and the outflow of blood is reduced in amount. An increased contraction of the muscle-fibers beyond the average diminishes the outflow of blood, and if sufficiently great may give rise to anemia and pallor. The contractile elements at the periphery of the arterial system, in the so-

called *arteriole* region, regulate the supply of blood to the tissues in accordance with their functional needs.

Structure of the Capillaries.—The capillaries are small vessels that connect the arteries with the veins. Though different in structure from a small artery or vein, there is no sharp boundary between them, as their structures pass imperceptibly one into the other. A true capillary, however, is of uniform size in any given tissue and does not undergo any noticeable decrease in size from repeated branchings. The diameter varies in different tissues from 0.0045 mm. to 0.0075 mm., just sufficiently large to permit the easy passage of a single red corpuscle. The length varies from 0.5 mm. to 1 mm. The wall of the capillary (Fig. 136) is composed of a single layer of nucleated endothelial cells with serrated edges united by a cement material. Though extremely short, the capillaries divide and subdivide a number of times, forming meshes or networks, the closeness and general arrangements of which vary in different localities.

The capillaries serve as a medium for the exchange of material between the blood and tissues. It is in this region of the vascular apparatus that the blood fulfils its more important functions. It is here that the nutritive material passes through the walls of the capillaries into the tissue spaces and so into direct contact with the tissue-cells; that the waste products, the outcome of tissue metabolism, partly pass through the walls of the capillaries into the blood. The capillaries fulfil their functions by reason of the fact that they have not only small diameters and thin walls, but because they pervade and penetrate the tissues into their inmost recesses.

FIG. 136.—CAPILLARIES. THE OUTLINES OF THE NUCLEATED ENDOTHELIAL CELLS WITH THE CEMENT BLACKENED BY THE ACTION OF SILVER NITRATE.—(Landois and Stirling.)

Structure of the Veins.—The veins serve to collect the blood from the capillary areas and return it to the right side of the heart. As they emerge from the capillary areas the veins, which in these regions are termed *venules*, are quite small. By their convergence and union the veins gradually increase in size in passing from the periphery toward the heart. Their walls at the same time correspondingly increase in thickness. The veins from the lower extremities, the trunk, and abdominal organs finally terminate in the inferior vena cava. The veins from the head and upper extremities terminate in the superior vena cava. Both *venæ cavæ* empty into the right auricle.

FIG. 137.—VALVES OF A VEIN. v. Semilunar valve. i. Free edge of the valve.—(Davidson.)

A typical vein consists of the same three coats as the artery: viz., the *tunica intima*, the *tunica media*, and the *tunica adventitia*. The *media*, however, does not possess as much of either the elastic or muscle tissues as the artery, but a larger amount of the fibrous tissue. Hence they readily collapse when empty. In virtue of their structure the veins also possess both elasticity and contractility, though in a far less degree than the arteries.

These properties come into play and are of value in furthering the movement of the blood toward the heart, especially after a temporary obstruction.

Veins are distinguished by the presence of valves throughout their course. These are arranged in pairs and formed by a reduplication of the internal coat, strengthened by fibrous tissue. They are always directed toward the heart and in close relation to the walls of the veins, so long as the blood is flowing forward (Fig. 137). An obstruction to the flow causes the valves to turn backward until they meet in the middle line, when they act as a barrier to regurgitation. Under these circumstances the elastic tissue permits the veins to distend and accommodate the blood. With the removal of the obstruction the recoil of the elastic tissue, and perhaps the contraction of the muscle-tissue, forces the blood quickly onward.

The Stream-bed.—The stream-bed, the path along which the blood flows, varies widely in its total sectional area in different parts of its course, being greatest in the capillaries, least in the aorta and

FIG. 138.—SCHEME OF THE CIRCULATORY APPARATUS.

venæ cavæ. In passing from the base of the aorta toward the capillaries the sectional area of individual arteries, in consequence of repeated branching, diminishes, though their total sectional area increases and in direct proportion to their distance from the heart. In the capillary system the sectional area of an individual capillary attains its minimal value, though the total sectional area attains its maximal value. Comparing one with the other, it has been estimated that the total sectional area of the aortic bed is to the total sectional area of the capillary bed as 1 is to 600 or 800. In passing from the capillary into the venous system the sectional area of individual veins increases, though the total sectional area decreases and in direct proportion to their distance from the capillaries.

The stream-bed in the aorta is relatively narrow, but widens gradually as it approaches the capillaries, where it attains its maximum width; it again narrows gradually as it passes into the veins, until in the *venæ cavæ* it becomes almost as narrow as in the aorta. As the combined sectional areas of the *venæ cavæ* are greater than the sec-

tional area of the aorta, the stream-bed of the former never becomes as narrow as that of the latter. These facts will become apparent if the vascular apparatus is conceived of as a system of symmetrically branching vessels and all vessels of the same diameter symmetrically disposed one to the other (Fig. 138). The gradual increase in the width of the stream-bed which results from this repeated branching, as well as its relative width in the arteries, capillaries, and veins, is graphically shown in Fig. 139.

The Movement of the Blood.—The immediate cause of the movement of the blood from the beginning of the aorta through the arteries, the capillaries, and the veins to the right side of the heart, is

FIG. 139.—DIAGRAM INTENDED TO GIVE AN IDEA OF THE AGGREGATE SECTIONAL AREA OF THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF THE VASCULAR SYSTEM. A. Aorta. C. Capillaries. V. Veins. The transverse measurement of the shaded part may be taken as the width of the various kinds of vessels, supposing them fused together. —(Yeo.)

a difference of pressure between these two points. The fact that the blood flows from the aorta to the venæ cavæ indicates that there is a higher pressure in the former than in the latter. The same holds true for the pulmonary artery and veins. So long as this is the case, the blood must flow from the point of high to the point of low pressure.

The Blood-pressure.—To this pressure the term blood-pressure is given, and may be defined as the pressure exerted radially or laterally by the moving blood-stream against the sides of the vessels. That there is such a pressure within the arteries, capillaries, and veins, different in amount in each of these three divisions of the vascular apparatus, is evident from the results which follow division of an artery

or a vein of corresponding size. When an artery is divided, the blood spurts from the opening for a considerable distance and with a certain velocity. When a vein is divided, the blood as a rule merely wells out of the opening with but slight momentum. These results indicate that the blood in the arteries stands under a pressure considerably higher than that of the atmosphere, and that in the veins it stands under a pressure perhaps but slightly above that of the atmosphere. Especially true is this of the larger veins.

The same facts may be demonstrated in another and more striking way. A dog or cat is anesthetized and securely fastened in an appropriate holder. The carotid artery on the right side and the jugular vein on the left side are freely exposed and clamped. Into the artery there is inserted on the distal side of the clamp and in the direction of the heart a cannula to which is connected a tall glass tube, 200 cm. high and of about 4 mm. internal diameter. Into the vein there is passed on the proximal side of the clamp and in the direction of the capillaries a second cannula, to which is connected a similar tube, though of less height. If the two clamps are removed at the same time, the blood will mount in both tubes simultaneously. In the arterial tube the blood will ascend by leaps corresponding to the heart-beats until a certain height is reached, when the column becomes stationary, being kept in equilibrium by the blood-pressure within the vessel and the atmospheric pressure without. Though stationary in a general sense, the blood-column oscillates, rising and falling with each contraction and relaxation of the heart. Not infrequently larger excursions of the column are seen which correspond in a general way to the respiratory movement. This experiment was originally performed on the horse, by the Rev. Stephen Hales (1732).

In the venous tube the blood also rises to a certain height, after which it remains quite stationary, as the effect of the cardiac contraction is not propagated under normal conditions beyond the arterial system. The height to which it rises is but slight as compared with that in the arterial tube. The pressure in both vessels is thus recorded in millimeters of blood. The absolute pressure on any given unit of vessel surface—*e. g.*, 1 square mm.—is obtained by multiplying the height of the column, expressed in millimeters, by the unit of surface, and then determining the weight of this mass of blood. Thus if the height of the column of blood in the carotid artery tube is 1800 mm., then the pressure on 1 sq. mm. is 1800 mm of blood. The weight of 1800 c.mm. of blood is equal to 0.338 grams.

For accurate and long-continued observation the blood-pressure, especially in the arteries, is more conveniently studied by means of a U-shaped tube (a manometer) partially filled with mercury. One limb of the manometer is connected by means of a tube and a cannula with an artery. For the purpose of retarding coagulation of the blood

and for preventing the escape of a large volume of blood from the vessels, the system is filled with a solution of carbonate of soda of sp. gr. 1060 and under a pressure approximately equal to that in the vessel of the animal as determined in previous experiments. When communication is established between the vessel and the cannula, the

FIG. 140.—DIAGRAM TO SHOW THE RELATION OF THE MERCURIAL MANOMETER TO THE ARTERY, ON ONE HAND, AND TO THE RECORDING CYLINDER, ON THE OTHER HAND, WHEN ARRANGED FOR RECORDING BLOOD-PRESSURE.

mercurial column adjusts itself to the pressure in the artery. It at once begins to exhibit the same cardiac and respiratory oscillations and undulations as did the column of blood in the previous experiment.

The height of the mercurial column kept in equilibrium by the pressure of the blood within and the pressure of air without the vessel

FIG. 141.—BLOOD-PRESSURE TRACING.

is that between the lower level of the mercury in the proximal and the higher level in the distal limb of the manometer, both of which can be read off on a scale placed between the two limbs.

The height of the mercury as well as its oscillations in the distal limb may be recorded by placing on the top of the mercury a light

float, the upper end of which carries a writing point. When the latter is placed in contact with the moving blackened surface of a recording cylinder or kymograph, the height and the oscillations are recorded in the form of a tracing similar to that shown in Figs. 140 and 141, in which the larger curves represent the respiratory, the smaller curves the cardiac oscillations. The height of the mercurial column kept in equilibrium at any particular moment is determined by measuring the distance between a base-line or abscissa, which represents the position of the mercury at atmospheric pressure, and any given point on the trace above, and multiplying it by 2, for the reason that the mercury sinks in the proximal limb as high as it rises in the distal limb of the manometer.

The blood-pressure as revealed by the tracing may be resolved into two components: viz., (1) the pressure in the arteries during the period of the cardiac diastole, which is termed the arterial pressure; and (2) that additional pressure occurring at the time of the cardiac systole, which is termed the cardiac pressure. The arterial pressure is represented by the distance between the base-line and the points of the curve corresponding to the diastolic rest; the cardiac pressure, by the increase of distance between these points and the apices of the smaller oscillations. The relation of these two components varies in different animals and in the same animal at different times. If the arterial pressure is low, the cardiac increase may be considerable; if the former is high, the latter may be slight. The relation, however, of these components is not so accurately shown by the mercurial manometer, owing to the inertia of the mercury, as by one of the various forms of quickly responsive spring manometers used in determining the rapid variations of intra-cardiac pressure. These instruments show a much larger rise of pressure during the systole, often amounting to as much as one-third or one-fourth of the arterial pressure.

In a series of experiments it will be found that the arterial pressure, though rising and falling a certain number of millimeters, yet retains a fairly constant general average, the result of an adjustment between the number of heart-beats per minute and the amount of the resistance offered to the escape of blood into the capillaries and veins. In a tracing in which the respiratory undulations are absent, the arterial pressure, plus one-half of the cardiac increase, represents the *mean arterial pressure*. If the respiratory undulations are present, as is generally the case, the mean pressure may be represented by a line drawn horizontally across the tracing midway between the apex and trough of the undulation.

Estimates of the Blood-pressure.—By means of the kymographic methods previously mentioned the pressure in the larger arteries has been determined for all classes of animals. In the carotid

artery of the dog it ranges from 140 to 160 mm.; in the horse, from 160 to 170 mm.; in the rabbit, from 90 to 100 mm. In two observations made on human beings during amputation of the limb the pressure was found in the brachial artery of one patient to range from 110 to 120 mm., and in the anterior tibial of the other patient from 110 to 160 mm.

The Estimation of the Blood-pressure in Man.—The foregoing method of obtaining the blood-pressure is not of general application to human beings for obvious reasons, hence special instruments have been devised by means of which the pressure may be determined at least approximately without any surgical procedure. Such instruments are termed *sphygmomanometers*. One of the best is that of Mosso,

represented in Fig. 142. It consists essentially of rubber capsules, contained within metallic tubes and into which two fingers of each hand are inserted. This system is connected, on the one hand, with a pressure apparatus, and, on the other, with a manometer provided with a scale. A float and writing-pen record the movements of the

FIG. 142.—THE SPHYGMOMANOMETER OF MOSSO.

mercurial column on a moving blackened surface. In using this apparatus the pressure is raised to the point at which the mercurial column exhibits the greatest oscillations.

This sphygmomanometer, as well as the interpretation of the results obtained with it, are based on the theory that the greatest oscillations of the arterial walls, and hence the greatest oscillations of the mercurial column, take place when the external pressure is just equal to the *mean* arterial pressure, the latter being the mean between the maximum pressure during the systole and the minimum pressure during the diastole of the heart. It is only necessary, therefore, to take the mean of the readings corresponding to the excursions of the mercurial column and determine from them the mean arterial pressure.

It has been experimentally demonstrated, however, by Howell and Brush that this interpretation is not correct, but that the greatest oscillation takes place when the external pressure just equals the pressure in the artery at the end of the cardiac diastole. These experimenters found when the carotid artery of one side was connected with a minimum valve and the carotid artery of the opposite side was surrounded by a plethysmograph in connection with a manometer, that the diastolic pressure indicated by the valve just equaled the lowest point of the greatest oscillation indicated by the manometer

FIG. 143.—STANTON'S SPHYGMOMANOMETER.

Hence it is to be inferred that the greatest oscillations record the diastolic pressure.

An excellent sphygmomanometer, especially adapted for clinical use, is that devised by Stanton (Fig. 143 *).

In this apparatus the systolic pressure is determined by noting the point at which the pulse reappears after obliteration, while the diastolic pressure is estimated by recording the point at which the

* The following description of this apparatus is abstracted from the Univ. of Pa. Medical Bulletin, Feb., 1903.

greatest oscillations occur in the mercury column of the manometer. The pressure is applied to the arm by the rubber armlet H, which is $3\frac{1}{4}$ inches wide. This is the widest armlet that can be adjusted to the average-sized arm and presents distinct advantages over the narrow armlet hitherto employed. This armlet is prevented from expanding outward by a cuff, F, of double thick canvas with inserted strips of tin, which is held in place by two straps which completely encircle the cuff. On the rigidity of this depends to a large extent the transmission of pulsation. The rubber armlet is connected by glass with a stiff-walled rubber tube, G, which in turn connects with the manometer. The manometer is perhaps the most important part of the apparatus. It is constructed entirely of metal except for the glass tube containing the mercury column. The chamber c communicates by means of a metal tube with the glass column D, which is connected by a screw-thread at 3, the caliber of c being approximately 100 times that of D. The cap of the chamber, which screws on, is provided with a metal T which is connected at 2 with the rubber armlet and at 1 with the bulb, used as an air-pump. At A is a stop-cock shutting the rubber bulb completely from the rest of the apparatus, while at B is a screw-valve which allows the air to escape from the closed system. When desired, the manometer can be made portable (without removing the mercury) by screwing the caps 1 and 2 into either end of the T at 1 and 2. The manometer is then tilted away from the glass column D until all the mercury has run into the chamber, the glass is then unscrewed and cap 3 screwed in. Before removing cap 3 the manometer must always be tilted, else the mercury will be lost.

The rubber bulb is similar to those found on atomizers.

In using this apparatus the pressure is raised by the air-bulb forcing air into the closed system—distending the rubber armlet and with the same degree of force displacing the mercury in c, driving it up the glass column D. When the pulse is no longer felt, the bulb still being compressed, the arm of valve A is turned until it is at right angles with the thumb and finger. The valve B is now slowly unscrewed until the mercury column begins to fall. With the eye on the scale the point at which the pulse reappears is mentally noted as the systolic pressure. Often considerably before the reappearance of the pulse to palpation, a pulsation is seen in the mercury column. As the column slowly falls this increases up to its greatest oscillation and then diminishes. The lowest point of the greatest pulsation is noted as the diastolic pressure.

From experimental data and from theoretic reasoning it is certain that the pressure in the carotid and femoral arteries is less than in the aorta and greater than in the small peripheral arteries. In other words, there is a fall of pressure from the beginning of the aorta to

the arteriole region. The fall in pressure, however, is not great in the larger vessels of the arterial system. It is only in the smallest arteries, before their passage into the capillaries, that an abrupt fall in pressure takes place.

The Capillary Pressure.—The small size of the capillaries precludes an investigation of their pressure by manometric methods. It may be stated, however, to be approximately equal to the pressure required to obliterate their lumen and to whiten the skin. The apparatus of v. Kries is based on this theory. A small glass plate, from 2.5 to 5 sq. mm., is fastened to the under surface of a support of suitable size carrying a small scale pan. The glass plate is placed on the skin near the root of a finger-nail and the scale pan gradually weighted until the vessels are obliterated, as shown by the blanching of the skin. From results obtained with this apparatus v. Kries estimated the pressure in the capillaries of the hand at 37 mm. Hg, and in the ear at 20 mm.

The Venous Pressure.—In passing from the capillaries to the heart the pressure continues to fall. The increasing size of the veins permits again of manometric observations in different regions. In the crural vein the pressure has been found to be equal to 14 mm. Hg, and in the brachial vein 9 mm. In the jugular and subclavian and other vessels near the heart it is zero or even *negative*; that is, less than atmospheric pressure to the extent of from 1 to 10 mm. mercury.

The amount and relation of the pressures in the three divisions of the systemic vascular apparatus are approximately shown in Fig. 144.

Causes of the Blood-pressure.—In correspondence with the laws of the flow of fluids through both rigid and elastic tubes, the flow of blood through the blood-vessels under the driving-power of the heart encounters friction. This is to be sought for not between the blood and the inner surface of the vessel, but rather in the cohesion of the particles of blood. This it is which offers resistance to the onward movement of the blood and which must be overcome if the circulation is to be maintained. Close to the inner surface of the vessel there is a layer of blood which is motionless, known as the still layer, caused by an adhesion between the blood and the vessel. Between this layer and the axis of the stream there is an infinite number of layers. The cohesion between these layers gradually diminishes in passing from the periphery to the center of the stream. The larger the stream, the less is the cohesion, and the reverse. In the large arteries the still layer is small in amount as compared with the total volume of blood passing through them; hence the axial cohesion is readily overcome and the friction is but slight. In the smallest arteries and capillaries the ratio changes and the friction rapidly increases and to a considerable extent. In the veins the ratio again

changes, approximating that in the arteries. As the veins pass from the periphery toward the heart and their individual sectional areas increase there is again a diminution of the friction.

As a consequence of the friction throughout the entire vascular apparatus the blood experiences a resistance to its onward movement which, working backward, causes the blood to exert a lateral or radial pressure against the walls of the vessels. The high pressure in the aorta is the result of the total resistance of the vascular system, and the pressure at any point of the system represents the resistance yet to be overcome. The larger part of the pressure in the arterial system, however, is due to the resistance offered by the

FIG. 144.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATIVE HEIGHT OF THE BLOOD-PRESSURE IN THE DIFFERENT REGIONS OF THE VESSELS. H. Heart. A. Arteries. C. Capillaries. V. Large veins. 0, 0, being the zero line (=atmospheric pressure), the pressure is indicated by the height of the curve. The numbers on the left give the pressure (approximately) in millimeters of mercury. *h*. Pressure in heart. *a*. Arteriole region showing sudden fall of pressure. *c*. The fall of pressure in the capillaries. *v*. The negative pressure in the large veins.—(Yeo.)

smallest arteries and capillaries, and when peripheral resistance is alluded to as a factor in the production or in the variation of blood-pressure, the resistance of these vessels is mainly understood.

The primary factor in the production of the pressure is the pumping action of the heart. Should there be any cessation in its activity, the elastic walls of the arteries would recoil and force the blood into the veins. There would be coincidentally a fall to a pressure equal to that of the atmosphere. Even under normal circumstances this condition is approximated during the diastole. The recoil of the arterial wall by which the forward movement of the blood is main-

tained is attended by a fall in pressure. But before this reaches any considerable extent, the heart again contracts and forces its contained volume of blood into the arteries.

That this may be accomplished it is essential that the cardiac energy be sufficient not only to drive a portion of the blood through the capillaries into the veins, but to oppose the recoiling arteries, and to distend them to their previous extent, so that the incoming volume of blood may be accommodated. This at once reestablishes the pressure at its former level. The alternate rise and fall of the pressure is represented by the oscillations of the mercurial column or by the small elevations and depressions on the kymographic tracing.

During the contraction of the heart the kinetic energy is transformed into potential energy, represented by the tense distended walls of the arteries. With the relaxation of the heart and the closure of the semilunar valves the potential energy of the arteries is again transformed into kinetic energy, represented by the moving blood. The artery thus continues the work of the heart during its period of inactivity. The rapidity with which the cardiac contractions succeed each other prevents the pressure from sinking below a certain average level.

The uniform level of the arterial pressure depends on the fact that though more blood enters the arteries during the systole than escapes into the capillaries and veins, as shown by the rise of the mercurial column in the manometer, this is compensated for by a continued escape during the diastole as shown by the fall of the mercurial column. So long as the inflow of blood is equaled by the outflow, there is a balancing of opposing forces and the pressure is maintained at a uniform level.

Changes in Blood-pressure.—It is evident from the preceding statements that the arterial blood-pressure as a whole may be increased by:

1. An *increase* in the rate or force of the heart's contraction.
2. An *increase* in the peripheral resistance.
3. An *increase* in the general volume of the arterial blood.

And that it may be decreased by:

1. A *decrease* in the rate and force of the heart's contraction.
2. A *decrease* in the peripheral resistance.
3. A *decrease* in the general volume of blood.

If when the arterial pressure is in a condition of equilibrium the heart ejects into the arteries in a given period of time an increased quantity of blood as a result of an increased rate of contraction, there will be an accumulation of blood temporarily in the arteries (the peripheral resistance remaining the same), for the pressure is only sufficient to force into the capillaries a given volume.

The same result could be brought about by an increase in the

force or power of the contraction, the frequency remaining the same. An increase in the volume of blood ejected at each contraction will necessarily lead to an accumulation. With the accumulation there goes an increased distention of the artery and a corresponding increase of pressure. In a short time, therefore, the increased pressure will force out of the arteries at a higher rate of speed this excess of blood until the outflow again equals the inflow. This restores the equilibrium but establishes the mean pressure at a higher level.

If the peripheral resistance is increased by a contraction of the muscular walls of the arterioles, the frequency and force of the heart remaining the same, there will also be an accumulation of blood in the arteries until their increased distention and consequent rise of pressure become sufficient to increase the rapidity of outflow until it counterbalances the inflow.

The converse of these statements also holds true. If when the general arterial pressure is in a condition of equilibrium the heart ejects into the arteries in a given period of time a decreased quantity of blood, either as a result of a decrease in the rate or power or both,

FIG. 145.—FALL OF BLOOD-PRESSURE FROM ARREST OF THE HEART'S ACTION DUE TO STIMULATION OF THE VAGUS BEGUN AT *a* AND STOPPED AT *b*.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

FIG. 146.—FALL OF BLOOD-PRESSURE FROM DIMINUTION OF THE PERIPHERAL RESISTANCE, THE RESULT OF A DILATATION OF THE ARTERIOLES, BROUGHT ABOUT BY STIMULATION OF THE CENTRAL END OF THE DEPRESSOR NERVE. Stimulation begun at *a*, and stopped at *b*.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

there will soon be a diminution of the arterial distention and a consequent fall in pressure (Fig. 146). This continues until the outflow no longer exceeds the inflow. Equilibrium will again be established, but the pressure will be at a lower level.

If the peripheral resistance is diminished by a dilatation of the

arterioles, the heart's contractions remaining the same, the existing pressure soon diminishes. The outflow of blood at once lessens in rapidity and so continues until it counterbalances the inflow. The equilibrium is again restored, but the pressure is at a lower level.

Variations in Capillary Pressure.—The pressure in the capillaries, though for the most part possessing a permanent value, is subject to variations in accordance with variations in the pressure in either the arterial or venous systems or both. The marked difference in the pressure in the large arteries and the capillaries is partly due to the resistance offered by the narrow arterioles. If the latter dilate in any given area, the capillary pressure increases because of the propagation into them of the arterial pressure. The reverse condition would decrease the pressure. On the other hand, any interference with the outflow from any given area, due to venous compression, would likewise increase the pressure; any factor which would, on the contrary, favor the outflow would decrease the pressure. Independent of any change in the arteriole resistance, it is evident that a rise in arterial pressure alone would increase the capillary pressure. If both arterial and venous pressures rise, the capillary pressure increases; if both fall, it decreases.

Variations in Venous Pressure.—Independent of any change in the venous pressure in a given area from local or temporarily acting causes,—*e. g.*, aspiration of the thorax or heart, muscle contractions, change of position, etc.,—the general venous pressure will be *increased* by a decrease in the value of those factors which produce the difference of pressure between the arteries and veins. An increase in the value of these factors would necessarily *decrease* the pressure.

THE VELOCITY OF THE BLOOD.

From the number of heart-beats per minute, 72, and the amount of blood discharged from the left ventricle at each beat, 180 c.c., it is evident that the blood must be flowing through the vascular apparatus with a certain velocity, for during the minute the entire volume of blood, 5769 grams, must have passed twice through the heart. Direct observation of the escape of blood from the central end of a divided artery, and from the peripheral end of a divided vein, as well as of the flow through the capillaries as seen with the microscope, shows that the velocity of the flow varies in different parts of the vascular apparatus. In the arteries, moreover, the flow is not quite uniform, but experiences alternate acceleration and retardation with each heart-beat. In the capillaries and veins the flow is continuous and uniform, as the conditions of the arterial walls are such as to completely overcome the intermittency.

If the systemic vascular apparatus be conceived of as a system of tubes which have symmetrically divided and subdivided, and have again united and reunited in a corresponding manner, it is clear that the total sectional area will steadily increase from the beginning to the middle of the system, and then as steadily decrease from the middle to the end of the system. In such a system the same volume of blood must pass through any given section in a unit of time if the balance of the circulation is to be maintained. As the velocity of a fluid is inversely as the sectional area of the tubes through which it flows, it follows that the initial mean velocity of the blood in the aorta will steadily decrease as it flows into the steadily enlarging blood-path until it reaches a minimal value in the middle of the capillary system; and that it will again steadily increase as it flows into the narrowing blood-path until it reaches the heart. The initial mean velocity of the blood in the aorta will not be attained in the *venæ cavæ*, for the reason that the total sectional area of the latter is somewhat greater than that of the former. The same facts hold true for the pulmonic vascular system.

The Velocity in the Aorta.—From the well-known fact that the velocity with which a fluid is flowing through a tube may be determined by dividing its sectional area into the quantity discharged in a unit of time, attempts have been made to determine the mean velocity of the blood at the beginning of the aorta. If it be assumed that the volume discharged at each contraction is 180 c.c., as stated by Vierordt, and the number of heart-beats per minute at 72, the total volume discharged per minute would be 12,960 c.c., or 215 c.c. per second. The sectional area of the aorta is 6.15 sq. cm. On the principle above stated, these two factors would show a velocity of 350 mm. per second. An objection to this estimate is that the amount of blood discharged—*i. e.*, the contraction volume—is much larger than recent investigations warrant. Different observers have estimated that in man the contraction volume is considerably less, probably not more than 80 c.c. If this is true, the mean velocity in the aorta would be less than in the carotids.

The Velocity in the Arteries.—The mean velocity of the blood in the larger and more superficially lying arteries has been determined by Volkmann with the hemodromometer, by Ludwig and Dogiel with the stromuhr, and by other investigators with different forms of apparatus.

Since neither the blood nor any particle placed in it can be seen through the walls of the artery, it occurred to Volkmann to intercalate along the course of a vessel a U-shaped glass tube about one meter in length with a lumen the diameter of that of the selected vessel, into and through which the blood could be made to flow. The mechanic construction of the apparatus is such (Fig. 147) that

the blood can be made to flow directly into the distal portion of the artery across the base or indirectly by way of the glass tube. Previous to the intercalation of the tube it is filled with serum or normal saline solution. With the turning of the cocks at B the blood enters the glass tube and drives the serum ahead of it into the arterial system. From the difference in time between the moment the blood enters and the moment it leaves the tube and from the length of the tube the velocity is determined.

FIG. 147.—VOLKMANN'S HEMODROMOMETER.
C, C. Arterial cannulas.

FIG. 148.—LUDWIG AND DOGIEL'S RHEOMETER. X, Y. Axis of rotation. A, B. Glass bulbs. *h*, *k*. Cannulas inserted in the divided artery. *e*, *e*₁, rotates on *g*, *f*. *c*, *d*. Tubes.

The stromuhr or rheometer of Ludwig (Fig. 148) is constructed on the same principle, but instead of the glass tube having the same

diameter it is considerably enlarged on its two sides. The bulbs are fastened to a metallic disk which rotates around an axis in the metallic base which carries the tubes to be inserted into the arteries. With this device it is possible to place either bulb in connection with the proximal end of the artery. Previous to the experiment the proximal bulb is filled with oil, the distal bulb with serum or normal saline. On removing the clips on the artery the blood flows into the proximal bulb and drives the oil into the distal bulb. As soon as the former is filled with blood the bulbs are reversed and the same relative conditions are attained. This is repeated a number of times. Knowing the capacity of the bulbs, and the number of times they are filled in a given period, the total quantity of blood discharged is obtained. This divided by the sectional area of the artery gives the velocity. The following values have thus been obtained: For the carotid of the dog, 205 to 357 mm. per second; for the carotid of the horse, 306 mm.; for the metatarsal artery of the horse, 56 mm. (Volkmann). For the carotid of rabbits, 94 to 226 mm.; for the carotid of the dog, 349 to 733 mm. (Dogiel).

The *variations* in the velocity of the blood in the arteries during the different phases of the cardiac cycle have been determined by Chauveau and Lortet with the hemodromograph (Fig. 149). This consists of a

FIG. 149.—THE HEMODROMOGRAPH OF CHAUCVEAU AND LORTET. A, B. Tube inserted in artery. C. Lateral tube connected with a manometer. *b*. Index moving in a caoutchouc membrane, *a*. G. Handle.

metallic tube carrying a graduated disk. At one point the tube is perforated but covered with a rubber band through which passes an index. When the tube is inserted into the divided ends of an artery, the current of blood strikes the short arm of the index and gives to the outer long arm a movement in the opposite direction. The extent of the excursion indicates the velocity. The apparatus is first graduated with currents of water of known velocity. With this instrument Chauveau found that in the horse the velocity during the systole was 520 mm. per second, at the beginning of the diastole 220 mm. per second, and during the pause 150 mm. per second.

The Velocity in the Capillaries.—The rate of flow in the capillary vessels can not be experimentally determined. It has been estimated by Vierordt at 0.5 mm. per second in his own retinal capillaries; by Weber at 0.8 mm. In frogs the velocity can be fairly well determined by observing the time required for a corpuscle to pass over one or more divisions of an ocular micrometer. Weber calculated in this way that the velocity is 0.5 mm. per second.

As the velocity varies inversely with the sectional area, it becomes possible to approximately determine the relation of the sectional area of the capillary system to that of the aorta from the above-mentioned velocities. If it be assumed that the velocity in the aorta averages 300 mm. and in the capillaries 0.5 mm. per second, then the sectional area of the capillaries is to that of the aorta as 600 to 1.

The Velocity in the Veins.—In the venous system the velocity increases in proportion as the sectional area decreases. In the jugu-

FIG. 150.———, Blood-pressure. ----, Velocity. —○—○—○, Sectional area.

lar vein Volkmann found the velocity 225 mm. per second, which was about one-half that in the aorta of the same animal. The reason for the slow rate of movement in the jugular vein is to be found in the fact that the sectional area of the combined *venæ cavæ* is about twice that of the aorta; hence the relation of the sectional area of the capillary system to the sectional area of the *venæ cavæ* is about 300 to 1.

The blood-pressure, the velocity of the blood, the sectional area of the vascular apparatus, and their relation one to the other are shown in Fig. 150.

THE PULSE.

It has been stated (see Blood-pressure) that with each contraction of the left ventricle a definite volume of blood is discharged into the aorta which at the moment is already full of blood; that this incoming

volume is accommodated by the forward movement of the blood as a whole and by the sudden distention of that portion of the aorta nearest the heart, both effects being due to the energy of the heart's contraction. The distention of this first segment of the aorta is almost immediately followed by a recoil of its elastic walls which, through pressure on the blood, causes the next-lying segment to expand; this in turn recoils and causes a third segment to expand, and so on until the expansion has traveled not only over the aorta, but over all its branches as well, as far as their final terminations.

This expansion movement which thus passes from the beginning to the end of the arterial system in the form of a wave is known as the *pulse-wave* or *pulse*. Coincident with the expansion and recoil of the arterial system there is a slight alternate increase and decrease of the general blood-pressure, as shown by the small curves on a blood-pressure tracing.

The pulse-wave which thus spreads itself over the entire arterial system with each systole of the heart can be perceived in certain localities by the eye, by the sense of touch, and investigated with various forms of apparatus or instrumental means. The pulse-wave, or at least the elevation of the soft tissues overlying it, can be seen in the radial artery, where it passes across the wrist-joint, in the carotid artery, in the temporal artery, in the arteries of the retina under certain conditions, with the ophthalmoscope. If the ends of the fingers are firmly placed over the radial artery, not only the increase and decrease of pressure, but also many of the peculiarities of pulse-wave, may be perceived. Without much difficulty it may be perceived that the expansion takes place quickly, the recoil relatively slowly; that the waves succeed one another with a certain frequency, corresponding to the heart-beat; that the pulsations are rhythmic in character, etc. Inasmuch as the individuality of the pulse-wave varies at different periods of life and under different physiologic and pathologic conditions, various terms more or less expressive have been suggested for its varying peculiarities. Thus the pulse is said to be *frequent* or *infrequent* according as it exceeds or falls short of a certain average number—72 per minute; *quick* or *slow*, according to the suddenness with which the expansion takes place or strikes the fingers; *hard* or *soft*, *tense* or *easily compressible*, according to the resistance which the vessel offers to its compression by the fingers; *large*, *full*, or *small*, according to the volume of blood ejected into the aorta, or, in other words, the degree of fullness of the arterial system.

Frequency of the Pulse.—As the pulse or the arterial expansion is the direct result of the heart's action, its frequency must, under physiologic conditions, coincide with that of the heart. All conditions which modify the rate of the heart will modify at the same time the rate of the pulse. (See page 275).

The Velocity of Propagation of the Pulse-wave.—The propagation of the pulse-wave from its origin at the root of the aorta to any given point of the arterial system occupies an appreciable period of time. The difference in time between the systole and the appearance of the pulse-wave at the dorsal artery of the foot can be appreciated by the sense of touch. The absolute time occupied by the wave in reaching this point was determined by Czermak to be 0.193 second. The rate at which the wave is propagated over the vessels of the lower extremity has been estimated by the same observer at 11.16 meters per second, and for the upper extremities at but 6.7 meters per second. Other experimenters have obtained for the lower extremities somewhat different results, varying from 6.5 to 11 meters per second. Weber's original estimate was from 7.92 to 9.24 meters per second. The slower rate of movement in the vessels of the upper extremities has been attributed to a greater distensibility of their walls, a condition unfavorable to rapid propagation. For this reason a low arterial tension will occasion a delay in the appearance of the pulse-wave in any portion of the body; a high arterial tension will of course have the opposite effect. The difference in the speed of the pulse-wave and the blood-current shows that they are not identical and must not be confounded with each other.

The Sphygmograph.—The alternate expansion and recoil of an artery caused by the temporary increase and decrease of pressure following each heart-beat can be graphically recorded on a traveling surface by means of a special apparatus, the *sphygmograph* or pulse-writer. The tracing obtained in the form of a curve is termed the pulse-curve or the *sphygmogram*. Different forms of this apparatus have been devised by Marey, Dudgeon, v. Frey, and many others. The instrument of v. Frey is shown in Fig. 151. This consists first of a metal framework by which the apparatus is fastened to the arm and support given to the lever, recording surface, etc. The essential part is the spring carrying a button which is placed over the artery, usually the radial, before it crosses the wrist-joint. A vertical rod transmits the movement of the spring to the recording lever; the movements of the latter are recorded on a small cylinder inclined slightly so that the upstroke may be vertical. A small electro-magnet serves to record the time. An average tracing taken from the radial artery is shown in Fig. 152. This, however, is not a tracing of the pulse-wave, but rather a record of the changes in pressure, their succession and time relations, which follow each beat of the heart. The artery usually selected for obtaining a sphygmogram is the radial. This artery lies quite superficially, covered only by connective tissue and skin and supported by the flat surface of the radial bone, conditions most favorable to technical investigation.

The sphygmogram or pulse-curve may be divided into two portions:

viz., a line of ascent from a to b, and a line of descent from b to d (Fig. 152). In normal tracings the former is almost vertical and caused by the sudden expansion of the artery immediately following the ventricular contraction; the latter is in general oblique, due to the recoil of the arterial walls, occupies a longer period of time, and is marked

FIG. 151.—VON FREY'S SPHYGMOGRAPH. G. S. Metal framework. P. Button attached to spring. F. Vertical rod. U. Clock-work which turns the recording cylinder. VI. Time marker.

by several elevations and depressions, both of which indicate that the restoration to equilibrium is neither immediate nor uncomplicated. One of these elevations is quite constant and known as the *dicrotic wave*, c; the depression or notch just preceding it is known as the *dicrotic notch*. Pre- and post-dicrotic waves are not infrequently present. The summit is generally sharp and pointed.

The vertical direction of the line of ascent is taken as an indication that the arterial walls expand readily, that the blood is discharged quickly, and that the ventricular action is not impeded. An oblique direction of the line of ascent is an indication that the reverse conditions obtain. The height varies inversely as the arterial pressure, other things being equal; being high with a low pressure, and low with a high pressure.

The dicrotic wave shows that a second expansion wave is developed which interrupts temporarily the recoil of the arterial walls.

FIG. 152.—THE PULSE CURVE OR SPHYGMOGRAM.

The origin of this second expansion has been the subject of much investigation, and at present it may be said that the question is not fully decided. It is asserted by some investigators that it is central in origin, beginning at the base of the aorta and passing to the periphery; by others, that it is peripheral in origin, beginning near the capillary region and reflected to the heart. The former view is the one more generally accepted. According to it, the expansion is the result of the sudden closure of the aortic valves, a backward surge of the blood-column against them. The sudden arrest of the blood and its accumulations again expands the aorta.

✓ The dicrotic notch is therefore taken as the moment at which the ventricular systole ceases and the aortic valves close. ✓ From this fact it is evident that immediately after the first expansion the pressure begins to fall, even though the ventricular systole continues, owing to the discharge of blood from the arterial into the capillary and

FIG. 153.—**MOSSO'S PLETHYSMOGRAPH.** G. Glass vessel for holding a limb. F. Flask for varying the water-pressure in G. T. Recording apparatus.—(Landois and Stirling.)

venous systems. The height of the dicrotic wave or the depth of the dicrotic notch is favored by low arterial tension and highly elastic arteries. Both features are diminished by the reverse conditions. The apex is sometimes rounded and even flat, indicative of a great diminution in arterial elasticity. The sphygmogram not infrequently varies considerably from the normal type in different pathologic conditions of the circulatory apparatus. A consideration of these variations does not fall within the scope of this work.

The Volume Pulse.—If an individual artery expands with each systole and recoils with each diastole of the heart, the same is true of all arteries, and as a result the volume of any organ or part of the body must undergo similar changes. To such alternate changes in volume the term *volume pulse* is given. The extent to which an organ will increase in volume will depend to some extent on its elasticity. The reason for the increase in volume is the resistance offered to the flow

of blood into and through the capillaries; the decrease in volume to the overcoming of the resistance through the arterial recoil.

The variations in volume may be recorded by enclosing the organ in a rigid glass or metal vessel, which at one point is in communication with a recording apparatus, *e. g.*, a tambour with a lever or mercurial manometer with float and pen. The space between the organ and vessel is filled with normal saline, air, or oil. Such an apparatus is known as a *plethysmograph*. A well-known form of plethysmograph is that of Mosso (Fig. 153). Many forms of this apparatus have been devised in accordance with the character of the organ—spleen, kidney, etc.—to be investigated, though the principle underlying them is essentially the same. In addition to changes in volume due to the heart's action, most organs undergo additional changes in volume from respiratory and vaso-motor causes.

THE CAPILLARY CIRCULATION.

In certain regions of the body of many animals it is possible, on account of the delicacy and transparency of the tissues, to observe not only the flow of blood through the smaller arteries, capillaries, and veins, but many of the phenomena connected with it, to which reference has already been made. The structures usually selected for the observation of these phenomena are the interdigital membranes, the tongue, the lung, the bladder, and the mesentery of the frog. Though any one of these structures will afford an admirable view of the blood-flow, the mesentery for many reasons is the most satisfactory. For a comparison of the phenomena observed in the cold-blooded animals with those in the warm-blooded animals the omentum of the guinea-pig may be employed. If the frog is the subject of experiment, it should be slightly curarized and the brain destroyed by pithing. The animal is then placed on a small board capable of adjustment to the stage of the microscope. The abdomen is then opened along the side and a loop of intestine withdrawn and placed around a cork ring which surrounds an opening in the side of the frog board. The loop of the intestine should be so placed that it will lie between the observer and the body of the frog. The mesentery thus exposed must be kept moist with normal saline solution.

When examined with low powers of the microscope, arteries, veins, and capillaries will be found occupying the field of vision. Their general arrangement, their size and connections, can be readily determined. After a few preliminary adjustments a region will be found in which the blood is flowing in opposite directions. The vessel apparently carrying blood *away* from the observer is an artery; the vessel apparently carrying blood *toward* the observer is a vein; the

smallest vessels are capillaries. The blood in the artery is of a brighter color than the blood in the vein; the blood in the capillaries is almost colorless. The arterial blood-stream not infrequently shows remittancy, an alternate acceleration and retardation, corresponding to each heart-beat; the capillary and venous streams are uniform and continuous. The relative velocities in the three sets of vessels are indicated by the movement of the red corpuscles. In the arteries they pass before the eye so rapidly that they can not be distinguished; in the capillaries they pass so slowly that both form

and structure may be determined; in the veins, though again moving rapidly, they can often be distinguished.

The relative positions of the red and white corpuscles in the blood-stream are also apparent; the former occupy the central, the latter the peripheral portion, at the same time adhering to the sides of the vessel. Between the axial portion of the stream occupied by the red corpuscles and the wall of the vessel there is a clear still layer of plasma, the result of an adhesion of the plasma to the wall. It is this feature which gives rise to the friction between successive layers of the blood-stream, the resistance to the blood-flow, and the development of blood-pressure. The relative breadth

FIG. 154.—THE VESSELS OF THE FROG'S WEB.—*a*. Trunk of vein, and (*b, b*) its tributaries passing across the capillary network. The dark spots are pigment cells.—(Yeo's "Physiology.")

of the still layer and amount of friction are greater in small than in large vessels.

The volume of blood passing into any given capillary area is determined by the degree of contraction of the arterioles. Thus on the application of warm saline solution, which relaxes the arterioles, there is a large increase in the inflow of blood; vessels previously invisible suddenly come into view as the blood with its corpuscles passes into them. On the application of cold water, which contracts the arterioles and diminishes the inflow, many of the smaller vessels entirely disappear from view. The alternate contraction and relaxation of the arterioles will therefore determine the quantity of blood flowing into and through the capillary system.

Functions of Capillary Vessels.—The structure of the capillary vessel is such as to permit the blood to come into intimate relation with the tissues; consisting of only a single layer of endothelial cells, a free exchange between blood and tissues at once takes place. The nutritive materials of the blood pass through the capillary wall into the tissue spaces; the waste products, the result of tissue metabolism, pass through the capillary wall and into the blood, and by it are carried to the eliminating organs. As a result of these exchanges the relative composition of the blood is changed. It now contains a smaller quantity of nutritive material and a larger quantity of waste materials; containing less oxygen, it changes in color from red to bluish-red.

Though the length of the capillary is not more than 0.5 mm. and the time occupied by the blood in passing through it not more than 0.8 second, yet the conditions are such that an exchange of materials sufficient for nutritive purposes takes place. It is for this reason that the rest of the circulatory apparatus exists. Collectively its different parts coöperate to give to the blood in the capillaries the volume, the velocity, and the pressure requisite for nutritive purposes.

Migration of the White Corpuscles.—A phenomenon frequently observed in the capillary vessels of the mesentery or of the bladder of the frog is the passage of the white corpuscles through the walls into the surrounding lymph-spaces. To this process the term *migration* or *diapedesis* is given. After the tissues have been exposed to the air for some time or subjected to an irritant, the vessels dilate and become distended with blood. In a short time the blood-stream slows, and finally comes to rest. The condition of stasis is then established. During the development of this condition the white corpuscles accumulate in large numbers along the inner surface of the vessels and soon begin to pass through the vessel-walls. This they do by the protrusion of a portion of their substance which is inserted into and through the vessel-wall. This once accomplished, the remainder of the cell in due time follows until it has entirely passed

FIG. 155.—SMALL VESSEL OF A FROG'S MESENTERY SHOWING DIAPEDESES. *w, w.* Vascular walls. *a, a.* Poiseuille's space. *r, r.* Red corpuscles. *l, l.* Colorless corpuscles adhering to the wall, and *c, c,* in various stages of extrusion. *f, f.* Extruded corpuscles.—(*Landois and Stirling.*)

out into the tissue-space. The opening in the cell-wall now closes. The successive steps in this process are shown in Fig. 155. As this migration occurs mainly after the circulation has ceased or when the tissues present the phenomena of approaching inflammation, it is difficult to state in how far it is strictly a physiologic process.

THE VENOUS CIRCULATION.

The blood, having passed through the capillary vessels, is gathered up by the veins and conveyed to the right side of the heart. As the veins converge and unite to form larger and larger trunks the sectional area gradually diminishes, and hence the velocity of the blood-flow increases, though it never attains the velocity, even in the venæ cavæ, that it had in the aorta, for the reason that the sectional area of the venæ cavæ is considerably larger than that of the aorta. The pressure also is very low in the larger veins because the friction still to be overcome is relatively very slight.

The capacity of the venous system is considerably greater than that of the arterial system, as there are usually two and even three veins accompanying each artery. This, taken in connection with its greater distensibility, makes of the venous system a reservoir in which blood can be stored. On this reservoir the arterial system can call for that amount of blood necessary for the maintenance of its normal volume and pressure, and into it any excess can be discharged. The relative amounts contained in the two systems are regulated by the nervous system. The movement of the blood through the veins is accomplished by the coöperation of several forces, reference to which will be made in a following paragraph.

THE PULMONIC VASCULAR APPARATUS.

The **pulmonic vascular apparatus** consists of a closed system of vessels extending from the right ventricle to the left auricle, and includes the pulmonary artery, capillaries, and pulmonary veins. In its anatomic structure and physiologic properties it closely resembles, if it is not identical with, the systemic apparatus.

The stream-bed widens from the beginning of the pulmonary artery to the middle of the capillary system; it again narrows from this point to the terminations of the pulmonary veins.

The movement of the blood from the beginning to the end of the system is due to a difference of pressure between these two points, the result of the friction between the blood and the vascular walls. From the difference in the extent of the pulmonic and systemic systems it is evident that, other things being equal, the friction is less, and therefore also the pressure is less in the former than in the latter.

This view is supported by the difference in the thickness of the walls of the right and left sides of the heart. The pressure in the pulmonary artery of the dog was shown by Bentner to be about one-third that in the aorta; by Bradford and Dean to be one-fifth. The velocity of the blood-stream in each of the three divisions of the system can not well be determined. The time occupied by a particle of blood in passing from the right to the left ventricle has been estimated at one-fourth the time required to pass from the left to the right ventricle. Assuming the latter to be thirty seconds, the former would be seven and one-half seconds.

The capillary vessels are spread out in a very elaborate manner just beneath the inner surface of the pulmonary air-cells, and form by their close relation to it, a mechanism for the excretion of carbon dioxid and the absorption of oxygen. The extent of the capillary surface is very great. It has been estimated at 200 square meters. The amount of blood flowing through this system hourly and exposed to the respiratory surface is about 800 liters. The reason for the existence of the pulmonary circulation is the renewal of the oxygen volume in the blood and the elimination of the carbon dioxid; for the accomplishment of both objects ample provision is here made. The flow of blood through the cardio-pulmonary vessels is subject to variation during both inspiration and expiration in consequence of their relation to the respiratory apparatus. The mechanism by which these variations are produced will be considered in the chapter devoted to Respiration.

FORCES CONCERNED IN THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD.

1. **The Contraction of the Heart.**—The primary forces which keep the blood flowing from the beginning of the aorta to the right side of the heart and from the beginning of the pulmonary artery to the left side are the contractions of the left and right ventricles respectively. This is evident from the fact that each ventricle at each contraction not only overcomes the pressure in the aorta and pulmonary artery, the sum of all resistances, but imparts a given velocity to the blood. Since the pressure continuously falls from the beginning to the end of each system, it follows that the blood must flow from the point of high to the point of low pressure. During the interval of the heart's activity the walls of the arteries, to which the heart's energy was largely transferred, now take up and continue the work of the heart, and by recoiling drive the blood forward and into the venous system. Though the heart's energy is probably sufficient to drive the blood into the opposite side of the heart, it is supplemented by other forces—*e. g.* :

2. **Muscle Contraction.**—As a result of the relation which the veins bear to the muscles in all parts of the body it is clear that with each contraction and relaxation of the muscles there will be exerted an intermittent pressure on the veins. With each contraction the blood on the proximal side will at once be driven forward with increased velocity, while that on the distal side will be retarded, will accumulate and distend the veins, owing to the closure of the valves; with the relaxation of the muscle the elastic and contractile tissues in the walls of the veins will come into play and force the blood forward.
3. **Thoracic Aspiration.**—The inspiratory movement aids the flow of blood through the venæ cavæ and their tributaries. With each inspiration the pressure within the thorax but outside the lungs undergoes a diminution more or less pronounced in accordance with the extent of the movement. As a result, the blood in the large veins, now subjected to a pressure greater than that in the thorax, flows more rapidly toward the heart. With each expiration the reverse obtains.
4. **Action of the Valves.**—It is quite probable that gravity opposes to some extent the flow of blood through the veins below the level of the heart. This opposition to the upward flow is largely prevented by the valves, for each retardation is immediately checked by their closure and support given to the column of blood. The influence of gravity is shown when the relation of the arm to the heart is changed. Thus, if the arm be allowed to hang passively by the side of the body, the veins, especially on the back of the hand, will become distended with blood. If now the arm be raised, the blood will flow rapidly toward the heart, as shown by the rapid emptying of the veins.

Work Done by the Heart.—The work which the left ventricle performs at each contraction when it discharges its contained volume of blood into the aorta is:

1. To overcome the total resistance of the systemic vascular apparatus expressed in terms of aortic pressure; and—
2. To impart velocity to the blood.

The pressure in the aorta is not absolutely determined, though for many reasons it may be assumed to be about 250 mm. Hg, or its equivalent, a column of blood 3.21 meters in height. As the heart discharges 188 grams, the work done may be calculated by multiplying the weight by the height: viz., $0.188 \times 3.2 = 0.6016$ kilogrammeter.

The velocity of the blood in the aorta has been approximately estimated at 0.5 meter per second. The work done in imparting this velocity to 188 grams is estimated by squaring the velocity and dividing by the accelerating force of gravity ($\frac{.52}{2 \times 9.81}$) and multiplying the

quotient by 0.188. The quotient of the first two values represents the distance a body would have to fall to acquire this velocity: viz., 0.0127 meter. The work done is therefore 0.188×0.0127 , or 0.0023 kilogrammeter.

The entire work of the left ventricle is the sum of these two amounts, or 0.604 kilogrammeter. Assuming that the heart beats 72 times per minute, the work done daily would be $0.604 \times 72 + 60 \times 24$, or 62.622 kilogrammeters. The right ventricle approximately performs about one-third of this amount of work in overcoming the resistance offered by the pulmonary system and in imparting velocity to its contained volume of blood. The work of the entire heart would therefore be for the twenty-four hours about 83.496 kilogrammeters.

THE NERVE MECHANISM OF THE VASCULAR APPARATUS.

The middle coat of the arteries, and especially of those in the peripheral region of the arterial system, consists of a well-defined layer of non-striated muscle-fibers arranged in a circular direction or at right angles to the long axis of the vessel. In the physiologic condition these fibers are in a state of continuous contraction, more or less pronounced, and give to the arteries a certain average caliber which permits a definite volume of blood to flow through them in a given unit of time.

The cause of this tonic contraction is not definitely known. It has been attributed to the action of local nerve-ganglia, to the pressure of blood from within, to the influence of organic substances in the blood, the products of gland activity: *e. g.*, adrenalin or epinephrin.

This tonic contraction of the vascular muscle is subject to increase or decrease in accordance with the action of various agents. Increased contraction will result in a decrease of the caliber and a reduction in the outflow of blood. Decrease of the contraction or relaxation will result in an increase both of the caliber and outflow of blood. The small arteries thus determine the volume of blood passing to any given area or organ in accordance with its functional activities.

The Vaso-motor Nerves.—The activities of the vascular muscle are regulated by the central nerve system through the intermediation of nerve-fibers, termed *vaso-motor nerves*. Of these there are two kinds, one which increases or augments the contraction, the *vaso-constrictors* or *vaso-augmentors*; another which decreases or inhibits the contraction, the *vaso-dilatators* or *vaso-inhibitors*.

The vaso-motor nerves of both classes, unlike the ordinary motor nerves, do not pass directly to the muscle-fiber, but indirectly by way of the ganglia of the sympathetic nervous system. In these ganglia

the vaso-motor nerves, which come from the central nervous system, terminate, breaking up into tufts, which arborize around the nerve-cells. From the cells new nerve-fibers arise which then pass without interruption to their final destination.

The nerve-fibers which emerge from the central nerve system are extremely fine in caliber and medullated; those which emerge from the sympathetic ganglia are equally fine, but non-medullated. The former are termed *pre-ganglionic*, the latter *post-ganglionic* fibers. The ganglion in which the pre-ganglionic fibers end is not necessarily found in the pre-vertebral or lateral chain; it may be found in the collateral or even in the peripheral group.

The *vaso-constrictor nerves* take their origin from nerve-cells located in the anterior horns and lateral gray matter of the spinal cord. They emerge from the cord in company with the fibers which compose the anterior roots of the spinal nerves from the second thoracic to the second or third lumbar nerves inclusive. A short distance from the cord they leave the anterior roots as the white rami communicantes and enter the pre-vertebral or lateral sympathetic ganglia. From the results of many observations and experiments it is probable that the great majority of the vaso-constrictor nerves terminate in these ganglia; that is to say, it is here that the pre-ganglionic fibers arborize around the contained nerve-cells. From the nerve-cells new fibers arise, the post-ganglionic, which pass to the blood-vessels of the head, to the upper and lower extremities, and to the thoracic and abdominal viscera. The vaso-constrictors for the head emerge from the spinal cord in the first four thoracic nerves, thence successively into and through the ganglion stellatum (the first thoracic), the annulus of Vieussens, the inferior cervical ganglion, the sympathetic cord to the superior cervical ganglion, around the cells of which they arborize. From this ganglion the new fibers follow the carotid artery and its branches to their terminations.

The vaso-constrictors for the fore-limbs emerge from the cord in the roots of the fourth to the tenth thoracic nerves inclusive. Through the white rami they pass into the sympathetic chain, after which they take an upward direction and terminate around the cells of the ganglion stellatum. From this ganglion the new fibers enter, by way of the gray rami communicantes, the trunks of the cervical nerves which unite to form the brachial plexus and by this route pass to the blood-vessels.

The vaso-constrictors for the hind-limbs emerge from the cord in the roots of the eleventh dorsal to the second or third lumbar nerves inclusive. They then pass through the white rami to the lower lumbar and upper sacral ganglia. Thence by way of the gray rami they pass into the nerve-trunks which unite to form the sacral nerves and by this route pass to the blood-vessels.

The vaso-constrictors for the viscera of the abdominal cavity pass by way of the splanchnic nerves directly into the collateral ganglia, the semilunar, the superior mesenteric, the inferior mesenteric, and the sacral. From these ganglia an elaborate network of non-medulated fibers passes to the blood-vessels of the stomach, intestines, and other viscera. The great splanchnic nerve is one of the most important vaso-constrictor trunks of the body, on account of the large vascular area it controls.

The existence, course, distribution, and functions of the vaso-constrictor nerves have been determined by a variety of methods, physiologic and anatomic. Stimulation of the nerve-trunks under appropriate conditions gives rise to a contraction, division to a dilatation of the blood-vessels. The physiologic continuity of the pre-ganglionic fibers with the nerve-cells of the sympathetic ganglia has been shown by the intra-vascular injection or the local application of nicotin. This agent, as shown by Langley, has a selective action on the arborizations of the pre-ganglionic fibers, and when given in sufficient doses suspends their conductivity; hence stimulation of the pre-ganglionic fibers is without effect, though stimulation of the post-ganglionic fibers is followed by the usual contraction.

The following will serve as illustrations of the functions of vaso-constrictor nerves. Division of the great splanchnic is followed by a marked dilatation of the blood-vessels of the intestinal tract; stimulation of the peripheral end by their contraction. Division of the cervical cord of the sympathetic is followed by dilatation of the blood-vessels of the side of the head; stimulation of the peripheral end by their contraction.

The *vaso-dilatator* nerves have their origin for the most part in nerve-cells situated in the region of the spinal cord included between the origins of the second dorsal to the second lumbar nerves inclusive, though they are not confined to this region. Some vaso-dilatator fibers have their origin in the medulla oblongata, others in the sacral region of the spinal cord.

The general course of the dilatator fibers for the intestinal tract is the same as that of the vaso-constrictors, though instead of becoming related to the nerve-cells in the pre-vertebral ganglia, they pass by way of the splanchnics to the collateral ganglia, the semilunar, the superior and inferior mesenteric, and perhaps to peripheral ganglia in or near the blood-vessels themselves.

The vaso-dilatators for the limbs are found in the common nerve-trunks associated with the usual motor and sensory fibers, though the exact route by which they pass from the spinal cord to the peripheral nerves has not in all cases been determined. Their cell stations have not been definitely located. The vaso-dilatator nerves for the blood-vessels of the submaxillary gland arise in the medulla, pass outward

in the trunk of the facial nerve, and reach the gland by way of the *chorda tympani* branch. Their cell station is in the ganglion near the hilum of the gland. The vaso-dilatator nerves for the blood-vessels of the corpora cavernosa of the penis, the *nervi erigentes*, have their origin in the sacral region of the spinal cord; and emerge in the roots of the second and third sacral nerves. Their cell station is in the ganglion near the organ.

The existence, course, distribution, and functions of the vaso-dilatator fibers have been determined by the same methods employed in the investigation of the vaso-constrictors. Thus division and stimulation of the peripheral end of the *chorda tympani* nerve are at once followed by an active dilatation of the blood-vessels of the submaxillary gland. The inflow of blood is so great that the gland becomes bright red in color. Its tissues being unable to appropriate all the oxygen, the blood emerges in the veins almost arterial in character. Stimulation of the peripheral ends of the divided *nervi erigentes* is followed by similar effects in the blood-vessels of the corpora cavernosa. Slow stimulation, once per second, of the peripheral end of a divided sciatic nerve is followed by dilatation of the blood-vessels of the leg.

From these and many other facts of a similar character it is highly probable that the blood-vessels of each organ are under the control of two antagonistic classes of nerve-fibers, one augmenting the degree of their contraction, the vaso-constrictors, the other diminishing it through inhibition, the vaso-inhibitors. Through the coöperative antagonism of these two classes of nerves the caliber of the blood-vessels is accurately adapted to the needs of each organ for blood, both during rest and during activity. It is also to the alternate activity of these nerves that the variations occurring from time to time in the volume of organs are to be attributed.

The vaso-constrictors and the vaso-dilatators differ somewhat in their physiologic properties, as shown by the results of experiment. Thus, when a mixed nerve, *i. e.*, one containing both classes of fibers, —*e. g.*, the sciatic,—is stimulated with frequently repeated induced currents, the constrictor effect is the more pronounced, the dilatator effect being wanting or prevented; when stimulated with slowly repeated induced currents, the dilatator effect is the more pronounced. These different effects are strikingly shown in Fig. 156, A and B.

In the experiment of which these tracings are the result the leg of a cat was enclosed in a plethysmograph and the variations in volume due to dilatation or contraction of the vessels, following stimulation of the sciatic nerve, were recorded by means of a tambour and lever on a slowly revolving cylinder. In A the fall of the curve indicates a diminution of volume, from contraction of blood-vessels following a rate of stimulation of the sciatic nerve of 16 per second for fifteen

seconds. In B the rise of the curve indicates an increase in volume from dilatation of the vessels following a rate of stimulation of 1 per second for fifteen seconds (Bowditch and Warren). With different rates of stimulation somewhat different results are obtained.

After division of a mixed nerve the vaso-constrictors degenerate and lose their influence over the blood-vessel in from four to five days, the vaso-dilatators in from seven to ten days, as shown by the response to electrical stimulation.

When a nerve is cooled, the vaso-constrictors lose their irritability before the vaso-dilatators.

Vaso-motor Centers.—The nerve-cells throughout the spinal cord from which the vaso-motor nerves take their origin may be regarded as nerve-centers which through their related nerve-fibers exert from time to time either a constrictor or a dilatator influence

FIG. 156.—PLETHYSMOGRAMS OF THE HIND-LEG OF THE CAT FOLLOWING STIMULATION OF THE SCIATIC NERVE. In A the rate of stimulation was sixteen per second, in B one per second for fifteen seconds.

over the blood-vessels. Though both the vaso-constrictor and vaso-dilatator centers are in a state of continuous activity, the former decidedly preponderates, as shown by the maintenance of a tonic contraction of the blood-vessels. The activity of both centers may be increased or decreased, augmented or inhibited, by nerve impulses reflected to them from the periphery through afferent nerves or through nerve-fibers descending the cord from higher levels of the nervous system. Experiment has shown that when a definite region of the medulla oblongata is punctured or in anywise destroyed there is an immediate dilatation of the blood-vessels throughout the body and a fall of blood-pressure below one-half or one-third of the normal value. This region has a width of one and a half millimeters and extends longitudinally for a distance of four or five millimeters,

terminating at a point four millimeters above the tip of the calamus scriptorius.

A transection of the medulla above the upper limit of this area is without effect on the blood-pressure. A similar section below it, however, is at once followed by vascular dilatation, a loss of vascular tone, and a general fall of blood-pressure. Subsequent stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided medulla, the animal being curarized and artificial respiration maintained, will give rise to a marked contraction of the blood-vessels and a rise of blood-pressure up to and far beyond the normal value.

If the experimental lesion is limited to the area mentioned in the foregoing paragraph, the vascular dilatation passes away after a time, the blood-vessels regain their normal tone, and the pressure again rises. These facts indicate that the area is to be regarded as the *general vaso-motor (constrictor) center* which maintains the tonus of the blood-vessels through its dominating influence over the vaso-motor centers in the cord, the latter acting in a subsidiary manner to the former. The nerve-fibers which transmit the regulative nerve impulses from the general to the subsidiary centers are found in the lateral columns of the cord. There is no evidence for the existence of a general vaso-dilatator center in the medulla. Since the blood-vessels maintain a more or less constant tone, it is assumed that the vaso-motor centers are in a state of continuous activity. In how far, however, this activity is the result of chemic changes between the cells and the surrounding lymph and blood, or the result of constantly arriving nerve impulses reflected from the periphery or from higher regions of the nervous system, is not readily determinable. Both factors are probably involved.

Direct Stimulation of the Vaso-motor Centers.—The general vaso-motor (constrictor) center at least is markedly influenced by the quantity and quality of blood and lymph circulating around and through it. If the blood-supply to the medulla and associated structures be diminished by compression of the carotid arteries, the activity of the center is at once increased, as shown by increased vascular contraction and a rise of pressure. Restoration of the blood-supply is followed by a return of the center to its normal degree of activity. Increased blood-supply, as in cerebral hyperemia, is attended by a fall in blood-pressure indicating a decrease in the activity of the center. A diminution in the percentage of oxygen or an increase in the percentage of CO₂ in the blood will increase the activity of the center. In asphyxia especially the center is extremely excitable, as shown by rise of the arterial tension. The subsidiary centers in the spinal cord are influenced by corresponding conditions.

Reflex Stimulation of the Vaso-motor Centers.—The results of experiment make it certain that the degree of vascular contraction

maintained by the coöperative antagonism of the vaso-motor centers can be increased or decreased by nerve impulses reflected to the cord and medulla from the periphery or from the brain. The effect may be general, or local and confined to the area from which the impulses arise. The following experiments may be cited as illustrations:

Stimulation of the central end of a divided posterior root of a spinal nerve gives rise to increased vascular contraction, as shown by the rise of blood-pressure. The same holds true for any sensory nerve. Stimulation of the central end of the divided sciatic will give rise to opposite results, according to the strength of the stimulus, weak stimuli producing dilatation, strong stimuli producing contraction of the vessels. Stimulation of the central end of the divided vagus gives rise to dilatation of the vessels of the lips, cheeks, and nasal and palatal mucous membranes. Stimulation of the auricular nerve in the rabbit will, according to the strength of the currents, give rise to either contraction or dilatation. Stimulation of the tongue is followed by dilatation of the vessels of the submaxillary gland.

In explanation of these different results it has been assumed that in the afferent nerves there are two classes of fibers, one which increases, the other decreases the activity of the vaso-constrictor centers. The first is termed *pressor*, the second *depressor*. Inasmuch as the vascular dilatation is often greater than the dilatation which follows division of the vaso-motor fibers themselves, it has been assumed by some that the general vascular tonus, as well as its variations from time to time, is the resultant of the simultaneous activity and variations in activity of both vaso-constrictor and vaso-dilatator centers; that in the afferent nerves there are fibers which when stimulated augment, for example, the vaso-constrictor center and inhibit the vaso-dilatator centers, or the reverse. The result, either contraction or dilatation, which follows stimulation of their peripheral terminations will depend on the character of the physiologic stimulus.

In a similar manner the vaso-motor centers are influenced by emotional states, fear causing a contraction, shame a dilatation, of the vessels of the face and neck. It is probable that these effects are due to the transmission of nerve impulses from the cortex to the vaso-motor centers in the medulla.

The Depressor Nerve.—In the rabbit there is a small nerve formed by the union of a branch from the trunk of the vagus with a branch from the superior laryngeal. The peripheral distribution of this nerve is over the wall of the ventricle. The same nerve is found in many other animals. In some, as the dog, it is bound up in the vago-sympathetic. In man it is also present, though shortly after its origin it enters the trunk of the vagus. Division of this nerve is without effect either on the heart or the vessels. Stimulation of the peripheral end has neither an accelerating nor an inhibiting action

on the heart. Stimulation of the central end is followed by a fall in blood-pressure, frequently to a level below one-half the normal value; at the same time there is a diminution, brought about reflexly, in the rate of the heart-beat. The fall in pressure, however, is not due to this cause, for it occurs equally well after division of all the cardiac nerves. For this reason the nerve was termed the depressor nerve.

On exposure of the abdominal cavity, it is observed during stimulation of the depressor that there is a notable dilatation of the intestinal vessels. From this fact it was assumed that the action of the depressor nerve was to lower the general pressure through reflex dilatation of these vessels. It has been shown by Porter and Beyer that if the splanchnics are divided and the peripheral end stimulated so as to maintain the tonus of the intestinal vessels, and hence the general pressure, stimulation of the depressor nerve will nevertheless be followed by a fall of the blood-pressure almost as great as when the splanchnics are intact. From this it is evident that the depressor nerve is related to centers which influence the vascular apparatus in its entirety. The function of the depressor is not definitely known. It has been supposed that through it the heart can protect itself from injurious results of an excessive rise of arterial pressure.

CHAPTER XIII.

RESPIRATION.

Respiration is a process by which oxygen is introduced into, and carbon dioxid removed from, the body. The assimilation of the former and the evolution of the latter take place in the tissues as a part of the general process of nutrition. Without a constant supply of oxygen and an equally constant removal of the carbon dioxid, those chemic changes which underlie and condition all life phenomena could not be maintained.

The general process of respiration may be considered under the following headings, viz.:

1. The structure and general arrangement of the respiratory apparatus.
2. The mechanic movements of the thorax by which an interchange of atmospheric and intra-pulmonary air is accomplished.
3. The chemistry of respiration, the changes in composition experienced by the air, blood, and tissues.
4. The nerve mechanism by which the respiratory movements are maintained.

THE RESPIRATORY APPARATUS.

The respiratory apparatus consists essentially of:

1. The lungs and the air-passages leading into them: viz., the nasal chambers, mouth, pharynx, larynx, and trachea.
2. The thorax and its associated structures.

The **nasal chambers** are the natural entrances for the inspired air. Their complicated structure slightly retards the movement of the air, in consequence of which its temperature and moisture are adjusted to the physiologic conditions of the lower respiratory passages. The mouth, though frequently serving as an entrance for air, is not primarily a respiratory passage. Both the nasal chambers and the mouth communicate posteriorly with the pharynx, in which the respiratory and the deglutitory passages cross each other, the former leading directly into the larynx.

The **larynx** is a complicated mechanism serving the widely different though related functions of respiration and phonation. It consists of a framework of cartilages, articulating one with another, united by ligaments and moved by muscles; it is covered externally with fibrous tissue and lined with mucous membrane. The superior

opening of the larynx, the glottis, is triangular in shape, the base being directed upward and forward, the apex downward and backward. The inclination of the glottic opening is almost vertical.

The cavity of the larynx is partially subdivided by the interposition of the vocal bands into a superior and an inferior portion.

FIG. 157.—TRACHEA AND BRANCHIAL TUBES. 1, 2. Larynx. 3, 3. Trachea. 4. Bifurcation of trachea. 5. Right bronchus. 6. Left bronchus. 7. Bronchial division to upper lobe of right lung. 8. Division to middle lobe. 9. Division to lower lobe. 10. Division to upper lobe of left lung. 11. Division to lower lobe. 12, 12, 12, 12. Ultimate ramifications of bronchi. 13, 13, 13, 13. Lungs, represented in contour. 14, 14. Summit of lungs. 15, 15. Base of lungs.—(*Sappey*.)

The opening, bounded by the vocal bands, is also triangular in shape, though in this case the base is directed backward, the apex forward. (See chapter on Voice and Speech.)

The introduction of the vocal bands narrows at this level the air-passage and to some extent interferes with the free entrance of air.

According to the investigations of Semon, the area of the air-passage above and below the phonatory apparatus is about 200 sq. mm.; while the area bounded by the vocal apparatus is but 155 sq. mm. during quiet respiration.

The **trachea** is a tube, some 12 centimeters in length, from one-half to three-fourths of a centimeter in breadth, extending from the lower border of the larynx to a point opposite the fifth dorsal vertebra. It consists of an external fibrous and an internal mucous membrane, between which is a series of superposed C-shaped arches or rings of elastic cartilage, some 18 or 20 in number. Between the fibrous and mucous coats posteriorly, and occupying the space between and attached to the free ends of the cartilages, there is a layer of transversely arranged non-striated muscle-fibers, known as the *tracheal* muscle. The contraction of this muscle would approximate the ends of the arches and so diminish the caliber of the tube. The surface of the mucous membrane is covered by a layer of stratified columnar ciliated epithelium (Fig. 158). In the sub-mucous tissue there are a number of glands the ducts of which open on the free surface.

Opposite the fifth dorsal vertebra the trachea divides into a right and a left bronchus. Each bronchus again subdivides into two or three branches, which penetrate the corresponding lung. Within the substance of the lung the bronchi divide and subdivide, giving origin to a large number of smaller branches, the *bronchial tubes*, which penetrate the lung in all directions. With this repeated subdivision the tubes become narrower, their walls thinner, their structure simpler. In passing from the larger to the smaller tubes the cartilaginous arches become shorter and thinner, and finally are represented by small angular and irregularly disposed plates. In the smallest tubes the cartilage entirely disappears; coincidently there appears a layer of non-striated muscle-fibers between the mucous and submucous tissues, which completely surrounds the tube and is especially well developed in those tubes devoid of cartilaginous rings. The fibrous and mucous coats at the same time diminish in thickness.

When the bronchial tube has been reduced to the diameter of about one millimeter, it is known as a *bronchiole* or a *terminal bron-*

FIG. 158.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF THE TRACHEA OF A KITTEN.—(Stirling.)

chus. From the sides of the terminal bronchus and from its final

FIG. 159.—SCHEME OF A BRONCHIOLE TERMINATING IN ALVEOLAR PASSAGES, THOSE LEADING INTO INFUNDIBULA BESET WITH AIR-CELLS.—(Landois and Stirling.)

termination there is given off a series of short branches which soon expand to form lobules or alveoli (Fig. 159). The cavity of the alveolus is termed the infundibulum. From the inner surface of the alveolus and of the passageway leading into it, there project thin partitions which subdivide the outer portion of the general cavity or infundibulum into small spaces or sacs, the so-called air-sacs (Fig. 160). The wall of the alveolus is extremely thin and consists of fibro-elastic tissue, supporting a very

elaborate capillary network of blood-vessels. as far as the alveolar passages is lined by ciliated epithelium. The air-sacs are lined by flat epithelial plates of irregular shape, termed the respiratory epithelium (Fig. 161). The alveoli are united one to another by fibro-elastic tissue.

The **lungs** in the physiologic condition occupy the greater part of the cavity of the thorax. They are separated from each other by the contents of the mediastinal space: viz., the heart, the large blood-vessels, the esophagus, etc. Each lung is somewhat pyramidal in shape with the apex directed upward. The outer surface is convex and corresponds to the general conformation of the thorax. The inner surface is concave and accommodates the contents of the mediastinal space. At about the middle of the inner surface there enter the lung, the bronchi, and blood-vessels. The under surface of the lung is concave and rests on the diaphragm. The posterior

FIG. 160.—SINGLE LOBULE OF HUMAN LUNG. a. Alveolar passage. b. Cavity of lobule or infundibulum. c. Pulmonary sacs.—(Dalton.)

border is convex; the anterior border is thin. The lung thus consists of bronchial tubes, pulmonary lobules or alveoli, blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves embedded in a stroma of fibrous and elastic tissue.

In consequence of the presence of the elastic tissue, the lungs are distensible and elastic. After removal from the body the elastic tissue at once recoils, forcing out a portion of the contained air. The condition of the lung is now one of collapse. Under pressure, however, the lung can be readily distended or inflated. These properties endure for a long period after death, if not indefinitely, if the lungs are properly preserved. The capacity of the lungs can be made to vary within

FIG. 161.—SECTION OF SILVERED LUNG OF KITTEN, INCLUDING PORTIONS OF INFUNDIBULUM AND AIR-SAC. *a*. Small polyhedral epithelial cells covering the wall of the infundibulum. *b*. Fibro-elastic framework. *c*. Large flattened epithelial plates lining air-sac, among which lie small groups of small cells (*d*).—(*Piersol*.)

rather wide limits in virtue of the presence of the elastic tissue.

FIG. 162.—THE RELATION OF THE PULMONARY ARTERY, PA, AND THE PULMONARY VEIN, PV, TO THE LOBULES, A A. B. THE BRONCHIOLE.

The pulmonary blood-vessels.—The pulmonary artery which conducts the venous blood from the heart to the lungs divides beneath the arch of the aorta into a right and a left branch. Each branch with its subdivisions enters the lung at the hilum in company with the larger divisions of the bronchi. Within the lung the arteries divide and subdivide in a manner corresponding to that of the bronchial tubes, which they follow to their ultimate terminations. As the pulmonary lobules

are approached, a small arterial branch plunges into the wall of the lobule (Fig. 162), in which it forms an elaborate capillary

network which surrounds and embraces the air-sacs on all sides. As this network is to subserve the respiratory exchange of gases it lies nearer the inner than the outer surface of the lobule and in close relation to the respiratory epithelium. The air and blood are thus brought into intimate relationship, being separated only by the respiratory epithelium and the wall of the capillary vessel. The blood emerging from the capillary vessels is conducted by a corresponding converging system of vessels, the pulmonary veins, out

FIG. 163.—BRONCHI AND LUNGS, POSTERIOR VIEW. 1, 1. Summit of lungs. 2, 2. Base of lungs. 3. Trachea. 4. Right bronchus. 5. Division to upper lobe of lung. 6. Division to lower lobe. 7. Left bronchus. 8. Division to upper lobe. 9. Division to lower lobe. 10. Left branch of pulmonary artery. 11. Right branch. 12. Left auricle of heart. 13. Left superior pulmonary vein. 14. Left inferior pulmonary vein. 15. Right superior pulmonary vein. 16. Right inferior pulmonary vein. 17. Inferior vena cava. 18. Left ventricle of heart. 19. Right ventricle.—(*Sappey*.)

of the lungs and into the left auricle of the heart. The main function of the pulmonary apparatus and the pulmonary division of the circulatory apparatus is to afford a ready means for the exhalation of the carbon dioxid and the absorption of oxygen. In consequence of this exchange of gases the blood changes in color from dark bluish-red to scarlet red. The relations of the heart and its vessels to the lungs and bronchial tubes are shown in Fig. 163.

The Thorax.—The thorax, in which the respiratory organs and

their associated structures are lodged, is conic in shape, though somewhat compressed from before backward. Its apex is directed upward, its base downward. The thoracic framework is formed posteriorly by the thoracic vertebræ and the posterior extremities of the ribs, laterally by the ribs, and anteriorly by the costal cartilages and the sternum. The superior opening, through which pass the trachea, esophagus, and blood-vessels, is oval in outline and measures from side to side about 12.5 cm., and from before backward about 6.25 cm. The inferior opening is of large size, but irregular in its boundaries from the upward inclination of the ribs and the downward projection of the sternum.

The **ribs** which form a large part of the thoracic walls constitute a series of bony arches attached posteriorly to the vertebræ and anteriorly to the sternum through the intermediation of their cartilages. The last two form an exception. The ribs are somewhat twisted upon themselves and pursue an oblique direction from above downward and forward. As a result the anterior extremity lies at a lower level than the posterior. The costal cartilages are directed upward and forward, with the exception of the upper three, which are almost horizontal. The general arrangement and appearance of the thorax are shown in Fig. 164.

FIG. 164.—THORAX, ANTERIOR VIEW.
1. Manubrium sterni. 2. Gladiolus. 3. Ensiform cartilage of xiphoid appendix. 4. Circumference of apex of thorax. 5. Circumference of base. 6. First rib. 7. Second rib. 8, 8. Third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs. 9. Eighth, ninth, and tenth ribs. 10. Eleventh and twelfth ribs. 11, 11. Costal cartilages.

The costo-vertebral and costosternal articulations are diarthrodial in character and permit of an alternate elevation and depression of the ribs both anteriorly and posteriorly. The resultant of all the movements permitted by these joints is an elevation of the ribs and an advance of the sternum, and a consequent increase in the transverse and antero-posterior diameters. Between and over the ribs lie muscles, which are in turn covered by fascia and skin.

The **diaphragm**, which closes the inferior opening of the thorax and completely separates its cavity from that of the abdomen, is a musculo-membranous sheet. It consists of two muscles which arise

from the bodies of the first three or four lumbar vertebræ and neighboring fascia, from the border of the six lower ribs, and from the ensiform cartilage (Fig. 165). From this extensive origin the muscle-fibers pass centrally to be inserted into a common tendon. As the direction of the fibers is from below upward and inward, the diaphragm is somewhat dome-shaped. Its inferior border is for a short

FIG. 165.—DIAPHRAGM, INFERIOR ASPECT. 1. Anterior and middle leaflet of central tendon. 2. Right leaflet. 3. Left leaflet. 4. Right crus. 5. Left crus. 6, 6. Intervals for phrenic nerves. 7. Muscular fibers, from which the ligamenta arcuata originate. 8. Muscular fibers that arise from the inner surface of the six lower ribs. 9. Fibers that arise from ensiform cartilage. 10. Opening for inferior vena cava. 11. Opening for esophagus. 12. Aortic opening. 13, 13. Upper portion of transversalis abdominis, turned upward and outward. 14. Anterior leaflet of transversalis aponeurosis. 15, 15. Quadratus lumborum. 16, 16. Psoas magnus. 17. Third lumbar vertebra.

distance in contact with the sides of the thorax. As a result of the complete closure of both the superior and inferior openings of the thorax, its cavity is absolutely air-tight.

The pleuræ.

—Each lung is surrounded by a closed invaginated serous sac, the pleura, of which the inner portion is reflected over and is closely adherent to the surface of the entire lung as far as its root; the outer portion is reflected

over the inner wall of the thorax, the superior surface of the diaphragm, and the viscera of the mediastinum. Under normal conditions these two layers of the pleura, the visceral and parietal, are in contact, or at most separated only by a thin capillary layer of lymph. The presence of this fluid prevents friction as the two surfaces play against each other in consequence of the movements of the lungs.

THE MECHANIC MOVEMENTS OF THE THORAX.

The blood receives oxygen from, and yields carbon dioxid to, the alveoli of the lungs, as it flows through the pulmonary capillaries.

That this exchange of gases may continue, it is of primary importance that the air within the alveoli be removed as rapidly as it is vitiated. This is accomplished by an alternate increase and decrease in the capacity of the thorax, accompanied by corresponding changes in the capacity of the lungs. During the former there is an inflow of atmospheric air (inspiration), during the latter an outflow of intrapulmonary air (expiration). The continuous recurrence of these two movements brings about that degree of pulmonary ventilation necessary to the normal exchange of gases between the blood and the air. The two movements together constitute a respiratory act or cycle.

In the course of the respiratory cycles the thorax presents alternately a short period of rest—viz., between the end of an expiration and the beginning of an inspiration—and a relatively long period of activity, including both inspiration and expiration. The former may be regarded as the static, the latter as the dynamic condition of the thorax. In the static condition the thorax and its contained and associated organs sustain a definite relation one to another; in the dynamic conditions these relations undergo a change the extent of which is proportional to the extent of the movements.*

Static Relations.—Intra-pulmonary Pressure.—In the *static* condition of the thorax the lungs, by virtue of their distensibility, completely fill all parts of the thoracic cavity not occupied by the heart and great blood-vessels. This condition is maintained by the pressure of the air within the lungs, the *intra-pulmonary pressure*, which with the respiratory passages open, is that of the atmosphere, 760 mm. Hg. This relation persists so long as the thoracic cavity remains air-tight. If the skin and muscles covering an intercostal space be removed the lung can be seen in close contact with the parietal layer of the pleura gliding by with each inspiration and expiration. If, however, an opening be now made in the pleura sufficient to admit air, the lung immediately collapses and a pleural cavity is established (pneumothorax). The pressure of air within and without the lung counterbalancing, at the moment the opening is made, the elastic tissue at once recoils and forces a large part of the air out of the lung. This is a proof that in the normal condition, the lungs, distended by atmospheric pressure from within, are in a state of elastic tension and ever endeavoring to pull the visceral layer of the pleura away from

* It is a matter of dispute as to whether or not there is an absolute cessation of movement of the thoracic walls at the end of expiration. A graphic record of the movement shows that if there is no absolute cessation, the movement is so slight that, for the purposes here intended, a pause may be admitted. With this admission it is, however, recognized that the forces, both elastic and muscular, which are always acting on the thoracic walls, though in opposite directions, have not ceased to act, but have become so nearly equal that for a brief period they are practically in a condition of equilibrium, during which the thoracic walls are stationary.

the parietal layer. That they do not succeed in doing so is due to the fact that the atmospheric pressure from without is prevented from acting on the lung by the firm unyielding walls of the thorax.

Intra-thoracic Pressure.—As a result of the elastic tension of the lungs a fractional part of the intra-pulmonary pressure, 760 mm. Hg, is counterbalanced or opposed, so that the heart and great vessels and other intra-thoracic viscera are subjected to a pressure somewhat less than that of the atmosphere; the amount of this pressure will be that of the atmosphere *less* that exerted by the elastic tissue of the lung in the opposite direction, expressed in terms of millimeters of mercury. In the thorax, but outside the lungs, there then prevails a pressure, *intra-thoracic pressure*, negative to the pressure inside the lungs. The amount of this intra-thoracic pressure can be approximately determined in several ways. Thus, if shortly after death a mercurial manometer be inserted air-tight into the trachea of a human being and the thorax opened, the lungs will recoil and compress their contained air. The mercurial manometer will at once show an excess of pressure in the trachea of about 6 mm. This was taken by Donders as a measure of the force with which the lungs endeavor to recoil. The intra-thoracic pressure would be, therefore, atmospheric pressure, 760 mm., less 6 mm., or 754 mm. Hg. Another method is to insert a rubber catheter through a small opening in an intercostal space into the thoracic cavity. The air which enters through the open extremities of the catheter and leads to a collapse of the lungs may be subsequently aspirated, when the lung returns to its normal position. The catheter is then placed in connection with a water manometer. On establishing a communication between them, by the turning of a stopcock, the water will rise in the proximal and fall in the distal limb of the manometer, indicating a pressure in the thorax *negative* to that in the lung. The difference in the level of the water in the two limbs of the manometer, expressed in millimeters of mercury, would also represent the force with which the elastic tissue strives to recoil, the extent to which it opposes the atmospheric pressure. This subtracted from the atmospheric pressure would give the intra-thoracic pressure. In the living dog this latter is less than the former, to the extent of from 3.5 to 5.5 mm. For the same reason the superior surface of the diaphragm also experiences a pressure less than that of the atmosphere. Owing to the soft and yielding character of the abdominal walls the atmospheric pressure is transmitted through the abdominal organs to the inferior surface of the diaphragm. The pressure being greater from below than above, the diaphragm is forced upward until it assumes the dome-like appearance it usually presents. (These relations are shown in Fig. 166.)

The cause of the negativity of the intra-thoracic pressure is con-

nected with the change in the relation of the lungs to the thorax attending the first inspiration. Previous to birth the walls of the alveoli and bronchioles are collapsed and in apposition. The larger bronchial tubes in all probability contain fluid. The lungs therefore are devoid of air (atelectatic), and, having a specific gravity greater than water, readily sink when placed in this fluid. The capacity of the thorax does not exceed the volume of the lungs. With the first inspiration, however, the thoracic walls take a new position. The air at once rushes into the lungs and distends them. But as the capacity of the thorax even at the end of the expiration is now greater

FIG. 166.—SECTION OF THORAX WITH THE LUNGS, HEART, AND PRINCIPAL VESSELS. S. Catheter introduced into the pleural space and connected with a manometer.—(After Morat and Doyen.)

than the volume which the lungs could assume without considerable distention, there at once arises the elastic recoil in the opposite direction, the condition which gives rise to the negativity of the pressure in the thoracic cavity. It is also probable that as the child develops, the thorax grows more rapidly than the lungs, giving rise to a condition which would increase and accentuate the elastic tension and thus increase the negativity of the intra-thoracic pressure.

Dynamic Relations.—In the dynamic conditions as previously stated these relations change. The *intra-pulmonary pressure* varies during both inspiration and expiration. With the enlargement

of the thorax through muscle activity, there goes a corresponding increase in the size and capacity of the lungs in consequence of the expansion and pressure of the air in the pulmonary alveoli. With the expansion of the air its pressure falls; but though it is now *less* than atmospheric, it is yet much greater than the opposing force of the lung tissue. As a result of the fall of intra-pulmonary pressure there is a rapid inflow of air, which continues until atmospheric pressure is restored; that is, at the end of the inspiration. With the diminution of the thorax, through the recoil of the elastic tissue of the thoracic and abdominal walls, there goes a corresponding decrease of lung capacity, in consequence of the recoil of the elastic tissue of the lungs. As a result, the air in the lungs becomes compressed, its pressure rises above that of the atmosphere, and a rapid outflow of air takes place, which continues until atmospheric pressure is

again restored; that is, at the end of the expiration.

The cause for the fall of intra-pulmonary pressure during inspiration and the rise during expiration is to be found in the resistance offered by the air-passages to the movement of the air, throughout their entire extent, and especially at the level of

FIG. 167.—REPRESENTING THE CHANGES, 1, IN THE INTRA-PULMONARY, AND, 2, IN THE INTRA-THORACIC PRESSURES DURING INSPIRATION AND EXPIRATION

the vocal bands. The greater the resistance, from whatever cause, physiologic or pathologic, the greater the variations of the pressure.

In quiet inspiration the fall of pressure, as indicated by a manometer inserted into one nostril, seldom amounts to more than 1.5 mm.; the rise in expiration, 2.5 to 3 mm. In forcible inspiratory and expiratory efforts these limits may be largely exceeded. Thus it was found by Donders that with one nostril closed and a mercurial manometer inserted into the other the pressure by voluntary efforts could be made to fall 57 mm. during inspiration and to rise 87 mm. during expiration. The changes in intra-pulmonary pressure are graphically represented in the upper half of Fig. 167.

The *intra-thoracic pressure* also varies during both inspiration and expiration. As the intra-pulmonary pressure falls, the recoil of the elastic tissue increases, with the result of diminishing the intra-thoracic pressure, though not in a steadily progressive manner. The

fall of intra-thoracic pressure at the end of a quiet inspiration amounts to about 9 mm. Hg. In forcible inspiratory efforts this fall in intra-thoracic pressure may amount to 30 or 40 mm. of Hg. As the intrapulmonary pressure rises above the atmospheric pressure during expiration, the recoil of the elastic tissue is again opposed, with the result of increasing the intra-thoracic pressure, though not in a steadily progressive manner. The changes in intra-thoracic pressure are graphically represented in the lower half of Fig. 167.

Respiratory Movements.—The ventilation of the lungs is accomplished by an alternate expansion and contraction of the thorax, accompanied by corresponding changes in the lungs, the two movements being known as *inspiration* and *expiration*. In both movements the lungs play an entirely passive part, their movements being determined by the thoracic walls, with which they are in close contact.

1. **Inspiration** is an active process, the result of muscle activity, in consequence of which atmospheric air flows into the lungs.
2. **Expiration** is a passive process, the result mainly of the recoil of the elastic tissue of the walls of the thorax and abdomen and of the elastic tissue of the lungs, in consequence of which the intrapulmonary air flows out of the lungs.

In inspiration the thorax is enlarged in all its diameters: viz., vertical, antero-posterior, and transverse. In expiration these diameters are again decreased as the thorax returns to its previous condition.

Inspiratory Muscles.—The muscles which from their origin, direction, and insertion contribute to the enlargement or expansion of the thorax are quite numerous, though the extent to which they are called into activity depends on the necessity for either tranquil or energetic inspirations. The gradations between a minimum and a maximum inspiration are very slight, and it is difficult to state at what particular instant any given muscle begins to act. It is customary, however, to divide the muscles into two groups: (1) Those active in the average or ordinary inspirations, and (2) those active in maximum or extraordinary inspirations. Among the muscles active in average inspirations may be mentioned the *diaphragm*, the *scaleni*, the *levator costarum*, the *serratus posticus superior*, the *intercostales externi*, and the *intercartilaginei*. Among the muscles active in forced inspirations may be mentioned, in addition to the foregoing, the *sterno-cleido-mastoidei*, the *trapezei*, and the *pectorales minores* and *maiores*.//

The Diaphragm.—The vertical diameter is increased by the contraction and descent of the diaphragm, and more especially of its lateral muscular portions. At the end of an expiration the diaphragm is relaxed, and the lower portion closely applied to the walls of the thorax. At the beginning of an inspiration the muscle-fibers contract,

shorten, and approximate a straight line, whereby not only is the convexity of the diaphragm diminished, but that portion in contact with the thorax is drawn away, thus making a large free space into which the lateral and posterior portions of the lungs at once descend. The attachment of the central tendon of the diaphragm to the pericardium prevents any marked descent of this portion except in forcible inspiratory efforts (Fig. 168). The vertical diameters are thus enlarged, though unequally in different regions of the thorax.

As the diaphragm descends it displaces the abdominal viscera, forcing them downward and outward against the abdominal walls, which advance and become more convex. In forcible inspiration the diaphragm, acting from the central tendon as the more fixed point, would draw the lower portion of the thorax inward were this not prevented by the outward pressure of the displaced viscera.

FIG. 168.—DIAGRAM SHOWING INTERVAL BETWEEN THE POSITION OF THE DIAPHRAGM IN EXPIRATION (*e, e*) AND INSPIRATION (*i, i*). THE INCREASE IN CAPACITY IS SHOWN BY THE WHITE AREAS.—(*Yeo.*)

The *antero-posterior* and *transverse* diameters are increased by the elevation and outward rotation of the ribs and an advance of the sternum, both movements made possible by the construction and arrangement of the costo-vertebral and costo-chondral and chondro-sternal articulations. The former articulations are two in number, the first being formed by the beveled head of the rib and the bodies of the vertebræ, the second by the tubercle of the rib and the transverse process. The construction of these articulations is such as to permit at the first a slight elevation and depression, and at the second a gliding of the tubercle on the transverse process. The axis

around which the rib rotates practically coincides with the axis of the rib neck, which in the upper part of the thorax is almost horizontal, in the lower part somewhat sagittal in direction. Hence when the ribs are elevated the upper part of the thorax increases in its antero-posterior, the lower part in its transverse diameters. At the same time, the lower portion of the sternum is pushed forward and upward by the elevation of the costo-chondral articulation and the widening of its angle. With the elevation of the ribs there goes an eversion or outward rotation which gives an additional increase to the transverse diameters. This elevation and outward rotation of the ribs is the resultant of the coöperation of the muscles previously mentioned with the exception of the diaphragm.

|| The *scaleni* muscles, *anticus*, *medius*, and *posticus*, arise from the

transverse processes of the cervical vertebræ, and after pursuing a downward and forward direction are inserted into the sternal end of the first and second ribs. The action of the first two, at least, is to elevate the first rib and thus establish a fixed point from which the intercostal muscles can act. The posticus has doubtless a similar action on the second rib. H

The *levator costarum* are twelve in number on either side. They arise from the tips of the transverse processes of the last cervical and the thoracic vertebræ with the exception of the last. A From the point of origin the fibers pass downward and outward in a diverging manner to be inserted into the ribs between the tubercle and the angle. Their action, as their name implies, is to elevate the posterior portion of the ribs (Fig. 169).

The *serratus posticus superior*, a quadrilateral sheet of muscle-fibers, arises mainly from the spines of the last cervical and first and second thoracic vertebræ. The anterior extremity is serrated and attached to the outer surfaces of the second, third, fourth, and fifth ribs beyond the angle. The action of the muscle is the elevation of the ribs to which it is attached.

FIG. 169.—VIEW FROM BEHIND OF FOUR DORSAL VERTEBRÆ AND THREE ATTACHED RIBS, SHOWING THE ATTACHMENT OF THE ELEVATOR MUSCLES OF THE RIBS AND THE INTERCOSTALS. 1. Long and short elevators. 2. External intercostal. 3. Internal intercostal.—(Allen Thomson.)

The *intercostales externi*, eleven in number on each side, occupy the spaces between the ribs to which they are attached from the tubercle to the anterior extremity (Fig. 169). Their fibers, which are arranged in parallel bundles, are directed from above downward and from behind forward. The point of attachment, therefore, of any given bundle of fibers to the rib above lies nearer the vertebral column, nearer the fulcrum, than the point of attachment below.

The action of the external intercostal muscles has been a subject of much discussion. X Some investigators have maintained that they are elevators of the ribs, and therefore inspiratory; others that they are depressors of the ribs, and therefore expiratory in function. At the present time the general consensus of opinion is that the former view is the one most in accordance with the facts. A The situation of the muscles and the shortness of their fibers render it extremely difficult to obtain myographic tracings of their action. This is supposed, however, to be disclosed by the play of the apparatus suggested

originally by Bernouilli, which consists, as shown in Fig. 171, of a vertical support carrying two freely movable parallel bars united at their outer extremities by a short vertical strip, representing respectively the vertebral column, two adjoining ribs, and a piece of the

sternum. The parallel bars are joined to each other by a short elastic band having the direction of and representing the external intercostal muscles. If the bars are depressed, the elastic band is elongated and made tense. On releasing the bars the band at once recoils and elevates them. Although the elastic force is the same in both directions, the bars are yet elevated for the reason that in accordance with the parallelogram of forces the component acting upward on the long arm of the lever preponderates over the component acting downward on the short arm of the lever. The action of the band is supposed to disclose and illustrate the action of the muscle.

The *intercartilaginei*, those portions of the *intercostales interni* which occupy

FIG. 170.—SHOWING THE SITUATION, THE POINTS OF ATTACHMENT, AND DIRECTION OF THE INTERCOSTAL MUSCLES. 1. The *intercostales externi*. 2. The *intercostales interni*. 3. The *intercartilaginei*.—(Deaver.)

the space between the costal cartilages from the sternum to their outer extremity, bear the same relation to the cartilages in reference to the sternum that the external intercostals bear to the ribs in reference to the vertebral column; that is, the point of attachment to the cartilage

above, lies nearer the sternum, nearer the fulcrum, than the point of attachment below. Hence the same action is attributed to them as to the external intercostals: viz., that they elevate the cartilages and the anterior extremities of the ribs.

Expiratory Forces and Muscles.—Expiration, as previously stated, is a passive process brought about by the recoil of the elastic tissues of the thoracic and abdominal walls, and of the lungs, all of which are stretched and made tense during inspiration. With the cessation of the inspiratory effort the elastic forces, assisted by the weight of the ribs, sternum, and soft tissues, return the thorax to its former condition. It is somewhat uncertain if a normal expiratory movement necessitates active muscle contraction. But after the elastic forces have ceased to act and the normal expiratory movement has been brought to a close, the thorax can be, to a considerable

FIG. 171.—DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING THE ACTION OF A, THE EXTERNAL INTERCOSTAL, AND B, THE INTERNAL INTERCOSTAL MUSCLES. V, V'. Vertical support. R, R'. Parallel bars. S. Vertical strip representing respectively the vertebral column, two ribs, and sternum.

extent, still further diminished in all its diameters by the contraction, through volitional effort, of abdominal and thoracic muscles. To this decrease in the capacity of the thorax, as a result of which a much larger volume of air is expelled from the lungs than during passive expiration, the term forced expiration has been given. With the cessation of muscle activity the elastic forces of the now-compressed thoracic walls, aided by the return of upward displaced abdominal organs, at once restore the thoracic walls to the position they had attained at the end of passive expiration. The muscles active in forced expiration are the *abdominales*, the *inter-costales interni*, the *triangularis sterni*, the *serratus posticus inferior*, and the *quadratus lumborum*.

The *externus abdominis* arises by a series of muscle slips from the outer surface of the lower eight ribs. After pursuing an oblique

direction downward and forward, the slips blend to form a single muscle, which is inserted mainly into the outer lip of the anterior half of the crest of the ilium and into the central abdominal tendon or aponeurosis.

The *internus abdominis* arises mainly from the anterior two-thirds of the inner crest of the ilium and the lumbar fascia. Its fibers pass upward and forward to be inserted into the cartilages of the last three ribs and into the central abdominal tendon.

The *rectus abdominis* arises from the crest of the pubes and is inserted above into the cartilages of the fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs, and occasionally into the ensiform cartilage.

The *transversalis* arises from the cartilages of the last six ribs, the lumbar fascia, and the anterior half of the crest of the ilium. After passing transversely across the abdomen, the fibers are inserted mainly into the linea alba.

The conjoint action of these muscles is to diminish the convexity of the abdominal walls and to exert a pressure on the abdominal organs. These, taking the line of least resistance, are forced upward against the inferior surface of the diaphragm, which in consequence becomes more strongly curved and ascends higher into the thorax. The vertical diameter of the thorax is thus diminished. Acting from the pelvis as a fixed point, these muscles will also draw downward and inward the lower end of the sternum and the lower ribs and diminish the antero-posterior and transverse diameters.

The *triangularis sterni* arises from the side of the posterior surface of the lower third of the sternum and is inserted by fleshy slips into the cartilages from the second to the sixth ribs. From their anatomic relations it is asserted that these muscles assist in the depression of the anterior extremities of the ribs during forced expiration.

The *intercostales interni*, eleven in number, occupy the spaces between and are attached to the ribs from the tubercle to the anterior extremity of the cartilages. Their fibers, which are also arranged in parallel bundles, are directed from above downward and backward (Fig. 170).

The action of the internal intercostals is less clearly understood than that of the externals, and for the same reasons. If, however, Bernouilli's model discloses the action of the latter, it equally well discloses the action of the former. Thus, if the parallel bars be joined by an elastic band having the direction of and representing the internal intercostals, and then forcibly elevated, the band is elongated and made tense. On releasing the bars, the elastic band at once recoils and depresses them. Here, again, though the elastic force is the same in both directions, the bars are depressed, for the reason that the component acting downward on the long arm of the lever preponderates over that acting upward on the short arm of the lever.

The action of the band is supposed to disclose and illustrate the action of the muscle.

The *serratus posticus inferior* arises from the spines of the last two thoracic and first two lumbar vertebræ. The fibers pass upward to be inserted into the lower border of the last four or five ribs beyond the angle. Their action is to depress the ribs and assist in expiration.

The *quadratus lumborum* has a similar action on the last rib.

Movements of the Lungs.—As the thorax is enlarging in all its diameters during inspiration, through muscle activity, the lungs are correspondingly enlarging in all their diameters, by virtue of their distensibility, through the pressure of the air within them. The lungs must therefore move downward, outward, and forward. That this is the case is made evident both by an examination of the lungs through an intercostal space after removal of the skin and intercostal muscles and by the methods of percussion. The inferior border of each lung descends from the lower border of the sixth to the eleventh rib, inserting itself into the space developed between the thorax and diaphragm as the latter contracts and is drawn away from the former. In consequence of the lateral expansion the anterior border of each lung advances toward the middle line until the heart is almost covered. With the beginning and continuance of expiration the lungs exhibit a reverse movement which continues until they reach their original position. At all times, however, the movements of the lungs are entirely passive and determined by the movements of the thorax.

Respiratory Movements of the Upper Air-passages.—The resistance to the entrance of air into and through the respiratory tract is much diminished by respiratory movements of the nares and larynx which are associated and occur synchronously with the movement of the thorax.

The nares at each inspiration are dilated by the outward movement of their alæ or wings, the result of muscle activity. At each expiration they are diminished by the return of their cartilages through the play of elastic forces. The larynx, as shown by observation with the laryngoscope, exhibits corresponding movements of the vocal membranes. Their introduction at this level naturally narrows the tract, and would interfere with both the entrance and the exit of air were they not kept widely asunder during the time they are not required for purposes of phonation. This is accomplished by the tonic contraction of the posterior crico-arytenoid muscles, which are entirely respiratory in function.

It is not infrequently stated that these membranes exhibit considerable oscillations, outward and inward, corresponding to the periods of inspiration and expiration. The statements of the majority of laryngologists do not favor this view. During tranquil breathing

the membranes are widely separated and almost stationary, seldom moving in either direction more than a few millimeters. In labored respirations these movements are naturally increased in extent. The reflex movements of the membranes occasioned by the unskilful use of the laryngoscope, especially with nervous patients, are not to be regarded as strictly physiologic. The respiratory space in quiet breathing is an isocetes triangle, with a length of 20 mm. and a width at the base of 15.5 mm.

Respiratory Types.—Observation of the respiratory movements in the two sexes shows that while the enlargement of the thoracic cavity is accomplished both by the descent of the diaphragm (as shown by the protrusion of the abdomen) and the elevation of the thoracic walls, the former movement preponderates in the male, the latter in the female, giving rise to what has been termed in the one case the *diaphragmatic* or *abdominal* and in the other the *thoracic* or *costal* type of respiration. The cause of this greater mobility and activity of the thorax in the female has been a subject of much discussion. It has been attributed, on the one hand, to the necessity for a physiologic adjustment between respiration and child-bearing, and therefore a specific sex peculiarity; on the other hand, it has been attributed to persistent constriction of the waist, in consequence of which the full play of the diaphragm is prevented and the burden of inspiration is thrown on the thoracic muscles. It has been assumed that if inspiration were confined in women to the diaphragm, there would arise in the latter stages of gestation such an increase in intra-abdominal pressure that not only would respiratory exchanges be interfered with, but fetal life might be unfavorably influenced, if not endangered. Modern investigations have not confirmed this assumption, but, on the contrary, have corroborated the view that the preponderance of thoracic movement is due to the influences of dress restrictions, for with their removal the so-called costal type of breathing entirely disappears. While gestation may lead to a greater activity of the thorax, this is but temporary, for with its termination there is a return to the diaphragmatic type of breathing.

Number of Respirations per Minute.—The number of respirations which occur in a unit of time varies with a variety of conditions, the most important of which is age. The results of the observations of Quetelet on this point, which are generally accepted, are as follows:

Age.	Respirations per Minute.	Age.	Respirations per Minute.
0-1 year, -----	44	20-25 years, -----	18.7
5 years, -----	26	25-30 " -----	16.0
15-20 " -----	20	30-50 " -----	18.0

From these observations it may be assumed that the average number of respirations in the adult is eighteen per minute, though varying

from moment to moment from sixteen to twenty. During sleep, however, the respiratory movements often diminish in number as much as 30 per cent., at the same time diminishing in depth.

Rhythm.—Each respiratory act takes place normally in a regular methodic manner, each event occurring in a definite sequence and occupying the same relative period of time. This rhythm, however, is not infrequently temporarily disturbed by emotions, volitional acts, muscle activity, phonation changes in the composition of the blood, etc.; with the removal of these disturbing factors, the respiratory mechanism soon returns to its normal condition.

FIG. 172.—PNEUMOGRAPH.—(Fitz.)

A graphic representation of the excursions of the thoracic walls, rhythmic or otherwise, is obtained by fastening to the thorax an apparatus, a *stethometer* or a *pneumograph*, which by means of a tambour takes up and transmits the movement to a second tambour provided with a recording lever. A simple form of pneumograph, suggested by Fitz (Fig. 172), consists of a coil of wire two and a half centimeters in diameter and about 40 centimeters in length, enclosed by thin rubber tubing, one end of which is closed, the other placed in communication with either a tambour and lever or with a piston recorder. By means of an inelastic cord or chain the apparatus is securely fastened to the chest. With each inspiration the spring is elongated, the air within the system is rarefied, and as a result the lever falls; with each expiration the reverse conditions obtain and the lever rises. If the lever be applied to the recording surface of a moving cylinder, a curve of the thoracic movement, a *pneumatogram*, is obtained (Fig. 173), from which it is apparent that inspiration takes place more abruptly and occupies

FIG. 173.—A PNEUMATOGRAM.—(After Marey.)

a shorter period of time than expiration; that expiration immediately follows inspiration, but that there is a slight pause between the end of the expiration and the beginning of the inspiration. The time relations of the two movements can be obtained by a magnet-signal actuated by an electric current interrupted once a second. The ratio of inspiration to expiration has been represented as 5 to 6, or 6 to 8.

Volumes of Air Breathed.—The volumes of air which enter and leave the lungs with each inspiration and expiration naturally vary with the extent of the movement, though four at least may be determined: (1) that of an ordinary inspiration; (2) that of an ordinary expiration; (3) that of a forced inspiration; (4) that of a forced expiration.

The apparatus employed for the determination of these different volumes is the *spirometer*, a modification of the gasometer. The form introduced by Jonathan Hutchinson (Fig. 174) consists of two metallic cylinders, one (a) containing water, the other (b) containing air, the latter being inserted into the former. The air cylinder is balanced by weights so accurately that it remains stationary in any position. A tube, penetrating the base of the water cylinder, is continued upward through and above the level of the water. The air-space above is thus placed in free communication with the external air. A stopcock at the outer end of this tube prevents the escape of the air when this is not desirable. To the free end of the tube a rubber tube provided with a suitable mouthpiece is attached, through which air can be breathed into or out of the air-cylinder. With each inspiration the air-cylinder descends; with each expiration it ascends. A scale, on one of the side supports, graduated in cubic inches or centimeters, indicates the volume of air inspired or expired.

FIG. 174.—SPIROMETER.—
(Hutchinson.)

With this apparatus Hutchinson, from a long series of observations, defined and determined the above-mentioned four volumes as follows:

1. The *tidal* volume, that which flows into and out of the lungs with each inspiration and expiration, which varies from 20 to 30 cubic inches (312 to 468 c.c.).
2. The *complemental* volume, that which flows into the lungs, in addition to the tidal volume, as a result of a *forcible inspiration*, and which amounts to about 110 cubic inches (1748 c.c.).
3. The *reserve* volume, that which flows out of the lungs, in addition to the tidal volume, as a result of a *forcible expiration*; and which amounts to about 100 cubic inches (1562 c.c.).

After the expulsion of the reserve volume there yet remains in the lungs an unknown volume of air which serves the mechanic

function of distending the air-cells and alveolar passages, thus maintaining the conditions essential to the free movement of blood through the capillaries and to the exchanges of gases between the blood and alveolar air. As this air can not be displaced by volitional effort, but resides permanently in the alveoli and bronchial tubes though constantly undergoing renewal, it was termed—

4. The *residual* volume, the amount of which is difficult of determination, but has been estimated by different observers at 914 c.c., 1562 c.c., 1980 c.c.

The Vital Capacity of the Lungs.—From foregoing statements it is clear that the thorax and lungs are capable of a maximum degree of expansion, at which moment the lungs contain their maximum volume of air. This volume, whatever it may be, represents the entire capacity of the lungs in the physiologic condition, and includes the tidal, the complemental, the reserve, and the residual volumes. Mr. Hutchinson, however, defined the vital or respiratory capacity of the lungs as the amount of air which can be expelled by the most forcible expiration after the most forcible inspiration, and which therefore *excludes* the residual volume. The vital capacity was supposed to be an indication of an individual's respiratory power, not only in physiologic but also in pathologic conditions. Though averaging about 230 cubic inches (3593 c.c.) for an individual 5 feet 7 inches in height, the vital capacity varies with a number of conditions, the most important of which is stature. It is found that between 5 and 6 feet the capacity increases 8 inches (125 c.c.) for each inch increase in height.

The volume changes of the thorax indicated by the volumes of air entering and leaving the lungs can be not only determined but graphically represented by means of an apparatus similar in principle to the spirometer, devised by Gad and known as the *pneumatograph* or *aëroplethysmograph* (Fig. 175). This consists of a quadrangular box with double walls, the space between which is filled with water. The center of the box is an air chamber. A thin-walled mica box sinks into the water. Posteriorly it is attached to and rotates around an axis, which permits of an elevation or depression of the anterior portion. It is also carefully counterpoised. A light lever attached to the mica box records its movements. The interior of the box communicates by a tube with a large reservoir into which the individual breathes,

FIG. 175.—PNEUMATOGRAPH.—(Gad.)

the object being to prevent a too rapid vitiation of the air. Inspiration causes the lever to descend, expiration to ascend. Previous graduation of the apparatus is necessary to determine the volumes breathed. A graphic record of the volume changes is shown in Fig. 176.

FIG. 176.—REPRESENTING THE VOLUME CHANGES OF THE THORAX AND LUNGS (DIAGRAMMATIC).

Respiratory Sounds.—On applying the ear over the trachea and bronchi there is heard during both inspiration and expiration a well-defined sound, loud, harsh, and blowing in character, which from its situation is known as the *bronchial* sound. It is especially well heard between the scapulæ above the fourth dorsal vertebra. This sound is produced in the larynx, for with its separation from the trachea the sound disappears. The cause of the sound is to be found in the narrowing of the air-passage

at the level of the vocal membranes, though the mechanism of its production is uncertain. On applying the ear to almost any portion of the chest-wall, but especially to the infrascapular area, there is heard with each inspiration a delicate, sighing, rustling sound, which from its supposed seat of origin, the air-vesicles or -cells, is known as the *vesicular* sound. This sound is supposed to be due to the sudden expansion of the air-cells during inspiration and to the friction of the air in the alveolar passages.

THE CHEMISTRY OF RESPIRATION.

The general nutritive process as it takes place in the tissues involves the assimilation of oxygen and the evolution of carbon dioxide. The former is the first, the latter the last, of a series of chemic changes the continuance of which is essential to the maintenance of all life phenomena. A constant supply of oxygen and an equally constant removal of carbon dioxide are necessary conditions for tissue activity. The respiratory movements constitute the means by which the oxygen of the air is brought into, and the carbon dioxide expelled from, the lungs into the surrounding air. The blood is the medium by which the oxygen is transported from the lungs to the tissues and the carbon dioxide from the tissues to the lungs.

The exchanges between blood and tissues constitute internal

respiration, in contradistinction to the thoracic movements by which the air is brought into relation with the blood, and which constitute external respiration. The transfer of the oxygen by the blood from the interior of the lungs to the tissues, and of the carbon dioxid from the tissues to the interior of the lungs, is the outcome of a series of chemic changes which are related to the exchange of gases between the air in the lungs and the blood, on the one hand, and between the blood and tissues, on the other.

In consequence of the many and complex chemic changes which attend these gaseous exchanges, there arise changes in composition of:

1. The air breathed.
2. The blood, both arterial and venous.
3. The tissue elements and the lymph by which they are surrounded.

The investigation of the nature of these changes, the mechanism of their production, and their quantitative relations constitutes the subject-matter of the chemistry of respiration.

CHANGES IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE AIR.

Experience teaches that the air during its sojourn in the lungs undergoes such a change in composition that it is rendered unfit for further breathing. Chemic analysis has shown that this change involves a loss of oxygen, a gain in carbon dioxid, watery vapor and organic matter. For the correct understanding of the phenomena of respiration it is essential, that not only the character but the extent of these changes be known. This necessitates an analysis of both the inspired and expired airs, from a comparison of which certain deductions can be made.

The results which have been obtained are represented in the following table:

Inspired Air.		Expired Air.	
100	{ Oxygen, ----- 20.80.	100	{ Oxygen, ----- 16.02.
vols.	{ Carbon dioxid, --- traces.		{ Carbon dioxid, --- 4.38.
	{ Nitrogen, ----- 79.20.		{ Nitrogen, ----- 79.60.
	{ Watery vapor, --- variable.		{ Watery vapor, --- saturated.
			{ Organic matter.

These analyses indicate that under ordinary conditions the air loses oxygen to the extent of 4.78 per cent. and gains carbon dioxid to the extent of 4.38 per cent.; that it gains in nitrogen to the extent of 0.4 per cent. and in watery vapor from its initial amount to the point of saturation, as well as in organic matter. It is to these changes in their totality that those disturbances of physiologic activity are to be attributed which arise when expired air is re-breathed for any length of time without having undergone renovation.

Special forms of apparatus have been devised for the collection and analysis of gases. Their construction as well as the methods

of analysis involved are complicated and need not be described in this connection. The presence of the carbon dioxide, however, may be readily shown by breathing through a glass tube into a vessel containing barium or calcium hydrate. The turbidity which immediately follows is due to the formation of barium or calcium carbonate, which can be due only to the presence of carbon dioxide. That this turbidity is not due to the carbon dioxide normally present in the air is shown by the fact that the solution remains clear until the passage of the atmospheric air has been maintained for some time. From the percentage loss of oxygen and gain in carbon dioxide, the total oxygen absorbed and carbon dioxide exhaled may be approximately calculated. Thus, if the volume of air breathed daily be accepted at either 10,800 or 12,240 liters, and the percentage loss of oxygen be 4.78, the total oxygen absorbed may be obtained by the rule of simple proportion, *e. g.*:

$$\begin{array}{l} 100 : 4.78 :: 10,800 : x = 516 \text{ liters} \\ \text{Or} \\ 100 : 4.78 :: 12,240 : x = 585 \text{ liters.} \end{array}$$

By the same method the total carbon dioxide exhaled is found to be either 473 or 526 liters; volumes in both instances which agree very well with volumes obtained by other methods.

From the fact that when one volume of oxygen combines with carbon it gives rise to but one volume of carbon dioxide, it is evident that of the oxygen absorbed the greater portion by far is utilized in the oxidation of the carbon, while the smaller portion is utilized in the oxidation of other substances, but especially hydrogen, as shown by the increase in water eliminated beyond that consumed. These amounts, however, are not fixed but variable, and depend on the quality and quantity of the foods, exercise, etc. The ratio of the volume of the carbon dioxide exhaled to the volume of oxygen absorbed is known as the respiratory quotient, and is usually represented by the symbol $\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}}$. Thus in the foregoing analysis the respiratory quotient is 0.916.

The gain in nitrogen is a variable factor, ranging from zero to 0.9 per cent. This gain is probably of accidental occurrence, due to absorption from the large intestine, in which decomposition of nitrogen-holding compounds is taking place. It is generally believed that free nitrogen plays no part in any phenomenon of combination or decomposition within the body.

The gain in watery vapor will depend on the amount previously present in the air. This is conditioned by the temperature. With a rise in temperature the percentage of water increases; with a fall, it decreases. By breathing into a vessel containing pumice stone saturated with sulphuric acid, the vapor may be collected. The difference observed between the weight before and after breathing

is an indication of the amount by weight of water exhaled during the time of breathing. // It has been calculated that the amount of water exhaled daily approximates 500 grams. // Though invisible at ordinary temperatures, it becomes visible at low temperature as soon as it emerges from the respiratory tract. The loss of heat is followed by a condensation of the vapor, which appears at once as a cloudy precipitate. +1603
1608

The gain in organic matter is also variable. The amount present is not sufficient to permit of a thorough chemic analysis, but there are reasons for believing that it belongs to the proteid group of bodies. If it accumulates in the air, especially at high temperatures, it readily undergoes decomposition, with the production of offensive odors. Traces of free ammonia have also been found in the expired air. In addition to these chemic changes, the air experiences physical changes; *e. g.*, a rise in temperature and an increase in volume. The rise in temperature can be shown by breathing through a suitable mouthpiece into a glass tube containing a thermometer. By this means it has been shown that inspired air at 20° C. rises in temperature to 37° C.; at 6.3° to 29.8° C. The increase in the temperature will depend upon that of the air inspired and the time it remains in the lungs. If retained a sufficient length of time it will always become that of the body. As a result of the heat absorption the expired air increases in volume about one-ninth over that of the inspired air. When corrected for temperature and pressure and freed from aqueous vapor, the volume of the expired air is less than that of the inspired air by about one-two hundred and fiftieth.

The Composition of the Alveolar Air.—The foregoing statement of the composition of the expired air, derived in part from the upper air-passages, trachea, and bronchi, does not necessarily represent the composition of the alveolar air. It is very probable that the percentage of carbon dioxid is greater, the percentage of oxygen less, in the latter than in the former. This is made evident by collecting in several portions the expired air as it escapes from the respiratory tract and subjecting it to analysis. The last portion always contains a larger amount of carbon dioxid and a smaller amount of oxygen than the first portion. The determination of the composition of the alveolar air is extremely difficult. // It has been estimated to contain from 5 to 6 per cent. of carbon dioxid and from 14 to 18 per cent. of oxygen. X

Pulmonary Ventilation.—It is owing largely to this inequality of volumes and consequently of the "partial pressures" of these two gases in the trachea and alveoli that the degree of ventilation necessary to exchange of gases between lungs and air is maintained. Though the respiratory movements doubtless create currents in the air-passages which carry, on the one hand, a portion of the inspired air directly

into the alveoli, and, on the other hand, carry a portion of the alveolar air directly out of the body, other portions find their way into and out of the alveoli in accordance with the laws of diffusion. If the tension of the oxygen in the trachea is 158 mm. Hg and in the alveoli 114 mm. Hg, diffusion downward will take place. Equilibrium, however, is never established, as the oxygen is continually disappearing by passing into the blood. On the contrary, if the carbon dioxid tension in the alveoli is 38 to 40 mm. Hg, and in the trachea 0.3 mm. Hg, diffusion will take place upward. Equilibrium will never be established, however, as the carbon dioxid is constantly coming out of the blood. Pulmonary ventilation may also be aided by those alternate changes in volume of the heart, great vessels, and lungs occurring as the result of the heart-beat and producing the so-called cardio-pneumatic movements.

CHANGES IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD.

The blood which flows into the lungs through the pulmonary artery is dark bluish-red, that which flows from the lungs into the pulmonary veins is scarlet red, in color. The blood is changed, while flowing through the lung capillaries, from the venous to the arterial condition. As the air in the lungs gains carbon dioxid and loses oxygen, it is fair to assume that what the air gains the blood loses, and what the air loses the blood gains. In other words, the blood, while passing through the lungs, is changed from venous to arterial by the loss of carbon dioxid and the gain of oxygen. The change in color of venous blood from dark bluish to scarlet red is strikingly shown by shaking it in a test-tube with oxygen or atmospheric air.

The blood which flows into the tissues through the arteries is red, that which flows from the tissues into the veins is bluish, in color. The blood while flowing through the tissue capillaries is changed from the arterial to the venous condition. Since arterial blood when deprived of oxygen becomes bluish-red, the indication is that the change in color is associated with, if not entirely due to, the escape of oxygen into the tissues. The constant elimination of carbon dioxid from the blood into the lungs indicates that the carbon dioxid is as constantly passing from the tissues through the capillary walls into the blood.

These considerations are confirmed by the results of analyses which have been made of both venous and arterial blood. The presence of gas in the blood is demonstrated by subjecting it under appropriate conditions to the vacuum of the mercurial air-pump, into which it at once escapes. From 100 volumes, an average of 60 volumes of gas at standard pressure, 760 mm. Hg and temperature 0° C., can thus be obtained.

Gases of the Blood.—An analysis of the volumes of gas removed

from both venous and arterial blood shows that each consists of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nitrogen, though in different amounts. An average composition of the gases extracted from dog's blood obtained from the right ventricle and carotid artery is given in the following table:

Venous blood 100 vols.	{	Oxygen, ----	9-12 vols.	Arterial blood 100 vols.	{	Oxygen, ----	20 vols.
		Carbon dioxid,	45 "			Carbon dioxid,	40 "
		Nitrogen, ---	1-2 "			Nitrogen, ---	1-2 "

The changes produced in the blood by respiration, both external and internal, become apparent from a comparison of these analyses. The venous blood while passing through the lungs ^{"i.e." burning} gains from right to eleven volumes per cent. of oxygen and loses five volumes per cent. of carbon dioxide. The arterial blood while passing through the tissues loses oxygen and gains carbon dioxide in corresponding amounts. The volume of nitrogen is not appreciably changed. Arterial.

The Relation of the Gases in the Blood.—The mechanism by which the gases become associated with the blood at the moment of their entrance into it, and again become dissociated just prior to their exit from it, as well as their relation while in transit, will be more readily understood after reference to a few elementary facts relative to the absorption of gases in general and the conditions of temperature and pressure by which it is influenced.

It is well known that liquids will take up, absorb, or dissolve unequal volumes of different gases in accordance with their solubilities and with variations in temperature and pressure. Water, for example, will absorb oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nitrogen as well as other gases in amounts varying with the foregoing conditions. The amount of any gas absorbed by one volume of a liquid at a temperature of 0° C. and a pressure of 760 mm. Hg is known as the coefficient of absorption. The coefficient of absorption of 1 volume of distilled water for oxygen is 0.0489 volume; of carbon dioxide, 1.797 volumes; of nitrogen, 0.023 volume. With a rise in temperature, however, the absorptive power of water for each one of these gases diminishes. On the contrary, as the pressure rises the quantity of the gas absorbed increases, and as it falls, decreases. In all gaseous determinations, therefore, it is always necessary, for purposes of comparison, to reduce the obtained volumes to standard temperature (0° C.) and pressure (760 mm. Hg).

If water be exposed to atmospheric air consisting of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nitrogen in the ordinary proportions, at any given temperature and pressure, the water will absorb unequal volumes of each of the three gases. The pressure under which each gas is absorbed is a part only, however, of the total atmospheric pressure at the time. The pressure exerted by any one of

these three gases is known as its partial pressure, and depends on the percentage volume of the gas present. If atmospheric air contains at standard pressure and temperature 79.15 volumes per cent. of nitrogen, its partial pressure will be $\frac{79.15}{100}$ of 760, or 601.54 mm. Hg; if the air contains 0.04 volume per cent. of carbon dioxid and 20.85 volumes per cent. of oxygen, the partial pressure of each will be 0.30 mm. Hg and 158.46 mm. Hg respectively. The absorption of each gas is independent of all the rest, and is the same for nitrogen, for example, as if it alone were present at a pressure of 601.54 mm. Hg.

Again, if water holding in solution a certain volume of a gas—carbon dioxid, for example—be exposed to an atmosphere containing but 0.04 volume per cent. of carbon dioxid, and having therefore a pressure of but 0.3 mm. Hg, the gas will at once begin to leave the water, and continue to do so until the pressure of the carbon dioxid in the atmosphere balances the tension of the gas in the water, at which moment the escape of the gas ceases. The tension of a gas in a liquid is equal to that pressure in millimeters of mercury of the same gas in the atmosphere which is required to keep it in solution. Pressure and tension are therefore in this case convertible terms. What is true for the carbon dioxid is true for any other gas that may be in solution. It will be recalled that the blood yields up its gases when subjected to the vacuum of the mercurial pump; that is, to a diminution or complete removal of the atmospheric pressure. From this it might be inferred that the gases are merely held in solution by pressure, and at once escape the moment they are exposed to a space in which there is a very slight or a total absence of pressure. It is therefore necessary to test this supposed condition of the gases in the blood by subjecting the latter to gradually diminishing pressures, with a view of determining in how far the evolution of the gases follows the law of partial pressures. For convenience the conditions of each gas will be considered separately.

Oxygen.—If blood is subjected to a succession of pressures progressively less than the standard, it is found that though oxygen is evolved, its evolution is not in accordance with the law of partial pressures; that is, in proportion to the diminution of pressure. Within wide limits—*e. g.*, from 760 to 238 mm. atmospheric pressure, to which correspond oxygen pressures of 160 and 50 mm. respectively—there is but a slight increase in the amount of oxygen evolved; and it is not until the pressure of the oxygen falls to about 40 to 30 mm. that it begins to be liberated in large amounts. From this on, the oxygen continues to be liberated with decreasing pressures, until the zero point is reached, when all gaseous discharge ceases. Coincidentally the blood changes in color from a bright red to a deep bluish-red. It is evident from the results of this procedure that the condition of the oxygen in the blood is but to a slight extent one of

physical absorption. The indications are that it partakes of the nature of a chemic combination.

If the red corpuscles be removed from the blood and the plasma alone be treated in the manner above described, it will be found that the oxygen liberated now follows the law of partial pressure. The amount so liberated, however, is small—about one per cent. of the total oxygen of the blood. The agent therefore which holds the oxygen in combination is the red corpuscle, and more especially the hemoglobin, which constitutes about 94 per cent. of its volume. This is proved by the fact that a solution of gas-free hemoglobin of a strength equivalent to that of the blood (14 per cent.), exposed to gradually increasing pressures from zero up to 30 or 40 mm. oxygen pressure, will absorb large quantities of oxygen; beyond this point the amount absorbed is again small in comparison. At 70 mm. pressure the hemoglobin is almost saturated. Coincidentally with this absorption the hemoglobin changes in color from dark blue to bright red; changes from hemoglobin to oxyhemoglobin. The reverse method, that of subjecting oxyhemoglobin to gradually diminishing pressures, yields opposite results. As one gram of hemoglobin combines with 1.59 c.c. of oxygen, and as the percentage of hemoglobin is 13.50 to 14, it is evident that there is sufficient hemoglobin to combine with practically all the oxygen usually present in the blood. #

The relation of the oxygen in the blood is therefore partly physical, partly chemical. One per cent. is physically absorbed by or dissolved in the plasma; the remainder is chemically combined with the hemoglobin.

The association or combination of oxygen is favored by a pressure of at least from 30 to 50 mm. Hg and upward; the dissociation, by diminution of pressure. In the conversion of hemoglobin into oxyhemoglobin two antagonistic forces are at work, heat and chemic affinity. The former endeavors to prevent, the latter to favor, the union. Chemic affinity increases with the influence of mass, that is, in proportion to the number of atoms in a unit of volume, with the density and with the partial pressure of the oxygen. Diminution of pressure reduces the mass influence and permits the heat to bring about dissociation (Bunge). The following table by Hüfner shows the relative proportion of hemoglobin and oxyhemoglobin in blood containing 14 per cent. hemoglobin and exposed to air at gradually diminishing pressures:

ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE IN MM. Hg.	PARTIAL PRESSURE OF OXYGEN IN MM. Hg.	HEMOGLOBIN PERCENTAGE.	OXYHEMOGLOBIN PERCENTAGE.
760	159.3	1.49	98.51
524.8	110	2.14	97.86
357.8	75	3.11	96.89
238.5	50	4.60	95.40
119.3	25	8.79	91.21
47.7	10	19.36	80.64
23.8	5	32.51	67.49
0.0	0.0	100.00	0.00

Carbon Dioxid.—The blood yields up its contained carbon dioxid to the vacuum of the gas-pump as completely as it does its oxygen. The same is not the case, however, if the red corpuscles are first removed and the experiment made with either plasma or serum. Even at zero pressure the fluid contains carbon dioxid, as shown by its liberation on the addition of some weak acid, as tartaric or phosphoric, an indication that it exists in a state of firm combination. The same result follows the addition of the red blood-corpuscles, which act in a manner similar to the acids just mentioned. This property of the corpuscles has been attributed to hemoglobin, and especially when in the state of oxyhemoglobin. It is for this reason that blood yields all its carbon dioxid to the vacuum of the gas-pump.

The limit of pressure at which the plasma ceases to physically absorb carbon dioxid and begins to chemically combine it is not very clearly defined. It has been estimated that of the entire amount, 38 to 45 volumes, only about 2.5 volumes are so absorbed, the remainder being in a condition of both loose and stable combination.

An analysis of the serum, and presumably of the plasma, shows the presence of sodium salts, with which the carbon dioxid could enter into combination, viz.: sodium carbonate and dibasic sodium phosphate. The sodium is thus partly divided between carbonic acid and phosphoric acid. The amount of the sodium which falls to carbon dioxid will depend on the mass influence of the latter; that is, its partial pressure.

At its origin in the tissues the carbon dioxid acquires a considerable tension, and its mass influence is correspondingly large. On entering the blood it combines with sodium carbonate, with the formation of sodium bicarbonate, as shown in the following equation:

At the same time, having a greater mass influence than the phosphoric acid, it will withdraw from the dibasic sodium phosphate one-half of its sodium, with the formation of sodium bicarbonate and monobasic sodium phosphate, as shown in the following equation:

With the diffusion of the carbon dioxid from the blood into the alveoli its tension in the venous blood falls, its mass influence diminishes, while that of the phosphoric acid relatively increases. As a result, the sodium is withdrawn from the sodium bicarbonate, an additional liberation of carbon dioxid takes place and dibasic sodium phosphate is re-formed. The association or combination of the carbon dioxid with the basic salts depends on its partial pressure; its dissociation in the lungs, on a diminution of pressure.

Nitrogen.—This gas exists in both arterial and venous blood in a state of solution. There is no evidence that it enters into combination with any other element.

Tension of the Gases in the Blood.—It will be recalled that a liquid holding in solution one or more gases will on exposure to an atmosphere composed of the same gases either give up or absorb volumes varying in amount and in accordance with their partial pressures until equilibrium is established. If the pressure of any one gas in the atmosphere is greater than in the liquid, it is absorbed; if the pressure is less, it is discharged. Knowing the pressure of the gases in percentages of an atmosphere, at the beginning and the end of an experiment, the original tension or pressure of the gases in the liquid can be easily calculated. On this principle various forms of apparatus known as *aërotonometers* have been devised by which the tension of the gases in the blood can be determined.

These appliances consist essentially of a glass tube containing oxygen and carbon dioxid in known amounts and tensions. The blood from an animal is then allowed to flow directly from an artery or vein into the tube. As it flows down its sides in a thin layer it presents a large surface to the action of the contained gases. In the *aërotonometer* of Fredericq the blood made non-coagulable by the injection of peptone is returned from the opposite extremity of the tube to the animal. This enables the experiment to be continued for an hour or more. A knowledge of the tensions of the blood gases is of interest, as it affords a clue to the mechanism by which the interchange takes place between the lungs and the blood, on the one hand, and the blood and tissues, on the other. The results, however, of different observers are not sufficiently in accord to permit of positive deductions.

In the well-known and generally accepted experiments of Strassburger, the tension of the oxygen in the arterial blood of the dog was found to be 29.64 mm. Hg, or 3.9 per cent. of an atmosphere, and in the venous blood 22.04 mm. Hg, or 2.9 per cent. The tension of the carbon dioxid in the venous blood was found to be 41.04 mm. Hg, or 5.4 per cent. of an atmosphere, and in the arterial blood 21.8 mm. Hg, or 2.8 per cent. In the experiments of Fredericq the oxygen tension in the arterial blood was found to be 106 mm. Hg, or 14 per cent. of an atmosphere.

CHANGES IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE TISSUES AND LYMPH.

From previous statements the inferences can be drawn that the oxygen leaves the blood as the latter flows through the capillaries; that it passes through the capillary wall into the surrounding lymph and so to the tissue-cells; that it oxidizes food materials in the tissue-

cells whereby the potential energy of the former is liberated as kinetic energy; that the carbon dioxid so evolved passes into the lymph and through the wall of the capillary into the blood.

While this is doubtless the case, the presence of free oxygen in the tissues can not be demonstrated by the usual methods of gas analysis. Only in the saliva and in the blood of the placental umbilical vein can it be shown that oxygen has directly passed through the capillary wall. For this reason it has been claimed by a few investigators that oxygen does not leave the blood, but that the field of its activity as an oxidizing agent is limited to the blood-current, where it meets with and oxidizes easily reducible substances entering from the tissues. On this view the potential energy of the food would be liberated by mere decomposition or cleavage in consequence of cell activity.

Nevertheless many facts from the fields of comparative physiology and physiologic chemistry combine to support the view that oxygen is absolutely necessary to the maintenance of the life of all tissue-cells. Though they will continue to manifest their characteristic activities—*e. g.*, contraction on the part of a muscle, secretion by a gland, the conduction of a nerve impulse by the nerve, etc.—for a variable length of time after oxygen is prevented from gaining access to them, nevertheless they will in due time die.

The necessity for oxygen on the part of the tissues and the avidity with which they absorb it, is shown by their power of reducing pigments such as alizarine blue. If this pigment be injected into the blood-vessels of an animal and the animal killed in about ten minutes, it will be found that while the blood exhibits a deep blue color the tissues present their usual colors. But after exposure to the air or to free oxygen the latter also acquire the characteristic blue color. The explanation offered for this fact is that the tissues in their need for oxygen absolutely extract it from the pigment, reducing it to a colorless compound, which, however, on exposure recombines with oxygen and regains the original color.

Though free oxygen can not be shown to be present in the tissues, there are many reasons for believing that it is continually passing into them by way of the lymph-stream. Its rapid disappearance would indicate that it is immediately utilized for the production of carbon dioxid (which is improbable on other grounds), or that the tissues possess a capacity for oxygen storage, of placing it in reserve under some combination or other, by which it can be securely retained until required for oxidation purposes. This is rendered probable from the fact that the carbon dioxid evolved at any given moment is not necessarily dependent on the oxygen just absorbed, for if oxygen be withheld from a nutritive fluid which is being artificially circulated through a recently isolated organ, carbon dioxid will continue to be discharged for some time. A muscle, or even a living animal,—*e. g.*,

a frog,—placed in an atmosphere of pure nitrogen will remain active and evolve CO_2 for even several hours.

Naturally the absorption of oxygen and the discharge of carbon dioxid and the changes of composition which are incident to nutrition will be most marked in those tissues characterized by the greatest degree of physiologic activity. Muscle-tissue exhibits these changes to a greater degree than bone. Tissues with intermediate degrees of activity should exhibit corresponding degrees of respiratory change. Experiment confirms this view. Thus, 100 grams each of muscle, spleen, and broken bone from a recently living animal exposed to the air for twenty-four hours absorbed respectively 50.8 c.c., 27.3 c.c., and 17.2 c.c. of oxygen, while each discharged during the same period 56.8 c.c., 15.4 c.c., and 8.1 c.c. of carbon dioxid respectively. In another series of experiments by a different observer 100 grams of muscle absorbed in three hours 23 c.c. of oxygen, and 100 grams of bone 5 c.c. of oxygen. Both tissues discharged carbon dioxid in amounts proportional to the oxygen absorbed. The same respiratory changes may be more satisfactorily demonstrated by passing blood through the tissues of isolated organs and the tissues of recently living animals. The analysis of the blood before and after perfusion shows a loss of oxygen and a gain in carbon dioxid.

Tension of the Gases in the Tissues.—As the presence of free oxygen can not be demonstrated, its tension there must be regarded as *nil*. The tension of the carbon dioxid is quite high, though difficult of exact determination. It has been estimated at from 45 to 68 mm. Hg, or from 6 to 9 per cent. of an atmosphere.

The variations of tension or pressure of these two gases in the lungs, in different parts of the vascular apparatus, and in the tissues, and their relations to each other, are shown in Fig. 177, expressed in mm. Hg and percentages of an atmosphere.

The Mechanism of the Gaseous Exchange.—In these pressure differences sufficient cause is found for the exchange of the gases. The oxygen pressure in the alveoli being in excess of that in the blood, the gas passes through the thin alveolo-capillary wall into the plasma. As the pressure in the plasma rises, the oxygen combines with the hemoglobin, until the latter is almost saturated. On passing into the systemic capillaries the blood enters a region in which the oxygen tension of the surrounding tissues is *nil*. At once a dissociation of the oxyhemoglobin and oxygen takes place, after which the latter passes through the capillary wall into the plasma and so to the tissue-cells, in which it is stored and utilized. The sojourn of the blood in the capillaries being of short duration, the oxyhemoglobin can part with but a portion of its oxygen, sufficient, however, to satisfy the needs of the tissues.

The carbon dioxide pressure in the tissues being in excess of that in the blood, it passes through the capillary wall into the blood, where it exists in the free and combined states. On passing into the pulmonary capillaries the blood enters a region in which the carbon dioxide in the alveoli is less than in the blood. At once a diffusion and dissociation of the carbon dioxide takes place through the alveolo-capillary wall until equilibrium is established. This, however, is of very short duration, for the carbon dioxide so eliminated is rapidly removed from the lungs by the respiratory movements.

While diffusion, in response to physical and chemical conditions,

thus plays a large part in, and is sufficient to account for, the exchanges of gases, it is possible that the alveolar or respiratory epithelium may also play an essential rôle. It is believed by some investigators that it is active in both the absorption of oxygen and the excretion of carbon dioxide. This view has been suggested as a means of interpreting the results of the experiments of more recent investigators, made with a view of determining the tension of the blood gases. It

FIG. 177.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATIVE TENSION OF OXYGEN AND CARBON DIOXIDE IN THE LUNGS, IN THE BLOOD, AND IN THE TISSUES.

was found by Bohr that the tension of the oxygen in arterial blood was often as high as 101 to 144 mm. Hg, and in many instances higher than the tension of the oxygen in the trachea, while the carbon dioxide tension in the trachea was higher than in the blood. Haldane and Smith by a different method found an oxygen tension in the arterial blood of 200 mm. Hg. If these results should prove to be correct, though they are at present subject to considerable criticism and not generally accepted, some other force than diffusion would

have to be found to explain the facts. It would then remain to determine in how far the alveolar epithelium could be regarded as an active agent in both absorption and excretion in opposition to pressure.

THE TOTAL RESPIRATORY EXCHANGE.

The total quantities of oxygen absorbed and carbon dioxid discharged by a human being in twenty-four hours are measures of the intensity of the respiratory process, and an indication of the extent and character of the chemic changes attending all life phenomena. Their determination and their relation to each other are matters of interest and importance. The quantities which have been obtained by different observers are the outcome of calculations based on certain groups of data and of experiments made with special forms of apparatus.

Thus from the total air breathed daily, estimated from the amounts obtained during a longer or shorter period, of experiments with spirometric apparatus, and from the percentage loss of oxygen and gain of carbon dioxid shown by an analysis of the respired air, it can be calculated at least approximately what the total amounts of oxygen absorbed and carbon dioxid exhaled must be. If it be assumed that the minimum daily volume of air breathed is 10,800 liters and the maximum volume 12,240 liters, and the percentage loss of oxygen is 4.78, then the total volume of oxygen absorbed is 516 liters (735.17 grams) or 585 liters (836.42 grams). By the same method the total carbon dioxid exhaled daily is found to be either 473 liters (931.8 grams) or 526 liters (1036 grams). The direct experiments which have been made with specially devised forms of apparatus, both on human beings and animals, have yielded similar results. With those forms which are adapted for both human beings and animals—Scharling's, Pettenkofer and Voit's—it is only possible, however, to determine the amount of carbon dioxid and water, and from these to calculate the amount of oxygen absorbed. This is done by deducting the loss in weight by the man or animal during the experiment from the combined weights of the carbon dioxid and water discharged. The difference represents the oxygen absorbed.

The Pettenkofer-Voit apparatus (Fig. 178) consists essentially of a chamber large enough to admit a man and capable of being made air-tight with the exception of an inlet for air for breathing purposes. The respired air is drawn through a tube and measured by a large meter turned by a water or gas motor. By means of a side tube a fractional quantity of the main column of air is diverted to an absorption apparatus by a small pump. This air first passes into a vessel containing H_2SO_4 , by which the water is collected; then into long tubes containing barium hydroxid, by which the carbon dioxid is absorbed; thence into a small meter, by which its amount is

FIG. 178.—THE PETTENKOFER-VOIT RESPIRATION APPARATUS. M and H. Chambers for man and animal respectively, in connection, by means of a tube, b, d, with a large gas-meter, B, by which the air is withdrawn from the chamber. A portion of the air is diverted from the tube by small pumps and these forced into and through the absorption tubes. The volume is measured by small gas-meters above. The revolution of the meter is caused by the turning of a water-wheel, G, set in action by water falling from the tube f.

registered. From the amount of water and carbon dioxid thus obtained the amounts of both in the total air breathed are calculated. The water and carbon dioxid previously present in the air are simultaneously determined by a corresponding absorption apparatus and deducted from the amounts obtained from the respired air. As the apparatus is traversed constantly by a column of air of normal composition and the waste products removed as rapidly as discharged,

FIG. 179.—REGNAULT'S AND REISET'S RESPIRATION APPARATUS. A. Bell-jar for the reception of the animal, surrounded by a compartment, B, containing water. N, N, N. Reservoirs of oxygen communicating, on the one hand, with the animal chamber, and, on the other hand, with pressure bottles, P, by which the oxygen is driven into the animal chamber. G, G. Aspiratory bulbs containing sodium hydroxid in solution for the absorption of the carbon dioxid. The bulbs are given an alternate up-and-down movement by a falling weight or electric motor.

the experiment can be continued for periods varying from six to twenty-four hours without detriment to the subject of the experiment.

With those forms adapted only for animals—Regnault's and Reiset's, or Jolyet and Regnard's—it is possible to determine simultaneously the absorption of oxygen and the discharge of carbon dioxid. As the apparatus employed is completely closed, the carbon

dioxid must be removed as soon as discharged and the oxygen renewed as soon as absorbed. The former is accomplished by the aspiratory action of moving bulbs containing an alkali, the latter by a steadily acting pressure on a reservoir of oxygen. This apparatus (Fig. 179) consists essentially of a bell-jar in which the animal is placed. This is brought into connection by tubes, on the one hand, with the oxygen reservoir, and, on the other hand, with the aspiratory bulbs, kept in motion by some form of motor. The construction of each of these forms of apparatus is so complex, the conduct of an experiment and the final determination of the results so complicated, that a detailed description would be out of place in a work of this character.*

Among the results obtained by these and other methods a few are given in the following table:

Oxygen Absorbed.	Observer.	Carbon Dioxid Discharged.
746 grams.	Vierordt.	876 grams.
700 “	Pettenkofer and Voit.	800 “
663 “	Speck.	770 “

The amounts of oxygen absorbed in Pettenkofer and Voit's experiments varied from 594 to 1072 grams; of carbon dioxid exhaled, from 686 to 1285 grams.

In all these results it is evident on examination that the volume of oxygen absorbed is always greater than the volume of carbon dioxid exhaled, or, what amounts to the same thing, the weight of the oxygen absorbed is always greater than the weight of the oxygen entering into the formation of the carbon dioxid exhaled. The reason for this difference between the amounts of oxygen in the inspired air and in the CO_2 exhaled is found in the fact that on a mixed diet—one containing fat—a portion of the oxygen is utilized in the oxidation of the hydrogen of the fat with the formation of water. Under such a diet the respiratory quotient is always less than unity, usually 0.907. On a purely carbohydrate diet—one in which there is no surplus hydrogen—all the oxygen will combine with carbon and be returned as carbon dioxid, and hence the respiratory quotient will be unity. The respiratory quotient therefore indicates the extent to which the oxygen absorbed is utilized in oxidizing carbon, on the one hand, and hydrogen, on the other.

Since the total oxygen absorbed and carbon dioxid discharged will vary considerably with the size of the animal, it is customary, for purposes of comparison, to reduce all total results to the unit of body-weight (one kilogram) and to the unit of time (one hour).

* Both forms of apparatus are in use in the Physiological Laboratory of the Jefferson Medical College and are fully described by Prof. H. C. Chapman in his textbook on Physiology, to which the reader is directed for further information.

Respiratory Activity.—The activity or the intensity of the respiratory process may be measured either by the oxygen absorbed or the carbon dioxid discharged. But as the carbon dioxid is more easily estimated than the oxygen, it is usually taken as the index of the activity, though there are reasons for believing that it would be more accurately indicated or represented by the oxygen.

Whatever factor may be accepted as the measure, it is certain that the respiratory activity varies in different tissues in accordance with their functional activities, being least in bones and greatest in muscles. This is shown by the relative amounts of oxygen absorbed and carbon dioxid discharged by equal amounts of each of these and other tissues in twenty-four hours, as shown in the following table:

QUANTITY OF O AND CO₂ ABSORBED AND EXHALED DURING TWENTY-FOUR HOURS, IN CUBIC CENTIMETERS.

By 100 Grams of:	Oxygen Absorbed.	Carbonic Acid Exhaled.
Muscle, -----	50.8 c.c.	56.8 c.c.
Brain, -----	45.8 "	42.8 "
Kidneys, -----	37.0 "	15.6 "
Spleen, -----	27.3 "	15.4 "
Testicles, -----	18.3 "	27.5 "
Pounded bones, -----	17.2 "	8.1 "

The total respiratory change therefore of the body as a whole is the resultant of the respiratory changes of its individual organs and tissues, and is conditioned by all influences which retard or hasten their activity. Among these influences the more important are the following:

Muscle Activity.—As the muscles constitute a large part of the body, about 40 per cent., and as muscle-tissue absorbs and discharges relatively large quantities of oxygen and carbon dioxid, it is readily apparent that an increase in their activity would be followed or attended by an increase in the respiratory exchange. In passing from a condition of body repose to one of marked activity there ought to be an increase in the amount of oxygen absorbed and CO₂ discharged. Pettenkofer and Voit found that a man in repose who absorbed daily 807.8 grams of oxygen and discharged 930 grams CO₂ absorbed during work 1006 grams of oxygen and discharged 1137 grams of CO₂. Edward Smith, who estimated only the CO₂, found that a man in repose who discharged carbon dioxid at the rate of 161.6 c.c. per minute increased the amount while walking at the rate of two and three miles an hour to 569 c.c. and 851 c.c. respectively. Similar results have been obtained by other investigators.

Digestive Activity.—The activity of the alimentary canal, involving contraction of its muscle coat through its entire length as well as secretion of its related glands called forth by the ingestion of food, materially influences the absorption of oxygen and

discharge of carbon dioxid, independent of the increase due to the oxidation of food materials after absorption. It was found that in a fasting man a dose of sodium sulphate increased the absorption of oxygen as much as 17 per cent. and the discharge of CO_2 24 per cent. (Löwy). It is difficult to determine how much of the increase after a meal is therefore due to food oxidation and how much to functional activity of the canal itself. The consumption of nitrogenized meals, however, has a greater effect than non-nitrogenized meals.

Temperature.—A rise in temperature of the surrounding air has as an effect a diminution in the amounts of oxygen consumed and carbon dioxid discharged. A fall in temperature has the opposite effect. Thus a cat at a temperature of -3.2°C . consumed during a period of six hours 21.39 grams of oxygen and discharged 22 grams of carbon dioxid, while at a temperature of 29.6°C . the corresponding amounts for the same period of time were for oxygen 13.9 grams and for carbon dioxid 13.12 grams. Lavoisier and Sequin, having reference only to the oxygen, found that a man at a temperature of 15°C . consumed 38.31 grams of oxygen, while at a temperature of 32.8°C . the corresponding amount was but 35 grams. Similar results have been obtained by other observers with different animals. The explanation of these facts is to be found in the increased activity of all physiologic mechanisms coincident with a fall, and in the decreased activity, coincident with a rise in temperature. The lower temperatures act as a stimulus to the peripheral terminations of the nerve system, bringing about reflexly increased activity of the body at large. The muscles especially are not only reflexly but volitionally excited to greater activity. This leads naturally to an increase in the consumption of oxygen and in the production of carbon dioxid and in the evolution of heat.

In cold-blooded animals the respiratory exchange is influenced in a manner the reverse of that observed in warm-blooded animals. With a rise of external temperature and a corresponding rise of body-temperature the discharge of carbon dioxid steadily increases. Thus a frog in an atmosphere at 0°C . with a body-temperature of 1°C . discharged per kilogram per hour 4.31 c.c. of carbon dioxid; in an atmosphere of 35°C . with a body-temperature of 34°C . there was discharged 325 c.c. per kilo per hour. Intermediate temperatures were attended by corresponding increases in the amounts of CO_2 discharged. The reason for this difference in the two classes of animals is probably to be found in the want, in the cold-blooded animals, of a self-adjusting heat-regulating mechanism.

Age.—In early youth, as a result partly of the more pronounced activity of the nutritive energies and partly of a cutaneous surface relatively greater, as compared with the mass of the body, than in adult life, the absorption of oxygen and the discharge of carbon

dioxid are greater both absolutely and relatively. Thus, in a boy of nine and a half years with a weight of 22 kilograms it was found that in twenty-four hours there was a discharge of carbon dioxid amounting to 488 grams, or 0.92 gram per kilo per hour, and in man with a weight of 65.5 kilograms there was a discharge of 804.72 grams, or 0.51 gram per kilo per hour.

MODIFICATION OF RESPIRATORY RHYTHM.

The character of the respiratory movements is materially modified by a change in the quantitative and qualitative composition of the air and blood as well as by changes of a pathologic nature of the respiratory apparatus itself.

Eupnea.—So long as the air retains its normal composition and the respiratory mechanism its structural integrity, so long do the respiratory movements exhibit a normal rhythm and frequency. To the condition of easy tranquil breathing the term *eupnea* is given. In this condition the percentages of oxygen and carbon dioxid in the blood are such as to favor at least the rhythmic discharge of nerve impulses to the respiratory muscles, of sufficient energy and frequency for the maintenance of normal respiration.

Hyperpnea.—The normal rate of the respiratory movements is increased by a rise in body-temperature, by active exercise, and by emotional states. Whatever the cause, the increase in rate and probably in depth is termed *hyperpnea*.

Febrile states characterized by a rise in the temperature of the blood increase considerably the respiratory activity. This is due in all probability to a warming of the respiratory center, in consequence of which its excitability is heightened; for surrounding the carotid arteries with warm tubes and heating the blood on its way to the medulla has the same effect. It is also possible, however, that the high temperature of febrile conditions may interfere with the absorbing power of hemoglobin, and thus by diminishing the quantity of oxygen absorbed lead to more frequent respirations. To the hyperpnea induced by heat the term *thermo-polympnea* is frequently given.

Muscle activity, especially if it is violent and indulged in by those unaccustomed to exercise, is generally followed by increased rate and depth of breathing, and not infrequently it is attended with such extreme difficulty that the condition approximates that of dyspnea. This condition is attributed to the production and discharge into the blood of unknown waste products which act as irritants to the respiratory center and thus increase its activity. As they apparently can not be isolated and their chemic nature determined, it is presumable that they are speedily oxidized or reduced in the blood. Experiment has shown that the increase of carbon

dioxid does not account for the increased rate of breathing. Emotional states temporarily increase respiratory activity. With their disappearance the normal condition returns.

Apnea.—If the respiratory movements be voluntarily increased in frequency and depth for a short time it will be found on cessation that for a variable length of time the respiratory mechanism remains in a condition of complete rest or inaction. To this complete cessation of activity the term *apnea* is given. The same phenomenon is witnessed in animals when the lungs are rapidly inflated with air by means of bellows. At one time this was attributed to an excess of oxygen in the blood (the result of the forced ventilation of the lungs), complete saturation of the plasma and hemoglobin, in consequence of which the respiratory center remained inactive. This has been disproved, however, by modern chemic analyses of the blood. The condition is now attributed:

1. To increased ventilation of the lungs and an increased percentage of oxygen in the alveoli, as a result of which the normal percentage of oxygen in the blood can be maintained for a longer period than usual.
2. To a stimulation of the peripheral terminations of the pneumogastric nerve whereby the discharge of nerve impulses from the respiratory center is temporarily inhibited. Division of the pneumogastric nerve prevents the development of the apneic condition.

Dyspnea.—Excessive and laborious respiratory movements constitute a condition known as *dyspnea*. Movements of this character indicate that the blood is deficient in oxygen or overcharged with carbon dioxid. In either case the excitability of the respiratory center is abnormally heightened. These conditions of the blood may be caused: (1) By all those pathologic conditions of the respiratory apparatus which limit the free entrance of oxygen into and the free exit of carbon dioxid from the blood; (2) by those alterations in the composition of the air and subsequently in the blood which arise when the individual is confined in a space of moderate size with imperfect ventilation. The want of oxygen in the blood gives rise to more forcible inspirations; the presence of CO_2 in excess, to more forcible expirations—showing that the former condition affects the inspiratory portion of the respiratory center, the latter condition the expiratory portion. A deficiency in the amount or quality of the hemoglobin is usually attended with dyspnea.

Asphyxia.—If the state of the blood observed in dyspnea be exaggerated,—that is, if the decrease in the percentage of oxygen and the increase in the percentage of carbon dioxid become more marked,—the respiratory movements become more laborious. A continuance of this changed composition of the blood eventuates

in death. Before this occurs the individual exhibits a succession of phenomena, to the totality of which the term *asphyxia* is given.

Asphyxia may be caused: (1) By a sudden interference with the entrance of oxygen into and the exit of carbon dioxid from the blood, as in drowning, occlusion of the trachea from any cause, double pneumothorax, etc. (2) By confinement in a small space the air of which speedily undergoes a loss of oxygen and an accumulation of carbon dioxid. In the first instance death may occur in a few minutes; in the second instance it may be postponed several hours or more, the time varying with the size of the space.

The succession of phenomena presented by an individual in the asphyxiated condition is as follows: Increased rate and depth of the respiratory movements, passing rapidly from hyperpnea to dyspnea, with an active contraction of all the muscles concerned in respiration, ordinary and extraordinary; a blue cyanosed condition of the face from the rapid accumulation of carbon dioxid and disappearance of the oxygen of the blood; a diminution in the depth of inspiration and an increase in the force and extent of expiration, followed by general convulsions; collapse, characterized by unconsciousness, loss of the reflexes, relaxation of the muscles, a weak action of the heart, a disappearance of the pulse and death. As shown by observation of the circulatory apparatus in artificially induced asphyxia, there is primarily an increase in the activity of the heart, soon followed by retardation; a rise of blood-pressure in the early stages and a fall to zero after collapse has set in. The retardation and final cessation of the heart, as well as the rise of the blood-pressure, are to be attributed to stimulation of the cardio-inhibitory and vasomotor centers from the accumulation of the carbon dioxid. With the exhaustion of the nerve-centers, there is a general relaxation of the muscles and a fall of the pressure.

THE NERVE MECHANISM OF RESPIRATION.

The nerve mechanism by which the respiratory muscles are excited to action is extremely complex and involves the action of both afferent and efferent nerves and their related nerve-centers in the central nerve system. For the free introduction of air into the lungs it is essential that the nasal and laryngeal passages and the cavity of the thorax be simultaneously enlarged. The muscles by which these results are accomplished have already been mentioned and described. Their simultaneous and coördinate contraction implies the coördinate activity of motor nerves and their centers; thus, the nasal and laryngeal muscles (the dilator naris and the posterior crico-arytenoid) involve the activity of the facial and inferior laryngeal nerves respectively, the centers of origin of which lie in the gray matter beneath

the floor of the fourth ventricle; the diaphragm and intercostal muscles involve respectively the activity of the phrenic and intercostal nerves, the centers of origin of which lie in the anterior horn of the gray matter of the spinal cord at a level, for the phrenic, of the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical nerves, and for the intercostals at the level of the upper thoracic nerves. Division of any one of these nerves is followed by paralysis of its related muscle.

The coördinate contraction of the inspiratory muscles implies a practically simultaneous discharge of nerve impulses from each of the foregoing nerve-centers, accurately graduated in intensity in accordance with inspiratory needs. This has been supposed to necessitate the existence in the central nerve system of a single group of nerve-cells from which nerve impulses are rhythmically discharged and conducted to the previously mentioned nerve-centers in the medulla oblongata and spinal cord, by which they are in turn excited to activity. To this group of cells the term "inspiratory center" has been given. For the free exit of air from the lungs it is not only essential that the air-passages be open, but that the air in the lungs be compressed until its pressure rises above that of the atmosphere. This is accomplished by the recoil of the elastic tissue of the lungs and thorax, the return of the displaced abdominal organs aided by atmospheric pressure, and the contraction of the expiratory muscles. In how far muscle action is necessary for expiratory purposes will depend on the resistance offered to the outflow of air and on the degree of efficiency of the elastic forces. The simultaneous and coördinate activity of the expiratory muscles also involves the action of motor nerves and nerve-centers. The simultaneous and coördinate discharge of nerve impulses, also graduated in intensity for expiratory needs, apparently implies the existence in the central nerve system of a single center from which nerve impulses are rhythmically discharged which excite and coördinate the lower nerve-centers. To this group of cells the term "expiratory center" has been given. The two centers taken together constitute the so-called "respiratory center."

The existence, however, of a definite group of cells which initiates the respiratory movements has not as yet been demonstrated. Nevertheless there is in the dorsal portion of the medulla oblongata, at the level of the sensory end-nucleus of the vagus nerve, a region the sudden destruction of which on one side is followed by a cessation of respiratory movements on the corresponding side, though they continue on the opposite side, a fact which indicates that the area, though acting as a unit, is bilateral. The bilateral character of the area is also shown by the continuance of the respiratory movements on both sides after longitudinal division of the medulla. Destruction of the entire region is followed by a complete cessation of respiratory activity and

death of the animal. For this reason the term "nœud vital" was applied to it. In this area the respiratory center was located. It has, however, been shown by Gad that if this area be gradually destroyed by cauterization the respiratory movements do not cease, but continue until the cauterization has reached a point far forward in the formatio reticularis, in which the respiratory center was assumed to lie.

Though its existence has not been anatomically determined beyond question, it is permissible to speak of the central mechanism as a "center" located in the medulla oblongata.

The activity of the respiratory center has long been described as automatic or autochthonic (Gad) in character, expressive of the idea that the rhythmic discharge of nerve impulses is conditioned by the composition of the blood or lymph by which it is surrounded. Thus so long as the blood retains its normal composition the respiratory movements are normal. If, however, the blood becomes richer in oxygen and poorer in carbon dioxid, the rate of discharge of nerve impulses and the inspiratory movements diminish until the condition of apnea results. If, on the contrary, the blood becomes poorer in oxygen and richer in carbon dioxid, the reverse condition obtains: viz., an increased rate of discharge of nerve impulses, increased frequency of respiration, hyperpnea, and dyspnea. This view is apparently supported by the fact that after division of the fifth and vagus nerves the respiratory movements continue, though changed in character, becoming less frequent and deeper. Whether they would continue after division of all afferent nerves it is impossible to state, since from the nature of the case such an experiment would be most difficult to perform.

The first inspiration after birth is supposed to be due to the direct stimulation of the respiratory center by the increase in the carbon dioxid present in the blood, though it may be aided by the cooling of the skin due to vaporization of the amniotic fluid.

Whether the respiratory center is automatic in character or not, it may be influenced directly by nerve impulses descending from the brain in consequence of volitional acts or emotional states, and indirectly by nerve impulses reflected to it from the general periphery through various afferent nerves, in consequence of agencies acting on their peripheral filaments: *e. g.*, cold applied to the skin, irritating gases to the nasal and bronchial mucous membrane, distention and collapse of the pulmonary alveoli.

Of all afferent nerves, the vagus appears to be the most influential in maintaining the rhythmic discharge of nerve impulses from the respiratory center. Thus, if while the animal is breathing regularly and quietly both vagi are cut, the respiratory movements become much slower, falling perhaps to one-third their original number per minute.

If the central end of the divided vagus be stimulated with weak faradic currents, the respiratory movements are increased in frequency and their depth diminished until the normal rate is restored. With the cessation of the stimulation the former condition at once returns. This would indicate that in the physiologic state afferent impulses are ascending the vagus fibers which influence the rate of discharge from the respiratory center. If, however, the stimulation is increased in strength, the inspiratory movement gradually so exceeds the expiratory that the muscles pass into the tetanic state and the chest-walls come to rest in the condition of forced inspiration.

The vagus evidently contains fibers which augment the activity of the inspiratory center and inhibit the activity of the expiratory center. If, on the other hand, the central end of the divided superior laryngeal nerve be stimulated with faradic currents, the opposite effect is produced: viz., an excess of the expiratory over the inspiratory movement until the chest-walls come to rest in the condition of forced expiration. The superior laryngeal nerve evidently contains fibers which augment the activity of the expiratory center and inhibit the activity of the inspiratory center.

The same result not infrequently follows stimulation of the divided vagus and always after the administration of large doses of chloral. The vagus contains two classes of fibers, one of which augments the activity of the inspiratory while inhibiting the activity of the expiratory; the other inhibiting the inspiratory while augmenting the expiratory. The stimulus adequate to the excitation of the nerve-fibers in the physiologic condition was formerly believed to be the chemic action of carbon dioxid; it is now believed to be a mechanic action, the result of the alternate distention and collapse of the walls of the pulmonary alveoli. Thus, it has been shown by Head that if the lungs are actively inflated there will be produced an inhibition of the inspiratory and an augmentation of the expiratory movement until the chest comes to rest, a result similar in all respects to that produced by stimulation of the superior laryngeal nerve. On the other hand, if the lungs are collapsed by the artificial withdrawal of air, there will be produced an augmentation of the inspiratory and an inhibition of the expiratory movements until the chest comes to rest in extreme inspiration, a result similar in all respects to that produced by powerful stimulation of the central end of the divided vagus. These facts indicate that the respiratory mechanism is reflex and self-regulating in character, and the stimulus, the alternate collapse and distention of the pulmonary alveoli, collapse augmenting the inspiratory and inhibiting the expiratory, distention, inhibiting the inspiratory and augmenting the expiratory center.

THE EFFECT OF THE RESPIRATORY MOVEMENTS ON THE FLOW OF BLOOD THROUGH THE INTRA-THORACIC VESSELS AND ON THE ARTERIAL PRESSURE.

1. On the Intra-thoracic Vessels.—The forces which cause the air to flow into and out of the lungs will at the same time and in the same way cause the blood of the systemic vessels to flow into, through, and out of the intra-thoracic vessels. From the tendency of the pulmonary elastic tissue to recoil, the blood-vessels in the thorax at the end of an expiration sustain a positive pressure, about six millimeters of mercury less, than that in the lungs, or, in other words, a pressure negative to that of the atmosphere by six millimeters. As a result, the blood in the systemic vessels standing under atmospheric pressure will flow steadily toward the intra-thoracic veins, the *venæ cavæ*, and the right side of the heart; *i. e.*, from a point of high to a point of low pressure. Since during inspiration, with the increasing tendency to pulmonary recoil, the positive pressure on the veins and heart may diminish by thirty millimeters of mercury, the blood will flow in increased volume from the systemic to the intra-thoracic vessels. The right heart, being more generally filled with blood, will discharge a larger volume with each contraction into the pulmonary artery.

Coincident with these effects a similar effect is produced in the arterioles and capillaries of the pulmonary alveoli. Situated between the two elastic layers of the alveolar wall, embedded in a meshwork of connective tissue, the pressure to which they are subjected at the end of an expiration will also be a few millimeters less than that of the intra-pulmonary air; and at the end of an inspiration it will be considerably less. With the inspiration there will occur a dilatation of the vessels, a larger flow of blood through them and into the pulmonary veins. The left heart, being in consequence more generously filled with blood, will discharge a larger volume into the aorta at each contraction. During expiration the flow of blood through the intra-thoracic vessels will be diminished for the reverse reasons.

2. On the Arterial Pressure.—An examination of a tracing of the arterial pressure will show that it is characterized by small undulations due to the cardiac beat and large undulations due to the respiratory movements, inspiration being accompanied by a rise, expiration by a fall of pressure. These results are readily accounted for by the difference in the volume of blood discharged by the left heart into the aorta during the time of the two movements. If a tracing of the respiratory movements and of the blood-pressure be taken simultaneously, it will be found that the rise of pressure does not exactly correspond with inspiration, nor the fall of pressure with expiration; for a certain period after the beginning of an inspiration the pressure continues to fall, and for a certain period after the beginning of an expiration the pressure continues to rise. During

the remainder of the period, however, inspiration is attended by a rise, expiration by a fall of pressure. The explanation of these results lies in the fact that at the beginning of the inspiration, when the vessels dilate, the blood-flow momentarily slows; the left heart continuing to discharge small volumes into the aorta, the pressure continues to fall. So soon as the left heart begins to be better filled, the pressure at once begins to rise. At the end of an expiration the flow of blood into the left heart continues and the pressure rises, but with the return of the intra-thoracic pressure the vessels diminish in caliber, the volume of blood transmitted by them becomes less, the output of the left heart declines, and the pressure falls.

CHAPTER XIV.

ANIMAL HEAT.

The chemic changes which take place in the tissues and organs of the living body and which underlie all manifestations of life are attended by the evolution of heat. In consequence of this each animal acquires a certain body-temperature.

In man, as well as in other mammals and in birds, the chemic changes are extremely active and the evolution of heat very great. Through some special heat-regulating mechanism, by which heat-production and heat-dissipation are kept in equilibrium, these animals have acquired and maintain within limits a constant temperature which is independent of and generally above that of the surrounding atmosphere. As the temperature of these animals is high and perceptible to the sense of touch, they were originally designated "warm-blooded" animals. As this temperature is constant notwithstanding the great variations in external temperature during the summer and winter seasons, they are more appropriately termed constant-temperated or *homoiothermous* animals. The intensity of the body-temperature determined by the insertion of a thermometer in the rectum varies in different classes of mammals from 37.2° C. to 40° C. The causes of this variation are doubtless connected with peculiarities of organization. In birds the rectal temperature is usually higher, varying from 40.9° C. in the pigeon to 44° C. in the titmouse and the swift.

In reptiles, amphibians, and fish chemic changes, as a rule, are not very active and heat-production relatively slight. As they are devoid of a sufficiently active heat-regulating mechanism, the temperature of the body is largely dependent on that of the medium in which they live, though it is always one or more degrees above it. In winter the body-temperature of frogs, for example, may decline as low as 8.9° C., the temperature of the surrounding medium being 6.7° C. When subjected to temperatures below zero, the temperature of the body may fall below the freezing-point also, when the lymph and fluids of the body become ice. Though apparently dead, the gradual elevation of the temperature restores their vitality. In summer-time, on the contrary, the body-temperature may attain to 38° C. Similar variations have been observed in other animals. As the temperature of these animals is low and perceptibly below that of our own bodies, they were originally termed "cold-blooded" animals;

as their temperature is inconstant, varying with the temperature of the surrounding medium, they are more appropriately termed "variable temperatured" or *poikilo-thermous* animals.

THE TEMPERATURE OF THE HUMAN BODY.

The determination of the temperature of the human body under the changing conditions of life is a matter of the greatest physiologic and clinical interest. The temperature of the superficial portions of the body may be obtained by the introduction of a thermometer into the mouth, the rectum, the vagina, or the axilla. As a result of many observations it has been found that the temperature of the rectum is, on the average, 37.2° C.; that of the mouth, 36.8° C.; that of the axilla, 36.9° C. Owing to radiation and conduction the surface temperature is lower than that of either the mouth or rectum, and varies to a slight extent in different regions of the body: *e. g.*, at a room-temperature of 20° C. the skin of the pectoral region has a temperature of 34.7° ; that of the cheek, 34.4° ; that of the calf, 33.6° ; that of the tip of the ear, only 28.8° , etc.

In the interior of the body, especially in organs in which oxidation takes place rapidly, and which at the same time are protected by their anatomic surroundings from rapid radiation, the temperature is higher than that observed in the rectum. From an investigation of the temperature of the blood as it emerges from the liver, the muscles, the brain, alimentary canal etc., it is evident that these organs have a higher temperature than the rectum.

As the chemic changes underlying physiologic activity vary in intensity and extent in different regions of the body, there would be marked variations in their temperature were it not that the blood, having a large capacity for heat-absorption, distributes the heat almost uniformly to all portions of the body, so that at a short distance beneath the surface the temperature does not vary but within a few degrees.

In the dog the temperature of the blood in the aorta and in its principal branches is approximately 38.3° C. In passing through the systemic capillaries the temperature falls from radiation and conduction to surface temperature, to again rise as the venous blood approaches the deeper regions of the body. In the neighborhood of the renal veins and in the superior vena cava the temperature is again that of the aorta. In the portal vein the temperature rises to 40.2° C.; in the hepatic vein, to 40.6° C. In the right ventricle, owing to the admixture of blood from different localities having different temperatures, the temperature falls to 38.2° to 40.4° . In passing through the pulmonary capillaries the temperature of the blood again falls, so that in the left ventricle it will register from 38° C. to 40.2° C.

There is thus usually a difference between the two sides of the heart of about 0.2° C.

Variations in the Mean Temperature.—The mean temperature of the human body for twenty-four hours, which for the mouth and rectum may be accepted at 36.7° C. and 37.2° C. respectively, is subject to variations from a variety of circumstances, such as age, periods of the day, food, exercise, etc.

Age.—At birth the temperature of the infant is slightly higher than that of the mother, registering in the rectum about 37.5° C. In a few hours it rapidly declines to about 36.5° , to be followed in the course of twenty-four hours by a rise to the normal or slightly beyond. During childhood the temperature gradually approximates that of the adult. In old age the temperature rises, as a rule, and attains a maximum at eighty years of 37.4° C.

Periods of the Day.—The observations of Jürgensen show that there is a diurnal variation in the mean temperature of from 0.5° C. to 1.5° C., the maximum occurring late in the afternoon, from 5 to 7 o'clock, the minimum early in the morning, from 4 to 7 o'clock. This diurnal variation in the mean temperature is related to corresponding variations in many other physiologic processes, and its causes are to be found in the ordinary habits of life as regards the time of meals, periods of exercise, sleep, etc.

Food and Drink.—The ingestion of a hearty meal increases the temperature but slightly—not more than 0.5° C. Insufficiency of food lowers the temperature; total withdrawal of food, as in starvation, is followed by a steady though slight decline, until just preceding the death of the animal, when it falls abruptly to from 6° to 8° C. Cold drinks lower, hot drinks raise the temperature. Food and drinks, however, only temporarily change the mean temperature, and after a short period equilibrium is restored through the activity of the heat-regulating mechanism. Alcoholic drinks lower the temperature about 0.5° C. In large toxic doses in persons unaccustomed to their use the temperature may be lowered several degrees. This is attributed not to a diminution in heat-production, but rather to an increase in heat-dissipation (Reichert) from increased action of the heart, dilatation of the blood-vessels of the skin, and increased activity of the sweat-glands.

Exercise.—The temperature may be raised by active muscular exercise from 1° to 1.5° C. as a result of increased activity in chemic changes in the muscles themselves. A rise beyond this point is prevented by the increased activity of the circulatory apparatus, the removal of the heat to the surface, and its rapid radiation.

External Temperature.—The external temperature influences but slightly the mean temperature of the human body. In the tropic as well as in the arctic regions, notwithstanding the change in the

temperature of the air, that of the body remains almost constant. The same is true for the seasonal variations in the temperature of the temperate regions.

THE SOURCE AND TOTAL QUANTITY OF HEAT PRODUCED.

The Source of Heat.—The immediate source of the body-heat is to be found in the chemic changes which take place in all the tissues and organs of the body. Each contraction of a muscle, each act of secretion, each exhibition of nerve-force, is accompanied by the evolution of heat. The chemic changes are for the most part of the nature of oxidations, the union of oxygen with the elements, carbon and hydrogen, of the food principles either before or after they have become constituents of the tissues. The ultimate source of the body-heat is the latent or potential energy in the food principles, which was absorbed from the sun's energy and stored up during the growth of the vegetable world. In the metabolism of the animal body the food principles are again reduced through oxidation, directly or indirectly, to relatively simple bodies, such as urea, carbon dioxid, and water, with a liberation of a large portion of their contained energy which manifests itself as heat and mechanic motion.

The Total Quantity.—The total quantity of heat liberated in the body daily may be approximately determined in at least two ways: (1) By determining experimentally the heat values of different food principles by direct oxidation; (2) by collecting and measuring with a suitable apparatus, a calorimeter, the heat evolved by the oxidation of the food within, and dissipated from, the body daily.

1. *Direct Oxidation.*—The amount of heat which any given food principle will yield can be determined by burning a definite amount—*e. g.*, 1 gram—to carbon dioxid and water and ascertaining the extent to which the heat thus liberated will raise the temperature of a given amount of water: *e. g.*, 1 kilogram. The amount of heat may be expressed in gram or kilogram degrees or calories; a gram calorie or kilogram calorie being the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of a gram or a kilogram (1000 grams) of water 1° C. The apparatus employed for this purpose is termed a calorimeter, which consists essentially of a closed chamber, in which the oxidation takes place, surrounded by a water-jacket. The rise in temperature of the water indicates the amount of heat produced.

The results obtained by investigators employing different calorimeters and different food principles of the same class vary, though within narrow limits: *e. g.*, 1 gram casein yields 5.867 kilogram calories; 1 gram of lean beef, 5.656; 1 gram of fat, 9.353, 9.423, 9.686 calories; 1 gram of starch or sugar, 4.116, 4.182, 4.479, etc., calories. These results are, however, physical values, and indicate the quan-

tity of heat such quantities of foods give rise to when completely oxidized to carbonic acid and water. In the human body the carbohydrates and the fats, with the exception of the small portion which escapes digestion, are reduced to carbon dioxid and water, and hence practically liberate as much heat as they do when oxidized outside the body. The proteids, however, are only reduced to the stage of urea. As this compound is capable of further reduction in the calorimeter to carbon dioxid and water, with the liberation of heat, the quantity of heat it contains must therefore be deducted from the physical heat value of the proteid. According to Rubner, 1 gram of urea will yield 2.523 kilogram calories. As about one-third of a gram of urea results from the oxidation of 1 gram of proteid, the amount of heat to be deducted from the heat value of the proteid is $\frac{1}{3}$ of 2.523, or 0.841 calorie. It has also been shown by the same investigator that some of the ingested proteid is found in the feces, the heat value of which must also be determined and deducted. This having been done, the physiologic heat value becomes 4.124 calories.

The following estimates give approximately the number of kilogram calories which should be liberated within the body when the proteid is burned to the stage of urea, and the fat and carbohydrate to the stage of carbon dioxid and water:

1 gram of proteid	4.124 calories
1 " fat	9.353 "
1 " carbohydrate	4.116 "

The total number of kilogram calories yielded by the various diet scales can be readily determined by multiplying the quantities of the food principles consumed by the foregoing factors. The diet scale of Vierordt, for example, yields the following:

120 grams of proteid	494.88 calories
90 " fat	841.77 "
330 " starch	1358.28 "
Total,	2694.93 "

The total calories obtained from other diet scales would be as follows: Ranke's, 2335; Voit's, 3387; Moleschott's, 2984; Atwater's, 3331; Hultgren's, 3436. These numbers indicate theoretically the total heat-production in the body daily.

2. *Calorimetric Measurements.*—By this method the heat dissipated from the body of an animal is directly collected and measured, and the amount so obtained is taken as a measure of the heat evolved by the oxidation of the food. A calorimeter is therefore an apparatus for the direct estimation of the quantity of heat dissipated from the body in a given time. The substance employed for collecting and measuring the heat is either water or air. The calorimeters in

general use consist essentially of two metallic boxes placed one within the other, though separated by a space sufficiently large to hold a definite amount of water (Fig. 180). The animal is placed in the inner box, which is also provided with tubes for the entrance of fresh and the exit of expired air. The heat radiated is absorbed by the water and its temperature raised. To prevent loss by radiation and to render it independent of changes in the surrounding temperature the calorimeter is surrounded by a poorly conducting material, such as wool. The temperature of the animal is taken at the beginning and the end of the experiment. If the temperature of the animal remains the same at the end of the experiment, then the heat absorbed by the

FIG. 180.—WATER CALORIMETER OF DULONG. D and D'. Tubes for the entrance and exit of air. T and T'. Thermometers for ascertaining the temperature of the water. S. A mechanic contrivance for stirring the water for the purpose of distributing the absorbed heat uniformly. To prevent the escape of heat with the expired air, the tube D' is wound many times in the water-space beneath the animal cage.

water represents the amount produced by the animal. If, on the contrary, the temperature of the animal rises or falls, the number of calories so retained or lost must be added to or subtracted from the amount absorbed by the calorimeter. In the determination of the absolute amount of heat retained or lost by the animal above or below the initial temperature, as well as that absorbed by the materials of the apparatus in these various instances, the water equivalent of the tissues of the animal and the materials of the calorimeter must

be obtained, and then added to or subtracted from, as the case may be, the amount of water in the calorimeter, and the amount thus obtained multiplied by its rise in temperature. In properly conducted experiments in which the sources of error are reduced to a minimum there is a very close correspondence between the total physiologic heat value of the food and the amount collected by the calorimeter. Thus, in an experiment detailed by Rubner a dog was given during twelve days 228.06 grams of proteid and 340.4 grams of fat the physical heat value of which was estimated at 4429 calories. The urine and feces during this period were collected and their heat value determined, which amounted to 305 calories. The heat which theoretically

should have been produced was 4124 calories. During the experiment the calorimeter actually absorbed 3958 calories, a difference between the theoretic and experimental results of 156 calories.

Calorimetric experiments on man corresponding to those made by Rubner on dogs have not been successful, owing purely to technical difficulties. Various attempts have been made, however, to determine the daily heat-dissipation. Liebermeister immersed a man in a bath with a temperature lower than that of the man's body. From the rise in temperature of the water it was calculated that the man produced daily 3525 calories. Leyden placed the leg alone of a man in a calorimeter. In one hour 6 calories were absorbed. Assuming that the total superficial area of the body was fifteen times that of the leg, he calculated, taking into consideration various sources of error, that the entire body would produce daily 2376 calories. Ott, employing a water calorimeter, found that the body of a man produced 103 calories during an afternoon, or at the rate of 2472 calories daily. These and similar experiments, while not free from many objections, furnish results which indicate that the heat dissipated from the body approximates the physiologic heat values of the foods. * 3

HEAT-DISSIPATION AND REGULATION OF THE TEMPERATURE.

Heat-dissipation.—From the preceding statements it is evident that the body is continually evolving heat in amounts daily far in excess of that necessary for the maintenance of the body-temperature. Should this heat be retained, the temperature of the body would be raised at the end of twenty-four hours an additional 18° or 20° C.,—a temperature far in excess of that compatible with the maintenance of physiologic processes. That the body may be kept at the mean temperature of 37.8° C. it is essential that the heat evolved be dissipated as fast as produced. This is accomplished in several ways: (1) In warming the food and drink to the temperature of the body. (2) In warming the inspired air to the same temperature. (3) In the evaporation of water from the lungs. (4) In evaporating water from the skin. (5) In radiation and conduction from the skin. The quantities of heat lost to the body by these different processes it is difficult for obvious reasons to accurately determine, and the estimates usually given must be regarded only as approximative.

Assuming 2500 calories to be an average amount of heat liberated during a day of repose, the losses, in the ways stated above, may be given as follows:

1. *In Warming Food and Drink.*—The average temperature of food and drink is about 12° C.; the amount of both together is about 3 kilograms; the specific heat of food about 0.8. The absorption

of body-heat therefore amounts to $3 \times 0.8 \times 25^{\circ} \text{C.} = 60$ calories = 2.8 per cent. With the removal of the end-products of the foods and drink from the body an equal amount of heat is carried out.

2. *In Warming the Inspired Air.*—The average temperature of the air is 12°C. ; the amount of inspired air, about 15 kilograms; the specific heat of air, 0.26. The absorption of body-heat by the air therefore amounts to $15 \times 0.26 \times 25^{\circ} = 97.5 = 3.8$ per cent. The expired air removes from the body a corresponding volume.
3. *In the Evaporation of Water from the Lungs.*—The quantity of water evaporated from the lungs may be estimated at 400 grams; as each gram requires for its evaporation 0.582 calorie, the quantity of heat lost by this channel would be $400 \times 0.582 = 232.8^{\circ} \text{C.} = 9.4$ per cent.
4. *In the Evaporation of Water from the Skin.*—The quantity of water evaporated from the skin may be estimated at 660 grams, causing a loss of heat by this channel of $660 \times 0.582 = 384.1^{\circ} \text{C.} = 15.3$ per cent.
5. *In Radiation and Conduction from the Skin.*—The amount of heat lost by this process can be indirectly determined only by subtracting the total amount lost by the above-mentioned channels from the total amount produced. Thus, $2500 - 774.4 = 1725.6 = 69$ per cent. would represent the average amount lost by radiation and conduction.

Regulation of the Mean Temperature.—In order that the mean temperature of the body may remain practically constant, the heat produced must be exactly balanced by the heat dissipated. Should there be any want of correspondence between the two processes, there would arise either an increase or a decrease in the mean temperature. As both heat-production and heat-dissipation are variable factors, dependent on a variety of internal and external conditions, their adjustment is accomplished by a complex self-regulating mechanism involving muscular, vascular, and secretory elements, coördinated by the nerve system. Heat-production varies in intensity and amount, in accordance with a number of conditions, but principally with variations in physiologic activity, the quantity and quality of the food, and changes in the external temperature. All physiologic and especially muscle activity is attended by chemic changes and the evolution of heat. The greater the activity, the larger is the volume of heat. Foods have different physiologic heat values. If the food consumed contains much potential energy and the quantity consumed be larger than the average daily requirements, there will be an increase in heat-production. A lowering of the external temperature, as in the winter season, leads to increased heat-production

through stimulation of the nerve-centers. When all these conditions, increased muscular activity, increased amount of food of high potential energy, and a low external temperature coexist, heat-production attains its maximum, amounting to as much as 4726 calories daily (Hultgren).

Heat-dissipation varies in rapidity in accordance with variations of a number of factors, but principally with variations in the external temperature and the activity of the perspiratory apparatus. The heat is dissipated mainly by the skin, 69 per cent., in consequence of radiation and conduction and by the evaporation of the sweat. The loss by this channel as well as from the lungs is dependent for the most part on a difference of temperature of the surrounding air and of the body. If the surrounding temperature is high, there is an increase in the activity of both the circulatory and respiratory mechanisms, brought about by the central nervous system. In addition to an increased action of the heart, the blood-vessels of the skin dilate and deliver to the surface a larger volume of blood in a given time, thus increasing the conditions favorable to radiation. The sweat-glands at the same time are stimulated to increased activity, and in consequence of the additional volumes of blood brought to the skin a larger amount of sweat is secreted, which speedily undergoes evaporation. As each gram of water for its evaporation requires 0.582 of a calorie, it is evident that increased secretion of sweat favors heat-dissipation. The nerve-centers influencing the activity of the sweat-glands may be stimulated not only reflexly, but directly by an excess of heat in the blood. If, however, the atmosphere itself possesses a high percentage of moisture, evaporation from the body is much diminished and the value of sweating as a means of lowering the body-temperature is much impaired. Evaporation is hastened by air in motion. Hastened respiratory movements and the dilatation of blood-vessels of the respiratory surface also increase the evaporation of water from the lungs and thus occasion a greater loss of heat.

If the external temperature falls there is a decrease in the physiologic activity of the skin from a contraction of the blood-vessels, a diminution of the blood-supply, and a cessation in the secretion of sweat. The blood, being prevented from coming to the surface, is retained in the deeper portion of the body, and in consequence the conditions for radiation are diminished. These variations in the cutaneous circulation in response to variations in the external temperature are brought about by the vasomotor nerve mechanism; and as they take place with extreme promptness heat-dissipation and heat-production are quickly adjusted and the mean temperature maintained.

Radiation from the skin is modified to some extent by clothing. An excess of clothing diminishes, a diminution of clothing increases

radiation. The quality of clothing is also an important factor. Wool is a poor conductor of heat but a good absorber and retainer of moisture, and hence is adapted for cold weather. Linen and cotton possess the opposite qualities, and hence are adapted for warm weather. Radiation from the skin is somewhat interfered with by subcutaneous fat, the extent of the interference being dependent on its amount.

The foregoing estimates as to the amounts of heat produced have reference only to the body in repose. When the body passes into a state of muscle activity, there is at once a notable increase in heat-production in consequence of the increase in the activity of the chemical changes which underlie body activity, as shown by the increase in the consumption of oxygen and the production of carbon dioxide. Not all of the potential energy set free, however, appears as heat; for if the muscles are engaged in doing work a part of the energy which would otherwise manifest itself as heat is converted into mechanical motion. From the work done during a period of eight hours it has been estimated that about 500 calories are so transformed or utilized. Hirn calculated from an average of five experiments that a man weighing 67 kilos in repose produced 154.4 calories per hour and absorbed 30.7 grams of oxygen per hour; but when engaged in active muscle movements produced 271.2 calories and absorbed 119.84 grams of oxygen per hour. The increase in heat-production per hour during activity was thus almost doubled, though the sum total produced daily in which there was a working period of eight or ten hours was only about one-third more than during a day of repose. During sleep there is a greatly diminished heat-production, not more than 40 calories per hour being produced. The preceding data may be tabulated as follows (Martin):

Heat units (calories) produced--}	Day of Rest.		Day of Work.		
	Rest 16 hrs.	Sleep 8 hrs.	Rest 8 hrs.	Work 8 hrs.	Sleep 8 hrs.
	2470.4	320	1235.2	2169.6	320
	2790.4		3724.8		

CHAPTER XV.

SECRETION.

Secretion.—As the blood flows through the capillaries of the body certain of its nutritive principles are separated by the activity of the epithelial cells of the capillary wall, aided by the physical processes of filtration and diffusion. To this process the term *secretion* may be applied. This separated or secreted material may be utilized in several ways:

1. For the repair of the tissues, for growth, for the liberation of energy.
2. For the elaboration or production by specialized organs of a variety of complex fluids of widely different application. The fluids thus formed are utilized for the most part to meet some special need of the body. All such fluids are termed *secretions*.

The organs concerned in the elaboration of the various secretions are covered or lined by epithelium to the activity of which the secretion is to be referred. To all these organs the term *gland* may be applied. As these fluids are poured out on the surface of the body, they have been termed *external secretions*: *e. g.*, mucus, saliva, gastric juice, milk, sebaceous matter, etc. Within recent years it has been demonstrated that the epithelium of glands and particularly of those which do not possess a duct, such as the thyroid, thymus, adrenals, hypophysis, etc., also produces certain specific constituents which are reabsorbed into the blood, and which in some unknown but yet favorable way influence the general nutrition. To such products of these glands the term *internal secretions* has been given.

The blood, in addition to its nutritive constituents, contains a number of principles, derived from the tissues, which are to be regarded as waste products, the outcome of the metabolic activity of the tissues and of no further use to the body. If retained, they would seriously if not fatally interfere with the normal physiologic activities of the different tissues. They are therefore removed by specialized organs after their separation from the blood-stream. The waste products in solution thus removed are not capable of being utilized for any special purpose, and are therefore termed *excretions*: *e. g.*, urine, perspiration, etc. Excretion, however, is performed by the activities of epithelial cells aided by the physical forces of diffusion and filtration; and though a distinction is made

between the two classes of fluids, no sharp line can be drawn between the cell processes which take place in secretory and excretory organs.

All secretory organs may be divided into—

1. Epithelial.
2. Reticular and vascular, the latter term indicating merely their relation to blood-vessels.

The Epithelial Secretory Apparatus.—The apparatus essential to the production of a secretion is a delicate homogeneous membrane, on one side of which and in close contact is a layer of capillary blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves; on the other side, a layer of epithelial cells, the physiologic function of which varies in different situations.

The *epithelial organs* may consist of a single layer of cells or a group of cells, and may be subdivided into—

1. Secreting membranes.
2. Secreting glands.

The **secreting membranes** are the mucous membranes lining the gastro-intestinal, the pulmonary, and the genito-urinary tracts, and the serous membranes lining closed cavities, such as the pleural, pericardial, peritoneal, and synovial membranes.

The mucous membranes are soft and velvety in character and are composed of a condensed connective tissue forming a basement membrane beneath which is a layer of blood-vessels and muscle-fibers, and on which is a layer of epithelium, the histologic as well as physiologic characters of which vary in different situations. The mucus secreted by the various epithelial forms will very naturally possess a somewhat different composition, according to the locality in which it is formed. In a general way it may be said that mucus is a pale, semitransparent, alkaline fluid, containing leukocytes and epithelial cells. It is composed chemically of water, mineral salts, and an albuminoid body, mucin, to the presence of which it owes its viscosity. Much of the mucus is secreted by the goblet cells on the surface of the mucous membranes. The principal varieties of mucus are the nasal, bronchial, vaginal, urinary, gastro-intestinal.

The serous membranes are composed of thin membrane formed by a condensation of connective tissue and covered by a single layer of large, flat, nucleated cells with irregular margins. These membranes enclose what are practically large lymph sacs or spaces, and the fluid they contain resembles lymph in all respects and is practically identical with it. It serves to diminish friction when the viscera they enclose move over one another. The most important of the serous membranes are the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal.

The synovial membranes in and around joints resemble serous membranes. The cells covering them, however, secrete a clear colorless fluid resembling lymph, but differing from it in containing

a mucin-like substance, a nucleo-albumin, which imparts to it considerable viscosity. This synovial fluid serves to diminish friction between the opposing surfaces of the bones as they glide over one another during movement.

Other secretions, such as the aqueous and vitreous humors of the eye, the fluid of the internal ear, the cerebrospinal fluid, etc., will be considered in connection with the organs with which they are associated, as have been the digestive secretions.

The **secreting glands** are formed of the same histologic elements as the secreting membranes. They are formed by an involution of the mucous membrane or skin the epithelium of which is variously modified structurally and functionally in the various situations in which they are formed. Like the membranes themselves, the glands are invested by capillary blood-vessels and supplied with lymphatics and nerves, of which the latter are in direct connection with the blood-vessels and epithelial cells. The interior of each gland is in communication with the free surface by one or more passageways known as ducts.

These glands may be classified according as the involution is cylindrical or dilated as—

1. Tubular. The tubular glands may be simple—*e. g.*, sweat-glands, intestinal glands, fundus glands of the stomach; or compound—*e. g.*, kidney, testicle, salivary, and lachrymal glands.

2. Alveolar. The alveolar glands may also be simple—*e. g.*, the sebaceous glands, the ovarian follicles, meibomian glands; or compound, as the mammary glands and salivary glands.

For the production of a secretion it is necessary that the plasma of the blood, the common material, be delivered to the lymph-spaces with which the epithelial cells are in close relation. The processes involved in the passage of the plasma across the capillary wall have already been considered in connection with the production of lymph. They include the physical processes, diffusion, filtration, and osmosis, combined with a secretory activity of the cells of the capillary wall. The question as to which of these processes is the more active is yet a subject of investigation.

As the chemic composition and the chemic features of the organic constituents of all secretions have been demonstrated to be the outcome of metabolic processes going on within the epithelial cells, it must be assumed at least that these differences are correlated with differences in the histologic features and molecular structure of the epithelium. The discharge of the secretion is, as a rule, intermittent; that is, there are periods of activity on the part of the gland followed by periods of inactivity or rest. In rest more especially the epithelial cells, after the assimilation of lymph, accumulate within themselves such characteristic products as globules of mucin, gran-

ules which apparently are the antecedents of the digestive enzymes, granules of glycogen, globules of fat, sugar, and proteid, as in the case of the mammary gland. In how far all these compounds are the result of secretory activity or of a cell degeneration and disintegration it is impossible to state in the light of present knowledge. During the period of gland rest the blood-supply to the gland is merely sufficient for nutritive purposes. When the occasion arises for gland activity, the blood-vessels, under the influence of the vasomotor nerves, dilate and deliver to the gland an amount of blood far beyond that required for nutritive purposes. As a result the gland becomes red and vascular and the blood emerging by the veins frequently retains its customary arterial color. The increased blood-supply favors a rapid transudation of water and salts into the lymph-spaces where they are speedily absorbed and transmitted by the epithelial cells into the interior of the gland lumen. Coincident with the passage of water through the cell, the organic constituents are extruded from the end of the cell bordering the lumen to become dissolved, or in the case of fat to be suspended, in the water. The secretion thus formed accumulates, and with the rise of pressure which inevitably follows it at once passes into the ducts to be discharged on the surface of the mucous membrane or skin, as the case may be.

Influence of the Nerve System.—The activity of every gland is controlled by nerve-centers situated in the central nerve system. These centers may be excited to activity either by impressions made on the peripheral terminations or by emotional states, or, possibly, by changes in the composition of the blood itself. As a rule, all normal secretion is a reflex act involving the usual mechanism: viz., a sentient surface (skin, mucous membrane, or sense-organ), an afferent nerve, an emissive cell from which emerges an efferent nerve to be distributed to a responsive organ, the gland epithelium.

For the production of the secretion by the epithelial cell it is believed by some experimenters that two physiologically distinct, efferent nerve-fibers are involved—one stimulating the production of the organic constituents (*trophic nerves*), the other stimulating the secretion of water and inorganic salts (*secretory nerves*). The evidence for the influence of the nerve system on secretion and the mode of connection of the nerve-fibers with the gland-cells have been alluded to and will again be in subsequent chapters.

The **reticular and vascular glands**, though not possessing any common histologic features, are grouped together merely for convenience, and will be considered in a separate chapter in connection with the problems of *internal* secretion.

MAMMARY GLANDS.

The **mammary glands**, which secrete the milk, are two more or less hemispheric organs situated in the human female on the anterior surface of the thorax. Though rudimentary in childhood, they gradually increase in size as puberty approaches. The gland presents at its convexity a small conical eminence termed the mamilla or nipple, surrounded by a circular area of pigmented skin, the areola. The gland proper is covered by a layer of adipose tissue anteriorly and is attached posteriorly to the pectoral muscles by a network of fibrous tissue.

During utero-gestation the mammary glands become larger, firmer, and more lobulated; the areola darkens and the blood-vessels, especially the veins, become more prominent. At the period of lactation the gland is the seat of active histologic and physiologic changes correlated with the production of milk. At the close of lactation these

FIG. 181.—MAMMARY GLAND. 1. Lactiferous ducts. 2. Lobuli of the mammary gland.

FIG. 182.—ACINI OF THE MAMMARY GLAND OF A SHEEP DURING LACTATION. *a.* Membrana propria. *b.* Secretory epithelium.

activities cease, the glands diminish in size, undergo involution, and gradually return to their former non-secreting condition.

Structure of the Mammary Gland.—Each mammary gland consists of an aggregation of some 15 or 20 irregular pyramidal lobes, each of which is surrounded by a framework of fibrous tissue. This tissue affords support for blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves. Each lobe is provided with a single excretory duct, the lactiferous duct, which as it approaches the areola expands into a fusiform ampulla or reservoir. At the base of the nipple the ampullæ contract to form some 16 or 18 narrow ducts, which, ascending the nipple, open by constricted orifices 0.5 mm. in diameter on its apex (Fig. 181).

On tracing the lactiferous duct into a lobe, it is found to divide and subdivide into a number of branches, which pass into smaller masses—the lobules. The lobule in turn is composed of a large number of tubular acini or alveoli, the final terminations of the lobular ducts. Each acinus consists of a basement membrane lined by a single layer of low cuboidal epithelial cells (Fig. 182). Externally the acinus is surrounded by blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics.

MILK.

Milk as obtained during active lactation is an opaque bluish-white fluid, almost inodorous, with a sweet taste, an alkaline reaction, and a specific gravity of from 1.025 to 1.040. Examined microscopically, it is seen to consist of a clear fluid, the milk *plasma*, holding in suspension an enormous number of small, highly refractive oil-globules, which measure on the average about $\frac{1}{10000}$ of an inch in diameter. It has been asserted by some observers that each globule is surrounded by a thin proteid envelope which enables it to maintain the discrete form. This, however, is at present disbelieved.

The quantity of milk secreted daily by the human female averages about 1200 c.c.

Chemic analysis has shown that the milk of all the mammalia consists of all the different classes of nutritive principles, though in different proportions, which are necessary to the growth and development of the body. The only exception appears to be an insufficient amount of iron for the formation of the coloring-matter of the blood, the hemoglobin.

Caseinogen is the chief proteid constituent of milk. Associated with it, however, are two other proteids, lactalbumin and lactoglobulin, both of which are present in but small quantity. When milk is treated with acetic acid, sodium chlorid, or magnesium sulphate to saturation, the caseinogen is *precipitated* as such, and after the removal of the fat with which it is entangled may be collected by appropriate chemic methods. On the addition of rennet prepared from the mucous membrane of the calf's stomach, which contains the enzyme rennin or pexin, the caseinogen undergoes cleavage into an insoluble proteid, casein or tyrein, and a small quantity of a new soluble proteid. To this process the term *coagulation* has been given. The presence of calcium phosphate appears to be essential to this process, inasmuch as it does not take place if the milk be completely decalcified by the addition of potassium oxalate. After coagulation, the more or less solid mass of milk separates into a liquid portion, the serum, and a solid portion, the coagulum. The former, generally termed whey, consists of water, salts, lactalbumin, sugar; the latter, the curd, consists of the casein and entangled fat. Boiling the milk

retards and even prevents the coagulation by rennet, owing to the precipitation of the calcium phosphate. When milk is taken into the stomach, it is probable that the rennin coagulates the caseinogen in a manner similar to, if not identical with, this process, which appears to be essential to the normal digestion of the milk.

The **fat** of milk is more or less solid at ordinary temperatures. It is a compound of olein, palmitin, and stearin with small quantities of butyrin and caproin and fatty acids. The melting-point of butter varies between 31° and 34° C. When milk is allowed to stand for some time, the fat-globules rise to the surface and form a thick layer known as cream. Churning the milk or cream causes the fat-globules to run together and form a coherent mass termed butter.

Lactose is the particular form of sugar characteristic of milk. It belongs to the saccharose group and has the following composition: $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O$. Though incapable of undergoing fermentation by the action of the yeast plant, it is readily reduced by the *Bacillus acidilactici* to lactic acid and carbon dioxide, the former of which imparts to milk an acid reaction and a sour taste. With the accumulation of the lactic acid the caseinogen is precipitated as a more or less consistent mass.

The **inorganic salts** of milk are chiefly potassium, sodium, calcium, and magnesium phosphates and chlorids. Iron is also present in small amount. The following table of Bunge gives the quantitative amounts of these constituents in both human and cow's milk:

IN 1000 PARTS.	POTASSIUM.	SODIUM.	CALCIUM.	MAGNESIUM.	IRON OXID.	PHOSPHORIC ACID.	CHLORIN.
Human milk, -----	0.78	0.25	0.33	0.06	0.0036	0.47	0.43
Cow's milk, -----	1.76	1.11	1.59	0.21	0.003	1.97	1.69

Mechanism of Milk Secretion.—During the time of lactation the mammary gland exhibits periods of secretory activity which alternate with periods of repose. Coincidentally with these periods certain histologic changes take place in the secreting epithelium. At the close of a period of active secretion and after the discharge of the milk each acinus presents the following features: The epithelial cells are short, cubical, nucleated, and border a relatively wide lumen, in which is found a variable quantity of milk. After the gland has rested for some time active metabolism again begins. The cells grow and elongate; the nucleus divides into two or three new nuclei; constriction takes place and the inner portion is detached and discharged into the lumen of the acinus. During the time these changes are taking place oil-globules make their appearance in the cell

protoplasm, some of which are discharged separately into the lumen, while others remain for a time associated with the detached portion of the cell (Fig. 183). From these histologic changes it is inferred that the caseinogen and fat are products of the metabolism of the cell protoplasm and not derived directly through the lymph from the blood. The lactose apparently has a similar origin, as appears from the fact that it is not found either in the blood or any other tissue, and that it is formed independently of carbohydrate food. The water, and especially the inorganic salts, are the result of secretory activity rather than of diffusion and filtration. This is rendered probable from the fact that the proportions of the inorganic salts of milk are more closely allied to those of the tissues of the new-born child than to blood. With the passage of the water and salts into the lumen of the acinus

the proteids undergo disintegration and solution and the liquid assumes the characteristics of milk.

The discharge of milk is occasioned by the suction efforts on the part of the child, aided by atmospheric pressure and the contractions of the non-striated muscle-fibers of the lactiferous ducts.

Influence of the Nerve System.

—Judging from analogy, it is probable that the secretion of milk is regulated by influences emanating from the nerve system, though the exact nerve-channels for the transmission of such influences have not been determined experimentally. Various attempts have been made to isolate and study these nerves, but the results are inconclusive. It is well known

that emotional states on the part of the mother modify the quantity as well as quality of milk, indicating a connection between the gland-cells and the central nervous system. Nerve terminals have been discovered in and around the epithelial cells—a fact which supports this view.

Colostrum.—Within a day or two after parturition the alveoli become filled with a fluid which in some respects resembles milk and which has been termed colostrum. This is a watery fluid containing disintegrated epithelial cells, fat-globules, as well as colostrum corpuscles, which are probably emigrated leukocytes. Colostrum is distinguished from milk in being richer in sugar and inorganic salts. It is said to possess constituents which act as a laxative to the young child.

FIG. 183.—SECTION OF THE MAMMARY GLAND OF A CAT IN THE EARLY STAGES OF LACTATION. A. Cavity of alveoli filled with granules and globules of fat. 1, 2, 3. Epithelium in various stages of milk-formation.—(Yeo.)

THE LIVER.

The **liver** is a large gland situated in the upper and right side of the abdominal cavity, where it is held in position largely by ligaments formed by reduplications of the peritoneal investment. In the adult it weighs, freed of blood, from 1300 to 1700 grams. The liver is connected with the duodenal portion of the intestine by the hepatic duct. It receives blood both from the hepatic artery and from the portal vein, and in this respect differs from all other glands in the body. The epithelial structures of the liver are inclosed by a firm fibrous membrane, known as Glisson's capsule. At the transverse fissure it invests and follows the blood-vessels, which there enter, in all their ramifications through the gland.

Structure of the Liver.—The liver is composed of an enormous number of small masses, rounded, ovoid, or polygonal in shape, called lobules, measuring about one millimeter in diameter and separated from one another by a narrow space in which are to be found blood-vessels, lymphatics, hepatic ducts, supported by connective tissue. In the pig this space and its contained elements is quite distinct, sharply marking out the border of the lobule (Fig. 184). This is not so apparent in man. Each lobule is made up of irregular or polygonal shaped cells measuring about 30 to 40 micromillimeters in diameter. These cells are arranged in a radial manner from the center to the circumference of the lobule (Fig. 185). Each cell possesses one and at times two nuclei. There is no evidence for the existence of a distinct cell-wall. The cell protoplasm frequently contains globules of fat, granules of a proteid nature, granules of glycogen, pigment material, etc. The appearance presented by the cell will vary considerably, according to the time it is observed. Thus there may be a complete absence of these constituents, when the cell may present a series of vacuoles separated by bands of protoplasm. The cells are the secreting

FIG. 184.—SECTION OF LIVER OF PIG, SHOWING VERY DIAGRAMMATICALLY THE LOBULES. *a*. Interlobular connective tissue. *b*, *c*. Branches of portal vein and of hepatic artery. *d*. Bile-ducts. *e*. Intra-lobular vein.—(Piersol.)

structures of the liver, and hence are in close relation with capillary blood-vessels, lymphatic spaces, nerves, and irregular channels or passageways. The latter running between the epithelial cells may be compared to the lumen of other secreting glands.

Blood-vessels and Their Distribution.—The blood-vessels which are in relation with the liver are:

1. The portal vein.
2. The hepatic artery.
3. The hepatic vein.

The portal vein and the hepatic artery enter the liver at the transverse fissure. After penetrating its substance they divide and sub-

divide into smaller and smaller branches, which ultimately occupy the space between the lobules, completely surrounding and limiting them. From their situation they are termed *interlobular* veins and arteries.

The interlobular veins give off small capillary vessels which penetrate the lobule at all points of its surface. These capillaries, though frequently anastomosing, form a radial meshwork which converges toward the center of the lobule. In the meshes of this plexus are found, arranged in a corresponding radial manner, the liver cells. The interlobular arteries are distributed to the walls of the portal vein, to the connective tissue, and finally terminate in the portal vein capillaries. The intralobular capillaries thus receive and transmit

FIG. 185.—SCHEME OF A HEPATIC LOBULE, REPRESENTED IN TRANSVERSE SECTION BELOW AND, BY PARTIAL LEVELING, IN LONGITUDINAL SECTION ABOVE. In the left half the blood-vessels are drawn; in the right half only the cords of hepatic cells. $\times 20$.—(Stöhr.)

blood which is an admixture of both arterial and venous blood. In the center of each lobule there is a large vein, formed by the union of the intralobular capillaries, known as the *intralobular* vein, which collects all the blood of the lobule and transmits it through the lobule to an underlying or sublobular vein (Fig. 186). These latter vessels, uniting and reuniting, ultimately form the hepatic vein, which empties the blood into the inferior vena cava.

Bile Capillaries and Hepatic Ducts.—The bile capillaries are narrow channels which penetrate the lobule in all directions and are generally found running along the sides of the cells. These channels,

which are devoid of walls, receive from the cells some of the products of their secretory activity, and hence are comparable to the lumen of the alveoli of other secreting glands. At the periphery of the lobules the bile capillaries communicate with larger channels which are the beginnings of the hepatic or bile-ducts lying in the interlobular spaces. The interlobular bile-ducts possess a distinct wall lined by flattened epithelium. There is, however, no distinct line of demarcation between the cells of the interlobular ducts and the secreting cells of the liver proper, as the two blend insensibly, the one into the other. As the hepatic ducts increase in size they gradually acquire the structure characteristic of the main hepatic duct: viz., a mucous, a muscle, and a fibrous coat.

FIG. 186.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF A SINGLE HEPATIC LOBULE. 1. Intralobular vein, cut across. 2, 2, 2, 2. Afferent branches of the intralobular vein. 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3. Interlobular branches of the portal vein, with its capillary branches, forming the lobular plexus, extending to the radicles of the intralobular vein.—(*Sappey*.)

Nerves.—Experimental investigations have demonstrated that the liver is supplied with nerves derived from the central nerve system. The route of these nerves is probably by way of the splanchnics and the vagi. Many of the nerves which enter the liver are vasomotor in function; as to whether others are secretory in character is yet a subject of investigation. It has been asserted that nerve terminals have been demonstrated running between the cells and even penetrating their substance. This fact would indicate that the metabolic processes of the liver are under the control of the central nerve system.

Functions of the Liver.—The anatomic and histologic pecu-

liarities of the liver would indicate that it has a variety of relations to the general processes of the body. Experimental investigation has brought some of these relations to light. Though its physiologic actions are not yet wholly understood, it may be said that it—

1. Secretes bile.
2. Produces and stores glycogen.
3. Assists in the formation of urea.

Secretion of Bile.—The physical properties and chemic composition of the bile have already been considered (page 203). The characteristic salts of the bile, sodium glycocholate and taurocholate, do not pre-exist in the blood, and therefore must be formed by the liver cells out of materials derived from the blood of the intralobular capillaries. The antecedents of the bile salts, glycocoll and taurin, are crystallizable nitrogenized compounds, and known chemically as amido-acetic and amido-ethylsulphonic acids. Their chemic composition indicates that they are derivatives of the proteids or the albuminoids, though the intermediate stages in their production are unknown. The origin of the cholalic acid with which they are combined is equally obscure. The bile salts as they are found in the bile are produced in the liver cells by metabolic activity.

The primary coloring-matter of the bile, bilirubin, has been shown to be a derivative of hematin, a product of the disintegration of hemoglobin. It is supposed that the liver cells bring about this change by combining water with hematin, with the abstraction of iron. The product thus formed is bilirubin, which is excreted, while the iron is for the most part retained.

Cholesterin is a waste product derived largely from the nerve-tissue. It is brought to the liver and simply excreted by the cells. The remaining constituents of the bile, water and inorganic salts, are secreted here as in all other glands.

When once formed, the liver cells discharge these various compounds into the channels by which they are surrounded; they then pass into the open mouths of the bile-ducts at the periphery of the lobules. Under the increasing pressure which arises from the secretion and accumulation of bile, this fluid flows from the smaller into the larger bile-ducts, and finally is emptied either directly into the intestine or into the gall-bladder, where it is stored until required for digestive purposes. The secretion of bile, as observed by means of a biliary fistula, is continuous and not intermittent, though the rate of flow is subject to considerable variation.

The liver cells, as far as the secretion of bile is concerned, appear to be independent of the nerve system. Their activity, however, is stimulated by the increased blood-supply which arises during digestion in consequence of the dilatation of the intestinal vessels, since it is at this period that the rate of discharge is the greatest.

The same results have been shown by experiment. Thus, division of the splanchnic nerves is followed by an increased discharge of bile, apparently due to the dilatation of the portal vessels; stimulation of their peripheral ends is followed by a decreased discharge of bile in consequence of the contraction of the portal vessels. The bile salts appear to be the most efficient stimulants to the activity of the liver cells, for their administration and absorption is followed by an increase not only in the amount of water and inorganic salts, but of the solid constituents as well.

The flow of bile from the bile capillaries to the main hepatic duct, though primarily dependent on differences of pressure, is aided by the contraction of the muscular walls of the bile-ducts and the inspiratory movements of the diaphragm. Any obstacle to the discharge of bile leads to its accumulation, a rise of pressure beyond that of the capillary blood-vessels, and a reabsorption by the lymphatics of the bile constituents. After their discharge into the blood from the thoracic duct these constituents are deposited in various tissues, giving rise to the phenomena of jaundice.

The Production of Glycogen.—In 1857 Bernard discovered the fact that the liver normally during life produces a sugar-forming substance, analogous in its chemic composition to starch, to which he gave the name glycogen. This substance can be obtained by the following method: Small pieces of the liver of an animal recently killed, preferably after a meal rich in carbohydrates, are placed in acidulated boiling water for a few minutes; then rubbed up in a mortar with sand, again boiled, after which the proteids are removed by filtration. The filtrate thus obtained is opalescent and resembles a solution of starch. The glycogen may be precipitated from this solution with alcohol as a white amorphous powder, soluble in water. Chemic analysis shows that it consists of $C_6H_{10}O_5$, or a multiple of it.

When either the original solution obtained by boiling or a solution of this amorphous powder is treated with iodine, it strikes a port-wine color. When digested with saliva, pancreatic juice, or boiled with dilute acids, the solution becomes clear, and testing with Fehling's solution reveals the presence of sugar.

If the liver be allowed to remain in the body of an animal for a period of twenty-four hours before the decoction is made as above described, it will be found that the solution contains only a small amount of glycogen but a relatively large amount of sugar. The inference drawn is that after death the glycogen is transformed by some agent, possibly a ferment, into sugar (dextrose).

The presence of glycogen in the liver cells can be shown microscopically in the form of discrete hyaline and refractive granules. As they are soluble in water they can be readily dissolved out from

the cells, leaving small vacuoles separated from one another by strands of cell substance. The amount of glycogen in a well-fed animal varies from 1.5 to 4 per cent. of the total weight. The production of glycogen is dependent very largely on the consumption of carbohydrates, the greater the amount of sugar and starch in the food, the greater being the production of glycogen. On a pure proteid diet it is still produced, though in small amounts.

Glycogen is present also in muscles, in the placenta, in the tissues of the embryo—wherever, indeed, active tissue changes and growth are taking place.

The facts connected with the formation of glycogen, as well as its disposition as at present generally accepted, may be stated as follows: The dextrose into which the carbohydrates are converted by the action of the digestive fluids is absorbed into the blood of the portal vein and carried direct into the liver, where by the action of the cells it is abstracted, dehydrated, and temporarily deposited under the form of the non-diffusible body glycogen. At a subsequent period and in proportion to the needs of the system the liver cells, through the agency of a ferment, transform the glycogen into dextrose, return it to the circulation, by which it is transported to the systemic capillaries, where it disappears. The blood of the hepatic vein therefore contains more sugar than the blood of any other part of the body, and the blood of the arteries more than the blood of the other veins. Should there be a failure on the part of the liver cells to abstract the sugar, it would pass through the liver into the general circulation, from which it would be eliminated by the kidneys. The final fate of the sugar is uncertain. It is, however, probable that after its delivery to the muscles, for example, it may be directly oxidized, or stored as glycogen, or possibly utilized in the formation of living material. Ultimately, however, through oxidation it yields heat, and contributes to the production of muscle energy.

In opposition to this view, Dr. Pavy, after years of accurate experimentation, states that the blood on the cardiac side of the liver never under normal circumstances contains a larger percentage of sugar than is to be found in any part of the circulation, except in the portal vein. He states that glycogen is never reconverted into sugar, and denies that the liver produces sugar, to be discharged into the blood; that the function of the liver is merely to arrest the passage of sugar, and so to shield the general circulation from an excess; that the sugar which arises in the liver after death is a postmortem product and not an illustration of what takes place during life. Dr. Pavy, having apparently demonstrated the glucoside constitution of proteid material in general, accounts for the presence of glycogen in muscles and other tissues on the assumption that during the cleavage of the proteid molecule the carbohydrate element is set free and temporarily

stored as glycogen. He thus accounts for the production of sugar in the body, even in the absence of all sugar and starch from the food. Pavy believes that the glycogen produced in the liver is utilized in the formation of fat and the synthesis of complex proteids necessary to the construction of the tissues.

Influence of the Nerve System.—The nerve system influences in some way the glycogenic function of the liver. It was discovered by Bernard that puncture of the floor of the fourth ventricle at a point between the acoustic and vagus nerves, near the middle line is followed within an hour or two by the appearance of sugar in the urine, which lasted for twenty-four or thirty-six hours. To this area, in close relation to the vasomotor center, he gave the name "diabetic area." The quantity of sugar excreted in the urine will depend on the amount of sugar previously present in the liver. Through some agency the stored-up glycogen is rapidly converted into sugar discharged into the blood and eliminated by the kidneys. There is no positive evidence that the puncture destroys the vasomotor center for the blood-vessels of the liver, or that there is any change in the relation of the blood-vessels to the liver-cells. Nevertheless powerful stimulation of the sciatic nerve, or the central end of the vagus which impairs or depresses the vasomotor center, will give rise to a similar production and elimination of sugar. The pathway for the passage of these influences beyond the first thoracic ganglion is unknown, but that it is not by way of the splanchnics or the vagi is evident from the fact that division of either of these nerves is not followed by the appearance of sugar in the urine.

Diabetes.—Diabetes is a chronic disease characterized by the appearance of sugar in the urine in variable amounts. This pathologic condition has usually been associated with derangements of the glycogenic function of the liver, though doubtless derangements of other organic functions will produce the same condition. At the present time it is believed that the excretion of sugar by the kidneys depends on two causes: (1) An ineffectual abstraction and storage of sugar due to some impairment in the activity of the liver cells; (2) a rapid cleavage of the proteid constituents of the tissues, in consequence of some profound alteration in the nutritive process, whereby their glucose radicals are liberated in unusual amounts. The physiologic mechanism by which the normal metabolism of the carbohydrates is regulated is unknown. That it is complex in character is shown by the phenomena which follow not only puncture of the medulla, but also removal of the pancreas and the administration of various poisons.

Removal of the pancreas from the body of a dog or other animal is at once followed by a rise in the percentage of sugar in the blood and its elimination by the kidneys. In a short time acetone,

aceto-acetic and oxybutyric acids make their appearance, attended by the usual symptoms characteristic of glycosuria in man. The quantity of sugar excreted and the gravity of the attendant symptoms may be much diminished by allowing a portion of the gland to remain *in situ*, even though its capacity for the production of pancreatic juice is entirely abolished. Transplantation of the pancreas to the subcutaneous tissue or to the abdominal cavity will practically prevent the glycosuria. The explanations which have been offered as to the manner in which the pancreatic tissue prevents and its absence gives rise to the excretion of sugar are purely hypothetical. It has been claimed by some investigators that the pancreas secretes a specific material, which enters the blood and promotes oxidation of the sugar. In the absence of this material the sugar accumulates, and is finally eliminated by the kidneys. Since the discovery of the islands of Langerhans it has been suggested by some investigators that the production of the material which regulates carbohydrate metabolism should be attributed to them rather than to the pancreas as a whole. The sugar excreted doubtless in part comes from the glycogen of the liver, as this disappears in a short time. But as sugar continues to be excreted, even though all carbohydrates be withdrawn from the food, the conclusion is justifiable that it arises in consequence of increased proteid metabolism. This supposition is strengthened by the fact that the quantity of urea excreted rises and falls with the quantity of sugar excreted.

Phloridzin, a glucoside obtained from the leaves of the cherry and plum tree, gives rise to the appearance of sugar in the urine, in amounts beyond that which might come from the glucose normally present in the blood or from the glycogen of the liver. As there is a concomitant increase in the amount of urea excreted, the supposition is that phloridzin increases proteid metabolism.

Curara, in doses sufficient to paralyze the muscles, also gives rise to the appearance of sugar in the urine. This is not due, however, to an increased production on the part of the liver, but rather to a want of consumption on the part of the muscles, due to their inactivity. The accumulation of the sugar in the blood which takes place for this reason leads very promptly to its removal by the kidneys.

The Formation of Urea.—It is now generally believed that the liver is the most active of all the organs which may be engaged in the production of urea. This belief is based on numerous physiologic and pathologic data. The compounds out of which the hepatic cells construct urea have been for chemic reasons asserted to be the ammonium salts, *e. g.*, the carbonate, lactate, carbamate, which are constantly present in the blood. These salts, which result from proteid metabolism, are absorbed from the tissues, carried to the liver, and there synthesized to urea. This supposition is supported

by an experiment as follows: The liver of an animal recently living is removed from the body and its vessels perfused continuously with blood (the urea content of which is known) containing the ammonium salts. An analysis of this blood shows, after a time, a diminution of these salts, and a large increase in the amount of the urea. The leucin and tyrosin which result from the prolonged action of pancreatic juice on hemi-peptone are also capable of being converted to urea by the hepatic cells, and in all probability are so disposed of. Destructive diseases of the liver—*e. g.*, acute yellow atrophy, sup-puration, cirrhosis—largely diminish the production of urea, but increase the quantities of the ammonium salts in the urine. The same is true when the liver cells are destroyed during acute phosphorus-poisoning.

VASCULAR OR DUCTLESS GLANDS.

INTERNAL SECRETIONS.

The metabolism of the body generally, as well as that of individual organs, has been shown to be related not only to the physiologic activity of such organs as the liver and pancreas, but also to the activity of the so-called vascular or ductless glands. The influence of the pancreas in regulating the production of glycogen by the liver, and the influence of the liver in the maintenance of the general metabolism through the production of glycogen and the formation of urea, are now established facts. That the vascular or ductless glands to an equal extent, though perhaps in a different way, assist in the maintenance of physiologic processes, appears certain from the results of animal experimentation. The explanation given for the influence of these glands is that they produce specific substances, which are poured into the blood or lymph and carried direct to the tissues, to the activities of which they appear to be essential; for without these substances the nutrition of the tissues declines and in a short time a fatal termination ensues.

Inasmuch as these partly unknown substances are formed by cell activity and are poured into the interstices of the tissues, they have been termed "internal secretions." Though the term internal secretions is applicable to all substances which arise in consequence of tissue metabolism, and which, after being poured into the blood, influence in varying degrees and ways physiologic processes, yet the term in this connection will be applied only to the secretions of the thyroid gland, hypophysis cerebri, and adrenal bodies.

Thyroid Gland.—The thyroid gland or body consists of two lobes situated on the lateral aspect of the upper part of the trachea. Each lobe is pyriform in shape, the base being directed downward and on a level with the fifth or sixth tracheal ring. The lobe is about 50 mm. in length, 20 mm. in breadth, and 25 mm. in thickness. As a rule,

the lobes are united by a narrow band or isthmus of the same tissue. The gland is reddish in color, and abundantly supplied with blood-vessels and lymphatics.

Microscopic examination shows that the thyroid consists of an enormous number of closed sacs or vesicles, variable in size, the largest not measuring more than 0.1 mm. in diameter. Each sac is composed of a thin homogeneous membrane lined by cuboid epithelium. The interior of the sac in adult life contains a transparent, viscid fluid containing albumin and termed "colloid" substance. Externally, the sacs are surrounded by a plexus of capillary blood-vessels and lymphatics. The individual sacs are united and supported by connective tissue, which forms, in addition, a covering for the entire gland.

FIG. 187.—VIEW OF THYROID BODY. 1. Thyroid isthmus. 2. Median portion of crico-thyroid membrane. 3. Crico-thyroid muscle. 4. Lateral lobe of thyroid body.—(After Morris.)

Function of the Thyroid.—The knowledge at present possessed as to the function of the thyroid gland, especially in mammals, is the outcome of a study of the effects which follow its arrested development in the child, its degeneration in the adult, and its extirpation in the human being as well as in animals. The results, however, which follow its extirpation are not always uniform in all animals, though sufficient reasons for the lack of uniformity can not always be assigned.

Cretinism, a condition characterized by a want of physical and mental development, is associated with, if not directly dependent on, a congenital absence of the thyroid or its arrested development during the early years of childhood.

Myxedema, a condition of the skin in which there is a hyperplasia of the connective tissue, of an embryonic type, rich in mucin, is generally regarded as one of the effects of degenerative processes in the thyroid. Partly in consequence of this change in the skin the face becomes broader, swollen, and flattened, giving rise to a loss of expression. At the same time the mind becomes dull, clouded, even approximating the idiotic type. This supposed infiltration of the skin with mucin was termed myxedema by Ord, who at the same time associated it with a change in the structure of the thyroid as a result of which it became functionally useless.

Extirpation of the thyroid, for relief from symptoms due to grave pathologic changes, has been followed in human beings by symptoms similar to those of myxedema. To this condition the terms operative myxedema and cachexia strumipriva have been applied.

After the publication of the history of the myxedema which followed surgical removal of the thyroid, Schiff, in 1887, repeated his earlier experiments on dogs, and found again that removal of the thyroid was speedily followed by tremors, convulsions, and death. Similar experiments were made by Horsley on monkeys, with results which resembled those characteristic of myxedema. Among the

symptoms which developed within a few days after the removal of the gland, may be mentioned loss of appetite; fibrillar contractions of muscles; tremors and spasms; mucinoid degeneration of the skin, giving rise to puffiness of the eyelids and face and to a swollen condition of the abdomen; hebetude of mind, frequently terminating in idiocy; fall of blood-pressure; dyspnea; albuminuria; atrophy of the tissues, followed by death of the animal in the

FIG. 188.—A LOBULE FROM A THIN SECTION OF THE THYROID GLAND OF AN ADULT MAN. 1. Colloid substance. 2. Epithelium. 3. Tangential section of a tubule, the epithelium viewed from the surface. 4. Tubule in transverse section. 5. Connective tissue. —(Stöhr.)

course of from five to eight weeks. The complexus of symptoms observed in monkeys was divided by Horsley into three stages: viz., the neurotic, the mucinoid, and the atrophic.

It is evident that the presence of the thyroid is essential to the normal activity of the tissues generally. As to the manner in which it exerts its favorable influence, there is some difference of opinion. The view that the gland removes from the blood certain toxic bodies, rendering them innocuous and thus preserving the body from a species of auto-intoxication, is gradually yielding to the more probable view that the epithelium is engaged in the secretion of a specific material, which finds its way into the blood or lymph

and in some unknown way influences favorably tissue metabolism. This view of the function of the thyroid is supported by the fact that successful grafting of a portion of the thyroid beneath the skin or in the abdominal cavity will prevent the usual symptoms which follow thyroidectomy. The same result is obtained by the intravenous injection of thyroid juice or by the administration of the raw gland. It was shown by Murray that myxedematous patients could be benefited, and even cured, by feeding them with fresh thyroids or with the dry extract.

The chemic features of the material secreted and obtained from the structures of the thyroid indicate that it is a complex proteid containing iodine, which, under the influence of various reagents, undergoes cleavage, giving rise to a non-proteid residue, which carries with it the iodine and phosphorus. The amount of iodine in the thyroid varies from 0.33 to 1 milligram for each gram of tissue. To this compound the term *thyroidin* has been given. The administration of this compound produces effects similar to those which follow the therapeutic administration of the fresh thyroid itself: viz., a diminution of all myxedematous symptoms. In normal states of the body, thyroidin influences very actively the general metabolism. It gives rise to a decomposition of fats and proteids and to a decline in body-weight. In large doses it may produce toxic symptoms: *e. g.*, increased cardiac action, vertigo, and glycosuria.

megalia = disease of Pituitary Body

The Pituitary Body.—This is a small body lodged in the sella turcica of the sphenoid bone. It consists of an anterior lobe, somewhat red in color, and a posterior lobe, yellowish-gray in color. The former is much the larger and partly embraces the latter. The anterior lobe is developed from an invagination of the epiblast of the mouth cavity, and consists of distinct gland tissue. The posterior lobe is an outgrowth from the brain, and is connected with the infundibulum by a short stalk. It has been suggested that the term infundibular body be reserved for the posterior lobe, and the term hypophysis cerebri for the anterior lobe. This distinction appears to be desirable, inasmuch as in their origin and structure they are separate and distinct bodies. ~~XX~~

~~##~~ Removal of the hypophysis cerebri, or the pituitary body, is always followed by a fatal result, preceded by symptoms not unlike those which follow removal of the thyroid: viz., anorexia, tremors, spasms, etc. Degeneration of the pituitary body has been found in connection with a hypertrophic condition of the bones of the face and extremities, to which the term *acromegalia* has been given.

~~U~~ Intravenous injection of an extract of the pituitary increases the force of the heart-beat without any change in its frequency, and causes a rise of blood-pressure from a stimulation of the arterioles (Schäfer and Oliver). The material secreted by the pituitary has

not been isolated, hence its chemic features are unknown. After its formation it probably passes through a system of ducts into the cerebrospinal fluid, after which it influences the metabolism of the nerve and osseous tissues as well as the force of the heart muscle.

An extract of the anterior lobe itself exerts no appreciable effect on the blood-pressure or on the rate of the heart-beat, nor does it influence the circulatory and respiratory organs. An extract of the infundibular body intravenously injected, however, gives rise to increased blood-pressure and to a slowing of the heart-beat (Howell).

Adrenal Bodies, or Suprarenal Capsules.—

These are two flattened bodies, somewhat crescentic or triangular in shape, situated each upon the upper extremity of the corresponding kidney, and held in place by connective tissue. They measure about 40 mm. in height, 30 mm. in breadth, and from 6 to 8 mm. in thickness. The weight of each is about 4 gm.

Function of the Adrenal Bodies.—It was observed by Addison that a profound disturbance of the nutrition, characterized by a bronze-like discoloration of the skin and of the mucous membranes of the mouth, extreme muscular weakness, and profound anemia, was associated with, if not dependent on, pathologic conditions of the suprarenal glands. In the progress of the disease the asthenia gradually increases, the heart becomes weak, the pulse small, soft, and feeble, indicating a general loss of tone of the muscular and vascular apparatus. Death ensues from paralysis of the respiratory muscles. The essential nature of the lesion which gives rise to these symptoms has not been determined.

Removal of these bodies from various animals is invariably and in a short time followed by death, preceded by some of the symptoms characteristic of Addison's disease. Their development, however, is more acute. From the fact that animals so promptly die after extirpation of these bodies, and the further fact that the blood of such animals is toxic to the subjects of recent extirpation, but not to normal animals, the conclusion was drawn that the function of the adrenal bodies is to remove from the blood some toxic product of muscle metabolism. Its accumulation after extirpation gives rise to death through auto-intoxication.

On the supposition that the adrenals might secrete and pour into

FIG. 189.—SAGITTAL SECTION OF THE PITUITARY BODY AND INFUNDIBULUM WITH ADJOINING PART OF THIRD VENTRICLE. *a.* Anterior lobe. *a'.* A projection from it toward the front of the infundibulum. *b.* Posterior lobe connected by a stalk with the infundibulum. *i.* *l.c.* Lamina cinerea. *o.* Right optic nerve. *ch.* Section of optic chiasm. *r.o.* Recess of ventricle above the chiasma. *cm.* Corpus mammillare. — (Schwalbe, from Quain.)

the blood a specific material which favorably influences general metabolism, Schäfer and Oliver injected hypodermically glycerin and water extracts, and observed at once an increased activity of the heart-beats and of the respiratory movements. The effects, however, were only transitory. When these extracts are injected into the veins directly, there follows in a short time a cessation of the auricular contraction of the heart, though the ventricular contraction continues with an independent rhythm. If the vagi are cut previous to the injection or if the inhibition is removed by atropin, the rapidity and vigor of both auricles and ventricles are increased. Whether the inhibitory influence is removed or not, there is a marked increase in the blood-pressure, though it is greater in the former instance. This is attributed to a direct stimulation and contraction of the muscle-fibers of the arterioles themselves, and not to vasomotor influences, as it occurs also after division of the cord and destruction of the bulb. The contraction of the arterioles is quite general, as shown by plethysmographic studies of the limbs, spleen, kidney, etc. Applied locally to the mucous membranes, adrenal extract produces contraction of the blood-vessels and pallor. The skeletal muscles are affected by the extract very much as they are by veratrin. The duration of a single contraction is very much prolonged, especially in the phase of relaxation or of decreasing energy.

It is evident from these experiments that the adrenal bodies are engaged in elaborating and pouring into the blood a specific material which stimulates to increased activity the muscle-fibers of the heart and arteries, and thus assists in maintaining the normal blood-pressure as well as the tonicity of the skeletal muscles. An alkaloidal substance was isolated by Abel from extracts of this gland, to which the term epinephrin was given. A crystallizable substance was isolated first by Takamine and later by Aldrich, to which the term adrenalin was given. Both substances are apparently equally efficacious in causing contraction of the blood-vessels and in raising the blood pressure. The question as to which of these two substances represents the active principle of the gland is as yet a subject of discussion.

The Spleen.—The spleen is a soft bluish-red organ, oval in shape, from twelve to fifteen centimeters long by eight broad and four thick. It is situated in the left hypochondrium between the stomach and the diaphragm. In this situation it is held in position by a fold of the peritoneum which passes from the upper border to the diaphragm.

Structure.—A section of the spleen shows that it consists of connective tissue, blood-vessels, lymph corpuscles, and lymphoid tissue. The surface of the spleen is covered by a capsule composed of dense fibrous tissue, from the inner surface of which septa or

trabeculæ pass inward toward the center of the organ. In their course they give off a series of processes which unite freely, forming a spongy connective-tissue framework. The capsule and the main trabeculæ in some animals contain numerous non-striated muscle-fibers. In man they are relatively few in number. The blood-vessels which enter the spleen are supported by the connective-tissue septa. As they pass toward the center of the organ they divide very rapidly and soon diminish in size. In their course small branches are given off, which penetrate the intertrabecular tissue and become encased with spheric or cylindric masses of adenoid tissue known as Malpighian corpuscles. These corpuscles are composed largely of leukocytes. In some animals the leukocytes, instead of being arranged in masses, are distributed along the walls of the artery as a continuous layer. Within the corpuscles the arteries pass into capillaries, whether the artery passes directly to the splenic pulp or indirectly by way of the corpuscles, its ultimate branches terminate in capillaries which open into the spaces of the splenic pulp. From these spaces a network of venules gathers the blood and transmits it to the veins. It is a disputed question as to whether the spaces are lined by epithelium, thus forming a continuous blood channel, or whether they are wanting in this histologic element.

FIG. 190.—MALPIGHIAN CORPUSCLE OF A CAT'S SPLEEN INJECTED. *a.* Artery. *b.* Meshes of the pulp injected. *c.* The artery of the corpuscle ramifying in the lymphatic tissue composing it.

The Splenic Pulp.—The spaces of the connective-tissue framework are filled with a dark red semifluid mass known as the splenic pulp. When microscopically examined, the pulp presents a fine loose network of adenoid tissue, large numbers of leukocytes or lymph corpuscles, red corpuscles in various stages of disintegration, and pigment granules. Chemic analysis reveals the presence of a number of nitrogen-holding bodies, *e. g.*, leucin, tyrosin, xanthin, uric acid; organic acids, *e. g.*, acetic, lactic, succinic acids; pigments containing iron, and inorganic salts.

The Functions of the Spleen.—Notwithstanding all the experiments which have been made to determine the functions of the

spleen, it can not be said that any very definite results have been obtained. The fact that the spleen can be removed from the body of an animal without appreciably interfering with the normal metabolism would indicate that its function is not very important. The chief changes observed after such a procedure are an enlargement of the lymphatic glands and an increase in the activity of the red marrow of the bones. The presence of large numbers of leukocytes in the splenic pulp and in the blood of the splenic vein suggested the idea that the spleen is engaged in the production of leukocytes, and to this extent contributes to the formation of blood. The presence of disintegrated red blood-corpuscles has suggested the view that the spleen exerts a destructive action on functionally useless red corpuscles. These and other theories as to splenic functions have been offered by different observers, but all are lacking positive confirmation.

FIG. 191.—SPLEEN ONCOMETER LAID OPEN.

Volume Variations of the Spleen.—It was shown some years since by Roy, with the aid of the plethysmograph, that the spleen undergoes rhythmic variations in volume from moment to moment. In the cat and in the dog the diminution in the volume (the systole) and the increase in volume (the diastole) together occupied about one minute.

This fact was determined by withdrawing the spleen through an opening in the abdominal wall and enclosing it in a box with rigid walls, the interior of which was connected with a piston recording apparatus. The system being filled with oil, each variation in volume was attended by a to-and-fro displacement and a corresponding movement of the recording lever. The special form of plethysmograph used for this purpose is known as the oncometer or bulk measurer, and the recording apparatus as the oncograph (Fig. 191 and Fig. 196).

The cause of these variations in volume Roy attributed to a rhythmic contractility of the non-striated muscle-fibers in the capsule and trabeculae, and not to changes in the arterial blood-pressure, as the curve of the pressure taken simultaneously remained prac-

tically uniform. The effect of the rhythmic contractions of the splenic muscle tissue is to force the blood through the organ, a condition necessitated perhaps by the pressure relations within, though what function is thereby fulfilled is not apparent.

It was subsequently shown by Schäfer and Moore that the splenic volume is extremely responsive to all fluctuations of the arterial blood-pressure; that though the spleen may passively expand and recoil in response to the rise and fall of the blood-pressure, nevertheless the reverse conditions may obtain: viz., that the splenic volume may diminish as the pressure rises, if the splenic arterioles contract simultaneously with the contraction of the arterioles generally. On the contrary, the splenic volume may increase coincident with a dilatation of the splenic and systemic arterioles. In addition to the rhythmic variations, the spleen steadily increases in volume for a period of five hours after digestion, and then gradually returns to its former condition.

Influence of the Nerve System.—The nerves which supply the vascular and visceral muscles in the spleen are derived directly from the semilunar ganglion (post-ganglionic fibers) and pass to it in company with the splenic artery. The nerve-cells from which they arise are in physiologic relation with nerve-fibers (pre-ganglionic fibers) which emerge from the spinal cord in the anterior roots of the third thoracic to the first lumbar nerves inclusive, though they are found most abundantly in the sixth, seventh, and eighth thoracic nerves. Their center of origin is in the medulla oblongata.

Stimulation of the nerves in any part of their course gives rise to a diminution in splenic volume; division of the nerves is followed by an increase in the volume. In asphyxia the spleen is small and contracted, a condition attributed to a stimulation of the centers in the medulla by the venosity of the blood.

The musculature of the spleen may also be excited to contraction by reflex influences, as shown by the fact that stimulation of the central end of a sensory nerve is attended by a diminution of volume.

Inasmuch as the excised spleen will continue to exhibit variations in volume when perfused with blood, it would appear that it possess some mechanism independent to some extent of the nerve system.

CHAPTER XVI.

EXCRETION.

As stated in the preceding chapter, the term excretion is limited to the process by which the end-products of tissue metabolism are removed from the body, the nature of the process, however, differing in no essential particulars from that underlying the process of secretion. The histologic structures involved and the forces at work being of the same general character, it is impossible to draw any sharp line of distinction between them. As a general fact it may be stated that in their composition all the characteristic ingredients of the excretions are incapable either of entering into the formation of tissue or of undergoing oxidation for the purpose of heat-production. As the retention of these end-products in the body would exert a deleterious influence on normal metabolism, their prompt removal becomes essential to the maintenance of physiologic activity. The principal excretions of the body—urine, perspiration, and bile—are complex fluids in which, with the exception of those given off in the lungs, are to be found in varying proportions the chief end-products of metabolism.

THE URINE.

Normal urine has a pale yellow or amber color, an aromatic odor, an acid reaction, and a specific gravity of 1.020. As a rule, it is perfectly transparent, though its transparency may be diminished from the presence of mucus, calcium and magnesium phosphates, and mixed urates.

The *color*, which varies within physiologic limits from a pale yellow to a reddish-brown, is due to the presence of the coloring-matters *urobilin*, *urochrome*, and *uroerythrin*, all of which are derivatives from the bile pigments absorbed from the liver or the alimentary canal.

The *reaction* of the urine is acid, owing to the presence of the acid phosphates of sodium and calcium. The degree of acidity, however, varies at different periods of the day. Urine passed in the morning is strongly acid, while that passed during and after digestion, especially if the food be largely vegetable in character and rich in alkaline salts, is either neutral or alkaline in reaction. The diminished acidity after meals is attributed to the formation of hydrochloric acid by the

gastric glands and the consequent liberation of bases which are excreted in the urine. The phosphoric acid which enters into combination with sodium and potassium bases is a product of tissue metabolism.

The *specific gravity* is about 1.020, though it varies from 1.015 to 1.025. It will diminish, other things being equal, with increased consumption of water and diminished activity of the skin; it will be increased of course by the opposite conditions.

The *quantity* of urine excreted in twenty-four hours varies from 1200 to 1700 c.c. Amounts both above and below these are frequently passed from a variety of causes.

The *odor* of the urine is characteristic and due to the presence of aromatic compounds.

COMPOSITION OF URINE.

Water, -----	1500.00 c.c.
Total solids, -----	72.00 grams.
Urea, -----	33.18 "
Uric acid, (urates), -----	0.55 "
Hippuric acid, hippurates, -----	0.40 "
Kreatinin, xanthin, hypoxanthin, guanin, ammonium salts, pigment, etc. -----	11.21 "
Inorganic salts: sodium and potassium sulphates, phosphates, and chlorids; magnesium and calcium phosphates, -----	27.00 "
Organic salts: lactates, acetates, formates in small amounts, -----	
Sugar, -----	a trace
Gases, nitrogen, and carbonic acid. -----	

The estimation of total urinary solids in any given sample of urine is frequently a matter of clinical interest. This may approximately be attained by multiplying the last two figures of the specific gravity by the coefficient of Haeser or Christison, 2.33. The result expresses the total solids in 1000 parts: *e. g.*, urine with a specific gravity of 1.020 would contain 20×2.33 , or 46.60 grams of solid matter per 1000 c.c. If the amount passed in twenty-four hours be 1500 c.c., the total solids would amount to 69.9 grams.

The Water of the Urine.—The amount of urinary water and its ratio to the solid constituents will vary with the amount consumed and the activity of the skin and lungs. In summer the foods, liquid and solid, remaining the same, the quantity of water in the urine is diminished in consequence of increased activity of skin and lungs and the ratio of water to solids decreased. (In winter the reverse conditions obtain). The food remaining the same, the consumption of large quantities of water hastens at least the removal of end-products from the tissues and thus increases the urinary solids.

Urea is the most abundant of the organic constituents of the urine and is present to the extent of from 2 to 3 per cent. It is a

colorless neutral substance, crystallizing under varying conditions in long silky needles or in rhombic prisms. It is soluble in water and alcohol. It is composed of CON_2H_4 . When subjected to prolonged boiling, it combines with water, giving rise to ammonium carbonate. The presence of *Micrococcus ureæ* in urine will also convert the urea, by combining it with two molecules of water, into ammonium carbonate, $\text{CON}_2\text{H}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} = (\text{NH}_4)_2\text{CO}_3$.

The average amount of urea excreted daily varies from 30 to 34 grams. As urea is now known to be the principal end-product of proteid metabolism within the body, it is evident that the quantity produced and eliminated in the twenty-four hours will depend on the quantity of proteid food consumed and on the extent to which the proteid constituents of the tissues are metabolized. In the condition of nutritive equilibrium, when the proteid ingested is 100 grams and the urea egested 31.5 grams, it is difficult to state the percentage of urea which is derived from the metabolism of the proteid food (circulating proteid) and that derived from the metabolism of the proteids of the tissues (organ proteid). In this condition, however, it is found that if the proteid consumed is varied within limits above or below the standard amount of 100 grams, the quantity of urea excreted rises and falls in practically the same ratio, indicating apparently that the production of urea is directly dependent on the proteid supply. On the contrary, it has been observed in human beings in the fasting condition that for a period of ten days there is a daily excretion of about 21 grams of urea, equivalent to about 70 grams of proteid. Again, contrary to former views, the metabolism of proteid and the production of urea are practically independent of muscular work. Even after severe labor extending over a period of some hours there is no noticeable increase in the urea eliminated.

Seat of Urea Formation.—It is quite certain in the light of present knowledge that urea is partly formed in the liver by the action of the cells out of cleavage products of proteid metabolism. The particular compounds out of which the cells synthesize urea are the ammonium salts, especially the carbamate and carbonate. The experimental reasons for this view have already been stated on page 410.

Uric acid is one of the constant ingredients of the urine. It is a crystalline nitrogen-holding body closely resembling urea, its formula being $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N}_4\text{O}_3$. The total quantity excreted daily varies from 0.2 to 1 gram. It is doubtful if uric acid exists in a free state in the urine, the indications being that it is combined with sodium and potassium in the form of a quadriurate. The urates are frequently deposited when in excess from the urine as a brick-red sediment, the color being due to their combination with the coloring-matter uroerythrin. When pure, uric acid crystallizes in the rhombic form,

from bile

though it assumes a variety of forms. Uric acid was long regarded as a product of general proteid metabolism and for chemic reasons an antecedent of urea. This view has been abandoned. At present it is believed that it is a cleavage product of nuclein, a constituent of all cell nuclei. In the metabolism of nuclein a proteid and nucleic acid are formed, from the latter of which uric acid is derived. Nucleic acid when decomposed yields a series of bases, such as xanthin, hypoxanthin, adenin, guanin, etc., known collectively as the alloxur bases, including uric acid, a name which indicates their relation, on the one hand, to alloxan and on the other to urea. Though there is a close relationship between uric acid and the alloxur bases, it has been impossible to experimentally derive one from the other. When hypoxanthin, however, is given internally it is oxidized and converted into uric acid. It is extremely probable, therefore, that uric acid is an oxidation product of one or more of the alloxur bases.

Xanthin, hypoxanthin, guanin, etc., are also found in urine in small but variable amounts. They are nitrogenized compounds derived mainly from the metabolism of the nuclein bodies.

Kreatinin is a crystalline nitrogenous compound closely resembling kreatin, one of the constituents of muscular tissue. The amount excreted daily is about 1 gram. Though kreatinin may arise in consequence of proteid metabolism, it is probable that it is largely derived from a transformation of the kreatin contained in the meat consumed as food.

Hippuric acid in combination with sodium and potassium is very generally present in urine, though in small amounts. It is more abundant in the urine of the herbivora than the carnivora. In man the amount excreted daily is about 0.7 gram, though the amount may be raised by a diet of asparagus, plums, cranberries, etc., and by the administration of benzoic and cinnamic acids. There is evidence that hippuric acid is formed in the kidney from benzoic acid, its precursors, or related bodies. Various compounds of this class are found in vegetable foods, a fact which may account for the increase in the excretion of uric acid on a vegetable diet.

Leucin, tyrosin, phenol, cystin, indoxyl, skatoxyl, are found in small amounts even under normal conditions. They arise from putrefactive change in the intestine.

Inorganic Salts.—Sodium and potassium phosphates, known as the *alkaline phosphates*, are found in both blood and urine. The total quantity excreted daily is about 4 grams. Calcium and magnesium phosphates, known as the *earthy phosphates*, are present to the extent of 1 gram. Though insoluble in water, they are held in solution in the urine by its acid constituents. If the urine be rendered alkaline, they are at once precipitated. Sodium and potassium sulphates are also present to the extent of about

2 grams. The phosphoric and sulphuric acids which are combined with these bases enter the body for the most part in the foods, though there is evidence that they also arise by oxidation in consequence of the metabolism of proteids which contain phosphorus and sulphur. Sodium chlorid is the most abundant of the inorganic salts. It is derived mainly from the food. The amount excreted is about 15 grams in twenty-four hours.

THE KIDNEYS.

2 1/2 x 1 1/2 size
11/2 oz
 The **kidneys** are the organs engaged in the excretion of the urinary constituents from the blood. They resemble a bean in shape, are from 10 to 12 centimeters in length, 2 in breadth, and weigh from ~~144 to 170~~ grams. They are situated in the lumbar region, one on each side of the vertebral column behind the peritoneum, and extend from the eleventh rib to the crest of the ilium. The anterior surface is convex, the posterior surface concave. The latter presents a deep notch—the hilum. The kidney is surrounded by a thin smooth membrane composed of white fibrous and yellow elastic tissue; though it is attached to the surface of the kidney by minute processes of connective tissue, it can very readily be torn away. The substance of the kidney is dense but friable.

Upon making a longitudinal section of the kidney it will be observed that the hilum extends into the interior of the organ and expands to form a cavity known as the sinus, in which are found the blood-vessels, nerves, and duct (Fig. 192). This cavity is mainly occupied by the upper part of the renal duct, the ureter, the interior of which is termed the pelvis. The ureter divides into several portions which terminate in small caps or calyces which receive the apices of the pyramids. The **parenchyma** of the kidney consists of two portions: viz.—

1. *An internal or medullary portion*, consisting of a series of pyramids or cones, some twelve or fifteen in number, which present a distinctly striated appearance.
2. *An external or cortical portion*, half an inch in thickness and distinctly friable in character.

The Histology of the Kidney.—The kidney is composed of a connective-tissue framework supporting secreting tubules, blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves, all of which are directly connected with the removal of the urinary constituents from the blood. The kidney is structurally a compound tubular gland. If the apex of each pyramid be examined with a lens, it will present a number of small orifices which may be regarded as the beginnings of the uriniferous tubules. From this point the tubules pass outward in a straight but somewhat diverging manner toward the cortex, giving off at

acute angles a number of branches (Fig. 193). From the apex to the base of the pyramids they are known as the tubules of Bellini. In the cortical portion of the kidney the tubule becomes enlarged and twisted, and, after pursuing an extremely convoluted course, turns backward into the medullary portion for some distance, forming the ascending limb of Henle's loop; it then turns upon itself, forming the descending limb of the loop, re-enters the cortex, again expands and becomes convoluted, and finally terminates in an ovoid enlargement known as Müller's or Bowman's capsule, in which is contained a small tuft of blood-vessels—the glomerulus. Each tubule consists of a basement membrane lined throughout its entire extent by epithelial cells. The epithelium as well as the tubule vary in shape and size in different parts of its course. In the capsule the epithelium is flattened, lining not only the inner surface of the capsule but reflected over the blood-vessels as well. This is known as the glomerular epithelium. In the convoluted portions of the tubules the epithelium is cuboidal, granular, and somewhat striated; in Henle's loop it is more or less flattened.

FIG. 192.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH THE KIDNEY, THE PELVIS OF THE KIDNEY, AND A NUMBER OF RENAL CALYCES. A. Branch of the renal artery. U. Ureter. C. Renal calyx. 1. Cortex. 1'. Medullary rays. 1". Labyrinth, or cortex proper. 2. Medulla. 2'. Papillary portion of medulla, or medulla proper. 2". Border layer of the medulla. 3, 3. Transverse section through the axes of the tubules of the border layer. 4. Fat of the renal sinus. 5, 5. Arterial branches. *. Transversely coursing medullary rays.—(Tyson, after Henle.)

The Blood-vessels of the Kidney.—The renal artery enters the kidney at the hilum behind the ureter; it soon divides into several

large branches which penetrate the substance of the kidney between the pyramids and pass outward into the cortex. At the base of the

FIG. 193.—SCHEME OF THE COURSE OF THE URINIFEROUS TUBULES AND THE RENAL VESSELS.

pyramids branches of the arteries form an anastomosing plexus. From this plexus vessels are given off, some of which follow the straight tubules toward the apex of the pyramids, vasa recta, while others enter the cortex and pass to its surface (Fig. 193). In the course of the latter small branches are given off, each of which soon divides and subdivides to form a ball of capillary vessels known as the *glomerulus*. These capillaries, however, do not anastomose, but soon reunite to form an efferent vessel, the caliber of which is less than that of the afferent artery. In consequence of this, there is a greater resistance to the outflow of blood than to the inflow, and therefore a higher blood-pressure in the glomerulus than in capillaries generally.

The relation of the glomerulus to the tubule is important from a physiologic point of view. As stated above, the glomerulus is received into and surrounded by the terminal expansion or capsule of the tubule. This capsule, formed by an indentation of the terminal portion of the tubule, consists of two walls, an outer one consisting of an extremely thin basement membrane, covered by flattened epithelial cells, and an inner one consisting apparently only of flattened epithelium which is reflected over and closely invests the glomerular blood-vessels (Fig.

FIG 194.—SCHEME OF THE RENAL OR MALPIGHIAN CORPUSCLE. 1. Interlobular artery. 2. Afferent vessel. 3. Efferent vessel. 4. Outer wall. 5. Inner wall. 6. Glomerulus. 7. Neck of tubule.—(Stöhr.)

194). The blood is thus separated from the interior of the capsule by the epithelial wall of the capillary and the epithelium of the reflected wall of the capsule. During the periods of secretory activity the blood-vessels of the glomerulus are filled with blood to such an extent that the sac cavity is almost obliterated. After its exit from the capsule the efferent vessel of the glomerulus soon again divides and subdivides to form an elaborate capillary plexus which surrounds and closely invests the convoluted tubules. From this plexus as well as from the plexus which surrounds the straight tubules veins arise which pass toward and empty into veins at the base of the pyramids. The renal vein formed by the union of these latter veins emerges from the kidney at the hilum and finally empties into the vena cava inferior.

The **nerves** of the kidney are derived from the renal plexus and follow the course of the blood-vessels to their termination.

The Renal Duct.—The excretory duct of the kidney, the ureter, is a musculo-membranous tube about 5 mm. in diameter when distended, 30 cm. in length, and extends from the hilum to the base of the bladder. The upper extremity is expanded and within the renal sinus becomes irregularly branched, giving rise to a number of short tubes, called calyces, each of which embraces the apex of a Malpighian pyramid. The interior of the expanded portion of the ureter is known as the *pelvis*. The wall of the ureter consists of a mucous membrane, a muscle coat, and an external fibrous investment.

MECHANISM OF URINE SECRETION.

The secretion of urine is a complex process and susceptible of several interpretations. It was originally inferred by Bowman that, as the kidney presents anatomically an apparatus for filtration, the capsule with its enclosed glomerulus, and an apparatus for secretion, the epithelium of the urinary tubules, the elimination of the urinary constituents from the blood is accomplished by the two processes of filtration and secretion; that the water and highly diffusible inorganic salts simply pass by diffusion, under pressure, through the walls of the glomerular capillaries, while the organic constituents are removed by the epithelium lining the tubules.

Influenced largely by the facts of blood-pressure Ludwig advanced the view that the factors concerned in the secretion of urine were purely physical; that in consequence of the high pressure in the vessels of the glomeruli, due to the resistance offered by the smaller efferent vessel, all the urinary constituents were filtered off in a state of extreme dilution. In order to account for the higher percentage of the organic constituents in the urine, it was assumed that as the dilute urine passed through the tubules the water was partly reabsorbed, passing by diffusion into the lymph and blood until the urine acquired its normal characteristics. In support of this view, a large number of facts relating to the influence of an increase and a decrease of pressure in the blood-vessels of the glomeruli, the velocity of the blood-stream, etc., in determining the rate of urinary flow were adduced, all of which apparently indicated that the former stood to the latter in the relation of cause and effect, and that the formation of urine was accomplished entirely by physical forces.

The progress of physiologic investigation, however, has thrown some doubt on the validity of this physical interpretation, and has rather served to support the view of Bowman that the organic constituents at least are removed from the blood by a process of selection on the part of the epithelium of the convoluted part of the urinary

tubules; in other words, that the secretion of urine is physiologic rather than physical. Heidenhain has brought forward a series of facts which support this view. As evidence that the cells possess a selective power, he presents the following experiment: The spinal cord of an animal is divided in the neck for the purpose of lowering the blood-pressure in the kidney below the pressure at which the urine is secreted; a solution of indigo-carmin is injected into the blood-vessels; after the lapse of ten minutes the animal is killed, the blood-vessels washed out with alcohol for the purpose of precipitating the indigo-carmin *in situ*. Section of the kidney shows a uniform blue stain of the cortex alone. Microscopic examination reveals the fact that the blue stain is due to the deposition of the pigment in the lumen and in the lumen border of the cells of the convoluted tubules and the ascending limb of Henle's loop; while the epithelium of Bowman's capsule as well as the glomerular epithelium present no evidence of pigmentation.

Nussbaum attempted to establish the secretory power of the epithelium in another way. In the frog the kidney receives blood from two sources: the glomeruli receive their blood from the renal artery, the tubules from the capillaries formed by the anastomosis of branches of the efferent vessel of the glomerulus and the branches of the renal portal vein. Nussbaum believed that by ligating the renal artery all glomerular activity could be abolished and the part played by the epithelium could be established. After so doing the flow of urine was at once checked; the injection of urea at once reestablished it. This fact was taken as a proof that the tubular epithelium not only excreted urea, but water and perhaps other constituents as well. It was also found that sugar, peptones, carmin, etc., which are always eliminated from the blood under normal conditions, are not removed after ligation of the renal artery. It was concluded from these experiments that the secreting structures of the kidney consist of two distinct systems, the glomerular and the tubular; the former secreting water, salts, sugar, peptone, etc.; the latter urea, uric acid, etc. These and similar facts indicate that the renal epithelium possesses a secretory rather than an absorptive function. Heidenhain and those who agree with him assert that even the water and inorganic salts which pass through the glomerular epithelium do so in consequence of cell selection and cell activity; that the entire process is one of secretion, though conditioned by blood-pressure, blood velocity, etc.

Influence of Blood-pressure.—Whether the elimination of the urinary constituents is entirely secretory (physiologic) in character or not there can be no doubt that the whole process is largely determined by the pressure and velocity of the blood in the glomerular capillaries, or, to state it more accurately, on the difference of pressure between the blood in the capillaries and the urine in the capsules.

As a rule, this latter pressure is at a minimum. If the urine should accumulate in the ureter and tubules either from ligation or mechanical obstruction until its pressure approximates that of the blood, the secretion would be diminished if not abolished. It is difficult to determine the average pressure or velocity of the blood in the glomerular capillaries, though they both must be greater than in capillaries in other parts of the body, from the fact that the efferent vessel is narrower than the afferent, and therefore offers

great resistance to the outflow of blood, a condition most favorable to the production of a high pressure in the glomerulus.

The pressure of the blood in the glomeruli may be raised and the velocity increased:

1. By an increase in blood-pressure generally.
2. By an increase in the pressure of the renal artery alone.

The first condition may be brought about by an increase in either the force or frequency of the heart's action or by a contraction of the arterioles of vascular areas in any or all parts of the body, excepting, of course, the renal vascular area. The second condition is brought about by a dilatation of the renal artery alone and possibly by a contraction of the efferent vessels of the glomeruli.

The pressure of the blood in the glomeruli may be diminished and the velocity decreased—

FIG. 195.—To ILLUSTRATE THE EFFECT OF ACTIVE CHANGES IN THE VASA AFFERENTIA AND EFFERENTIA ON THE PRESSURE IN THE GLOMERULAR CAPILLARIES. A. Renal arteries. G. Glomerular capillaries. C. Tubular capillaries. V. Vein. The short thick lines represent the vasa afferentia and efferentia. The continuous heavy line represents the mean average pressure. If the vas afferens dilates and the vas efferens contracts separately or conjointly, the pressure will rise, as indicated by the upper dotted line. If the vas afferens contracts and the vas efferens dilates separately or conjointly, the pressure will fall, as indicated by the lower dotted line.—*(After Morat and Starling.)*

1. By a decrease in the blood-pressure generally.
2. By a decrease in the pressure of the renal artery alone.

The first condition is brought about by a decrease in either the force or frequency of the heart's action or by a dilatation of the arterioles of large vascular areas in any or all parts of the body. The second condition is brought about by contraction of the renal artery alone and possibly by a dilatation of the efferent vessels of the glomeruli. The effect of the contraction and relaxation of either the afferent or efferent vessels on the pressure within the glomerulus is shown in figure 195.

Coincident with the rise and fall of pressure in the glomerular capillaries there is a rise and fall in the rate of urinary flow. Thus it has been found that an increase in the aortic pressure from 127 to 142 mm. of mercury, by ligation of the carotid, femoral, and vertebral arteries, increased the rate of urinary flow from 8.7 grams in thirty minutes to 21.2 grams. On the contrary, a decrease in aortic pressure below 40 mm. of mercury caused by division of the spinal cord is followed by a total abolition of the urinary flow. These facts serve to indicate the dependence of the secretion on blood-pressure.

That there is an increase in the volume of the blood flowing through the kidney during its functional activity is apparent from inspection. It is enlarged, swollen, and red in color. The blood in the renal vein is bright red in color and contains more oxygen and less carbon dioxide than venous blood generally. During the intervals

FIG. 196.—ONCOMETER. K. Kidney; the thick line is the metallic capsule. *h*. Hinge. I. Tube for filling apparatus. T. Tube to connect with T₁. *a*, *v*, *u*. Artery, vein, ureter.—(*Stirling, after Roy.*)

FIG. 197.—ONCOGRAPH. C'. Chamber filled with oil, communicating by T, with T₁. *p*. Piston. *l*. Writing-lever.—(*Stirling, after Roy.*)

of activity the kidney diminishes in size, is pale in color and the blood of the renal vein dark and venous in character. These variations in the volume of the kidney have also been experimentally determined and registered by means of the oncometer and oncograph devised by Roy (Figs. 196 and 197).

The oncometer consists of a metallic box (Fig. 196) composed of halves which open and close by means of a hinge. It is connected with a recording apparatus, the oncograph (Fig. 197), through the tube T. The kidney, withdrawn from the body, is placed within the oncometer. Through an opening in the side pass the artery, vein, and ureter. Between the kidney and the wall of the capsule there is placed a thin membrane. Oil is then poured through the side tube I until the space between the capsule and

the kidney, as well as the tube leading to the chamber of the onco-graph, are completely filled. When the tube I is closed, the conditions are such that all variations in the volume of the kidney are taken up and reproduced by the recording lever attached to the piston of the onco-graph. A curve of the variations in the volume of the kidney is shown in figure 198, taken simultaneously with the curve of the blood-pressure. An examination of this curve shows that the volume-changes coincide with changes in the blood-pressure, exhibiting not only the respiratory but also the cardiac undulations.

Influence of the Nervous System.—The influence of the nervous system in regulating the blood-supply to the kidney is evident from the results of experimentation. If the nerves which accompany the renal artery into the kidney are divided, the artery at once dilates, the kidney enlarges, and a copious flow of urine takes place. If the peripheral ends of these nerves be stimulated with the induced electric current, the artery contracts, the kidney

FIG. 198.—B. P. Blood-pressure curve. K. Curve of the volume of the kidney. T. Time curve; intervals indicate a quarter of a minute. A. Abscissa.—(*Stirling, after Roy.*)

diminishes in size, and the flow of urine ceases. In addition to these vaso-constrictor nerves, there is evidence that the kidney also receives vaso-dilator nerves which emerge from the spinal cord and are found in the anterior roots of the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth dorsal nerves, in the dog. Direct and reflex stimulation of these nerves gives rise to a dilatation of the artery, a swelling of the kidney, and an increase in secretion, independent of any variation in general blood-pressure.

The route of the vaso-constrictor nerves is, in the dog at least, through the splanchnics. Section of these nerves is followed by a dilatation of the renal vessels and an increase in the flow of urine. Stimulation of the peripheral ends is followed by a constriction of the vessels and a cessation of the flow of urine.

The vasomotor center for the blood-vessels of the kidney is in all probability situated in the medulla oblongata in close proximity to the general vasomotor centers, though subordinate centers are doubt-

less present in the spinal cord. It was found by Bernard that puncture of the medulla was occasionally followed by a profuse secretion of urine without the presence of sugar. The route of the vaso-motor impulses which influence the renal blood-supply is down the cord through the splanchnics and through the renal plexus.

Influence of Variations in the Composition of the Blood.—

As it is the function of the kidneys to excrete water and various end-products from the blood and thus maintain a general average composition, it is highly probable that as soon as they accumulate beyond a certain percentage they themselves act as stimulants to renal activity, either by acting directly on the renal epithelium or by increasing the glomerular pressure. There is evidence at least that urea acts in the former manner. An excess of water in the blood from copious drinking or from a sudden checking of the skin from a fall of temperature will act in the latter way. The introduction into the blood of inorganic salts, such as potassium nitrate, sodium acetate, etc., will in a short time lead to increased activity of the kidneys, as shown by an increase in the quantity of urine excreted. The manner in which these agents and other members of their class, the so-called saline diuretics, increase renal activity is yet a subject of discussion. On the one hand, it is stated that they promote an absorption of water from the tissues to such an extent that a condition of hydremic plethora is produced, which in itself increases not only the general blood-pressure but the local renal pressure as well, and that it is this factor which is the cause of the increased flow of urine. On the other hand, it is asserted that though the salts increase the local pressure and the volume of the kidney, they nevertheless act specifically on the renal epithelium, and therefore may be regarded as secreto-motor agents. An increase in the percentage of sugar or urea in the blood has a similar influence on the kidney.

MICTURITION.

Movement of the Urine.—The urine, as soon as it is poured into the uriniferous tubules, flows through the tubules into the pelvis, through the ureter into the bladder. The immediate cause of this movement is undoubtedly a difference of pressure between the terminal portions of the tubules and the terminal portion of the ureter, aided by the peristaltic contraction of the muscle wall of the ureter.

The *bladder* is a reservoir for the temporary reception of the urine prior to its expulsion from the body. When distended it is ovoid in shape and is capable of holding from 600 to 800 cu. cm. The bladder is composed of four coats: viz., serous, muscle, areolar, and mucous. The muscle coat consists of an external longitudinal and an internal circular and oblique sets of fibers of the non-striated variety

which collectively encircle the entire organ. As these fibers by their contraction expel the urine from the bladder, they are known collectively as the *detrusor urinæ* muscle. At the exit of the bladder the circular fibers are somewhat increased in number, giving rise to the appearance of a distinct muscle which has been termed the *sphincter vesicæ* muscle. The urethra just beyond the bladder is provided with a distinct circular muscle composed of striated fibers, the *sphincter urethræ* muscle. When the urine passes into the bladder it is retained there and prevented from escaping by the contraction of this latter muscle. Under normal conditions the urine accumulates before its presence gives rise to a characteristic sensation and the desire for urination.

Nerve Mechanism of Urination.—The muscle mechanisms which retain as well as expel the urine are under the control of the nerve system. The sphincter urethræ muscle, by which the orifice of the bladder is closed, is kept in a state of tonic contraction by nerve impulses coming from the spinal cord through the anterior roots of the third and fourth sacral nerves. The detrusor urinæ muscle is excited to contraction by impulses coming likewise through the sacral nerves from the cord. The centers of origin for these two sets of motor nerves are located in the cord in the neighborhood of the fifth lumbar vertebra. The expulsion of the urine is largely a reflex act, though under the control of the will. When the desire to urinate is experienced, nerve impulses are coming through sensory nerves from the mucous membrane of the bladder which are reflected to the centers governing the sphincter urethræ and detrusor urinæ muscles and to the brain. The effect of the reflected impulses is to inhibit the sphincter center and to stimulate the detrusor center. If the act of urination is to be permitted, volitional impulses descend through the spinal cord which have the effect of still further inhibiting the sphincter center and stimulating the detrusor center, the result being a relaxation of the sphincter muscle and a contraction of the detrusor muscle and the expulsion of the urine. If the act of urination is to be suppressed, volitional impulses inhibit the detrusor center and stimulate the sphincter.

PERSPIRATION; SEBUM.

The perspiration or sweat, the chief secretion of the skin, is a clear colorless fluid, slightly acid in reaction and saline to the taste. Its specific gravity varies from 1.003 to 1.006. Unless collected from the soles of the feet and the palms of the hand, it is apt to be mixed with epithelial cells and sebum. The total quantity of perspiration secreted daily has been variously estimated at from 700 to 1000 grams; the exact amount, however, is difficult of determination, for the reason

that the rate of secretion varies readily with variations in temperature, food, drink, season of the year, etc.

Chemical analysis of the sweat shows that it contains but from 0.5 to 2.5 per cent. of solid constituents, the variation in the percentage depending on the quantity of water secreted. The solids consist of traces of urea, neutral fats, lactic and sudoric acids in combination with alkaline bases, and inorganic salts (Fovel). Other observers, however, have not been able to detect the presence of either lactic or sudoric acid. Urea is a constant ingredient, though its percentage is extremely small, possibly not more than 0.1 per cent. The amount, however, may be very much increased in uremic conditions, the result of acute or chronic disease of the kidneys. The inorganic constituents consist mainly of sodium chlorid and alkaline and earthy phosphates. Carbonic acid is also present in the free state as well as in combination with alkaline bases.

The very small quantity of the solid constituents in the sweat, taken in connection with the fact that it is excreted most abundantly when the external temperature is high, indicates that it is not so important as an excrementitious fluid as it is as a means for the regulation of the temperature of the body.

The sweat is a product of the secretory activity of specialized glands, the sweat-glands, embedded in the skin, to the histologic structures of which they bear a special relation.

THE SKIN.

The skin is a complexly organized structure investing the entire external surface of the body. Its total area varies from 16 to 20 feet in man and from 12 to 16 feet in woman. It varies in thickness in different localities of the body from $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{100}$ of an inch. The skin consists of two principal layers: viz., a deep layer, the derma or corium, and a superficial layer, the epidermis.

The **derma** or **corium** may be subdivided into a *reticulated* and a *papillary* layer. The reticulated layer consists of white fibrous and yellow elastic tissue, non-striated muscle fibers, woven together in every direction and forming an areolar network, in the meshes of which are deposited masses of fat and a structureless amorphous matter; the papillary layer consists mainly of club-shaped elevations or projections of the amorphous matter constituting the papillæ. The reticulated layer serves to connect the skin with the underlying structures and to afford support for the blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics which are distributed to the papillæ (Fig. 199).

The **epidermis** is an extra-vascular structure, consisting entirely of epithelial cells. It may also be subdivided into two layers—the *Malpighian* or *pigmentary* layer, and the *corneous* or *horny* layer. The former is closely applied to the papillary layer of the true skin

and is composed of large nucleated cells, the lowest layer of which, the "prickle cells," contains the pigment granules which give to the skin its varying hues in different individuals and in different races of men; the corneous layer is composed of flattened cells which from their exposure to the atmosphere, etc., are hard and horny in texture.

The Sweat-glands.—These glands are tubular in shape, the inner extremity of each being coiled upon itself a number of times, forming

FIG. 199.—SECTION PERPENDICULARLY THROUGH THE HEALTHY SKIN. *a*. Epidermis, or scarfskin. *b*. Rete mucosum, or rete malpighii. *c*. Papillary layer. *d*. Derma, corium, or true skin. *e*. Panniculus adiposus, or fatty tissue. *f*, *g*, *h*. Sweat-gland and duct. *i*, *k*. Hair, with its follicle and papilla. *l*. Sebaceous gland.

a little ball situated in the derma or the subcutaneous connective tissue. From this coil the duct passes up in a straight direction to the epidermis, where it makes a few spiral turns, after which it opens obliquely on the surface. The gland consists of a basement membrane lined with epithelial cells. It is supplied abundantly with blood-vessels and nerves. The sweat-glands are extremely numerous all over the cutaneous surface, though they are more thickly disposed in some situations than others. They probably average 2500 to the

square inch; the total number has been estimated at from 2,000,000 to 2,500,000.

Influence of the Nerve System on the Production of Sweat.—The secretion of sweat, though a product of the activity of epithelial cells and dependent on a variety of conditions, is regulated to a large extent by the nerve system. Here as in other secreting glands the fluid is derived from materials in the lymph-spaces, furnished by the blood. Generally the two conditions, in-

creased blood-flow and increased glandular action, coexist. At times, however, a profuse clammy perspiration is secreted with diminished blood-flow. Two sets of nerves are evidently concerned in this process: viz., *vaso-motor nerves*, which regulate the blood-supply, and *secretory nerves*, which stimulate the gland-cells to activity.

The nerve-centers which control the sweat-glands are situated in the spinal cord, though the number of such centers and their exact location for the different regions of the body have not yet been satisfactorily determined. In a general way it may be stated that the centers for the head and face lie in the upper cervical portion of the cord; for the upper extremities, in the lower cervical portion; for the lower extremities, in the lower dorsal and upper lumbar portion. The secretory nerves which emerge from these centers reach the glands of the face and head through the cervical sympathetic; of the arms and legs, through the brachial plexus and the sciatic nerves. It is probable that there is also a general dominating sweat center located in the medulla oblongata.

That the sweat-glands are stimulated to activity by nerve impulses is shown by the fact that stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided cervical sympathetic, of the brachial-plexus, or of the sciatic nerve is followed in a few seconds by a profuse secretion. Though under physiologic conditions there is a simultaneous dilatation of the blood-vessels and an increased supply of blood, this is merely a condition and not a cause of the secretion; for the secretion can be excited and the flow maintained for a period of from ten to fifteen minutes after ligation of the blood-vessels of the limb or even after its amputation, when the corresponding nerve is stimulated.

The sweat-glands may be excited to activity by their related nerve-centers, either by central, reflex, or peripheral influences. Among the first may be mentioned mental emotions, venosity of the blood, increased temperature of the blood, hot drinks, violent muscular exercise, etc. Among the second may be mentioned powerful stimulation of various afferent or sensory nerves, heightened external temperature, etc. Among the last may be mentioned various drugs. Pilocarpin injected into the blood causes a profuse secretion even when the nerves have been divided. Its action is supposed to be exerted on the terminal branches of the nerves and possibly on the cells themselves. As in the case of the salivary glands atropin suspends the activity of the terminal branches of the secretory nerves.

Hairs.—Hairs are found in almost all portions of the body, and can be divided into—

1. Long, soft hairs, on the head.
2. Short, stiff hairs, along the edges of the eyelids and nostrils.
3. Soft, downy hairs on the general cutaneous surface.

They consist of a root and a shaft. The shaft is oval in shape and about $\frac{1}{400}$ of an inch in diameter; it consists of fibrous tissue, covered externally by a layer of imbricated cells, and internally by cells containing granular and pigment material.

The root of the hair is embedded in the hair-follicle, formed by a tubular depression of the skin, extending nearly through to the subcutaneous tissue; its walls are formed by the layers of the corium, covered by epidermic cells. At the bottom of the follicle there is a papillary projection of amorphous matter, corresponding to a papilla of the true skin, containing blood-vessels and nerves, upon which the hair-root rests. The investments of the hair-roots are formed of epithelial cells, constituting the *internal* and *external* root-sheaths.

FIG. 200.—LARGE SEBACEOUS GLAND.
1. Hair in its follicle. 2, 3, 4, 5.
Lobules of the gland. 6. Excre-
tory duct traversed by the hair.
—(Sappey.)

The lower portion of the hair follicle is connected with the upper surface of the derma by bundles of non-striated muscle-fibers which are termed *arrectores pilorum* muscles. Their inclination and insertion are such that their contraction is followed by erection of the hair follicle and hair shaft. These muscles are excited to action by nerves termed *pilo-motor* nerves.

THE SEBUM.

The **sebum** or **sebaceous matter** is a peculiar oily material produced by specialized glands in the skin. It consists of water, epithelium, proteids, fat, cholesterin, and inorganic salts.

The **sebaceous glands** are simple and compound racemose glands opening by a common excretory duct on the surface of the epidermis or into the shaft of a hair-follicle (Fig. 200). These glands are extremely numerous and found in all portions of the body, with the exception of the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, and most abundantly in the face. They are formed by a delicate structureless membrane lined by polyhedral epithelium.

The sebum is not produced by an act of true secretion, but is formed by a proliferation and degeneration of the gland epithelium. When first poured on the surface, the sebum is oily and semi-liquid in character, but soon hardens and acquires a cheese-like consistence.

It serves to lubricate the hair and skin and prevent them from becoming dry and harsh.

The surface of the fetus is generally covered with a thick layer of sebaceous matter, the vernix caseosa, which possibly keeps the skin in a normal condition by protecting it from the effects of the long-continued action of the amniotic fluid in which the fetus is suspended.

CHAPTER XVII.

THE CENTRAL ORGANS OF THE NERVE SYSTEM AND THEIR NERVES.

The **central organs of the nerve system** are the encephalon and the spinal cord lodged within the cavity of the cranium and the cavity of the spinal or vertebral column respectively. The general shape of these two portions of the nerve system corresponds with that of the cavities in which they are contained. The encephalon is broad and ovoid, the spinal cord narrow and elongated.

The **encephalon** is subdivided by deep fissures into four distinct, though closely related portions: viz., (1) the cerebrum, the large ovoid mass, occupying the entire upper part of the cranial cavity; (2) the cerebellum, the wedge-shaped portion placed beneath the posterior part of the cerebrum and lodged within the cerebellar fossæ of the cranium; (3) the isthmus of the encephalon, the more or less pyramidal-shaped portion connecting the cerebrum and cerebellum with each other and both with (4) the medulla oblongata. (Fig. 201.)

The **spinal cord** is narrow and cylindric in shape. It occupies the spinal canal as far as the second or third lumbar vertebra. The central nerve system is bilaterally symmetric, consisting of distinct halves united in the median line. The cerebrum is subdivided by a deep fissure, running antero-posteriorly, into two ovoid masses termed *cerebral hemispheres*; the cerebellum is also partially subdivided into hemispheres; the isthmus likewise presents in the median line a partial division into halves; the medulla oblongata and spinal cord are subdivided by an anterior or ventral and a posterior or dorsal fissure into halves, a right and a left.

From the inferior surface of the encephalon and from either side of the median line twelve nerve-trunks emerge, which as they pass through foramina in the walls of the cranium are termed cranial nerves. From each side of the spinal cord thirty-one nerve-trunks emerge, which as they pass through foramina in the walls of the spinal column are termed spinal nerves. As both cranial and spinal nerves are ultimately distributed to the structures of the body,—i. e., the general periphery,—they collectively constitute the *peripheral organs of the nerve system*.

The organs of the central nerve system are supported and pro-

ected by three membranes named, in their order from without inward, the *dura mater*, the *arachnoid*, and the *pia mater*.

The *dura mater* is a tough membrane composed of fibrous tissue. It consists of two layers, the outer of which lines the cranial cavity and forms an internal periosteum; the inner layer is closely attached to the outer except at certain regions where it separates and forms supporting structures, such as the *falx cerebri*, *falx cerebelli*, *tentorium cerebelli*, etc.; at the margin of the foramen magnum the outer layer becomes continuous with the periosteal tissue, while the inner layer invests the cord down to its ultimate termination. (Fig. 202.)

The *arachnoid* is a delicate serous membrane. The external surface is smooth and well defined and separated from the *dura* by a narrow space, the subdural space. The inner surface sends inward fine connective-tissue processes which interlace in every direction, constituting the subarachnoid tissue. This tissue is abundant in the cranium, much less so in the spinal canal. The spaces between the connective tissue, taken collectively, constitute the general subarachnoid space. Around the spinal cord this space is well defined, and at the base of the encephalon expands to form large cavities known as the *cisterna magna*, *cisterna pontis*, etc.

The *pia mater* is a delicate membrane composed of areolar tissue. It closely invests the encephalon and spinal cord, dipping into the various fissures. It is exceedingly vascular and sends small blood-vessels for some distance into the brain and spinal cord.

The Encephalo-spinal Fluid.—The general subarachnoid space, as well as certain cavities within the encephalon, contain a clear transparent fluid, termed the encephalo-spinal. This fluid has an alkaline reaction and a specific gravity of 1.007 or 1.008. It is composed of water, proteids (pro-

FIG. 201.—THE CENTRAL ORGANS OF THE NERVE SYSTEM. F.T.O. Frontal, temporal, and occipital lobes of the cerebrum. c. Cerebellum. p. Pons. mo. Medulla oblongata. ms., ms. The upper and lower limits of the spinal cord. The remaining letters indicate the region and number of the spinal nerves.—(Quain, after Bourguery.)

teoses and serum-globulin), and a compound pyrocatechin, capable of reducing copper salts, though not exhibiting any other of the properties of sugar. In many respects this fluid resembles lymph. The subarachnoid space and the general encephalic cavities, termed ventricles, communicate with one another by an opening in the pia mater (the foramen of Magendie) as it passes over the lower part of the fourth ventricle.

The Functions of the Central Nervous System.—The functions of the central nervous system are twofold: (1) It coördinates the organs and tissues of the body in such a manner that when a stimulus is applied to one structure it gives rise to activity in another. (2) It serves to bring the individual into conscious relationship with the external world.

The coördination of the organs and tissues is accomplished mainly by the intermediation of the spinal cord and the medulla oblongata. The reflex activities connected with digestion, the circulation of the blood, with respiration, excretion, etc., are illustrations of the coördinating capabilities of the nerve-centers located in these portions of the central nervous system.

Consciousness of the existence of the external world and of the relation existing between it and the individual is associated with the physiologic activities of the encephalon, and more particularly of the cerebral hemispheres. This portion of the nervous system is the chief, though perhaps not the sole, organ of the mind, and its main functions are for the most part mental. The function of a part at least of the peripheral nervous system is to afford a means of communication

between the central nervous system and the remaining structures of the body. The nerve-trunks constituting this part may be divided into two groups, as follows:

1. The first group comprises nerves in connection with the special sense-organs, *e. g.*, eye, ear, nose, tongue, skin, as well as nerves in connection with the general or organic sense-organs, *e. g.*, muscular membranes, viscera, etc., which transmit nerve impulses

FIG. 202.—THE MEMBRANES OF THE SPINAL CORD. 1. Dura mater. 2. Arachnoid. 3. Posterior root of spinal nerve. 4. Anterior root of spinal nerve. 5. Ligamentum dentatum. 6. Linea splendens.—(Morris, after Ellis.)

afferent
12

to certain localized areas in the cerebral cortex, where they are translated into conscious sensations. These sensations, both special and general, by their grouping and combinations are the primary elements of intelligence.

2. The second group comprises those nerves which terminate in the muscle apparatus and which transmit nerve impulses, by way of the medulla and spinal cord, from localized areas in the cerebral cortex to the muscles of the face, trunk and extremities, which are in consequence excited to activity. The muscle movements thus become physical expressions of mental states, and if directed in a definite manner to the overcoming of the resistances offered by the external world become capable of modifying it in accordance with the mental states.

The first group of nerves, the afferent, especially those connected with the special sense-organs, are excited to activity by impressions made on their peripheral terminations by agencies in the external world, and thus become a means of communication between the physical and the mental worlds.

The second group of nerves, the efferent, are excited to activity by those molecular disturbances in their related nerve-cells which accompany volitional efforts, and thus they become a means of communication between the mental and the physical worlds.

The central nerve system is thus composed of a number of separate though closely related parts, to each of which a separate function has been assigned. In the study of the structure and function of these separate parts it will be found convenient, and conducive to clearness, to consider them in the order of their complexity, beginning with the spinal cord and ending with the cerebrum.

THE SPINAL CORD.

The **spinal cord** is the narrow elongated portion of the central nerve system contained within the spinal canal. It is cylindric in shape though presenting an enlargement in both the lower cervical and lower lumbar regions corresponding to the origins of the nerves distributed to the upper and lower extremities. The cord varies in length from 40 to 45 cm., measures 12 mm. in diameter, weighs 42 grams, and extends from the atlas to the second lumbar vertebra, beyond which it is continued as a narrow thread, the *filum terminale*. (Fig. 203.) It is divided by the anterior and posterior longitudinal fissure into halves, and is therefore bilaterally symmetric. A transverse section of the cord shows that it is composed of both white and gray matter, the former covering the surface, the latter occupying the center.

Structure of the Gray Matter.—The gray matter is arranged in the form of two crescents, united in the median line by a transverse band or commissure forming a figure resembling the letter **H**. Though varying in shape in different regions of the cord, the gray matter in all situations presents on either side an anterior or ventral

Superior or Cervical Segment
of Spinal Cord.

Middle or Dorsal Portion
of Cord.

Inferior Portion of Cord and
Cauda Equina.

FIG. 203.—SUPERIOR, MIDDLE, AND INFERIOR PORTIONS OF SPINAL CORD.—1. Floor of fourth ventricle. 2. Superior cerebellar peduncle. 3. Middle cerebellar peduncle. 4. Inferior cerebellar peduncle. 5. Enlargement at upper extremity of postero-median column. 6. Glosso-pharyngeal nerve. 7. Vagus. 8. Spinal accessory. 9, 9, 9, 9. Ligamentum denticulatum. 10, 10, 10, 10. Posterior roots of spinal nerves. 11, 11, 11, 11. Postero-lateral fissure. 12, 12, 12, 12. Ganglia of posterior roots. 13, 13. Anterior roots. 14. Division of united roots into anterior and posterior nerves. 15. Terminal extremity of cord. 16, 16. Filum terminale. 17, 17. Cauda equina. I, VIII. Cervical nerves. I, XII. Dorsal nerves. I, V. Lumbar nerves. I, V. Sacral nerves.—(*Sappey*.)

and a posterior or dorsal horn. Between the two horns there is a portion termed the intermediate gray substance. The commissure presents in its center a narrow canal which extends throughout the entire length of the cord. This canal is lined by cylindric epithelium and surrounded by gelatinous material. (Fig. 204.)

The *anterior horn* is short and broad and entirely surrounded by white matter. The *posterior horn* is narrow and elongated and extends quite up to the surface of the cord, where it is capped by gelatinous matter, the *substantia gelatinosa*. In the lower cervical and thoracic regions a portion of the intermediate gray substance projects outward and forms the so-called lateral horn. The gray matter fundamentally consists of a framework of fine neuroglia supporting blood-vessels, lymphatics, medullated and non-medullated nerves, and groups of nerve-cells.

The Nerve-cells.—The nerve-cells of the cord are very numerous and present a variety of shapes and sizes in different regions. They are usually arranged in groups which extend for some distance up and down the cord, forming columns more or less continuous.

In the *anterior horn* two well-marked groups are found, one situated at the anterior and inner angle, known as the antero-median group, the other situated at the posterior and lateral angle and known as the postero-lateral group. In the lower cervical and upper thoracic regions, in the region of the lateral horn, another group of cells is found, known as the intermediate group. In the central portion of the horn there is also a central group.

The cells of the anterior horns are of large size, nucleated and multipolar. They are the modified descendants of pear-shaped cells, the neuroblasts, which migrated from the medullary tube (see page 111). In the course of their migration they developed dendrites which form an intricate felt-work throughout the anterior horn. One of the processes, the axon,

approached the surface of the cord, penetrated it, grew outward, became covered with myelin and neurilemma, and developed into

FIG. 204.—SECTIONS THROUGH DIFFERENT REGIONS OF THE SPINAL CORD. A. At the level of the sixth cervical nerve. B. At the mid-dorsal region. C. At the center of the lumbar enlargement. D. At the upper part of the conus medullaris. 1. Posterior roots. 2. Anterior roots. 3. Posterior fissure. 4. Anterior fissure. 5. Central canal. —(Morris' "Anatomy," after Schwalbe.)

an anterior root-fiber. These nerve-cells, with their dendrites, axons, and terminal branches, form efferent neurons of the first order. The intimate histologic and physiologic relationship existing between the nerve-cell and the axon is revealed by the degenerative changes which arise in the latter when separated from the former. The cell apparently determines the nutrition of the axon and may be regarded as trophic in function. Some of the cells of the anterior horn send their axons into the white matter of the same side,

FIG. 205.—DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING THE CHIEF CELLULAR ELEMENTS OF THE SPINAL CORD, AND THE PROBABLE RELATIONS BETWEEN THE CELLS AND THE FIBERS AND THE PRINCIPAL TRACTS; THE LEFT HALF OF THE FIGURE EXHIBITS THE COMMUNICATIONS OF THE SEVERAL VARIETIES OF NERVE-CELLS. A, P. Ventral or anterior and dorsal or posterior horns. PR. Posterior root bundles. DP. Direct pyramidal tract. CP. Crossed pyramidal tract. DC. Direct cerebellar tract. GB. Gowers's tract. a. Motor cells passing directly into fibers of ventral roots. b. Various cells of the antero-lateral column. Some give off collateral branches of remarkable size. c. Commissural (heteromeral) cells. d. Cells to dorsal column (tautomeral). e. Golgi cells of dorsal horn. The right half of the diagram shows the communications established by means of the collateral fibers. —(Piersol, after Lenhossék.)

after which they divide into two branches, one passing up, the other down, the cord, to re-enter the gray matter at different levels. They are probably associative in function. Other cells send their axons into that portion of the white matter on the same and opposite sides known as Gowers's antero-lateral tract. (Fig. 205.)

In the posterior horn nerve-cells are also present, though they are not so numerous as in the anterior horn. At the base of the horn

and on its inner side there is a well-marked group of cells which extends from the seventh or eighth cervical nerves downward to the second or third lumbar nerves, being most prominent in the thoracic region. This column is known as Clarke's vesicular column. From the nerve-cells constituting this column axons pass obliquely outward into that portion of the white matter known as the direct cerebellar tract.

Classification of Nerve-cells.—The cells of the gray matter may be divided into two main groups: viz., efferent and afferent.

The *efferent cells*, independently of their trophic influence, are also motor in function, inasmuch as the excitation arising in them is transmitted outwardly through their axons to muscles, blood-vessels, glands and viscera, imparting to them motion, either molar or molecular. As the *efferent* fibers in the ventral roots of the spinal nerves are classified (see page 113) in accordance with their physiologic action into motor, vaso-motor, secretor, inhibitor and accelerator nerves, so the nerve-cells of which the nerves are integral parts may be classified physiologically as motor, vaso-motor, secretor, inhibitor, and accelerator. Collections or groups of such cells are termed "centers."

The *afferent cells* are largely sentient or receptive in function, inasmuch as the excitations brought to the spinal cord by the afferent nerves in the dorsal roots from the general periphery are received by them and transmitted through their axons toward the cortex of the cerebrum, where they are translated into conscious sensations. As the nerve-fibers in the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves are classified, in accordance with the sensations to which they give rise, as sensor, thermal, tactile, etc., so these nerve-cells may be similarly classified according as they transmit their excitations to those specialized areas in the cerebral cortex in which these different sensations arise.

Structure of the White Matter.—A transverse section of the cord shows that the white matter completely covers the gray matter except where the posterior horns reach the surface. Anteriorly the white matter of each lateral half is connected by a narrow strip or bridge of white matter, the anterior commissure. Microscopic examination shows that the white matter is composed of vertically disposed medullated nerve-fibers which are devoid of a neurilemma. These fibers are supported partly by a framework of connective tissue, and partly by neuroglia. The white matter of each side of the cord is anatomically divided into an anterior, a lateral, and a posterior column by the anterior and posterior roots of the spinal nerves.

Classification of the Nerve-fibers.—From a study of the embryologic development of the white matter and of the degenerative changes which follow its pathologic and experimental destruction, it

has been differentiated into a number of specialized tracts which have different origins, destinations, and functions. They may be divided, however, into efferent, afferent, and associative fibers. (Fig. 206.)

1. The **anterior column**, comprising that portion between the anterior longitudinal fissure and the anterior roots, has been subdivided into:

(a) The *direct pyramidal tract*, or column of Türck. This tract borders the longitudinal fissure and extends from the upper extremity of the cord as far down as the mid-thoracic region. From above downward this tract diminishes in size, for the reason that its fibers

R. Descending
B. Ascending

FIG. 206.—TRANSECTION OF THE CERVICAL SPINAL CORD SHOWING ITS CHIEF SUBDIVISIONS.—(From Mills' "Diseases of the Nervous System.")

or their collaterals cross at successive levels to the opposite side of the cord by way of the anterior commissure to enter the gray matter of the anterior horn. The cells of these axons are located in the cortex of the cerebral hemisphere of the same side. The terminal filaments of these fibers or axons are in physiologic relation with the dendrites of the cornual cells. When divided in any part of their course, these fibers undergo descending degeneration. They are therefore efferent neurons and of the second order.

(b) The *anterior root zone*. This tract lies external to the pyramidal tract, surrounds the anterior horn of the gray matter and extends throughout the length of the cord. It is composed of short com-

missural fibers which come from nerve-cells in the gray matter from the same and opposite sides of the cord. After entering the white matter they divide into two branches, pursue opposite directions, then re-enter the gray matter at higher and lower levels and come into relation with other nerve-cells.

(c) The *antero-lateral tract* of Marchi and Löwenthal. This tract is situated at the inner and anterior angle of the anterior column. After removal of the one-half of the cerebellum it degenerates downward.

2. The **lateral column**, comprising that portion between the ventral and dorsal roots, has been divided into:

(a) The *antero-lateral tract* of Gowers. This tract is somewhat crescentic in shape and situated on the lateral aspect of the cord external to the anterior root zone. It extends throughout the entire length of the cord. When divided it undergoes ascending degeneration, which would indicate that the axons originate in nerve-cells in the gray matter. This tract is therefore afferent in function.

(b) The *lateral limiting tract*. This tract, which is quite narrow, lies close to the external border of the gray matter. It is composed of fibers which do not degenerate to any considerable extent and are in all probability associative fibers which come from nerve-cells in the gray matter to re-enter at lower and higher levels.

(c) The *crossed pyramidal tract*. This tract occupies the posterior portion of the lateral column, though its exact position varies somewhat in different regions of the cord. In the cervical and thoracic regions it is covered by a layer of fibers. In the lumbar region, however, it comes to the surface. From above downward this tract gradually diminishes in size, for the reason that its fibers and their collaterals enter the gray matter at successive levels. The terminal branches of these fibers are in close physiologic relation with the dendrites of the cornual cells. The cells of these axons are located in the cortex of the cerebral hemispheres of the opposite side. When divided in any part of their course, they undergo descending degeneration. They are therefore efferent neurons and of the second order.

(d) The *direct cerebellar tract*, or column of Flechsig. This tract is situated on the surface of the lateral column external to the crossed pyramidal tract. It slightly increases in size from below upward. It is composed of fibers the cells of which are found on the inner side and base of the posterior horn (Clark's vesicular column). From this origin the fibers pass obliquely outward to the surface and then directly upward to terminate, as its name implies, in the cerebellum. Decussation of these fibers takes place in the superior vermiform lobe of the cerebellum. When divided this tract degenerates upward. It is therefore in all probability an afferent tract and of the second order.

3. The **posterior column**, comprising that portion between the dorsal roots and the posterior longitudinal fissure, has been subdivided into:

(a) The *postero-external tract* of Burdach. This tract lies just within the posterior horns. A portion of this tract is composed of ground fibers which, though vertically disposed, have but a short course. They take their origin in cells in the gray matter, and after entering this tract divide into ascending and descending branches, which with their collaterals re-enter the gray matter at different levels. Another portion of this tract is made up of nerve-fibers derived from the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves, which cross this column toward the median line in an oblique or horizontal direction. The fibers of the upper portion of this tract terminate around the nucleus cuneatus at the medulla oblongata. When divided, these fibers degenerate for but a short distance. The ground fibers are probably associative in function.

(b) The *postero-median internal tract*, or column of Goll. This tract is separated from the former by a septum of connective tissue which is most marked above the eleventh thoracic segment. The fibers which compose this tract are long and derived for the most part from the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves of *the same side*. This is shown by the fact that division of these roots central to the ganglion is followed by ascending degeneration of the column of Goll as far as the nucleus gracilis in the medulla. Fibers derived from cells in the gray matter are also contained in this column. This tract is afferent in function.

(c) The *septo-marginal tract*. This is an oval-shaped tract situated along the margin of the posterior longitudinal fissure.

(d) The *cornu-commissural tract*. This is formed along the border of the anterior portion of the posterior column as far forward as the posterior commissure. Both of these tracts are best developed in the lumbo-sacral region. They arise from nerve-cells in the gray matter. They undergo descending degeneration when divided, but not after division of the dorsal roots.

(e) *Lissauer's tract*. This tract embraces the tip of the posterior horn and is composed principally of fibers from the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves. After entering the tract the fibers divide into ascending and descending branches, which finally terminate around cells in the posterior horn.

(f) The *comma tract*. This is a narrow tract of fibers situated in the anterior portion of the column of Burdach. When divided, its fibers degenerate downward.

The Relation of the Spinal Nerves to the Spinal Cord.—The spinal nerves present near the spinal cord two divisions which from their connection with the anterior or ventral and the posterior or

Ba

THE SPINAL CORD.

451

dorsal surfaces are known as the ventral and dorsal roots. The *ventral* roots are the axons of various groups of cells in the anterior horns. From their origin these axons pass almost horizontally forward through the anterior column in three distinct bundles. After emerging from the cord they curve downward and backward to join the posterior root. The *dorsal* roots are the central axons of nerve-cells in the spinal ganglia. After entering the cord they divide into two main groups, a lateral and a mesial. A portion of the lateral group enters the posterior horn directly through the caput cornu; the other portion turns upward and runs through Lissauer's tract and ultimately enters the posterior horn. The mesial group passes into the postero-external column (Burdach), where the fibers divide into descending and ascending branches. The former constitute the comma tract, the terminal branches of which surround cells in the gray matter; the latter (ascending) cross the column obliquely and enter the postero-internal column (Goll), in which they pass upward to terminate around the cells of the nucleus gracilis of the same side. As these root fibers pass up and down the cord, collateral branches are given off which enter the gray matter at successive levels and come into physiologic relation with the cells of Clark's vesicular column on the same and opposite sides and with the cells of the anterior horn.

Experimentally, it has been determined that the anterior or ventral roots contain all the efferent fibers, the posterior or dorsal roots all the *afferent* fibers. The proofs in support of this view are as follows:

Stimulation of the ventral roots produces:

1. Convulsive movements of muscles.
2. The discharge of a secretion from glands.
3. Changes in the caliber of blood-vessels.
4. Inhibition of the rhythmic activity of certain organs.

Division of these roots is followed by:

1. Loss of muscle movement (paralysis of motion).
2. Cessation of normal secretion.
3. Cessation of active vascular changes.

Stimulation of the dorsal roots causes:

1. Reflex activities.
2. Conscious sensations.
3. Inhibition of the rhythmic activity of certain organs.

Division of these roots is followed by:

1. Loss of reflex activities, and
2. Loss of sensation in all parts to which they are distributed.

The ventral roots are, therefore, efferent in function, transmitting nerve impulses from the nerve centers to the periphery. The dorsal roots are afferent in function, transmitting nerve impulses from the general periphery to the nerve centers.

Ant = efferent
Post = afferent

FUNCTIONS OF THE SPINAL CORD.

Physiologic investigation has demonstrated that the spinal cord, in virtue of the presence of nerve-cells and nerve-fibers, may be regarded as composed of:

1. Independent nerve-centers, each of which has a special function; and—
2. Conducting paths by which these centers are brought into relation with one another and with the cerebrum and its subordinate or underlying parts.

The cord, moreover, may be considered as consisting physiologically of a series of segments placed one above the other, the number of segments corresponding to the number of spinal nerves. In other words, a spinal segment comprises that portion of the cord to which is attached a pair of spinal nerves. The nerve-cells in each segment are in histologic and physiologic relation with definite areas of the body, embracing muscles, blood-vessels, glands, skin, etc.

The Spinal Cord as an Independent Center.—The efferent cells of the spinal segments are the immediate sources of the nerve energy which excites activity in muscles, blood-vessels, glands. The discharge of their energy may be caused:

1. By variations in the composition of the blood or lymph by which they are surrounded. The activity of the cell thus occasioned is termed automatic or autochthonic (Gad).
2. By the arrival of nerve energy coming through afferent nerves from the general sentient periphery, skin, mucous membrane, etc.
3. By the arrival of nerve energy descending the spinal cord from the cerebrum or subordinate structures. The peripheral activity in the former instance is said to be reflex or peripheral in origin; in the latter instance, direct or cerebral in origin. In this latter instance, also, the muscle movements are due to volitional, the vascular variations and glandular discharges to emotional, forms of cerebral activity.

Each segment of the spinal cord may be regarded, therefore, because of its contained nerve-cells:

1. As a center for automatic activity.
2. As a center for the reception of excitations arising either at the periphery or in the cerebrum, and for their subsequent transmission through efferent nerves to various peripheral organs.

Automatism.—The growth, the nutrition and multiplication of the cells of various tissues, and their continuous and rhythmic activity, have been attributed to an automatic action of the spinal nerve-cells. By this expression is meant a discharge of energy from the cells occasioned by a change in their environment, *i. e.*, in the chemic composition of the blood or lymph by which they are surrounded, and independent of any excitation coming through afferent nerves.

If the cell activity is continuous, though variable in degree from time to time, it gives rise to what is termed tonus, *e. g.*, trophic tonus, vascular, muscle tonus, etc. If the cell activity is intermittent, it imparts to muscles a certain rhythmic activity, *e. g.*, the respiratory movements.

As no effect arises without a sufficient cause, the term automatic has been objected to and the term autochthonic has been suggested (Gad), expressive of the idea that the energy originates in the nerve-cell as a result of a reaction between the cell and its ever-changing environment. A center so acting could not be regarded as primarily a center for reflex action, however much it might be influenced or conditioned secondarily by afferent impulses. Though automatic activity of the spinal cord centers is advocated by some physiologists, the fact must be recognized that with increasing knowledge of reflex activities some of the phenomena hitherto regarded as automatic have been found to be reflex in origin. Whether this will eventually be found true for all forms of so-called automatic or autochthonic activity remains to be seen.

Trophic Tonus.—The normal metabolism of muscle, gland, and connective tissue which underlies the assimilation of food, the storing of energy, and the production of new compounds, is dependent, in the higher animals at least, on the connection of these tissues with the central nerve system; for if the efferent nerves be divided, not only will they undergo degeneration in their peripheral portions, but the muscles, glands, and connective tissues to which they are distributed will also undergo similar changes. This is to be attributed not merely to inactivity, but rather to a loss of nerve influence, inasmuch as inactivity leads merely to atrophy and not to degeneration. It would appear from facts of this character that the normal metabolism is dependent for its continuance on nerve influences. There is no evidence, however, as to the existence of special trophic nerves, separate from those which impart to glands and muscles their customary activities. The trophic centers and the motor centers are identical, though the two modes of their activity are separate and distinct.

Vascular Tonus.—The state of moderate contraction of the arterioles throughout the body, in consequence of which the average arterial pressure is maintained, is attributed to constant activity of the vaso-motor centers, this activity being conditioned by variations in the composition of blood, either an increase in the quantity of carbon dioxide or a decrease in the quantity of oxygen. The vaso-motor centers are regarded as primarily automatic, though capable of being influenced secondarily by reflected excitations from the periphery or direct excitations from the cerebrum.

Muscle Tonus.—It is well known that if a muscle be divided in

the living animal the two portions will contract and separate themselves to a certain distance. This indicates that the muscle when in a state of rest is in a slight degree of contraction. This condition of the muscle, to which the term muscle tonus is given, was formerly attributed to an automatic and continuous discharge of energy from the nerve-cells. Brondgeest, however, showed that this tonus is entirely reflex in origin and immediately disappears on division of the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, which would not be the case if the cells in the cord were acting automatically. The afferent nerves in this reflex arise in the muscle or its tendons, and the stimulus is the slight degree of extension to which the muscle is subjected in virtue of its attachments and the ever-varying position of the limbs and trunk.

The tonic contraction of the visceral muscles,—*e. g.*, the pyloric, the vesical, the anal sphincters,—though regarded as automatic by some, is probably reflex in origin, dependent on the arrival of

FIG. 207.—DIAGRAM OF A SIMPLE REFLEX ARC. 1. Sentient surface. 2. Afferent nerve. 3. Emissive or motor cell. 4. Efferent nerve. 5. Muscle.—(After Morat and Dayon.)

afferent impulses from the periphery. It is probable that future investigation will disclose the existence and pathway of these afferent fibers.

Reflex Actions.—It has already been stated that the nerve-cells in the spinal cord are capable of receiving and transforming afferent nerve impulses into efferent nerve impulses, which are transmitted outward to muscles, exciting contraction; to glands, provoking secretion; to blood-vessels, changing their caliber; and to organs, inhibiting or accelerating their activity. All such actions taking place through the spinal cord and medulla oblongata independently of sensation or volition are termed reflex actions. The mechanism involved in every reflex action consists of at least the following structures (Fig. 207):

1. A sentient surface; *e. g.*, skin, mucous membrane, sense organ, etc.
2. An afferent fiber and cell.

3. An emissive cell, from which arises—
4. An efferent nerve, distributed to a responsive organ, as—
5. Muscle, gland, blood-vessel, etc.

In this connection the reflex contractions of skeletal muscles only will be considered.

If a stimulus of sufficient intensity be applied to the sentient surface, there will be developed in the terminals of the afferent nerve a series of nerve impulses which will be transmitted by the afferent nerve to, and received by, the dendrites of the emissive cell in the anterior horn of the gray matter. With the reception of these impulses there will be a disturbance in the equilibrium of the molecules of the cell, a liberation of energy and a transmission of nerve impulses outward through the efferent nerve to the muscle.

A reflex mechanism or arc of this simplicity would subserve but a simple movement. The majority of the reflexes, however, are extremely complex and involve the coöperation and coördination of a number of centers at different levels of the spinal cord and medulla, on the same and opposite sides, and of muscles situated at distances more or less remote from one another. The transference of nerve impulses coming from a localized area of a sentient surface, to emissive cells situated at different levels is accomplished by the intermediation of a third neuron situated in the gray matter which is in connection, on the one hand, with the central terminals of the afferent nerve, and, on the other hand, with the dendrites of the emissive or motor cells (Fig. 208). A histologic and physiologic mechanism of this character readily explains how a localized stimulation can give rise to reflex actions extremely complex in character.

FIG. 208.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATION OF THE THIRD NEURON *a*, TO THE AFFERENT NEURON *b*, AND TO THE EFFERENT NEURONS *c*, *c*, *c*.—*(After Kölliker.)*

The reflex contractions of skeletal muscles are best studied after division of the central nerve system at the upper limit of the spinal cord. After this procedure the spinal centers can act independently of, and uninfluenced by either sensation or volitional efforts on the part of the animal. Though it is possible to provoke reflex contractions under such circumstances in warm-blooded animals, they are,

as a rule, incomplete and of short duration, owing to disturbances of the circulation and respiration and the consequent loss of tissue irritability. In frogs and in cold-blooded animals generally, the spinal cord retains its irritability for a long period of time after removal of the brain, and therefore is well adapted for the study of reflex actions.

The division of the spinal cord can be readily effected by inserting a spear-shaped knife between the occipital bone and the atlas. The skin, occipito-atlantal membrane, and medulla can be divided with one plunge of the knife. The brain can then be destroyed by the insertion of a fine wire into the brain cavity. A frog so prepared, and placed on the table and allowed to remain at rest for a few moments until the shock of the operation passes away, will draw the limbs close to the body and assume a position not unlike that of a normal frog. If then the posterior limbs be extended, they will immediately be drawn close to the side of the trunk in the usual flexed position. If the toes are pinched with forceps, the foot will execute a series of movements as if it were trying to free itself from the source of irritation.

If the frog be suspended, the limbs, through the force of gravity, will be gradually extended and hang down freely. In this, as in the sitting position, the animal will remain perfectly quiet and will not exhibit spontaneous movements. Any stimulus applied to the skin, however, provided it is of sufficient intensity, will be followed by a more or less pronounced movement. Mechanic, chemic and electric stimuli applied to any part of the skin will call forth the characteristic reflex movements. Chemic stimuli such as weak solutions of sulphuric or acetic acid placed on the toes will be followed by feeble flexion of the corresponding leg, to be succeeded in a short time by extension. Stronger solutions will produce more extensive and vigorous movements, the foot at the same time being rubbed against the thigh, apparently for the purpose of freeing it from the irritant. Similar phenomena follow the application of the acid to the fingers or the trunk. As a rule, the extent and complexity of the movement is within limits proportional to the strength of the stimulus. By limiting the sphere of action of the stimulus to definite but different areas of the skin a great variety of movements, more or less complex and coördinated and apparently purposive and defensive in character, can be produced. The coördinated and purposive character of the movements exhibited by a brainless frog led Pflüger to the assumption that the spinal cord in this as well as in other cold-blooded animals is possessed of sensorial functions, is endowed with rudimentary consciousness. This view, however, is not generally accepted, the movement being attributed to specialized mechanisms in the cord, partially inherited, which permit of one and the same movement with

mechanic regularity and precision, so long as the conditions of the experiment remain the same.

In warm-blooded animals similar results may be obtained for a short time after division of the cord, especially if artificial respiration is maintained and the circulation of the blood continued. The cord will then retain its irritability for some time. If the conditions of experimentation were favorable, it is highly probable that the human spinal cord would execute similar movements. Thus it was observed by Robin in a man who had been decapitated that reflex muscle contractions could be elicited by stimulating the skin after the lapse of an hour after execution. "While the right arm was lying extended by the side, with the hand about 25 centimeters distant from the upper part of the thigh, I scratched with the point of a scalpel the skin of the chest at the areola of the nipple, for a space of 10 or 11 centimeters in extent, without making any pressure on the subjacent muscles. We immediately saw a rapid and successive contraction of the great pectoral muscle, the biceps, probably the brachialis anticus, and lastly the muscles covering the internal condyle. The result was a movement by which the whole arm was made to approach the trunk, with rotation inward and half-flexion of the forearm upon the arm; a true defensive movement, which brought the hand toward the chest as far as the pit of the stomach. Neither the thumb, which was partially bent toward the palm of the hand, nor the fingers, which were half bent over the thumb, presented any movements. The arm being replaced in its former position, we saw it again execute a similar movement on scratching the skin, in the same manner as before, a little below the clavicle. This experiment succeeded four times, but each time the movement was less extensive; and at last scratching the skin over the chest produced only contractions in the great pectoral muscle which hardly stirred the limb" (Dalton).

Laws of Reflex Action (Pflüger).

1. *Law of Unilaterality*.—If a feeble irritation be applied to one or more sensory nerves, movement takes place usually on one side only, and that the same side as the irritation.
2. *Law of Symmetry*.—If the irritation becomes sufficiently intense, motor reaction is manifested, in addition, in corresponding muscles of the opposite side of the body.
3. *Law of Intensity*.—Reflex movements are usually more intense on the side of irritation; at times the movements of the opposite side equal them in intensity; but they are usually less pronounced.
4. *Law of Radiation*.—If the excitation still continues to increase, it is propagated upward, and motor reaction takes place through centrifugal nerves coming from segments of the cord higher up.
5. *Law of Generalization*.—When the irritation becomes very intense, it is propagated in the medulla oblongata; motor reaction then

becomes general, and it is propagated up and down the cord, so that all the muscles of the body are thrown into action, the medulla oblongata acting as a focus whence radiate all reflex movements.

Special Reflex Movements.—Among the reflexes connected with the more superficial portions of the body there are some which are so frequently either exaggerated or diminished in pathologic conditions of the spinal cord that their study affords valuable indications as to the seat and character of the lesions. They may be divided into:

1. The skin or superficial, and
2. The tendon or deep reflexes.

The skin reflexes are induced by stimulation of the skin and mucous membranes—*e. g.*, pricking, pinching, scratching, etc. The following are the principal skin reflexes:

1. *Plantar reflex*, consisting of contraction of the muscles of the foot, induced by stimulation of the sole of the foot; it involves the integrity of the reflex arc through the lower end of the cord.
2. *Gluteal reflex*, consisting of contraction of the glutei muscles when the skin over the buttock is stimulated; it takes place through the segments giving origin to the fourth and fifth lumbar nerves.
3. *Cremasteric reflex*, consisting of a contraction of the cremaster muscle and a retraction of the testicle toward the abdominal ring when the skin on the inner side of the thigh is stimulated; it depends upon the integrity of the segments giving origin to the first and second lumbar nerves.
4. *Abdominal reflex*, consisting of a contraction of the abdominal muscles when the skin upon the side of the abdomen is gently scratched; its production requires the integrity of the spinal segments from the eighth to the twelfth.
5. *Epigastric reflex*, consisting of a slight muscular contraction in the neighborhood of the epigastrium when the skin between the fourth and sixth ribs is stimulated; it requires the integrity of the cord between the fourth and seventh dorsal nerves.
6. *The scapular reflex* consists of a contraction of the scapular muscles when the skin between the scapulæ is stimulated; it depends upon the integrity of the cord between the fifth cervical and third dorsal nerves.

The skin or superficial reflexes, though variable, are generally present in health. They are increased or exaggerated when the gray matter of the cord is abnormally excited, as in tetanus, strychnin-poisoning, and disease of the lateral columns.

The so-called "*tendon reflexes*" also are of much value in the diagnosis of lesions of the cord. They are elicited by a sharp tap on

a given tendon. Though spoken of as reflexes, they are not such in reality, but rather contractions of the muscles whose irritability has been increased in consequence of extension. To this condition of the muscle Gowers has applied the term *myotatic irritability*. It has already been stated that the slight contraction of the muscle which gives rise to muscle tonus is a true reflex, the afferent impulses for the same arising in the muscle itself in consequence of extension and compression of the muscle spindles. If the muscle is extended suddenly, as by a short tap on the tendon, reflex contraction at once ensues.

The following are the principal forms of the tendon reflexes:

1. *Patellar reflex or knee-jerk*, consisting of a contraction of the extensor muscles of the thigh when the ligamentum patellæ is struck between the patella and tibia. This reflex is best observed when the legs are freely hanging over the edge of a table. The patella reflex is generally present in health, being absent in only 2 per cent.; it is greatly exaggerated in lateral sclerosis, in descending degeneration of the cord; it is absent in locomotor ataxia and in atrophic lesions of the anterior gray cornua.
2. *Ankle-jerk or Reflex*.—If the extensor muscles of the leg be placed upon the stretch and the tendo Achillis be sharply struck, a quick extension of the foot will take place.
3. *Ankle Clonus*.—This consists of a series of rhythmic reflex contractions of the gastrocnemius muscle, varying in frequency from six to ten per second. To elicit this reflex, pressure is made upon the sole so as to suddenly and energetically flex the foot at the ankle, thus putting the tendo Achillis upon the stretch. The rhythmic movements thus produced continue so long as the tension is maintained. Ankle clonus is never present in health, but is very marked in lateral sclerosis of the cord.

The *toe reflex*, *peroneal reflex*, and *wrist reflex* are also present in sclerosis of the lateral columns and in the late rigidity of hemiplegia.

Reflex Irritability.—The general irritability or quickness of response of the mechanism involved in reflex action can be approximately determined by observation of the length of time that elapses between the application of a minimal stimulus and the appearance of the muscle response. The method of Türk is sufficiently accurate for general purposes. This consists in suspending a frog, after removal of the brain, and immersing the foot in a 0.2 per cent. solution of sulphuric acid. The time is determined by means of a metronome beating one hundred times a minute. Stimulation of the skin can also be effected by the induced electric current, as suggested by Gaskell. A single shock is, however, ineffective. When the shocks follow each other with sufficient rapidity, they give rise to a summation of effects in the nerve-centers which will soon be followed by a

muscle response. It is highly probable that the chemic stimulation gives rise to a similar summation of effects.

The period of time thus obtained is distributed over the entire mechanism. The true reflex time, however,—*i. e.*, the time occupied in the passage of the nerve impulses across the spinal mechanism,—is shorter and is obtained by subtracting from the whole period the time occupied by the passage of the impulses through the afferent and efferent nerves as well as the latent period of muscle contraction. This corrected period, the true reflex time, has been found to be twelve times longer than the time occupied by the passage of the nerve impulse through the nerves, including the latent period of the muscle.

The reflex irritability is increased by:

1. *Separation of the Brain from the Cord.*—This is at once followed by an increase in reflex irritability, and is taken as evidence that the brain normally exerts an inhibitory influence over the reflex centers of the cord. The same increase is observed upon hemisection of the cord, though the increase is limited to the same side.
2. *The Administration of Strychnin.*—Even in small doses this alkaloid increases the irritability to such an extent that a minimal stimulus is sufficient to call forth spasmodic contractions of all the skeletal muscles. Under its influence the usual coördinated reflexes disappear and are succeeded by incoördinated reflexes. The explanation of this fact is believed to be a diminution in the resistance offered by the cord to the passage of the afferent impulses rather than to a direct stimulation of the efferent cells. So much is this resistance decreased that the nerve impulses, instead of being confined to their accustomed paths, are radiated in all directions. Absolute repose of the animal and the exclusion of all external stimuli greatly diminish the tendency to the occurrence of spasms.
3. *Degeneration of the Pyramidal Tracts.*—In primary lateral sclerosis, a pathologic condition characterized primarily by a degeneration of the terminal filaments of the pyramidal tract fibers, the reflex activity of the cord becomes exalted. As the disease progresses the irritability increases to such an extent that violent spasmodic contractions of the arms and legs arise when the skin or tendons are mechanically stimulated. The explanation offered is practically the same as in division of the cord: *viz.*, withdrawal of the inhibitory and controlling influence of the brain.

The reflex excitability may be decreased by:

1. *Stimulation of Certain Regions of the Brain.*—It was discovered by Setchenow that when the frog brain is divided just anterior

to the optic lobes and the reflex time subsequently determined according to the method of Türck, that the time can be considerably lengthened by stimulation of the optic lobes. This is readily accomplished by placing small crystals of sodium chlorid on the optic lobes. It was concluded from this fact that these lobes contain centers which exert an inhibitory influence over centers in the spinal cord through descending nerve-fibers. This conclusion is strengthened by the fact that division of the brain just behind the optic lobes causes a temporary inhibition of the reflexes in consequence of a mechanical irritation of these fibers. It is quite probable that the volitional inhibition of certain reflexes is accomplished through the intermediation of this center localized by Setchenow.

2. *Stimulation of Sensor Nerves*.—If during the application of a stimulus sufficient to call forth a characteristic reaction in a definite period of time, a sensor nerve in a distant region of the body be simultaneously stimulated, it will be found that the reflex time will be lengthened or the reaction completely inhibited. The explanation of this phenomenon is not apparent.
3. *Lesions of the spinal cord*; e. g., atrophy of the multipolar cells of the anterior horns of the gray matter; degeneration of the terminals of the posterior fibers.
4. *The toxic action* of various drugs,—e. g., chloroform, chloral,—which are believed to exert their depressing action on the nerve-cells themselves.

The Spinal Cord as a Conductor.—The white matter of the spinal cord consists of nerve-fibers the specific function of which is:

1. To conduct nerve impulses from one segment of the cord to another.
2. To conduct nerve impulses from the encephalon to the spinal cord segments.
3. To conduct nerve impulses coming to the cord through afferent nerves, directly or indirectly to various areas of the encephalon.

Intersegmental or Associative Conduction.—The spinal cord consists of a series of physiologic segments each of which has specific functions and is associated through its related spinal nerve with a definite segment of the body. For the harmonious coöperation and coördination of all the spinal segments it is essential that they should be united by commissural or associative fibers. This is, in fact, accomplished by the axons of the intrinsic cells of the gray matter, which constitute such a large part of the anterior and posterior root zones. In consequence of this association, the cord becomes capable of complex coördinated and purposive reflex actions.

Encephalo-spinal or Motor Conduction.—At birth the child is capable of performing all the functions of organic life, such as sucking, swallowing, breathing, etc. It is, however, deficient in psychic

activity and in volitional control of its muscles. Its movements are therefore largely, if not entirely, reflex in character.

Embryologic and histologic examination of the spinal cord and medulla show that so far as their mechanisms for independent physiologic activities are concerned both are fully developed. Similar investigations of the cerebral hemispheres and of the nerve-fibers which bring their nerve-cells into relation with the spinal segments show that the cells of the cortex are not only immature, but that their descending axons are incompletely invested with myelin. With the growth of the child, psychic life unfolds and volitional control of muscles is acquired. Coincidentally the cells of the cerebral cortex grow and develop and the fibers become covered with myelin.

The nerve-fibers which have their origin in the cells of the cerebral cortex, and which terminate in tufts around the cells in the anterior horns of the gray matter of the spinal segments, are to be regarded as long commissural tracts uniting and associating these two portions of the central nerve system.

Experimental investigations and observations of pathologic lesions accord with the view that physiologically these fibers are efferent pathways for the transmission of motor or volitional impulses from the cortex to the spinal segments. The nerve-cells in which the motor impulses originate are located for the most part, as will be fully stated later, in the central portion of the cortex of the cerebral hemispheres in the neighborhood of the central or Rolandic fissure. The axons of these cells from each hemisphere descend through the corona radiata to and through the internal capsule, along the inferior surface of the crura cerebri, behind the pons to the medulla, of which they constitute the anterior pyramids. (Fig. 209.) At this point the pyramidal tract* of each side divides into two portions, viz.:

1. A large portion, containing from 80 to 90 per cent. of the fibers, which decussates at the lower border of the medulla and passes downward in the posterior part of the lateral column of the opposite side, constituting the *crossed pyramidal tract*; as it descends it gradually diminishes in size as its fibers or their collaterals enter the gray matter of each successive segment.
2. A small portion, containing from 20 to 10 per cent. of the fibers, which does not decussate at the medulla but passes downward on the inner side of the anterior column of the same side, constituting the *direct pyramidal tract* or column of Türck. This

* From the fact that the region included between the origin of these fibers and the internal capsule presents somewhat the form of a pyramid with four sides, Charcot designated it the pyramidal region and the fibers composing it the *pyramidal tract*. The base of the pyramid includes the cortex of the convolutions around the Rolandic fissure. The summit of the pyramid is truncated and covers the *pyramidal* region of the internal capsule.

tract can be traced down, as a rule, only as far as the mid-dorsal region. As it descends it becomes smaller as its fibers cross the anterior commissure to enter the gray matter of the opposite

FIG. 209.—DIAGRAM OF THE PYRAMIDAL TRACT OR MOTOR PATH. III. Common oculo-motor nerve. IV. Pathetic nerve. V. Motor division of the trigeminal nerve. VI. The abducens nerve. VII. Facial nerve. IX. and X. Motor divisions of the glosso-pharyngeal and pneumogastric nerves. XI. Spinal accessory nerve. XII. Hypoglossal nerve.—(*Van Gehuchten.*)

side. Thus all the fibers of the pyramidal tract from each cerebral hemisphere eventually are brought into relation with the cells of the gray matter of the opposite side of the cord.

That the pyramidal tracts are the conductors of volitional impulses throughout the length of the cord to its various segments has been made evident by the results of section, electric stimulation, and disease. Division of the anterior and lateral columns of one side of the cord in any part of its extent is invariably followed by a loss of motion or paralysis of the muscles below the section, while electric stimulation of the peripheral end of the isolated crossed pyramidal tract is followed by marked characteristic movements of the muscles. Similar results follow division of the pyramidal tract in any part of its course from the cerebral cortex downward. Electric stimulation of the cortical cells which give origin to the pyramidal tract is also followed by contraction of the muscles of the opposite side, while their destruction is attended by paralysis of the same muscles. As the nutrition of the fibers is governed by the cells, it follows that when the axon is separated from its cell it degenerates. It has been found that a lesion of the pyramidal tract in any part of its course is followed by descending degeneration, which is taken in evidence that it conducts nerve impulses from above downward. Thus experimental investigation and pathologic observation are in accord in the view that physiologically these nerve-fibers are the pathways for the transmission of motor or volitional impulses from the encephalon to the spinal cord.

Spino-encephalic or Sensor Conduction.—The nerve impulses that arise in consequence of impressions made on the terminals of the nerves in the cutaneous and mucous surfaces, in the viscera and in the muscles, are transmitted through the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves to the cord. When transmitted through the cord to the cerebral hemispheres directly or indirectly, they are received by specialized nerve-cells in the cortex and translated into conscious sensations. The sensations thus arising may be divided into special and general sensations. Of the former may be mentioned pain, touch, temperature; of the latter may be mentioned hunger, thirst, fatigue, well-being, etc.

The pathways through the spinal cord that conduct these afferent impulses to the brain are ill defined and imperfectly known, and only for a few sensations can it be said that their pathways have been determined. The reason for this obscurity lies partly in the difficulties of experimentation, partly in the difficulties of interpretation. Clinical observations are for special reasons more or less untrustworthy.

Section of one lateral half of the cord, or a lesion involving the one lateral half, as a rule abolishes all forms of cutaneous sensibility on the opposite side below the injury. This would seem to prove that the nerve impulses cross the median line of the cord immediately or very shortly after entering. At the same time, muscle sensibility is

abolished on the corresponding side below the injury. This would seem to prove that the fibers of the posterior roots which enter and cross the column of Burdach and ascend in the column of Goll are derived mainly from the muscles. It is, however, believed by some investigators that those fibers which subserve the sense of touch do not decussate at once, but ascend in the column of Goll as far as the medulla oblongata, where they, in common with the fibers coming from the muscles, arborize around the nerve-cells in the gracile and cuneate nuclei. The afferent path is then continued by new nerve-fibers which emerge from these cells, and which, after crossing the median plane and decussating with the fibers coming from the opposite side, join the afferent path from the spinal cord. These fibers are known as the internal arcuate fibers and assist in the formation of the lemniscus or fillet. (Fig. 210.) The sensor pathway decussates in part at different levels of the spinal cord and in part at the level of the gracile and cuneate nuclei. The former is often termed the lower, the latter the upper sensor decussation.

FIG. 210.—DIAGRAM OF THE SENSOR PATHWAYS IN THE SPINAL CORD AUGMENTED ABOVE BY FIBERS OF THE SENSOR CRANIAL NERVES AND NERVES OF SPECIAL SENSE. V. The trifacial Nerve. VIII. The vestibular branch of the acoustic nerve. IX. The glosso-pharyngeal nerve. X. The pneumogastric nerve.—(Van Gehuchten.)

The pathways for the impulses that give rise to the different sensation have been variously located by different observers, *e. g.*, in the gray matter, in the limiting layer, and in the antero-lateral tract of Gowers; the pathway for the impulses that give rise to temperature sensations has been located

in the gray matter; the pathway for tactile impressions has been located in the posterior columns, though this is not beyond dispute. The pathway for pain sensations has been located in Gowers' tract.

The relation of the motor and sensor pathways to each other in the spinal cord and brain are shown in Plate II. The afferent fibers which decussate at various levels through the spinal cord are not represented.

DIAGRAM INDICATING THE COURSE OF THE MOTOR AND SENSORY FIBERS OF THE SPINAL CORD AND MEDULLA.—(*Gordinier.*)

a, a. Motor cells of the cerebral cortex. *b, b.* Arborizations of the fibers of the sensory tract in the cerebral cortex. *c.* Nucleus of the column of Burdach, showing terminal arborizations of the long sensory fibers of the cord. *d.* Nucleus of the column of Goll, showing terminal arborizations of the long sensory fibers of the cord. *e.* Section of the medulla, showing sensory decussation. *f.* Section of medulla, showing motor or pyramidal decussation. *g, g.* Motorial end plates. *h.* Section through the cervical region of the cord, showing termination in the anterior horn of the motor fibers of the direct pyramidal tract after they have crossed in the anterior commissure; also fiber of crossed pyramidal tract ending about anterior horn cell of same side. *i, i.* Posterior spinal ganglia. *j, k.* Sensory fibers of short course. *l.* Sensory fibers of long course, terminating in medulla. *m, m, m.* Sensory end organs. *n.* Section through lumbar cord.

PLATE II.

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA; THE ISTHMUS OF THE ENCEPHALON; THE BASAL GANGLIA.

THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA.

The *medulla oblongata* is that portion of the central nerve system immediately superior to and continuous with the spinal cord. It has the shape of a truncated cone, the base of which is directed upward, the truncated apex downward. It is 38 mm. in length, 18 mm. in breadth, and 12 mm. in thickness. By the continuation upward of the anterior and posterior median fissures, the medulla is divided into symmetric halves (Figs. 211 and 212). Like the cord, of which it is a continuation, it is composed of white matter externally and gray matter internally.

Structure of the Gray Matter.—The gray matter of the medulla is continuous with that of the cord, though owing to the shifting of position of the different tracts of the white matter it is arranged with much less regularity. The appearance which the gray matter presents on transverse section varies also at different levels.

At the level of the first cervical nerve the posterior horns are narrow, elongated, and directed outward. The lateral horns are well developed and present a collection of cells near their bases which can be traced forward and backward for some distance. At the level of the decussation of the pyramidal tracts the head of the anterior horn becomes completely detached from the rest of the gray matter and is pushed backward toward the posterior horn; the bases of the anterior horns become spread out to form a layer of gray matter near the dorsal aspect of the medulla. Transverse sections of the medulla at all levels show a more or less extensive network of nerve-fibers known as the reticular formation. In its meshes are found collections of nerve-cells of varying size. Toward the dorsal aspect of the medulla special groups of cells are found from which axons arise to become the fibers of various efferent cranial nerves, *e. g.*, the hypoglossal, the efferent fibers of the vagus, and glosso-pharyngeal.

Structure of the White Matter.—The white matter is composed of nerve-fibers supported by connective tissue and neuroglia. It is subdivided on either side by grooves into three main columns: viz., an anterior column or pyramid, a lateral column, and a posterior column.

The *anterior column* or pyramid is composed partly of fibers continuous with those of the anterior column of the spinal cord (the direct pyramidal tract), and partly of fibers continuous with those of the lateral column of the cord of the opposite side (the crossed pyramidal tract), which decussate at the anterior portion of the medulla. The united fibers can be traced upward to the pons, where they disappear from view.

The *lateral column* is composed of fibers continuous with those of the lateral column of the cord. As the fibers pass upward, however, they diverge in several directions. The fibers of the crossed pyramidal tract cross the median line, as previously stated, to enter into the formation of the anterior column; the fibers of the direct cerebellar tract gradually curve backward, and in so doing unite with other fibers to form the restiform body, after which they enter the cerebellum by way of the inferior peduncle. Situated between the anterior pyramid and the restiform body is a small oval mass, the olivary body, composed of both white and gray matter.

The *posterior column* is composed largely of fibers continuous with those of the posterior column of the cord. The subdivision of this column into a postero-external (Burdach) and a postero-internal (Goll) is more marked in the medulla than in the cord. The former is here known as the *funiculus cuneatus*, the latter as the *funiculus gracilis*. These two strands of fibers are apparently continued into the restiform body. Owing to the divergence of the restiform bodies a V-shaped space is formed, the floor of which is covered with epithelium resting on the ependyma. At the upper extremity of the funiculus cuneatus and funiculus gracilis, two collections of gray matter are found, known respectively as the *nucleus cuneatus* and *nucleus gracilis*. Around the cells of these nuclei many of the fibers of the posterior column end in brush-like expansions.

The Fillet or Lemniscus.—From the ventral surface of the cuneate and gracile nuclei axons emerge which pass forward and upward through the gray matter and decussate with corresponding fibers coming from the opposite nuclei. They then assume a position just posterior to the pyramids and between the olivary bodies. These fibers thus form a new distinct tract, termed the fillet or lemniscus. As this tract ascends toward the brain it receives additional axons from the sensory end-nuclei of all the afferent cranial nerves of the opposite side with the exception of the auditory. From the end-nuclei of the auditory nerve new axons ascend as a distinct tract situated near the lateral aspect of the pons. From their position these two separate tracts have been termed the mesial and lateral fillets respectively.

Before proceeding to a consideration of the functions of the medulla oblongata it will be found conducive to clearness to sketch the salient anatomic features of the parts anterior to it and their relations one to another.

FIG. 211.—ANTERIOR OR VENTRAL VIEW OF THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA AND ISTHMUS. 1. Infundibulum. 2. Tuber cinereum. 3. Corpora albicantia. 4. Cerebral peduncle. 5. Tuber annulare. 6. Origin of the middle peduncle of the cerebellum. 7. Anterior pyramids of the medulla oblongata. 8. Decussation of the anterior pyramids. 9. Olivary bodies. 10. Restiform bodies. 11. Arciform fibers. 12. Upper extremity of the spinal cord. 13. Ligamentum denticulatum. 14, 14. Dura mater of the cord. 15. Optic tracts. 16. Chiasm of the optic nerves. 17. Motor oculi communis. 18. Patheticus. 19. Fifth nerve. 20. Motor oculi externus. 21. Facial nerve. 22. Auditory nerve. 23. Nerve of Wrisberg. 24. Glossopharyngeal nerve. 25. Pneumogastric. 26, 26. Spinal accessory. 27. Sublingual nerve. 28, 29, 30. Cervical nerves.—(*Sappey*.)

FIG. 212.—POSTERIOR OR DORSAL VIEW OF THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA, ISTHMUS, AND BASAL GANGLIA. 1. Corpora quadrigemina. 2. Corpus quadrigeminum anterior (pregeminum). 3. Corpus quadrigeminum posterior (postgeminum). 4. Tract of fibers (brachium) passing to the corpus geniculatum externum. 5. Tract of fibers (brachium) passing to 6, the corpus geniculatum internum. 6. Posterior commissure. 7. Pineal gland. 8. Superior cerebellar peduncle. 9, 10, 11, 12. The valve of Vieussens. 13. The pathetic nerve. 14. Lateral groove of the isthmus. 15. Triangular bundle of the isthmus. 16. Superior cerebellar peduncle. 17. Middle cerebellar peduncle. 18. Inferior cerebellar peduncle. 19. Antero-inferior wall of the fourth ventricle. 20. Acoustic nerve. 21. Spinal cord. 22. The postero-median column. 23. The posterior pyramids.—(*Sappey*.)

THE ISTHMUS OF THE ENCEPHALON.

The **isthmus of the encephalon** comprises that portion of the central nerve system connecting the cerebrum above, the cerebellum behind, and the medulla below. Its *ventral surface* presents below an enlargement, convex from side to side, the *pons Varolii*. On each side the fibers of which the pons consists converge to form a compact bundle, the middle peduncle, which enters the corresponding half of the cerebellum. Above the pons, this surface presents two large columns of white matter which, diverging somewhat from below upward, enter the base of the cerebrum and are known as the *crura cerebri*. Embracing the crura above are two large bands of white matter, the optic tracts (Fig. 211).

The *dorsal surface* presents below two diverging columns of white matter, the inferior peduncles; above, two converging columns, the superior peduncles of the cerebellum (Fig. 212). At the extreme upper part of this surface there are four small grayish eminences, the *corpora quadrigemina*. From the disposition of the white matter on the dorsal surface of the isthmus and medulla, there is formed a lozenge-shaped space, the *fourth ventricle*. This space is merely an expansion of the central cavity of the cord, the result of the changed relations of the white and gray matter in this region of the central nerve system. Above, this ventricle communicates by a narrow canal, the aqueduct of Sylvius, with the third ventricle. The floor of the fourth ventricle is covered with a layer of epithelium resting on the ependyma continuous with that lining the central canal of the cord. Beneath this is a layer of gray matter.

The **pons Varolii** comprises in a general way that portion of the central nerve system situated between the medulla oblongata and the crura cerebri. The ventral surface is convex from side to side; the lateral surface, owing to the convergence of the fibers of which it is composed, is contracted to form the middle peduncle of the cerebellum; the posterior surface is flat and forms the upper half of the floor of the fourth ventricle. The pons consists of white fibers and gray matter supported by connective tissue and neuroglia. Transverse sections of the pons show that it is divided into an *anterior* or *ventral*, and a *posterior* or *dorsal portion*, the latter being usually termed the tegmentum.

The *ventral portion* consists for the most part of white fibers, arranged longitudinally and transversely (Fig. 213). The longitudinal fibers are largely continuations of the pyramidal tracts, or the fibers composing the anterior pyramid of the medulla. In the lower part of the pons these fibers are compactly arranged, but at higher levels they are separated into a number of bundles by the interlacing of the transverse fibers. The transverse fibers are divided into a superficial and

a deep set. Among these fibers are groups of nerve-cells which collectively are known as the *nucleus pontis*. Some of the transverse fibers, especially the superficial ones, are commissural in character—i. e., they connect corresponding parts of the gray matter of the lateral halves of the cerebellum; others coming from the gray matter of the cerebellum cross the median line and terminate around the cells of the nucleus pontis; others again are connected with the gray cells of the same side. Through the intermediation of the nucleus pontis and certain of the longitudinal fibers of the pons, the cerebellum is brought into relation with the cerebrum.

The *dorsal* or *tegmental portion* consists of: (1) The fillet; (2) the formatio reticularis; (3) the posterior longitudinal bundle; (4) the substantia ferruginosa; (5) groups of nerve-cells from which arise various cranial nerves—e. g., the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth.

The *fillet* or *lemniscus* in this region is divided into a mesial and a lateral portion. The fibers of the *mesial portion* are partly the axons of the nerve-cells of the gracile and cuneate nuclei of the opposite side of the medulla, and partly of the axons of the sensor nerve-cells of the afferent cranial nerves with the exception of the auditory. The fibers of the *lateral portion* are mainly the axons of the cells in the floor of the fourth ventricle around which the auditory nerve-fibers end. They are therefore a continuation of the auditory tract.

The *formatio reticularis* is a continuation of that of the medulla.

The *posterior longitudinal bundle* is triangular in shape and situated behind the formatio reticularis and close to the median line. The fibers composing it are largely derived from the ground fibers of the antero-lateral column of the spinal cord.

The *superior olive* is a cylindric mass of gray matter situated in the pons in the anterior part of the formatio reticularis. It consists of nerve-cells the axons of which pass dorso-laterally, decussate in the median line, and form the lateral fillet of the opposite side. Some few axons go to the lateral fillet of the same side.

The *substantia ferruginosa* is composed mainly of pigmented cells.

The groups of nerve-cells lying just beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle give origin to axons of the motor portion of the fifth,

FIG. 213.—TRANSECTION OF THE PONS THROUGH ITS MIDDLE PORTION, SHOWING THE RELATION OF THE NERVE TRACTS OF WHICH IT IS COMPOSED. D. l. f. Dorsal longitudinal fasciculus. L. c. and c. Locus ceruleus. L. f. Lateral fillet.

the sixth, the seventh cranial nerves. Some of the groups are the sensor end-nuclei of the fifth and eighth cranial nerves.

The **crura cerebri** comprise that portion of the central nerve system situated between the pons below and the cerebrum above. They are composed of strands of nerve-fibers which are divided, as shown on cross-section, into a *ventral* and a *dorsal* portion by a crescentic shaped layer of gray matter, the substantia nigra (Fig. 214). Of the fibers which compose the *ventral portion* of each crus, the *crusta or pes*, the larger part is continuous below, through the longitudinal fibers of the pons, with the pyramid of the medulla and the pyramidal tract; above they assist in the formation of the internal capsule.

FIG. 214.—SCHEME OF TRANSVERSE SECTION OF THE CEREBRAL PEDUNCLES. CQ. Corpora quadrigemina. Aq. Aqueduct. p.l.b. Posterior longitudinal bundle. F. Fillet or lemniscus. RN. Red nucleus. SN. Substantia nigra. III. Third nerve. Py. Pyramidal tracts. FC. Fronto-cerebellar; and TOC, temporo-occipital fibers of the crusta. CC. Caudate-cerebellar fibers in upper part of crusta.—(After Wernicke and Gowers.)

On the inner and on the outer side of each crusta there is a bundle of fibers derived from the frontal, and from the temporal and occipital portions of the cerebrum respectively. These fibers are connected directly with the nuclei pontis and indirectly with the cerebellum of the same and opposite sides. The fibers which compose the *dorsal portion*, the *tegmentum*, are continuous with those which pass upward from the medulla and pons, *e. g.*, the fillet, both mesial and lateral, the formatio reticularis, the posterior longitudinal bundle, and, in addition, the fibers of the superior peduncles of the

cerebellum. Above, the fibers terminate largely in collections of gray matter at the base of the cerebrum.

The *aqueduct of Sylvius* is a short narrow canal which connects the cavity of the fourth with the cavity of the third ventricle. It is lined by the ependyma and surrounded by a layer of gray matter continuous with that forming the floor of the fourth ventricle. In that portion of the gray matter lying beneath or ventral to the aqueduct there are groups of nerve-cells which give origin to axons which unite to form the third and fourth cranial nerves.

THE CORPORA QUADRIGEMINA.

The **corpora quadrigemina** are four small grayish eminences situated beneath the posterior border of the corpus callosum and behind the third ventricle. They rest upon the lamina quadrigemina, which forms the roof of the aqueduct of Sylvius. The anterior pair are termed the nates, or the *pregemina*, the posterior pair the testes, or the *postgemina*.

From the external surface of each body there pass outward bundles of fibers termed *brachia*. The fibers which compose the brachium of the pregeminum pass outward and enter a small collection of gray matter, the *corpus geniculatum externum*, and the optic tract. The fibers which compose the brachium of the postgeminum are divided into two bundles, one of which enters a second small collection of gray matter, the *corpus geniculatum internum*, while the other passes forward beneath this body to enter the internal capsule, beyond which it passes to the cortex of the temporal region of the cerebrum (Fig. 212).

Though these bodies are closely associated anatomically, they differ in origin, in their relations and in their functions.

Microscopic examination of sections of the quadrigeminal bodies shows that they are composed of nerve-cells and nerve-fibers, both of which are so intricately arranged that it is difficult to trace their relation one to another and to adjoining structures. Some of the cells of the pregeminum give off axons which course outward and forward, enter the internal capsule, and pass through the optic radiation to the cortex of the occipital region of the cerebrum. Many fibers of the optic tract, axons of the cells of the retina, end in brush-like expansions around these same cells. There is thus formed a connected pathway between the retina and the occipital cortex.

The cells of the occipital cortex, however, send axon fibers in the reverse direction through the optic radiation to terminate around the cells of the pregeminum, while axons of pregeminal cells pass forward to the retina and to the cells of origin of the third nerve.

The cells of the postgeminum give origin to axons which pass upward, forward, and outward, enter the internal capsule, and pass by way of the auditory tract to the cortex of the temporo-sphenoidal region of the cerebrum. Many of the fibers of the lateral fillet, a portion of the auditory tract, terminate in brush-like expansions around these same cells. There is thus established a connected pathway between the cochlea and the temporo-sphenoidal cortex. The cells of the temporal cortex, however, send axons in the reverse direction by way of the auditory tract to the cells of the postgeminum. There is thus established a double communication between the occipital and temporal region of the cerebral cortex, and the pregeminal and postgeminal bodies respectively.

THE BASAL GANGLIA. THE CORPORA STRIATA AND OPTIC THALAMI.

The basal ganglia surmount the crura cerebri, but are only made visible by removal of the cerebrum (Fig. 215).

FIG. 215.—DISSECTION OF BRAIN, FROM ABOVE, EXPOSING THE LATERAL FOURTH AND FIFTH VENTRICLES WITH THE SURROUNDING PARTS. $\frac{1}{2}$.—*a*. Anterior part, or genu of corpus callosum. *b*. Corpus striatum. *b'*. The corpus striatum of left side, dissected so as to expose its gray substance. *c*. Points by a line to the tænia semicircularis. *d*. Optic thalamus. *e*. Anterior pillars of fornix divided; below they are seen descending in front of the third ventricle, and between them is seen part of the anterior commissure; in front of the letter *e* is seen the slit-like fifth ventricle, between the two laminæ of the septum lucidum. *f*. Soft or middle commissure; *g* is placed in the posterior part of the third ventricle; immediately behind the latter are the posterior commissure (just visible) and the pineal gland, the two crura of which extend forward along the inner and upper margins of the optic thalami. *h* and *i*. The corpora quadrigemina. *k*. Superior crus of cerebellum. Close to *k* is the valve of Vieussens, which has been divided so as to expose the fourth ventricle. *l*. Hippocampus major and corpus fimbriatum, or tænia hippocampi. *m*. Hippocampus minor. *n*. Eminentia collateralis. *o*. Fourth ventricle. *p*. Posterior surface of medulla oblongata. *r*. Section of cerebellum. *s*. Upper part of left hemisphere of cerebellum exposed by the removal of part of the posterior cerebral lobe.—(*Hirschfeld and Leveillé.*)

The **corpora striata** are two large ovoid collections of gray and white matter situated at the base of the cerebrum. The larger portion of each body is embedded in the cerebral white matter, while the

smaller portion projects into the anterior part of the lateral ventricle. A transection of the corpus striatum shows that it is divided by a band of white matter into two portions, viz.:

1. The *caudate nucleus*, the intra-ventricular portion, convex in shape with its base directed forward, its apex or tail directed backward and downward.
2. The *lenticular nucleus*, the extra-ventricular portion, somewhat biconvex in shape and embedded largely in the white matter. Each lenticular nucleus is subdivided by two lamina of white matter into three portions. The two inner, from their pale yellow color, form the *globus pallidus*; the outer, somewhat darker in color, is the *putamen*.

The Internal Capsule.—The band of white matter separating the caudate from the lenticular nucleus has been termed the internal capsule from the manner in which it embraces the inner surface of the lenticular nucleus. It consists of nerve-fibers which associate histologically and physiologically all portions of the cerebral cortex with the optic thalamus, pons, medulla, spinal cord, and cerebellum. The relation of the capsule to the nuclei through which it passes is readily shown on cross-section (Fig. 216). The appearance which it presents, however, varies considerably at different levels. At a given level it may be said to consist of two segments or limbs, an *anterior*, situated between the caudate nucleus and the anterior extremity of the lenticular nucleus, and a *posterior*, situated between the optic thalamus and the posterior extremity of the lenticular nucleus. The two segments unite at an obtuse angle, termed the *knee*, which is directed toward the median line.

The **optic thalami** are two oblong masses of gray matter situated upon the crura cerebri and behind the corpora striata. The anterior and posterior extremities of each thalamus present enlargements known respectively as the anterior tubercle and the posterior tubercle or *pulvinar*. The mesial surface of the thalamus forms the lateral wall of the third ventricle and is covered by epithelium resting on a thin layer of endyma.

FIG. 216.—HORIZONTAL SECTION OF THE INTERNAL CAPSULE SHOWING ITS RELATIONS TO THE CAUDATE NUCLEUS, OPTIC THALAMUS, AND THE LENTICULAR NUCLEUS. 1. Caudate nucleus. 2. Anterior segment of the internal capsule. 3. External capsule. 4. Lenticular nucleus. 5. Claustrum. 6. Posterior segment of internal capsule. 7. Optic thalamus.—(Modified from Landois.)

A transection of the thalamus shows that it is not only covered externally but penetrated by white matter, which subdivides its contained gray cells into four more or less distinct masses termed nuclei, viz., an *anterior*, a *lateral*, occupying the external part of the thalamus, a *ventral*, close to the entire ventral surface, and a *posterior*, situated beneath the pulvinar. Beneath and somewhat internal to each optic thalamus there is a region, the subthalamic, consisting of an intricate network of nerve-fibers and several nuclei of gray matter, e. g., the red or tegmental nucleus, the subthalamic nucleus, or Luys' body, and the substantia nigra.

Though the thalamus has extensive connections with many portions of the central nerve system, the most important are with the cortex, the tegmentum, and the optic tracts.

From the cells of these various nuclei axons emerge which pass into the internal capsule, and through the corona radiata to all portions of the cortex. Those axons which come from the pulvinar and pass to the occipital lobe constitute a part of the optic radiation; those from the lateral and ventral nuclei ultimately reach the parietal lobe; those from the anterior nucleus pass to the hippocampal and uncinate convolutions. In a similar manner all portions of the cortex are brought into relation with the thalamus, axons from the cortical cells passing downward to terminate in tufts around the thalamic nuclei.

The tegmentum is intimately related to the thalamus, though the exact distribution of various strands of fibers is a subject of much discussion. Most of the fibers of the mesial fillet end in tufts around the cells of the ventral and lateral nuclei; other fibers pass directly to the cortex.

The optic tract sends fibers directly into the pulvinar, around the cells of which they terminate in brush-like expansions.

SUMMARY OF THE STRUCTURE OF THE MEDULLA, ISTHMUS, AND BASAL GANGLIA.

Structure of the Central Gray Matter.—Though the general arrangement of the central gray matter has been incidentally alluded to in the foregoing presentation of the anatomic features of the medulla and isthmus, it will be convenient to summarize its arrangement and structure at this point.

The gray matter of the cord, of the dorsal aspect of the medulla and pons, of the region surrounding the aqueduct of Sylvius, and of the lining of the third ventricle, constitute practically a continuous system, though presenting modifications in various parts of its extent. In the transition region of the spinal cord and medulla the gray matter of the former becomes much changed in shape owing to the shifting of position of the various tracts of white matter, until in the medulla

and pons it is spread out in the form of a thin layer near their dorsal surfaces, where, together with the ependyma, it forms the floor of the fourth ventricle.

In the region of the aqueduct of Sylvius the gray matter again converges and ultimately surrounds the canal, to again expand at its anterior extremity, to form the lining of the third ventricle.

The Nerve-cells.—The nerve-cells in these different regions do not differ morphologically from those in the gray matter of the spinal cord. The corpus, or body of the cell, presents a number of dendrites as well as the sharply defined axon. As a rule, the cells are arranged in groups, or clusters, or nests, partially surrounded and enclosed by supporting tissue, and situated beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle and the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius. From some of the cell groups axons pass ventrally through the white matter to emerge on the ventral and lateral surfaces of the medulla, pons, and crura, where they are known as efferent or motor cranial nerves. From other groups of cells, axons cross the median line, and after joining the mesial fillet ascend toward the cerebrum. Around these latter cells the terminal filaments of the afferent or sensor cranial nerves arborize. The collection of cells formed in the central gray matter may be divided into two groups—*efferent* and *afferent*.

The **efferent** cells, like those of the cord independent of a trophic influence, are motor in function, inasmuch as the excitation arising in them is transmitted outward through their related axons to muscles, glands, or blood-vessels, imparting to them motion, either molar or molecular.

The **afferent** cells are largely sentient or receptive in function, inasmuch as the excitations brought to them by the afferent cranial nerves from skin and mucous membranes and from sense-organs, such as the tongue and ear, are received by them and transmitted through their ascending axons to the cortex of the cerebrum, where they are translated into conscious sensations.

Structure of the White Matter.—The white matter is composed of medullated nerve-fibers, and though arranged in a very complex manner may be divided into longitudinal and transverse fibers.

The *longitudinal fibers* which compose the main portion of the isthmus may be subdivided into (1) a ventral or pedal portion and (2) a dorsal or tegmental portion. The fibers constituting the *ventral* or *pedal* portion may for convenience be said to extend from the cerebral cortex to the pons, medulla, and spinal cord. They may be divided into three distinct tracts: *e. g.*, the pyramidal tract, the fronto-cerebellar tract, and the occipito-temporo-cerebellar tract (Fig. 217).

The *pyramidal tract* descends from the cortex of the cerebrum

bordering the fissure of Rolando, passes through the posterior one-third of the anterior segment and the anterior two-thirds of the posterior segment of the internal capsule, the middle two-fifths of the crusta, behind the transverse fibers of the pons, to become the anterior pyramids of the medulla, beyond which it divides into the direct and crossed pyramidal tracts of the cord. In its course some of the fibers and their collaterals arborize around efferent cells from the anterior extremity of the aqueduct of Sylvius to the termination of the spinal cord.

FIG. 217.—DIAGRAMMATIC ARRANGEMENT OF THE PROJECTION TRACTS CONNECTING THE CEREBRAL CORTEX WITH THE LOWER NERVE-CENTERS. A. Fronto-cerebellar tract. B. The pyramidal or motor tract. C. Sensory tract. D. Visual tract from optic thalamus (O.T.) to the occipital lobe. E. Central auditory tract. F. Superior cerebellar peduncle. G. Middle cerebellar peduncle. H. Inferior cerebellar peduncle. C.N. Caudate nucleus. C.Q. Corpora quadrigemina. Vt. Fourth ventricle. The numerals refer to cranial nerves. J. Eighth nerve nucleus.—(After Starr.)

The *fronto-cerebellar tract* descends from the cortex of the frontal portion of the anterior lobe, passes through the anterior portion of the anterior segment of the internal capsule, the inner fifth of the crusta to the pons, where its fibers terminate or arborize around the nucleus pontis of the same and opposite sides.

The *occipito-temporo-cerebellar tract* descends from the occipital and temporal lobes, passes to the inner side of the lenticular nucleus,

and continues downward on the outer side of the crusta, occupying about one-fifth of its bulk, to the pons, where its fibers also arborize around the nucleus pontis of the same and opposite sides. By means of fibers in the middle peduncle these descending fibers are brought into relation with the cerebellum.

The fibers constituting the *dorsal* or *tegmental* portion of the longitudinal system may be said for convenience to extend from the posterior portion of the medulla and pons to the optic thalamus and cerebrum. They may be subdivided into several tracts: viz., the fillet, the posterior longitudinal bundle, Gowers' tract, etc.

The *fillet* or *lemniscus*, consisting of fibers having their origin partly from the cells of the cuneate and gracile nuclei and partly from the cells of the sensor end-nuclei of various sensor cranial nerves, occupies a region in the ventral and mesial portion of the tegmentum throughout its entire extent. Superiorly this mesial fillet divides into two portions, one of which passes to the thalamus and pregeminum (anterior corpus quadrigeminum), the other to the cortex of the parietal and limbic lobes. The fibers coming from the sensor end-nucleus of the auditory nerve (the lateral fillet) lie on the lateral aspect of the pons and crus. Superiorly they terminate in the post-geminum (the posterior corpus quadrigeminum).

The *posterior longitudinal bundle*, an upward extension of the fibers composing a portion of the ground bundle of the spinal cord, is located on either side of the median line just beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle and the aqueduct of Sylvius. As it passes upward collateral branches are given off, some of which arborize around the cell nuclei of the third, fourth, and sixth cranial nerves of the same side, while others cross the median line and arborize around the corresponding cell nuclei of the opposite side. Superiorly some of the fibers become related to cells in the thalamus and subthalamic region. This bundle of fibers appears to be mainly commissural in character.

Gowers' tract, the antero-lateral tract of the spinal cord, occupies a position in the lateral region of the formatio reticularis both in the medulla and pons. Continuing upward, it enters the mesial fillet, and in company with it passes through the posterior division of the internal capsule and finally terminates around cells in the cortex of the parietal lobe.

The *transverse fibers* of the isthmus are found in the pons. The fibers of the ventral as well as those of the more dorsal regions have their origin in nerve-cells in the cortex of the cerebellum. From their origin they pass through the cerebellar white matter, and through the middle peduncle as far as the median line, where they decussate with fibers coming from the opposite side. Beyond this point they pass to the cerebellar cortex. From their anatomic relations it is prob-

able that these transverse fibers are commissural in character, bringing into relation opposite but corresponding regions of the cerebellar cortex. In addition to the commissural fibers other transverse fibers associate the cerebellar cortex with the gray matter in the pons on both the same and opposite sides. In this way the cerebellum is brought into relation with longitudinal fibers coming from and going to the cerebrum.

FUNCTIONS OF THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA, ISTHMUS, AND BASAL GANGLIA.

Microscopic examination of the white and gray matter of these various parts of the central nerve system shows that they are composed of nerve-cells and nerve-fibers which morphologically do not differ in essential respects from those found in the spinal cord, though their arrangement is far more complicated and involved. The functions of these closely related structures are in consequence equally complex and involved and but imperfectly known.

In a general way it may be said that by virtue of the presence of nerve-cells and definite tracts of nerve-fibers these structures collectively may be regarded as consisting:

1. Of centers for reflex actions; and—
2. Of conducting paths by which the various parts are brought into relation one with another and with the spinal cord, the cerebellum, and the cerebrum.

The Medulla Oblongata and Pons.—The gray matter situated in these structures—*i. e.*, just beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle—contains nerve-cells arranged in more or less well-defined groups which may be divided into *efferent* and *afferent*.

The *efferent cells* are the immediate sources of energy which is transmitted through efferent axons to various peripheral organs—muscles, glands, and blood-vessels. Their activity may be excited by the same influences which excite the efferent cells of the spinal cord: *e. g.*, variations in the composition of the blood or lymph; the arrival of nerve energy coming through afferent pathways in the spinal cord and through afferent cranial nerves; the arrival of nerve energy coming through efferent pathways from the cerebrum. The peripheral activity resulting from their excitation may therefore be automatic or autochthonic, peripheral (reflex) or cerebral (volitional) in origin.

The *afferent cells* are sentient or receptive in function, inasmuch as they receive nerve energies coming through lower afferent pathways and transmit them through their related axons to the cortex of the cerebrum, where they are translated into conscious sensations.

The efferent cells give origin to nerve-fibers which pass ventrally and become the efferent or motor cranial nerves.

The afferent cells give origin to fibers which pass to the cerebral cortex. Around both groups of cells, the afferent or sensor cranial nerves terminate in tuft-like expansions. In a subsequent section the origin, course, and distribution of the various cranial nerves will be considered. But as the function of the nerve is but to transmit energy from the cell of which it constitutes a part, the function ascribed to it may without impropriety be transferred to the cell itself.

Since it is by means of nerve-cells and their associated fibers that many important functions of organic life are initiated and maintained, it would naturally be expected from its extensive nerve connections that this region of the nerve system plays an extensive rôle in this respect. As the accomplishment of these functions requires the coöperation and coördination of a number of separate but related structures, it is evident that there must exist in the medulla and pons a number of coördinating mechanisms consisting of nerve-cells and nerve-fibers which are associated in various ways for the accomplishment of definite functions. To such a coördinating mechanism the term "center" has been given: *e. g.*, respiratory, cardiac, deglutitory, etc.*

As centers for reflex activities. Experimentation has shown that the medulla and pons contain a number of such centers, the more important of which are as follows:

1. A *cardiac center*, which exerts (1) an *accelerator* influence over the heart's pulsations through nerve-fibers emerging from the spinal cord in the roots of the first and second dorsal nerves and reaching the heart through the sympathetic nerve; (2) an *inhibitor* or *retarding* influence on the action of the heart through efferent fibers in the trunk of the pneumogastric nerve. (See page 295.)
2. A *vaso-motor center*, which regulates the caliber of the blood-vessels throughout the body in accordance with the needs of the organs and tissues for blood, through nerve-fibers passing by way of the spinal nerves to the walls of the blood-vessels. (See page 327.)
3. A *respiratory center*, which coördinates the muscles concerned in the production of the respiratory movements. (See page 380.)
4. A *mastication center*, which excites to activity and coördinates the muscles of mastication. (See page 157.)
5. A *deglutition center*, which excites and coördinates the muscles

* By the term center as here employed is meant a collection of nerve-cells and nerve-fibers occupying an area of greater or less extent, though its exact anatomic limits may not be accurately defined. That an area may merit the term center, it is necessary that its stimulation should increase, its destruction should abolish or impair, functional activity.

concerned in the transference of the food from the mouth to the stomach. (See page 175.)

6. An *articulation center*, which coördinates the muscles necessary to the production of articulate speech.

In addition, the gray matter contains centers which influence the secretion of saliva, provoke vomiting, coördinate the muscles of the face concerned in expression, and control the secretion of the perspiration.

As conducting pathways. The anterior pyramids of the medulla and their continuations through the more ventral portions of the pons, being portions of the general pyramidal tract, serve to conduct volitional efferent nerve impulses from higher portions of the brain to the spinal cord. Division of either of these pathways is at once followed by a loss of volitional control of the muscles below the section.

The dorsal or tegmental portion, containing the fillet and Gowers' tract, serves to transmit afferent nerve impulses from the spinal cord to higher portions of the brain. Transverse division of one-half of the dorsal portion of the pons is followed by complete anesthesia of the opposite half of the body without any impairment of motion.

The restiform bodies constitute a pathway between the spinal cord and the cerebellum. The transverse fibers of the pons associate opposite but corresponding portions of the cerebellar hemispheres.

The Crura Cerebri.—The crura cerebri consist *ventrally* of fibers which are largely derived from the pyramidal tracts and are continuous with the longitudinal fibers of the ventral portion of the pons and medulla; and *dorsally* of fibers continuous with those coming through the lower portions of the tegmentum. Hence they are conductors of motor impulses in the former and of sensor impulses in the latter region. It is not definitely known as to whether reflex actions take place through the gray matter, the locus niger, or not.

The gray matter beneath the aqueduct of Sylvius contains nerve-cell groups which are centers for reflex actions in connection with ocular movements: *e. g.*, closure of the lids, contraction of the sphincter pupillæ, convergence of the eyes, etc.

The Corpora Quadrigemina.—From the anatomic relation of the anterior quadrigeminal body (the pregeminum) to the optic tract, on the one hand, and to the optic radiation, on the other, the inference can be drawn that it is in some way essential to the performance of the visual process. Experimental investigations and pathologic changes support the inference.

Irritation of the pregeminum in monkeys on one side is followed by dilatation of the pupils first on the opposite side and then almost immediately on the same side. The eyes at the same time are also widely opened and the eyeballs turned upward and to the opposite

side. If the irritation be continued, motor reactions are exhibited in various parts of the body. Destruction of the pregeminum in both monkeys and rabbits is followed by blindness, dilatation and immobility of the pupils, with marked disturbance of equilibrium and locomotion (Ferrier).

From the anatomic relation of the posterior quadrigeminal body (the postgeminum) to the lateral fillet, the basal tract for hearing, the inference may be drawn that it is in some way connected with the auditory process.

Stimulation of the postgeminum gives rise to cries and various forms of vocalization. Pathologic states of this body are also attended by impairment of hearing and disorders of the equilibrium.

From the foregoing facts it is probable that the corpora quadrigemina are associated with station and locomotion. Ferrier assumes that in these bodies "sensory impressions, retinal and others, are coördinated with adaptive motor reactions such as are involved in equilibration and locomotion."

The Corpora Striata.

—The relation of these bodies to the pyramidal motor tract would indicate that they are in some way connected with motor activities. Their function, however, is ob-

scure. While stimulation of one corpus produces convulsion of the muscles of the opposite side of the body, and destruction gives rise to paralysis of the corresponding muscles, it is difficult, owing to the intimate association of the white and the gray matter, to state to which the phenomena are to be attributed. The evidence at hand points to the conclusion that if a lesion is limited to the gray matter the paralysis which might result would be but temporary and of short duration. The pathologic evidence is of a similar character. Gowers

FIG. 218.—HORIZONTAL SECTION OF THE INTERNAL CAPSULE SHOWING THE POSITION AND RELATION OF THE MOTOR TRACTS FOR THE EYE, HEAD (Hd.), TONGUE (Tg.), MOUTH (Mth.), SHOULDER (Shl.), ELBOW (Elb.), DIGITS OF HAND (Dig.), ABDOMEN (Abd.), HIP, KNEE (Kn.), DIGITS OF FOOT (Dig.). S. Sensor tract. O. T. Optic tract. A. T. Auditory tract. 1. Caudate nucleus. 2. Anterior segment of internal capsule. 3. External capsule. 4. Island of Reil. 5. Lenticular nucleus. 6. Claustrum. 7. Posterior segment of internal capsule.—(Modified from Landois.)

is of the opinion, that if the lesion is small and at a sufficient distance from the white fibers of the capsule, there may even be no initial hemiplegia; neither motor nor sensory paralysis will arise if the lesion is confined to the gray matter.

It is stated by some experimenters that localized injuries, both experimental and pathologic, are followed by a persistent rise of temperature, varying from 1° to 2.6° C.

The Optic Thalami.—From the anatomic relation of the optic thalami to the general and special sense nerve-tracts, on the one hand, and to the cerebral cortex, on the other hand, it is assumed

that they are connected with the production of sensations both general and special, and act as intermediates between the peripheral sense-organs and the cortex.

The results of experimental stimulation and destruction of the thalami are extremely contradictory and fail to throw much light on their functions. Ferrier states that destruction of the posterior part of one thalamus produced blindness in the opposite eye and impairment of the sense of touch and pain in the opposite side of the body. In a patient under the care of Hughlings-Jackson there was blindness in the right half of each eye, loss of hearing in the left

FIG. 219.—VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH THE RIGHT CEREBRAL HEMISPHERE IN FRONT OF THE GRAY COMMISSURE. 1. Caudate nucleus. 2. Corpus callosum. 3. Pillars of the fornix. 4. Internal capsule. 5. Optic thalamus. 6. Gray commissure. 7. External capsule. 8. Claustrum.

ear, impairment of taste on the left side of the tongue, and a diminution of the sense of touch on the left side of the body. Postmortem examination showed a patch of softening in the posterior part of the right thalamus, the remainder of the organ being normal.

It is probable that in the thalamus visual, tactile, and labyrinthine impressions are received, coördinated, and reflected outward, with the result of producing various adaptive motor reactions connected with station and equilibrium. It is also believed by some investigators

to act as an intermediate between emotional states and their expression in the muscles of the face, this power being lost in certain pathologic conditions. The power of regulating the temperature of the body has also been assigned to the thalamus, as destruction of its anterior extremity is usually followed by a rise in temperature.

The Internal Capsule.—The internal capsule has been shown by the results both of experiment and of pathologic processes to be, first, a pathway for the transmission of nerve impulses from the cerebral cortex to the pons, medulla, and spinal cord, which give rise to contraction of the muscles of the opposite side of the body; and, second, a pathway for the transmission of nerve impulses coming from skin, mucous membrane, muscles, and special sense-organs to the cortex, where they give rise to sensations general and special. It is therefore the common motor and sensor pathway. For the reason that it transmits both motor and sensor impulses, and for the further reason that it is frequently the seat of pathologic lesions which are followed by either a loss of motion or sensation or both, the internal capsule is one of the most important parts of the central nerve system. As shown in Fig. 218, it consists of two segments or limbs united at an obtuse angle, the knee or elbow, which is directed toward the median line. The *motor* tract is confined to the posterior one-third of the anterior segment and the anterior two-thirds of the posterior segment. The *sensor* tract is confined to the posterior one-third of the posterior segment, the extreme end of which also contains the optic and auditory tracts.

The region of the anterior segment in front of the motor tract contains the fibers of the fronto-cerebellar tract, the function of which is unknown.

The motor region contains fibers which descend from the cerebral cortex to nerve-centers situated in the gray matter beneath the aqueduct of Sylvius, in the gray matter beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle, and in the anterior horns of the gray matter of the spinal cord, and which in turn are connected by the cranial and spinal nerves with the muscles of the eye, head, face, trunk, and limbs. The positions occupied by these different tracts are shown in Fig. 218.

The relation of the internal capsule to the caudate nucleus and the optic thalamus internally, and to the lenticular nucleus externally, is also shown in a vertical section of the cerebrum made in front of the gray commissure (Fig. 219). From the fact that the internal capsule contains efferent or motor tracts, and afferent or sensor tracts, it is evident that a destructive lesion of the motor tract would be followed by a loss of motion; and of the sensor tract, by a loss of sensation on the opposite side of the body.

CHAPTER XIX.

THE CEREBRUM.

The **cerebrum** is the largest portion of the encephalon, constituting about 85 per cent. of its total weight. In shape it is ovate, convex on its outer surface, narrow in front and broad behind. It is divided by a deep longitudinal cleft or fissure into halves, known as the cerebral hemispheres. The hemispheres are completely separated anteriorly and posteriorly by this fissure, but in their middle portions are united by a broad white band, the corpus callosum. Each hemisphere or hemi-cerebrum is convex on its outer aspect, and corresponds in a general way with the cavity of the skull; the inner or mesial surface is flat and forms the lateral boundary of the longitudinal fissure.

The surface of each hemi-cerebrum presents a series of alternate indentations and elevations, known respectively as fissures or sulci, and convolutions or gyres. A knowledge of the situation and extent of the principal fissures and convolutions, as well as of their relation one to another, is essential to a clear understanding of many physiologic processes, clinical phenomena, and surgical procedures. The general arrangement of the primary fissures and convolutions is represented in Figs. 220 and 221.

Fissures.—

1. The *fissure of Sylvius*, one of the most important of the primary fissures, is found on the side of the cerebrum. It begins at the base and extends upward, outward, and backward to a point corresponding to the eminence of the parietal bone, where it usually terminates. Anteriorly a short branch is given off which passes upward and forward into the frontal lobe. The Sylvian fissure is the first to appear in the development of the fetal brain, becoming visible at the third month. In the adult it is deep and well marked and divides the hemi-cerebrum into a frontal and a temporo-sphenoidal lobe.
2. The *fissure of Rolando*, or central fissure, equally important, is found on the superior and lateral aspects of the cerebrum. It runs from a point on the convexity of the hemisphere near the median line transversely outward and downward toward the fissure of Sylvius, but as a rule does not pass into it. It divides the frontal from the parietal lobe. The inclination of the

central fissure is such as to form with the longitudinal fissure an angle of about 67 degrees.

3. The *intra-parietal fissure* arises a short distance behind the central fissure. It then runs upward, backward, and downward to terminate near the posterior extremity of the hemisphere. It divides the parietal lobe into a superior and an inferior portion.

FIG. 220.—DIAGRAM SHOWING FISSURES AND CONVOLUTIONS OF THE LEFT SIDE OF THE HUMAN BRAIN. F. Frontal. P. Parietal. O. Occipital. T. Temporo-sphenoidal lobe. S. Fissure of Sylvius. S'. Horizontal. S''. Ascending ramus of S. c. Sulcus centralis, or fissure of Rolando. A. Ascending frontal, and B. Ascending parietal, convolution. F₁. Superior, F₂. Middle, and F₃. Inferior frontal convolutions. f₁. Superior, f₂. Inferior, frontal fissures. f₃. Sulcus præcentralis. P. Superior parietal lobule. P₂. Inferior parietal lobule, consisting of P₂. Supramarginal gyrus, and P₂'. Angular gyrus. ip. Sulcus interparietalis. cm. Termination of callosomarginal fissure. O₁. First, O₂. Second, O₃. Third, occipital convolutions. po. Parieto-occipital fissure. o. Transverse occipital fissure. o₂. Inferior longitudinal occipital fissure. T₁. First, T₂. Second, T₃. Temporo-sphenoidal, convolutions. t₁. First, t₂. Second, temporo-sphenoidal fissures.—(Landois' "Physiology.")

4. The *parieto-occipital fissure*, situated on the mesial surface of the hemisphere, divides the latter into a parietal and an occipital lobe. It begins as a deep notch on the surface of the hemisphere, and is then continued downward and forward until it enters the calcarine fissure.

5. The *calcarine fissure* begins on the posterior extremity of the mesial surface of the occipital lobe. From this point it passes downward and forward to unite with the parieto-occipital fissure.
6. The *calloso-marginal fissure* is a deep cleft on the mesial surface of the hemisphere. It begins below the anterior extremity of the corpus callosum and in a general way follows the course of this structure as far as its posterior extremity, where it turns upward to terminate at the margin of the hemisphere just posterior to the fissure of Rolando.

FIG. 221.—DIAGRAM SHOWING FISSURES AND CONVOLUTIONS ON MESIAL ASPECT OF THE RIGHT HEMISPHERE. Median aspect of the right hemisphere. CC. Corpus callosum divided longitudinally. Gf. Gyrus fornicatus. H. Gyrus hippocampi. *h*. Sulcus hippocampi. U. Uncinate gyrus. *cm*. Calloso-marginal fissure. F. First frontal convolution. *c*. Terminal portion of fissure of Rolando. A. Ascending frontal, B. Ascending parietal, convolution and paracentral lobule. P₁'. Precuneus or quadrate lobule. Oz. Cuneus. Po. Parieto-occipital fissure. *o*₁. Transverse occipital fissure. *oc*. Calcarine fissure. *oc'*. Superior, *oc''*. Inferior, ramus of the same. D. Gyrus descendens. T₄. Gyrus occipitotemporalis lateralis (lobulus fusiformis). T₅. Gyrus occipitotemporalis medialis (lobulus lingualis).

Secondary fissures of more or less importance are present in the different lobes, subdividing the surface into convolutions: *e. g.*, in the frontal lobe are found the *pre-central*, the *superior* and *middle frontal fissures*; in the temporo-sphenoidal lobe the *superior* and *inferior* or the *first* and *second temporo-sphenoidal fissures*; in the occipital lobe, the *transverse* and *inferior longitudinal* fissures.

Convolution.—The convolutions or gyres are the portions of the cerebral surface comprised between the fissures. The arrange-

ment of the surface is such that only the more superficial portions are visible. The depth of the convolution, the portion bordering the fissure, is concealed from view. Each lobe presents a series of such convolutions, which differ considerably in their relative physiologic importance.

The Frontal Lobe.—The frontal lobe presents on its convex surface four convolutions: viz., the anterior or pre-central convolution, and the superior, middle, and inferior frontal convolutions.

1. The *anterior or pre-central convolution* is situated just in front of the Rolandic or central fissure, with which it corresponds in direction. It is continuous above with the superior frontal and below with the inferior frontal convolution.
2. The *superior frontal convolution* is bounded internally by the longitudinal fissure and externally by the superior frontal fissure. From the upper end of the pre-central convolution, with which it is continuous, it runs forward and downward to the anterior extremity of the frontal lobe, where it turns backward and rests on the orbital plate of the frontal bone.
3. The *middle frontal convolution* is situated on the side of the lobe, between the superior frontal fissure above and the middle frontal fissure below. Its general direction is downward and forward.
4. The *inferior frontal convolution* winds around the ascending branch of the fissure of Sylvius in the anterior and inferior portion of the cerebrum. It is continuous posteriorly with the lower end of the pre-central convolution.

The Parietal Lobe.—The parietal lobe presents three well-marked convolutions: viz., the posterior or post-central convolution, and the superior and inferior parietal.

1. The *posterior or post-central convolution* is situated just behind the Rolandic or central fissure, with which it corresponds in direction. Above, it is continuous with the superior parietal convolution; below, with the inferior parietal and the pre-central convolutions.
2. The *superior parietal convolution* is bounded internally by the longitudinal fissure and externally by the intra-parietal fissure. From the upper end of the post-central convolution, with which it is connected, it runs downward and backward as far as the parieto-occipital fissure.
3. The *inferior parietal convolution* is connected anteriorly with the post-central convolution. Passing backward, it winds around the superior extremity of the fissure of Sylvius, in which situation it is known as the *supra-marginal* convolution. Beyond this point it divides into two portions, one of which runs forward into the temporal lobe above the first temporal fissure, while the other runs downward and backward, following the intra-

parietal fissure to its termination. At this point it makes a sharp bend and runs forward into the temporal lobe just beneath the first temporal fissure. In the neighborhood of the bend it is generally known as the *angular convolution* or *gyrus*.

The Temporo-sphenoidal Lobe.—The temporo-sphenoidal lobe presents on its external surface three well-marked convolutions: viz., the *superior*, the *middle*, and the *inferior temporal*, separated by the first and second temporal fissures. These three convolutions are in a general way parallel with each other, and pursue a direction from before backward and upward. Anteriorly, they are fused together, but posteriorly their connections are somewhat different. The superior temporal is continuous behind and above with the *supra-marginal* convolution, and behind and below with the *angular* convolution or gyre. The middle temporal blends with the preceding and with the middle occipital. The inferior temporal is continuous with the inferior occipital.

The Occipital Lobe.—The occipital lobe is triangular in shape and forms the posterior apex of the hemisphere. Its base on the external surface is formed by an imaginary line drawn from the parieto-occipital fissure to the pre-occipital notch on the inferior and lateral border. The external surface presents three convolutions—the superior, middle, and inferior occipital.

The **inner** or **mesial surface** of the hemisphere, formed in part by the frontal, the parietal, the occipital, and the temporal lobes, presents several convolutions of much physiologic interest, viz.:

1. The *gyrus fornicatus*, situated between the calloso-marginal fissure and the corpus callosum. From its origin anteriorly at the base of the brain this convolution passes backward, gradually increasing in width as it approaches the posterior extremity of the corpus callosum. At this point it again narrows and descends between the calcarine and hippocampal fissures to blend with the hippocampal convolution.
2. The *gyrus hippocampus*, formed by the union of the posterior extremity of the gyrus fornicatus and the median occipito-temporal convolution (the lingual lobule), is situated just below the dentate or hippocampal fissure. Anteriorly it becomes enlarged, and just behind the apex of the temporal lobe turns backward and inward to form a hook-shaped eminence, the *uncinate gyrus* or *uncus*.

The *limbic lobe* is the name given to an area of the brain which includes, among other structures, the gyrus fornicatus, the gyrus hippocampus, and the uncus. As forming a part of this general lobe may be mentioned the dentate fascia, the striæ and peduncle of the corpus callosum, the septum lucidum, the fornix, and the infracallosal gyrus.

3. The *temporo-occipital gyrus* is bounded by the collateral fissure above, and its inferior border extends from the occipital lobe to the anterior pole of the temporal lobe.
4. The *quadrate lobule*, a square-shaped convolution, is situated between the posterior termination of the calloso-marginal fissure and the parieto-occipital fissure. It blends with the gyrus fornicatus, on the one hand, and with the parietal lobule on the other.
5. The *cuneus*, a triangular or wedge-shaped convolution or lobule, is situated on the mesial surface of the occipital lobe between the parieto-occipital and calcarine fissures.

The Insula or Island of Reil.—This anatomic structure consists of a triangular shaped cluster of six small convolutions situated at the bifurcation of the Sylvian fissure and concealed from view by the convolutions bordering it, spoken of collectively as the operculum. These convolutions are connected with the frontal, the parietal, and the temporal lobes.

Structure of the Gray Matter or the Cortex.—The gray matter, the cortex of the cerebrum, varies from two to four millimeters in thickness. When examined with a lens of low power, it presents a laminated appearance, due to differences in color and arrangement of its constituent elements. With higher magnification the cortex is seen to consist of neuroglia cells, nerve-cells with specialized dendrites and axons, medullated and non-medullated nerve-fibers, blood-vessels, connective tissue, etc.,—all of which are arranged and interblended in a most intricate manner. Notwithstanding the complexity of its structure, modern histologic methods have enabled Cajal to divide it into four fairly distinct layers or zones, from without inward, as follows (Fig. 222):

1. *The Molecular Layer.*—The most superficial portion of this layer consists mainly of neuroglia or glia cells, the processes of which interlace in all directions, forming a distinct sheath just beneath the pia. The deeper portions of this layer contain a specialized type of nerve-cell (Cajal cells), of which there are several varieties. These cells give off nerve-fibers which pursue a horizontal direction for a variable distance, but in their course give off collateral branches which ascend to the outer surface of the layer. Among these structures are to be found, also, dendritic processes of cells situated in the subjacent layer. The terminal filaments of medullated nerve-fibers coming from nerve-cells in lower regions of the encephalo-spinal axis are also present, but for the most part they pursue a tangential direction.
2. *The Layer of Small Pyramidal Cells.*—This layer consists mainly of nerve-cells, the majority of which are pyramidal in shape and of small size. Other cells, however, are present, which

present a variety of shapes, for which reason the layer was at one time termed the ambiguous layer. The apical process of the pyramidal cells is broad at the base, but narrows rapidly as it passes upward. It frequently divides into several branches,

FIG. 222.—SECTION OF THE CERE-BRAL CORTEX (MOTOR AREA) OF CHILD, STAINED BY GOLGI'S SILVER METHOD. A. Layer of neuroglia cells. B. Layer of small pyramidal ganglion cells. C. Layer of large pyramidal cells. D. Layer of irregular smaller cells.—(Piersol.)

each of which develops club-shaped processes or gemmules, which give to it a feathery appearance. Dendrites are also given off from the sides and base of the cell-body. From the base a single axon descends which ultimately becomes the axis-cylinder of a medullated nerve.

3. *The Layer of Large Pyramidal Cells.*—The nerve-cells of this layer, as the name implies, are also pyramidal in shape, but of large size. Each cell presents the same features as the cells of the preceding layer, with the exception that the apical process is larger, better developed, and branches more freely. All the dendrites are extensively provided with gemmules. The axon is well developed, sharply defined, and smooth. After giving off collateral branches, the axon descends into the cerebrum and becomes a medullated nerve-fiber.

4. *The Layer of Polymorphous Cells.*—In this layer the nerve-cells present a variety of forms: *e. g.*, spindle, polygonal, pyramidal, etc. The spindle form is the most common. From either end of the spindle a large dendrite emerges which soon branches and becomes gemmulated. The axon is well defined and it soon descends into the white matter.

The Number of Cortical Cells.—Attempts have been made by various histologists to estimate the total number of functional nerve-cells in the cerebral cortex of man. Though the estimates are widely different, the lowest presents numbers which are beyond compre-

hension. Thus, Meynert's estimate is 612 millions; Donaldson's 1200 millions; while Thompson's is 9200 millions.

Structure of the White Matter.—The white matter of the cerebrum consists of medullated nerve-fibers which, though intricately arranged, may be divided into three systems: viz., the commissural, the association, and the projection.

1. *The commissural system.* The fibers which compose this system unite corresponding areas of the cortex of each hemisphere. The fibers from the frontal, parietal, and occipital lobes cross in the median line and form a band of transversely arranged fibers, the corpus callosum. The fibers which unite the corresponding areas of the temporo-sphenoid lobes cross in the anterior commissure. All the commissural fibers are the axons of nerve-cells in the cortex, the terminals of which are to be found in the cortex of the opposite side.
2. *The association system.* The fibers which compose this system unite neighboring as well as distant parts of the same hemisphere, and may therefore be divided into long and short fibers. They associate the inexcitable or association areas with the excitable or projection areas.
3. *The projection system.* The fibers composing this system unite certain areas of the cortex of the cerebrum with the basal ganglia, the pons, medulla oblongata, and spinal cord. They may be divided into: (1) afferent fibers which have their origin in the lower nerve-centers at different levels and thence pass to the cortex; and (2) efferent fibers which have their origin in the cortex and thence pass to the lower nerve-centers, terminating at different levels. The former are also termed the *cortico-afferent* or *cortico-petal*; the latter, *cortico-efferent* or *cortico-fugal*.

The *afferent fibers*, the so-called sensor tract, which transmit nerve impulses coming from the general periphery and the sense-organs, pass through the tegmentum as the mesial and lateral fillets, and thence to the cortex directly by way of the internal capsule, or indirectly through the intermediation of the thalamic and subthalamic nuclei. The distribution of these fibers to the various areas of the cortex will be found in following paragraphs.

The *efferent fibers* of the so-called motor tract which transmit motor or volitional nerve impulses from the cortex to the pons, medulla, and spinal cord, emerge from the layer of pyramidal cells of the gray matter of the anterior or the pre-central convolution, the paracentral lobule and immediately adjacent areas. From this origin the axons descend through the white matter of the corona radiata, converging toward the internal capsule, into and through which they pass, occupying the anterior two-thirds of the posterior limb or segment. Beyond the capsule they continue to descend,

occupying the middle three-fifths of the *pes* or *crusta* of the *crus cerebri*, the ventral portion of the pons, and eventually the anterior pyramid of the medulla oblongata. At this point the tract divides into two portions, viz.:

1. A large portion, containing from ninety-one to ninety-seven per cent. of the fibers, which decussates at the lower border of the medulla and passes down the lateral column of the cord, constituting the *crossed pyramidal tract*.
2. A small portion, containing from three to nine per cent. of the fibers, which does not decussate at the medulla, but passes down the inner side of the anterior column of the same side, constituting the *direct pyramidal tract* or column of Türrck.

After passing through the internal capsule, and as it descends through the *crus*, pons, and medulla, the cortico-efferent tract gives off a number of fibers which cross the median line and arborize around the nerve-cells in the gray matter beneath the aqueduct of Sylvius (the nuclei of origin of the third and fourth cranial nerves), and around the nerve-cells in the gray matter beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle (the nuclei of origin of the remainder of the motor cranial nerves). The remaining fibers go to form the crossed and direct pyramidal tracts and arborize around the cells in the anterior horn of the gray matter of the opposite side of the cord at successive levels. By this means the cortex is brought into anatomic and physiologic relation with the general musculature of the body through the various cranial and spinal motor nerves. (See Fig. 209, page 463.)

The *fronto-cerebellar* and the *occipito-temporo-cerebellar* tracts are also efferent tracts and parts of the projection system. The fronto-cerebellar, originating in the nerve-cells of the cortex of the frontal lobe, passes down to and through the internal capsule, occupying the anterior one-third of the anterior segment. It then descends along the inner side of the *crus cerebri* to the pons, where its fibers arborize around the cells of the *nucleus pontis*. Through the intermediation of these cells this tract is brought into relation with the cerebellum of the same but chiefly of the opposite side. The occipito-temporal tract, originating in the cells of the cortex of both the occipital and temporal lobes, passes downward and inward toward the lenticular nucleus, beneath which it passes to enter the outer one-fifth of the *crusta*. It then enters the pons, and through the *nucleus pontis* also comes into relation with the cerebellum of both sides.

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE CEREBRUM.

The functions of the cerebrum comprehend, in man at least, all that pertains to sensation, cognition, feeling, and volition. All subjective experiences, which in their totality constitute mind, are

dependent on and associated with the anatomic integrity and the physiologic activity of the cerebrum and its related sense-organs, the eye, ear, nose, tongue, etc.

From an examination of the anatomic development of the brain in different classes of animals, in different men and races of men, and from a study of the pathologic lesions and the results of experimental lesions of the brain, evidence has been obtained which reveals in a striking manner the intimate connection of the cerebrum and all phases of mental activity.

1. *Comparative anatomic* investigations show that there is a general connection between the size of the brain, its texture, the depth and number of convolutions, and the exhibition of mental power. Throughout the entire animal series an increase in intelligence goes hand in hand with an increase in the development of the brain. In man there is an enormous increase in size over that of the highest animals, the anthropoid apes. The most cultivated races of men have the greatest cranial capacity, that of the educated European or American being approximately 92.1 cubic inches (1835 c.c.); while that of the Australian is but 81.7 cubic inches (1628 c.c.). Men distinguished for great mental power usually have large and well developed brains; *e. g.*, that of Cuvier weighed 64.4 ounces (1830 grams); that of Abercrombie, 63 ounces (1786 grams). A large intelligence, however, is not incompatible with a much smaller brain weight; thus, the brain of Helmholtz weighed but 50.8 ounces (1440 grams); that of Leidy, 49.9 ounces (1415 grams); that of Liebig, 47.7 ounces (1352 grams). The average arithmetic brain weight of 96 distinguished men was found to be 51.9 ounces (1473 grams) (Spitzka).
2. *Pathologic lesions* and mechanic injuries which disorganize the cerebrum are at once followed by a disturbance or an entire suspension of mental activity. Concussion of the brain or sudden compression from a hemorrhage destroys consciousness. Physical and chemic alterations of the gray matter of the cerebrum have been shown to coexist with insanity, loss of memory, of articulate speech, etc. Congenital defects of organization are accompanied by a deficiency in mental capacity and the higher instincts. Under such circumstances no great advance in brain development is possible and the intelligence remains at a low level. In congenital idiocy the brain is small, imperfectly developed, and wanting in proper chemic composition.
3. *Experimental lesions* of the brain in lower animals are attended by results similar to those observed in disease or after injury in man. Removal of the cerebrum in the pigeon completely abolishes intelligence and destroys the capability of performing

volitional movements. The pigeon remains in a state of profound stupor, though retaining the capability of executing reflex or instinctive movements. It can temporarily be aroused by loud noises, light placed before the eyes, pinching of the toes, etc., but it soon relapses into a condition of quietude. Coincident with the destruction of the cerebrum there occurs a loss of memory, reason, and judgment, and the animal fails to associate the impressions with any previous train of ideas. The higher the animal in the scale of development, the more striking is the loss of mentality after removal of the cerebrum.

4. *Experimental interference* with the blood-supply to the cerebrum is followed by a diminished or complete cessation of its activities. There is perhaps no organ of the body that is so directly dependent upon its blood-supply for the continuance of its activities as the cerebrum. The supply of blood is furnished by four large blood-vessels: viz., the two carotid and the two vertebral arteries. These vessels, after entering the cavity of the skull, give off branches which unite to form the "circle of Willis." From this circle, large branches are given off which enter the cerebrum and distribute blood to all its parts. After passing through the capillaries the blood, greatly altered in chemic composition, is returned by large veins. The large volume of blood that is present in the brain and the marked changes in composition that it undergoes while passing through the brain indicate a very active and complex metabolism in this organ. By means of the anatomic arrangement of the blood-vessels at the base of the brain, the blood-supply is equalized. It also explains why, when one, or even two, of the four large vessels are occluded by pathologic deposits or surgical procedures, brain activity continues, though perhaps diminished in degree. Occlusion of all four vessels, however, is at once followed by a complete abolition of all forms of cerebral activity. An experiment performed by Brown-Séquard illustrates the dependence of cerebral activity on the blood-supply. A dog was beheaded at the junction of the neck and chest. After a period of ten minutes all evidences of life had entirely ceased. Four tubes connected with a reservoir of warm defibrinated blood were then connected with the four arteries of the head. By means of a pumping apparatus imitating the action of the heart the blood was driven into and through the brain. After a few minutes cerebral activity returned, as shown by contraction of the muscles of the face and eyes. The character of the contractions were such as to convey the idea that they were directed by the will. These vital manifestations continued for a period of fifteen minutes, when on the cessation of the artificial circulation they disap-

peared, and the head exhibited once again the usual phenomena observed in dying: viz., contraction and then dilatation of the pupils and convulsive movements of the muscles of the face.

Localization of Functions in the Cerebrum.—By the term localization of functions is meant the assignment of definite physiologic functions to definite anatomic areas of the cerebral cortex. From experiments made on the brains of animals, by the observation and association of clinical symptoms with pathologic lesions of the central nerve system, and from observation of the developmental stages of the embryonic brain, it has been established in recent years:

1. That the general and special sense-organs of the body are associated through afferent nerve-tracts with definite though perhaps not sharply delimited areas of the cerebral cortex; and—
2. That certain areas of the cortex are associated through efferent nerve-tracts with special groups of skeletal or voluntary muscles.

Experimental excitation of a cortical area associated with a sense-organ is undoubtedly attended by the production of a sensation at least similar to that produced by peripheral excitation of the sense-organ itself; *destruction* of the area is followed by an abolition of all the sensations associated with the sense-organ. For these reasons such areas are termed *sensor*.

Excitation of a cortical area associated with a group of skeletal muscles is attended by their contraction; *destruction* of the area is followed by their relaxation or paralysis. For these reasons such areas are termed *motor*.

Since the sense-organs are remote from the brain and the impressions made upon them by the objective world can be utilized by the mind, only after they have been reproduced in the cortical areas, it may be said that each sense-organ has its special area in the cortex by which it is represented, or, in other words, each sense-organ has a cortical area of representation.

Since the muscles are remote from the brain and since they contract in response to the discharge of nerve impulses from the cells of the cortical motor areas, it may be said that the activities of the motor areas are represented by the contractions of the muscles; in other words, that the cortical motor areas have areas of representation in the general skeletal musculature. It is usually stated, however, in the reverse way: viz., that the muscle movements have areas of representation in the cortex.

The cortex of the cerebrum may therefore be compared to a mosaic made up, partially at least, of sensor and motor areas which respectively represent sense-organs and motor organs, and which bear a definite anatomic and physiologic relation one to the other. Their coöperation is essential to the normal performance of all forms of cerebral activity.

A knowledge of the situation of these areas, the order of their development, the effects that arise from their stimulation or follow their destruction, are matters of the highest importance in the study of cerebral activity and indispensable to the physician in the localization of lesions which manifest themselves in perversions or abolition of sensations and in convulsive seizures or paralyses.

The Sensor Areas.—The sensor areas which should theoretically be present in the cortex are primarily those which receive and translate into conscious sensations nerve impulses, developed by changes going on in the body itself; and secondarily those which receive and translate into conscious sensations the nerve impulses developed in the special sense-organs by the impact of the external or objective world. In the former areas, are received the nerve impulses that come from the skin, mucous membranes, muscles, viscera, etc., and give rise to cutaneous, muscle, and visceral sensations. In the latter are received the nerve impulses that come from the sense-organs and give rise to tactile, gustatory, olfactory, auditory, and visual sensations. A number of such sense areas may be predicated: *e. g.*, areas of *cutaneous* and *muscle sensibility*, of *gustatory*, *olfactory*, *auditory*, and *visual sensibility*.

The Motor Areas.—The motor areas which should theoretically be present in the cortex are those which in consequence of the discharge of nerve impulses excite contraction of special groups of muscles and which, from their coördinate and purposive character, are conventionally termed volitional. Five such general motor areas may be predicated: *e. g.*, one for the muscles of the head and eyes, one for the muscles of the face and associated organs, and areas for the muscles of the arm, leg, and trunk. They are usually designated as *head and eye*, *face*, *arm*, *leg*, and *trunk motor areas*.

The existence and anatomic location of these areas in the cortex of animals have been determined by the employment of two methods of experimentation: viz., stimulation and destruction or extirpation; the first by means of the rapidly repeated induced electric currents, the second by the electric cautery and the knife. If the stimulation or excitation of any given area is followed by contraction and its destruction by paralysis of muscles, it is assumed that the area is *motor* in function—is a *center of motion*. If the stimulation of a given area is attended by phenomena which indicate that the animal is experiencing sensation, and its destruction by a loss of this capability or the loss of a special sense, it is assumed that the area is *sensor* in function—is an area of *special sense*. The animals generally employed for experiments of this character are dogs and monkeys, though other animals have frequently been employed by different investigators. Of all animals, the monkey is the most frequently selected, as the configuration of the brain in its general out-

lines more closely resembles that of man than does the brain of any other animal. The results therefore which are obtained, there is every reason to believe, are the results, in their general outlines, that would follow stimulation of the human brain if this were possible under the same conditions. Indeed, the clinical symptoms which arise during the development of pathologic processes, and the phenomena which occur during surgical procedures for the removal of growths and pathologic cortical areas, justify the conclusion that the chart of the motor and sensor areas of the monkey brain may be transferred to the human brain without introducing any serious errors.

The Motor Areas of the Monkey Brain.—

From experiments made on the brains of monkeys Ferrier mapped out a number of areas stimulation of which gives rise to muscle contractions on the opposite side of the body which are so purposive and co-ordinate in character that they may be regarded as identical with those produced volitionally. Destruction of these areas is followed by paralysis. The results of Ferrier's earlier work are represented in Fig. 223, the descriptive text to which renders them intelligible. In a general way it may be said that the upper third of the anterior and posterior central convolutions presides over the movements of the leg of the opposite side of the body; the middle third over the movements of the arm; the inferior third over the movements of the

FIG. 223.—LEFT HEMISPHERE OF MONKEY, SHOWING DETAILS OF MOTOR AREAS INDICATED BY THE MOVEMENTS FOLLOWING STIMULATION OF: 1. Superior parietal lobule; exciting advance of the hind limb. 2. Top of ascending frontal and parietal convolutions; flexion and outward rotation of thigh; flexion of toes. 3. On ascending frontal convolution near semilunar sulcus; movements of hind limb, tail and extremity of trunk. 4. On adjacent margins of ascending frontal and parietal convolution; adduction and extension of arm, pronation of hand. 5. Top of ascending frontal near superior frontal convolution; forward extension of arm. *a, b, c, d.* On ascending parietal; movements of various muscles of the forearm. 6. Ascending frontal convolution; flexion of forearm and supination of hand which is brought toward mouth. 7. Retraction and elevation of corner of mouth. 8. Elevation of nose and lip. 9 and 10. Opening mouth and motions of tongue. 11. Retraction of angle of mouth. 12. Middle and superior frontal convolutions; movements of head and eyelids. 13 and 13'. Anterior and posterior limbs of angular gyrus; movements of eyeballs. 14. Superior temporo-sphenoidal convolution, ear pricked and head moved. 15. Movement of lip and nostril.—(Ferrier.)

face and tongue. Collectively these areas are known as the *motor area* or *motor zone*; and as it is ranged along the Rolandic fissure, it is sometimes termed the *Rolandic area*.

The experiments of Horsley and Schäfer added additional facts and enabled them to construct a new diagrammatic representation of the motor area and more accurately define the special areas upon the lateral and mesial aspects of the brain of the monkey. The boundaries of the general and special areas, as determined by these observers, will be readily apparent from an examination of Fig. 224. Their experiments have enabled them also to subdivide the general into special areas as follows:

FIG. 224.—DIAGRAM OF THE MOTOR AND SENSOR AREAS ON THE LATERAL SURFACE OF THE MONKEY BRAIN.—(After Horsley and Schäfer.)

1. The *head area* or *area for visual direction* into areas excitation of which causes "opening of the eyes, dilatation of the pupils and turning the head to the opposite side with conjugate deviation of the eyes to that side."
2. The *leg area* may be subdivided into (a) an area both on the lateral and mesial surfaces which presides over the movements of the hip and thigh; (b) an area in the posterior part which presides over the movements of the legs and toes; (c) an area in the paracentral lobule for the movements of the hallux or great toe.
3. The *trunk area*, situated largely on the mesial surface, may be subdivided into an anterior and a posterior area, which respectively preside over the movements of the spinal column as arching and rotation, and the movements of the pelvis and tail.

4. The *arm area* may be subdivided as follows: (a) an area superiorly which controls the movements of the shoulder; (b) an area posteriorly and below this, which controls the movements of the elbow; (c) an area anteriorly and below the preceding, governing the movements of the wrist and fingers; (d) an area posteriorly and below governing the movements of the thumb.
5. The *face area* may be divided into an upper part, comprising about one-third, and a lower part, comprising the remaining two-thirds. In the upper part are areas governing the movements of the opposite angle of the mouth and of the lower face. In the lower part anteriorly there is an area governing the move-

FIG. 225.—DIAGRAM OF THE MOTOR AND SENSOR AREAS ON THE MESIAL SURFACE OF THE MONKEY BRAIN.—(After Horsley and Schäfer.)

ments of the vocal membranes or bands (the laryngeal area); posteriorly areas governing the opening and closing of the mouth, the protrusion and retraction of the tongue.

The Sensor Areas of the Monkey Brain.—From experiments made on the brains of monkeys, Ferrier, Schäfer, Horsley, and many others have mapped out, though not with the same degree of definiteness and certainty, the sensor areas, stimulation of which gives rise to sensation, destruction to loss of sensation. A diagrammatic representation of these areas is shown in Fig. 224 and Fig. 225.

The *tactile area* or *area of tactile perception* has not been accurately or definitely located. Ferrier assigned it to the hippocampal region. Schäfer and Horsley assigned it to the limbic lobe, and especially to that portion known as the gyrus fornicatus, as destruction

of this convolution was followed by hemianesthesia of the opposite side of the body which was more or less marked and persistent. These observers conclude that the limbic lobe "is largely if not exclusively concerned in the appreciation of sensation, painful and tactile." Other experimenters question this conclusion and locate the area near to, if not within, the Rolandic area. The difference of opinion regarding the location and probable limitation of the area of tactile sensibility renders necessary additional and more conclusive experiments.

The *olfactory* and *gustatory areas* or *areas of olfactory and gustatory* perception have been located in the uncinate gyrus and the adjacent region, though their exact limits have not been determined by the experiments thus far performed.

The *auditory area* or *area of auditory perception* was located by Ferrier in the upper two-thirds of the superior temporo-sphenoidal convolution. Bilateral cauterization of this region gave rise to complete deafness, which endured to the time of the animal's death, more than a year later. Unilateral destruction of this region gave rise to deafness in the opposite ear only. The results of experiments made subsequently by other observers would indicate that the auditory area is somewhat more extended than that designated by Ferrier, as apparently animals recovered their hearing, to some extent at least, after complete recovery from the operation. The limit or extension of the area is, however, uncertain.

The *visual area* or *area of visual perception* has been located in the occipital lobe, though in this, as in the previous instances, its exact limits have not been positively determined. Experimenters also are not in accord as to the relative functions of its different parts. Ferrier located this area in the occipital lobe and that adjacent portion of the parietal lobe on the outer surface known as the angular gyrus. He found that extirpation of the angular gyrus alone was followed by a temporary blindness of the opposite eye, which was, however, not hemiopic in character.* He also found that destruction

* In a consideration of this subject certain facts connected with visual perception, both in physiologic and pathologic conditions, must be kept in mind. Thus, visual sensation may arise from stimulation of either the central portion, the macula, or the peripheral portion of the retina or both. In the first instance the vision is termed central or macular; in the second instance, peripheral or retinal. Macular vision is clear, sharp, and distinct; retinal vision progressively indistinct from the center toward the periphery. Division of one optic tract is followed, in consequence of the partial decussation of the optic nerve-fibers at the chiasma, by a loss of function in the outer two-thirds of the retina of the same side, both in the central (macular) as well as in its peripheral portions, and the inner one-third of the retina of the opposite side. To this condition the term hemiopia has been applied. As a result of this want of functional activity of these retinal portions on the side of the lesion, rays of light emanating from objects situated in the *opposite side* of the *field of vision* will not be perceived when both eyes are directed to the fixation point. To this "blind-

of the occipital lobe together with the angular gyrus gave rise to a more or less enduring hemianopsia, in addition to the transient blindness of the opposite eye. From these and similar facts he concluded that the angular gyrus is the area of representation for the macular or central region of the retina, and the occipital lobe for the corresponding halves of the peripheral portions of the retina.

It was, however, found by Munk, Schäfer, and others that the angular gyrus was not concerned in any way with vision; that extirpation of the occipital lobe alone, especially if the line of division be carried a little further forward on the mesial and inferior surfaces, was followed by homonymous hemiopia (loss of retinal function on the same side), and therefore homonymous hemianopsia. Additional experiments lead to the conclusion that the area for macular vision is near the anterior extremity of the calcarine fissure, while the area for peripheral vision is in the posterior portion of the mesial surface and for a variable distance on the outer surface. Moreover, there is reason to believe that the area for macular vision is in relation with homonymous halves of the two maculæ luteæ. The supposed error, the assignment of macular vision to the angular gyrus, has been attributed to destruction of the fibers of the optic radiation, which in their course to the occipital lobe pass close to this gyrus.

Electric stimulation of the sensor areas is attended by certain motor reactions which vary in accordance with the area stimulated. Thus, when the electrodes are applied to different portions of the occipital lobe the eyeballs are conjugately turned upward, downward, or laterally and to the opposite side; when placed on the upper portion of the superior temporal convolution, the ear is pricked up or retracted, the head is turned to the opposite side and the pupils are dilated; when placed on the hippocampal convolution, there is movement of torsion of the nostril and lips of the same side.

Ferrier assumed that these movements were the result of the origination of subjective sensations and not an evidence that the area in question is a motor area, in the sense that this term is applied to the areas of the Rolandic region, especially as their destruction is not followed by paralysis of any of the corresponding muscles. This interpretation is supported by the experiments of Schäfer, which showed that the contraction of the eye-muscles which followed stimulation of the occipital lobe took place between 0.2 and 0.3

ness" in the opposite half of the field of vision the name hemianopsia is given. In the lesion under consideration (division of one optic tract) the hemianopsia is *bilateral*, and as it affects the corresponding portions associated in normal vision it is of the *homonymous* variety. Division of the right optic tract is followed by *left lateral homonymous hemianopsia*, indicative of the fact that objects in the field of vision to the left of the binocular fixation point are invisible.

second later than when the frontal lobe was stimulated; and that as the motor reaction takes place after extirpation of the frontal region, the route of the efferent impulse cannot be to and through the frontal lobe, but probably through some lower center. The same facts hold true for the reactions of the ear-muscles following stimulation of the temporal lobe.

The view that the cortex of the cerebrum can be divided into separate and independent though physiologically related motor and sensor areas has been questioned in recent years, and a somewhat different interpretation given to the facts. It is believed by many physiologists and neurologists that the so-called motor and sensor areas are so closely related that it is almost impossible to distinguish one from the other either anatomically or physiologically. Thus the Rolandic region is believed to be both motor and sensor in function, the former, however, being more predominant in the pre-central, the latter in the post-central, convolution. As these two functions are so intimately blended and their anatomic substrata so difficult of separation, it is thought the term *sensori-motor* should be employed as more descriptive and more in accordance with the facts to the entire Rolandic region.

This view has been strengthened by the results of the embryologic investigations of Flechsig, which show that different nerve-tracts become medullated or receive their myelin investment at successively later periods and that the tracts which first become myelinated and are hence first functionally active, belong to the afferent system. Among the first to undergo myelinization are three tracts numbered by Flechsig 1, 2, and 3, which arise largely from the median nucleus of the thalamus and the medial lemniscus and pass to the anterior and posterior convolutions, to the para-central lobule and foot of the superior frontal convolution, and to the foot of the third frontal convolution respectively. It is these fibers which convey nerve impulses to the cortex and furnish information regarding changes taking place in the body itself and thus lead to the performance of muscle movements. This area is therefore primarily a sensor area, an area for body-feelings, cutaneous, tactile, muscle, and visceral, and secondarily a motor area. The afferent fibers to this region become myelinated during the ninth month of intra-uterine life, the efferent fibers from it become myelinated during the third month of extra-uterine life.

By the same method of reasoning the gustatory, olfactory, auditory, and visual sense areas are to be regarded as sensori-motor in character, for embryologic investigations show that subsequently to the myelinization of the afferent tracts^c connecting the sense-organs with the cortex, efferent nerve-tracts arise from or near to the same centers and undergo myelinization. In other words, these

areas are primarily sensor and secondarily motor, and therefore should be termed sensori-motor. In Flechsig's own terminology each cortico-petal or afferent tract is accompanied by a cortico-fugal or efferent tract.

In this view sensations, or the mental processes the outcome of sensations, are the immediate cause of the movements of the muscles connected with both the sense-organs and skeletal structures. Though this interpretation—viz., the coincidence of sensor and motor areas—appears more in accordance with the facts than the earlier view, it must be admitted that there are many facts both of a physiologic and pathologic character which it is difficult to harmonize with it.

The Motor Area of the Chimpanzee Brain.—In a series of experiments made by Sherrington and Grünbaum on the brain of the chimpanzee it was discovered that the so-called motor area was not so widely distributed as in the monkeys generally, but was confined almost exclusively to the convolution just in front of the fissure of Rolando, as it was impossible to obtain any movement on direct stimulation of the convolution just behind it. All points on the surface of the pre-central convolution, including the portion forming the wall of the Rolandic fissure itself, were found to be excitable and productive of movement when stimulated. The sequence of representation from below upward is similar to that observed in the monkey. One peculiarity, however, was the location of the area for conjugate deviation of the eyeballs to the opposite side. This is situated far forward in the middle and inferior frontal convolutions, and separated from the areas in the pre-central convolution by a region apparently inexcitable. These facts are of great interest and value in the assignment of the motor areas in the cortex of the human brain, as in its development and configuration the chimpanzee brain more closely resembles the human brain than does the monkey's.

The Localization of Motor and Sensor Areas in the Human Brain.—The observation of clinical symptoms and their interpretation by postmortem findings, the phenomena observed during surgical procedures, and the results of embryologic investigations, point to the conclusion that corresponding areas both for movements and sensations exist in the cerebral cortex of the human brain, though it is probable that their locations do not in all respects coincide with those characteristic of the monkey or even the ape brain. In the following diagrams (Figs. 226 and 227), the motor and sensor areas are at least provisionally located, in accordance with recent observations. They are represented as limited or bounded by a serrated line to indicate, as suggested by Mills, that they are not sharply defined, but that they interfuse or interdigitate with surrounding regions.

The Motor Area.—The general motor area is represented as occupying the pre-central convolution, the base of the first convolution, both on its lateral and mesial aspects, and the paracentral lobule. The exclusion of the post-central convolution from the motor area is in accordance with the embryologic researches of Flechsig, which indicate that the efferent fibers which compose the pyramidal tract come from the region anterior to the central fissure, and with the experiments of Sherrington and Grünbaum on the brain of the chimpanzee, which demonstrate that the post-central convolution is absolutely inexcitable to electric stimulation. It is quite probable that with the growth of the brain in size and complexity, the motor

FIG. 226.—THE AREAS AND CENTERS OF THE LATERAL ASPECT OF THE HUMAN HEMI-CEREBRUM.—(C. K. Mills.)

area has come to occupy a position somewhat farther forward in the human brain than in the monkey brain.

This general area is also capable of subdivision into areas of variable size, in which the movements of the face and associated structures, the head and eyes, the arm, trunk, and leg, are represented. The sequence of their representation from below upward is similar to that observed in the monkey and chimpanzee. A *localized irritative lesion* of any one of these areas gives rise to convulsive movements of the muscles of the opposite side of the body, similar in character to those resulting from electric stimulation of the corresponding areas of the monkey and ape brains. *Destruction* of these areas from the

growth of tumors, softening, etc., is followed by paralysis of the muscles. Electric stimulation of the human brain for the purpose of localizing obscure irritative lesions prior to surgical procedures on the brain gives rise to the same convulsive movements.

The Sensor Areas.—The sensor areas occupy regions corresponding in a general way with those of the monkey brain.

The *cutaneous and muscle sense areas* have been assigned to the post-central, a portion of the superior and inferior parietal convolutions on the lateral aspect, and to portions of the frontal convolution and of the gyrus fornicatus on the mesial aspect. It is also probable that the tactile (cutaneous) area may be assigned, though in less

FIG. 227.—THE AREAS AND CENTERS OF THE MESIAL ASPECT OF THE HUMAN HEMI-CEREBRUM.—(C. K. Mills.)

degree, to the pre-central convolution, the general motor area. This is in accordance with the embryologic investigations of Flechsig, who concludes that the entire Rolandic region is to be regarded as sensor as well as motor in function, and names it the area of body feelings, or the somesthetic area.

The clinical and postmortem evidence as to the extent of the area of tactile sensibility and its coincidence with the motor area is somewhat contradictory, and in some respects apparently in opposition to the view of Flechsig. Thus, Dr. C. K. Mills, whose skill in interpreting the phenomena of disease is well known, states in this connection in his work on nervous diseases that "innumerable cases have been reported of lesions of the motor cortex without the slightest

impairment of sensibility." In several cases of excision of the human cortex in the Rolandic region by surgical operations careful studies of the patients failed to show any impairment of sensation. Other competent observers, however, have reported a number of cases in which anesthesia more or less pronounced and persistent has accompanied lesions of the motor area. The explanation of these contradictory observations is not apparent.

The *olfactory area* has been assigned to the uncinate convolution, the anterior part of the gyrus fornicatus, and the posterior part of the base of the frontal lobe. Lesions in this region are frequently accompanied by subjective olfactory sensations.

The *gustatory area* has been assigned to the fourth temporal convolution.

The *auditory area* has been assigned to the posterior portion of the superior temporal convolution and to the retro-insular convolutions, the island of Reil. Unilateral destruction of this region is followed by only a partial loss of hearing in the opposite ear (owing to the partial decussation of the cochlear nerve), which, however, may be recovered from after a time, owing probably to a compensatory activity of the insular convolutions. Bilateral disease of this region is followed by complete deafness. Within this area there is a smaller region, disease of which is accompanied by *word-deafness* only, the patient being unable to distinguish the tone intervals between words and syllables and therefore hearing only confused noises. Object hearing was also a separate area of representation.

The *visual area* has been assigned to a triangular shaped area on the mesial surface of the occipital lobe, which includes the gray matter above and below the calcarine fissure (the cuneus and upper part of the lingual lobe), and to the gray matter of the first occipital convolution on the lateral aspect of the occipital lobe. Focal lesions of this area on one side are followed by lateral homonymous hemianopsia, which, however, does not involve, as a rule, the fovea or macula. It is, therefore, the area of homonymous half-retinal representation. The location of the area for macular or central vision is uncertain. Henschen locates it in the anterior part of the area near the extremity of the calcarine fissure, and asserts that in each area both maculæ are represented. From experiments made on monkeys Schäfer locates it in the same region. Beyond the limits of this visual area and on the lateral aspect of the parietal lobe there is a region (the supra-marginal convolution and angular gyrus) in which impressions of words and letters seen have their representation. Destruction of this area by diseases is followed by *word-* and perhaps *letter-blindness*, the patient being unable to recognize words and letters seen because of failure to revive the memory images of words and letters. The areas for visual sensations and optic memory

pictures are therefore separate, a fact which has led to a division of the visual area into a lower and a higher area.

It was stated in a previous paragraph that electric stimulation of the sensor areas of the monkey brain is attended by certain motor reactions which vary with the area stimulated. Corresponding areas are believed to be present in the human brain and that their stimulation would be followed by similar motor reactions. Their location is shown in Figs. 226 and 227, and named visual, auditory, olfactory, and gustatory motor.

The *stereognostic area* or *area of stereognostic perception*, by which objects are recognized through their form independent of vision and by the sense of touch alone, has been located in the superior parietal convolution and the precuneus (Mills). The existence of such an area is rendered probable by the fact that cases have been recorded in which there was a loss of this power (astereognosis) unaccompanied by either sensor or motor disturbances. Postmortem investigations showed that in these cases there was a destruction of the superior parietal convolution.

Equilibratory, intonation, and orientation areas have been previously located in the sphenotemporal lobe.

Language.—The succession of motor acts by which ideas are expressed, is known as language, which may be divided into (1) articulate or spoken, and (2) written.

The expression of ideas both by words and signs depends primarily on the power of reviving the images or memories of words and letters heard and seen; and secondarily on the power of reviving the images or memories of the muscle movements which were previously employed in an effort to imitate or reproduce the words (speech) or the verbal signs (writing).

Clinico-pathologic investigations have shown that words and letters heard and seen have areas of representation in the cortex, the former in the general auditory area, the latter in the supra-marginal convolution and angular gyrus (Fig. 226). Destruction of these areas is followed by *word-deafness* and *word-blindness* respectively. The same methods of investigation have shown that the muscle movements employed to reproduce the words and the verbal signs also have areas of representation in the cortex; the former in the *third frontal convolution* (Fig. 227), and probably in the adjacent region, the island of Reil, on the left side in the great majority of people; the latter in front of the arm region of the general motor area. Destruction of these areas is followed in the first instance by a loss of the power of executing the movements of the muscles employed in speech, and in the second instance, of those employed in writing.

These different areas are connected with one another by association fibers, and, taken collectively, constitute the language zone. Their situation and relations are shown in Fig. 228. In this figure

the dotted lines coming from the ear (a) and the eye (v) represent the auditory and visual tracts through which nerve impulses pass to the auditory (A) and the visual centers (V) respectively. Similar lines coming from the muscles involved in speech and writing might

FIG. 228.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATION OF THE CENTERS OF LANGUAGE AND THEIR PRINCIPAL ASSOCIATIONS. A. Auditory center. V. Visual center. M. Motor speech center. E. Motor writing center. O O. Intellectual center.—(After Grasset.)

also be represented to indicate the paths of the nerve impulses to the motor speech (M) and the motor writing center (E). The continuous lines on the surface of the cortex represent nerve-fibers which associate the auditory and visual centers with the speech and writing centers and with higher psychic centers (O O) as well. The dotted lines coming from the speech and writing centers represent the tracts through which nerve impulses pass to the muscle of the larynx, tongue, mouth, and lips, and to the muscles of the hand. The anatomic and physiologic association of the various areas is essential to the registration of the impressions made on the ear and eye and for the expression of the ideas evolved from them by words (speech) and signs (writing). Their collective action is essential to the acquisition of language. Destruction of any part of this cerebral mechanism is attended by an impairment or a total loss either in the power of obtaining auditory images of words heard and visual images of words seen, or in the power of expressing ideas by speech and writing.

To this pathologic condition the term *aphasia* has been given.

Aphasia.—It was discovered by Bouillaud that a destructive lesion of the third frontal convolution on the left side was accompanied by a partial or complete loss of the faculty of articulate speech,

the power to express ideas with words. To this condition the term *aphasia* was given. Though of limited application etymologically, the word is now employed in a wider sense to signify "partial or complete loss of the power of expression or comprehension of the conventional signs of language," words either spoken or written, due to lesions of different portions of the cortex, and especially on the left side.

Aphasias are of many degrees and kinds, though they may be included in the two general divisions, *motor* and *sensor*.

Motor aphasia may be either ataxic or agraphic. In *ataxic* aphasia the patient is unable to express or communicate his thoughts by spoken words, owing to an inability to execute those movements of the mouth, tongue, etc., necessary for speech without there being any paralysis of these muscles. The lesion is usually in the third frontal convolution and most frequently associated with right hemiplegia. In *agraphic* aphasia the patient is unable to communicate his ideas by writing through an inability to execute the necessary movements, though retaining his mental processes. In this form of aphasia the lesion is in the writing area. These two forms of motor aphasia are not infrequently associated.

Sensor aphasia or amnesia may be either visual or auditory. In *visual* aphasia or amnesia the patient is unable to recognize a letter or word, printed or written (though capable of seeing other objects), a condition known as *letter-* or *word-blindness*. It is usually associated with lesions in the neighborhood of the supra-marginal convolution. In *auditory* aphasia or amnesia the patient cannot understand articulate or vocal speech, though capable of hearing and understanding other sounds, through an inability to distinguish tone intervals of words and letters—a condition known as *word-deafness*. It is associated with lesions of the auditory area.

Paraphasia is an inability to recall the proper words to associate with ideas and necessary to their expression.

Concept aphasia is the inability to recall the names of objects. It is associated with lesions of the cortex of the mid-temporal or third temporal convolution (Mills). This area is known as the *concept* or *naming* area.

Bilateral Representation.—Though highly specialized movements, such as those performed by the arms and hands, legs and feet, have their areas of representation on one side of the cerebrum only, and that, opposite to the side of the movement, less highly specialized movements, such as the masticatory, phonatory, respiratory, and various trunkal movements, which require for their performance the coöperation of muscles on both sides of the body, have their areas of representation on both sides of the cerebrum; the area of either side exciting to action the muscles on both sides of the body.

In the case of specialized movements the representation is *unilateral*; in the case of the more general movements the representation is *bilateral*.

FIG. 229.—DIAGRAMS TO SHOW THE POSITION AND THE RELATION OF THE ASSOCIATION AND PROJECTION AREAS. THE PROJECTION AREAS ARE DOTTED.—(After Flechsig.)

Association Centers.—The sensor and motor areas to which specific functions have been assigned do not constitute more than one-third of the total cerebral cortex. There yet remain large

regions to which it has not been possible to assign specific functions based on physiologic experiments. Three or four such regions separated by the sensor and motor centers are to be recognized on the lateral and mesial aspects of the hemisphere. In Fig. 229 the location, extent, and names of these regions are represented. The fibers which are found in these regions belong almost exclusively to the association system, and become medullated at a later period than do the fibers of the projection system; moreover, from the method of their medullization it would appear that many of these fibers grow out directly from the sensor centers into these regions and become related to the nerve-cells of their convolutions, while others grow out from adjacent as well as distant convolutions. From histologic and pathologic evidence these regions were termed by Flechsig association centers or areas, implying the idea that through the intervention of their cell mechanisms the sense areas are indirectly associated anatomically and physiologically, and together constitute a mechanism by which sensations are associated and elaborated into concrete forms of knowledge or related to definite forms of movement.

It has been assumed by Flechsig that the *frontal association* center, from its connections with the sensor and motor areas of the Rolandic region, the olfactory, and perhaps other regions, is engaged in associating and registering body sensations and volitional acts, and that the knowledge thus gained has reference largely to the personality of the individual; that the *parieto-occipital* association area, from its relation to the visual, auditory, and tactile sense areas, is engaged in associating and registering visual, auditory, and tactile sensations, and that the knowledge thus gained has reference mainly to the external world. These assumptions in a general way are supported by the phenomena of disease. In certain lesions of the frontal lobe the symptoms indicate a loss or change of ideas regarding personality rather than of the objective world, while the reverse is true in disease of the parieto-occipital lobe.

CHAPTER XX.

THE CEREBELLUM.

The cerebellum is situated in the inferior fossæ of the occipital bone, beneath the posterior lobes of the cerebrum, from which it is separated by the tentorium cerebelli, a semilunar fold of the dura mater. It is partially divided into hemispheres by a longitudinal fissure, more apparent on the inferior surface, though united by a central lobe, the vermiform process. Each hemisphere is connected with the cerebrum, the pons, medulla and spinal cord by three bundles of nerve-fibers known respectively as the *superior*, *middle*, and *inferior peduncles*. The surface of the cerebellum presents a series of lobes and fissures of which the former have received more or less fanciful names. A section of the cerebellum shows that it is composed of gray matter externally and white matter internally. The general appearance presented on section is shown in Fig. 230.

Structure of the Gray Matter.—The gray matter consists mainly of nerve-cells of varying size and shape, which are arranged in two layers: viz., an outer or molecular and an inner or granular.

The molecular layer consists of stellate and multipolar cells of small size, from which dendrites and axons pass horizontally and vertically. The granular layer consists, as its name implies, of granular shaped cells and large stellate cells. These cells are characterized by the possession of dendrites and axons, the course and relation of which have not been clearly determined.

The inner border of the molecular layer presents a series of large cells originally described by Purkinje and known by his name. From the outer end of the cell-body one or more dendrites emerge which soon divide and subdivide into a number of branches which pass toward the cerebellar surface. The general arrangement of these dendrites gives to the entire cell a tree-like appearance (Fig. 231). From the inner end of the cell an axon emerges which passes centrally into the white matter.

Structure of the White Matter.—The white matter consists of nerve-fibers which are arranged in association and projection systems.

The Association System.—The fibers which compose this system are of variable lengths and unite adjacent as well as distant regions of the cerebellar cortex. They doubtless associate them both anatomically and physiologically.

The Projection System.—The fibers composing this system connect the cerebellar cortex with certain structures in the cerebrum, pons, medulla, and spinal cord. They may be divided into efferent and afferent systems.

The *efferent* fibers have their origin in the cells of Purkinje and the dentate nucleus. Some of these fibers emerge from the cerebellum in the superior peduncles through which they pass toward and beneath the corpora quadrigemina to terminate around the cells of the red nucleus. As they approach this nucleus some of the fibers cross the median line and decussate with those coming from the opposite side, while others pursue a straight direction, terminating on the same side. Through the intervention of fibers which arise from the red nucleus and ascend to the cerebral cortex, the cortex is thus connected with both sides of the cerebellum, though chiefly with the opposite side.

Efferent fibers also leave the cerebellum by the middle peduncle and pass directly to the *nucleus pontis*, around the cells of which their terminals arborize. Efferent fibers also descend the inferior peduncles and constitute the tract known as the Löwenthal and Marchi tract, situated in the antero-lateral region of the spinal cord in its upper part.

The *afferent* fibers come from a variety of sources. Those found in the superior peduncles come from the red nucleus; those in the middle peduncles from the nucleus pontis of the opposite side, having

FIG. 230.—VIEW OF CEREBELLUM IN SECTION, AND OF FOURTH VENTRICLE, WITH THE NEIGHBORING PARTS.—(From *Sappey*.) 1. Median groove fourth ventricle, ending below in the calamus scriptorius, with the longitudinal eminences formed by the fasciculi teretes, one on each side. 2. The same groove, at the place where the white streaks of the auditory nerve emerge from it to cross the floor of the ventricle. 3. Inferior peduncle of the cerebellum, formed by the restiform body. 4. Posterior pyramid; above this is the calamus scriptorius. 5, 5. Superior peduncle of cerebellum, or processus e cerebello ad testes. 6, 6. Fillet to the side of the crura cerebri. 7, 7. Lateral grooves of the crura cerebri. 8. Corpora quadrigemina.—(After *Hirschfeld and Leveille*.)

crossed or decussated at the raphé near the anterior surface of the pons; those contained in the inferior peduncles are the most abundant and important, and are represented by (1) the direct cerebellar tract, which terminates in the superior vermis after decussation; (2) the anterior and posterior arcuate fibers, the former coming from the gracile and cuneate nuclei of the opposite side, the latter from the same side, which also pass to the superior vermis; (3) the acustico-cerebellar tract, composed of fibers the axons of the sensory end nuclei (Deiters) of the vestibular portion of the auditory nerve. It is probable that all these fibers decussate prior to their final termination.

FIG. 231.—SECTION OF CEREBELLAR CORTEX. A. Outer or molecular layer. B. Inner or granular layer. C. White matter. *a*. Cell of Purkinje. *b*. Small cells of inner layer. *c*. Dendrites of these cells. *d*. A similar cell lying in the white matter.

The cerebellum through this system of efferent and afferent fibers is brought into relation with many different regions of the cerebrum, pons, medulla, and spinal cord. Each half of the cerebellum is connected with the foregoing structures of the same side, but more especially of the opposite side.

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE CEREBELLUM.

From the observations of the results of experimental lesions, from analysis of clinico-pathologic facts, and from its comparative anatomic development in different animals, the deduction has been drawn that the cerebellum coördinates and harmonizes the action of those muscles the activities of which are necessary

to the maintenance of body equilibrium both during station and progression.

By *equilibrium* of the body is understood a condition which may be maintained for a variable length of time without displacement, and is possible only so long as a line passing through the center of gravity falls within the base of support. The support offered by the earth to the feet neutralizes and counteracts the force of gravity. In station, when the body is in the erect or military position, the arms by the side, the center of gravity lies between the sacrum and the last lumbar vertebra, and the line of gravity falls between the feet and within the base of support. The entire skeleton for the time being is rendered fixed and rigid at all its joints by the combined action of the

muscles connected with it. That this position may be maintained all the different groups of antagonistic but coöperative muscles must be accurately coördinated in their actions. Any failure in this respect is at once attended by a disturbance of the equilibrium and displacement.

In progression, walking, running, dancing, etc., the body is translated from point to point by the alternate action of the legs. Whether the direction of the translation be linear or curvilinear, as the legs change their position from moment to moment, the center of gravity also changes, and at once the equilibrium is menaced. If it is to be maintained and displacement prevented there must be a prompt readjustment in the relation of all parts of the body so that the line of gravity falls again within the base of support. The more complicated the movements of progression, or the narrower the base of support, the greater is the danger to the equilibrium, and hence the necessity for rapid and compensatory changes in coördinated muscle activity. All movements of this character, in man at least, are primarily volitional and require for their performance the constant exercise of the attention. With frequent repetition they gradually come to be performed independently of consciousness and fall into the category of secondary or acquired reflexes.

Though coördinating power is exhibited by the spinal cord, medulla, and basal ganglia, it is only in the cerebellum that this power attains its highest development and differentiation. To it is assigned the power of selecting and grouping muscles, not in any restricted part, but in all parts of the body, and coördinating their actions in such a manner as to preserve the equilibrium.

The Results of Experimental Lesions.—If the cerebellum in its totality, coördinates and harmonizes the action of the muscles on the opposite sides of the body, any derangement of its structure or its connections with the cord, medulla, pons, or basal ganglia should at once be followed by incoördination of muscles and a want of harmony in their action. Experimental lesions of the cerebellum are attended by such results. The phenomena observed are many and complex. They differ in extent and character in different animals and in accordance with the extent and location of the lesion, though the note of incoördination runs through them all.

Removal of one lateral half of the cerebellum in the dog is followed by an inability to maintain the equilibrium necessary to the erect position. On attempting to stand, the animal at once falls toward the side of the lesion, the muscles of which at the same time contract and give to the body a distinctly curved condition (Fig. 232). The anterior limbs are extended to the opposite side. On making efforts to regain the standing position, the animal may roll over around the long axis of its body. Conjugate deviation of the eyes is frequently observed as well as nystagmus.

After a few days the symptoms partially subside and the animal acquires the power of sitting on the abdomen when the anterior limbs are widely extended (Fig. 233). As the days go by the improvement continues, and the animal recovers the power of walking, though each step is attended with tremor and oscillations of the body. Any

FIG. 232.—ATTITUDE ASSUMED AFTER DESTRUCTION OF THE LEFT HALF OF THE CEREBELLUM.—(*Morat and Doyen, after Thomas.*)

change in the center of gravity such as results when one leg is lifted may result in a fall toward the side of the lesion, owing to an inability to promptly bring about the necessary compensatory muscle actions. With time the animal continues to improve in its power of adjustment, though it never completely recovers it. Move-

FIG. 233.—ATTITUDE IN REPOSE AFTER THE COMPLETE REMOVAL OF THE CEREBELLUM BUT DURING THE PERIOD OF RESTORATION OF FUNCTION.—(*Morat and Doyen, after Thomas.*)

ments of progression are apt to be characterized by stiffness and accompanied by tremor suggestive of volitional efforts.

Total removal of the cerebellum is followed by a different train of symptoms. The extensor muscles apparently preponderate in their action, for the limbs are extended and abducted, the head and neck are retracted, and opisthotonos is established. In time these effects also partially subside, though all attempts at walking are permanently

accompanied by tremor and oscillations. The characteristic effect which follows section of the peduncles is again incoördination, manifesting itself in deviation of the head, eyes, inability to walk, tremor on exertion, etc. The effects vary, however, according to the peduncle divided. Section of the middle peduncle gives rise to the most pronounced effects. The head and the anterior part of the body are at once drawn toward the pelvis on the side of the section.

A voluntary effort on the part of the animal causes it to lose all control of its muscles and the body is rotated in the direction of its longitudinal axis from 40 to 60 times a minute before it comes to rest. According as the lesion is made from behind or before, the rotation is from or to the side of the section. In time these symptoms subside, though the animal never completely recovers.

The partial recovery of the power of coördination, observed after removal of a portion or the whole of the cerebellum, indicates that the centers in the cord, medulla, pons, and cerebrum endowed with corresponding though less developed power, develop compensatory activity and acquire to some extent the capabilities of the cerebellum itself (Fig. 234).

Clinico-pathologic facts partly corroborate the results of physiologic investigations. In various forms of uncomplicated cerebellar disease, vertigo, tremor on making voluntary efforts, difficulty in maintaining the erect position, unsteadiness in walking, opisthotonos, pleurothotonos, are among the symptoms generally observed.

Comparative anatomic investigations reveal a remarkable correspondence between the development of the cerebellum and the complexity of the movements exhibited by animals. In

FIG. 234.—PROGRESSION AFTER DESTRUCTION OF THE VERMIS.—(Morat and Doyen, after Thomas.)

those animals whose movements are complex and require for their performance the coöperation of many groups of muscles the cerebellum attains a much greater development in reference to the rest of the brain than in animals whose movements are relatively simple in character. This relative increase in the development of the cerebellum is found in many animals, such as the kangaroo, the shark, the swallow, and the predaceous birds generally.

The Coördinating Mechanism.—Though it is not known how the cerebellum selects and coördinates groups of muscles for the performance of any complex movement, it is known that its activity is largely reflex in origin and excited by impulses reflected to it from peripheral organs. In this as in other forms of reflex activity the mechanism involves (1) afferent nerves, *e. g.*, cutaneous, muscle, optic, and vestibular, and their related end-organs, tactile corpuscles, muscle spindles, retina, and semicircular canals, all indirectly connected with (2) the cerebellar centers; (3) efferent nerves indirectly

connected with (4) the general musculature of the body. Both station and progression are directly dependent on the development and transmission of afferent impulses from the previously mentioned peripheral sense-organs to the cerebellum. Tactile, muscle, visual, and labyrinthine impressions and sensations not only coöperate in the development and organization of the motor adjustments necessary to the maintenance of the equilibrium and locomotive coördination, but even after their organization they are necessary to the excitation of cerebellar activity. The manner in which they lead to the development of this capability on the part of the cerebellum is conjectural. Their ever-present influence is shown by the effects which follow their removal, as the following facts indicate.

The prevention of the development of *tactile* impulses by freezing or anesthetizing the soles of the feet, and the blocking of normally developed impulses through destruction of afferent pathways in diseases of the spinal cord lead at once to marked impairment in the coördinating power. The removal of the skin from the hind legs of the frog, previously deprived of its cerebrum, destroys its coördinating power, which it would otherwise possess in a high degree.

The blocking in consequence of destructive lesions of the spinal cord, of the impulses, which come from the *muscles, tendons*, etc., and which inform us of the activity and the degree of activity of our muscles, the location of the limbs, the amount of effort necessary to produce a given movement, etc., also gives rise to much incoördination. A blocking of both tactile and muscle impulses frequently exists in degeneration or sclerosis of the posterior columns of the spinal cord. The coördinating power is so much impaired in this disease that the patient is unable to maintain, without strained effort, the erect position and especially if the directive power of the eyes be removed by closure of the lids. Walking becomes extremely difficult; the gait is irregular and jerky, and equilibrium is maintained only by keeping the eyes fixed on the ground in front and by artificially increasing the basis of support by the use of canes.

An interference with the development of the customary *visual* impressions which in a measure maintain the sense of relation of the individual to surrounding objects also gives rise to equilibratory disturbances. A rapid change in the relation of the individual to surrounding objects or the reverse; a change in the direction of one optic axis from the use of a prism or from paralysis of an eye muscle; the destruction of an eye;—these and similar conditions frequently give rise to such marked disturbances of the equilibratory power that displacement is difficult to prevent.

An interference with the development of the so-called *labyrinthine* impressions by destruction of the semicircular canals gives rise to the most remarkable disturbances in this respect. Section of one

horizontal canal* in the pigeon is followed by oscillations of the head in a horizontal plane around a vertical axis. Bilateral section so increases these oscillations that the pigeon is unable to maintain equilibrium and forced to fall and turn continuously around the vertical axis. Bilateral section of the posterior vertical canals gives rise to oscillations around a horizontal axis which frequently become so exaggerated as to eventuate in the turning of backward somersaults, head over heels. Similar phenomena follow division of the superior vertical canals.

Bilateral destruction of both sets of canals is attended by extraordinary disturbances in the equilibrium. From the moment of the operation the animal, the pigeon, loses all control of its motor mechanisms. It can neither maintain a fixed attitude nor execute orderly movements of progression; its activity, continuous and uncontrollable, is characterized by spinning around a vertical axis, turning somersaults, dashing itself against surrounding objects until life is endangered. If the animal be protected from injury, these disturbances gradually subside, and in the course of a few months the equilibratory power is so far regained that standing and walking at least become possible. In this condition, however, the coördinating power is directly dependent on visual impulses, for with the closure of the eyes all the previous motor disturbances at once recur. These and similar facts indicate that the semicircular canals are the peripheral sense-organs from which come the nerve impulses most essential to the excitation of the cerebellar coördinative centers in their control of equilibrium and of progression.

The cerebellum may therefore be regarded as the essential, most highly differentiated portion of the coördinating mechanism concerned in the maintenance of equilibrium, during both station and progression. The manner in which the cerebellum accomplishes this result is unknown, though it is certain, from the foregoing facts, that its special mode of activity is dependent on the excitatory action of nerve impulses reflected from a variety of peripheral sense-organs.

* The physiologic anatomy of the semicircular canals is described in the chapter devoted to the ear, to which the reader is referred.

CHAPTER XXI.

THE CRANIAL NERVES.

The nerve-trunks which serve as channels of communication between the encephalon and the structures of the head, the face, and in part the organs of the thorax and abdomen, pass through foramina in the walls of the cranium, and for this reason are termed cranial nerves.

According to the classification now generally adopted, there are twelve cranial nerves on either side of the median line, which, enumerated from before backward, are as follows (Fig. 235):

First or Olfactory.
Second or Optic.
Third or Oculo-motor.
Fourth or Patheticus.
Fifth or Trigeminal.
Sixth or Abducens.

Seventh or Facial.
Eighth or Auditory.
Ninth or Glosso-pharyngeal.
Tenth or Pneumogastric or Vagus.
Eleventh or Spinal Accessory.
Twelfth or Hypoglossal.

The cranial nerves may be classified physiologically in accordance with their functional manifestations into three groups, viz.:

1. Nerves of Special Sense: *e. g.*, Olfactory, Optic, Auditory, Gustatory (Glosso-pharyngeal).
2. Nerves of General Sensibility: *e. g.*, Large root of the Trigeminal, Glosso-pharyngeal, and Pneumogastric.
3. Nerves of Motion: *e. g.*, Oculo-motor, Patheticus, the small root of the Trigeminal, Facial, Spinal Accessory, and Hypoglossal.

Though this classification in the main holds true, it must be borne in mind that modern investigations have demonstrated that the glosso-pharyngeal and pneumogastric nerves contain even at their junction with the medulla oblongata a number of efferent or motor fibers, and to this extent are mixed nerves.

The Origins of the Cranial Nerves.—In accordance with modern views as to the origins of nerves in general, it may be stated that—

The *nerves of special sense* have their origin respectively in the neuro-epithelial cells in the mucous membrane of the olfactory region of the nose, in the ganglion cells of the retina, in the cells of the spiral ganglion of the cochlea and the ganglion of Scarpa, and in the cells of the petrous and jugular ganglia. From the cells of these ganglia dendrites pass peripherally to become associated with specialized end-organs, while axons pass centrally in well-defined bundles to

become related by means of their end-tufts with primary basal ganglia.

The nerves of general sensibility have their origin in the ganglia on their trunks, and in this respect resemble the spinal nerves. From the ganglion cell there emerges a short axon process which soon divides into a central and a peripheral branch. The former passes toward and into the gray matter located beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle, where its end-tufts arborize about nerve-cells. The latter (the peripheral branch) passes toward the general periphery to be distributed to skin and mucous membranes (Fig. 236).

The nerves of motion have their origin in the nerve-cells in the gray matter beneath the aqueduct of Sylvius and beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle (Fig. 237). The axons emerging from these cells course peripherally to be distributed to skeletal muscles. In some of the motor nerves, and in some sensory nerves as well, there are to be found efferent fibers of smaller size which have a similar origin and which become related through the intervention of sympathetic ganglia (peripheral neurons) with visceral muscles and glands. These nerves have been termed autonomic nerves.

The Cerebral Connections of the Cranial Nerves.—Each of these three groups of cranial nerves has special connections with the cerebral cortex.

The nerves of special sense for the most part terminate in primary basal ganglia, around the cells of which their central end-tufts arborize. From these cells axons arise which pass upward and directly or indirectly come into physiologic relation with sensor nerve-cells in the cerebral cortex.

The nerves of general sensibility terminate in the gray matter beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle, around the nerve-cells of which their end-tufts arborize. These groups of nerve-cells are

FIG. 235.—SUPERFICIAL ORIGIN OF THE CRANIAL NERVES FROM THE BASE OF THE ENCEPHALON. 1. Olfactory. 2. Optic. 3. Motor oculi. 4. Patheticus. 5. Trigeminal. 6. Abducens. 7. Facial. 7'. Nerve of Wrisberg. 8. Auditory. 9. Glossopharyngeal. 10. Pneumogastric. 11. Spinal accessory. 12. Hypoglossal.

known as sensor end-nuclei. Though once regarded as the centers of origin of the sensor nerves, they are now regarded as the centers of origin of axons which pass upward to the cortex of the cerebrum, where they also come into physiologic relation with sensor nerve-cells.

FIG. 236.—GANGLIA OF ORIGIN OF THE SENSOR CRANIAL NERVES. 1. Trigeminal (ganglion of Gasser). 2. Nerve of Wrisberg. 3. Auditory (ganglion of Scarpa). 4. Glossopharyngeal (ganglion of Andersch). 5. Pneumogastric (ganglion plexiformis).—(After Morat and Doyon.)

FIG. 237.—NUCLEI OF ORIGIN OF THE MOTOR CRANIAL NERVES. 1. Motor oculi. 2. Patheticus. 3. Motor root of the trigeminal. 4. Abducens. 5. Facial. 6. Mixed nucleus for efferent fibers of the glossopharyngeal vagus and spinal accessory. 7. Hypoglossus. 8. Spinal accessory. 9. Spinal nerves.—(After Morat and Doyon.)

The axons in both of these classes of nerves thus originate in the cells of the central nerve system and continue upward to the cerebrum, the primary afferent path.

The motor nerves which have their origin in the cells of the gray matter beneath the aqueduct of Sylvius and beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle are in physiologic relation with nerve-cells in the

motor region of the cortex through descending axons contained in the pyramidal tract. The end-tufts of these axons arborize around the nerve-cells. The efferent path beginning in the cerebral cortex is thus continued by the motor nerves to the general periphery.

The three groups of nerves, those of special sense, of general sensibility, and the motor nerves, are neurons of the first order; the nerve-cells and fibers which constitute the cerebral connections are neurons of the second order. It is possible that the sensor cells in the cerebral cortex are neurons of a third order.

FIRST PAIR. THE OLFACTORY.

The first cranial nerve, the olfactory, is situated in the upper third of the nasal fossa, in the *regio olfactoria*. It consists of from 20 to 30 branches, the fibers of which are non-medullated.

Origin.—The olfactory nerve is composed of centrally coursing axons which have their origin in the central ends of bipolar, rod-shaped, or spindle-shaped nerve-cells interspersed among the epithelial cells covering the mucous membrane in the *regio olfactoria*; the peripheral ends of these cells give off a number of dendrites which are spread out to form a delicate feltwork over the surface of the mucous membrane. From their origin the axons gradually converge to form bundles which ascend to the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, through the foramina of which they pass to become related by their end-tufts with structures in the gray matter of the olfactory bulb (Fig. 238).

Cortical Connections.

—The olfactory bulb and olfactory tract, formerly called the olfactory nerve, are portions of the cerebrum (the olfactory lobe) which arise embryologically by a protrusion of the walls of the cerebral cavity. The bulb is oval-shaped

FIG. 238.—THE RELATION OF THE OLFACTORY NERVES TO THE OLFACTORY TRACT. 1. Olfactory nerve-cell. 2. Axon process. 3. Epithelial cells. 4. Glomerulus. 5. Mitral cells. 6. Centrally coursing axons of the olfactory tract.

and consists of both gray and white matter. It rests on the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone and is embraced by the olfactory nerves. As seen on sagittal section, there is just beneath the surface a layer of large pyramidal and spindle-shaped cells (termed also mitral cells), each provided with an apical and two lateral dendrites. The apical dendrite passes toward the surface and ends in a brush- or basket-like expansion which interlaces with the end-tufts of the olfactory nerves, forming what are known as the olfactory glomerules. The lateral dendrites end free.

FIG. 239.—OLFACTORY LOBE OF THE HUMAN BRAIN.—*Bu.* Olfactory bulb. *T.* Tract. *Tr.o.* Trigone. *R.* Rostrum of corpus callosum. *p.* Peduncle of corpus callosum, passing into *G.s.*, gyrus subcallosus (diagonal tract, Broca). *Br.* Broca's area. *F.p.* Fissura prima. *F.s.* Fissura serotina. *C.a.* Position of anterior commissure. *L.t.* Lamina terminalis. *Ch.* Optic chiasma. *T.o.* Optic tract. *p.olf.* Posterior olfactory lobule (or anterior perforated space). *m.r.* Mesial root. *l.r.* Lateral root of tract.—(*His.*)—(After *Quain.*)

The axons of the pyramidal cells pass toward the center of the bulb and bend at right angles, after which they pursue a horizontal direction toward and into the olfactory tract. This tract is about five centimeters in length, prismatic in shape on cross-section and divisible into a ventral and a dorsal portion. It emerges from the posterior extremity of the bulb, passes backward to the posterior part of the anterior lobe, where it divides into three roots: viz., a lateral or external, a mesial or internal, a middle or dorsal. The

fibers of the lateral and mesial roots are derived almost exclusively from the ventral portion of the tract, the fibers of which come from the mitral cells in the bulb. The lateral root-fibers pass outward into the fossa of Sylvius and come into relation with nerve-cells in the inferior extremity of the gyrus hippocampus and the gyrus uncinatus. The mesial fibers pass inward and come into relation with nerve-cells in the pre-callosal part at least of the gyrus fornicatus. The fibers thus far considered are undoubtedly true olfactory fibers, pursuing

a centripetal direction, carrying nerve impulses from the olfactory cells to the cerebrum (Fig. 239).

Histologic and embryologic methods of research have shown that some of the fibers in the olfactory tract are centrifugal in direction. They originate in the olfactory cortical areas, pass toward the periphery as far as the anterior commissure, where they cross to become the dorsal root, enter the olfactory tract, and finally terminate in the bulb. This tract serves to connect the cortex with the bulb of the opposite side, and carries impulses from the cortex to the bulb. The two opposite cerebral olfactory areas are also united by commissural fibers which decussate at the anterior commissure.

Functions.—The olfactory nerves, including the olfactory tract, are channels of communication between the olfactory region in the nose and the cerebral cortex. The stimulus to its excitation is the impact and chemic action of gaseous or volatile organic matter on the dendrites of the olfactory cells. The energy set free develops nerve impulses which, traveling through the entire olfactory tract to the cortex, evoke the sensation of odor. The sensitiveness of the olfactory end-organ to the action of many substances is remarkable, responding, for example, to the $\frac{1}{1,200,000}$ of a gram of oil of roses and to the $\frac{1}{2,760,000}$ of a gram of mercaptan.

Division or destruction of the olfactory path at any point is followed by an abolition of the sense of smell on the corresponding side. Destructive lesions of the hippocampal and uncinate gyri are followed by similar results.

SECOND PAIR. THE OPTIC.

The second cranial nerve, the optic, consists of centrally coursing axons of neurons, which connect the essential part of the organ of vision, the retina, with sensory end-nuclei or ganglia situated at the base of the cerebrum.

Origin.—The axons which constitute the optic nerve have their origin in the ganglionic cells in the anterior part of the retina. Through their dendrites these cells are brought into relation posteriorly with successive layers of cells which collectively constitute the retina. Though the retina is said to consist of ten or eleven layers, it may be reduced practically to three, viz. (Fig. 240):

1. The layer of visual cells.
2. The layer of bipolar cells.
3. The layer of ganglionic cells.

The visual cells present peripherally modified dendrites, known as the rods and cones; centrally they give off an axon which after a short course terminates in an end-tuft. The bipolar cells also possess dendrites and an axon; the former interlace with the end-

tufts of the visual cell axon, the latter with the dendrites of the ganglion cell. The retina may be regarded therefore as the peripheral end-organ in which the optic nerve originates. From their origin the axons turn backward, at the same time converging to form a distinct bundle which passes through the chorioid coat and sclera. After emerging from the eyeball the nerve-bundle (the optic nerve) passes backward as far as the sella turcica, traversing in its course the orbit cavity and the optic foramen. At the sella turcica there is a union and partial decussation in man and other mammals of the two nerves, forming the optic chiasm.

FIG. 240.—RETINAL CELLS. *s'*, *z'*. Visual cells with their peripheral terminations. *s*. Rods. *z*. Cones. *b*. Bipolar cells. *g*. Ganglion cells from which arise the axons of the optic nerve.

Decussation of the Optic Nerves.—The results of various methods of research would seem to indicate that the fibers from the nasal third of the retina of the left eye cross in the chiasm to unite with the fibers from the temporal two-thirds of the retina of the right eye. In a similar manner the fibers from the nasal third of the retina of the right eye cross in the chiasm and unite with the fibers from the temporal two-thirds of the retina of the left eye. Posterior to the chiasm the crossed and uncrossed fibers form the so-called optic tracts, which after winding around the crura cerebri enter the optic basal ganglia. Transection of the optic nerve shows that it is composed of an enormous number of non-medullated nerve-fibers, estimated by Salzer at from 450,000 to 800,000, enclosed in a sheath of the dura mater. In the central portion of the nerve there is seen a distinct bundle of fibers, triangular in shape, that come from the region of the macula lutea. At the chiasm this bundle of fibers undergoes a partial decussation similar to that of the fibers coming from the more peripheral portions of the retina. In the left optic tract, therefore, fibers from four different regions are to

be found: viz., the two-thirds of the temporal side of the left retina, the temporal half of the left macula, the nasal third of the right retina, and the nasal half of the right macula. Corresponding fibers are to be found in the right optic tract. As the optic tract passes around the crus cerebri it divides into a lateral or outer, and a mesial or inner bundle, which then terminate in the optic basal ganglia. The fibers of the lateral bundle are traceable into the external geniculate body (the pre-geniculum), the pulvinar of the optic thalamus, and the anterior quadrigeminal body (the pregeminum). These are in all probability the true visual fibers. The fibers of

the mesial bundle are traceable into the internal geniculate body (the post-geniculum) and the posterior quadrigeminal body (the post-geminum).

Cortical Connections.—After entering the basal ganglia the visual fibers terminate in end-tufts which arborize around nerve-cells. From these cells new axons arise which ascend through the posterior part of the internal capsule, at the same time curving backward to form the optic radiation of Gratiolet, and terminate finally around nerve-cells in the gray matter of the cuneus and in the gray matter bordering the calcarine fissure, both situated on the mesial aspect of the occipital lobe.

Centrifugal Fibers of the Optic Nerve.—All the fibers previously alluded to have been afferent or centripetal in direction; but the optic nerve also contains efferent or centrifugal fibers which come from nerve-cells in the basal ganglia and ramify around special cells, the amacrine cells, in the retina. Their function is unknown. It has been suggested that they regulate the vascular supply to the retina. Centrifugally coursing fibers also connect the visual areas of the cortex with the basal ganglia.

Functions.—The optic nerve apparatus in its entirety connects the visual cells of the retina with the cells of the cerebral cortex. The excitation of this apparatus evokes the sensation of light and its different qualities—colors.

The specific physiologic stimulus of the visual retinal cells is the impact of the undulations of the ether. The energy set free excites in the optic nerve, nerve impulses which are transmitted first to the optic ganglia and then to the cerebral cortex, where they evoke the sensations of light and color.

Iris Reflex.—The optic nerve also assists in the automatic regulation of the size of the pupil. Some of its fibers form the afferent

FIG. 241.—DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING LEFT HOMONYMOUS LATERAL HEMIANOPSIA FROM A LESION OF THE RIGHT OPTIC TRACT OR THE RIGHT CUNEUS. THE SHADED LINES IN THE VISUAL FIELDS INDICATE THE DARKENED AREA.

part of the reflex nerve mechanism by which the circular fibers of the iris (the sphincter pupillæ) are excited to contraction. These fibers arborize around nerve-cells in the anterior quadrigeminal body, from which axons descend in the posterior longitudinal bundle. In their course they give off collateral branches to the nuclei of origin of the oculo-motor nerve, from which nerve-fibers pass to the iris.

Light falling on the retina generates nerve impulses which, when conducted through the afferent and efferent pathways just mentioned, stimulate the circular fibers to contraction. The extent of the contraction will depend on the intensity of the light. In the absence of all light the muscle completely relaxes.

FIG. 242.—DIAGRAM TO SHOW THE EXISTENCE OF HEMIANOPIA.

Hemiopia and Hemianopsia.—Division of the optic nerve between the eyeball and the optic chiasm is followed by complete blindness in the eye of the corresponding side. Owing to the partial decussation of the fibers in the chiasm, division of an *optic tract* is followed by a loss of sight in the *outer two-thirds* of the eye of the same side and in the *inner third* of the eye of the opposite side. To this loss of visual power in the retina the term *hemiopia* is given. In consequence of this loss of visual power in the retina there is

a corresponding obscuration or total obliteration of nearly one-half of the visual field, to which the term *hemianopsia* is given. If, for example, the right optic tract is divided there will be hemiopia in the outer two-thirds of the right eye and the inner third of the left eye, with left lateral hemianopsia, and as the portions of the retina which are affected are associated in vision the loss of the visual fields is spoken of as homonymous hemianopsia (Fig. 241). A destructive lesion of the cerebral visual area, the cuneus and the adjacent gray matter on the right side, is also followed by left lateral hemianopsia.*

* It should be borne in mind that in both instances the retina itself is unaffected. The impact of light generates, as usual, nerve impulses which proceed as far backward as the point of division or destruction. In consequence those portions of the cerebral cortex stimulation of which evokes the sensation of light remain unaffected and the individual does not become aware through sensation, of the presence of a luminous body in the left side of the visual field.

The existence of an homonymous hemianopsia becomes evident when the individual is directed to focus the vision on an object placed directly in front and with its center in the median plane of the body, when if the lesion be on the right side, the left half of the object will be invisible. The reason for this will be apparent on reference to Fig. 242. All the light rays emanating from the left half of the object fall on the retina on the side of the injury, and hence there will be no sensation. If, however, the object be moved to the right without change in the position of the head, the entire object will be visible, as all the rays fall on the normal side. If, on the contrary, the object be moved to the left, it will be invisible for the opposite reason.

Hemianopsia may be the result of either destruction of the optic tract or of the cortical visual area. The seat of lesion in any given case is indicated by a peculiarity of the iris reflex pointed out by Wernicke, which will be referred to in connection with the consideration of the oculo-motor nerve.

THIRD PAIR. THE OCULO-MOTOR.

The third cranial nerve, the oculo-motor, consists of some 15,000 peripherally coursing nerve-fibers which serve to bring the nerve-cells from which they arise into relation with a large portion of the general musculature of the eye.

Origin.—The axons composing the third nerve arise from a series of seven or eight groups of nerve-cells, located in the gray matter beneath the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius. From each of these groups or nuclei, bundles of axons emerge, which after a short course unite to form the common trunk. The large majority of the fibers in the nerve come directly from the nuclei of the same side; the remainder come from a group of cells on the opposite side of the median line. There is thus a partial decussation of its fibers (Fig. 243).

The different groups of cells, the nuclei of origin, are arranged in a serial manner. The anatomic arrangement of these nuclei would indicate that each nucleus is related to an individual member of the eye-group of muscles. Clinical observation and the investigation of the results of pathologic processes have not only shown that this is the case, but have succeeded in locating the position of the nucleus for any given muscle. Though there is some difference of opinion in regard to the exact location of one or two of the nuclei, the tabulation subjoined is approximately correct.

Enumerating them from before backward, the nuclei occur in the following order:

1. The sphincter pupillæ.
2. The tensor chorioideæ (the accommodation nucleus).

3. The convergence nucleus, a common nucleus for the *conjoint* action of the two internal recti muscles.

4. The superior rectus.
5. The inferior rectus.
6. The levator palpebræ.
7. The inferior oblique.

FIG. 243.—DIAGRAMMATIC VIEW OF THE SITUATION AND RELATION OF THE NUCLEI OF ORIGIN OF THE OCULO-MOTOR AND PATHETICUS (TROCHLEARIS) NERVES. The oculo-motor nuclei consist of an anterior nucleus, the Edinger-Westphal nucleus (*a* and *b*), and a posterior nucleus; the posterior nucleus has a dorsal, a ventral, and a mesial portion; the decussation of fibers from the dorsal portion of the posterior nucleus is also shown. The decussation of the fibers of the fourth nerve is also represented.—(Edinger.)

Cortical Connections.—The oculo-motor nuclei are in histologic and physiologic relation with the motor area of the cerebrum. Nerve-cells in the cortex give off axons which, entering the pyramidal tract, descend through the internal capsule, and the crus cerebri, from which they cross to the opposite side. The end-tufts arborize around the nuclei of the oculo-motor nerve with the exception of the nucleus for the iris sphincter.

Distribution.—After their origin the axons converge to form a common trunk, which emerges from the base of the encephalon, on the inner side of the crus cerebri, in front of the pons Varolii. The nerve then passes forward through the sphenoid fissure into the orbit cavity, where it divides into a *superior* and an *inferior* branch. The former is distributed to the *superior rectus* and the *levator palpebræ* muscles; the latter is distributed to the *internal* and *inferior recti* and *inferior oblique* muscles (Fig. 244).

From the inferior branch a short bundle of fibers passes to the *ciliary* or *ophthalmic* ganglion, where they terminate, arborizing around the ganglion cells. These fibers are smaller in size than those constituting

the bulk of the nerve and belong to the system known as the autonomic. These cells give origin to new axons, the *ciliary nerves*, which enter the eyeball, pass forward between the sclera and chorioid coat, and terminate in the ciliary muscle and iris. The *ciliary nerves* are not portions of the third nerve proper, but periph-

eral sympathetic neurons. As the ciliary ganglion receives filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic and filaments which become a part of the trigeminal nerve, it is probable that the ciliary nerves contain not only motor, but vaso-motor and sensor fibers.

Properties.—*Stimulation* of the nerve near its exit from the encephalon is followed by contraction of the muscles to which it is distributed with the following results, viz.:

1. Diminution in the size of the pupil.
2. Accommodation of the eye for near vision.
3. Elevation of the upper eyelid.
4. Internal deviation and rotation upward and inward of the anterior pole of the eye, combined with a small amount of torsion toward the mesial line, due to preponderating action of the internal rectus and inferior oblique muscles.

Division of the nerve experimentally or compression from a pathologic lesion is followed by a relaxation of the muscles, with the following effects, viz.:

1. Dilatation of the pupil, the iris responding neither to light nor to efforts of accommodation.
2. Loss of the accommodative power.
3. Falling of the upper eyelid (ptosis).
4. External deviation and rotation downward and outward of the anterior pole of the eyeball combined with a small amount of torsion toward the mesial line due to the unopposed action of external rectus and the superior oblique muscles.
5. Double vision or diplopia. The image of the eye of the paralyzed side is projected to the opposite side of the true image and to the upper part of the visual field. Owing to the slight mesial torsion the false image is inclined away from the true image.
6. Immobility and slight protrusion of the eyeball.

Function.—The function of the third nerve is to transmit nerve impulses from the nuclei of origin to all the muscles of the eye except the external rectus and superior oblique and excite them to activity.

FIG. 244.—INTRA-ORBITAL PORTION OF THE THIRD NERVE. 1. Optic nerve. 2. Third nerve. 3. Superior branch. 4. Inferior branch. 5. Abducens. 6. Trifacial. 7. Ophthalmic branch divided. 8. Nasal branch. 9. Ciliary ganglion. 10. Motor branch to this ganglion from the inferior branch of the third nerve. 11. Sensory fibers. 12. Sympathetic fibers. 13. Ciliary nerves.—(Sappey.)

The majority of the ocular movements, the power of accommodation, the variations in the size of the pupil in accordance with variations in the intensity of the light, the power of convergence of the visual axes, are all excited by the transmission of nerve impulses by the constituent fibers of the nerve from their related nuclei. This is made evident by the effects which follow stimulation and division of the nerve or lesions of the nuclei themselves.

The central nuclei can be excited to activity (1) by nerve impulses descending the motor tract, from the cerebral cortex, (2) by nerve impulses coming through various afferent nerves. This holds true more especially for the sphincter pupillæ nucleus.

The Iris Reflex or the Pupillary Reflex.—These are terms applied to the variations in the size of the pupil that follow vari-

FIG. 245.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE STRUCTURES INVOLVED IN THE IRIS REFLEX.

ations in the intensity of the light. In the absence of light the pupil widely dilates, due largely to the relaxation of the *sphincter pupillæ* muscle and partly to a contraction of the radiating fibers of the iris which collectively constitute the *dilatator pupillæ* muscle. With the entrance of light into the eye, the pupil narrows in consequence of the contraction of the *sphincter pupillæ* caused by a stimulation of the peripheral end of the optic nerve, the degree of contraction depending within limits on the intensity of the light.

The action is a reflex one and the mechanism involved includes the retina, the optic nerve, the anterior quadrigeminal body, the third nerve, the ciliary nerves (the peripheral sympathetic neurons), and the sphincter pupillæ muscle. (Fig. 245) In this mechanism the optic nerve is the afferent path, the motor oculi the efferent path, and the anterior quadrigeminal body the intermediate center. These

facts are demonstrated by the entire loss of the reflex which follows division or destruction of any part of this arc. The anterior quadrigeminal body appears to be in relation through its axons and their collateral branches, with the *sphincter pupillæ nucleus* of both sides, inasmuch as stimulation of one retina is followed by narrowing of the pupils of both eyes. To this simultaneous contraction of the pupils the term "consensual" has been given. Contraction of both pupils also occurs as an associated movement in the convergence of the eyes during accommodation. The dilatation of the pupil is, however, not due exclusively to the relaxation of the sphincter pupillæ muscle, but partly to the contraction of the dilator pupillæ muscle, which is kept normally in a state of tonic contraction by impulses emanating from a nerve-center in the medulla oblongata.

The axons which arise in this center pass down the cord, emerge through the first thoracic nerve, and then ascend to the superior cervical ganglion (see Fig. 245), in which their terminal branches arborize around its nerve-cells. From these cells new axons of the sympathetic system arise which pass successively to the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve, the nasal nerve, the long ciliary nerve and the iris.

Experimental research renders it highly probable that the dilator center is in a state of continuous activity and the dilator muscle in a state of tonic contraction. Whatever the normal stimulus may be, the center is increased in activity by dyspneic blood, by severe muscle exercise, by emotional excitement, and by stimulation of various sensory nerves. That the afferent pathway just alluded to transmits the impulses to the iris is shown by the fact that division in any part of the course is followed by narrowing, stimulation by active dilatation of the pupil.

The variations in the size of the pupil, though largely a reflex act under the control of the oculo-motor nerve, are nevertheless partly due to the active coöperation of the dilator nerves and their related muscle. The size of the pupil necessary from moment to moment for the admission of just that amount of light essential to the formation and perception of a distinct image is the result of two nicely adjusted and delicately balanced forces.

Wernicke's Pupillary Reaction.—It was stated on page 531 that a modification of the pupillary reaction is observed in some cases of hemianopsia which indicates approximately the seat of lesion. This reaction is present only when the lesion is along the course of the optic tract. In these cases, if a fine ray of light is projected into the eye in such a manner that it falls entirely on the non-responsive side of the retina, there will be an absence of a pupillary response, owing to the break in the reflex arc. If, however, the light be

thrown on the sensitive side of the retina the usual response, a contraction of the sphincter and a narrowing of the pupil, is at once observed.

FOURTH PAIR. THE PATHETICUS.

The fourth cranial nerve, the patheticus, consists of peripherally coursing axons which serve to bring the cells from which they arise into relation with the superior oblique muscle.

Origin.—The axons of this nerve arise from a group of cells located beneath the aqueduct of Sylvius just posterior to the last nucleus of the third nerve.

After emerging from the nucleus the nerve-fibers pass downward for a short distance, then curve dorsally around the aqueduct of Sylvius, and enter the valve of Vieussens, where they completely decussate with the nerve-fibers of the opposite side.

Cortical Connections.—

The nucleus of the pathetic nerve is in histologic and physiologic connection with the motor area of the cerebral cortex. Nerve cells in this region give off axons which enter the pyramidal tract and descend through the internal capsule and the crus cerebri, after which they cross to the opposite side. Their end-tufts arborize around the cells of the nuclei already described.

Distribution.—After its decussation the nerve-trunk emerges just below the posterior quadrigeminal body, crosses the

FIG. 246.—DISTRIBUTION OF THE PATHETICUS. I. Olfactory nerve. II. Optic nerves. III. Motor oculi communis. IV. Patheticus, by the side of the ophthalmic branch of the fifth, and passing to the superior oblique muscle. VI. Motor oculi externus. I. Ganglion of Gasser. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10. Ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve, with its branches.—(Hirschfeld.)

superior cerebellar peduncle, and winds around the crus cerebri to the anterior border of the pons Varolii. It then enters the orbit cavity through the sphenoid fissure and finally terminates in the superior oblique muscle. In its course the nerve receives filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic and the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal.

Properties.—*Stimulation* of the nerve-trunk is followed by spasmodic contraction of the superior oblique muscle, the anterior pole of the eyeball being turned downward and outward, combined with slight torsion away from the middle line.

Division of the nerve is followed by a relaxation or paralysis of the muscle. In consequence of the now unopposed action of the inferior oblique muscle, the anterior pole of the eyeball is turned upward and *inward* with slight torsion toward the middle line. The diplopia consequent upon this paralysis is homonymous, the images appearing one above the other. The image of the paralyzed eye is below that of the normal eye and its upper end inclined toward that of the normal eye.

Function.—The function of this nerve is to transmit nerve impulses to the superior oblique muscle and to excite it to contraction.

FIFTH PAIR. THE TRIGEMINAL.

The fifth cranial nerve, the trigeminal, consists of both afferent and efferent axons which for the most part are separate and distinct. The afferent axons constitute by far the major portion, the efferent fibers the minor portion, of the nerve.

Origin of the Afferent Axons.

—The afferent axons serve to bring into relation the skin, mucous membranes of the head and face, and other sentient structures, with certain sensor end-nuclei in the pons, medulla oblongata, and adjoining structures. They have their origin in the mono-axonic cells in the ganglion of Gasser, which rests

FIG. 247.—SCHEME OF ORIGIN AND CONSTITUTION OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE. 1. Centrally couring fibers. 2, 3, 4. Peripherally couring fibers of the cells of the ganglion of Gasser. R, N. Nuclei of origin of the efferent fibers. 6. Motor root. A. Central terminations of the large root.

on the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. The cells of this ganglion give origin to a short process which soon divides into two branches, one of which passes centrally, the other peripherally (Fig. 247). The centrally directed branches collectively form the so-called large or sensor root; the peripherally directed branches collectively constitute the three main divisions of the nerve: viz., the

ophthalmic, the superior maxillary, and the inferior maxillary. Branches of the carotid plexus of the sympathetic enter the nerve in the neighborhood of the ganglion of Gasser and accompany its branches.

Distribution.—1. *The Central Branches.*—The axons of the large root pass backward into the pons Varolii on its lateral aspect. After entering the pons each axon divides into two branches, one of which passes upward a short distance, the other passes downward, descending as far as the second cervical segment. Both branches give off a number of collaterals, each of which terminates in fine end-tufts around nerve-cells in the substantia gelatinosa.

2. *The Peripheral Branches.*

—The peripheral axons emerge from the peripheral end of the ganglion of Gasser in three distinct and separate branches, each of which is distributed to a different region of the face and head.

1. The *ophthalmic branch* passes forward and subdivides into three large branches, the frontal, the lachrymal, and the nasal. The ultimate termination of the branches of these nerves is as follows: viz., the conjunctiva and skin of the upper eyelid, the cornea, the skin of the forehead and the nose, the lachrymal gland and caruncle, and the mucous membrane of the nose (Fig. 248).

2. The *superior maxillary branch* passes forward through the foramen rotundum, crosses the sphenomaxillary fossa, enters the infra-orbital canal, and emerges at the infra-orbital foramen. In its course it gives off a number of branches which are distributed as follows: viz., to the integument and conjunctiva of the lower lid, the nose, cheek, and upper lip, the palate, the teeth of the upper jaw, and the alveolar processes (Fig. 249).

3. The *inferior maxillary branch* passes through the foramen ovale, after which it subdivides into three branches—the auriculotemporal, the lingual, and the inferior dental. The ultimate branches are distributed as follows: viz., the external auditory

FIG. 248.—OPHTHALMIC BRANCH OF THE FIFTH. 1. Ganglion of Gasser. 2. Ophthalmic division of the fifth. 3. Lachrymal branch. 4. Frontal branch. 5. External frontal. 6. Internal frontal. 7. Supra-trochlear. 8. Nasal branch. 9. External nasal. 10. Internal nasal. —(Hirschfeld.)

meatus, the side of the head, the mucous membrane of the mouth, the anterior portion of the tongue, the arches of the palate, the teeth and alveolar process of the lower jaw and the integument of the lower part of the face (Fig. 250).

Cortical Connections.—The nerve-cells around which the end-tufts of the centrally coursing axons ramify collectively constitute the “sensor end-nuclei” of the trigeminal nerve. From these cells new axons arise which cross the median line, enter the fillet or lemniscus, and ascend directly to the sensor area of the cerebral cortex.

Properties.—Irritative pathologic lesions, *e. g.*, pressure by tumors, aneurysms, neuritis, degenerative changes in the ganglion

FIG. 249.—1. Superior maxillary nerve. 2, 3, 4, 5. Dental nerves. 6. Sphenopalatine ganglion. 7. Vidian nerve. 8. Large superficial petrosal. 9. Carotid branch of large petrosal. 10. Oculo-motor. 11. Superior cervical ganglion. 12. Carotid branches of this ganglion. 13. Facial. 14. Glosso-pharyngeal. 15. Jacobson's nerve, and 16, 17, 18, 19, branches to the sympathetic, fenestra rotunda, Eustachian tube. 20. Deep external petrosal. 21. Deep internal petrosal.

cells, or lesions which in any way gradually impair the physical or chemic integrity of the nerve-fibers, give rise to a variety of painful sensations referable to the seat of the lesion or to one or more regions in the peripheral distribution of the nerve. Many of the various forms of trigeminal neuralgia are caused by lesions of this character. Exposure of the dental nerves from caries of the teeth, the presence of minute foreign bodies in the conjunctiva, operative procedures in the nasal chambers, all testify to the extreme sensibility of the nerve. Division of the large root within the cranium is followed at once by complete abolition of all sensibility in the head and face to which its branches are distributed. The skin and mucous membranes, the eye, nose, or teeth may be experimentally injured without any evi-

dences of pain on the part of the animal. Various reflexes, *e. g.*, those of mastication, insalivation, deglutition, the afferent paths of which are formed in part by the fifth nerve, are often seriously impaired. At the same time the lacrimal secretion diminishes and the pupil contracts. The same results are observed in human beings in whom the nerve has been divided for relief from neuralgia. Anesthesia or a loss of sensibility may also be caused by pathologic lesions of the nerve-trunks or of the sensor end-nuclei.

Division of the large root at or near the ganglion of Gasser has not infrequently been followed by an alteration in the nutrition of the eye and nose. In the course of twenty-four hours the eye becomes vascular and inflamed; the cornea becomes opaque; ulceration sets in which may lead to complete destruction of the eyeball. The mucous membrane of the nose becomes swollen, vascular, and liable to hemorrhage on the slightest irritation. The degenerative changes may lead to a complete loss of the sense of smell. These results were formerly attributed to a loss of *trophic* influence which it was believed the nerve exercised over these structures. Modern experimentation and various surgical procedures have demonstrated that the nutritive disorders are septic in origin, made possible by the anesthetic condition and by the changed vascular supply from division of the vaso-motor fibers which join the nerve at or near the ganglion.

Origin of the Efferent or Motor Axons.—The efferent or peripherally coursing axons serve to bring the nerve-cells from which they arise into relation with the muscles of mastication. They arise from nerve-cells located in the gray matter beneath the upper half of the floor of the fourth ventricle. These cells constitute the motor or masticatory nucleus. A group of cells known as the superior or accessory nucleus, situated posterior to the corpora quadrigemina, give origin to axons which descend and join the axons from the chief motor nucleus (Fig. 247).

Distribution.—From their origin the fibers pass forward through the pons and emerge on its lateral aspect, forming the so-called small root of the fifth nerve. This then passes forward beneath the ganglion of Gasser, leaves the cavity of the skull through the foramen ovale, and joins the inferior maxillary division already described. Its axons are ultimately distributed to the muscles of mastication: viz., the masseter, the temporal, the external and internal pterygoids, the mylohyoid, and the anterior portion of the digastric. A few axons are also distributed to the tensor tympani muscle (Fig. 250).

Cortical Connections.—The nuclei of origin of the small root are in histologic and physiologic relation with the lower third of the motor area of the cerebral cortex. Nerve-cells in this region give off axons which enter the pyramidal tract, descend through the internal capsule and the crus cerebri, after which they cross to the

opposite side. Their end-tufts arborize around the cells of nuclei in the medulla oblongata.

Properties.—*Stimulation* of the small root gives rise to convulsive movements of the muscles of mastication. *Division* of the nerve is followed by a paralysis of these muscles. Contraction or paralysis of

FIG. 250.—INFERIOR MAXILLARY BRANCH OF THE TRIGEMINAL NERVE. 1. Branch to the masseter muscle. 2. Filament of this branch to the temporal muscle. 3. Buccal branch. 4. Branches anastomosing with the facial nerve. 5. Filament from the buccal branch to the temporal muscle. 6. Branches to the external pterygoid muscle. 7. Middle deep temporal branch. 8. Auriculo-temporal nerve. 9. Temporal branches. 10. Auricular branches. 11. Anastomosis with the facial nerve. 12. Lingual branch. 13. Branch of the small root to the mylo-hyoid muscle. 14. Inferior dental nerve, with its branches (15, 15). 16. Mental branch. 17. Anastomosis of this branch with the facial nerve.—(Hirschfeld.)

the tensor tympani muscle would also be observed under the same conditions.

Functions.—The fifth nerve, by virtue of its transmitting nerve impulses from the periphery to the cerebral cortex, where they evoke sensation, endows all the parts to which it is distributed with sensibility; it also endows the muscles of mastication with motility.

Through the relation of its central end-tufts with the motor nuclei in the medulla and pons, it assists in the reflex acts of mastication and insalivation.

SIXTH PAIR. THE ABDUCENS.

The sixth cranial nerve, the abducens, consists of peripherally coursing axons which serve to bring the nerve-cells from which they arise into relation with the *external rectus* muscle.

Origin.—The axons arise from a group of cells located in the gray matter beneath the upper half of the floor of the fourth ventricle.

It is quite probable that a few fibers in each nerve-trunk come from the nucleus on the opposite side of the middle line.

Distribution.—The nerve-fibers pass forward from their origin through the gray and white matter and emerge through the groove between the medulla oblongata and the pons Varolii just external to the anterior pyramid. The nerve then passes through the sphenoid fissure into the orbit cavity, where it is distributed to the *external rectus* muscle (Fig. 251). In its course the nerve receives filaments from the carotid plexus of the sympathetic.

Cortical Connections.—The nucleus of the sixth nerve is in histologic and physiologic connection with the motor area of the cerebral cortex. From

nerve-cells in this region axons are given off which enter the pyramidal tract, descend through the internal capsule and crus cerebri, after which they cross to the opposite side, where their end-tufts arborize around the cells of the nucleus already described.

Properties.—Stimulation of the nerve is followed by spasmodic contraction of the external rectus muscle and external deviation of the eyeball. *Division* of the nerve is followed by paralysis or relaxation of the muscle. As a result of the unopposed action of the internal rectus the anterior pole of the eyeball is turned toward the middle line (internal strabismus). In consequence of this deviation there is homonymous diplopia. The images are on the same level

FIG. 251.—DISTRIBUTION OF THE MOTOR OCULI EXTERNUS OR ABDUCENS. 1. Trunk of the motor oculi communis, with its branches (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7). 8. Motor oculi externus, passing to the external rectus muscle. 9. Filaments of the motor oculi externus anastomosing with the sympathetic. 10. Ciliary nerves.—(Hirschfeld.)

and parallel. The image of the paralyzed eye lies external to that of the normal eye.

Function.—The function of this nerve is to transmit nerve impulses to the external rectus muscle and excite it to contraction.

SEVENTH PAIR. THE FACIAL.

The seventh cranial nerve, the facial, consists of peripherally coursing nerve-fibers, which serve to bring the nerve-cells from which they arise into relation with most of the superficial muscles of the head and face.

The muscles supplied by this nerve, as stated by the general anatomists, are as follows: The occipito-frontalis, corrugator supercilii, orbicularis palpebrarum, levator labii superioris, alæque nasi, zygomatichi, the pyramidalis nasi, the compressor nasi, the depressor alæ nasi, levator anguli oris, buccinator, orbicularis oris, depressor anguli oris, depressor labii inferioris, the levator menti, the posterior belly of the digastric, the stylo-hyoid, and the platysma myoides.

Origin.—The nerve-fibers or axons composing the seventh nerve arise for the most part from a nucleus of large multipolar nerve-cells situated about five millimeters beneath the upper half of the floor of the fourth ventricle toward the middle line.

From this nucleus, which is about four millimeters long, axons emerge which at first pass inward and backward as far as the ependyma of the ventricle; they then turn on themselves, forming an arch that encloses the nucleus of the sixth nerve; they then course downward and outward, emerging from the pons at its lower border between the olivary and restiform bodies. As the axons approach the floor of the ventricle collateral branches are given off which, crossing the median line, arborize around the nerve-cells of the opposite facial nucleus.

Clinical observations and histologic investigations also render it probable that the fibers distributed to the occipito-frontalis, the corrugator supercilii, and the upper half of the orbicularis palpebrarum, are derived from the oculo-motor nucleus, and, descending the posterior longitudinal bundle, enter the trunk of the facial as it turns to pass forward through the pons. It is also probable, for similar reasons, that the fibers distributed to the orbicularis oris are derived from the hypoglossal nucleus.

Cortical Connections.—The nucleus of the facial nerve is in histologic and physiologic connection with the facial region of the general motor area of the cerebral cortex. From the cells of this region axons descend through the pyramidal tract, the internal capsule, and the crus cerebri, beyond which they cross to the opposite side and arborize around the cells of the nucleus already described.

Distribution.—From its superficial origin the trunk of the nerve passes into the internal auditory meatus beside the auditory nerve. After passing forward and outward for a short distance through the bone above and between the cochlea and vestibule, the nerve makes

FIG. 252.—SUPERFICIAL BRANCHES OF THE FACIAL AND THE FIFTH.—1. Trunk of the facial. 2. Posterior auricular nerve. 3. Branch which it receives from the cervical plexus. 4. Occipital branch. 5, 6. Branches to the muscles of the ear. 7. Digastric branches. 8. Branch to the stylo-hyoid muscle. 9. Superior terminal branch. 10. Temporal branches. 11. Frontal branches. 12. Branches to the orbicularis palpebrarum. 13. Nasal or suborbital branches. 14. Buccal branches. 15. Inferior terminal branch. 16. Mental branches. 17. Cervical branches. 18. Superficial temporal nerve (branch of the fifth). 19, 20. Frontal nerves (branches of the fifth). 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27. Branches of the fifth. 28, 29, 30, 31, 32. Branches of the cervical nerves.—(*Hirschfeld*.)

a sharp bend, forming the genu facialis, turns backward and enters the aqueduct of Fallopius, the general course of which it follows as far as the stylo-mastoid foramen. After emerging from this foramen the nerve passes downward and forward as far as the parotid gland,

within which it terminates by dividing into two main branches, the temporo-facial and the cervico-facial, the ultimate branches of which are distributed as previously stated to the superficial muscles of the head and face (Fig. 252).

The Pars Intermedia or Nerve of Wrisberg.—The facial nerve at the genu facialis, the point where it turns backward to enter the aqueduct of Fallopius, presents a slight enlargement, grayish in color, and in which nerve-cells are contained. This enlargement is known as the geniculate ganglion. The cells of this ganglion, originally bipolar, present single axons which soon divide into centrally and peripherally coursing branches. The former collectively constitute the *pars intermedia* or nerve of Wrisberg, which, entering and passing through the pons, terminates around the sensor end-nucleus of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve; the latter, the peripherally directed branches, enter the sheath of the facial and accompany it as far as a point about five millimeters above the stylo-mastoid foramen.

From its mode of origin the nerve of Wrisberg can not be regarded as an integral part of the facial nerve proper, but is to be regarded as an independent sensor nerve. As to the true function and relation of this nerve there is much conflict of opinion.

Branches of the Facial.

—In the aqueduct of Fallopius the facial gives off the following branches: the greater and lesser petrosals, the stapedius, and the chorda tympani (Fig. 253).

1. The *greater petrosal* nerve is given off near the geniculate ganglion. It then passes forward into the spheno-maxillary fossa and terminates in the spheno-palatine ganglion by an arborization of its fibers around the ganglion cells.
2. The *lesser petrosal* nerve is given off at a point somewhat external to the preceding. It leaves the skull by a small foramen and terminates in the otic ganglion by an arborization of its fibers around the ganglion cells.

FIG. 253.—CHORDA TYMPANI NERVE. 1, 2, 3, 4. Facial nerve passing through the aqueduct Fallopii. 5. Ganglioform enlargement. 6. Great petrosal nerve. 7. Sphenopalatine ganglion. 8. Small petrosal nerve. 9. Chorda tympani. 10, 11, 12, 13. Various branches of the facial. 14, 15. Glosso-pharyngeal nerve.—(Hirschfeld.)

3. The *stapedius* branch leaves the aqueduct of Fallopius somewhat further down by a small foramen, enters the pyramid of the middle ear, and is finally distributed to the stapedius muscle.
4. The *chorda tympani* is given off from the facial at a point about five millimeters above the stylo-mastoid foramen. It then passes upward and forward and enters the tympanum through the iter chordæ posterius, crosses the tympanic membrane between the malleus and incus, leaves the tympanum by the iter chordæ anterieus or canal of Huguier, and finally joins the lingual branch of the fifth. Some of its fibers can be traced to the dorsum of the tongue, others to the submaxillary and sublingual ganglia, where they terminate in tufts around the ganglion cells.

Properties.—*Electric stimulation* of the trunk of the nerve after its emergence from the stylo-mastoid foramen produces convulsive movements in all the muscles to which its branches are distributed. The same results follow stimulation of the intracranial portion of the nerve in an animal recently killed.

Irritative pathologic lesions—e. g., tumors, aneurysms, etc.—situated along the course of the nerve or at its nuclear origin, frequently give rise to spasmodic movements of the facial muscles which may be tonic or clonic in character.

Division of the facial nerve after its emergence from the stylo-mastoid foramen is followed by a complete relaxation or paralysis of the superficial facial muscles. The same result follows compression of the nerve-trunk in any part of its intracranial course.

The phenomena presented by an individual suffering from division or compression of the facial nerve, and which collectively constitute *facial paralysis*, are as follows: a relaxed and immobile condition of the side of the face corresponding to the lesion; separation of the eyelids from paralysis of the orbicularis palpebrarum and the unopposed contraction of the levator palpebræ muscles; abolition of the act of winking; drooping of the angle of the mouth; an escape of saliva from the mouth; contraction of the muscle and distortion of the opposite side of the face; on attempting to laugh or talk the distortion of the face is increased; during mastication the food accumulates between the teeth and cheek, from paralysis of the buccinator; articulation is impaired from paralysis of the orbicularis oris muscle, the labial sounds especially being imperfectly produced.

Properties of the Branches Given off in the Aqueduct of Fallopius.—The *great petrosal* nerve is in all probability composed of efferent fibers (vaso-dilatator and secretor) which leave the pons by way of the nerve of Wrisberg, or pars intermedia, to be distributed around the cells of the sphenopalatine ganglion; for stimulation either of this nerve or of the ganglion is followed by the same results: viz., dilatation of the blood-vessels of, and secretion from, the mucous

membrane of the nose, soft palate, upper part of the pharynx, roof of mouth, gums, and upper lip.

The *small petrosal* nerve is also composed of efferent fibers; shortly after leaving the facial it is joined by a small nerve, derived from Jacobson's branch of the glosso-pharyngeal, which is also efferent in function; for stimulation of Jacobson's nerve as well as stimulation of the otic ganglion is followed by the same result: viz., dilatation of the blood-vessels of, and secretion from, the mucous membrane of the cheek, lower lip, and gums, and of the parotid and the orbit glands.

The *stapedius* nerve, distributed directly to the stapedius muscle, is motor in function.

The Chorda Tympani.—Stimulation of the chorda tympani nerve in the tympanic cavity produces dilatation of the blood-vessels of, and an increased production and discharge of saliva from, the submaxillary and sublingual glands.

Division of this nerve is followed by a contraction of the blood-vessels and a diminution of the secretion. From these results it is certain that the chorda tympani contains both vaso-dilatator and secretor fibers. Nicotin applied to the submaxillary and sublingual ganglia abolishes the effects of stimulation of the chorda tympani. It does not prevent the same effects when the ganglia themselves are stimulated. It is clear, therefore, that the vaso-dilatator and secretor fibers arborize around the cells of the ganglia and are not distributed directly to the gland structures. It is highly probable that the efferent fibers in the chorda tympani emerge from the pons by way of the *pars intermedia*.

Division of the chorda in the tympanum is also followed by a loss of taste in the anterior two-thirds of the tongue. For this and other reasons the chorda tympani has long been regarded as the nerve of taste for this region. The specific physiologic stimulus to the chorda tympani nerve is organic matter in solution acting on the peripheral terminations of the nerve in the mucous membrane of the tongue. The exact pathway for these *afferent* or gustatory fibers beyond the geniculate ganglion has long been a subject of much discussion. According to some observers these fibers enter the great petrosal nerve, pass forward as far as the sphenopalatine ganglion, then into the superior maxillary division of the trigeminal, and so to the brain. According to others, these fibers pass into the *pars intermedia*, into the pons, where they terminate around the sensor end-nucleus of the glosso-pharyngeal. The evidence for and against either of these two views is most conflicting and insufficient to justify positive statements one way or the other. To the writer the weight of evidence seems to favor the view that the gustatory fibers have their origin in the geniculate ganglion; that they pass centrally through the *pars in-*

termia; that they are similar in function to the glosso-pharyngeal; and that they are indeed but aberrant branches of this nerve.

EIGHTH PAIR. THE AUDITORY.

The eighth cranial nerve, the auditory, consists of the centrally coursing axons of neurons which connect the essential organ of hearing with sensor end-nuclei in the pons Varolii. This nerve consists of two portions: viz., a *cochlear* or auditory and a *vestibular* or equilibratory.

Origin.—The axons comprising the cochlear portion have their origin in the bipolar nerve-cells of the spiral ganglion located in the spiral canal near the base of the osseous lamina spiralis (Fig. 254). From this origin they pass centrally into the central canal of the modiolus, at the base of which they emerge in well-defined bundles and enter the internal auditory meatus. Dendritic processes from these cells pass peripherally to terminate on the ciliated epithelial cells of the organ of Corti.

The axons comprising the vestibular portion have their origin in the bipolar nerve-cells of the ganglion of Scarpa located in the internal auditory meatus. From this origin they pass centrally in connection with the cochlear portion. Dendritic processes from these cells pass peripherally into the internal ear, where they terminate on epithelial cells situated on the inner surface of the utricle and saccule

FIG. 254.—ORIGIN AND TERMINATION OF THE AUDITORY NERVE. 1. Cochlea. 2. Spiral ganglion (Corti). 3. Cochlear nerve. 4. Ventral acoustic nucleus. 5. Lateral acoustic nucleus. 6. Semicircular canals. 7. Ganglion of Scarpa. 8. Vestibular nerve. 9. Dorso-external nucleus (Deiters). 10. Dorso-internal nucleus.—(After Morat and Doyon.)

and in the ampullæ of the semicircular canals.

The common trunk of the auditory nerve, consisting of both cochlear and vestibular divisions after emerging from the internal auditory meatus, passes backward, inward, and downward as far

as the lateral aspect of the pons where the two divisions again separate.

The cochlear nerve, the external root, passes to the outer side of the restiform body and enters the ventral acoustic nucleus and the lateral acoustic nucleus, around the cells of which its end-tufts arborize. The vestibular nerve, the internal root, passes on the inner side of the restiform body to the dorsal portion of the pons, where, after bifurcating, the end-tufts of the axons arborize around the dorso-internal or chief auditory nucleus and the dorso-external or Deiters' nucleus. Some of the fibers of the vestibular branch descend through the pons and medulla as far as the cuneate nucleus.

Cortical Connections.—The cochlear nerve is ultimately connected with the cerebral acoustic area, in the temporal lobe of the opposite side through the intermediation of the auditory tract. This tract is complex and involved. In a general way it may be said to consist in part of fibers which come direct from the cochlear branch. After passing through the ventral nucleus and the trapezoid body they cross the median line, enter the lemniscus or fillet, and finally terminate in the pre- and post-geminal bodies. In their course they give off collateral branches to these various nuclei through which they pass. Other fibers taking their origin from cells in these various nuclei proceed to the cortex where they terminate.

Properties.—Stimulation of the cochlear nerve is unattended by either motor or sensor phenomena. *Division* of the nerve is followed by a loss of the sense of hearing. Irritative pathologic lesions give rise to sensations of sound of varying character and intensity. Degeneration of the nerve or destruction by tumors, etc., will also be followed by a loss of the sense of hearing.

Experimental lesions of the semicircular canals involving a destruction of the physiologic relations of the *vestibular* nerve are followed by a loss of the coördinating and equilibratory power. Disordered movements, such as rotation to the right or left, somersaults backward and forward, follow destruction of these canals. Pathologic lesions in the peripheral distribution of the nerve are attended in man by disturbances of equilibrium; *e. g.*, vertigo, a sense of swaying, pitching, and staggering.

Functions.—The function of the cochlear nerve is to convey nerve impulses from its origin to the pons, from which they are transmitted by the auditory tract to the acoustic area in the cerebral cortex. The specific physiologic stimulus to the development of these impulses is the impact of atmospheric undulations on the tympanic membrane, received and transmitted by the chain of bones to the structures of the internal ear,—the organ of Corti,—with which the peripheral terminations of the nerve are connected. The function of the vestibular nerve is the transmission of nerve impulses to the

pons, whence they are transmitted to the cortex of both the cerebrum and cerebellum and to other centers. The specific physiologic stimulus is supposed to be a variation in pressure in the ampullæ of the semicircular canals caused by movements of the endolymph induced by changes in the position of the head and body. The impulses carried by the vestibular nerve give rise reflexly to certain adaptive and protective movements by which the equilibrium of the body in both dynamic and static conditions is maintained.

NINTH NERVE. THE GLOSSO-PHARYNGEAL.

The ninth cranial nerve, the glosso-pharyngeal, consists, as shown by both histologic and experimental methods of research, of both afferent and efferent nerve-fibers, of which the former, however, are by far the more abundant. Near its exit from the cavity of the skull the nerve presents two ganglionic enlargements known as the *petrosal* and *jugular* ganglia.

Origin of the Afferent Fibers.—The afferent fibers serve to bring certain end-nuclei in the medulla oblongata into anatomic and physiologic relation with portions of the mucous membrane of the tongue, pharynx, and middle ear. The afferent fibers are axons of the monaxonic cells of the petrosal and jugular ganglia. The single axon from each of these cells soon divides into two branches, one of which passes centrally, the other peripherally. The centrally directed branches collectively form the so-called roots, four or five in number, which enter the medulla between the olivary and restiform bodies. The peripherally directed branches collectively form the two main divisions, from the distribution of which, to the tongue and pharynx, the nerve takes its name.

Distribution.—The axons of the centrally directed branches after entering the medulla pass toward its dorsal aspect, where they bifurcate, give off collateral branches, and terminate in fine end-tufts in the immediate neighborhood of two groups of nerve-cells, the *sensor end-nuclei*. The axons of the peripherally directed branches, after emerging from the base of the skull through the jugular foramen, pass forward and inward under cover of the stylo-pharyngeal muscle; winding around this muscle they divide into terminal branches which are distributed to the mucous membrane of the posterior one-third of the tongue, pharynx, soft palate, uvula, and tonsils (Fig. 257).

Origin of the Efferent Fibers.—The efferent fibers serve to bring the nerve-cells from which they arise into connection with a portion of the musculature of the fauces and pharynx. These nerve-cells are located in the lateral portion of the *formatio reticularis* at some distance below the floor of the fourth ventricle. They consti-

tute the upper portion of a collection of cells known as the *nucleus ambiguus*.

Distribution.—From this origin the efferent fibers pass dorsally to near the sensor end-nuclei, then turn outward and forward and finally emerge from the medulla in intimate association with the afferent fibers. They are ultimately distributed to the stylo-pharyngeal and to the middle constrictor muscles of the pharynx. In addition to the foregoing efferent fibers the glosso-pharyngeal nerve contains at its emergence from the medulla both vaso-motor and secretor fibers.

Jacobson's Nerve.—This is a small branch which leaves the glosso-pharyngeal at the petrous ganglion. After passing through a small canal in the base of the skull it enters the tympanic cavity, within which it gives off branches to the great and lesser petrosal nerves, to the mucous membrane of the foramen ovale, the foramen rotundum, and to the Eustachian tube.

Cortical Connections.—The *motor* nucleus is doubtless connected with the general motor area of the cortex through fibers descending in the pyramidal tract. The exact location of the cortical area for the pharynx is not well determined, but is most likely to be found in the lower part of the general motor area near the termination of the Rolandic fissure. The cortical connections of the afferent tract are unknown.

Properties.—Electric stimulation of the glosso-pharyngeal trunk calls forth evidence of pain and contraction of the stylo-pharyngeal and middle constrictor muscles. Division of the nerve abolishes sensibility in the mucous membrane to which it is distributed, impairs the sense of taste in the posterior third of the tongue, and gives rise to paralysis of the above-mentioned muscles.

Stimulation of Jacobson's nerve is followed by dilatation of the blood-vessels of, and secretion from, the mucous membrane of the lower lip, cheek, and gums, and from the parotid gland. Division of the nerve is followed by the opposite results. The course of the fibers which give rise to these results is by way of the lesser petrosal to the otic ganglion, around the cells of which the fibers arborize. From the cells of this ganglion non-medullated fibers pass to the blood-vessels and gland cells.

Functions.—The afferent fibers of the glosso-pharyngeal transmit nerve impulses from the parts to which they are distributed to the cerebral cortex, where they evoke sensations of pain and sensations of taste; they also assist in all probability in the performance of certain reflexes connected with deglutition. The efferent fibers transmit impulses to muscles, exciting them to activity, and to the otic ganglion, which in turn dilates blood-vessels and excites secretion.

TENTH NERVE. THE PNEUMOGASTRIC OR VAGUS.

The tenth cranial nerve, the pneumogastric or vagus, consists, as shown by histologic methods of research, of both afferent and efferent fibers, independent of those derived in its course from adjoining motor or efferent nerves. Near the exit of the nerve from the cavity of the cranium it presents two ganglionic enlargements known respectively as the ganglion of the root (the jugular) and the ganglion of the trunk (the plexiform).

Origin of the Afferent Fibers.—The afferent fibers take their origin in the monaxonic cells of the ganglia on the root and trunk. The single axon from each of these cells soon divides into two branches, one of which passes centrally, the other peripherally. The centrally directed branches collectively form the so-called roots, ten to fifteen in number, which enter the medulla between the restiform body and the lateral column. The peripherally directed branches collectively form a portion of the common trunk of the nerve.

Distribution.—The axons of the centrally directed branches after entering the medulla pass toward its dorsal aspect, where they bifurcate, give off collaterals, and terminate in fine end-tufts in the immediate neighborhood of two groups of nerve-cells, the *sensor end-nuclei*.

The axons of the peripherally directed branches unite to form a portion of the common trunk, which, as it descends the neck and enters the thorax and abdomen, gives off a number of branches which are ultimately distributed to the mucous membrane of the esophagus, larynx, lungs, stomach, and intestine, and also to the heart. The afferent fibers thus serve to bring into anatomic and physiologic relation the mucous membrane of these organs with certain sensor end-nuclei in the medulla oblongata.

Origin of the Efferent Fibers.—The efferent fibers take their origin from nerve-cells located in the lateral portion of the *formatio reticularis* at some distance below the floor of the fourth ventricle. These cells constitute the lower portion of the *nucleus ambiguus*.

Distribution.—From their origin the efferent axons pass dorsally to near the sensory end-nuclei, then turn outward and forward, and finally emerge from the medulla in close association with the afferent branches. They are ultimately distributed to the levator palati, azygos uvulæ, and tensor palati muscles; to the superior and inferior constrictor muscles of the pharynx, and to the muscles of the esophagus; to the muscle-fibers of the stomach and perhaps the intestines; and to the non-striated muscle-fibers of the bronchial tubes. Among the efferent fibers are some which are distributed to the gastric glands and to the pancreas.

The efferent fibers thus serve to bring the nerve-cells from which

they arise into anatomic and physiologic connection with a portion of the musculature of the alimentary canal and its diverticulum, the lung.

Communicating Branches.—At or near the ganglia of the vagus it receives communicating branches from the eleventh nerve, the spinal accessory, the facial, the hypoglossal, and the anterior branches of the two upper cervical nerves. Owing to this manifold origin of the efferent fibers in the trunk and peripheral branches of the vagus, it is, in some instances, difficult, if not impossible, to determine to which of these nerves a given muscle contraction is to be referred.

Vagal Branches.—As the vagus passes down the neck it gives off the following main branches (Fig. 255):

1. The pharyngeal nerves which, after entering into the formation of the pharyngeal plexus, are distributed to the mucous membrane and to the muscles of the pharynx; *e. g.*, superior and inferior constrictors, the tensor palati, levator palati, and the azygos uvulae.
2. The superior laryngeal nerve which, entering the larynx through the thyro-hyoid membrane, is distributed to the mucous membrane lining the interior of the larynx and to the crico-thyroid muscle. From the superior laryngeal and the main trunk small branches are given off which unite to form a single nerve, the so-called depressor nerve. It is distributed to the heart-muscle. Though this anatomic arrangement is not found in man, there are many reasons for believing that analogous fibers are present in the vagus trunk of man and other animals.
3. The inferior laryngeal nerve which is distributed ultimately to all the muscles of the larynx except the crico-thyroid and to the inferior constrictor of the pharynx.
4. The cardiac nerves which, after entering into the formation of the cardiac plexus, are distributed to the heart.
5. The pulmonary nerves distributed to the mucous membrane of the bronchial tubes and their ultimate terminations, the lobules and air-cells, as well as to their non-striated muscle-fibers.
6. The gastric and intestinal nerves, distributed to the mucous membrane and muscular walls of the stomach and intestines. Other fibers in all probability pass to the liver, spleen, kidney, and suprarenal bodies.

Properties of the Pneumogastric or Vagus Nerve and its Various Branches.—*Faradization* of the vagus nerve close to the medulla oblongata gives rise to sensations of pain and to contraction of the musculature of a portion of the alimentary tract: *viz.*, the palate, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, and possibly of the intestine and of the pulmonary apparatus. *Division* of the nerve is followed by a loss of sensibility in the mucous membrane of the alimentary

tract and of the pulmonary apparatus, together with a loss of motility of the structures above mentioned.

FIG. 255.—DISTRIBUTION OF THE PNEUMOGASTRIC.—1. Trunk of the left pneumogastric. 2. Ganglion of the trunk. 3. Anastomosis with the spinal accessory. 4. Anastomosis with the sublingual. 5. Pharyngeal branch (the auricular branch is not shown in the figure). 6. Superior laryngeal branch. 7. External laryngeal nerve. 8. Laryngeal plexus. 9, 9. Inferior laryngeal branch. 10. Cervical cardiac branch. 11. Thoracic cardiac branch. 12, 13. Pulmonary branches. 14. Lingual branch of the fifth. 15. Lower portion of the sublingual. 16. Glosso-pharyngeal. 17. Spinal accessory. 18, 19, 20. Spinal nerves. 21. Phrenic nerve. 22, 23. Spinal nerves. 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30. Sympathetic ganglia.—(*Hirschfeld.*)

Stimulation of the trunk of the nerve in different parts of its course produces a variety of results dependent to some extent on the presence of anastomosing branches from adjoining nerves.

The Pharyngeal Nerves.—Faradization of the pharyngeal nerves consisting of both afferent and efferent fibers, gives rise to sensations of pain, contraction of the pharyngeal muscles, and perhaps to vomiting. Division of these nerves is followed by a loss of sensibility in the parts to which they are distributed and by paralysis of the muscles with a consequent impairment of deglutition.

The Superior Laryngeal Nerve.—Faradization of the superior laryngeal nerve gives rise to sensations of pain, and to contraction of the crico-thyroid muscle. Through reflected impulses it causes contraction of the muscles of deglutition, and of the muscles concerned in the act of coughing; inhibition of the inspiratory movement and arrest of respiration in the condition of expiratory standstill, with perhaps a tetanic contraction of the expiratory muscles; and contraction of the laryngeal muscles with closure of the glottis. Peripheral stimulation of this nerve—*e. g.*, the contact of foreign particles—gives rise to a similar series of phenomena. Division of these nerves is followed by a loss of sensibility in the laryngeal mucous membrane, paralysis of the crico-thyroid muscle with a consequent lowering of the pitch, and a diminution in the clearness of the voice. In consequence of the loss of the sensibility there is an inability to perceive the entrance of foreign bodies into the larynx.

The Depressor Nerve.—Stimulation of the peripheral end of the depressor nerve is without effect; stimulation of the central end retards and even arrests the heart's pulsations and lowers the general blood-pressure. These two effects, though associated, are nevertheless independent of each other. If the vagus nerves be divided on both sides between the origin of the depressor and the origin of the cardiac nerves, and the former stimulated, there will be a fall of pressure without retardation of the heart. The effect on the heart is attributed to a stimulation of the cardio-inhibitory mechanism in the medulla oblongata.

The fall of general blood-pressure was formerly attributed to a sudden dilatation of the splanchnic blood-vessels alone, in consequence of a depression of that portion of the general vaso-motor center which maintains through the splanchnic nerves a tonic contraction of their walls. It has been satisfactorily demonstrated that this is not the sole cause; for after division of the splanchnic nerves, stimulation of the depressor causes a still further fall of from 30 to 40 per cent. in the general pressure (Porter and Beyer). Evidently, not any one, but all portions of the vaso-motor center are subject to the effects of depressor stimulation.

The Inferior Laryngeal Nerves.—Faradization of the inferior laryngeal nerves produces effects which vary in accordance with the strength of the stimulus, with different animals, and with the same animal at different periods of life. In the adult dog and in man, the

glottis is kept widely open for respiratory purposes by the tonic contraction of the abductor muscles (the crico-arytenoids); for phonatory purposes the glottis is closed and the vocal membranes approximated by the contraction of the adductor muscles. It has been shown that these opposed groups of muscles have independent nerve-supplies; that two sets of fibers in the common trunk can be separated and stimulated independently of each other. *Feeble* stimulation of the common trunk produces a still further abduction of the vocal cords. With an increase in the strength of the stimulus, however, the reverse obtains: namely, adduction which increases until the glottis is completely closed. Division of the nerves is followed by paralysis of both the phonatory and respiratory muscles, the abductors and adductors, with the result of seriously impairing both phonation and respiration and not infrequently causing death. The fibers of the inferior laryngeal nerve are derived from the eleventh nerve, the spinal accessory.

The Cardiac Nerves.—Faradization of the trunk of the vagus or of the peripheral end of the divided nerve gives rise to a diminution in the frequency and force of the heart's contractions; and if the stimulation be sufficiently powerful, completely arrests it in the phase of diastole. To these results the term inhibition is applied. Division of the vagi or of the cardiac branches is followed by an increase in the number of the contractions from loss of inhibitor influences. The inhibitor fibers of the vagus are generally believed to be derived from the spinal accessory, though this has been questioned. According to the recent investigations of Schaternikoff and Friedenthal, they come direct in the vagus, from a nucleus near the vagal motor nucleus in the medulla, the spinal accessory sending no branches to the heart. In the frog and other batrachia the vagus contains also accelerator or augmentor fibers derived from the sympathetic; hence stimulation, especially if feeble, may increase the heart's action or may only retard, but not arrest, the heart.

The Pulmonary Nerves.—The pulmonary nerves, given off from the trunk after its entrance into the thorax, do not lend themselves readily to experimentation. Division of both vagi in the neck above the point of exit of the pulmonary branches is followed by a decrease in the frequency of the respiratory acts, with an increase in their depth. At the same time there is a loss of sensibility of the mucous membrane of the trachea and lungs and a paralysis of non-striated muscle-fibers. Stimulation of the central end of the vagus increases the frequency, but decreases the amplitude, of the respiratory movements. If the stimulation be increased in intensity the respiratory movements increase in frequency until the inspiratory muscles pass into the condition of tetanus.

Feeble stimulation of the vagus not infrequently inhibits the inspiratory movement and increases the expiratory until there is a

complete cessation of movement in the condition of expiratory standstill. The effect thus produced is similar to, if not identical with, that produced by stimulation of the superior laryngeal nerve. This would seem to indicate the presence in the vagus trunk of two sets of afferent fibers coming from the lungs through the pulmonary branches, one of which inhibits inspiration, the other expiration.

Faradization of the trunks of the pulmonary branches or stimulation of their peripheral terminations in the mucous membrane of the bronchial tubes or alveoli by the inhalation of chemic vapors causes arrest of respiratory movements, a fall of blood-pressure, and a reflex inhibition of the heart (Brodie).

Gastric Nerves.—Stimulation of the peripheral end of a divided vagus nerve causes a distinct contraction of the right half of the stomach and secretion from the gastric glands. Division of the nerve abolishes the sensibility of the mucous membrane of the stomach, impairs motility, and interferes with the secretion of the gastric juice.

Similar experimentation on the trunk of the vagus has shown that the nerve excites contraction of the upper part of the small intestine and of the gall-bladder, the secretion of the pancreas, the renal circulation, the secretion of urine, etc.

Functions.—The afferent fibers transmit nerve impulses from the area of their distribution to the medulla and thence through cortical connections to the sensor cerebral areas, where they evoke sensations.

The efferent fibers transmit impulses outward which excite contraction of the muscles of the esophagus, the stomach, the small intestine, and the gall-bladder, and the muscles of the bronchial tubes excite secretion from the glands of the stomach, pancreas, and kidney and exert an inhibitor influence on the activity of the heart. The efferent fibers belong to the autonomic system of nerves and are not connected with the ganglia of the vagus, but with local peripheral ganglia. #

ELEVENTH PAIR. THE SPINAL ACCESSORY.

The eleventh cranial nerve, the spinal accessory, consists of peripherally coursing fibers which bring the nerve-cells from which they arise into relation with separate but functionally related muscles. It consists of two portions, the medullary or bulbar and the spinal. #

Origin.—The axons comprising the *medullary* portion arise from a group of nerve-cells in the lower part of the nucleus ambiguus. From this origin the axons pass forward and outward to emerge from the medulla just below and in series with the roots of the vagus nerve.

The axons comprising the spinal portion have their origin in nerve-cells in the lateral margin of the anterior horn of the gray matter in the cervical portion of the cord as far down as the fifth

cervical vertebra. From this origin the fibers pass to the surface of

FIG. 256.—SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE.

1. Trunk of the facial nerve. 2, 2. Glossopharyngeal nerve. 3, 3. Pneumogastric. 4, 4, 4. Trunk of the spinal accessory. 5. Sublingual nerve. 6. Superior cervical ganglion. 7, 7. Anastomosis of the first two cervical nerves. 8. Carotid branch of the sympathetic. 9, 10, 11, 12, 13. Branches of the glossopharyngeal. 14, 15. Branches of the facial. 16. Otic ganglion. 17. Auricular branch of the pneumogastric. 18. Anastomosing branch from the spinal accessory to the pneumogastric. 19. Anastomosis of the first pair of cervical nerves with the sublingual. 20. Anastomosis of the spinal accessory with the second pair of cervical nerves. 21. Pharyngeal plexus. 22. Superior laryngeal nerve. 23. External laryngeal nerve. 24. Middle cervical ganglion.—(Hirschfeld.)

the cord to emerge between the ventral and dorsal roots in from six to eight filaments, after which they unite from below upward to form a distinct nerve. This enters the cranial cavity through the foramen magnum, where it joins with the medullary portion to form the common trunk, which then passes forward to emerge from the cranium through the jugular foramen.

Distribution.—After emerging from the cranial cavity the nerve soon separates into two branches:

1. An *internal* or *anastomotic* branch, consisting chiefly of filaments coming from the medulla oblongata. It soon enters the trunk of the vagus, from which fibers pass to the muscles of the pharynx, to the muscles of the larynx through the inferior laryngeal nerve, and to the heart according to most authorities.
2. An *external* branch, consisting chiefly of the accessory fibers from the spinal cord. It is distributed to the sterno-cleido-mastoid and trapezius muscles.

Cortical Connections.—The nucleus of origin of the medullary branch at least is in relation with nerve-cells in the lower third of the general cerebral motor area, the axons of which descend in the pyramidal tract.

Properties.—Faradization of the nerve near its origin gives

rise to muscle contraction. Destruction of the medullary root is

followed by impairment of deglutition and a loss of the power of producing vocal sounds on account of paralysis of the constrictor muscles of the larynx. According to some authorities, there is also an acceleration of the heart's action from a loss of inhibitor influences.

Stimulation of the external branch gives rise to contraction of the sterno-cleido-mastoid and trapezius muscles, though division of the branch does not give rise to complete paralysis, as they are supplied with motor fibers also from the cervical nerves. In consequence of division of the external branch animals experience extreme shortness of breath during exercise, from a want of coördination of the muscles of the fore-limbs and the muscles of respiration.

Functions.—The spinal accessory nerve transmits nerve impulses outward which influence the movements of deglutition, and the vocal movements of the larynx, which inhibit the action of the heart and which control respiratory movements associated with sustained or prolonged muscle efforts.

TWELFTH PAIR. THE HYPOGLOSSAL.

The twelfth cranial nerve, the hypoglossal, consists of peripherally coursing nerve-fibers which serve to connect the nerve-cells from which they arise with the musculature of the tongue.

Origin.—The axons composing the hypoglossal nerve arise from a collection of nerve-cells situated beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle. This nucleus is elongated and extends from the medullary striæ downward as far as the lower border of the olivary body. It is located ventro-laterally to the spinal canal. After leaving the cells of the nucleus the axons pass forward and outward toward the surface of the medulla, from which they emerge in ten or twelve small bundles or filaments in the groove between the olivary body and the anterior pyramid. Beyond this point they unite to form a common trunk.

Distribution.—The common trunk thus formed passes out of the cranial cavity through the anterior condyloid foramen. In its course it receives filaments from the first and second cervical nerves, the sympathetic and vagus. It is finally distributed to the intrinsic muscles of the tongue and to the genio-hyo-glossus, hyo-glossus, and stylo-hyoid muscles. Branches derived from the cervical plexus pass to muscles which elevate and depress the hyoid bone.

Cortical Connections.—The hypoglossal nerve nuclei are connected with nerve-cells in the lower third of the general motor area around the inferior termination of the fissure of Rolando by axons which descend in the pyramidal tract.

Properties.—Faradization of the nerve gives rise to convulsive movements of the muscles to which it is distributed. Division of the nerve is followed by a loss of motion and an interference with deglu-

tion, mastication, and articulation, especially in the pronunciation of the consonantal sounds. In hemiplegia, complicated with paralysis of the tongue from injury to the hypoglossal tract, the opposite side of the tongue is involved in the paralysis. On protrusion of the tongue the tip is deviated to the paralyzed side, due to the unopposed action of the muscle of the opposite side.

FIG. 257.—DISTRIBUTION OF THE HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE.—1. Root of the fifth nerve. 2. Ganglion of Gasser. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 12. Branches and anastomoses of the fifth nerve. 11. Submaxillary ganglion. 13. Anterior belly of the digastric muscle. 14. Section of the mylo-hyoid muscle. 15. GLOSSO-PHARYNGEAL NERVE. 16. Ganglion of Andersch. 17, 18. Branches of the glossopharyngeal nerve. 19, 19. Pneumogastric. 20, 21. Ganglia of the pneumogastric. 22, 22. Superior laryngeal branch of the pneumogastric. 23. Spinal accessory nerve. 24. Sublingual nerve. 25. Descendens noni. 26. Thyro-hyoid branch. 27. Terminal branches. 28. Two branches, one to the genio-hyo-glossus and the other to the genio-hyoid muscle.—(*Sappey*.)

Function.—The hypoglossal nerve transmits nerve impulses from its center of origin to the intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the tongue, endowing them with motility. The coördinate activity of these muscles favorably assists mastication, articulation, and deglutition.

CHAPTER XXII.

THE SYMPATHETIC NERVE SYSTEM.

The sympathetic nerve system consists of a number of ganglia united one to another by intervening cords of nerve-fibers. These ganglia may for convenience of description be divided into three groups: viz., the vertebral or lateral, the pre-vertebral or collateral, and the peripheral or terminal.

The *vertebral* ganglia are arranged in the form of chains, one on each side of the vertebral column. The number of ganglia in the chain varies in animals of different and in animals of the same species. In man the number varies from 20 to 22. Each chain may be divided into a cervical, a thoracic, a lumbar, a sacral, and a coccygeal portion. The cervical portion is usually described as consisting of three ganglia—a superior, a middle, and an inferior. This statement is open to question, however, as the middle one is frequently absent and the inferior one is regarded by some anatomists as belonging to the pre-vertebral series. The thoracic portion consists of ten or eleven ganglia, the lumbar and sacral portions of four each and the coccygeal portion of one, the so-called ganglion impar.

The *pre-vertebral* ganglia are also united in the form of a chain situated in the abdominal cavity. The ganglia constituting this chain are known as the semilunar, the renal, the superior and inferior mesenteric, and hypogastric.

The *peripheral* ganglia are in more or less close relation with the tissues and organs in different parts of the body. As members of this group may be mentioned the ciliary or ophthalmic, the sphenopalatine, the otic, the submaxillary and the sublingual ganglia; the ganglia in walls of the heart, the respiratory organs, the intestines, bladder, etc.

The general arrangement of the sympathetic ganglia, their inter-connecting cords and branches, is shown in Figs. 258 and 259.

Structure of the Ganglia.—Each ganglion consists of a capsule or stroma of connective tissue in which are contained large numbers of nerve-cells, nerve-fibers medullated and non-medullated, and blood-vessels. The nerve-cells give origin to two or more dendrites, which, perforating a nucleated capsule by which each cell is surrounded, branch and rebranch and interlace to form a pericapsular plexus. Each cell gives origin also to an axon, which as it leaves

FIG. 258.—CERVICAL AND THORACIC PORTION OF THE SYMPATHETIC.—1, 1, 1. Right pneumogastric. 2. Glosso-pharyngeal. 3. Spinal accessory. 4. Divided trunk of the sublingual. 5, 5, 5. Chain of ganglia of the sympathetic. 6. Superior cervical ganglion. 7. Branches from this ganglion to the carotid. 8. Nerve of Jacobson. 9. Two filaments from the facial, one to the sphenopalatine and the other to the otic ganglion. 10. Motor oculi externus. 11. Ophthalmic ganglion,

the cell becomes invested with a sheath continuous with the capsule surrounding the cell-body. It is, however, wanting in a medullary sheath, and hence the nerve presents a gray color. Such a structure, in its entirety, is known as a sympathetic neuron.

Structure of the Interconnecting Cords.—The interconnecting cords are composed of non-medullated and medullated nerve-fibers. The former are the axons of cells found in the ganglia more centrally located; the latter, as will be stated later, are derived from the spinal nerves, from the fibers of which, however, they differ in character, being much smaller and finer. The fibers of the interconnecting cords, as a rule, transmit nerve impulses from the more centrally to the more peripherally located ganglia, and are therefore termed *rami efferentes*. In the vertebral chain some of the cords transmit nerve impulses upward, others downward, others again forward, to the pre-vertebral and peripheral ganglia.

Among the *rami efferentes*, interconnecting cords, there are some which possess special interest for the physiologist, viz.:

1. The *cervical*, which connects the thoracic ganglia with the superior cervical ganglion. It is composed mainly of medullated nerve-fibers which are derived originally from the spinal nerves.
2. The *great splanchnic nerve*, formed by the union of branches from the fifth to the tenth thoracic ganglia. It connects these ganglia with the semilunar ganglion.
3. The *small splanchnic nerve*, formed by the union of branches from the ninth and tenth thoracic ganglia. It connects these ganglia with the solar and renal plexuses.

Distribution of the Sympathetic Fibers.—It has been demonstrated by histologic and physiologic methods of investigation that the sympathetic non-medullated fibers which have their origin in

receiving a motor filament from the motor oculi communis and a sensory filament from the nasal branch of the fifth. 12. Spheno-palatine ganglion. 13. Otic ganglion. 14. Lingual branch of the fifth nerve. 15. Submaxillary ganglion. 16, 17. Superior laryngeal nerve. 18. External laryngeal nerve. 19, 20. Recurrent laryngeal nerve. 21, 22, 23. Anterior branches of the upper four cervical nerves, sending filaments to the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion. 24. Anterior branches of the fifth and sixth cervical nerve, sending filaments to the middle cervical ganglion. 25, 26. Anterior branches of the seventh and eighth cervical and the first dorsal nerves, sending filaments to the inferior cervical ganglion. 27. Middle cervical ganglion. 28. Cord connecting the two ganglia. 29. Inferior cervical ganglion. 30, 31. Filaments connecting this with the middle ganglion. 32. Superior cardiac nerve. 33. Middle cardiac nerve. 34. Inferior cardiac nerve. 35, 35. Cardiac plexus. 36. Ganglion of the cardiac plexus. 37. Nerve following the right coronary artery. 38, 38. Intercostal nerves, with their two filaments of communication with the thoracic ganglia. 39, 40, 41. Great splanchnic nerve. 42. Lesser splanchnic nerve. 43, 43. Solar plexus. 44. Left pneumogastric. 45. Right pneumogastric. 46. Lower end of the phrenic nerve. 47. Section of the right bronchus. 48. Arch of the aorta. 49. Right auricle. 50. Right ventricle. 51, 52. Pulmonary artery. 53. Right half of the stomach. 54. Section of the diaphragm.—(*Sappey*.)

FIG. 259.—LUMBAR AND SACRAL PORTIONS OF THE SYMPATHETIC.—1. Section of the diaphragm. 2. Lower end of the esophagus. 3. Left half of the stomach. 4. Small intestine. 5. Sigmoid flexure of the colon. 6. Rectum. 7. Bladder. 8. Prostate. 9. Lower end of the left pneumogastric. 10. Lower end of the right pneumogastric. 11. Solar plexus. 12. Lower end of the great splanchnic nerve. 13. Lower end of the lesser splanchnic nerve. 14, 14. Last two thoracic ganglia. 15, 15. The four lumbar ganglia. 16, 16, 17, 17. Branches from the lumbar ganglia. 18. Superior mesenteric plexus. 19, 21, 22, 23. Aortic lumbar plexus. 20. Inferior mesenteric plexus. 24, 24. Sacral portion of the sympathetic. 25, 25, 26, 26, 27, 27. Hypogastric plexus. 28, 29, 30. Tenth, eleventh, and twelfth dorsal nerves. 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39. Lumbar and sacral nerves.—(*Sappey*.)

the cells of the sympathetic ganglia, vertebral, pre-vertebral, and peripheral, are distributed ultimately and directly to but two structures: viz., *non-striated muscle* and *secretory epithelium*. Moreover, there is no evidence to warrant the assumption that these structures (with the exception of the heart) ever receive nerve impulses *directly from the spinal or cranial nerves*. All nerve impulses which influence their activities, either in the way of excitation or inhibition, emanate *directly though not originally* from the sympathetic ganglion cells. Since non-striated muscles are found in the walls of blood-vessels, in the walls of hollow viscera, and around hair-follicles, and since secretory epithelium is found in all glands, there is every reason to believe that the ganglia in some way are associated with vaso-motor and vaso-inhibitor, viscero-motor and viscero-inhibitor, pilo-motor and secretor phenomena.

The Anatomic Relations of the Sympathetic and Cerebro-spinal Systems.—The sympathetic ganglia are connected with the spinal nerves by two branches, one white, the other gray in color, and known respectively as the white and gray *rami communicantes*. These two rami differ somewhat in their topographic distribution. The white rami are found passing only from those spinal nerves included between the first thoracic and second or third lumbar and their corresponding ganglia. The gray rami, on the contrary, are found passing from the ganglia to each of the spinal nerves. In the cervical region, where the ganglia do not correspond in number with the cervical nerves, each ganglion gives off two or more gray rami. In man the superior cervical ganglion sends gray rami to the first four cervical nerves; the middle and inferior ganglia apparently send gray rami to the fifth and sixth, the seventh and eighth nerves respectively.

The **white rami** are composed of fine medullated nerve-fibers which arise from nerve-cells situated in the lateral portion of the gray matter in the thoracic and lumbar regions of the spinal cord. From this origin they pass forward into the ventral roots of the spinal nerves, in which they are contained until the spinal nerve formed by the union of the ventral and dorsal roots divides into its anterior and posterior divisions. At this point the fine medullated nerve-fibers leave the common trunk and pass forward into the corresponding vertebral ganglion, around the cell-bodies of which some of the fibers at once arborize. Other fibers, however, pass through this ganglion and ascend or descend the cord for a variable distance, and arborize around the cells of more or less distant ganglia; others again pass forward into the pre-vertebral and even the peripheral ganglia before they finally terminate. The nerve-cells in the spinal cord are thus brought into relation with the ganglia of all three chains, though for each cell there is but one ganglion terminal,

one cell station, between the spinal cord and the tissues. Though innervated by the spinal cord, these structures receive their nerve impulses, as previously stated, not directly but indirectly through the ganglion cells. The medullated nerve-fibers coming from the spinal cord are known as pre-ganglionic fibers; the non-medullated fibers, passing from the ganglia, as post-ganglionic fibers.

The **gray rami** are composed of non-medullated nerve-fibers, axons of the cells in the vertebral or lateral ganglia. After their emergence from the ganglia they take a backward direction and enter the spinal nerve-trunks, in company with which they pass to the periphery, to be finally distributed to structures in the skin: viz., non-striated muscles of blood-vessels, non-striated muscles of the hair-follicles and epithelium of glands. They may therefore be regarded as having vaso-motor, pilo-motor, and secretor functions.

Afferent Sympathetic Fibers.—With the foregoing groups of efferent fibers, the sympathetic nerves, in the thoracic and lumbar regions more especially, contain a number of afferent fibers which when stimulated give rise to sensations of pain or to reflex phenomena. The routes by which these afferent fibers reach the spinal cord lead, on the one hand, into and through the gray rami to the ganglia on the posterior roots, where they have their cells of origin; and, on the other hand, into and through the white rami. The number of afferent fibers in any trunk in comparison with the efferent is quite small.

FUNCTIONS OF THE SYMPATHETIC SYSTEM.

The view according to which the sympathetic system is to be regarded as an independent apparatus endowed with functions of its own and in nowise directly dependent for its activities on the spinal cord, is at the present time discarded. Peripheral structures cease to exhibit their characteristic functions after division of the spinal nerves in connection with their related ganglia. This does not exclude the possibility of the sympathetic cell-body, in virtue of the interchanges between it and the blood and lymph by which it is surrounded, maintaining its own nutrition and exerting a favorable influence over the nutrition of the peripheral tissues to which its efferent branches are distributed.

The nerve-tissue in its entirety may be regarded as a single system which may be functionally divided into a nerve system of animal and a nerve system of vegetative life, according as the nerve energies originating in and emanating from the central nervous system are transmitted directly to the skeletal muscles or indirectly, through the intervention of a sympathetic neuron, to visceral muscles and glands. In the former system but one neuron, the spino-periph-

eric, connects the spinal cord proper with the muscle; in the latter system there are two, the spino-ganglionic and the ganglio-peripheric.

From the distribution of the post-ganglionic fibers it may be inferred that the activities of the vascular and visceral muscles, either in the way of augmentation or inhibition, the activities of the muscles of the hair-follicles, and of the epithelium of glands, are called forth by the ganglia in consequence of the arrival of nerve impulses coming from the spinal cord through the pre-ganglionic fibers. Experimental observations show this to be true. The extent to which these different modes of activity manifest themselves in one or more regions of the body will depend to some extent on the portion of the sympathetic system subjected to experimental procedures.

The Functions of the Cervical Portion.—If the sympathetic cord central to the superior cervical ganglion be stimulated with the induced electric current, among the resulting phenomena there will be observed dilatation of the pupil, retraction of the nictitating membrane in animals possessing it, contraction of the blood-vessels of the skin and mucous membrane in different parts of the head and face, contraction of the blood-vessels of the salivary glands, increase of secretion from the submaxillary gland, the perspiratory and mucous glands, erection of hairs in different localities of the head and neck, and in the dog *dilatation* of the blood-vessels of the lips, gums, and hard palate. If the cervical cord be divided, opposite effects will be observed: viz., contraction of the pupil, dilatation and passive congestion of the blood-vessels, a rise in temperature, and a loss of the power of erecting hairs. Stimulation of the peripheral end causes a disappearance of the latter and a reappearance of the former phenomena. These facts indicate that the cervical portion is efferent in function. The fibers composing it are medullated nerve-fibers derived from the thoracic or dorsal nerves from the first to the seventh. From the several sources the fibers pass *via* the white rami into the vertebral chain, and thence without interruption to the superior cervical ganglion, in and around the cells of which their end-tufts arborize in their characteristic manner.

That the superior cervical ganglion is the cell station between the spinal cord and the peripheral organs is shown by the fact discovered and applied by Langley that the intravenous injection of nicotin or the local application of it to the ganglion itself, impairs the conductivity of the terminals of pre-ganglionic fibers, after which their stimulation has no effect on the ganglion cells, though the latter retain their activity, as shown on direct stimulation. Of the nerve-centers in the spinal cord which through pre-ganglionic fibers influence peripheral structures, some appear to be in a state of constant activity: *e. g.*, the vaso-constrictor centers and the pupillo-dilatator centers. In how far this action is automatic or autochthonic, or reflex, is uncertain.

The Functions of the Thoracic Portion.—The phenomena which follow stimulation of this portion of the sympathetic system resemble in a general way those observed in the head when the cervical portion is stimulated. The situation of the resulting phenomena will vary in accordance with the part the subject of the experiment. For an understanding of the results of experiment the origin and distribution of the following nerve-branches must be kept in view:

- (a) *The cardiac nerves* which have their origin in the first thoracic ganglion. From this point they pass by way of the annulus of Vieussens to the inferior cervical ganglion (from which they probably receive additional fibers) and thence to the heart. Stimulation of these nerves gives rise to an increased frequency and an augmentation in the force of the heart-beat. The pre-ganglionic fibers by which these cells are excited to activity emerge from the cord by the first and second thoracic nerves.
- (b) *The splanchnic nerves* the roots of which emerge from the fourth to the tenth or eleventh thoracic ganglia. The fibers composing these nerves are for the most part pre-ganglionic and derived from the corresponding spinal nerves. The cell stations of the splanchnic fibers are in the semilunar, superior mesenteric, and renal ganglia. From these ganglia non-medullated post-ganglionic fibers pass peripherally to the walls of the intestines, the blood-vessels of the intestines, liver, kidneys, spleen, etc. *Stimulation* of the great splanchnic produces inhibition of the intestinal movements, a marked primary contraction of the intestinal blood-vessels and other viscera, followed by dilatation, coincidently with which there is a primary rise succeeded by a fall of blood-pressure throughout the body. *Division* of the nerve is followed by dilatation of the intestinal vessels and a fall of blood-pressure. *Stimulation* of the central end of the divided nerve excites the activity of the general vaso-motor center, as shown by the rise of the general blood-pressure. Stimulation of the smaller splanchnics gives rise to a slight primary contraction of the blood-vessels, soon followed by a marked dilatation. These facts indicate that the splanchnic nerves contain visceral nerves which inhibit intestinal movements, vaso-motor fibers both augmentor and inhibitor. The presence of secretory nerves for the intestinal glands is disputed.
- (c) *The cutaneous nerves* for the *trunk* leave the lateral ganglia by the gray rami, enter the thoracic spinal nerves, and pass in company with them to their terminations, to be ultimately distributed to the walls of the blood-vessels, the arrectores pilorum muscles, and the sweat-glands. The pre-ganglionic fibers come from the spinal nerves by the white rami. Their functions are vaso-motor, pilo-motor, and secretor. The cutaneous nerves

for the *fore-limbs* have their origin from cells in the stellate ganglion (first dorsal). After a short upward course they enter the trunks of the nerves composing the brachial plexus. The pre-ganglionic fibers come from the white rami of the fourth to the ninth thoracic nerves. After entering the lateral chain they take an upward direction and arborize around the cells of the stellate ganglion. The cutaneous nerves for the *hind-limbs* are derived from the lower lumbar and the upper sacral ganglia. They also enter the spinal nerves by the gray rami and pass to the blood-vessels and glands of the skin. The pre-ganglionic fibers come from the twelfth thoracic to the third lumbar nerves. In both the brachial and sciatic nerves vaso-motor fibers (constrictors and dilators) and secretor nerves are present, as shown by experimental methods (see page 331).

The Functions of the Lumbo-sacral Portion.—From the ganglia of the lumbar and sacral regions gray rami enter the lumbar and sacral nerves and accompany them to their distribution. In the lumbar region the vertebral chain contains a number of pre-ganglionic fibers which have descended from the thoracic region as well as fibers which have come into the chain by the white rami from the lumbar nerves themselves. Many of these fibers pass to the inferior mesenteric ganglion, in which they find their cell station. Fibers from the sacral cord pass into the hypogastric plexus. The course and distribution of the individual nerves is complicated and involved. In a general way it may be said that these two regions of the lateral chain send visceromotor and visceroinhibitor, vasoconstrictor and dilator nerves to the pelvic viscera and to the external organs of generation. Their function therefore is to regulate the activities of the viscera as well as the blood-supply in accordance with functional needs.

The Functions of the Cephalic Ganglia.—The ganglia situated in the head are usually described in connection with and as constituent parts of the cranial nerve system. They, however, bear the same relation to the cranial nerves that the ganglia of the trunk bear to the spinal nerves. They consist of ganglion cells *from* which post-ganglionic fibers pass to glands, blood-vessels, and non-striated muscles, and *to* which pre-ganglionic fibers pass from the cranial nerves. Motor and sensor nerves pass through one or more ganglia, though they have no anatomic connection with them. In their structure, distribution, and functions they closely resemble the collateral ganglia of the abdominal sympathetic:

1. The *ciliary* or *ophthalmic ganglion* is situated in the orbital cavity posterior to the eyeball. It is small in size, gray in color, and consists of a connective-tissue stroma containing nerve-cells. From these cells post-ganglionic fibers emerge which, after a

short course forward, penetrate the eyeball and terminate in the circular fibers of the iris and the ciliary muscle. Pre-ganglionic fibers of small size, and similar in their anatomic features to the fibers of the white rami of the spinal nerves, leave the motor oculi by a short root from the inferior division and arborize around the ganglionic cells. *Stimulation* of the pre-ganglionic fibers gives rise to contraction of the circular fibers of the iris, with a diminution in the size of the pupil, and contraction of the ciliary muscle with accommodation of the eye for near vision. *Division* of these fibers is followed by the opposite results. Post-ganglionic fibers from the superior cervical ganglion which come through the cavernous plexus pass through the ciliary ganglion to the blood-vessels of the iris and retina which are vaso-constrictor in function. Sensor fibers from the peripheral division of the fifth nerve pass to the cornea and endow it with sensibility.

2. The *spheno-palatine ganglion* is situated in the spheno-maxillary fossa. Its nerve-cells send non-medullated post-ganglionic fibers to the blood-vessels and glands of the mucous membrane of the nasal and oral regions. Stimulation of the ganglion gives rise to dilatation of the blood-vessels and increase of secretion in this entire region. The pre-ganglionic fibers are derived from the seventh or facial nerve by way of the great petrosal. Sensor fibers from the superior maxillary division of the fifth nerve pass through the ganglion to the same regions.
3. The *otic ganglion* is situated just below the foramen ovale and internal to the third division of the fifth nerve. The post-ganglionic fibers pass to the parotid gland by way of the auriculo-temporal division of the fifth nerve, and to the blood-vessels of the lower lip, cheek, and gums. The pre-ganglionic fibers are derived from the efferent fibers in the glosso-pharyngeal or ninth nerve, by way of Jacobsen's nerve and the small petrosal. *Stimulation* of these nerves in any part of their course gives rise to vascular dilatation and increase of secretion in the region of their distribution. Motor fibers from the small or motor root of the fifth nerve pass through this ganglion to the tensor tympani muscle.
4. The *submaxillary* and *sublingual ganglia* are situated close to the corresponding glands. Their post-ganglionic fibers pass to the blood-vessels and gland-cells. The pre-ganglionic fibers are derived from the seventh or facial nerve through the chorda tympani branch. Stimulation of the chorda or of the ganglia themselves gives rise to marked dilatation of the blood-vessels and an increased flow of saliva. It therefore contains vaso-dilatator and secretor fibers for these glands. Vaso-constrictor

and a few secretor nerves, it will be recalled, come to these glands from the superior cervical ganglion.

Peripheral Ganglia.—Among the peripheral ganglia may be mentioned those in the heart and those in the intestinal walls. The pre-ganglionic fibers are contained in the trunk of the vagus nerve. Stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided vagus gives rise to inhibition of the heart, contraction of the walls of the stomach and intestines, secretion from the gastric and perhaps the pancreatic gland.

CHAPTER XXIII.

PHONATION; ARTICULATE SPEECH.

Phonation, the emission of vocal sounds, is accomplished by the vibration of two elastic membranes which cross the lumen of the larynx antero-posteriorly and which are thrown into vibration by a blast of air from the lungs.

Articulate speech is a modification of the voice produced by the teeth and the muscles of the lips and tongue and employed for the expression of ideas.

The larynx, the organ of the voice, is situated in the forepart of the neck, occupying the space between the hyoid bone and the upper extremity of the trachea. In this situation it communicates with the cavity of the pharynx above and the cavity of the trachea below. From its anatomic relations and its internal structure—the interpolation of the elastic membranes—the larynx subserves the two widely different yet related functions, respiration and phonation.

THE ANATOMY OF THE LARYNX.

The larynx consists primarily of a series of cartilages united one with another in such a manner as to form a more or less rigid framework, yet possessing at its different joints, a certain amount of motion; and, secondarily, of muscles and nerves which conjointly impart to the cartilages the degree of movement necessary to the performance of the laryngeal functions. It is covered externally by fibrous tissue and lined throughout by mucous membrane continuous with that lining the pharynx and trachea.

The larynx presents a superior or pharyngeal and an inferior or tracheal opening. The pharyngeal opening is triangular in shape, the base being directed forward, the apex backward. The plane of this opening in the living subject is almost vertical. The tracheal opening is circular in shape and corresponds in size with the upper ring of the trachea. Viewed from above, the general cavity of the larynx is seen to be partially subdivided by two membranous bands—the *vocal bands* or cords—which run from before backward in a horizontal plane. The space between the bands, the *glottis*, varies in size and shape from moment to moment in accordance with respiratory and phonatory necessities. The average width of the glottis, at

its widest part, during quiet respiration is about 13.5 mm. in men and 11.5 mm. in women (Semon). With the advent of phonation the vocal membranes are at once approximated, and to such an extent that the glottic opening is reduced to a mere slit. It is then spoken of as the *rima glottidis*, or chink of the glottis.

The space above the vocal bands, the supra-glottic or supra-rimal space, is triangular in shape and extends from the pharyngeal opening to the plane of the vocal bands. The mucous membrane lining the walls of this space, presents on either side, just above the vocal bands, a crescentic fold which runs from before backward, and is known as the false vocal band or cord. Between the true and false bands there is a cavity or space prolonged upward and outward for some distance, forming what is known as the ventricle of the larynx. The space below the vocal bands, the infra-glottic or infra-rimal space, is narrow above and elongated from before backward, but wide and circular below, corresponding to the lumen of the trachea.

The Laryngeal Cartilages, Articulations, and Ligaments.—

The cartilages which compose the framework of the larynx are nine in number, three of which are single: viz., the cricoid, the thyroid, and the epiglottis, while six occur in pairs: viz., the arytenoids, the cornicula laryngis, and the cuneiform.

The *cricoid* cartilage is the foundation cartilage, and affords support to the remaining cartilages and the structures attached to them. In shape it resembles a signet-ring, the broad quadrate portion of which is directed backward,

FIG. 260.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF THE HUMAN LARYNX, SHOWING THE VOCAL BANDS. 1. Ventricle of the larynx. 2. Superior vocal cord. 3. Inferior vocal cord. 4. Arytenoid cartilage. 5. Section of the arytenoid muscle. 6, 6. Inferior portion of the cavity of the larynx. 7. Section of the posterior portion of the cricoid cartilage. 8. Section of the anterior portion of the cricoid cartilage. 9. Superior border of the cricoid cartilage. 10. Section of the thyroid cartilage. 11, 11. Superior portion of the cavity of the larynx. 12, 13. Arytenoid gland. 14, 16. Epiglottis. 15, 17. Adipose tissue. 18. Section of the hyoid bone. 19, 19, 20. Trachea.—(Sappey.)

while the narrow circular portion is directed forward. It rests upon the upper ring of the trachea, to which it is firmly attached by fibrous tissue. The posterior upper border of the quadrate portion presents on either side an oval convex facet for articulation with the arytenoid cartilage. The long axis of this facet is directed downward, outward, and forward.

FIG. 261.—LARYNGEAL CARTILAGES AND LIGAMENTS, ANTERIOR SURFACE. 1. Hyoid bone. 2, 2, 3, 3. Greater and lesser cornua. 4. *Thyroid cartilage*. 5. *Thyro-hyoid membrane*. 6. *Thyro-hyoid ligaments*. 7. *Cartilaginous nodule*. 8. *Cricoid cartilage*. 9. *The crico-thyroid ligaments*. 10. *The crico-thyroid membrane*. 11. *Trachea*.—(Sappey.)

FIG. 262.—LARYNGEAL CARTILAGES AND LIGAMENTS. POSTERIOR SURFACE. 1, 1. *Thyroid cartilage*. 2. *Cricoid cartilage*. 3, 3. *Arytenoid cartilages*. 4, 4. *Crico-arytenoid articulations*. 5, 5. *Crico-thyroid articulations*. 6. *Union of the cricoid cartilage and of the trachea*. 7. *Epiglottis*. 8. *Ligament uniting it to the reentering angle of the thyroid cartilage*.—(Sappey.)

The *thyroid*, the largest of the laryngeal cartilages, is composed of two flat quadrilateral plates, united anteriorly, at an angle of about 90 degrees. Each plate is directed backward and outward and terminates in a free border, which is prolonged upward and downward for some distance, terminating in two processes, the superior and inferior cornua. The upper border of the thyroid is deeply notched in front. The inferior border overlaps laterally the cricoid.

The *epiglottis* is a leaf-shaped piece of cartilage attached to the thyroid at the median notch. It is firmly united by membranes and ligaments to the thyroid and arytenoid cartilages and to the base of the tongue.

The *arytenoid cartilages* are two in number and symmetric in shape. Each cartilage is a triangular pyramid, the apex of which is recurved, and directed backward and inward. The base presents three angles—an anterior, an external, and an internal. The anterior angle is long and pointed and projects forward in a horizontal plane. It serves for the attachment of the vocal membranes and is therefore termed the *vocal process*. The external angle is short, rounded, and prominent, and serves for the attachment of muscles. The internal angle affords a point of insertion for a ligament. The inferior surface of the arytenoid is concave for articulation with the convex surface of the cricoid facet. Its long axis, however, is directed from before backward and almost at right angles to the long axis of the cricoid facet.

The *cornicula laryngis* and the *cuneiform* cartilages are small nodules of yellow elastic cartilage embedded in a fold of membrane which unites the arytenoid and the epiglottis. They are fragments of a ring of cartilage which in some animals—*e. g.*, anteater—extends between these two cartilages.

The *crico-thyroid articulation* is formed by the apposition of the tip of the inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage and an articular facet on the side of the cricoid. The joint is provided with a synovial membrane and enclosed by a capsular ligament. The movements permitted at this joint take place around a horizontal axis and consist of an upward and downward movement of both the thyroid and cricoid, combined with a sliding movement of the latter upward and backward.

The *crico-arytenoid articulation* is formed by the apposition of the articulating surfaces of the cricoid and arytenoid cartilages. This joint is provided with a synovial membrane and enclosed by a loose capsular ligament which would permit of an extensive sliding of the arytenoid cartilage downward and outward were it not prevented by the posterior crico-arytenoid ligament, which is attached, on the one hand, to the cricoid, and, on the other, to the inner angle of the arytenoid. The movements permitted at this joint are: (1) Rotation of the arytenoid around a vertical axis which lies close to its inner surface. (2) A sliding motion inward and forward with inward rotation of the vocal process, or a sliding motion outward and backward with outward rotation of the vocal process. In either case the process describes an arc of a circle. (3) A sliding movement towards the median line in consequence of which the inner surfaces of the arytenoids are brought almost in contact.

The *crico-thyroid membrane* is composed mainly of elastic tissue. It may be divided into a mesial and two lateral portions. The mesial portion is well developed, triangular in shape, and unites the contiguous borders of the cricoid and thyroid cartilages. The lateral portion is attached below to the superior border of the cricoid. From this attachment it passes upward and inward under cover of the thyroid. As it ascends it elongates and becomes thinner, and is finally attached anteriorly to the thyroid near the median line, and posteriorly to the vocal process of the arytenoid, thus constituting the *inferior thyro-arytenoid* ligament. It is covered internally by mucous membrane and externally by the internal thyro-arytenoid muscle. The free edge of this ligament forms the basis of the true vocal band. A superior thyro-arytenoid ligament forms the basis of the false vocal band.

The *thyro-hyoid* membrane, composed of elastic tissue, unites the superior border of the thyroid to the hyoid bone.

The *mucous membrane* lining the larynx is thin and pale. As it passes downward it is reflected over the superior thyro-arytenoid ligament, and assists in the formation of the false vocal band; it then passes into and lines the ventricle, after which it is reflected inward over the superior border of the thyro-arytenoid muscle and ligament, and assists in the formation of the true vocal band; it then returns upon itself and passes downward over the lateral portion of the crico-thyroid membrane into the trachea.

The thin, free, reduplicated edge of the mucous membrane constitutes the true vocal band. The surface of the mucous membrane is covered by ciliated epithelium except in the immediate neighborhood of the vocal bands.

The *vocal bands* are attached anteriorly to the thyroid cartilage near the receding angle and posteriorly to the vocal processes of the arytenoid cartilages. They vary in length in the male from 20 to 25 mm. and in the female from 15 to 20 mm.

The Muscles of the Larynx.—The muscles which have a direct action on the cartilages of the larynx and determine the position of the vocal bands both for respiratory and phonatory purposes, and which regulate their tension as well, are nine in number and take their names from their points of origin and insertion: viz., two posterior crico-arytenoids, two lateral crico-arytenoids, two thyro-arytenoids, one arytenoid, and two crico-thyroids (Figs. 263 and 264).

The *posterior crico-arytenoid* muscle lies on the posterior surface of the quadrate plate of the cricoid cartilage, on either side of the median line, from which it takes its origin. The fibers of the muscle pass upward and outward and in their course converge to be inserted into the external angle of the arytenoid cartilage. The superior and more horizontally directed fibers rotate the arytenoid

around its vertical axis; the inferior and obliquely directed fibers draw the cartilage downward and inward. As a result of the action of the muscle in its entirety, the vocal process is turned upward and outward, and as the vocal band is carried with it the glottis is widened, a condition necessary to the free entrance of air into the lungs (Fig.

FIG. 263.—POSTERIOR VIEW OF THE MUSCLES OF THE LARYNX. 1. Posterior crico-arytenoid muscle. 2, 3, 4. Different fasciculi of the arytenoid muscle. 5. Aryteno-epiglottidean muscle.—(Sappey.)

265). Since the contraction of the crico-arytenoid has this result, it is generally spoken of as the *abductor* or *respiratory* muscle.

The *lateral crico-arytenoid* muscle arises from the side of the cricoid cartilage. From this point its fibers are directed upward and backward to be inserted into the external process of the arytenoid. Its action is to draw the arytenoid cartilage forward and inward, thus approximating and relaxing the vocal band.

The *thyro-arytenoid* muscle arises from the inferior two-thirds of the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage just external to the median line. From this origin the fibers pass backward and outward,

FIG. 264.—LATERAL VIEW OF THE MUSCLES OF THE LARYNX. 1. Body of the hyoid bone. 2. Vertical section of the thyroid cartilage. 3. Horizontal section of the thyroid cartilage turned downward to show the deep attachment of the crico-thyroid muscle. 4. Facet of articulation of the small cornu of the thyroid cartilage with the cricoid cartilage. 5. Facet on the cricoid cartilage. 6. Superior attachment of the crico-thyroid muscle. 7. Posterior crico-arytenoid muscle. 8, 10. Arytenoid muscle. 9. Thyro-arytenoid muscle. 11. Aryteno-epiglottidean muscle. 12. Middle thyro-hyoid ligament. 13. Lateral thyro-hyoid ligament.—(Sappey.)

to be inserted into the anterior surface and external angle of the arytenoid cartilage. The inner portion of the muscle lies close to and supports, if it does not constitute a part of, the vocal band. The action of the thyro-arytenoid muscle in conjunction with the lateral crico-arytenoid is to rotate the arytenoid cartilage around the vertical axis and to draw the vocal process forward and inward, thus carrying the vocal cord toward the median line. When the muscles of the two sides simultaneously contract, the vocal bands are closely approximated and the space between them, the *rima vocalis*, reduced to a mere slit, one of the conditions essential to phonation (Fig. 266).

The *arytenoid* muscle consists (1) of transversely arranged fibers which arise from and are inserted into the outer surface of the oppo-

FIG. 265.—GLOTTIS WIDELY OPENED FROM SIMULTANEOUS CONTRACTION OF BOTH CRICO-ARYTENOID MUSCLES. *b*. Epiglottis. *rs*. False vocal band. *ri*. True vocal band. *a*. Space between the arytenoids. *c*. Cuneiform cartilages. *ir*. Interarytenoid fold. *rap*. Aryepiglottic fold. *cr*. Cartilage rings.—(Mandl.)

FIG. 266.—POSITION OF THE VOCAL BANDS DUE TO THE SIMULTANEOUS CONTRACTION OF BOTH LATERAL CRICO-ARYTENOID MUSCLES AND BOTH THYRO-ARYTENOID MUSCLES. *b*. Epiglottis. *rs*. False vocal band. *ri*. True vocal band. *or*. Space between the arytenoid cartilages, the *glottis respiratoria*. *ar*. Arytenoid cartilages. *c*. Cuneiform cartilages. *rap*. Aryepiglottic fold. *ir*. Interarytenoid fold.—(Mandl.)

site arytenoid cartilages, and (2) of obliquely directed fibers which arise from the outer angle of one arytenoid to be inserted into the apex of the other. In their course they decussate in the median line. The action of this muscle is to approximate the arytenoid cartilages and thus obliterate that portion of the glottis between the vocal processes, the *rima respiratoria*, and so direct the expiratory blast of air toward and through the *rima vocalis*.

The collective actions of the three foregoing muscles is to close or constrict the glottis, and for this reason they are spoken of as the *adductor* or *phonatory* muscles.

The *crico-thyroid* muscle arises from the side and front of the cricoid cartilage and is inserted above into the lower border of the thyroid cartilage. The action of this muscle is to draw up the anterior part of the cricoid cartilage toward the thyroid, which remains

stationary, and to swing the quadrate plate of the cricoid and the arytenoid cartilages downward and backward. This movement has the result of tensing the vocal bands. The cricoid is at the same time drawn backward by the action of the more longitudinally disposed fibers.

Nerves of the Larynx.—The nerves which innervate the muscles of the larynx and endow the mucous membrane with sensibility are derived from the vagus trunk. The superior laryngeal is for the most part sensor and distributed to the mucous membrane, though it contains motor fibers for the crico-thyroid muscle. The inferior laryngeal is purely motor and is distributed to all the muscles with the exception of the crico-thyroid.

THE MECHANISM OF PHONATION.

Phonation, the production of vocal sounds in the larynx, is the result of the vibration of the vocal bands caused by an expiratory blast of air from the lungs. That a sound may arise it is essential that the glottis be approximately closed and the vocal bands be made more or less tense.

The closure of the glottis—the approximation of the vocal processes and the vocal bands—is accomplished, it will be recalled, by the contraction of the lateral crico-arytenoid, the arytenoid, and the thyro-arytenoid muscles. The increase in tension is accomplished by the contraction of the crico-thyroid and the thyro-arytenoid muscles, the former by the backward displacement of the cricoid and arytenoid cartilages, the latter by converting the natural concave edge of the vocal band to a straight line. The lengthening and tensing of the vocal bands by the crico-thyroid muscle is regarded by some investigators as a coarse means, the approximation of the free edges by the thyro-arytenoid, as a finer means, of adjustment for the production of slight changes in the pitch of sounds. The extent to which the glottis is closed and the membranes tensed will depend, however, on the pitch of the sound to be emitted. The appearance presented by the glottis just previous to the emission of a note of medium pitch, as determined by laryngologic examination, is shown in Fig. 267. When the foregoing conditions in the glottis are realized, the air stored or collected in the lungs is forced by the contraction of the expiratory muscles, through the narrow space between the bands. As a result of the resistance offered by this narrow outlet and the force of the expiratory muscles the air within the lungs and trachea is subjected to pressure, and as soon as the pressure attains a certain level the vocal bands are thrown into vibrations, which in turn impart to the column of air in the upper air-passages a corresponding series of vibrations by

which the laryngeal vibrations are reinforced. The degree of pressure to which the air in the lungs and trachea is subjected was determined by Latour to vary from 160 mm. of water for sounds of moderate, to 940 mm. of water for sounds of highest intensity. With the escape of the air or the separation of the vocal bands the vibration ceases and the sound dies away.

The Characteristics of Vocal Sounds.—In common with the sounds produced by all other music instruments, all vocal sounds are characterized by intensity, pitch and quality, tone or color.

The *intensity* or loudness of a sound depends on the extent or amplitude of the up-and-down vibration or the extent of the excursion of the vocal band on either side of the position of equilibrium or rest; and this in turn depends on the force with which the blast of air strikes the band. The more forceful the blast of air, the larger, other things being equal, will be the primary vibrations of the bands,

FIG. 267.—POSITION OF THE VOCAL BANDS PREVIOUS TO THE EMISSION OF A SOUND. *b*. Epiglottis. *rs*. False vocal band. *ri*. True vocal band. *ar*. Arytenoid cartilages.

FIG. 268.—POSITION OF THE VOCAL BANDS IN THE PRODUCTION OF NOTES OF LOW PITCH. *l*. Epiglottis. *or*. Glottis. *ns*. False vocal cord. *ni*. True vocal cord. *ar*. Arytenoid cartilages.—(Mandl.)

and hence the secondary vibrations of the air in the upper air-passages.

The *pitch* of the voice depends on the number of vibrations in a unit of time, a second. This will be conditioned by the length of the bands in vibration or the length and width of the aperture through which the air passes and the degree of tension to which the bands are subjected. In the emission of sounds of highest pitch the tension of the vocal bands and the narrowing of the glottis attain their maximum. In the emission of sounds of lowest pitch the reverse conditions obtain. In passing from the lowest to the highest pitched sounds in the range of the voice peculiar to any one individual, there is a progressive increase in both the tension of the vocal bands and the narrowing of the glottic aperture. In the production of low-pitched notes of men, those due to vibrations lying between 80 and 240 per second, the tension is regulated by the crico-thyroid muscle; the

aperture of the glottis during this time being elliptic in shape and relatively wide (Fig. 268). In the production of notes due to vibrations lying between 240 and 512 vibrations per second, the anterior fibers of the crico-thyroid muscle relax and the thyro-arytenoid muscle comes into play; by its action the vocal bands are more closely approximated and the vocal aperture reduced to a linear slit. In the high-pitched notes emitted by soprano singers the vocal bands are so closely applied to each other that only a very small portion in front, bounding a small oval aperture, is capable of vibrating (Fig. 269). The difference in the pitch of the voice in men and women is due largely to the greater size and development of the vocal bands in the former than in the latter.

The *quality* of the voice, the timbre or color, depends on the *form* combined with the intensity and pitch of the vibration. As with sounds produced by music instruments, the primary or fundamental vibration of the vocal band is complicated by the superposition of secondary or partial vibrations (overtones). The form of the vibration will therefore be a resultant of the blending of a number of different vibrations. The quality of the sound produced in the larynx is, however, modified by the resonance of the mouth and nasal cavities; certain of the overtones being reinforced by changes in the shape of the mouth cavity more especially, thus giving to the voice a somewhat different quality.

The Varieties of Voice.—The region of the music scale, comprising all vibrations between 32 and 2048 per second, with which laryngeal sounds are in accord will vary in the two sexes and in different individuals of the same sex. It is customary to classify voices, especially those of singers, into bass, baritone, tenor, contralto, mezzo-soprano, and soprano, in accordance with the regions of the music scale with which they correspond. Thus the succession of notes characteristic of the bass voice vary in pitch from F, fa', to C', do₃, or from 87 to 256 vibrations per second; those of the baritone from A, la, to F', fa₃, or from 106 to 341 vibrations per second; those of the tenor from C, do₂, to a', la₃, or from 128 to 435 vibrations per second; those of the contralto from e, mi₂, to C'', do₄, or from 160 to 512 vibrations per second; those of the mezzo-soprano from g, sol₂,

FIG. 269.—GLOTTIS SEEN WITH THE LARYNGOSCOPE DURING THE EMISSION OF HIGH-PITCHED SOUNDS. 1, 2. Base of the tongue. 3, 4. Epiglottis. 5, 6. Pharynx. 7. Arytenoid cartilages. 8. Opening between the true vocal cords. 9. Aryteno-epiglottidean folds. 10. Cartilage of Santorini. 11. Cuneiform cartilage. 12. Superior vocal cords. 13. Inferior vocal cords.—(Le Bon.)

to e", mi₄, or from 192 to 640 vibrations per second; those of the soprano from b, si₂, to g", sol₄, or 768 vibrations per second. The range of the voice is thus seen to embrace from one and three-quarters to two octaves. Some few individual singers have far exceeded this range, but they are exceptional.

Speech is the expression of ideas by means of articulate sounds. These sounds may be divided into vowel and consonant sounds.

The vowel sounds, *a, e, i, o, u*, are laryngeal sounds modified by the superposition and reinforcement of certain overtones developed in the mouth and pharynx by changes in their shapes. The number of vibrations underlying the production of each vowel sound is a matter of dispute. According to König, the sound of *a* is the result of 940 vibrations; of *e*, 1880 vibrations; of *i*, 3760 vibrations; of *o*, 470 vibrations; of *ou*, 235 vibrations.

Consonant sounds are produced by the more or less complete interruption of the vowel sounds during their passage through the organs of speech. These may be divided into:

1. Labials, *p, b, m*.
2. Labio-dentals, *f, v*.
3. Linguo-dentals, *s, z*.
4. Anterior linguo-palatals, *t, d, l, n*.
5. Posterior linguo-palatals, *k, g, h, γ, r*.

The names of these different groups of consonants indicate the region of the mouth in which they are produced and the means by which the air blast is interrupted.

THE NERVE MECHANISM OF THE LARYNX.

The nerve mechanism by which the musculature of the larynx is excited to action and coördinated so as to subserve both respiration and phonation involves the fibers contained in the superior and inferior laryngeal nerves (both branches of the vagus) and their related nerve-centers in the central nerve system.

For respiratory purposes it is essential that the lumen of the glottis shall be sufficiently large to permit the entrance and exit of air without hindrance. Laryngoscopic examination of the larynx in the human being shows that during *quiet* respiration the vocal bands are widely separated and almost stationary, moving but slightly during either inspiration or expiration. At this time, according to the investigations of Semon, the area of the glottis is approximately 160 sq. mm., somewhat less than the area of either the supraglottic or infraglottic regions, which is about 200 sq. mm. This condition of the glottis is maintained by the steady continuous contraction of the posterior crico-arytenoid muscles, the *abductors of the vocal bands*.

For phonatory purposes it is essential that the respiratory function be temporarily suspended and the vocal bands closely approximated. This is accomplished by the contraction of the remaining muscles of the larynx, with the exception of the crico-thyroid, which are collectively known as the *adductors of the vocal bands*. During phonation the adductor muscles overcome the activity of the abductors. With the cessation of phonation the abductors immediately restore the vocal bands to their former respiratory position.

The activities of these two antagonistic groups of muscles are under the control of the central nerve system. The only pathway for the excitatory nerve impulses is through the fibers of the inferior or recurrent laryngeal nerve. The relation of these nerve-fibers both centrally and peripherally, as well as their physiologic action, has been the subject of much experimentation. The results have not always been in accord, owing to the choice of animal, the use of anesthetics, strength of stimulus, etc.

As the outcome of many investigations it is believed that each muscle group is innervated by its own bundle of nerve-fibers, both of which are contained in the inferior laryngeal, though coming from two separate centers in the medulla oblongata. Russell succeeded in separating the fibers for the abductors from the fibers for the adductors in the inferior laryngeal, and in tracing them to their terminations. So completely was this done that it became possible to produce at will, through stimulation, either abduction or adduction, without contraction of the muscle of opposite function.

The *laryngeal respiratory center* was located by Semon and Horsley, in the cat, in the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle. Stimulation of this area during etherization was followed by abduction of the vocal bands. The efferent fibers of this center are believed by some investigators to leave the central nerve system in the spinal accessory nerve, by others in the lower roots of the vagus.

From the continuous activity of the abductor muscle, and the stationary position of the vocal bands, it is probable that the medullary center is in a state of continuous activity or tonus, the result probably of reflex influences.

A cortical representation for laryngeal respiratory movements has been determined by Semon and Horsley in different classes of animals. In the cat especially, stimulation of the border of the olfactory sulcus gives rise to complete abduction of the vocal bands on both sides. The representation is therefore bilateral.

The *phonatory center* was located by the same investigators in the medulla near the ala cinerea and the upper border of the calamus scriptorius. Stimulation of this area was invariably followed by bilateral adduction of the vocal bands and closure of the glottis.

A cortical representation for phonatory movements also was

located in the lower portion of the precentral convolution, near the anterior border. Stimulation of this area gives rise to marked adduction of both vocal bands, indicating that the representation is also bilateral.

Faradic stimulation of the inferior laryngeal nerve during slight ether anesthetization gives rise to closure of the glottis; the same stimulation, however, during deeper anesthetization gives rise to opening or dilatation of the glottis, a fact indicating that either the adductor muscles or their nerve terminals are depressed by the action of the ether before the muscles and nerves of opposite function. The superior laryngeal nerves contain motor fibers for the crico-thyroid muscles. Stimulation of the nerve gives rise to contraction of the muscle and increased tension of the vocal bands. It is believed that these fibers are derived originally from the efferent fibers of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve. The remaining fibers of the superior laryngeal endow the upper portion of the larynx with extreme sensibility which to a certain extent protects the air-passages against the entrance of foreign bodies. Irritation of the terminal filaments of this nerve by particles of food, solid or liquid, gives rise to marked reflex spasm of the adductor muscles and closure of the glottis; followed by a strong expiration blast of air from the lungs by which the offending particles are removed. *Division* of this nerve on both sides is followed by a paralysis of the crico-thyroid muscles, a lowering of the tension of the vocal bands, and a loss of sensibility of the laryngeal mucous membrane.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE SPECIAL SENSES.

It is one of the functions of the nerve system to bring the individual into conscious relation with the external world. This is accomplished through the intermediation of afferent nerves, connected peripherally, with highly specialized terminal organs and centrally, with specialized areas in the cerebral cortex.

Excitation of the terminal organs by material changes in the environment develops nerve impulses which, transmitted to the cortical areas, evoke sensations. These sensations, differing in character from those vague ill-defined sensations—*e. g.*, fatigue, well-being, discomfort, etc.—caused by material changes occurring within the body, are termed special sensations—*e. g.*, touch; pressure; pain; temperature; taste; smell; light and its varying qualities, intensity, hue, and tint; sound and its varying qualities, intensity, pitch, and timbre.

The terminal organs which receive the impress of the external world are the skin, tongue, nose, eye, and ear, and collectively constitute the special sense-organs. The physiologic mechanisms which underlie and develop these special sensations are known respectively as the tactile, gustatory, olfactory, optic, and auditory. Each mechanism responds to but a single form of stimulus and to no other. Thus, the stimulus for the skin is mechanic pressure; for the tongue, soluble organic and inorganic matter; for the nose, volatile or gaseous matter; for the eye, ether vibrations; for the ear, atmospheric undulations. These stimuli alone are adequate to the physiologic excitation of the different mechanisms.

The factors involved in the production of the sensations include (1) a special physical stimulus; (2) a specialized terminal organ; (3) an afferent nerve; and (4) a specialized receptive sensor cell.

Though the resulting sensations in each instance differ widely in their characteristics, it is difficult to present a satisfactory explanation for these differences. If it be assumed that the nerve impulses which ascend the different nerves of special sense are alike in quality, then it must be admitted that the character of the sensation is the expression of a specialization and organization of the cortical area. If, on the other hand, specialization of the cortex is denied, then there must be admitted a specialization of the peripheral organ—with

a resulting difference in quality or rapidity of the nerve impulses which would impress or excite the non-specialized cortex in such a way as to call forth the characteristic sensation. It is possible, however, that neither supposition is wholly correct, and that the character of the sensation depends on the construction and adaptation of the entire sense apparatus to the character of the stimulus.

Whatever the conditions for their origin and whatever their characteristics, sensations in themselves do not constitute knowledge; they are but elementary states of consciousness, raw materials out of which the mind elaborates conceptions and forms judgments as to the character of any given object in comparison with former experiences.

THE SENSE OF TOUCH.

The physiologic mechanism involved in the sense of touch includes the skin and the mucous membrane lining the mouth, the afferent nerves, their cortical connections, and nerve-cells in the cortex of the parietal lobe and the gyrus fornicatus (Figs. 226, 227).

Peripheral excitation of this mechanism develops nerve impulses which, transmitted to the cortex, evoke sensations of touch and temperature. To the skin, therefore, is ascribed a touch sense and a temperature sense. Of the touch sensations two kinds may be distinguished: viz., pressure sensations and place sensations. With the contact of an external body there arises the perception not only of the pressure, but also the perception of the place or locality of the contact. In accordance with this, it is customary to attribute to the skin a pressure sense and a location sense.

The specific physiologic stimuli to the terminal organs in the skin and oral mucous membrane are mechanic pressure and thermic vibrations.

The Skin.—The skin, which constitutes the basis for the sense of touch, covers and closely invests the entire body. It varies in thickness and delicacy in different regions, though its structure is everywhere essentially the same. As the physiologic anatomy of the skin has elsewhere been detailed (page 435), it is only necessary to state here that it is divided into a deep and a superficial layer. The *former*, known as the *derma*, consists of an inner layer of rather loose connective tissue and an outer layer of condensed connective tissue. The *latter*, known as the *epidermis*, consists of an inner layer of pigment cells and a thick outer layer of epithelial cells. The derma is characterized by the presence of elevations (papillæ) which are everywhere extremely abundant. Throughout the derma ramify blood-vessels and nerves.

The Peripheral or Terminal Organs.—Between the contact surface and the afferent nerves specialized structures are found

which serve as intermediates between the stimulus, on the one hand, and the afferent nerves, on the other hand. By virtue of their structure they are far more irritable than the nerve-fibers and hence respond more quickly to the physiologic stimulus than the nerve-fiber itself. To these specialized organs, found not only in the skin but in other sense-organs as well, the term peripheral or terminal organ is given. It is these structures that are primarily excited to activity by the physiologic stimulus, and that in turn arouse the nerve to activity. Peripheral organs are to be regarded as special modes of termination of afferent nerves and adapted for the impress of a specific stimulus. The peripheral organs of afferent nerves found in the skin and oral mucous membrane present a variety of forms, some of which are as follows:

1. *Free Endings*.—These are pointed or club-shaped processes, the ultimate terminations of afferent nerve-fibrils, found in and among epidermic cells.
2. *Tactile Cells*.—These are oval nucleated bodies found in the deeper layers of the epidermis. They rest upon or are embraced by a crescentic shaped body, the *tactile meniscus*, which in turn is directly connected with the nerve-fibril and probably a modification of it (Fig. 270).
3. *The Corpuscles of Meissner and Wagner*.—In the papillæ of the derma, especially in the palm of the hand and in the finger-tips, are found elliptical bodies consisting of a connective-tissue capsule containing a number of tactile discs with which the nerve-fibrils are connected. If the afferent nerve is traced to the capsule, it is found to lose both its neurilemma and medulla, after which the naked fibril penetrates the capsule, breaks up into a number of branches, and after pursuing a more or less spiral course becomes connected with the tactile discs (Fig. 271).
4. *Hair Wreaths*.—Just below the openings of the sebaceous gland the hair follicles are surrounded by naked axis-cylinder fibrils in the form of a wreath, which in all probability terminate in the cells of the external root-sheath. These, too, are to be regarded as part of the touch apparatus.
5. *Corpuscles of Vater or Pacini*.—These are oval-shaped structures found along the nerves distributed to the palms of the hands and

FIG. 270.—TACTILE CELLS FROM SNOUT OF FIG. a. Tactile cell. m. Tactile disc. n. Nerve-fiber.—(Stirling.)

the soles of the feet, on the nerves distributed to the external genital organs, to joints and other structures. They consist of a thick capsule of lamellated connective tissue in the interior of which is a bulb resembling granular protoplasm. The axis-cylinder of the nerve-fiber enters the capsule and becomes connected with the bulb (Fig. 272).

Other forms of peripheral organs are found in special regions of the skin as well as in different animals.

FIG. 271.—TOUCH CORPUSCLE OF MEISSNER AND WAGNER. *b*. Papilla of cutis. *d*. Nerve-fiber of touch-corpuscle. *e*, *f*. Nerve-fiber in touch-corpuscle. *g*. Cells of Malpighian layer.—*(From Stirling.)*

Touch Sense.—The area, stimulation of which evokes sensations of touch, is coextensive with the skin and that limited portion of the mucous membrane lining the mouth. Careful stimulation of the skin by means of a fine stiff bristle has revealed the fact, however, that the touch area is not continuous, but discrete, presenting itself under the form of small areas or spots, separated by relatively large areas insensitive to the same agent. Stimulation of these spots always calls forth a sensation of touch. For this reason they are known as “touch spots.” The number of such spots in any given area of skin varies considerably. Thus, in the skin of the calf fifteen such spots have been counted in a square centimeter. In the palm of the hand, from forty to fifty have been counted in an area of the same extent. They are also especially abundant in the immediate neighborhood of the hair follicles.

The peripheral end-organ associated with the touch spots in the neighborhood of a hair follicle is in all probability the wreath of nerve-fibrils surrounding the follicle. In regions devoid of hairs the end-organ is the Meissner corpuscle, for in the palmar surface of the last phalanx

of the index-finger, where the touch sense is quite acute, about 20 corpuscles are present in each square millimeter of surface. The specific stimulus necessary to evoke the sensation of touch is a deformation of the skin; and the greater this is within physiologic limits, the more pronounced is the sensation.

Pressure Sense.—The contact of an external body is attended by a certain amount of pressure, which, however, must attain a certain degree before the sensation can be evoked. This is known

as the threshold value, or the degree of liminal intensity. Since the sensations are the result of pressure, they are termed pressure sensations, and their intensity may be expressed in terms of pressure.

The sensitivity of the skin as determined by the pressure sense varies in different regions of the body and in accordance with the size of the area pressed. Thus, the liminal intensity of a stimulus for an area of nine square millimeters for the skin of the forehead is 0.002 gram; for the flexor aspect of the forearm, 0.003 gram; and for the hips, thigh, and abdomen, 0.005 gram; for the palmar surface of the finger, 0.019 gram; for the heel, 1 gram. The delicacy of the sense of touch is measured by the slight increase or decrease in the intensity of the stimulus that will produce an appreciable change in the intensity of the sensation. Not all changes in the stimulus, however, are attended by a change in the sensation. It has been determined that the latter will change only when the former changes in a definite ratio, which for the volar surface of the third phalanx of the index-finger is as 29 is to 30. Thus, other things being equal, a sensation caused by a given weight will only change with moderate stimulation when one-thirtieth of the weight is either added or subtracted. The ratio of change, however, varies in different regions of the body: thus, for the back of the hand the ratio varies from one-tenth to one-twentieth; for the tongue, one-thirtieth to one-fortieth. The difference of stimulus necessary to evoke a sensation is known as the threshold difference. It seems to be a law not only for the skin, but for other senses as well, that a change in the intensity of a sensation, to an appreciable extent, will occur only when the objective stimulus changes in a definite ratio. This ratio, however, will vary not only in different regions of the skin, in different individuals, but with the sense-organ investigated.

Place Sense.—The sensation evoked by stimulation of the skin is always, under normal conditions, referred to the place stimulated. This holds true not only for two or more points near or widely separated on the same side, but also for corresponding points on opposite sides of the body, even when the stimuli have the same intensity and are simultaneously applied. The cause for this localizing power is to be found in a difference in the quality of the sensation

FIG. 272. — PACINIAN CORPUSCLES. *c.* Capsules. *d.* Endothelial lining separating the latter. *n.* Nerve. *f.* Funicular sheath of nerve. *m.* Central mass. *n'.* Terminal fiber; and *a.* Where it splits up into finer fibrils.

related in some way to the part stimulated. Each cutaneous area is supposed to give to the tactile sensation a quality or local sign by virtue of which the mind is enabled to localize the point of contact.

Each cutaneous area which has a local sign of its own is known as a sensory circle, for the reason that the mind does not refer the sensation to a point, but to an area more or less circular in outline. The skin may therefore be regarded as composed of myriads of such circles varying in size in different regions of the body.

The delicacy of the localizing power in any part of the skin is determined by testing the power which the part possesses, of distinguishing the sensations produced by the contact of the points of a pair of compasses placed close together. The distance to which the points must be separated in order to evoke two separate recognizable sensations is a measure of the diameter of the sensory circle. Within this circle the two sensations become fused into one sensation. The discriminative sensibility of different regions as determined by compass points is shown in the following table; the numbers represent the distances at which two sensations are recognized:

	MM.
Tip of tongue,-----	1.1
Palmar surface of third phalanx of index-finger,-----	2.2
Red surface of lips,-----	4.5
Palmar surface of first phalanx of finger,-----	5.5
Tip of nose,-----	6.8
Palm of hand,-----	8.9
Lower part of forehead,-----	22.6
Dorsum of hand,-----	31.6
Dorsum of foot,-----	40.6
Middle of the back,-----	67.7

The discriminative sensibility of any portion of the body is a function of its mobility. This is shown by the fact that it increases rapidly from the shoulders to the fingers and from the hips to the toes.

The Temperature Sense.—The sensations of heat and cold which are experienced from time to time are caused by changes in the temperature of the skin produced in a variety of ways. As these sensations are specifically different from those of touch, as well as different from each other, it is highly probable that for each sensation there are special nerve-endings distributed throughout the skin. Investigations have shown that all over the skin there are innumerable spots of varying size which if stimulated evoke sensations of heat or cold. Such points are termed heat and cold spots. Each responds to but one kind of stimulus. A warm object applied to a heat spot will evoke a sensation of warmth. It will have no effect on the cold spot. The reverse is also true. Between the cold and heat spots there are areas that are neutral,

insensitive to either heat or cold. The cold spots are more numerous than the heat spots in almost all regions of the body.

The sensitivity of the skin to temperature changes is very acute, as shown by the fact that even 0.05°C . is readily appreciable. This holds true, however, only when the temperature of the object lies between 27° and 33°C . This capability varies in different regions of the skin, and depends on the number of heat and cold spots present, the thickness of the epidermis, the thermal conductivity of the object touching it, and the extent to which it is habitually exposed or protected.

The physiologic stimulus to the thermic end-organs is the passage

FIG. 273.—COLD AND HOT SPOTS FROM THE ANTERIOR SURFACE OF THE FOREARM. *a*. Cold spots. *b*. Hot spots. The dark parts are the most sensitive, the hatched the medium, the dotted the feebly, and the vacant spaces the non-sensitive.

of heat through the skin from the interior of the body to the surrounding air. If the radiation is continuous and uniform, the end-organs soon adapt themselves to the temperature of the surrounding air and the sensation of heat, under physiologic conditions, is not evoked. If there is a sudden rise in the external temperature caused by natural or artificial means, which diminishes the radiation, the temperature of the skin will at once rise, the end-organs will be stimulated, and a sensation of warmth developed. If, on the other hand, there is a sudden fall in temperature and an increased radiation, the temperature of the skin will fall, the end-organs will be stimulated, and a sensation of cold developed. Experiment also teaches that the intensity of a warm or cold sensation will depend

on the existing temperature of the skin, and not upon the absolute temperature of the object. Thus, water at 20° C. will evoke a sensation of heat or cold according as the skin has previously been cooled below or warmed above this temperature.

The Muscle Sense.—As a result of the activities of the musculature of the body or even of its individual parts, there arises in consciousness a series of sensations, which are termed muscle sensations. These sensations give rise to the perception—

1. Of the direction and duration of both passive (due to external causes) and active movements (due to internal, volitional efforts) which take place without hindrance;
2. Of the resistance offered to movements by external bodies; and—
3. Of the posture of the body or of its individual parts.

As to the seat of the physiologic processes which precede and underlie the development of the sensations two views, at least, may be advanced, viz.:

1. That the processes are central in origin and partake of the nature of a discharge of nerve impulses from the nerve-cells through the motor nerves to the muscles, the entire process being accompanied by sensation. This is known as the innervation theory.
2. That the processes are peripheral in origin, initiated by stimulation of specialized end-organs in the muscles and tendons which are connected through the intermediation of afferent nerves with nerve-cells in the cerebral cortex.

The physiologic mechanism subserving the muscle sense, according to the second theory, now held by many physiologists, thus involves peripheral end-organs, afferent nerves, their cortical connections and nerve-cells in the cerebral cortex at or near the junction of the superior and inferior parietal convolutions.

The End-organs.—These are small fusiform structures found in and among the muscle bundles of all the muscles of the body with the exception of the diaphragm and eye muscles. In the muscles of the arm and in the small muscles of the hand they are especially abundant. From their shape they are known as *muscle spindles*. They vary in length from 2 to 12 mm. and in breadth from 0.15 to 0.4 mm. Each spindle (Fig. 274) consists of a connective-tissue capsule containing from two to ten longitudinally arranged striated muscle fibers of fine diameter. In the middle or equatorial region of these *intra-fusal* fibers there is frequently found a quantity of non-striated protoplasmic matter. The spindle is supplied with both sensor and motor nerves. The sensor fiber loses its external investments as it approaches the capsule. The naked axis-cylinder then penetrates the capsule, and after dividing several times terminates in a ribbon-like or spiral manner around the intra-fusal muscle fiber. This ending was described by and is known as Ruffini's "annulo-

spiral ribbon." The motor nerve also penetrates the capsule and terminates in the polar extremities of the intra-fusal fiber. Sensor end-organs supposed to be connected with the muscle sense are also found in the tendons of muscles.

Afferent Nerves.—That muscles are abundantly supplied with afferent nerves has been proved by different methods of investigation. With histologic methods Sherrington has traced afferent fibers from the muscle spindles directly into the spinal nerve ganglia. The contractions of muscles from electric stimulation as well as the contractions known as muscle cramp, due to unknown agents, give rise to sensations of pain, a fact which indicates the presence in muscles of afferent or sensor nerves.

Cortical Area.—Pathologic findings have shown that an impairment or a loss of the muscle sense is associated with destructive lesions of perhaps the superior and inferior parietal

FIG. 274.—A NEURO-MUSCLE SPINDLE OF A CAT. (*Ruffini*.) *c.* Capsule. *pr. e.* Primary ending. *s. e.* Secondary ending. *pl. e.* Plate ending. (All these are probably sensor in function.)—(*Starling's "Physiology."*)

convolutions (Fig. 226). In a case reported by Starr the removal of a small tumor in the pia mater situated over the junction of the superior and inferior parietal lobules was followed by a loss of the muscle sense and marked ataxia in the right hand for a period of six weeks, after which recovery took place. These symptoms were attributed to injury of the cortex from unavoidable surgical procedures.

The muscle sensations, as stated in foregoing paragraphs, form the basis of the perception not only of the direction and the duration of a body movement and the resistance experienced, but also of the position and the tension of the muscle groups. The latter fact more especially makes it possible for the mind to direct the muscles and to graduate the energy necessary to the accomplishment of a definite purpose.

Active Touch.—Active touch or the application of the fingers to the surfaces of external objects implies the coöperation of the skin and the muscles. The sensations which are evoked are combina-

tions of contact and muscle sensations. The union of these sensations forms the basis of the perception of hardness, softness, smoothness, and roughness of bodies.

THE SENSE OF TASTE.

The physiologic mechanism involved in the sense of taste includes the tongue, the gustatory nerves (the chorda tympani and the glossopharyngeal), their cortical connections and nerve-cells in the gray matter of the fourth temporal convolutions. The peripheral excitation of this apparatus gives rise to nerve impulses which transmitted to the brain evoke the sensations of taste. The specific physiologic stimulus is matter, organic and inorganic, in a state of solution.

The Tongue.—The tongue consists of both intrinsic and extrinsic muscles, in virtue of which it is susceptible of both a change in shape and position. The movements of the tongue, though not essential to taste, are made use of in the finer discrimination of tastes.

FIG. 275.—THE TONGUE.
1. Papillæ circumvallatæ. 2. Papillæ fungiformes.

The tongue is covered over by mucous membrane continuous with that lining the oral cavity. The dorsum of the tongue presents a series of papillæ richly supplied with blood-vessels and nerves. Of these there are three varieties, the filiform, the fungiform, and the circumvallate (Fig. 275).

1. The *filiform papillæ*, the most numerous, cover the anterior two-thirds of the tongue; they are conical or filiform in shape and covered with horny epithelium which is often prolonged into filamentous tufts.
2. The *fungiform papillæ*, found chiefly at the tip and sides of the tongue, are less numerous but larger than the preceding and of a deep red color.
3. The *circumvallate papillæ*, from eight to ten in number, are situated at the base of the tongue arranged in the form of the letter V. They consist of a central projection surrounded by a wall or circumvallation from which they take their name.

The Peripheral End-organs. The Taste-buds.—Embedded in the epithelium covering the mucous membrane not only of the tongue but of the palate and posterior surface of the epiglottis are small ovoid bodies which from their relation to the gustatory nerves

are regarded as their peripheral end-organs and known as taste-buds or taste-beakers. Each bud is ovoid in shape (Fig. 276). Its base rests on the tunica propria; its apex comes up to the epithelium, where it presents a narrow funnel-shaped opening, the *taste-pore*. The wall of the bud is composed of elongated curved epithelium. The interior contains narrow spindle-shaped neuro-epithelial cells provided at their outer extremity with stiff hair-like filaments which project into the taste-pore.

The neuro-epithelial cells are in physiologic relation with the nerves of taste. The terminal branches, after entering the bud at its base, develop fine tufts which come into contact with the cells. That the taste-buds are connected with the nerves of taste is rendered probable from the fact of their degeneration after division of the nerves.

The Taste Area.—The taste area, though confined for the most part to the tongue, extends itself in different individuals to the mucous membrane of the hard palate, to the anterior surface of the soft palate, to the uvula, the anterior and posterior half arches, the tonsils, the posterior wall of the pharynx, and the epiglottis.

The Taste Sensations.—The sensations which arise in consequence of impressions made by different substances on the peripheral apparatus of this area are in so many instances combinations of taste, touch, temperature, and smell that they are extremely difficult of classification. Nevertheless four primary tastes can be recognized: viz., bitter, sweet, acid or sour, salt or saline. Though the contact of any bitter, sweet, acid, or salt substance with any part of the tongue will, if the substance be present in sufficient quantity or concentration, develop a corresponding sensation, some regions of the tongue are more sensitive and responsive than others. Thus, the posterior portion is more sensitive to bitter substances than the anterior; the reverse is true for sweet substances and perhaps for acids and salines.

The intensity of the resulting sensation in any given instance will depend on the degree of concentration of the substance, while its massiveness will depend on the area affected.

FIG. 276.—TASTE-BUD FROM CIRCUMVALLATE PAPILLA OF A CHILD. The oval structure is limited to the epithelium (*e*) lining the furrow, encroaching slightly upon the adjacent connective tissue (*f*); *o*, taste-pore through which the taste-cells communicate with the mucous surface.—(After Piersol.)

THE SENSE OF SMELL.

The physiologic mechanism involved in the sense of smell includes the nasal fossæ, the olfactory nerves, the olfactory tracts, and nerve-cells in those areas of the cortex known as the uncinate convolution and anterior part of the gyrus fornicatus. Peripheral stimulation of this mechanism develops nerve impulses which, transmitted to the cortex, evoke the sensations of odor. The specific physiologic stimulus is matter in the gaseous or volatile state.

The Nasal Fossæ.—The nasal fossæ are irregularly shaped cavities separated by a vertical septum formed by the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone, the vomer, and the triangular cartilage. The outer wall presents three recesses separated by the projection inward of the turbinated bones. Each fossa opens anteriorly and posteriorly by the anterior and posterior nares, the latter communicating with the pharynx. Both fossæ are lined throughout by mucous membrane. The upper part of the fossa is known as the olfactory, the lower portion as the respiratory region. In the former, the mucous membrane over the septum and superior turbinated bone is somewhat thicker than elsewhere and covered with a neuro-epithelium which constitutes—

The Peripheral End-organ.—This consists of a basement membrane supporting two kinds of cells, the olfactory and the sustentacular. The olfactory cells are bipolar nerve-cells, the center of which contains a large spheric nucleus. The peripheral pole is cylindric or conic in shape and provided at its extremity with several hair-like processes. The central pole becomes the axon process and passes directly to the olfactory bulb.

The sustentacular cells are epithelial in character and, as their name implies, support or sustain the olfactory cells.

For the appreciation of odorous particles the air must be drawn through the nasal fossæ with a certain degree of velocity. If the particles are widely diffused in the air, they must be drawn not only more quickly but more forcibly into contact with the olfactory hairs, as in the act of sniffing, the result of short energetic inspirations. To many substances the olfactory apparatus is extremely sensitive. Thus, it has been shown that a particle of mercaptan the actual weight of which was calculated to be $\frac{1}{460,000,000}$ of a milligram gave rise to a distinct sensation.

The Olfactory Sensations.—The sensations which arise in consequence of the excitation of the olfactory apparatus are very numerous and their classification is extremely difficult. For this reason it is customary to divide them into two groups: viz., agreeable and disagreeable, in accordance with the feelings they excite in the individual. As the olfactory sensations give rise to feelings rather

than ideas, this sense plays in man a subordinate part in the acquisition of knowledge. In lower animals this sense is employed for the purpose of discovering and securing food, for detecting enemies and friends, and for sexual purposes. In land animals the entire olfactory apparatus is well developed and the sense keen; in some aquatic animals, as the dolphin, whale, and seal, the apparatus is poorly developed and the sense dull.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE SENSE OF SIGHT.

The physiologic mechanism involved in the sense of sight includes the eyeball, the optic nerve, the optic tracts, their cortical connections, and nerve-cells in the cuneus and adjacent gray matter. Peripheral stimulation of this mechanism develops nerve impulses which transmitted to the cortex evoke (1) the sensation of light and its different qualities—colors; (2) the perception of light and color under the form of pictures of external objects; and (3) in connection with the ocular muscles, the production of muscle sensations by which the size, distance, and direction of objects may be judged.

The specific physiologic stimulus to the terminal end-organ, the retina, is the impact of ether vibrations. In general, it may be said that, at least for the same color, the intensity of the objective vibration determines the intensity of the sensation.

THE PHYSIOLOGIC ANATOMY OF THE EYEBALL.

The eyeball is situated at the fore part of the orbit cavity, and in such a position as to permit of an extensive range of vision. It is loosely held in position by a fibrous membrane, the capsule of Tenon, which is attached, on the one hand, to the eyeball itself, and, on the other, to the walls of the orbit cavity. Thus suspended, the eyeball is susceptible of being moved in any direction by the contraction of the muscles attached to it.

The ball is spheroid in shape, measuring about 24 millimeters in its antero-posterior diameter and a little less in its transverse and vertical diameters. When viewed in profile, it is seen to consist of the segments of two spheres, of which the posterior is the larger, occupying five-sixths, and the anterior is the smaller, occupying one-sixth of the ball. It is composed of several concentrically arranged membranes enclosing various refracting media essential to vision.

The membranes, enumerating them from without inward, are as follows: the sclera and cornea, the chorioid and iris, and the retina. The refracting media are the aqueous humor, the crystalline lens, and the vitreous humor.

The Sclera and Cornea.—The *sclera* is the thick opaque membrane covering the posterior five-sixths of the ball. It is composed

of layers of connective tissue which are arranged transversely and longitudinally. It is pierced posteriorly by the optic nerve about 3 or 4 millimeters internal to the optic axis. By virtue of its firmness and density the sclera gives form to the eyeball, protects delicate structures enclosed by it, and serves for the attachment of the muscles by which the ball is moved. The *cornea* is the transparent membrane forming the anterior one-sixth of the ball. It is nearly circular in shape, measuring in its horizontal meridian 12 mm., in its vertical meridian 11 mm. The curvature is therefore sharper in the latter than in the former. The radius of curvature of the anterior surface at that central portion ordinarily used in vision is 7.829 mm.; that of the posterior surface about 6 mm.

The substance of the cornea is made up of thin layers of delicate transparent fibrils of connective tissue continuous with those found in the sclera. Lymph-spaces are present throughout the cornea, in which are to be found lymph-corpuscles. The anterior surface of the cornea is covered with several layers of nucleated epithelium supported by a structureless membrane, the *anterior elastic lamina*. The posterior surface also is covered by a layer of epithelium supported by a similar membrane, the membrane of Descemet, which at its periphery becomes continuous with the iris. At the junction of the cornea and sclera there is a circular groove, known as the canal of Schlemm.

The Chorioid, Iris, Ciliary Muscle, and Ciliary Processes.—

The *chorioid* is the dark brown membrane which extends forward nearly to the cornea, where it terminates in a series of folds, the ciliary processes. Posteriorly, it is pierced by the optic nerve. It is composed largely of blood-vessels, arteries, capillaries, and veins, supported by connective tissue. Externally it is loosely connected to the sclera; internally it is lined by a layer of hexagonal cells containing black pigment which, though usually described as a part of the chorioid, is now known to belong, embryologically and physiologically, to the retina. Lying within the outer layer of arteries and veins there is a thick layer of small arterioles and capillaries, known as the chorio-capillaris. The chorioid with its contained blood-vessels bears an important relation to the nutrition and function of the eye. It provides a free supply of lymph and presents a uniform temperature to the retina in contact with it (Fig. 277).

The *iris* is the circular, variously colored membrane in the anterior part of the eye just behind the cornea. It presents a little to the nasal side of the center a circular opening, the *pupil*. The outer or circumferential border is united by connective tissue to the cornea, sclera, and ciliary muscle; the inner border forms the boundary of the pupil. The iris consists of a framework of connective tissue supporting blood-vessels, muscle-fibers, and pigmented connective-tissue

cells. The anterior surface is covered by a layer of cells continuous with those covering the posterior surface of the cornea. The posterior surface is formed by a thin structureless membrane supporting a layer of pigment cells continuous with those lining the chorioid. The color which the iris presents in different individuals depends on the relative amount of pigment in the connective-tissue corpuscles. In blue eyes the pigment is wanting. In gray, brown, and black eyes the pigment is present in progressively increasing amounts. The

blood-vessels are connected with those of the chorioid coat.

The muscle-fibers are of the non-striated variety and arranged in two sets, one circularly, the other radially, disposed.

The circular fibers are found close to the pupil near the posterior surface of the iris. Contraction of this band of fibers diminishes, relaxation increases, the size of the pupil. This muscle is known as the *sphincter pupillæ* or *sphincter iridis*.

The radial fibers form a more or less continuous

FIG. 277.—CHORIOID COAT OF THE EYE.—1. Optic nerve. 2, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3, 3, 4. Sclerotic coat divided and turned back to show the chorioid. 5, 5, 5, 5. The cornea, divided into four portions and turned back. 6, 6. Canal of Schlemm. 7. External surface of the chorioid, traversed by the ciliary nerves and one of the long ciliary arteries. 8. Central vessel into which open the vasa vorticosa. 9, 9, 10, 10. Chorioid zone. 11, 11. Ciliary nerves. 12. Long ciliary artery. 13, 13, 13, 13. Anterior ciliary arteries. 14. Iris. 15, 15. Vascular circle of the iris. 16. Pupil.—(Sappey.)

layer in the posterior part of the iris, extending from the margin of the pupil, where they blend with the circular fibers, to the outer border. Contraction of the fibers enlarges the size of the pupil. The muscle is known as the *dilatator pupillæ*.

The nerves exciting the circular fibers to action are the ciliary nerves, axons of nerve-cells located in the ciliary or ophthalmic ganglion. Stimulation of these fibers gives rise to contraction of the sphincter and diminution in the size of the pupil. The nerves exciting the dilatator fibers are axons of nerve-cells located in the superior

in the 3rd
in the Sympathetic

Sympathetic

cervical ganglion. They reach the iris by way of the cervical sympathetic, the ophthalmic division of the fifth, and the long ciliary nerve. Stimulation of these nerves is followed by dilatation of the pupil. Both the ciliary and superior cervical ganglia are in relation with pre-ganglionic fibers coming from the central nerve system. (See page 535.)

The *ciliary muscle* is a gray circular band about two millimeters in width, consisting of non-striated muscle-fibers. The majority of these fibers pursue a radial or meridional direction. Taking their origin from the junction of the sclera, cornea, and iris, they pass backward to be inserted into the chorioid coat opposite the ciliary processes. The inner portion of the muscle is interrupted by bundles of fibers which pursue a circular direction. They collectively constitute the *annular or ring muscle* of Müller. The ciliary muscle in

FIG. 278.—SECTION THROUGH THE CILIARY REGION OF THE HUMAN EYE. *a.* Radiating bundles of the ciliary muscle. *b.* Deeper bundles. *c.* Circular network. *d.* Annular muscle of Müller. *e.* Tendon of ciliary muscle. *f.* Muscle-fibers on posterior side of the iris. *g.* Muscles on the ciliary border of the same. *h.* Ligamentum pectinatum.—(After Iwanoff.)

common with the circular fibers of the iris receives its nerve-supply direct from the nerve-cells in the ciliary ganglion. Contraction of the ciliary muscle tenses the chorioid coat, and for this reason it is frequently termed the *tensor chorioidea*.

The Retina.—The retina is the internal coat of the eye, extending forward almost to the ciliary processes, where it terminates in an indented border, known as the *ora serrata*. In the living condition it is clear, transparent, and pink in color. After death it becomes opaque. The retina is abundantly supplied with blood-vessels, derived from the *arteria centralis retinae*, a branch of the ophthalmic, which pierces the optic nerve near the sclera, runs forward in its center, to the retina, in which its terminal branches are distributed. The veins arising from the capillary plexus leave the retina by the same route.

In the posterior portion of the retina, at a point corresponding with the axis of vision, there is a small oval area about 2 mm. in its transverse and about 0.8 mm. in its vertical diameter. From the

1. Pigment-layer (not shown).
2. Layer of rods and cones.
3. External limiting membrane.
4. Outer nuclear layer.
5. Outer molecular layer.
6. Inner nuclear layer.
7. Inner molecular layer.
8. Layer of ganglion cells.
9. Layer of nerve-fibers.

FIG. 279.—VERTICAL SECTION OF HUMAN RETINA.
—(Schäper.)

fact that it becomes yellow after death, it is known as the *macula lutea*. This area presents in its center a depression with sloping sides, known as the *fovea centralis*. About 3.5 mm. to the nasal side of the macula is the point of entrance of the optic nerve.

The retina is remarkably complex in structure, presenting an appearance when viewed microscopically, something like that represented in Fig. 279, indicating that it is composed of different cellular ele-

ments arranged in layers. These have been named, from behind forward, as follows:

1. The layer of pigment cells.
2. The layer of rods and cones, or Jacobson's layer.
3. The external limiting membrane.
4. The outer nuclear or granular layer.
5. The outer molecular or reticular layer.
6. The inner nuclear or granular layer.
7. The inner molecular or reticular layer.
8. The layer of ganglion cells.
9. The layer of nerve-fibers.

Modern histologic methods of research have made it possible to reduce the retina, exclusive of the pigment cells, to three successive layers of nerve-cells, supported by a highly developed neuroglia, forming what has been termed the fibers of Müller. These nerve-cells are as follows:

1. The visual cells.
2. The bipolar cells.
3. The ganglion cells.

The relation of these nerve-cells one to another and to the supporting neuroglia tissue and the manner in which they unite to form the above-mentioned layers are schematically shown in Fig. 280.

The *pigment layer* is composed of hexagonal cells. Though formerly described as forming a part (the inner layer) of the chorioid, these cells belong embryologically to the retina. From their retinal surface delicate pigmented processes extend into and between the rods and cones. On exposure to light these processes elongate and push themselves between the rods. In the dark they retract and withdraw into the cell-body.

The *visual cells* which form the layer of rods and cones are of two varieties, the rod-shaped and the cone-shaped.

The rod-shaped visual cells consist of a straight elongated cylinder extending through the entire thickness of Jacobson's membrane and a fine fiber containing a nucleus, which, after piercing the external limiting membrane, passes into the outer molecular layer, where it terminates in a spheric enlargement. The outer portion of the rod is clear and homogeneous, though containing a pigment known as visual purple or rhodopsin; the inner portion of the rod is slightly granular.

The cone-shaped visual cells also consist of two portions, a conic portion situated in Jacobson's membrane between the rods, and a fine fiber, containing a nucleus, which, after piercing the external limiting membrane, passes into the outer molecular layer, where it terminates in a fine tuft. The inner portion of the cone is thicker than the rod and rests on the limiting membrane; the outer portion tapers to a fine point and is known as the cone-style. The cones, as a rule, are shorter than the rods. The proportion of rods to cones varies in different parts of the retina, though there are on

FIG. 280.—CROSS-SECTION OF THE RETINA FROM A MAMMAL. A. Layer of rods and cones. B. Visual cells (outer granules). C. Outer molecular layer. E. Bipolar cells (inner granules). F. Inner molecular layer. G. Ganglion cells. H. Layer of nerve-fibers. a. Rods. b. Cones. e. Bipolar rod. f. Bipolar cone. r. Lower ramification of a bipolar rod. f. Lower ramification of a bipolar cone. g, h, i, j, k. Ganglion cells in various stages, branching from F. x, z. Bipolar contact of rods and cones. t. Müller's supporting fibers. S. Centrifugal nerve-fibers.—(After Ramón y Cajal.)

// the average about fourteen rods to one cone. // In the macula the rods are almost entirely absent, cones alone being present.

The layer of visual cells together with the neuroglia constitute the first three layers of the retina proper. The external limiting membrane is formed by the blending of the ends of neuroglia cells.

The *bipolar cells* consist of a central portion, found in the inner nuclear layer, from which are given off two processes which pass in opposite directions, one toward the visual cells, the other toward the ganglion cells. The former terminate in tufts which arborize around the tufts and spheric enlargements of the visual cells, and assist in the formation of the outer molecular layer; the latter terminate in similar tufts in the inner molecular layer.

The *ganglion cells* are arranged in a single layer, as a rule. They are large and nucleated. From the inner side of each cell there is given off a single axon which passes toward the center of the retina (forming the nerve-fiber layer), where it enters and assists in forming the optic nerve. From the outer side of the ganglion cell dendrites pass into and assist in forming the inner molecular layer. These dendrites come into physiologic relation with those of the inner processes of the bipolar cells.

Horizontally disposed nerve-cells are also present in the outer molecular layer in relation with the visual cells. Spongioblasts or amacrine cells are also present at the border of and in the inner molecular layer.

From the relation of the ganglion cells, from which the optic nerve-fibers take their origin, to the visual cells and the bipolar cells, the latter may be regarded as the *terminal visual organ*, the intermediate between the ether vibrations and the ganglion cell. The visual cells are directed toward the chorioid, away from the entering light, dipping into the pigment cells. They, with the pigment layer, are the elements by which the ether vibrations are transformed into nerve energy.

In the fovea most of the retinal elements are wanting or are reduced in thickness. The cones alone are present. The cone-fibers with their nuclei are directed obliquely upward and outward along the slope of the fovea, to end in tufts which come into physiologic relation with the dendrites of the ganglion cells which at the top of the fovea are generally increased in number (Fig. 281).

It is estimated that the optic nerve contains about 500,000 nerve-fibers, and that for each fiber there are about 7 cones, 100 rods, and 7 pigment cells. In accordance with this estimate there would be about 3,500,000 cones, 50,000,000 rods, and 3,500,000 pigment cells. The distance between the centers of two adjacent cones in the fovea is 4 micromillimeters.

The *vitreous humor* is the largest of the refracting media and occupies by far the largest portion of the interior of the eyeball. From its position it gives support to the retina. Anteriorly it presents a concavity, in which the crystalline lens is lodged. The vitreous humor consists of water (97 per cent.), organic matter and salts, enclosed in a transparent membrane, the *tunica hyaloidea*. The mass of the vitreous humor is penetrated by a species of connective tissue.

The *aqueous humor* is small in amount in comparison with the vitreous and is found in the space between the cornea and the lens (the anterior and posterior chambers). It is a clear, watery, alkaline

FIG. 281.—HORIZONTAL SECTION THROUGH THE MACULA AND FOVEA OF A MAN SIXTY YEARS OLD. The section is not through the exact center of the fovea, for there are only cone visual cells and no remnants of the confluence of the inner granule and ganglion cell layers are present. 1. Cones. 2. External limiting membrane. 3. Outer nuclear layer. 4. Henle's fiber layer. 5. Outer molecular or reticular layer. 6. Inner nuclear layer. 7. Inner molecular or reticular layer. 8. Layer of ganglion cells. 9. Nerve-fiber layer.—(After Schäper, Stöhr's "Histology.")

fluid derived from or secreted by the capillary blood-vessels of the ciliary body. From this origin it passes through the pupil into the anterior chamber. It serves to keep the cornea tense and smooth. The ocular tension partly depends on the presence of this fluid in the eyeball. There is every reason for believing that there is a constant stream of fluid from the blood-vessels into the eye and from the eye through the spaces of Fontana at the base of the iris into the canal of Schlemm, and so into the blood. Any interference with the exit of this fluid rapidly increases the ocular tension.

The *lens* is the transparent biconvex body situated just behind the iris, in the concavity of the vitreous. The thickness of the lens

is 3.6 mm., the diameter about 9 mm. It consists of a transparent capsule containing elongated hexagonal fibers which, having their origin near the anterior central portion of the lens, pass out toward the margin, where they bend around to terminate in a triradiate figure on the opposite side. Chemically the lens consists of water, a globulin body (crystallin), and salts.

The Suspensory Ligament.—The lens is held in position by the suspensory ligament, formed in part by the hyaloid membrane and in part by fibers derived from the ciliary processes. The former becomes attached to the posterior surface, the latter to the anterior

FIG. 282.—HORIZONTAL SECTION OF THE EYEBALL.—1. Sclera. 2. Cornea. 3. Chorioid. 4. Iris. 5. Ciliary muscle. 6. Retina. 7. Lens. 8. Suspensory ligament. 9. Canal of Schlemm. 10. Canal of Petit. 11. Optic nerve.—(Deaver.)

surface of the lens near the equator. The space between the two layers of the ligament is the canal of Petit. The anterior surface of the ligament presents a series of plications conforming to corresponding plications on the surface of the ciliary processes.

The relations of all the parts entering into the structure of the eye are shown in Fig. 282.

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF VISION

The Retinal Image.—The general function of the eye is the formation of images of external objects on the free ends of the percipient elements of the retina, the rods and cones. The existence of an image on the retina can be readily seen in the excised eye of an albino rabbit, when placed between a lighted candle and the eye of an observer. Its presence in the human eye can be demonstrated with the ophthalmoscope. It is this image, composed of focal points of luminous rays, which stimulates the rods and cones, which is the basis of our sight-perceptions, and out of which the mind constructs space-relations of external objects. In only two essential respects does the image on the retina differ from the object, aside from the fact that the object has usually three, the image only two, dimensions—viz., in size and relative arrangement of its parts. Whatever the distance, the image is generally smaller than the object; it is also reversed, the upper part of the object becoming the lower part of the image, and the right side of the object the left of the image.

The Dioptric Apparatus.—The formation of an image is made possible by the introduction of a complex refracting apparatus consisting of the cornea, aqueous humor, lens, and vitreous humor. Without these agencies the ether vibrations would give rise only to a sensation of diffused luminosity. Rays of light emanating from any one point—that is, homocentric rays—arriving at the eye must traverse successively the different refracting media. In their passage from one to the other, they undergo at the surfaces changes in direction before they are finally converged to a focal point. In order to mathematically follow the rays in all their deviations through the media, to determine their focal points and to construct an image, a knowledge of the form of the refracting surfaces, the refractive indices of the different media, and the distances of the surfaces from one another must be known.

The following constants are now accepted: The radius of curvature of that portion of each refracting surface used for distinct vision is for the cornea 7.829 mm., for the anterior and posterior surfaces of the lens 10 and 6 mm., respectively. The indices of refraction of the different media are as follows: cornea and aqueous humor, 1.3365; lens, 1.4371; vitreous body, 1.3365. The distance from the vertex of the cornea to the lens is 3.6 mm.; the thickness of the lens, 3.6 mm.; the distance from the posterior surface of the lens to the retina, 15 mm. As the two surfaces of the cornea are practically parallel, and as the index of refraction of the aqueous humor is the same as that of the cornea, they may be regarded as but one medium. The refracting surfaces may therefore be reduced to the anterior surface of the

Image
upside
R.L.

#

cornea, the anterior surface of the lens, and the posterior surface of the lens.*

Parallel rays of light entering the eye pass from air, with an index of refraction of 1.00025, into the cornea, with an index of refraction of 1.3365. In passing from the rarer into the denser medium they undergo refraction in accordance with the laws of optics and are rendered somewhat convergent. The extent of this first refraction and convergence is sufficiently great to bring parallel rays, if continued, to a focus about 10 mm. behind the retina. This would be the condition in aphakia whether the lens is congenitally absent or has been removed by surgical procedures. Perfect vision, however, requires that the convergence of the light must be great enough to bring the focal point, the image, on the retina. This is accomplished by the introduction of an additional refracting body, the lens. On entering the lens the rays are for the same reason—*i. e.*, the passage from a rarer into a denser medium—again refracted and converged,

FIG. 283.—REFRACTION OF HOMOCENTRIC RAYS AND THE FORMATION OF AN IMAGE.

and if continued would come to a focus about 6.5 mm. behind the retina. On passing from the lens into the vitreous—*i. e.*, from a denser into a rarer medium—the rays are once more converged and to an extent sufficient to focalize them on the retina (Fig. 283).

While it is thus possible to geometrically follow the rays through these media by means of the above-mentioned factors, the procedure is attended with many difficulties. Moreover, as the relations all change when rays enter the eye from objects situated progressively nearer the eye, a separate calculation is necessitated for each distance for the determination of the size of the image.

A method by which these difficulties are much reduced was suggested by Gauss and developed by Listing. It was demonstrated by Gauss that in every complicated system of refracting media separated by centered spheric surfaces there may be assumed certain *ideal* or *cardinal points*, to which the system may be reduced, and which, if their relative position and properties be known, permit of the de-

*Strictly speaking, the posterior surface of the cornea is not parallel to the anterior surface, and the index of refraction of the cornea is a trifle greater than that of the aqueous humor, viz., 1.377. But as the increase in the corneal refraction due to a higher index is almost exactly counteracted by a decrease in refraction, due to the higher curvature of the posterior corneal surface, the usual assumptions furnish quite accurate results.

termination, either by calculation or geometrical construction, of the path of the refracted ray, and the position and size of the image in the last medium, of the object in the first.

Every dioptric system can be replaced, as Gauss showed, by a single system composed of six cardinal points and six planes perpendicular to the common axis—*e. g.*, two focal points, two principal points, two nodal points, two focal planes, two principal planes, and two nodal planes.

Properties of the Cardinal Points.—The *first focal point*, F_1 , in Fig. 284, has the property that every ray which before refraction passes through it, after refraction is parallel to the axis.

The *second focal point*, F_2 , has the property that every ray which before refraction is parallel to the axis, passes after refraction through it.

The *second principal point*, H_2 , is the image of the *first*, H_1 ; that is, rays in the first medium which go through the first principal point pass after the last refraction through the second. Planes at right

FIG. 284.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE POSITION AND RELATION OF THE CARDINAL POINTS.

angles to the axis at these points are *principal planes*. The second principal plane is the image of the first. Every point in the first principal plane has its image after refraction at a corresponding point in the second principal plane at the same distance from the axis and on the same side.

The *second nodal point*, N_2 , is the image of the *first*, N_1 : a ray which in the first medium is directed to the first nodal point passes after refraction through the second nodal point, and the directions of the rays before and after refraction are parallel to each other. In Fig. 284 let $A B$ represent the axis. The distance of the first focal point, F_1 , from the first principal plane, H_1 , is the *anterior focal distance*. The distance of the posterior focal point, F_2 , from the second principal plane, H_2 , is the *posterior focal distance*. The distance of the first nodal point, N_1 , from the first focal point is equal to the second focal distance. The distance of the second nodal point, N_2 , from the posterior focal point is equal to the anterior focal distance. It is evident, therefore, that the distance of the corresponding principal and nodal points from each other is equal to the differ-

ences between the two focal distances. Also the distance of the two principal points from each other is equal to the distance of the two nodal points from each other. Finally, the focal distances are proportional to the refractive indices of the first and last media. Planes passing through the focal points vertically to the axis are known as *focal planes*.

FIG. 285.—DIAGRAM TO FIND THE IMAGE IN LAST MEDIUM OF A LUMINOUS POINT IN THE FIRST.

From these properties of the cardinal points the position of an image in the last medium of a luminous point in the first may be determined, and the course of a refracted ray in the last medium be constructed if its direction in the first be given according to the following rules:

1. To find the image in the last medium of a luminous point in the first: Let A (Fig. 285) be this given point. Draw AB parallel to the axis until it meets the second principal plane in B ; then BF_2 will be this ray after refraction. Draw a second ray from A to

FIG. 286.—DIAGRAM TO FIND THE REFRACTED RAY IN THE LAST MEDIUM OF A GIVEN RAY IN THE FIRST MEDIUM.

the first nodal point; then draw another ray, DE , from the second nodal point parallel to AC . This will be the refracted ray in the last medium. Where the two refracted rays, BF_2 and DE , intersect, the image of A will be A_1 .*

2. To find the refracted ray in the last medium of a given ray in the first medium: Let AB (Fig. 286) be the given ray. Continue this

* If the point A is infinitely far from the eye, all the rays striking the eye will be parallel to each other. The nodal ray must therefore be drawn, and the point where this nodal ray meets the second focal plane will be the image of $A = A_1$, where all rays parallel to the nodal ray will meet.

ray until it meets the first principal plane in C . Draw CD parallel to the axis. Now assume any point, such as E , in the given ray, and find its image E_1 by the Rule 1. Then DE_1 becomes the course of the refracted ray.

The Schematic Eye.—Accepting the system of cardinal points, Listing, Donders, and v. Helmholtz have constructed “schematic” eyes to be substituted for the refracting system of the natural eye.

For this purpose it is necessary to make use of the various estimates of the indices of refraction of the different media, of the radii of curvatures of the different refracting surfaces, and of the distances

FIG. 287.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE POSITION OF THE CARDINAL POINTS IN THE “SCHEMATIC EYE.” The continuous lines in the upper half of the figure show their position in the passive emmetropic eye. The dotted lines indicate the change in their position in an eye accommodated for the object A at the distance a from the cornea, or 152 mm. The lower half of the figure shows the formation of a distinct image on the retina of an eye accommodated for the object A at the distance a from the cornea.

separating them, to deduce an average eye as a basis for calculation. The most widely accepted attempt is that of v. Helmholtz. The data he assumed are as follows: The refractive index of air = 1; of the cornea and aqueous humor, 1.3365; of the lens, 1.4371; of the vitreous humor, 1.3365; the radius of curvature of the cornea, 7.829 mm.; of the anterior surface of the lens, 10 mm.; of the posterior surface, 6 mm.; the distance from the apex of the cornea to the anterior surface of the lens, 3.6 mm.; thickness of lens, 3.6 mm. From the above-mentioned data v. Helmholtz calculated the position of the cardinal points for the eye as follows (see Fig. 287): The first

focal point is situated 13.745 mm. before the anterior surface of the cornea; the posterior focal point is situated 15.619 mm. behind the posterior surface of the lens; the first principal point, 1.753 mm. behind the cornea; the second principal point, 2.106 mm. behind the cornea; the first and second nodal points, 6.968 and 7.321 mm. behind the apex of the cornea, respectively. The anterior focal distance of this schematic eye, the distance between F_1 and H_1 , therefore amounts to 15.498 mm., and the posterior focal distance, H_2 to F_2 , to 20.713 mm.

When the eye, however, is accommodated for near vision, the relations of the cardinal points are changed and will be as follows, if the point accommodated for, lies 152 mm. from the cornea: Anterior focal distance, 13.990 mm.; posterior focal distance, 18.689 mm.; distance from cornea of the first and second principal points, 1.858 and 2.257 mm. respectively; distance of the posterior focus, 20.955 mm. from cornea. Given this schematic eye in the accommodated state, the course of the rays and the determination of the position of an image in the last medium of a luminous point in the first can easily be determined by the rules already given.

FIG. 288.—THE REDUCED EYE.

The Reduced Eye.—As suggested by Listing, this schematic eye may be yet further simplified or reduced to a single refracting surface bounded anteriorly by air and posteriorly only by aqueous or vitreous humor. Without introducing any noticeable error in the determination of the size of the retinal image, the anterior principal and the anterior nodal points may be disregarded, owing to the minuteness of the distances (0.39 mm.) separating the two systems of points. There is thus obtained one principal point and one nodal point, which latter becomes the center of curvature of the single refracting surface. The dimensions of this “reduced” eye are as follows (see Fig. 288): From the anterior surface of the cornea, corresponding to the principal plane, to the nodal point, 5.215 mm.; the anterior focal distance, 15.498 mm.; the posterior focal distance, 20.713 mm.; the index of refraction is 1.3365. There is thus substituted for the natural eye a single refracting surface with a radius of curvature of 5.215 mm. In such an eye luminous rays emanating from the anterior focal point are parallel to the axis after refraction in the interior of the eye. Also rays parallel to the axis before refraction unite at the posterior focal point.

By means of this reduced eye the construction of the refracted ray, the various calculations as to the size of the image, the size of diffusion circles, etc., are greatly facilitated: *e. g.*,

In Fig. 289 let AB represent an object. From A homocentric rays fall on the single refracting surface. One of the rays, the nodal ray, falling on the surface perpendicularly, passes unrefracted through the single nodal point, N , to the posterior focal plane. The remaining rays, partially represented in the figure, falling on this surface under varying degrees of incidence, undergo corresponding degrees of refraction, by which they form a converging cone of rays which unite at a point situated on the nodal ray. These two points, A, a , are known as *conjugate foci*. The same holds true for homocentric rays emanating from B or any other point of the object.

FIG. 289.—THE FORMATION OF AN IMAGE IN THE REDUCED EYE.

The Size of the Retinal Image.—The size of the retinal image, I , may now be easily calculated, when the size of the object, O , and its distance, D , from the refracting surface with radius of curvature R , are known, by the following formula:

$$O : I = D + R : F_2 - R.$$

For, as the triangles ANB and anb are equal, we have

$$AB : ab = fN : Ng, \text{ or } ab = \frac{AB \times Ng}{fN}.$$

Independent of the foregoing method, the size of the retinal image may be calculated if it is remembered that, the eye, like any optic system, has a point of such a quality that a ray of light which before entering the eye was directed toward it, after refraction continues as if it came from this point. In other words, there is in the eye a point which allows a ray of light to pass unrefracted. This point, termed the nodal point of the eye, determines the size of the image; for if a line be drawn from both the upper and lower ends of an object through this nodal point, it is clear that the images of the respective points must lie on these two rays where they intersect the retina. The distance of this nodal point from the retina is 15.498 mm. It is clear, therefore, that the size of the object is to the size of the image, as the distance of the object from the nodal point is to the distance of the nodal point from the retina.

The Visual Angle.—The angle included between the lines coming from the opposite extremities of an object and crossing at the nodal point is termed the visual angle. The size of this angle increases with the nearness and decreases with the remoteness of an object. The retinal image correspondingly increases or decreases in size. The acuteness of vision depends on the power of the emmetropic eye to distinguish the smallest retinal image or the smallest

distance between two points on the retina. It has been experimentally determined that the retina can not distinguish two points unless their images are separated by a distance of 0.004 mm. corresponding to a visual angle of 60 seconds. If the distance is less than this the two sensations fuse into one. The reason assigned for this is, that the distance between the centers of two adjoining cones in the

FIG. 290.—VISUAL ANGLE OF 5 MINUTES.—(After Hansell and Sweet.)

macula is 0.004 mm. With a visual angle of 60 seconds the two foci fall on separate cones; with a smaller visual angle the two foci fall on and excite but a single cone, and hence there arises the sensation of but a single point.

In ophthalmic practice it is customary in testing the acuteness of vision to employ test type of a certain size for specified distances.

FIG. 291.—THE REFRACTION OF PARALLEL AND DIVERGENT RAYS IN THE EMMETROPIC EYE IN THE PASSIVE AND IN THE ACTIVE OR ACCOMMODATED CONDITION.

Though the entire letter is embraced in an angle of 5 minutes, the strokes are included within an angle of 60 seconds or one minute (Fig. 290).

Accommodation.—In a normal or *emmetropic* eye, homocentric parallel rays of light (Fig. 291, *a*, *b*) after passing through the optic media are converged and brought to a focus on the retina, *f*. Rays,

however, which come from a luminous point situated near the eye, *P*, and are therefore divergent, passing through the optic media at the same time, are intercepted by the retina before they are focused, and give rise to the formation of *diffusion-circles* and indistinctness of vision. The reverse is also true. When the eye is adjusted for the refraction and focusing of divergent rays (Fig. 291, *P*) parallel rays will be brought to a focus before reaching the retina, and, again diverging, will form diffusion-circles. It is evident, therefore, that it is impossible to simultaneously focus both parallel and divergent rays, and to see distinctly at the same time, two objects which are situated at different distances. The eye must be alternately adjusted first to one object and then to another. The capability which the eye possesses of adjusting itself to vision at different distances is termed *accommodation*.

The following table of Listing shows the size of the diffusion-circles formed of objects situated at different distances when the accommodative power is suspended:

Distance of Luminous Point.		Distance of the Focal Point behind the Posterior Surface of the Retina.		Diameter of the Diffusion-circle.	
∞		0.0	mm.	0.0	mm.
65	m.	0.005	"	0.0011	"
25	"	0.012	"	0.0027	"
12	"	0.025	"	0.0056	"
6	"	0.050	"	0.0112	"
3	"	0.100	"	0.0222	"
1.500	"	0.20	"	0.0443	"
0.750	"	0.40	"	0.0825	"
0.375	"	0.80	"	0.1616	"
0.188	"	1.60	"	0.3122	"
0.094	"	3.20	"	0.5768	"
0.088	"	3.42	"	0.6484	"

The normal eye when adjusted for distant vision is in a passive condition, and hence vision of distant objects is unattended with fatigue. In the act of adjustment, however, for near vision the eye passes into an active state, the result of a muscle effort, the energy of which is proportional to the nearness of the object toward which the eye is directed.

From the foregoing table it is evident that between infinity and 65 meters, the diffusion-circles are so slight that no perceptible accommodative effort is required to eliminate them. From 65 meters to 6 meters the diffusion-circles gradually become larger, though they are yet so faint as to require for their correction an accommodative effort which is scarcely measurable. From 6 meters up to 6 centimeters, however, a progressive increase in accommodative power is demanded for distinct vision.

Mechanism of Accommodation.—Inasmuch as neither the corneal curvature nor the shape of the eyeball undergoes any change

during accommodation, the necessary change, whatever it may be, is to be sought for in the lens. As to the character of the changes in this body, two views are held, based largely on the fact and its interpretation, that images of a luminous point reflected from the anterior surface of the cornea, the anterior and posterior surfaces of the lens, change their relative positions during accommodation.

Thus, if in a darkened room a lighted candle be placed in front of and to the side of an individual whose eye is directed to a distant object, an observer placed in the same relative position as the candle will observe three images in the eye, one at the surface of the cornea, two at the pupillary margin (Fig. 292). Of the two latter, one is quite large and situated apparently in front of the third, which is faint, small, and inverted.

FIG. 292.—CATOPTIC IMAGES IN THE EYE. — a. Upright image of reflection, from the cornea. b. Upright image from the anterior surface of the lens. c. Inverted image, from the posterior surface of the lens. — (Helmholtz.)

The middle image is reflected from the convex surface of the lens, the last from the concave surface. These images of reflection are known as *catoptric* images. If now the individual be directed to fix the gaze on a near object, the second image changes its position, advances toward the corneal image and at the same time becomes smaller, a change which, in accordance with the laws of optics, could only be due to an increase in the convexity of the anterior surface of the lens. A slight displacement of the third image sometimes observed indicates a possible increase in the convexity of the posterior surface lens.

According to Helmholtz, during accommodation the entire anterior surface of the lens becomes more convex, while at the same time it slightly advances, possibly as much as 0.4 mm. in extreme efforts. This change is represented in Fig. 293.

According to Tscherning, the increase in convexity of the anterior surface is confined to the central portion, the remainder of the surface becoming somewhat flattened. There is, moreover, no evidence that there is any advance of the surface or any increase in the thickness of the lens. A series of new and ingenious experiments lend support to Tscherning's view. The radius of curvature in either case approximates 6 mm. in extreme effort of accommodation. The increase in convexity naturally increases the refracting power.

Whichever view is accepted, the nearer the object,—that is, the greater the degree of divergence of the light rays,—the more pronounced must be the increase in convexity in order that they may be sufficiently converged and focalized on the retinal surface. Changes in the convexity of the lens, either of increase or decrease, are attended

cause of pressure
Vitreous by
accommodation
by
change of shape
of lens
accommodated to
L.M. 2/23/905

when air attaches to sclera only about line & ora serrata

by changes in the distinctness of images. Coincident with the lens change, the pupillary margin advances and the pupil itself becomes smaller. By this means an indistinctness of the image is prevented by cutting off the rays which would give rise, owing to the angle at which they fall on the surface, to diffusion circles, from spheric aberration.

The Function of the Ciliary Muscle.—Though it is generally admitted that the increase in the convexity of the lens is caused by the contraction of the ciliary muscle, the exact manner in which this is accomplished is not clearly understood. According to Helmholtz, when the eye is in repose and directed to a distant object the lens is somewhat flattened from a traction exerted by the suspensory ligament. When the eye is directed to a near object, the ciliary muscle contracts, thereby relaxing the ligament, as a result of which the lens, by virtue of an inherent elasticity, bulges forward and becomes more convex. In consequence of this latter fact the refracting power is

FIG. 293.—THE LEFT HALF REPRESENTS THE EYE IN A STATE OF REST. THE RIGHT HALF IN STATE OF ACCOMMODATION.

proportionally increased. In extreme efforts of accommodation it is believed by some observers that the circularly arranged fibers, the so-called annular muscle, contract and exert a pressure on the periphery of the lens and thus aid other mechanisms in relaxing the ligament and in increasing the convexity. This view appears to be supported by the fact that in hypermetropia, where a constant effort is required to obtain a distinct image of even distant objects, the annular muscle becomes very much hypertrophied, thus reinforcing the meridional fibers. In myopia, on the contrary, where the accommodative effort is at a minimum, the entire muscle possesses less than its average size and development.

According to Tscherning, a different explanation of the action of the ciliary muscle must be given. Thus, when it contracts, the antero-internal angle, that portion in close relation with the suspensory ligament, recedes and exerts on the ligament a pressure which in turn exerts a traction on the peripheral portions of the anterior surface of the lens, which produces the deformation observed.

Here

the same time the postero-external portion of the muscle exerts traction on the chorioid, thus sustaining the vitreous and indirectly the lens.

The reason for the flattening of the periphery of the lens from zonular compression and the sharpening of the central convexity is to be found in the fact that the convexity of the more solid central portion, the nucleus, is greater than that of the lens itself. Hence it is easily understood why a zonular traction would give rise to peripheral flattening.

There is, however, one point which seems difficult to harmonize with Tscherning's view; that is, the fact that during accommodation the lens appears to be slightly tremulous, thus showing relaxation, and not increased tension, of the suspensory ligament.

Range of Accommodation.—It has been stated that rays of light coming from a luminous point situated at any distance beyond 65 meters are so nearly parallel that no accommodative effort is required for their focalization. So long as the luminous point remains between infinity and 65 meters, the eye, directed toward it, remains completely relaxed. The point at which the object can be distinctly seen without accommodation is termed the far point or the *punctum remotum*. This for the normal eye is at a distance of 65 meters or beyond.* If the luminous point gradually approaches the eye from a point 65 meters distant, the accommodative power comes into play and gradually increases until it attains its maximum, which it does when the object arrives at a point 20 cm. from the eye. Within this latter distance, distinct vision in the adult is difficult. That point or distance within which a particular eye can not form distinct images of objects is called its *near point* or *punctum proximum*. The distance between the *punctum remotum* and the *punctum proximum* is termed the *range of accommodation*.

Force of Accommodation.—The increase in curvature of the lens necessary to focalize rays when the eye is directed from the far to the near point necessitates the expenditure of energy on the part of the ciliary muscle. The energy expended may be measured by a lens the refracting power of which is such as to enable it to produce the same result—that is, to give the diverging rays coming from the near point a parallel direction. A lens, therefore, which has for a near point a focal distance of 20 cm. would be a measure of the force expended, for such a lens placed in front of the natural lens, when in a state of repose, would, with the assistance of the latter, bring diverging rays coming from the near point to a focus on the retina. A lens of this character is said to have a refract-

* In practical ophthalmic work a point six meters distant is taken as the far point for the reason that the rays at this distance are practically parallel.

ing power of 5 dioptries. This measure of the energy expended in accommodation holds true only for emmetropic eyes and at about forty years of age.

Since lenses of the same curvature made from different materials have different refracting powers, it becomes necessary to have, for purposes of comparison, some unit of measurement. The unit now accepted is the refracting power of a glass lens which is sufficient to focalize parallel rays at a distance of 100 cm. or 1 meter. This amount of refracting power is termed a dioptry. Lenses which would focalize parallel rays at a distance of 50, 20, or 10 cm. are said to have a refractive power of 2, 5, or 10 dioptries, respectively, obtained by dividing into 100 cm. the focal distance. The refracting power of a biconcave lens is determined by prolonging backward in the direction the parallel rays have come, the rays which have been rendered divergent by the lens.

The refracting media of the human eye in *repose* have collectively a refracting power of about 52 dioptries, the reciprocal of its focal length. The refracting power of the corneal surface alone is equivalent to 32 dioptries. From the position occupied by the lens it would require for parallel rays a refracting power of 14 dioptries. But owing to its position in a medium denser than air and to the *converging direction* of the rays which enter it, it has been calculated that its refracting power is about 20 dioptries.

The capability of the lens to increase its refraction during accommodative efforts beyond the 20 dioptries varies considerably at different periods of life. At ten years the increase is 14 dioptries, as the near point is 7 cm.; at thirty years the increase is but 7 dioptries, as the near point is 14 cm.; at sixty the increase is but 1 dioptry, and the near point 100 cm.; at seventy it is zero. From youth to old age, the elasticity of the lens steadily declines, and the range of accommodation diminishes from the recession of the near point.

Convergence of the Eyes during Accommodation.—In binocular vision the eyes are turned inward and the optic axis of each—a line passing through the center of the cornea and the center of the eye—turned toward the median line during accommodation. So long as the eyes are directed toward the far point, 65 meters or beyond, the optic axes are parallel. When the eyes are directed to any point within 65 meters the optic axes are converged, the convergence increasing steadily as the near point is approached. In this way the fovea of each eye is directed to the same point and single vision made possible. Were this not the case, double vision would result.

Functions of the Iris.—For purposes of distinct vision it is essential that the quantity of light entering the interior of the eye shall be so adjusted that the formation and subsequent perception of the image shall be sharp and distinct. This is accomplished by the iris,

the circular fibers of which alternately contract and relax with increasing and decreasing intensities of the light. The size of the pupil, therefore, through which the light passes, will vary from moment to moment and in accordance with variation in the light intensity. The quantity of light necessary to distinct vision is thus regulated.

In the total absence of light the sphincter pupillæ muscle is relaxed and the pupil widely enlarged. With the appearance of light and an increase in its intensity the muscle again contracts and the pupil progressively narrows. With a given intensity in the light, the sphincter contraction is greater when the light falls directly into the fovea. Contraction of this muscle also occurs as an associated movement in the convergence of the eyes during accommodation and in consensus with the other eye.

In addition to this function of the iris, it constitutes, by virtue of the sphincter muscle contraction, an important corrective apparatus. Being non-transparent, it serves as a diaphragm intercepting those rays which would otherwise pass through the peripheral portions of the lens and by spheric aberration give rise to indistinctness of the image. The movements of the iris by which the size of the pupil is determined are caused by the contractions and relaxations of the *sphincter pupillæ* and *dilatator pupillæ* muscles. The contraction of the sphincter is entirely reflex and involves those structures necessary to the performance of any reflex act, viz.: a sentient surface, the retina; an afferent nerve, the optic; a central emissive center situated in the gray matter beneath the aqueduct of Sylvius; and an efferent nerve, the motor oculi. The stimulus requisite to the excitation of this mechanism is the impact of light waves or ether vibrations on the rods and cones. According to the intensity of these vibrations will be the resulting contraction of the muscle. The contraction of the dilatator pupillæ muscle is determined by the activity of a continuously active nerve-center in the medulla oblongata which transmits its nerve impulses through the spinal cord, along the first and second dorsal nerves to the superior cervical ganglion, and thence to the iris by way of the fifth nerve. (See Fig. 245, page 534.) These two muscles appear to bear an antagonistic relation to each other, for section of the motor oculi is followed by relaxation of the sphincter muscle and dilatation of the pupil. Stimulation of the sympathetic is followed by a more pronounced dilatation. The size of the pupil is the outcome of a balancing of these two forces.

OPTIC DEFECTS.

Presbyopia.—This is a condition of the eye characterized by a defective or diminished accommodative power. As age advances the lens loses its elasticity and the power to increase its refraction, and

vision at the normal near point becomes impossible. The latter, therefore, advances toward the far point, or recedes from the individual. The range of accommodation is also diminished. At forty years the near point is about 22 cm.; at forty-five years it has receded to 28 cm. This would indicate that the lens in these five years has lost 1 dioptre of refracting power; at fifty years the near point recedes to 43 cm., and at sixty to 200 cm., indicating a loss in refracting power on the part of the lens of 2 and 4 dioptres respectively. Convex lenses placed before the eyes having a refracting power of 1, 2, and 4 dioptres would in the three instances return the near point to its normal position. At the age of seventy the lens is incapable of any increase during an accommodative effort. A lens of 4.5 dioptres would therefore be required for near vision.

Myopia.—This is a condition of the eye characterized by an increase in the antero-posterior diameter or a hypernormal refracting power of the lens. The former is the usual condition. Parallel rays of light brought to a focus in front of the retina again diverge, giving

FIG. 294.—MYOPIA. Parallel rays focus at F, cross and form diffusion-circles; divergent rays from A focus on the retina.—(*Hansell and Sweet.*)

FIG. 295.—CORRECTION OF MYOPIA BY A CONCAVE LENS.—(*Hansell and Sweet.*)

rise to diffusion-circles and indistinctness of the image. Divergent rays alone are capable of being focalized on the retina in its new position. The punctum remotum is always at a definite distance, but approaches the eye as the myopia increases. The near point is usually much nearer the eye than 20 cm. For this reason the condition is termed *near sight*.

The increase in the length of the antero-posterior diameter may range from a fraction of a millimeter up to 10 mm. With an increase of 0.16 mm. the far point is but 200 cm. distant; and with an increase of 3.8 mm. it is but 10 cm. distant. Inasmuch as only divergent rays can be focalized by the myopic eye normal vision can be restored by the use of a biconcave lens with a diverging power in the first instance of 0.5 dioptre and the second of 10 dioptres.

Hypermetropia.—This is a condition of the eye characterized by decrease of the normal antero-posterior diameter or by a subnormal refracting power of the lens. The former is the usual condition. Parallel rays of light do not, therefore, come to a focus when the

accommodation is suspended. Falling on the retina previous to focalization, they give rise to diffusion-circles and indistinctness of the image. As no object can be seen distinctly no matter how remote, there is no *positive* far point. The near point is abnormally distant—sometimes as far as 200 cm. For this reason the condition is termed *far sight*. A hypermetropic eye without accommodative effort can focalize only converging rays on the retina. If rays of light were to come from the retina of such an eye, they would, on emerging, take

FIG. 296.—THE HYPERMETROPIC EYE. Parallel rays (*A, B*) can be focused only at a point behind the eye, as at *f*; rays of light coming from the retina take, on emerging from the eye, a divergent direction, *C, D*. *K*. The negative punctum remotum.

a divergent direction, as shown in Fig. 296, dotted line *C* and *D*. If these same rays were to be prolonged backward, they would meet at the point *K*, which is the *punctum remotum*; and as it is behind the eye, it is termed *negative*. Since rays coming from the retina take a divergent direction on emerging from the eye, it is evident that only converging rays can be focalized by a passive hyperme-

FIG. 297.—HYPERMETROPIA. PARALLEL RAYS FOCUSED BEHIND THE RETINA.—(*Hansell and Sweet.*)

FIG. 298.—CORRECTION OF HYPERMETROPIA BY A CONVEX LENS.—(*Hansell and Sweet.*)

tropic eye. As there are no convergent rays in nature, it is necessary for distinct vision that all rays, parallel and divergent, shall be given a convergent direction before entering the eye. This is done by placing before the eye convex lenses the converging power of which is proportional to the degree of hypermetropia (Figs. 297, 298).

Astigmatism.—This is a condition of the eye characterized by an inequality of curvature of its refracting surfaces in consequence of which not all of a homocentric bundle of rays are brought to the

same focus. The inequality may be either in the cornea or lens, or both, though usually in the cornea.

In the normal cornea the radius of curvature in the vertical meridian is a trifle shorter, 7.6 mm., than that of the horizontal, 7.8 mm., and hence its focal distance is slightly shorter. The difference, however, in the focal distances is so slight that the error in the formation of the image is scarcely noticeable. A transection of a cone of light coming from the cornea is practically a circle. If, however, the vertical curvature exceeds the normal to any marked extent, the rays passing through this meridian will be more sharply refracted and brought to a focus much sooner than the rays passing through the horizontal meridian. The result will be that the cone of light will be no longer circular, but more or less elliptic. The variations of the shape of this cone are shown in Fig. 299, which represents the appearances presented on cross-section both before and after focalization of each set of rays. Though the vertical meridian has usually

FIG. 299.—REFRACTION BY AN ASTIGMATIC SURFACE.—(*Hansell and Sweet.*)

the sharper curvature, it not infrequently happens that the reverse is true. For the reason that the rays from one point do not all come to the same focus or point, the condition is termed astigmatism.

Spheric Aberration.—On account of the difference in curvature of successive portions of the surface of the lens, there is an unequal refraction of the rays which pass through those portions between the center and the periphery. This would give rise to many focal points and hence an indistinctness of the image. That this condition is present to but a slight extent in the normal eye is due to the presence of the iris, which intercepts those rays which would otherwise pass through the marginal portions of the lens.

Chromatic Aberration.—When a beam of white light is made to pass through a prism, it is decomposed into the primary colors owing to a difference in the refrangibility of the rays. In passing through the refracting media of the eye the different rays composing white light also undergo unequal refraction and those rays which

give rise to one color are brought to a focus at a point somewhat different from those which give rise to other colors. If the eye is accommodated for one set of rays, it is not for another, and the result is a fringe of colors around the image. This defect in the normal eye is so slight that the mind fails to take cognizance of it. That the eye is incapable of simultaneously focalizing rays of widely different refrangibility, as those which give rise to the blue and red colors, is shown by the following experiment: The eye being directed to a luminous point, a plate of cobalt-glass is placed between the light and the observer close to the eye. This substance has the property of intercepting all rays but the red and the blue and hence these alone will be seen. The center of the image produced will be red and clearly defined, the periphery blue and ill defined. The reason for this is clear. The eye more readily accommodates itself for the red rays, and hence their focal point is distinct. The blue rays, having a higher degree of refrangibility, come to a focus, cross and diverge, and give rise to diffusion-circles. If a biconcave glass be placed before the cobalt, the blue rays can be focalized on the retina, while the red will fall on the retina without focalization. The image will now be blue and distinct in the center, the periphery red and ill defined. With the removal of the minus glass the reverse condition again obtains.

Imperfect Centering.—From a purely physical point of view, the eye is not a perfect optic instrument. In addition to the defects noticed in the foregoing paragraphs, there is yet another, viz.: an imperfect centering of the refracting surfaces. In first-class optic instruments the lenses are centered—that is, their exact centers are situated on the same axis. In viewing an object through such a system the visual line corresponds with the axis of the lens system. This is not the case with the refracting system of the eye. A line passing through the center of the cornea and the center of the eye, the *optic axis* (OA in Fig. 300), does not pass exactly through the center of the lens and does not fall into the point for most distinct vision, the fovea. This has led to the recognition of other lines the relations of which must be kept in mind in all optic discussions, viz.:

1. The *visual axis* or *visual line* (VL), the line connecting the point viewed, the nodal point and the fovea centralis.
2. The *line of fixation* or *line of regard* (VC), the line connecting the point viewed with the center of rotation, the latter being situated 6 mm. behind the nodal point of the eye and 9 mm. before the retina. The relations of these lines and certain angles connected with them are shown in Fig. 300. The angle included between the line DD (the major axis of the corneal ellipse) and the visual line is the angle *alpha*, amounting on the average to 5° . The angle included between the optic axis and the line of fixation or

regard is the angle *gamma*, while the angle between the optic axis and the line of vision is the angle *beta*. In emmetropia the angle *alpha* is about 5° . In hypermetropia it is greater, amounting to 7° or 8° , giving to the eye an appearance of divergence. In myopia it is much smaller— 2° —or in extreme cases may be abolished, the line of vision corresponding with the optic axis or even passing beyond it. The angle *gamma* is of value in determining the relative power and action of the extra-ocular muscles.

Functions of the Retina.—Of all the layers of the retina, the rods and cones appear to be the most essential to vision. It is only this layer that is capable of-receiving the light stimulus and of transforming it into some specific form of energy, which in turn arouses

FIG. 300.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE CORNEAL AXIS *D D*, THE OPTIC AXIS *O A*, THE VISUAL AXIS *V L*, AND THE LINE OF FIXATION *V C*; ALSO THE THREE ANGLES, α , β , γ .

in the fibers of the optic nerve the characteristic nerve impulses. A ray of light entering the eye passes entirely through the various layers of the retina, and is arrested only upon reaching the pigmentary epithelium in which the rods and cones are embedded. As to the manner in which the objective stimuli—light and color, so called—are transformed into nerve impulses, but little is known. It is probable that the ether vibrations are transformed into heat, which excites the rods and cones. These, acting as highly specialized end organs of the optic nerve, start the impulses on their way to the brain, where the seeing process takes place. As to the relative function of the rods and cones, it has been suggested, from the study of the facts of comparative anatomy, that the rods are impressed only by differences in the intensity of light, while the cones, in addition, are impressed by qualitative differences in color. The nerve-fibers them-

selves are insensible to the impact of the ether vibrations, and require for their excitation some intermediate form of energy. That this is the case was shown by Donders, who reflected a beam of light on the optic nerve at its entrance without the individual experiencing any sensation of light. This region, occupied only by the optic-nerve fibers and devoid of any special retinal elements, is therefore an insensitive or *blind spot*. The diameter of this spot is about 1.5 mm., and occupies in the field of vision a space of about 6° . It is situated about 3.5 mm. to the nasal side of the visual axis. Its existence can be demonstrated by the familiar experiment of Mariotte, which consists in placing before the eye two objects having the relation to each other as in Fig. 301. With the left eye closed and the right eye directed to the cross, both objects may be visible. But by moving the figure away from or toward the eye, there will be found a distance, about 30 cm., when the circle will be invisible. This occurs when the image falls on the optic nerve at its entrance. The experiment of Purkinje as described in the following paragraph demonstrates also

FIG. 301.—DIAGRAM FOR OBSERVING THE SITUATION OF THE BLIND SPOT.—
(Helmholtz.)

the fact that the sensitive portion of the retina is to be found only in the layer of rods and cones.

It is well known that the blood-vessels of the retina are situated in its innermost layers a short distance behind the optic-nerve fibers. Owing to this anatomic arrangement, a portion of the light coming through the pupil will be intercepted by the vessels and a shadow projected on the layer of rods and cones. Ordinarily, these shadows are not perceived, for the reason that the shaded parts are more sensitive, so that the small amount of light passing through the vessels produces as strong an impression on this part as does the full amount of light on the unshaded parts of the retina, and perhaps because the mind has learned to disregard them. But if light be made to enter the eye obliquely, the position of the shadows will be changed, when at once they become apparent. This can be shown in the following way: If in a darkened room a lighted candle be held several inches to the side and to the front of the eye, and then moved up and down, there will be perceived, apparently in the field of vision, an arborescent figure corresponding to the retinal blood-vessels. This is due

to the falling of the shadows on unusual portions of the layer of rods and cones.

Excitability of the Retina.—The retina is not equally excitable in all parts of its extent. The maximum degree of sensibility is found in the macula lutea, and especially in its central portion, the fovea. In this region the layers of the retina almost entirely disappear, the layer of rods and cones alone remaining, and in the fovea only the latter are present. That this area is the point of most distinct vision is shown by the observation that when the eye is directed to any given point of light, its image always falls in the fovea. Any pathologic change in the fovea is attended by marked indistinctness of vision. The sensibility of the retina gradually but irregularly diminishes from the macula toward the periphery. This diminution in sensibility holds true for monochromatic as well as white light.

As stated above, the nature of the molecular processes which take place in the retinal tissue, caused on one hand by the light vibrations, and on the other hand developing nerve impulses, is entirely unknown. The discovery of the *visual purple* in the outer segment of the rods gave promise of some explanation of the process, especially when it was shown to undergo changes when exposed to the action of light. But as the pigment is wanting in the cones, and especially in the fovea, it cannot be considered essential to distinct vision, although that it plays some important rôle in the visual process is highly probable. It was observed by Van Genderen Stort, that when an animal is kept in darkness some time before death, the cones are long and filiform; but if the animal has been exposed to light, they are short and swollen. It was discovered by Ball that if an animal is kept in darkness an hour or two before death the pigment is massed at the ends of the rods and cones, but after exposure to light it becomes displaced and extends over and between the rods almost to the external limiting membrane. These conditions are represented in Fig. 302.

The Eye a Living Camera.—In its construction, in the arrangement of its various parts, and in their mode of action the eye may be compared to a *camera obscura*. Though the comparison may not be absolutely exact, yet in a general way it is true that there are many striking points of similarity between them; *e. g.*, the sclera and chorioid may be compared to the walls of the camera; the combined refracting media to the single lens, the action of which results in the focusing of the light rays; the retina to the sensitive plate receiving the image formed at the focal point; the iris to the diaphragm for the regulation of the amount of light to be admitted, and for the partial exclusion of those marginal rays which give rise to *spheric aberration*; the ciliary muscle to the adjusting screw, by means of which the image is brought to a focus on the sensitive plate, notwithstanding the varying distances

of the object from the lens. The presence of the *visual purple* in the rods of the retina capable of being altered by light makes the comparison still more striking.

Kühne even succeeded in obtaining a fixed image or an *optogram* of an external object in a manner similar to that by which an image is fixed on the sensitive plate of a camera. An animal is kept in the dark for about ten minutes in order to permit the retinal pigment to be completely regenerated. The animal, with the eyes covered, is then brought into a room with a single window. After the head is steadily directed to the window, the eye is exposed for several minutes. The eyes are again covered, the animal killed, and the eyes removed by the light of a sodium flame. The retina is then

FIG. 302.—SECTION OF THE RETINA OF A FROG. A. In darkness. B. In light.—
(After Van Genderen Stort, from Tscherning's "Physiologic Optics.")

placed in a 4 per cent. solution of alum. In a short time the image of the window, the *optogram*, will be fixed (Fig. 303). That portion of the retina corresponding to the image is quite bleached in appearance from the action of the light on the pigment. During life the regeneration of the visual purple must take place with extreme rapidity. It is believed to be derived from a pigment secreted by the layer of pigment cells.

Binocular Vision.—Though two images are formed, one on each retina, when the eyes are directed to a given object, there results but one sensation. If the direction of either visual axis be changed by pressure on the eyeball, there arise two sensations, and the object appears to be doubled. The reason assigned for this, in the first

instance, is that the two images fall into the foveæ, two corresponding points; while in the second instance they fall on non-corresponding points. It would appear, therefore, that for the purpose of seeing an object singly when the eyes are directed toward it, the rays emanating from it must fall on corresponding parts of the retina. As all portions of the retina are sensitive to light, though in varying degrees, it is not essential that the images always fall in the foveæ. The parts of the retina which correspond physiologically are shown in Fig. 304. In this figure the retinal area is divided into quadrants by vertical and horizontal lines of separation, as they are termed. If one retina is placed in front of or over the other, it will be found that the quadrants bearing similar letters cover each other. So long as the rays of light, entering the eye, fall on corresponding areas the sensation of but one object arises. If, however, they fall on non-corresponding areas, two sensations arise, due to the stimulating action of two images. Normal binocular vision enlarges very considerably the area of the visual field, permits of a better estimation of the size and distance of objects, enables the mind to form more readily a perception of depth, increases the intensity of sensations and makes sensation more uniform by offsetting retinal rivalry.

The Horopter.—When the eyes are in the so called secondary position,—that is, in a position in which the visual axes are converged and directed to a point in front of and in the middle plane of the body,—it will be found on examination that rays of light from a number of other objects enter the eye, pass through the nodal point, and fall on corresponding parts of the two retinae and give rise to but single images. All such points lie, for the horizontal line of separation, on

FIG. 304.—CORRESPONDING AREAS OF THE RETINA.

a line termed the *horopter*. The form of this line is that of a circle which passes through the fixation point and the two nodal points. Any object on the horopter will give rise to but a single image. This is shown in Fig. 305, in which the objects I, II, III project their rays into both eyes which fall on corresponding areas.

In addition to the horopter for the horizontal line of separation, there is also an horopter for the vertical line of separation. At a

FIG. 303.—RETINA OF A RABBIT. OPTOGRAM OF A WINDOW FOUR METERS DISTANT. *a*. Yellow spot. *b, b*. White streak of nerve-fibers.—(Kühne.)

distance of two meters the vertical horopter is a plane. Within this distance it is concave to the face; beyond this distance it is convex.

An object which lies either in front of or behind the fixation point will project its rays on parts of the retina which do not correspond, and hence give rise to double images. This is evident from examination of Fig. 306. While the eyes are directed to figure 2, of which there is but a single image, the objects B and A give rise to double images, for reasons already given. If the eyes are now directed to B, double images will be formed of 2 and A.

At all times, therefore, double images are formed on the retinae the existence of which is scarcely noticed unless the attention is

FIG. 305.—HOROPTER FOR THE SECONDARY POSITION, WITH CONVERGENCE OF THE VISUAL AXES.—(Landois.)

FIG. 306.—SCHEME OF IDENTICAL AND NON-IDENTICAL POINTS OF THE RETINA.—(Landois.)

directed to them. This is due to the fact that many of the images fall on the peripheral, less sensitive parts of the retinae. At the same time, from a want of accommodation and the formation of diffusion-circles, they are indistinct. For these reasons they are readily neglected.

In the primary position of the eyes—that is, a position in which the visual axes are parallel—the horopter is a plane in infinity. In the tertiary position the horopter is a curve of complex form.

Movements of the Eyeball.—The almost spheric eyeball lies in the correspondingly shaped cavity of the orbit, like a ball placed in a socket, and is capable of being moved to a considerable extent

by the six muscles which are attached to it. These muscles are the superior and inferior recti, the external and internal recti, and the superior and inferior obliqui (Fig. 307). The *four recti* muscles arise from the apex of the orbit cavity, from which point they pass forward to be inserted into the sclera about 7 to 8 mm. from the corneal border. The *superior oblique* muscle having a similar origin passes forward to the upper and inner angle of the orbit cavity, at which point its tendon passes through a cartilaginous pulley, after which it is reflected backward to be inserted into the superior surface of the sclera about 16 mm. behind the corneal border. The *inferior oblique* muscle arises from the inner and inferior angle of the orbit cavity. It then passes outward, upward, and backward, to be inserted into the upper, posterior and temporal portion of the sclera about 4 or 5 mm. from the optic nerve entrance.

The movements of each eye are referred to three fixed lines or axes, which have their origin at the point of rotation of the eyeball, this point lying about 1.7 mm. behind the center of the globe. If the eye looks straight forward in the horizontal plane (the head being erect), the line joining the center

FIG. 307.—MUSCLES OF THE EYE. TENDON OR LIGAMENT OF ZINN. 1. Tendon of Zinn. 2. External rectus divided. 3. Internal rectus. 4. Inferior rectus. 5. Superior rectus. 6. Superior oblique. 7. Pulley for superior oblique. 8. Inferior oblique. 9. Levator palpebræ superioris. 10, 10. Its anterior expansion. 11. Optic nerve.—(Sappey.)

of rotation with the object looked at is the *visual line* or *visual axis*. Around this antero-posterior axis the eye may be regarded as performing its circular *rotation* or *torsion*. At right angles to this line, and joining the center of rotation of both eyes, is the *horizontal* or *transverse axis*, around which the movements of elevation (up to 34 degrees) and depression (down to 57 degrees) take place. At right angles to both of these lines there is the *vertical axis*, around which the movements of adduction (toward the nose up to 45 degrees) and abduction (toward the temple up to 42 degrees) occur. The six muscles may be divided into three pairs, each of which has a common axis around which it tends to move the eyeball. But only the common axis of the internal and external recti coincides with one of three axes

before mentioned—namely, with the vertical axis—thus moving the ball only inwardly or outwardly—respectively. The other two pairs, however, have their own axes of action, and their movements of the ball must be therefore analyzed with regard to all the three axes, each of these four muscles producing rotation, elevation, and depression, and abduction or adduction. The superior and inferior recti muscles, forming one pair, move the eye around a horizontal axis which intersects the median plane of the body in front of the eyes at an angle of 63 degrees, and the superior and inferior oblique muscles forming the third pair rotate the globe around a horizontal axis which cuts the median plane of the body behind the eyes at an angle of 39 degrees. Thus it is that each muscle moves the eye as follows, the movement for practical purposes being referred to the cornea: The rectus externus draws the cornea simply to the temporal side, the rectus internus simply to the nose; the superior rectus displaces the cornea upward, slightly inward, and turns the upper part toward the nose (medial torsion); the inferior rectus moves the cornea downward, slightly inward, and twists the upper part away from the nose (lateral torsion); the superior oblique displaces the cornea downward, slightly outward, and produces medial torsion; while the inferior oblique moves the cornea upward, slightly outward, and produces lateral torsion. These facts show that for certain movements of the eye at least three muscles are necessary (see following table):

<i>Inward</i> ,-----	Rectus internus.	<i>Inward and</i>	{	Rectus internus.	
<i>Outward</i> ,-----	Rectus externus.	<i>downward</i> , ---		Rectus inferior.	
<i>Upward</i> ,-----	{ Rectus superior.	<i>Outward and</i>	{	Obliquus superior.	
	{ Obliquus inferior.			Rectus externus.	
<i>Downward</i> ,---	{ Rectus inferior.	<i>upward</i> , ----	{	Rectus superior.	
	{ Obliquus superior.			Obliquus inferior.	
<i>Inward and</i>	{ Rectus internus.	<i>Outward and</i>	{	Rectus externus.	
<i>upward</i> ,---				Rectus superior.	Rectus inferior.
				Obliquus inferior.	Obliquus superior.

If both eyes have their line of vision in the horizontal plane parallel with each other and with the median plane of the body, they are said to be in the *primary position*. All other positions are called *secondary*. Both eyes always move simultaneously, which is called the *associated movement of the eyes*. There are three forms of associated movements: (1) movement of both eyes in the same direction; (2) movements of convergence by which the visual lines are converged on a point in the middle line of the body; (3) movements of divergence, by which the eyes are brought back from convergence to parallelism, or even to divergence, as in certain stereoscopic exercises. A combination of (1) and (2) or of (1) and (3) takes place for certain positions of the object looked at.

Color-perception.—A beam of sunlight passed through a glass prism is decomposed into a series of colors—red, orange, yellow,

green, blue, and violet—the so-called *spectral colors*, so well exemplified in the rainbow. The spectral colors are termed *simple* tions of the ether, from about 400 millions of millions per second for Objectively, the spectral colors consist of very rapid transverse vibrations, because they can not be any further decomposed by a prism. red to about 760 millions of millions for violet, but subjectively they are sensations caused by the impact of the ether-waves on the perceptive layer of the retina.

It is possible to mix or blend these spectral color-sensations in the eye by stimulating the same area of the retina by different spectral colors, either at the same time or in rapid succession. The following table shows the results of such experiments as performed by v. Helmholtz (Dk. = dark; Wh. = whitish):

	VIOLET.	INDIGO.	CYAN-BLUE.	BLUISH-GREEN.	GREEN.	GREENISH YELLOW.	YELLOW.
Red.	Purple.	Dk.-rose.	Wh.-rose.	White.	Wh.-yellow.	Gold-yellow	Orange.
Orange.	Dk.-rose.	Wh.-rose.	White.	Wh.-yellow.	Yellow.	Yellow.	....
Yellow.	Wh.-rose.	White.	Wh.-green.	Wh.-yellow.	Gr.-yellow.	....	....
Gr.-yellow.	White.	Wh.-green.	Wh.-green.	Green.	....	....	....
Green.	White-blue.	Water-blue.	Bl.-green.	....	....	....	....
Bluish-green.	Water-blue.	Water-blue.	....	....	....	....	....
Cyan-blue.	Indigo.	..	....	....	....	....	....

These are the *mixed colors*. But it is to be observed that only two new color-sensations can be produced, white and purple, the remaining mixed colors already finding their equivalent in the spectrum. White and purple, therefore, are color-sensations which have no objective equivalent in a simple number of ether-vibrations like the spectral colors.

Two spectral colors which by their mixture produce the sensation of white are called *complementary colors*. Such are red and green-blue, golden yellow and blue, green and violet. The mixture of all the spectral colors produces white again. This is the result of adding two or more *color-sensations*. Different results are obtained, however, by adding *color pigments*. Yellow and blue, for example, produce in the eye white, but on the painter's palette green. The colors of nature are usually mixtures of simple colors, as can be shown by spectroscopic analysis or by a synthesis of spectral colors.

In all color-sensations we must distinguish three primary qualities: (1) hue; (2) purity or tint; (3) brightness or luminosity. The first quality gives the main name to the color—e. g., red or blue—this depending on the spectral color or the mixture of two spectral colors with which it can be matched. The second quality, the tint, depends on the admixture of white with the ground color; and the third quality, brightness, depends on the objective intensity of the light and the subjective sensitiveness of the retina. Color-perception thus far refers

only to the most sensitive part of the retina. At the more peripheral parts of the retina the colors are seen somewhat differently, as is shown by the following table giving the limits up to which the colors are recognized:

	White.	Blue.	Red.	Green.
Externally -----	90°	80°	65°	50°
Internally -----	60°	55°	50°	40°
Superiorly -----	45°	40°	35°	30°
Inferiorly -----	70°	60°	45°	35°

Theories of Color-perception.—The *theory of v. Helmholtz*, originated by Thomas Young (1807), assumes in its latest form the existence in the human retina of three different kinds of end-organs, each of which is loaded with its own photo-chemical substance capable of being decomposed by a certain color, and thus exciting the fiber of the optic nerve.

In the first group these end-organs are loaded with a red-sensitive substance, which is affected mainly by the red part of the spectrum; the second group has its end-organs provided with a green-sensitive substance, which is mainly excited by the green color; while the third group is provided with a blue-sensitive substance, this latter being mainly affected and decomposed by the blue-violet portion of the spectrum. All these three different end-organs are present in every part of the most sensitive area of the retina, and are connected by separate nerve-fibers with special parts of the brain, in the cells of which each calls up its separate sensation of red or green or blue.

Out of these three primary color-sensations all other color-sensations arise. If a light mainly excites the red- or green- or blue-sensitive substance of a retinal area, we term it red, green, or blue, respectively. But if two of these photo-chemical substances are stimulated simultaneously, quite different sensations arise. Thus simultaneous stimulation of the red and green substances gives rise to the sensation of yellow, that of red and blue to the sensation of purple, and that of blue and green to the sensation of blue-green. Simultaneous stimulation of all three substances of a certain area produces the sensation of white. According to this theory, complementary colors are all those which together excite all the three substances. *Color-blindness* is explained by this theory, on the assumption that two of the photo-chemical substances have become similar or equal in composition to each other.

The *theory of Hering*, brought forward in 1874, has the underlying assumption that the process of restitution in a nerve-element is capable of exciting a sensation. This theory asserts that there are three visual substances in the retina—a white-black, a red-green, and a yellow-blue visual substance. A destructive process in the white-black substance, such as is induced not only by white light, but also

by any other simple or mixed color, produces the sensation of white, while the process of restitution or assimilation in this substance produces the sensation of black. Similarly, red light produces disassimilation or decomposition in the red-green substance, and this, again, the sensation of red. Green light, however, favors the process of restitution or assimilation in the red-green substances, and thus gives rise to the sensation of green. In the same way the sensation of yellow has its cause in the decomposition of yellow-blue substance induced by yellow light, while the sensation of blue is produced by an assimilative process in the same substance. Simultaneous processes of disassimilation and assimilation in the same visual substance antagonize each other, and consequently produce no color-sen-

FIG. 308.—THE LACRIMAL AND MEIBOMIAN GLANDS, AND ADJACENT ORGANS OF THE EYE. 1, 1. Inner wall of orbit. 2, 2. Inner portion of orbicularis palpebrarum. 3, 3. Attachment to circumference of base of orbit. 4. Orifice for transmission of nasal artery. 5. Muscle of Horner (tensor tarsi). 6, 6. Meibomian glands. 7, 7. Orbital portion of lacrimal gland. 8, 9, 10. Palpebral portion. 11, 11. Mouths of excretory ducts. 12, 13. Lacrimal puncta.—(Sappey.)

sation by means of this substance, but only the sensation of white, by reason of decomposition, by both colors, in the white-black substance. Thus, yellow and blue, impinging on the same retinal area, have no effect on the yellow-blue substance, because they are antagonistic in their action on this substance, but only produce the sensation of white, as both yellow and blue decompose the white-black material. *Color-blindness* is explained by the assumption of the absence of either the red-green or the yellow-blue visual substance in the retina.

Accessory Structures.—The eyeball is protected anteriorly by the eyelids and their associated structures, the Meibomian glands, the lacrimal glands, and tears.

The *eyelids* consist of a central framework of connective tissue supporting muscle tissue (the orbicularis palpebrarum muscle) and glands, and covered externally by skin and internally by a modified skin, the conjunctiva. The free border of each lid is strengthened by a semilunar plate of dense fibrous tissue, the tarsus. The cutaneous edge of the lid is bordered with short stiff hairs. At the inner extremity each eyelid presents a small opening, the punctum lacrimale, the beginning of the lacrimal duct. The two ducts after uniting open into the nasal duct.

The *Meibomian glands* are modified sebaceous glands imbedded in the posterior portion of the lids (Fig. 308). Their ducts open on the free border of the lid. These glands secrete an oleaginous material resembling sebaceous matter which accumulates along the margin of the lid and prevents the tears from flowing down the cheek.

The *lacrimal gland* is situated at the upper and outer part of the orbit cavity. It consists of a series of compound tubules lined by epithelium. The secretion (the tears) is conducted from the gland to the outer part of the conjunctiva by seven or eight ducts. The lacrimal secretion consists of water and inorganic salts. It is distributed over the corneal surface during the act of winking, thus keeping it moist and free from foreign particles. It eventually passes into the lacrimal ducts and then into the nose. The lacrimal glands receive secretory fibers by way of the fifth nerve and the cervical sympathetic. The secretion can be excited reflexly from stimulation of sensor nerves as well as by emotional states.

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE SENSE OF HEARING.

The physiologic mechanism involved in the sense of hearing includes the ear, the auditory nerve, its cortical connections, and nerve-cells in the cortex of the temporal lobe.

Peripheral excitation of this mechanism develops nerve impulses which, transmitted to the cortex, evoke the sensation of sound and its varying qualities—intensity, pitch, and timbre.

The specific physiologic stimulus to the terminal organ, the organ of Corti, is the impact of atmospheric undulations of varying energy and rapidity.

THE PHYSIOLOGIC ANATOMY OF THE EAR.

The ear, the organ of hearing, is lodged within the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It may, for convenience of description, be divided into three portions: viz., the external, the middle, and the internal portions (Fig. 309).

The **external ear** consists of the *pinna* or *auricle* and the *external auditory canal*. The *pinna* is composed of a thin layer of cartilage which presents a series of elevations and depressions. It is attached by fibrous tissue to the outer edge of the auditory canal and covered by a layer of skin continuous with that covering adjacent structures. The general shape of the pinna is concave. Its anterior surface presents, a little below the center, a deep depression—the *concha*.

The *external auditory canal* extends from the concha inward for a distance of from 25 to 30 mm. It is directed at first upward, forward, inward, and then downward to its termination. It is composed partly of bone and partly of cartilage and lined by a reflection of the skin covering the pinna. At the external portion of the canal the skin contains a number of tubular glands, the *ceruminous glands*, which resemble in their conformation the perspiratory glands. They secrete cerumen or ear-wax.

The **middle ear**, or **tympanum**, is an irregularly shaped cavity hollowed out of the temporal bone and situated between the external auditory canal and the internal ear. It is narrow from side to side, though wider above than below. It is relatively long in its antero-posterior and vertical diameters. The upper portion is known as the attic. The middle ear is in communication posteriorly with the

mastoid cells, anteriorly with the pharynx through the Eustachian tube.

The Eustachian Tube.—The passageway between the tympanic cavity and the naso-pharynx is known from its discoverer as the Eustachian tube. It is composed internally of bone, externally of cartilage, and is lined by mucous membrane covered with ciliated epithelium. Near the middle of its course the tube is contracted, though expanded at either extremity (Fig. 312). It measures about 40 mm. in length. Its general direction from the pharyngeal orifice is outward, backward, and upward at an angle of about 45 degrees.

FIG. 309.—THE EAR.—1. Pinna, or auricle. 2. Concha. 3. External auditory canal. 4. Membrana tympani. 5. Incus. 6. Malleus. 7. Manubrium mallei. 8. Tensor tympani. 9. Tympanic cavity. 10. Eustachian tube. 11. Superior semicircular canal. 12. Posterior semicircular canal. 13. External semicircular canal. 14. Cochlea. 15. Internal auditory canal. 16. Facial nerve. 17. Large petrosal nerve. 18. Vestibular branch of auditory nerve. 19. Cochlear branch.—(*Sappey.*)

The middle ear cavity is separated from the external ear by a membrane—the membrana tympani—and from the internal ear by an osseo-membranous partition which forms a common wall for both cavities. The interior of the cavity is crossed from side to side by a chain of bones and lined by a mucous membrane continuous with that lining the pharynx.

The *membrana tympani* is a thin, translucent, nearly circular membrane, measuring about 10 mm. in diameter, placed at the inner termination of the external auditory canal. It is inclosed in a ring of bone which in the fetal condition can be easily removed, but in

the adult condition can not be removed, owing to its consolidation with the surrounding bone. This membrane consists primarily of a layer of fibrous tissue which is covered externally by a thin layer of skin continuous with that lining the auditory canal, and internally by a thin mucous membrane. The tympanic membrane is placed obliquely at the bottom of the auditory canal, inclining from above and behind downward and forward at an angle of about forty-five degrees. The external surface of this membrane presents a funnel-shaped depression, the sides of which are slightly convex.

The Ear-bones.—Running across the tympanic cavity and forming an irregular line of joined levers is a chain of bones, which articulate one with another at their extremities. These bones are known as the *malleus*, *incus*, and *stapes*. The form and arrangement of these bones are shown in Figs. 310, 311.

The *malleus*, or hammer bone, consists of a head, neck, and handle, of which the latter is attached to the inner surface of the membrana tympani. The *incus* or anvil bone presents a concave articular surface which receives the head of the malleus. The stapes, or stirrup-bone, articulates externally with the long process of the incus, and in an oval opening, the footplate, supported by a ligament and to the walls of the t

The Tensor Tympani Muscle.—This is a delicate muscle, about 15 mm. in length, situated in a narrow groove just above the Eustachian tube (Fig. 312). It arises from the cartilaginous portion of the Eustachian tube and the adjacent portion of the sphenoid bone. From this origin it passes nearly horizontally backward to the tympanic cavity; just opposite to the foramen ovale, its tendon bends at

FIG. 310.—TYMPANIC MEMBRANE AND THE AUDITORY OSSICLES (LEFT) SEEN FROM WITHIN, *i. e.*, FROM THE TYMPANIC CAVITY. *M.* Manubrium or handle of the malleus. *T.* Insertion of the tensor tympani. *h.* Head. *lf.* Long process of the malleus. *a.* Incus, with the short (*K*) and the long (*l*) process. *S.* Plate of the stapes. *Ax, Ax,* is the common axis of rotation of the auditory ossicles. *S'.* The pinion-wheel arrangement between the malleus and incus.—(*Landois.*)

a right angle over the processus cochleariformis and then passes outward across the tympanic cavity to be inserted into the handle of the malleus near the neck.

FIG. 311. — AUDITORY OSSICLES. — 1. Head of malleus. 2. Processus brevis. 3. Processus gracilis. 4. Manubrium. 5. Long process of incus. 6. Articulation between incus and stapes. 7. Stapes. —(Sappey.)

The *stapedius muscle* emerges from the cavity of a pyramid of bone which projects from the posterior wall of the tympanum. Its tendon passes forward to be inserted into the neck of the stapes bone near its point of articulation with the incus.

The **internal ear**, or **labyrinth**, is located within the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It consists of an osseous and a membranous portion, the latter contained within the former.

The **osseous labyrinth** is subdivided into vestibule, semicircular canals, and cochlea.

The *vestibule* is a small, triangular-shaped cavity between the semicircular canals and the cochlea. It is separated from the cavity of the middle ear by an osseous partition which presents near its center an oval opening, the *foramen ovale*. In the living condition this opening is closed by the base of the stapes bone, which is

held in position by an annular ligament. The inner wall presents a number of openings for the passage of nerve-fibers (Fig. 313).

The *semicircular canals* are three in number, a superior vertical, an inferior vertical, and a horizontal, each of which opens by two orifices into the cavity of the vestibule, with the exception of the two vertical, which unite at one extremity and then open by a single orifice. Each canal near its vestibular orifice is enlarged to almost twice the size of the rest of the canal, forming what is known as the ampulla.

The *cochlea*, the anterior portion of the labyrinth, is a gradually tapering canal, about 35 mm. in length, wound spirally two and a half times around a central bony axis, the *modiolus*. The cavity of the cochlea is partially subdivided into two cavities by a thin spiral plate of bone which projects from the inner wall, known as the *lamina osseous spiralis*. In the natural condition this partition is completed by a connective-tissue membrane, so that the two passages are completely separated from each other. The *upper* passage or

FIG. 312. — M, THE TENSOR TYMPANI MUSCLE — THE EUSTACHIAN TUBE (LEFT). —(Landois.)

scala is in free communication with the vestibule, and is known as the *scala vestibuli*; the *lower* passage or scala in the dead condition communicates with the tympanum by means of a round opening, the *foramen rotundum*, and is therefore known as the *scala tympani*. In the living condition this opening is completely closed by a membrane, a second *membrana tympani*. Both the *scalæ vestibuli* and *tympani* communicate at the apex of the cochlea by a small opening, the *helicotrema*. The *modiolus*, the central bony axis, is perforated from base to apex by a canal for the passage of the auditory nerve-fibers; lateral canals, diverging from the central canal, pass through the osseous *lamina spiralis* and transmit fibers of the auditory nerve. The interior of the bony labyrinth is lined by periosteum covered by epithelium and in communication with lymph-spaces at the base of the skull by means of the aqueduct of the vestibule.

The **membranous labyrinth**, lying within the osseous labyrinth, corresponds with it in form, though it is smaller in size. It may be subdivided into vestibule, semicircular canals, and cochlea (Fig. 314).

The *vestibular portion* consists of two small sacs, the *utricle* and the *sacculæ*, which communicate with each other by means of the two branches of a duct passing through the aqueduct of the vestibule—the *ductus endolymphaticus*.

FIG. 314.—1. Utricle. 2. Sacculæ. 3. Vestibular end of cochlea. 4. Canalis reuniens. 5. Membranous cochlea. 6. Membranous semicircular canal.—(Potter's "Anatomy.")

maculæ acusticæ, in all three structures, the epithelium undergoes a marked change in appearance and structure. It becomes columnar in shape and provided with stiff hair-like processes or threads, which project into the cavity. In the saccule and utricle the hair-like processes are covered by a layer of small crystals of calcium

FIG. 313.—BONY COCHLEA. 1. Ampulla of superior semicircular canal. 2. Horizontal canal. 3. Junction of superior and posterior semicircular canals. 4. The posterior semicircular canal. 5. Foramen rotundum. 6. Foramen ovale. 7. Cochlea.

The *semicircular canals* communicate with the utricle in the same manner as the bony canals communicate with the vestibule. The saccule communicates with the membranous cochlea by a short canal, the *canalis reuniens*. The walls of the utricle, saccule, and semicircular canals are composed of connective tissue lined by epithelium. At the points of entrance of the auditory nerve, the

carbonate held together by a gelatinous material. The crystals are known as otoliths.

The fibers of the *vestibular nerve*, arising from the cells of the ganglion of Scarpa in the internal auditory meatus, send their peripherally directed branches through the foramina in the inner wall of the vestibule, through the walls of the utricle and semicircular canals near the ampulla. As the fibers approach the maculæ acusticæ they subdivide into delicate fibrillæ, which ultimately become histologically and physiologically related to the neuro-epithelium. From the relation of the nerve-fibers to the epithelium, the latter must be regarded as the highly specialized *terminal organ* of the *vestibular portion* of the auditory nerve.

FIG. 315.—SECTION OF WALL OF UTRICLE OF THE INTERNAL EAR, through macular region, from rabbit, showing otoliths (o), embedded within granular substance (g). h. Ciliated cells with processes (p), extending between sustentacular elements (s). m. Basement membrane. n. Nerve-fibers within fibrous tissue (l) passing toward hair-cells and becoming non-medullated at basement-membrane. —(After Piersol.)

316). The cochlear tube is triangular in shape. The base is attached to the bony wall, the apex to the edge of osseous lamina spiralis. One side of the tube forms in part the membrane of Reissner, the other side forms in part the basilar membrane. The sides of the cochlea toward the scala vestibuli and scala tympani are covered with epithelium. The triangular cavity of the cochlear tube is known as the *scala media*. The *inner surface* of the cochlear tube is lined by epithelium, which becomes extraordinarily modified and specialized along the surface of the basilar membrane, to constitute what is known as—

The Organ of Corti.—In Fig. 316 this organ is represented as it appears on cross-section of the cochlea. It consists primarily of

FIG. 316.—A TRANSVERSE SECTION OF A TURN OF THE COCHLEA.

an arch composed of two modified epithelial cells known as the rods or pillars of Corti, which rest below on the basilar membrane, but meet and interlock above; it consists secondarily of a series of columnar epithelial cells provided with hair-like processes which rest upon and are supported by the rods both on the inner and outer aspects of the arch. The space beneath the arch is known as the tunnel. The inner hair cells are not nearly so numerous as the outer hair cells. The epithelial cells external to the outer and inner hair cells are supporting or sustentacular in character.

The organ of Corti extends the entire length of the cochlea. The number of rods which, standing side by side, form the inner limb of the arch is estimated at 5600; the number which form the outer limb is estimated at 3850. The outer rods are broader than the inner and at some places articulate with two or three inner rods. The upper edges of the rods are flattened, elongated, and project outward, forming a reticulated membrane through the meshes of which the hair-like processes of the cells project.

From the connective-tissue thickening on the upper surface of the osseous lamina spiralis there extends outward over the organ of Corti a thin membrane, the *membrana tectoria*. The common cavity between the walls of the osseous and membranous labyrinth in the vestibule, the semicircular canals, in the scala vestibuli and scala tympani of the cochlea, is filled with a clear fluid—the *perilymph*; the common cavity within the walls of the entire membranous labyrinth is also filled with a similar fluid—the *endolymph*. The hair-like processes of the epithelial cells covering the maculæ acusticæ and the rods of Corti are consequently bathed by endolymph. Both fluids are in relation with the subarachnoid lymph-spaces at the base of the brain, the perilymph through the aqueduct of the vestibule, the endolymph through the endolymphatic duct.

The fibers of the cochlear nerve, arising from the ganglion cells of the *spiral ganglion* situated in the osseous lamina spiralis near the modiolus, send their peripheral branches to the saccule and to the organ of Corti. As they approach this structure they lose their medullary sheath and become naked axis-cylinders. The fibers then divide into two parts, of which one passes to the inner hair cells; the other passes between the inner rods and crosses the tunnel between the outer rods to the outer hair cells. The exact method of termination of these fibers in the hair cells is unknown, but doubtless it is both histologic and physiologic.

From the relation of the nerve-fibers to the organ of Corti the latter must be regarded as the highly specialized *terminal organ* of the cochlear division of the auditory nerve.

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF AUDITION.

The general function of the ear is the reception and transmission of atmospheric vibrations from the concha to the percipient elements—the hair cells—of the organ of Corti. The vibratory excitation of these end-organs thus caused, is the basis of auditory perceptions. The atmospheric vibrations are collected by the pinna and concha, conveyed by the auditory canal to the tympanic membrane, transmitted by the chain of bones to the labyrinth to pass successively through the perilymph, the membranous walls, the endolymph, to the hair cells. The nerve impulses generated by these vibrations are then transmitted by the cochlear nerve to the auditory centers of the cerebrum, where the sensations of sound are evoked. In order to appreciate the function of the individual structures concerned in this general function there must be kept in mind a few of the characteristics of atmospheric vibrations.

Atmospheric Vibrations.—The vibrations of the atmosphere which are the objective causes of the sensations of sound are communicated to it by the vibrations of elastic bodies such as tuning-forks, rods, strings, membranes, etc. These produce in the air a to-and-fro movement of its particles, resulting in a succession of alternate condensations and rarefactions which are propagated in all directions. The impact of a rhythmic succession of such condensations on the ear gives rise to musical sounds; the impact of an arrhythmic or irregular succession gives rise to noises.

If a writing point attached to a tuning-fork in vibration be placed in contact with a traveling recording surface, each vibration will be recorded in the form of a wave. For this reason atmospheric vibrations are generally spoken of as sound-waves. A line drawn horizontally through such a curve indicates the position of rest of the fork; the extent of the curve on each side of this line indicates the excursion of the fork or the amplitude of its movement.

The sounds which physiologically result from the impact and transmission of the effects of sound-waves, possess intensity, pitch, and quality or tone.

The *intensity* or loudness of a sound depends on the amplitude of the vibration which causes it. The greater the amplitude or swing of the vibrating body, the greater is the energy with which it strikes the ear.

The *pitch* of a sound depends on the number of vibrations which strike the ear in a unit of time—a second. The greater the number, the higher the pitch. Thus while the pitch of the sound caused by the note C, on the first leger line below, of the music scale, corresponds to 256 vibrations, the pitch of the sound caused by the note C an octave above, corresponds to 512 vibrations. The lowest rate of

vibration which can produce a distinct sound varies in different individuals from 14 to 18; the highest rate varies from 35,000 to 40,000 per second. Between these two extremes lies the range of audibility, which embraces about 11 octaves. Vibrations less than 14 per second can not be perceived as a continuous sound; vibrations beyond 40,000 also fail to be so perceived. In the ascent of the music scale from the lowest to the highest regions there is a gradual increase in the vibration frequency.

The *quality* of a sound depends on the *form* of the vibration. It is this feature which gives rise to those differences in sensations which permit one to distinguish one instrument from another when both are emitting the same note. The form of the sound-wave in any given instance is the resultant of a combination of a fundamental vibration and certain secondary vibrations of subdivisions of the vibrating body. These secondary vibrations give rise to what is known as overtones. By their union with and modification of the fundamental vibration there is produced a special form of vibration which gives rise not to a simple but a composite sensation. It is for this reason that the same note of the piano, the violin, and the human voice varies in quality.

The Function of the Pinna and External Auditory Canal.—

In those animals possessing movable ears the *pinna* plays an important part in the collection of sound-waves. In man it is doubtful if it plays a part at all necessary for hearing. Nevertheless an individual with defective hearing may have the perception of sound increased by placing the pinna at an angle of 90 degrees to the side of the head or by placing the hand behind it. The *external auditory canal* transmits the sonorous vibrations to the tympanic membrane. From the obliquity of this canal it has been supposed that the vibrations, after passing the concha, undergo a series of reflections on their way to the tympanic membrane, which, owing to its inclination, would be struck by them in a much more effective manner.

The Function of the Tympanic Membrane.—The function of the tympanic membrane is the reception of the atmospheric vibrations which are transmitted to it. This it does by vibrating in unison with them. The vibrations which the membrane exhibits correspond in amplitude, in frequency, and in form to those of the atmosphere. That this membrane actually reproduces all vibrations within the range of audibility has been experimentally demonstrated. The membrane not being fixed, as far as its tension is concerned, does not possess a fixed fundamental note, like a stationary fixed membrane, and is therefore just as well adapted for the reception of one set of vibrations as another. This is made possible by variations in its tension in accordance with the pitch or frequency of the atmospheric vibrations. In the absence of vibration the membrane is in

a condition of relaxation; with the advent of sound-waves possessing a gradual increase of pitch, as in the ascent of the music scale, the tension of the membrane increases until its maximum is reached at the upper limit of the range of audibility. By this change in tension certain tones become perceptible and distinct, while others become imperceptible and indistinct.

The Function of the Tensor Tympani Muscle.—The function of this muscle is, as its name indicates, to change and to fix the tension of the tympanic membrane, so that it can most readily vibrate in unison with vibrations of varying degrees of rapidity. The tendon of this muscle playing around the processus cochleariformis is attached almost at a right angle to the handle of the malleus. Hence as the muscle contracts it exerts its traction from the process and draws the handle of the malleus inward, thus increasing the convexity of the tympanic membrane and at the same time its tension. With the relaxation of the muscle the handle of the malleus passes outward, and the convexity and tension diminish.

In the ascent of the music scale, each note corresponding to an increase in vibration frequency, requires for its perception an increase in tension and an increase in the force of the contraction of the tensor muscle. In the descent of the music scale the reverse conditions obtain. The contraction of the muscle is of the nature of a single twitch, and of just sufficient force and duration to tense the membrane for a given rate of vibration.

The contraction of the muscle is excited reflexly. The afferent path is through fibers of the trigeminal nerve distributed to the tympanic membrane; the efferent path is through fibers in the small root of the trigeminal. The stimulus is sudden pressure on the tympanic membrane. The more frequently and forcibly the stimulus is applied, the greater is the muscle response. The tensor tympani muscle may therefore be regarded as an accommodative apparatus by which the tympanic membrane is adjusted for the reception of vibrations of varying degrees of frequency.

The Function of the Chain of Bones.—The function of the chain of bones is to transmit the effects of the atmospheric vibrations to the fluid of the labyrinth. The manner in which this is accomplished becomes evident from the relation which the bones of this chain bear to one another and to the tympanic membrane on the one hand and to the fluid of the labyrinth on the other.

When pressure is made on the outer surface of the tympanic membrane it is at once pushed inward, carrying with it the handle of the malleus, the head at the same time rotating outward around an axis corresponding to its ligamentous attachments. As the handle moves inward a small ledge of bone just below the malleo-incudal joint locks with, and hence pushes inward, the long process of the

incus. Since this process is united at almost a right angle to the stapes bone, the latter is forced toward and into the foramen ovale, thus producing a pressure on the perilymph. With the cessation of the pressure the elastic forces of the membrane and of the ligaments return the handle of the malleus to its former position; by the unlocking of the malleo-incudal joint the entire chain also returns to its former position without exerting undue traction on the basal attachment of the stapes.

As the long process of the incus is shorter than the handle of the malleus, and as the movement between them takes place around an axis from before backward, it follows that the excursion of the incus and stapes will be less than that of the malleus, while the force will be greater. Hence as the vibrations are transferred from the tympanic membrane of large area to the base of the stapes of small area (20 to 1.5), they lose in amplitude but increase in force. Their pressure on the perilymph is therefore thirty times greater than on the membrana tympani. In addition to its function as a transmitter of vibrations, the chain of bones serves as a point of attachment for muscles which regulate the tension of the tympanic membrane and the pressure on the labyrinth.

The Function of the Stapedius Muscle.—The function of the stapedius muscle is a subject of much discussion. According to Henle, its function is to so adjust the stapes bone that it will be prevented from exerting an undue pressure on the perilymph during the inward excursions of the incus process. According to Toynbee, its function is to press the posterior part of the stapes inward, make it a fixed point, and place the anterior part in such a position that it will vibrate freely and accurately.

The Function of the Eustachian Tube.—In order that the tympanic membrane may vibrate freely it is essential that the air pressure on both sides shall be equal at all times. This is made possible by the Eustachian tube. Were it not for this passageway, with each inward swing of the membrane the air in the tympanic cavity would be condensed and its pressure raised, in consequence of which the movement of the membrane would be retarded; with each outward swing, the air would be rarified and its pressure lowered below that of the atmosphere, and in consequence the movement outward would be retarded; the maximum response, therefore, of the membrane to a given vibration could not be attained and the resulting sound would be muffled and indistinct. But as with each vibration of the membrane the air can pass into and out of the tympanum through this tube, inequalities of pressure are prevented and a free vibration permitted.

The impairment in the acuteness of hearing which is caused by either a rise or fall of pressure in the middle ear can be shown—

1. By closing the mouth and nose and then forcing air from the lungs through the Eustachian tube into the tympanum, thus increasing the pressure.
2. By closing the mouth and nose and then making an effort of deglutition. As this act is attended by an opening of the pharyngeal end of the Eustachian tube, the air in the tympanum is partly withdrawn and the pressure lowered. In each instance hearing is impaired. After either experiment the normal condition is restored by swallowing with the nasal passages open.

The Functions of the Internal Ear.—From the anatomic arrangement of the structures of the internal ear it is evident that if the vibrations of the stapes bone are to reach the peripheral organs—the hair cells—of both the vestibular and cochlear nerves, they must traverse successively the perilymph, the membranous walls, and the endolymph. As the perilymph is incompressible, the inward movement of the stapes would be prevented were it not for the elastic character of the membrane closing the foramen rotundum. The pressure wave occasioned by each inward movement of the stapes is transmitted through the scala vestibuli, the helicotrema, the scala tympani, to this membrane, which by virtue of its elasticity is pressed into the tympanic cavity. With the outward movement of the stapes, equilibrium is at once restored.

The Functions of the Cochlea.—The cochlea is the portion of the internal ear which is concerned in the perception of tones. The arrangement of the histologic elements of the organ of Corti indicates that they in some way respond to the vibrations of varying frequency and form, and through the development of nerve impulses, evoke the sensations of pitch and quality. The manner in which this is accomplished is largely a matter of speculation. While many theories have been offered in explanation of the power to distinguish the pitch and the quality or timbre of a tone, most physiologists prefer that of Helmholtz, who regarded the transverse fibers of the basilar membrane as the elements immediately concerned, and compared them, both in their arrangement and power of sympathetic vibration, with the strings of a piano. He said: "If we could so connect every string of a piano with a nerve-fiber that the nerve-fiber would be excited as often as the string vibrated, then, as is actually the case in the ear, every musical note which affected the instrument would excite a series of sensations exactly corresponding to the pendulum-like vibrations into which the original movements of the air can be resolved; and thus the existence of each individual overtone would be exactly perceived, as is actually the case with the ear. The perception of tones of different pitch would, under these circumstances, depend upon different nerve-fibers, and hence would occur quite independently of each other. Microscopic in-

vestigation shows that there are somewhat similar structures in the ear. The free ends of all the nerve-fibers are connected with small elastic particles which we must assume are set into sympathetic vibration by sound-waves." (Stirling.)

The mechanism might be regarded, therefore, somewhat as follows: The sound-waves received by the membrana tympani and transmitted by the chain of bones to the fenestra ovalis produce variable pressures in the fluids of the internal ear; these pressures vary in intensity, in number, and in quality, and correspond with the intensity, pitch, and quality of the tones. If, therefore, a compound wave of pressure be communicated by the base of the stapes, it will be resolved into its constituents by the different transverse fibers of the basilar membrane, each picking out its peculiar portion of the wave and thus stimulating corresponding nerve filaments. Thus different nerve impulses are transmitted to the brain, where they are fused in such a manner as to give rise to a sensation of a particular quality, but still so imperfectly fused that each constituent, by a strong effort of attention, may be still recognized. The transverse fibers of the basilar membrane vary in length from 0.04125 mm. at the base of the cochlea to 0.495 mm. at the apex, and, according to Retzius, are about 24,000 in number. As the human ear usually cannot distinguish more than 11,064 tones, it is evident that there is a sufficient anatomic basis for this theory.

The **functions of the semicircular canals** have already been stated in connection with the chapter relating to the functions of the cerebellum.

CHAPTER XXVII.

REPRODUCTION.

Reproduction is the process by which a new individual is initiated and developed and the species to which it belongs is preserved. Reproduction is the result of the union and subsequent development of germ- and sperm-cells. These cells are produced and their union accomplished by the coöperation of the reproductive organs characteristic of the two sexes.

Embryology is a department of anatomic science which has for its object the investigation of the successive stages that the new being passes through during its gradual development prior to birth.

THE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS OF THE FEMALE.

The reproductive organs of the female comprise the ovaries, Fallopian tubes, uterus, and vagina (Fig. 317).

The Ovaries.—The ovaries are two small, flattened bodies, measuring about 40 mm. in length and 20 in breadth. They are situated in the cavity of the pelvis, one on either side, and embedded in a fold of the peritoneum, known as the broad ligament. A section of the ovary shows that it consists externally of a thin, firm, connective-tissue membrane and internally of a fine connective-tissue stroma, supporting blood-vessels, non-striated muscle-fibers and nerves, and containing in its meshes a very large number of spheric sacs named after their discoverer, de Graaf, the *Graafian sacs* or *follicles*. These follicles are very numerous and are present in all portions of the ovary, though they are most abundant toward its peripheral portions. It is estimated that the human ovary contains from 20,000 to 40,000 follicles. The follicles vary considerably in size; while many are visible to the unaided eye, others require for their detection high powers of the microscope. Although the follicles are present in the ovary at the time of birth, it is not until the period of puberty that they assume functional activity.

From this time on to the catamenial period there is a constant growth and development of these follicles. Each follicle consists of an external investment of fibrous tissue and blood-vessels, and an internal investment of cells, the *membrana granulosa*. At the lower portion of this membrane there is an accumulation of cells, the *pro-*

ligerous disc (Fig. 318). The cavity of the follicle contains a slightly yellowish, alkaline, albuminous fluid, a transudate in all probability from the blood-vessels. The Graafian follicle is of especial interest, for it is in this structure, and more especially in the proliferous disc, that the true germ-cell or ovum is developed.

The **ovum** is a spheric body measuring about 0.3 mm. in diameter. It consists of a mass of living, protoplasmic material, *cytoplasm*, a *nucleus* or *germinal vesicle*, and a *nucleolus* or *germinal spot*. The cytoplasm presents toward its central portion a quantity of granular material, partly fatty in character, the *deutoplasm* or *vitellus*. The peripheral portion of the cytoplasm is surrounded by a delicate radially striated border, the *zona pellucida* or *radiata* (Fig. 319).

FIG. 317.—UTERUS, FALLOPIAN TUBES AND OVARIES; POSTERIOR VIEW. 1, 1. Ovaries. 2, 2. Fallopian tubes. 3, 3. Fimbriated extremity of the left Fallopian tube seen from its concavity. 4. Opening of the left tube. 5. Fimbriated extremity of the right tube, posterior view. 6, 6. Fimbriae which attach the extremity of each tube to the ovary. 7, 7. Ligaments of the ovary. 8, 8, 9, 9. Broad ligament. 10. Uterus. 11. Cervix uteri. 12. Os externum. 13, 13. Vagina.

The *nucleus* consists of a nuclear membrane enclosing contents. The latter consist of an amorphous material in which is embedded a network, some of the threads of which have a strong affinity for certain staining materials, and hence are known as *chromatin*, while others stain less deeply and are known as *achromatin*.

The Fallopian Tubes.—The Fallopian tubes are about 12 centimeters in length and extend from the upper angles of the uterus to the ovaries. Each tube is somewhat trumpet-shaped, the narrow portion being close to the uterus, the wide portion close to the ovary. The outer extremity of the tube is expanded and subdivided, and presents a series of processes termed fimbriae, one of which is attached

to the ovary. The tube consists of three coats—an external or serous; a middle or muscular, the fibers of which are arranged longitudinally and transversely; and an internal or mucous. The surface of the mucous coat is covered with a layer of ciliated epithelial cells, the motion of which is toward the uterus.

The Uterus.—The uterus is pyriform in shape and divided into a body and neck. It measures, before the first pregnancy, about

7 cm. in length, 5 cm. in breadth and $2\frac{1}{2}$ cm. in thickness. A frontal section of the uterus shows a central cavity which in the body is triangular in shape, in the neck oval or fusiform (Fig. 320). At the upper angles of the uterus the cavity is continuous with the cavity of each Fallopian tube. At the junction of the body and the neck, the cavity presents a constriction, the *internal os*. The constriction at the end of the neck is known as the *external os*. The walls of the uterus are extremely thick and composed of non-striated muscle-fibers arranged in a very complicated manner. The interior of the uterus is lined by mucous membrane covered with cylindric

FIG. 318.—SECTION OF CORTEX OF CAT'S OVARY, EXHIBITING LARGE GRAAFIAN FOLLICLES.—*a*. Peripheral zone of condensed stroma. *b*. Groups of immature follicles. *c*. Theca of follicle. *d*. Membrana granulosa. *e*. Discus proligerus. *f*. Zona pellucida. *g*. Vitellus. *h*. Germinal vesicle. *i*. Germinal spot. *k*. Cavity of liquor folliculi.—(After Piersol.)

ciliated epithelial cells, the motion of which is toward the external os. Tubular glands are found in large numbers in the mucous membrane lining the cavity, while racemose glands are found in the mucous membrane lining the neck. Owing to the flattening of the uterus from before backward the walls are almost in contact and the cavity almost obliterated.

The Vagina.—The vagina is a musculo-membranous canal, from

12 to 18 cm. in length, situated between the rectum and bladder. It extends from the surface of the body to the brim of the pelvis, and embraces at its upper extremity the neck of the uterus.

Ovulation.—After the establishment of puberty a Graafian follicle develops and ripens or matures periodically, usually every twenty-eight days. During the time of maturation the follicle increases in size, from an augmentation of its fluid contents, and approaches the surface of the ovary, where it forms a projection varying from 6 to 12 mm. in size. When maturation is complete the vesicle rup-

FIG. 319.—OVUM OF A COW.—1. Zona pellucida. 2. Cytoplasm, vitellus. 3. Nucleus, germinal vesicle. 4. Nucleolus, germinal spot. 5. Corona radiata. The radial striation of the zona pellucida can not be seen.—(Stöhr.)

FIG. 320.—FRONTAL SECTION OF THE UTERUS. 1. Cavity of the body. 2, 3. Lateral walls. 4, 4. Cornua. 5. Os internum. 6. Cavity of the cervix. 7. Arbor vitae of the cervix. 8. Os externum. 9. Vagina.—(Sappey.)

tures, and the ovum and liquid contents are discharged. The ovum, by a mechanism not fully understood, is received by the fimbriated extremity of the Fallopian tube and enters its cavity. The ovum is then transferred through the tube by the peristaltic contraction of its muscle-fibers and by the action of the cilia of its lining epithelium. The time occupied in the transference of the ovum from the ovary to the interior of the uterus has been estimated to be from four to ten days.

Either at the time, or very shortly after, its discharge from the follicle, the ovum, and more especially the nucleus, undergoes a series of histologic changes which eventuates in an extrusion of a portion

of the chromatin material. The extruded portions are known as the polar bodies. The non-extruded portion of the chromatin material is known as the female *pronucleus*. The succession of changes which the nucleus undergoes is termed maturation. As the nucleus is regarded as the part of the ovum which transmits parental characteristics it is assumed that the extrusion of a portion of the nuclear material is a means by which an excess of inherited substance is prevented.

Menstruation.—Menstruation is a periodic discharge of blood and mucus from the surface of the mucous membrane of the uterus, and occurs about every twenty-eight days. The duration of the menstrual period extends over four or five days and the amount of blood discharged varies from 180 c.c. to 200 c.c. Menstruation is usually an accompaniment of ovulation, though the latter process may take place independently of the former. It is characterized by both local and systemic changes. The local changes are most marked in the uterus, the mucous membrane of which increases in thickness from a proliferation of the connective tissue and a hyperemic condition of the blood-vessels. Subsequently to these changes the epithelial surface, as well as the more superficial portions of the connective tissue, undergo degeneration and exfoliation, after which the finer blood-vessels rupture and permit of an escape of blood into the uterine cavity. At the end of the menstrual period regenerative changes set in which continue until the normal condition of the mucous membrane is reestablished.

The Corpus Luteum.—With the rupture of the Graafian follicle there is an effusion of blood into the follicular cavity which soon coagulates, loses its color and assumes the characteristics of fibrin. The walls of the follicle, which have become thickened from the deposition of a reddish-yellow glutinous substance, now become convoluted and undergo a still further hypertrophy, until they encroach upon and almost obliterate the follicular cavity. In a few weeks the mass loses its red color and becomes decidedly yellow, when it is known as the *corpus luteum*. With the continuance of reparative changes this body gradually disappears until at the end of two months nothing remains but a small cicatrix on the surface of the ovary. Such are the changes in the follicle if the ovum has not been impregnated.

The corpus luteum, after impregnation has taken place, undergoes a much slower development, becomes larger, and continues during the entire period of gestation. The difference between the corpus luteum of the unimpregnated and pregnant condition is expressed in the following table by Dalton:

CORPUS LUTEUM OF MENSTRUATION.

CORPUS LUTEUM OF PREGNANCY.

At the end of three weeks.	Three-quarters of an inch in diameter ; central clot reddish ; convoluted wall pale.	
One month.	Smaller ; convoluted wall bright yellow ; clot still reddish.	Larger ; convoluted wall bright yellow ; clot still reddish.
Two months.	Reduced to the condition of an insignificant cicatrix.	Seven-eighths of an inch in diameter ; convoluted wall bright yellow ; clot perfectly decolorized.
Four months.	Absent or unnoticeable.	Seven-eighths of an inch in diameter ; clot pale and fibrinous ; convoluted wall dull yellow.
Six months.	Absent.	Still as large as at the end of second month ; clot fibrinous ; convoluted wall paler.
Nine months.	Absent.	Half an inch in diameter ; central clot converted into a radiating cicatrix ; external wall tolerably thick and convoluted, but without any bright yellow color.

THE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS OF THE MALE.

The reproductive organs of the male comprise the testicles, vasa deferentia, vesiculæ seminales, and penis.

The Testicles.—The testicles are oblong glands, about 40 mm. in length, 30 mm. in breadth and 20 mm. in thickness, and contained within the cavity of the scrotum. A section of the testicle (Fig. 321) reveals the presence externally of a dense fibrous membrane, the *tunica albuginea*, and internally a connective-tissue framework consisting mainly of septa, which enter the organ on its posterior aspect at the *mediastinum testis*, passing inward in a diverging manner. The spaces between the septa are occupied by the true gland substance, the seminiferous tubules.

The seminiferous tubules are very numerous, the estimate as to their number varying from 800 to 1000. When unraveled they measure from 30 to 40 cm. in length and 0.3 mm. in diameter. At their peripheral extremities the tubules are very much convoluted, but as they pass toward the mediastinum testis, the convolutions disappear, and after uniting with one another terminate in from twenty to thirty straight tubes, the *vasa recta*, which pass through

FIG. 321.—DIAGRAM OF A VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH A TESTICLE. 1. Mediastinum testis. 2, 2. Trabeculae. 3. One of the lobules. 4, 4. Vasa recta. 5. Globus major of the epididymus. 6. Globus minor. 7. Vas deferens.—(Holden.)

the mediastinum and form the *rete testis*. At the upper part of the mediastinum the tubules unite to form from nine to thirty small ducts, the *vasa efferentia*, which soon become very much convoluted. After a short course they unite to form a single tortuous tube, about 7 meters in length and 0.4 mm. in diameter, which descends behind the testicle to its lower border. This tube is known as the epididymis. The seminal tubule consists of a basement membrane lined by granular nucleated epithelium.

The *vas deferens*, the excretory duct of the testicle, is about 60 cm. in length and from 2 to 3 mm. in diameter, and extends upward from the epididymis to the inguinal canal, through which it passes into the abdominal cavity and then to the under surface of the base of the bladder, where it unites with the duct of the vesicula seminalis to form the *ejaculatory duct*.

FIG. 322.—VAS DEFERENS, VESICULÆ SEMINALES, AND EJACULATORY DUCTS.—*a*. Vas deferens. *b*. Seminal vesicle. *c*. Ejaculatory duct. *d*. Termination of the ejaculatory duct. *e*. Opening of the prostatic utricle. *f*, *g*. Veru montanum. *h*, *l*. Prostate.—(Liégeois.)

The **vesiculæ seminales** are two lobulated pyriform bodies, about 40 mm. in length, situated on the under surface of the bladder. Each vesicula seminalis consists of an external fibrous coat, a middle, muscular coat, and an external mucous coat. The mucous coat contains a number of small tubular albumin-producing glands which secrete a characteristic fluid.

The *ejaculatory duct*, formed by the union of the vas deferens and the duct of the *vesicula seminalis*, opens into the prostatic portion of the urethra (Fig. 322).

The **prostate gland** is a musculo-glandular mass situated at the posterior extremity of the urethra. It contains a large number of tubules, more or less branched and convoluted, and lined by columnar epithelium. They secrete a fluid which is poured into the urethra at the time of the ejaculation of semen.

The **penis** consists of three parts: the *corpus spongiosum* below, through which passes the urethra, and the two *corpora cavernosa*, one on either side and above. The corpus spongiosum terminates anteriorly in a conic-shaped structure, the *glans penis*; the corpora

cavernosa consist externally of a fibrous investment and internally of erectile tissue. These bodies are abundantly supplied with blood, which after entering their substance by the arteries, passes into sinuses or reservoirs, from which it is carried away by veins. These vessels pass to the dorsum of the penis and unite to form a large vein by which the blood is returned to the general circulation. By virtue of the erectile tissue in the corpora cavernosa the penis becomes erect and rigid when the blood supply is increased. This takes place in response to peripheral stimulation or emotional states, or both combined. When these conditions are established nerve-impulses pass outward through nerves, the *nervi erigentes*, which have their origin in the lumbar region of the spinal cord, and bring about an active dilatation of the arteries and a relaxation of the non-striated muscle-fibers in the corpora cavernosa. With these events there is a rapid influx of blood and a distention and an erection of the organ. This condition is furthered and maintained by a partial compression of the dorsal vein by the fibrous capsule.

Semen.—The semen is a complex fluid composed of the secretions of the testicles, the vesiculæ seminales, the prostatic tubules, and urethral glands. It is grayish-white in color, mucilaginous in consistence, characteristic in odor, and somewhat heavier than water. In response to appropriate stimulation the muscle-fibers in the walls of the vasa deferentia, vesiculæ seminales, and prostatic tubules contract and discharge their contents into the urethra, from which they are forcibly ejected by the rhythmic contraction of the ejaculatory muscles, the *ischio* and *bulbo cavernosi*. The amount of semen discharged at each ejaculation varies from 1 to 5 c.c. 255 to 3185

Spermatozoa.—The spermatozoa are peculiar morphologic elements which arise within the seminiferous tubules as a result of complex histologic changes in the lining epithelium. An adult spermatozoön consists of a conoid slightly flattened head, from the posterior part of which there projects a short straight rod, provided with a long filamentous tail or cilium and an end-piece (Fig. 323). The head contains a nucleus of chromatin material. The total length of a spermatozoön varies from 50 to 80 micromillimeters. The characteristic physiologic feature of spermatozoa is incessant locomotion when in a suitable medium. So long as they are confined to the vas deferens they are quiescent, but with their advent into the vesicula seminalis and dissemination in its contained fluid, they become extremely active and move around with considerable rapidity. The power of locomotion depends on the possession of the tail, which, by lashing the surrounding fluid now in this and now in that direction, propels the head from place to place. The vitality of spermatozoa is such as to enable them to retain their physiologic activities in the uterus for more than eight days.

The development of spermatozoa from testicular cells as observed in lower animals indicates that each cell gives rise to four embryonic forms—spermatids—which subsequently develop into adult spermatozoa. In this process the primary nuclear chromatin undergoes a division, so that each spermatozoön receives but a fractional amount. The changes by which this condition is brought about are comparable to the changes exhibited by the ovum, and have for their result a reduction in the quantity of hereditary substance to be transmitted.

FIG. 323.—HUMAN SPERMATOZOÖN.
1. Front view, 2, side view, of the head. *k*. Head. *m*. middle piece. *f*. Tail. *e*. Terminal filament.—(After Retzius.)

Fecundation.—Fecundation is the union of the spermatozoön (the sperm-cell) with the ovum (the germ-cell) and takes place in the great majority of instances in the Fallopian tube. After the introduction of the spermatozoa into the vagina during the act of copulation, they soon begin to pass upward, into and through, the uterine cavity and out into the Fallopian tube, where they accumulate in large numbers and retain their vitality for some days. The migration is effected by the propelling power of the filamentous tail.

From observations made on the behavior of the spermatozoa toward the ovum in lower animals, and on the manner by which their union is effected, the inference may be drawn that a similar procedure takes place in mammals. In lower animals the spermatozoa on approaching an ovum take on increased activity, swimming around it in all directions and apparently seeking a point of entrance. In fish and molluscs the zona pellucida presents a distinct opening, the *micropyle*, through which the spermatozoön passes. Inasmuch as the mammalian ovum is devoid of such an opening, the mechanism of entrance of the spermatozoön is not clearly

understood. Notwithstanding their enormous numbers it is generally believed that but a single spermatozoön effects an entrance into the ovum. With the accomplishment of this, however, the spermatozoön loses its vitality, after which the body and tail disappear. The head, which in this instance also is the transmitter of the inherited material, advances to meet and unite with the nucleus of the ovum. A series of histologic changes now arise, which eventuate in the production of a new cell, a parent cell, possessing all the features of cell structure and the physiologic activities and

characteristics of both ancestral cells. From this parent cell the new being develops through successive division, multiplication, and differentiation of cells.

The Fixation of the Ovum.—If the ovum is to develop into a new being it is essential that it be retained within the cavity of the uterus. This is accomplished by the development of specialized structures on the surface of the uterine mucosa and on the surface of the ovum. With the fertilization of the ovum, the mucous membrane of the uterus takes on an increased growth; it becomes hypertrophied and vascular, and develops small elevations known as villi. Inasmuch as this membrane is detached and discharged at the birth of the fetus, it is known as the *decidua vera*. With the fertilization

FIG. 324.—IMPREGNATED UTERUS, WITH FOLDS OF DECIDUA GROWING UP AROUND THE EGG. The narrow opening, where the folds approach each other, is seen over the most prominent portion of the egg.—(Dalton.)

FIG. 325.—IMPREGNATED UTERUS; showing the connection between the villusities of the chorion and the decidua membranes.—(Dalton.)

of the ovum, the zona pellucida or radiata also develops villusities, and as it passes from the Fallopian tube into the uterus the villi interdigitate, and its further progress is retarded. (Figs. 324 and 325.) In a short time a portion of the decidua vera grows up on all sides and encloses the ovum. Its retention is thus secured. That portion of the decidua which grows around the ovum is termed the *decidua reflexa*; while the portion to which the ovum attaches itself is termed the *decidua serotina*, and is of interest for the reason that it becomes the seat of development of the placenta, the organ by which the fetus is nourished. As development advances the decidua reflexa also increases in size and extent, and about the end of the fourth month comes into contact with the decidua vera, with which it ultimately fuses.

DEVELOPMENT OF FETAL ACCESSORY STRUCTURES.

Segmentation of the Ovum.—Shortly after the formation of the parent cell, segmentation of the nucleus and cytoplasm takes place in accordance with karyokinetic methods. The two new cells thus formed undergo a similar division into four, the four into eight, the eight into sixteen, and so on until the space within the zona pellucida is completely filled with a large number of small cells, each possessing the characteristic cell structures. The peripheral cells then arrange themselves in the form of a membrane, and as they are, at the same time, subjected to mutual pressure they assume a polyhedral shape, and give to the membrane a mosaic appearance (Fig. 326). The

central cells then undergo liquefaction. At some point on the inner surface of the membrane, cells accumulate which by their division and multiplication form a second membrane. The two together are known as the external and internal blastodermic membranes.

Germinal Area.

—At about this period there is an accumulation of cells at a certain spot in the sub-

FIG. 326.—PRIMITIVE TRACE OF THE EMBRYO. *a*. Primitive trace. *b*. Area pellucida. *c*. Area opaca. *d*. Blastodermic cells. *e*. Villi beginning to appear on the surface of the zona pellucida.—(*Lugois*.)

stance of the blastodermic membranes which marks the position of the future embryo. This spot, at first circular, soon becomes elongated. A slight indentation now develops into what is known as the *primitive trace*. Around this area there is a clear space, the *area pellucida*, which is in turn surrounded by a darker region, the *area opaca*. The primitive trace soon disappears and the area pellucida becomes guitar-shaped. A second groove, the *medullary groove*, is now formed, which develops from before backward and becomes the neural medullary canal.

Blastodermic Membranes.—The embryo, at this period, consists of three layers—viz., the external and the internal blastodermic membranes and a middle membrane formed by a genesis of cells

from their internal surfaces. These layers are known from without inward as the epiblast, mesoblast, and hypoblast.

The *epiblast* gives rise to the central nerve system, the epidermis and its appendages, and the primitive kidneys.

The *mesoblast* gives rise to the dermis, muscles, bones, nerves, blood-vessels, sympathetic nerve system, connective tissue, the urinary and reproductive apparatus, and the walls of the alimentary canal.

The *hypoblast* gives rise to the epithelial lining of the alimentary canal and its glandular appendages, the liver and pancreas, and the epithelium of the respiratory tract.

Dorsal Laminæ.—As development advances, the true medullary groove deepens, and there arise two longitudinal elevations of the epiblast—the *dorsal laminæ*, one on either side of the groove,—which grow up, arch over, and unite so as to form a closed tube, the primitive central nerve system.

The Chorda Dorsalis.—Just beneath the neural canal there arises a group of mesoblastic cells which arrange themselves in the form of a cylindric rod, which marks out the position of the future bony axis of the body. This rod is known as the *chorda dorsalis* or *notochord*.

Primitive Vertebrae.—On either side of the neural canal the cells of the mesoblast undergo a longitudinal thickening, which develops and extends around the neural canal and the *chorda dorsalis*, and forms the arches and bodies of the *vertebræ*. They become divided transversely into segments.

The *mesoblast* now separates into two layers: the external, joining with the epiblast, forms the *somatopleura*; the internal, joining with the hypoblast, forms the *splanchnopleura*; the space between them constitutes the *pleuro-peritoneal cavity* (Fig. 327).

Visceral Laminæ.—The walls of the pleuro-peritoneal cavity are formed by a downward prolongation of the *somatopleura* (the *visceral laminæ*), which, as they extend around in front, pinch off a portion of the *yolk-sac* (formed by the *splanchnopleura*), which

FIG. 327.—DIAGRAM REPRESENTING THE RELATION OF PRIMARY STRUCTURES IN A DEVELOPING CHICKEN; VERTICAL TRANSVERSE SECTION. The medullary groove and *chorda dorsalis* are seen in section; the alimentary canal pinched off from the *yolk-sac* is completely closed. *a*. Amnion. *a, c*. Amniotic cavity filled with amniotic fluid. *pp*. Space between amnion and chorion continuous with the pleuro-peritoneal cavity inside the body. *vt*. Vitelline membrane, or *zona pellucida*. *ys*. *Yolk-sac*, or *umbilical vesicle*.—(Foster and Balfour.)

becomes the primitive alimentary canal; the lower portion, remaining outside of the body cavity, forms the *umbilical vesicle*.

The Fetal or Embryonic Membranes.—With the appearance of the visceral laminæ two membranes develop in succession, both of which play an important part in the subsequent life of the embryo. These are known as the amnion and the allantois.

The *amnion* is formed by folds of the epiblast and the external layer of the mesoblast rising up in front, behind, and at the sides. These folds gradually extend over the back of the embryo to a certain point where they meet, coalesce, and enclose a cavity known as the *amniotic cavity*. The membranous partition between the folds is absorbed, after which the outer layer recedes and becomes blended with the primitive enveloping membrane of the ovum and thus

FIG. 328.—DIAGRAM OF FECUNDATED EGG. *a.* Umbilical vesicle. *b.* Amniotic cavity. *c.* Allantois.—(Dalton.)

FIG. 329.—FECUNDATED EGG WITH ALLANTOIS NEARLY COMPLETE. *a.* Inner layer of amniotic fold. *b.* Outer layer of ditto. *c.* Point where the amniotic folds come in contact. The allantois is seen penetrating between the outer and inner layers of the amniotic folds.—(Dalton.)

assists in the formation of the *chorion*—the external covering of the embryo.

The cavity enclosed by the amnion is at first quite small, but soon enlarges from the accumulation of a clear, transparent fluid, the *amniotic fluid*. It gradually increases in amount up to the latter period of gestation, when its volume reaches about one liter. This fluid is derived mainly from the blood, as it contains albumin, sugar, fatty matter, and inorganic salts. Traces of urea indicate that some of its constituents are derived from the embryo itself.

The *allantois* is primarily a pouch or diverticulum which develops from the posterior portion of the alimentary canal. As it develops it enlarges, and in its growth inserts itself between the two layers of the amnion, coming into contact more especially with the external layer. It finally completely surrounds the embryo, after which its edges become fused together (Figs. 328 and 329).

The allantois is of especial interest and importance, as it is the means by which the blood of the embryo is brought into relation with the blood of the mother. As it develops, two arteries, the *hypogastrics*, one from each internal iliac, pass out of the abdominal cavity within the walls of the allantois, and follow it in its course around the embryo. The ultimate branches of these arteries penetrate the villous processes which develop on the surface of the chorion and which take part in the formation of the placenta. A single large vein emerges from the placenta and returns the blood to the embryo. In its course it winds around the arteries in a spiral manner a number of times. These vessels—the umbilical arteries and vein—are enclosed by the walls of the allantois and amnion, and together constitute the umbilical cord which at the end of gestation is about 60 cm. in length.

The Chorion.—The chorion, the external investment of the embryo, is formed by the fusion of the primitive egg membrane—the zona pellucida—the external layer of the amnion, and the allantois. Very early in development its external surface becomes covered with homogeneous, granular, club-shaped processes, which by continued budding and growth, give to the membrane a shaggy appearance. At about the end of the second month these processes begin to atrophy and disappear from the surface of the chorion, with the exception of that portion which is in contact with the decidua serotina. At this point the processes or villi continue to grow and develop, and insert themselves more deeply into the mucous membrane. Corresponding processes from the mucous membrane insert themselves between the villi of the chorion, which by their growth and fusion secure, among other things, the retention of the embryo.

The Nutrition of the Embryo.—Coincidentally with the development of the amnion, allantois, and chorion, there arises within the body of the embryo the early forms of many, if not all, of the future viscera. The nutritive material required for their growth is partly contained within the umbilical vesicle lying without the body cavity. That this material may be utilized, blood-vessels emerge from the body and ramify within the walls of the vesicle. The capillaries to

FIG. 330.—HUMAN EMBRYO AND ITS ENVELOPES AT THE END OF THE THIRD MONTH.

which these vessels give rise come into close relation with and absorb the food material, after which it is carried by veins to the heart, by which it is distributed to all parts of the embryo. These vessels are collectively known as the *omphalo-mesenteric arteries and veins*. This primitive or vitelline circulation is of short duration in mammals, as the nutritive material in the vesicle is small in amount and is soon exhausted. In birds, however, it is of primary importance. The main supply of nutritive material, however, is derived from the mother by means of a highly developed and specialized organ—

The Placenta.—Of all the embryonic structures the placenta is the most important. It is formed by the end of the third month,

FIG. 331.—HUMAN EMBRYO, WITH AMNION AND ALLANTOIS, IN THE THIRD WEEK. There are as yet no limbs; the embryo and its appendages are surrounded by the tufted chorion.—(Haeckel.)

after which it gradually increases in size up to the end of the eighth month, by which time it is fully developed. It then measures from 18 to 24 cm. in diameter and weighs from 400 to 600 grams. It is most frequently situated at the upper and back part of the uterine cavity. Though exceedingly complex in structure it consists essentially of two portions, a fetal and a maternal.

The *fetal* portion consists primarily of those villi on the chorion in relation with the decidua serotina. These structures gradually increase in size and number, and receive the

ultimate branches of the umbilical arteries. The *maternal* portion consists primarily of the decidua serotina. As gestation advances the chorionic villi rapidly increase in size and number, and receive the branches of the umbilical arteries. At the same time the decidua serotina becomes hypertrophied and vascular. With the continued growth and development of these two structures they gradually fuse together and finally become inseparable. In accordance with the needs of the embryo, the decidua serotina and its contained blood-vessels undergo certain histologic changes which result in the formation of large cavities, sinuses, or lakes, into which the blood of the uterine vessels is emptied. Coincidentally the villi of the chorion grow

and give off numerous branches, which project themselves in all directions into the blood of uterine sinuses (Figs. 332, 333). As the placenta develops, the structures separating the blood of the mother from that of the child gradually become modified until they are represented by a thin cellular or homogeneous membrane. The conditions now are such as to permit of a free exchange of material between the mother and child. Whether by osmosis or by an act of secretion, the nutritive materials of the maternal blood pass through the intervening membrane into the fetal blood on the one hand, while waste products

FIG. 332.—DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATIONS OF THE FETAL MEMBRANES. *Am.* Amnion. *Ch.* Chorion. *M.* Muscle wall of uterus. *R.* Decidua reflexa. *S.* Serotina. *V.* Decidua vera. *Y.* Yolk stalk.—(*McMurrich.*)

pass in the reverse direction into the maternal blood on the other hand. Inasmuch as oxygen is absorbed and carbon dioxide exhaled by the same structures, the placenta is to be regarded as both a digestive and a respiratory organ. So long as these exchanges are permitted to take place in a normal manner the nutrition of the embryo is secured.

The Fetal Circulation.—The composition of the blood as well as the course it pursues through the heart and vascular apparatus presents peculiarities which have arisen in consequence of the necessity of obtaining nutritive material through the placenta and the

almost impervious condition of the pulmonary capillaries. On returning from the placenta, the blood in the umbilical vein is relatively rich in nutritive material and scarlet red in color from the presence of oxygen. As it passes into the abdominal cavity a portion of the blood is directed by the *ductus venosus* into the vena cava, while another portion is emptied into the branches of the portal vein, by which it is distributed to the liver and from which it emerges by the hepatic veins and poured into the vena cava. The blood in the vena cava is thus a mixture of venous blood from the lower extremities and liver, and oxygenated blood from the placenta. After its discharge into the right auricle the blood is directed by a fold of

FIG. 333.—DIAGRAM OF HUMAN PLACENTA AT THE CLOSE OF PREGNANCY.—
(Schäper.)

the lining membrane, the Eustachian valve, through an opening in the interauricular septum, the *foramen ovale*, into the left auricle. It then flows through the auriculo-ventricular opening into the left ventricle, thence into the aorta, and by its branches is distributed to all parts of the body.

The blood from the head and upper extremities is emptied by the superior vena cava into the right auricle, but as it passes in front of the Eustachian valve, it flows directly into the right ventricle and then into the pulmonary artery. On account of the unexpanded condition of the lungs and the almost impervious condition of the pulmonary capillaries, but a small portion of the blood passes through them, while the larger portion by far passes into the aorta

DIAGRAM OF FŒTAL CIRCULATION.

directly through a duct, *the ductus arteriosus*, which enters at a point below the origin of the left carotid and subclavian arteries. A comparison of the blood distributed to the head and upper extremities, with that distributed to the lower extremities, will show a larger percentage of nutritive material and oxygen in the former than in the latter, a fact which has been offered as an explanation of the more rapid growth of the upper half of the body. As the blood passes through the aorta, a portion is directed from the main current by the hypogastric and umbilical arteries to the placenta, where it loses carbon dioxid and gains oxygen, and changes in color from a bluish red to a scarlet red.

Parturition.—At the end of gestation—approximately 280 days from the time of conception—a series of changes occur in the uterine structures which lead to an expulsion of the child, the placenta, and decidua vera. To this process in its entirety the term parturition is given. At this time, from causes not clearly defined, the uterine walls begin to exhibit throughout their extent a series of slight contractions which are somewhat peristaltic in character; these contractions, which gradually increase in frequency and vigor, bring about a dilatation of the internal os and a descent of the membranes into the cervical canal. The pressure exerted by these membranes during the time of the contraction materially assists in the relaxation of the circular fibers and a dilatation of the external os. When the dilatation has so far advanced that the diameter of the external os attains a measure of 7 or 8 cm., the tension of the membranes becomes sufficiently great to lead to their rupture and to a partial escape of the amniotic fluid. With this event, the presenting part of the child, usually the head, descends into the cervical canal. After a short period of rest the uterine contractions return and rapidly increase in vigor and duration. As a result of the pressure thus exerted from all sides on the body of the child, the head gradually descends into the vagina and finally emerges through the vulva to be followed in a short time by the expulsion of the trunk and limbs, and a discharge of the remaining amniotic fluid. With the expulsion of the child the uterine contractions cease for a period of ten or fifteen minutes, when they again recur, with the result of detaching the placenta and expelling it into the vagina. It is then removed by the co-operative action of the abdominal and perineal muscles. The hemorrhage which would naturally occur with the detachment of the placenta and the laceration of the maternal vessels is prevented by the firm continuous contraction of the uterine walls, by which the vessels are compressed and permanently closed.

The Establishment of Inspiration and the Adult Circulation.

—After the birth of the child and the detachment of the placenta, there speedily occurs a decrease in the quantity of oxygen and an

increase in the quantity of carbon dioxid in the blood, a condition which causes a discharge of nerve energy from the inspiratory center, a contraction of the inspiratory muscles, an expansion of the thorax, and an inflow of air into the lungs.

In the later months of intrauterine life the vascular apparatus undergoes certain anatomic changes which favor the transition from the placental to the adult circulation. Thus the *ductus venosus* contracts, and shunts a larger volume of blood into and through the liver; the Eustachian valve diminishes in size and at the time of birth has almost disappeared; a membranous fold grows upward and backward from the edge of the foramen ovale on the left side; the *ductus arteriosus* also contracts. With the first inspiration and the expansion of the lungs, the blood which enters the pulmonary artery passes through the pulmonary capillaries in large volume and is returned by the pulmonary veins to the left auricle. The entrance of the blood into this cavity presses the membranous fold against the margins of the foramen ovale and thus prevents the further flow of blood from the right auricle. The blood entering the right auricle by the inferior vena cava now flows into the right ventricle, which is favored by the small size of the Eustachian valve. The foramen ovale is permanently closed at the end of a week or ten days; the ductus arteriosus at the end of four days. The umbilical vein and ductus venosus, at the end of four or five days, have also become almost impervious from the contraction of their walls. The hypogastric arteries remain open and carry blood to the walls of the bladder.

Lactation.—As pregnancy advances the mammary glands increase in size, partly from a deposition of fat and connective tissue and partly from a multiplication of the secreting acini. The lining epithelial cells at the same time increase in size, and toward the end of pregnancy begin to exhibit functional activity. At the time of birth, or within a day or so after birth, the acini are filled with a fluid which in its qualitative composition resembles milk and is known as *colostrum*. It is distinguished from milk more especially in the fact that it contains in large quantity a proteid which coagulates on boiling, and certain inorganic salts which have a laxative effect on the new-born child. Normal lactation and the phenomena which accompany it are fully established by the end of the second or third day.

The composition of milk and the mechanism of its production have been stated in the chapter on Secretion, page 401.

Physiologic Activities of the Embryo.—During intrauterine life the evolution of structure is accompanied by an evolution of function. The relatively simple and uniform metabolism of the undifferentiated blastodermic membranes gradually increases in

complexity and variety, as the individual tissues and organs make their appearance and assume even a slight degree of functional activity. As to the periods at which different organs begin to functionate, but little is positively known.

The primitive heart, in all probability, begins to pulsate very early, as in an embryo from fifteen to eighteen days old and measuring but 2.2 mm. in length, Coste found the amnion, the allantois, the omphalo-mesenteric vessels, and the two primitive aortæ developed. In the earlier weeks, all products of metabolism are doubtless eliminated by the placental structures; but as metabolism increases in complexity the liver and kidney assume excretory activity. Thus, at the end of the third month the intestine contains a dark, greenish, viscid material—meconium—composed of bile pigments, bile salts, and desquamated epithelium; the amniotic fluid, as well as the fluid within the bladder, contains urea at the end of the sixth month, indicating the establishment of both hepatic and renal activity. Contractions of the skeletal muscles of the limbs begin about the fifth month, from which it may be inferred that the mechanism for muscle activity, viz., muscles, efferent nerves, and spinal centers, has become anatomically developed and associated, and capable of coördinate activity. These contractions are, in all probability, automatic or autochthonic in character due to stimuli arising within the spinal centers. The remaining organs remain more or less inactive.

After birth, with the first inspiration and the introduction of food into the alimentary canal, the physiologic mechanisms which subserve general metabolism begin to functionate and in the course of a week are fully established. At this time the cardiac pulsation averages about 135 a minute; the respiratory movements vary from 30 to 35 a minute, and are diaphragmatic in type; the urine, which was at first scanty, is now abundant and proportional to the food consumed; the digestive glands are elaborating their respective enzymes, digestion proceeding as in the adult. The hepatic secretion is active and the lower bowel is emptied of its contents; the coördinate activities of the nerve-, muscle-, and gland-mechanisms are entirely reflex in character. Psychic activities are in abeyance by reason of the incomplete development of the cerebral mechanisms.

APPENDIX.

PHYSIOLOGIC APPARATUS.

The study of the physical and physiologic properties of muscles and nerves necessitates the employment of some stimulus which, when applied to either tissue, will call forth a contraction of the muscle, or the development of a nerve impulse in the nerve. The most convenient stimulus is electricity, for the reason that, with appropriate apparatus, its intensity and duration can be graduated with the utmost nicety. Moreover, it does not destroy the tissues, as do many chemic, physical, and mechanic stimuli.

It is therefore necessary that the student should have a practical acquaintance with those appliances by means of which electricity is generated, applied and controlled.

The **electric cell** is an apparatus composed of different elements, which, by virtue of chemic actions taking place among them, generate and conduct electricity. In its simplest form an electric cell consists of two metals—zinc and copper, or carbon, or platinum, etc., immersed in an exciting fluid, usually dilute sulphuric acid (Fig. 334).

The zinc element is the one acted on chemically by the sulphuric acid, and at the expense of which the electricity is maintained. It is known as the generating element. The copper is the collecting and conducting element.

With the immersion of these elements in a solution of H_2SO_4 a chemic action at once takes place between the zinc and the acid, with the formation of zinc sulphate and the liberation of hydrogen, as expressed in the following formula:

The zinc sulphate passes into the solution, while the hydrogen accumulates on the surface of the copper element.

As all chemic action is accompanied by the development of electricity, it can be shown by appropriate means that this is the case at the surface of the zinc. Such a combination is the means of establishing a *difference of potential between two points*; the point of highest potential being the surface of the zinc or the positive element, the point of lowest potential

FIG. 334. — AN ELECTRIC CELL.

being the copper or the negative element. So long as the elements remain unconnected there is no movement of electricity, no current.

If the ends of the elements projecting beyond the fluid are connected by a copper wire, a pathway or circuit is established, and a movement of the electricity takes place. As electricity flows from the point of high to the point of low potential, it follows that inside the cell the current flows from the zinc to the copper, and outside the cell from the copper to the zinc. Such a current is termed *a continuous, a galvanic or a voltaic current*. Inasmuch as there is a progressive fall in potential between the highest and lowest points, it follows that any two points in the circuit will exhibit a similar difference of potential. For this reason the projecting end of the copper element is at a higher potential than the projecting end of the zinc element. The end of the copper is, therefore, termed the positive, + pole or *anode*, the end of the zinc the negative, — pole or *kathode*.

Electric Units.—Owing to the difference of the electric potential in the cell, the electricity leaves the cell under a certain degree of pressure, termed the “electro-motive force.” As it passes through the circuit it meets with resistance, the amount of which will depend on the nature of

FIG. 335.—TWO SIMPLE ELECTRIC CELLS JOINED IN SERIES. C. Copper. Z. Zinc.

the circuit material, its length, and the area of its cross-section. In accordance with the resistance will depend the quantity of electricity that a given electro-motive force will press through in a unit of time. The strength of the current will therefore not depend entirely on the electro-motive force, but, rather, on the ratio between the electro-motive force and the resistance.

For the measurement of electric quantities, a system of units has been devised. The unit of electro-motive force is the volt; the unit of resistance is the ohm, *i. e.*, the resistance offered by a column of mercury 106.3 cm. long and 1 sq. mm. in section at 0° C.; the unit of quantity is the coulomb; the unit of time is one second. One volt is the electro-motive force which, when steadily applied, will press through a resistance of one ohm, one coulomb of electricity in one second of time yielding a current strength of one ampere.

This relation may be expressed in the following formula, Ohm's law:

$$C \text{ (current strength)} = \frac{\text{Electro-motive force (E. M. F.)}}{\text{Resistance (R)}} \text{ or Ampere} = \frac{\text{Volt}}{\text{Ohm}}$$

In practical work it is often necessary to increase the strength of the current. This is done by uniting two or more cells in series, *i. e.*, uniting the copper of one cell to the zinc of a second, and so on (Fig. 335). If the resistance remains the same the total voltage is that of one cell multiplied by the number of cells united.

The cell as above described cannot maintain a current of constant strength for any length of time, for the following reasons:

1. The sulphuric acid solution, in consequence of its chemic action, soon becomes nothing more than a saturated solution of zinc sulphate, after which its chemic activity ceases. The current, therefore, soon diminishes in strength.

2. The accumulation of hydrogen bubbles on the surface of the copper hinders the passage of the electricity. In a short time they develop a current in the opposite direction, which also tends to weaken the original current. This action is termed polarization of the elements.

Cells of this character are not suited for physiologic work, in which constancy in the strength of the current is absolutely necessary. To overcome these disadvantages, cells have been devised which are less violent in action, which prevent polarization, and which maintain a current of constant strength for a long period of time. One of the most generally used for physiologic purposes is—

The **Daniell cell**. This consists of a porous cup containing a saturated solution of CuSO_4 , copper sulphate, in which is immersed a copper plate or rod. This combination is placed in a glass vessel containing a solution of H_2SO_4 (1:15). In this solution is immersed a roll of sheet zinc (Fig. 336). Each of the plates is provided with a binding screw. When the cell is in action the sulphuric acid attacks the zinc, forming zinc sulphate, and liberates hydrogen;

the cup being porous, the hydrogen passes into the copper sulphate solution, where it combines with the sulphuric acid radicle, and liberates metallic copper. Polarization of the copper is thus prevented. The metallic copper is deposited on the copper plate, which is thus kept bright. The copper sulphate solution is kept at the point of saturation by packing around the copper cylinder a quantity of the crystals of the salt. The sulphuric acid passes back into the porous cup, to take the place of that used. This cell is remarkably constant for these reasons, and well adapted for physiologic as well as other purposes where a current of uniform strength is necessary.

The projecting ends of the copper and zinc plates are termed respectively the positive pole or anode, and the negative pole or kathode. The electro-motive force of a Daniell cell is practically 1 volt; but when the two poles are connected by a wire of 1 ohm resistance, the current strength will be less than 1 ampere, possibly only 0.7, owing to the resistance offered

FIG. 336.—DANIELL CELL.

to the flow of electricity by the fluids between the zinc and the copper. In all measurements, the internal resistance of the cell must be taken into consideration.

The Dry Cell.—The commercial dry cell is a convenient source of electricity for general laboratory work. It consists of a cup of zinc, the inner surface of which is covered over with a thick layer of a paste of plaster of Paris, saturated with ammonium chlorid. In the center of the cup there is a rod of carbon. Surrounding this rod and occupying the space between it and the plaster of Paris paste, is a mixture of manganese dioxid and charcoal. The upper surface of the cell is sealed to prevent evaporation. The electricity is generated at the surface of the zinc cup by the chemic action of the chlorin which arises from the dissociation of the ammonium chlorid. When the plates are united by a conjunctive wire the current within the cell flows from the zinc (the positive element) to the carbon (the negative element), and without the cell from the carbon (the positive pole) to the zinc (the negative pole).

FIG. 337.—NON-POLARIZABLE ELECTRODES. 1. Du Bois-Reymond's. 2. Von Fleischl's. 3. d'Arsonval's.

Leads.—By means of insulated wires attached to the poles of a cell, the electricity may be conducted from the cell and used for exciting or stimulating purpose. As the wires thus become practically prolongations of the plates their ends become the corresponding poles. In experimental work the ends of the wires are provided with special devices, termed—

Non-polarizable electrodes.

The necessity for the employment of such electrodes arises from the fact that when the ends of the wires from a cell are placed in direct contact with the tissues chemic changes are produced in a short time, which lead to their polarization. As a result, a current opposite in direction to that of the cell is developed, which tends to weaken or neutralize it. This polarization current vitiates the result of many experiments made with highly irritable tissue such as nerve tissue. Whether for stimulating purposes or for the purpose of detecting the existence of electric currents in living tissues, it is essential that the electrodes used shall be non-polarizable. The earliest electrodes of this character were made by du Bois-Reymond and were based on the fact discovered by Regnault that a strip of chemically pure zinc or amalgamated zinc (Matteucci) immersed in a saturated solution of zinc sulphate would not polarize. One form made by du Bois-Reymond is shown in Fig. 337. It

consists of a flattened glass tube attached to a universal joint and supported by an insulated brass stand. The lower end of the tube is closed with kaolin or China clay made into a paste with a 0.6 per cent. solution of sodium chlorid. It can be molded into any desired shape. The interior of the tube is partially filled with a saturated solution of sulphate of zinc in which is immersed the strip of amalgamated zinc. To the upper end of the zinc the conducting wire is attached.

The v. Fleischl brush electrode is similar to the preceding except that the end of the tube is closed by the brush of a camel's-hair pencil.

The d'Arsonval electrode consists of a glass tube containing a silver rod coated with fused silver chlorid. The interior of the tube is filled with normal salt solution 0.6 per cent. and the end closed with a thread or plug of asbestos which is made to project beyond the tube for a short distance.

Any one of the these three electrodes is suitable for physiologic experimentation, as their free ends neither corrode the tissues nor develop electric currents.

Keys.—Muscle and nerve tissues are conductors of electricity. When, therefore, the terminals (the non-polarizable electrodes) of the wires of a cell are placed in contact with either a muscle or a nerve a circuit is *made* through which a current of electricity flows; when one or both are removed, the circuit is *broken* and the current ceases. In practical work it is often necessary to keep the electrodes in contact with the tissues for a variable length of time. The circuit, however, may be alternately *made* and *broken* at will by interposing along the return wire a mechanic contrivance known as a key, of which there are many forms.

The du Bois Raymond Friction Key.—

This consists of a plate of vulcanite attached to a screw clamp by which it can be fastened to the edge of a table (Fig. 338). The surface of the vulcanite plate carries two rectangular blocks of brass, each of which has two holes drilled through it, for the insertion of wires, which are held in position by small screws. A movable bridge of brass, provided with an ebonite handle, serves to make connection between the blocks. There are two ways of interposing this key in the circuit.

1. *As a Simple Key.*—For this purpose one of the wires, usually the negative, is carried from the cell to one block and then continued from the second block. When the bridge is down, the circuit is made and the current passes; when it is up, the circuit is broken.
2. *As a Short-circuiting Key.*—When used for this purpose, the wires of

FIG. 338.—DU BOIS-REYMOND FRICTION KEY.

the cell are carried to the inner holes of each block and then continued from the outer holes to the tissues or to some form of apparatus which it is desired to actuate. When the key is closed, *i. e.*, when the bridge is down, the current on reaching the key, will divide, one portion passing across the bridge and so back to the cell, the other portion passing to the tissue or apparatus. The amount of the current which is returned to the cell through the short circuit will be proportional to the resistance of the longer circuit. As the latter is usually great in comparison with the former, practically all the current is short-circuited. When the bridge is lowered, therefore, the current is short-circuited; when it is raised, the current flows into the longer circuit through the tissue or apparatus.

The Mercury Key.—In this form the connection is established by means of mercury. It consists of a circular block in the center of which there is a cup containing mercury (Fig. 339). At opposite points there are binding posts, one of which is provided with a rigid fixed copper rod passing into the mercury; the other is provided with a movable bent rod which may be made to dip into or be withdrawn from the mercury by the ebonite handle.

FIG. 339.—A MERCURY KEY.

The effect of a constant or galvanic current on a muscle or nerve will depend to some extent on its strength. This may be accurately regulated by means of an apparatus known as—

The Rheocord. With this apparatus an electric current may be divided, one portion continuing through a conductor back to the battery, the other portion being sent off through the nerve. The strengths of these two currents are inversely proportional to the resistances of their circuits. A simple form of rheocord (Fig. 340) consists of a long wire arranged for convenience in parallel lines on a small wooden base and connected at its two ends with binding posts A and B. The resistance of this wire, 1.6 ohms, can be increased by the introduction of small resistance coils, between D and B, varying from 5 to 20 ohms.

The two binding posts A and B are connected with the positive and negative poles of an electric cell respectively. A simple key is placed in the circuit.

From A, a wire passes to one of the electrodes on which the muscle or nerve rests. A second wire passes from the second electrode to a clamp S, by way of the binding post C, which can be fastened to the long wire at any given point. The current, on reaching A, will divide into two branches, one of which will pass along the wire A, B, and thence back to the cell; the other will pass through the nerve and back to S and thence

also to the cell. The amount of current passing through the nerve circuit will be inversely proportional to the resistance of the nerve and directly proportional to the difference of potential between A and S. If S is close to A, the difference of potential is slight. If S is removed from A toward B, the difference of potential is increased and the current sent through the nerve circuit is increased.

In many experiments it is necessary to *reverse* the direction of the current, in other experiments to *deflect* it, without changing the position of the electrodes. Both these results may be accomplished by the use of—

Pohl's commutator. This is a round block of wood with six cups, each of which is in connection with a binding post (Fig. 341). In each of the two cups marked 1 and 2, + and —, is inserted one end of a copper wire bent at right angles. The other ends of the wires are supported and insulated by a hard-rubber handle. To the top of each wire is soldered a semicircular copper wire. This arrangement permits of a rocking movement, whereby the opposite ends of the semicircular wires can be made to dip into cups 3 and 4, and into cups 5 and 6 alternately. Two wires crossed in the middle of the block serve to connect opposite pairs of cups. When in use, the cups are filled with clean mercury. The method of using the commutator is as follows:

FIG. 340.—RHEOCORD.

1. *As a Current Reverser.*—The positive and negative poles of the electric cell are connected by wires with binding posts 1 and 2 respectively. A key is interposed in the circuit. Wires are then carried from binding posts 3 and 4 to the electrodes in connection with the muscle or nerve. The rocker of the commutator is so turned that the ends of the semicircular wires dip into cups 3 and 4. The direction of the current will be on the closure of the circuit from 1 to 3, then from 3 along a wire to and through the tissue and back to 4, and thence to the cell. If the position of the rocker be now reversed so that the opposite ends of the semicircular wires dip into cups 5 and 6, the direction of the current through the tissue will be reversed. The positive current, after entering binding post 1, will flow to 5; then along one of the cross wires to 4; then along a wire to and through the tissue and back to 3, along the opposite cross wire to 6, thence to 2, and so back to the cell.

2. *As a Current Deflector*.—When it is desirable to deflect the current to two pairs of electrodes differently situated, wires are carried from binding posts 3 and 4 to one pair, and from 5 and 6 to the other pair. The cross wires are then removed. According to the position of the rocker the current will be deflected to one or the other.

The Inductorium.—This is an apparatus designed for the purpose of obtaining single or rapidly succeeding electric currents by induction. Its construction is based on facts discovered by Faraday, some of which are the following:

If two circuits, a *primary* and a *secondary*, are placed parallel to each other, the former connected with a galvanic cell, the latter with a galvanometer, it is found that, at the moment the primary circuit is made, and at the moment it is broken, a current is *induced* in the secondary circuit, as shown by a momentary deflection of the galvanometer needle. During the continuous flow of the current through the primary circuit there is no

FIG. 341.—POHL'S COMMUTATOR. A. Arranged as a current reverser; B, as a current deflector.

evidence of a current in the secondary circuit. The induced current is but of momentary duration. The current flowing through the primary circuit is termed the *inducing*, the current flowing through the secondary circuit the *induced* current.

The induced current is *opposite* in direction to that of the inducing current when the circuit is made or closed; it is in the *same* direction, however, when the circuit is broken or opened.

If the circuits are arranged in the form of coils, it is found that, other things being equal, the strength of the induced currents will be proportional to the number of turns in the coils.

If the coils are placed at varying distances from each other, the strength of the induced current varies, *increasing* as the coils are approximated, *decreasing* as they are separated.

Approximation or separation of the coils while the current is flowing through the primary circuit develops an induced current, which disappears,

however, the moment the movement of the coil ceases. A sudden increase or decrease in the strength of the inducing current also develops an induced current.

When the coils are approximated or the primary current increased in strength, the induced current is opposite in direction to that of the inducing current; with the reverse conditions, the induced current has the same direction.

The *induced currents* have been termed, in honor of their discoverer, Faradic currents.

The **du Bois-Reymond inductorium**, based on the foregoing facts, consists essentially of two coils of insulated copper wire, termed primary and secondary (Fig. 342).

The primary coil, R' , consists of thick copper wire wound around a wooden spool attached to a vertical support. The beginning of this coil is at the binding post S'' , its termination either at binding post P'' or S''' . In the course of this primary wire or circuit, there are placed two vertical bars of soft iron, B' , connected at their bases to form a horseshoe magnet,

FIG. 342.—INDUCTORIUM OF DU BOIS-REYMOND. R' , Primary, R'' , secondary spiral. B. Board on which R'' moves. I. Scale. + —. Wires from battery. P' , P'' . Pillars. H. Neef's hammer. B' . Electro-magnet. S' . Binding screw touching the steel spring (H). S'' and S''' . Binding screws to which to attach wires where Neef's hammer is not required.

around the ends of which the wire is coiled. The object of this device will be explained later.

Inside the primary coil there is placed a bundle of soft iron wires, which, as soon as the circuit is made, become magnetized, with the effect of increasing the action of the inducing current.

The secondary coil, R'' , consists of a much greater number of turns of a finer copper wire, the ratio being about 40 to 1, also wound around a spool, having a tunnel sufficiently large to enable it to slide over the primary. By these means the strength of the induced current is increased. As a result of the construction of the inductorium, the low electro-motive force of the cell is transformed into the high electro-motive force characteristic of the induced current. As the number of turns of wire in the secondary coil is to the number in the primary, so are the electro-motive forces in the secondary coil to those in the primary coil.

The secondary coil slides along a track, B, which permits it to be

moved toward or away from the primary. The distance between the two coils can be measured and the strength of the induced current again reproduced, other things being equal, by means of a centimeter-millimeter scale pasted on the edge of B.

The ends of the wire of the secondary coil are fastened to two binding posts to which conducting wires provided with hand electrodes can be attached.

The inductorium may be used for obtaining either a single current or a series of rapidly repeated induced currents.

The Single Induced Current.—On account of its high electro-motive force, its penetrative power, and short duration, the single induced current is a most convenient and suitable form of stimulus for many purposes. In order to obtain such a current, the positive wire of the cell is carried to binding post S'', and the negative wire either to S''' or P''. A key is placed in the primary circuit. The course of the current will then be on the closure of the circuit from the cell to S'', thence around R' to S''', and so back to the cell; or if the negative wire is connected with P'', the course of the current on leaving R' will be through the coils surrounding the two vertical bars B', thence to P'', and so back to the cell. If the secondary coil be placed close to the primary and the wires of the secondary brought into contact with a muscle, it will be found that with both the make and the break of the primary circuit a current is induced in the secondary, as shown by a short quick pulsation of the muscle; but during the time of closure of the circuit, the induced current is wanting, as shown by the quiescent condition of the muscle. It will be apparent, however, from the energy of the contraction that the break induced current is a more efficient stimulus than the make induced current. That this is the case is made evident by removing the secondary to the end of the slideway and then gradually bringing it toward the primary half a centimeter at a time, making and breaking the circuit after each movement until a pulsation of the muscle occurs. It will be found to occur first on the break of the circuit. As the secondary approaches the primary a position will be reached when a pulsation occurs on the make as well as on the break of the circuit, though it will be less pronounced.

The explanation offered for this difference in the strength of the two induced currents is as follows: With the make of the circuit and the passage of the battery current through the primary coil there is induced in the neighboring and parallel turns of the wire an *extra* current opposite in direction to the primary current. This extra or self-induced current antagonizes and prevents the current from attaining its maximum development as quickly as it otherwise would, and therefore its efficiency as an inducer of a current in the secondary is diminished. On the break of the circuit the primary current disappears quickly, and as there is nothing to retard its disappearance its efficiency as an inducer of a current in the secondary coil is not diminished. It is not infrequently stated that the disappearance of the primary current induces in the neighboring coils a *break extra current* corresponding in direction which assists in the development of the induced current. This is not the case, however, as no break extra current is developed in the inductorium as ordinarily used when actuated by a battery current of moderate strength.

As it is not so much the intensity of the current as it is rapid variations in intensity that produce effects, it is readily apparent why the induced current developed at the break of the primary is more effective as a stimulus than the induced current developed at the make of the primary circuit. The quantity of the electricity is, however, the same in both cases.

If the secondary be pushed further along the slideway until it largely covers the primary coil, a position will be reached when the make induced current equals in its efficiency as a stimulus the break induced current; and if the secondary be yet further advanced, a position is reached when the make induced current becomes more powerful and efficient than the break induced current, as shown by the greater contraction of the muscle. This result is explained by the fact that the make extra current is now able of itself to induce a current in the secondary coil, on account of its proximity, which, added to that induced by the battery current, produces a current, greater than that induced on the break of the circuit.*

Rapidly Repeated Induced Currents.—As the single induced current is of extremely short duration, it is inefficient as a stimulus in the conduct of many experiments. It is necessary, therefore, to develop it with a frequency that is sufficient to give rise to a summation of effects. The duration of the stimulation may be thus considerably prolonged. This is accomplished by introducing in the primary circuit close to the primary coil an automatic interrupter, usually Neef's modification of Wagner's hammer (Fig. 342). This consists of a vertical post, P' , to the top of which is fastened a metallic spring carrying at its opposite end a steel or iron hammer, H , which hangs over, but does not touch, the two vertical bars of soft iron around which the wire of the primary coil is wound. About the middle of the spring on its upper surface there is a small plate of platinum which is in contact with an adjustable, platinum-tipped screw, S' , carried by a plate of brass in connection with binding post S'' .

For the purpose of interrupting the primary circuit frequently in a unit of time, and thus developing induced currents in quick succession, the apparatus is arranged in the following way: The positive and negative poles of the electric cell are connected by wires with binding posts P' and P'' , a key being interposed in the circuit. If the screw S' is in contact with the spring, the current on the closure of the circuit will enter P' , pass along the spring to S' , thence into and through the primary coil R' , to the coils surrounding the vertical bars B' , then to P'' , and so back to the cell.

As the current passes around the vertical bars, they are magnetized. The magnetization draws down the hammer, and, in so doing, breaks the circuit at the tip of the screw, S' . The vertical bars are at once demagnetized, and the hammer is restored to its original position by the elasticity of the spring. The circuit is thus re-established, the current flows through the coils, the bars are again magnetized, the hammer is drawn down, to be followed by a second break of the circuit.

The number of times the circuit is thus *made* and *broken* per second will vary with the length of the spring.

As each interruption of the primary circuit develops an induced current, it follows that the latter must succeed each other with a frequency corresponding with the frequency of the former. If while the primary circuit is thus being interrupted the wires of the secondary coil be placed in con-

* "On certain peculiarities of the inductorium," Prof. Colin C. Stewart, "Univ. Pa. Medical Bulletin," Feb., 1904.

tact with a muscle, the induced current will give rise to contractions which will succeed each other so rapidly that they fuse together, producing a spasm or *tetanus* of the muscle. For this reason these currents are frequently spoken of as *tetanizing* currents, and the procedure as *tetanization* or *Faradization*. These currents also increase in strength as the secondary approaches the primary.

Helmholtz's Modification of the Inductorium.—With a view of equalizing the strengths of the induced currents, Helmholtz suggested a device the adoption of which accomplishes this to a certain extent. It consists (Fig. 342) in connecting with a wire binding posts P' and S'', and in providing binding post P'' with an adjustable screw which can be raised until the spring comes in contact with it, when the hammer is

FIG. 343.—HELMHOLTZ'S MODIFICATION OF NEEF'S HAMMER. As long as *c* is not in contact with *d*, *g h* remains magnetic; thus *c* is attracted to *d* and a secondary circuit, *a, b, c, d, e*, is formed; *c* then springs back again, and thus the process goes on. A new wire is introduced to connect *a* with *j*. K. Battery.

drawn down by the electromagnet B'. This latter arrangement is practically a short-circuiting key by which a portion of the current is returned to the cell without ever entering the primary coil. The same arrangement, though differently lettered, is shown in Fig. 343. By the use of the entire device the changes in the primary coil are made not by making and breaking the primary current, but by alternately long- and short-circuiting the current. "When the short-circuiting key is opened, the full volume of the primary current flows through the primary coil. When the short-circuiting key is closed, most of the current fails to enter the coil, taking the easier path through the key. Some of the current, however, always flows through the coil and is never diverted. The cycle of changes in the electric condition of the primary coil is thus altered for two reasons:

"First, we no longer have an alternation between a full primary current and none at all—rather an alternation between a full primary current and a weaker one. The difference in the phases is thus lessened, the extent of the change on making and breaking is lessened, and correspondingly the efficiency of the make and break currents induced in the secondary coil is slightly decreased.

"Second, on making the primary current, as in the ordinary coil, the sudden appearance of the primary current is antagonized by the opposing make extra current, with the result that the make induced current is still further reduced; while on breaking the current the break extra current can now flow through the primary coil across the short-circuiting key. This current, trailing behind the disappearing primary current in the same direction, produces the same effect as if the primary current itself were to disappear slowly. As a result the disappearance of the primary current loses its former efficiency as an inducer of secondary currents, and the break induction current is reduced to about the efficiency of the make.

"This so-called 'equalizing' of the make and break induced currents is never perfect, if for no other reason, because the make extra current must take the long circuit through the battery, while the break extra current has an easier path through the short-circuiting key, and is thus greater than the make extra current." (C. C. Stewart.)

THE GRAPHIC METHOD.

The term graphic is applied to a method by which curves or tracings are obtained which represent the extent, duration, and time relations of the movements accompanying physiologic processes. If these movements can be translated in one direction, they may be recorded in different ways:

1. By attaching the moving structure—*e. g.*, heart, muscle, etc.—to a delicate lever the free extremity of which is provided with a writing point.
2. By transmitting the movement through a column of air enclosed in a rubber tube the two ends of which are attached to a metallic capsule, covered by a rubber membrane, termed a drum or tambour. When the membrane of the first tambour is pressed or driven inward, the air is forced through the rubber tube into the second tambour and its membrane is pushed outward. As soon

FIG. 344.—A RECEIVING TAMBOUR.

as the primary pressure is removed, the membranes return to their former condition. If the membrane of the first tambour is drawn outward, the air in the system is rarefied and the membrane of the second tambour is pressed inward. For the purpose of registering the movement

FIG. 345.—A RECORDING TAMBOUR.—(Marey.)

transmitted by the column of air, the second tambour is provided with a light lever supported by a vertical bearing resting on a small metallic disk. The membrane of the first tambour is frequently provided with a button, which is placed over the moving structure. The inward movement of the membrane of the first tambour produces an outward movement of the membrane of the second tambour, indicated, though magnified, by the rise of the free end of the lever. The reverse movement of the membrane is attended by a fall of the lever. The first tambour is termed the *receiving*, the second the *recording* tambour (Figs. 344, 345).

3. By enclosing an organ—*e. g.*, kidney, spleen, arm, finger, etc.—in a rigid glass or metal vessel which at one point is in communication with a recording apparatus—*e. g.*, (1) a piston provided with a lever (page 431); or (2) a tambour and lever (page 320); or (3) a mercurial manometer carrying a float and pen (page 305). The space between the part investigated and the vessel is filled with fluid. The variations in volume of the organ cause a displacement of the fluid and give rise to a to-and-fro movement which is taken up and reproduced by the recording apparatus.

FIG. 346.—KYMOGRAPH. (Boruttau's, Petzold, Leipzig.)

The writing point may be (1) some form of pen carrying ink which records the movement on a white paper surface, or (2) a piece of metal, glass, or paper which records the movement on smoked paper or glass.

The Recording Surface.—The surface which receives and records the movements of a pen or lever is usually that of a cylinder which is covered with glazed paper and coated with a thin layer of soot, obtained by passing the cylinder through the flame of a gas burner. The axis of the cylinder is supported by a metal framework. If the writing point of the lever be placed against the cylinder and a movement be imparted to it, a portion of the soot is rubbed off, leaving a white line behind. If the cylinder be stationary, the rise and fall of the lever are

recorded as a vertical line. Such a record shows only the extent of a movement. If the cylinder is traveling, however, at a uniform rate, the rise and fall of the lever are recorded in the form of a curve the width of the two arms of which will depend partly on the rapidity of the movement of the lever and partly on the rate of movement of the cylinder. The cylinder movement is initiated and maintained by clock-work or by the transmission of power by belting to a system of pulleys in connection with its axis. As the tracing is wave-like in form, the cylinder is frequently spoken of as a kymograph or wave recorder (Fig. 346).

From the record thus obtained it is possible to determine not only the

extent but also the duration, the form, and the rate of recurrence of any given movement.

The Extent of a Movement.—As the lever not only takes up and reproduces a movement, but at the same time magnifies it, it is essential that the degree of magnification be known, in order to determine the actual extent of the movement. The magnification of the lever is readily determined by dividing the distance between the axis of the lever and its writing point by the distance between the axis and the point of attachment of the structure, and then dividing the height of the tracing by this quotient. The final quotient represents the extent of the movement.

The Time Relations of a Movement.

—When recorded in the form of a curve, the duration of the entire movement, or of any one portion of it, can be determined by means of a time marking or chronographic apparatus, consisting of (1) a small signal magnet provided with a movable armature, to which is attached a writing style; (2) an automatic interrupter; and (3) an electric cell.

The Signal Magnet.—The magnet (Fig. 347) is actuated by the electric current made and broken at regular and known intervals by an auto-

FIG. 347.—SIGNAL MAGNET.

matically-acting interrupter placed in the circuit. With each make and break of the circuit the armature and style move alternately downward and upward. The excursion of the style can be readily recorded on a traveling surface. The character and number of the interruptions per second will determine the character of the tracing. If they occur in a rhythmic manner, the tracing will be sinusoidal or wave-like in

FIG. 348.—PAGE'S VIBRATING REED. (Reichert's modification.)

form. If the time of interruption is of short duration as compared with the time of closure of the circuit, the tracing will be a horizontal line with short vertical elevations at regular intervals.

The Automatic Interrupter.—The circuit may be interrupted by vibrating reeds, tuning-forks, metronomes, etc. A well-known form of vibrating reed is shown in Fig. 348. This consists of a metallic frame carrying a coil of wire in the center of which there is a core of soft iron. To the vertical part of the frame there is fastened the reed, the distal end of which is bent to dip into an adjustable mercury cup. When in circuit the current enters the coil, then flows into and through the frame and the reed to the

mercury, and thence back to the cell. On the closure of the circuit and the magnetization of the iron core the reed is withdrawn from the mercury, the circuit broken, and the core demagnetized. The elasticity of the spring returns it to the mercury, when the circuit is again restored. The reed may be so constructed that it will be raised and lowered 50, 100, or 200 times a second. The armature of the signal magnet undergoes a corresponding number of elevations and depressions. If the reed vibrates 100 times in a second, the distance from crest to crest of the wave tracing will represent $\frac{1}{100}$ of a second. Interrupters of various kinds have been devised which make and break the circuit from 1 to 250 times a second.

Moist Chamber.—In many experiments, it is necessary to keep the nerve or muscle preparation in a uniformly moist atmosphere. To secure

FIG. 349.—MOIST CHAMBER.

this, a moist chamber is employed. This consists of a hard-rubber platform, supported by a piece of brass, which slides up and down a vertical rod, and which can be clamped at any height. By means of a short lever the vertical rod can be turned, carrying the platform from side to side. The rod is secured to a firm iron base.

Six double binding posts for the attachment of wires pass through the platform. Near the side of the upper surface of the platform there rises a vertical rod, carrying a clamp for holding the femur of a nerve-muscle preparation, as well as a horizontal rod for supporting three pairs of non-polarizable electrodes. A groove around the outer edge of the platform receives a glass shade, which covers the whole. The air of the chamber is kept moist by placing in it pieces of blotting-paper saturated with water.

From the under surface of the platform there descends a rod, which, by means of a double binding screw, supports a horizontal rod, modified at one end to carry the delicate axis of a light stiff recording lever. The end of this lever is pointed, to enable it to write on a smoked glass or paper. Beneath the axis is a strip of brass, carrying a screw, which gives support to the lever until the instant the contraction of the muscle begins. This screw, the after-loading screw, also enables the lever to be placed in a horizontal position. The portion of the lever near the axis is provided with a double hook, the lower portion of which serves for the attachment of the weight by which the muscle is counterpoised.

In some experiments, as in the registration of a muscle contraction under varying conditions, it is necessary to give the lever mass by attaching weights directly beneath the muscle. This, however, introduces certain errors in the movements of the lever, which somewhat deform what would otherwise be the normal curve. If the weight be attached, not opposite to the muscle attachment, but close to the axis of the lever, the undesirable acceleration of the lever movement, during both contraction and relaxation, is largely prevented. The lever may be a straw, a strip of celluloid or aluminium. It should be as light as possible. The writing point may be made of stiff paper, a piece of tinsel, glass or aluminium. It should have sufficient elasticity to keep it in contact with the cylinder during the excursion of the lever. The writing point should be placed as nearly parallel as possible to the surface of the cylinder.

Normal Saline Solution.—To prevent drying and a loss of irritability the tissue under investigation should be kept moist with the normal saline solution (NaCl 0.6 per cent.). This solution very largely prevents either absorption or extraction of water from the tissues and thus retards chemic changes in their composition.

Ringer's solution, largely used for the same purpose, is made by saturating 0.65 per cent. NaCl solution with calcium phosphate and then adding 2 c.c. of a 1 per cent. solution of potassium chlorid to each 100 c.c.

The Galvanometer and Capillary Electrometer.—In the detection and investigation of the electric currents of muscles, nerves, and other tissues, the physiologist is limited to the galvanometer and capillary electrometer. The principle of the galvanometer is based on the fact that an electric current flowing through a wire parallel in direction with a magnetic needle will tend to set the needle at right angles to the direction of the current. The essential requisite of any galvanometer used for physiologic purposes is that it will respond quickly to the influence of extremely weak currents. This is realized by the use of small light needles, the adoption of the astatic system, or some similar device by which the directive influence of the earth's magnetism is eliminated, and the multiplication of the number of turns of the wire in the coils which surround the needle.

The tangent galvanometer, or *boussole*, as constructed by Wiedemann, is the form most frequently employed in physiologic investigations (Fig. 350). It consists primarily of a thick copper cylinder, through which a tunnel has been bored. Within this tunnel is suspended a magnetized ring, just large enough to swing clear of the sides of the chamber. The object of

making the magnet ring-shaped is to increase its strength in proportion to its size, and to get rid of the central inactive part. Connected with and passing upward from the magnetized ring through the copper cylinder is an aluminium rod, surmounted by a circular plane mirror. Above the mirror rises a glass tube, which carries on top, on an ebonite support, a little windlass, capable of being centered by three small screws. On the windlass is wound a single filament of silk, which passes down the tube and is attached to the mirror. The magnet can, by this contrivance, be raised or lowered and centered in the copper chamber. Deflections of the mirror from currents of air are prevented by inclosing it with a brass cover provided with a glass window. The coils are placed on each side of the copper chamber, and supported by a rod, on which they slide. By this arrangement they can be approximated until they meet and completely

FIG. 350.—WIEDEMANN'S BOUSSOLE.

conceal the cylinder. By varying the position of the coils the influence of the current upon the needle can be increased or diminished. An advantage which this galvanometer possesses is the damping of the oscillation of the needle, so that it quickly comes to rest after deflection. This is accomplished by the development of induction currents in the copper cylinder, the direction of which is

opposite to that of the movement of the needle. The instrument, therefore, is aperiodic—that is to say, when the needle is influenced by a current it moves comparatively slowly until the maximum deflection is reached, when it comes to rest without oscillations. When the circuit is broken the needle swings slowly back to zero, and again comes to rest without oscillations.

Inasmuch as the needle is not astatic, it is rendered so by the use of an accessory magnet—the so-called Haüy's bar. This magnet, supported by a rod directed perpendicular to the coils, is placed in the magnetic meridian, horizontal to the needle, with its north pole pointing north. By sliding the magnet toward the needle the directive influence of the earth's magnetism is gradually diminished, and when it is reduced to a minimum the needle acquires its highest degree of instability. By means of a pulley

an angular movement can be imparted to the end of the accessory magnet in the direction of the magnetic meridian, which serves to keep the needle on the zero of the scale. The deflections of the needle are observed by means of an astronomic telescope, above which is placed a scale divided into centimeters and millimeters, and distant from the galvanometer about six or eight feet. As the numbers on the scale are reversed, they will be seen in the mirror in their natural position, and with the deflection of the needle the numbers will appear as if drawn across the mirror. The extent of the deflection is readily determined when the needle comes to rest.

The reflecting galvanometer of Sir William Thompson is also used for the same purposes.

The Capillary Electrometer.—Notwithstanding the extreme sensitiveness of the modern galvanometer, it has been found desirable, in the investigation of many physiologic processes, to possess some means which will respond even more promptly to slight variations in electromotive force. This has been realized in the construction by Lippmann of the capillary electrometer. The principle of this apparatus rests upon the fact that the capillary constant or the surface-tension of mercury undergoes a change upon the passage of an electric current, in consequence of a polarization by hydrogen taking place at its surface. If a capillary glass tube be filled with mercury and its lower end inserted into a solution of sulphuric acid, and the former connected with the positive and the latter with the negative

electrode, it will be observed, upon the passage of the current, that a definite movement of the mercury takes place, in the direction of the negative electrode, in consequence of the diminution of its capillary constant or the tension of its surface in contact with the acid. As a reverse movement follows a cessation of the current, a series of oscillations will follow a rapid making and breaking of the current. If the direction of the current is reversed, the capillary constant is increased and the mercury ascends the tube toward the negative pole. From facts such as these Lippmann constructed the capillary electrometer, a convenient modification of which,

FIG. 351.—VON FREY'S CAPILLARY ELECTROMETER.

devised by M. v. Frey, is shown in Fig. 351. This consists of a glass tube, *A*, forty millimeters in length, three millimeters in diameter, the lower end of which is drawn out to a fine capillary point. The tube is filled with mercury and its capillary point immersed in a 10 per cent. solution of sulphuric acid. The vessel containing the acid

FIG. 352.—CAPILLARY ELECTROMETER. *R*. Mercury in tube; capillary tube. *s*. Sulphuric acid. *q*. Hg. *B*. Observer. *M*. Microscope

is filled to the extent of several millimeters with mercury also. The mercury in the tube is put in connection with a platinum wire (*a*), and the acid in the vessel with a second wire (*b*). When a constant current passes into the apparatus in the direction from *b* to *a* the mercury is pushed up the tube, and, upon the breaking of the current, it may or may not return to the zero-point. For the purpose of measuring in millimeters of mercury the pressure necessary to compensate this change in the capillary constant produced by the electro-motive force of polarization, the apparatus is provided with a pressure-vessel, *H*, and a manometer, *B*. This electrometer can be applied to any microscope having a reversible stage. The oscillations of the mercury can then be observed with the microscope provided with an ocular micrometer (Fig. 352). The special advantage of the electrometer is, that it will respond instantly to any variation in the electro-motive force, and indicate a difference of potential, according to Lippmann's observation, as slight as the $\frac{1}{100000}$ of a Daniell. These rapid oscillations can be recorded by photographic methods.

In using either the galvanometer or the electrometer for detecting the existence of electric currents or differences of potential in living tissues, it is absolutely essential that non-polarizable electrodes be employed in connection with it

DISSECTION OF THE HIND-LEG OF THE FROG.

Much of our knowledge of the physiologic properties of muscles and nerves has been derived from the study of the muscles and nerves of the cold-blooded animals, especially of the frog, for the reason that in these animals the tissues retain their vitality under appropriate conditions for a considerable period of time after death or removal from the body. The muscles generally employed for experimental purposes are the gastrocnemius, the sartorius, the semi-membranosus, the gracilis, and the hyoglossus. The nerve generally employed is the sciatic. Both muscle and nerve may be studied independently of each other, or they may be studied together, as when in their usual physiologic relation. For this latter purpose the gastrocnemius muscle and sciatic nerve are employed, constituting the so-called "nerve-muscle preparation."

For these, and many other reasons, the student should familiarize himself with the general anatomy of the frog, and especially with the anatomy of the posterior extremities.

Preparation of the Frog.—Destroy the frog by plunging a pin through the skin and soft tissues covering the space between the occipital bone and the first vertebra until the point is stopped by the vertebra. Turn the pin toward the head and push it into the brain cavity; move it from side to side and destroy the brain. Pass the pin into the spinal canal and destroy the spinal cord. With a stout pair of scissors cut off the body behind the fore-limbs. Remove the viscera and the abdominal walls. Draw the hind-legs out of the skin. Place the legs on a glass plate, back uppermost, and moisten them freely with normal saline solution.

FIG. 353.—LEG MUSCLES OF THE FROG.
VENTRAL SURFACE.—(Ecker.)

FIG. 354.—LEG MUSCLES OF THE FROG.
DORSAL SURFACE.—(Ecker.)

Observe on the outer side of the dorsal surface of the thigh the following muscles (Figs. 353, 354). The triceps femoris (tr), made up of the rectus anticus (ra), the vastus externus (ve), and the vastus internus (vi), not seen from behind; on the inner side, the semi-membranosus (sm) and the rectus internus minor or gracilis (ri''). Between these two groups, note the biceps femoris (b). Above the thigh observe the gluteus (gl), the ileo-coccygeus (ci), and the pyriformis (p).

In the leg observe the gastrocnemius (g) with its tendon (the tendo Achillis), the tibialis anticus (ta), and the peroneus (pe).

Turn the frog on its back and note the muscles on the ventral surface of the thigh, the rectus internus major (ri'), and minor (ri''), the adductor magnus (ad''), the sartorius (s), the adductor longus (ad'), and the vastus

internus (vi). In the leg, in addition to those already seen from behind, note the tibialis posticus (tp) and the extensor cruris (ec).

Note in the abdominal cavity the three large spinal nerves, the seventh, eighth, and ninth.

Dissection of the Sciatic Nerve.—The sciatic nerve is composed of the seventh, eighth, and ninth spinal nerves. After its emergence from the pelvic cavity, it passes down the thigh between the semi-membranosus and the biceps muscles, in company with the femoral blood-vessels. Below the knee it divides into the tibialis and peroneus nerves; the former sending branches into the gastrocnemius. In its course, the sciatic sends branches to the muscles of the entire leg.

Carefully separate the biceps and semi-membranosus by tearing the connective tissue uniting them. The sciatic nerve and femoral blood-vessels come into view; with a bent glass rod gently separate the nerve from its surroundings from the knee to the thigh. Begin at the knee. In order to expose the nerve at the pelvis, it will be necessary to divide the pyriformis and the ileo-coccygeus muscles. Care must here be exercised, so as not to injure the nerve which lies immediately beneath. Lift up the uro-style with the forceps and separate it from the last vertebra. With the scissors cut off the vertebral column above the seventh vertebra. Place the legs on the dorsal surface and then divide the seventh, eighth, and ninth vertebræ lengthwise. With the forceps lift up one lateral half of the vertebræ and free the nerve as far as the knee by dividing connective tissue and nerve branches. Be careful not to injure the nerve with scissors or forceps.

The Nerve-muscle Preparation.—Divide the tendo Achillis just below its fibro-cartilaginous thickening at the heel, and detach the gastrocnemius up to the knee. Cut through the tibio-fibular bone just below the knee-joint. Cut the femur transversely near its middle and remove the muscles from the lower end, carefully avoiding injury to the nerve. The completed preparation consists of the gastrocnemius muscle, the sciatic nerve, with half of the seventh, eighth, and ninth vertebræ and the lower half of the femur. Place the preparation on a clean glass plate and moisten with normal saline solution, 0.6 per cent.

INDEX.

A.

- Abducens nerve, 542
- Aberration, chromatic, 623
 - spheric, 623
- Absorption, 213
 - by epithelium of villi, 224
 - of foods, 225
 - of lymph, 622
 - spectra of blood, 248
- Accommodation of the eye, 614
 - convergence of eyes during, 619
 - force of, 618
 - mechanism of, 615
 - range, 618
- Action currents of muscles, 92
 - of nerves, 121
 - reflex, 131
 - of medulla oblongata, 481
 - of spinal cord, 453
- Adrenal bodies, 415
- Agraphia, 511
- Albuminoids, 34
- Alcohol, effects of, 140
- Alimentary canal, 152
 - principles, 136
- Allantois, 662
- Amnion, 662
- Amylopsin, 200
- Amyloses, 25
- Animal body, structure of, 19
 - heat, 385
- Ankle clonus, 459
 - jerk, 459
- Aphasia, 510
 - ataxic, 511
 - amnesic, 511
- Apnea, 378
- Arterial circulation, 297
 - pressure, 302
- Arteries, structure and properties of, 297
- Articulate speech, 572
- Asphyxia, 379
- Association centers of cerebrum, 512
- Astigmatism, 622
- Auditory area, 508
 - nerve, 548

B.

- Basal ganglia, 474
- Bile, 203

- Bile, composition of, 205
 - mode of secretion, 206
 - physiologic action, 207
 - pigments, 206
 - salts, 205
- Blastodermic membranes, 660
- Blind spot, 626
- Blood, 229
 - changes in, during respiration, 362
 - circulation of, 263
 - coagulation of, 231
 - chemistry of, 259
 - extravascular, 260
 - intravascular, 261
 - constituents of, 229.
 - corpuscles, 236, 254, 257
 - defibrinated, 233
 - general composition of, 259
 - physical properties of, 230
 - pressure, 301
 - causes of, 308
 - changes of, 310
 - methods of estimation, 302, 305
 - quantity of, 258
 - velocity of, in arteries, 313
 - of, in capillaries, 316
 - of, in veins, 316
- Burdach, column of, 450

C.

- Calorimeter, 390
- Capillary blood-vessels, 298
 - functions of, 323
 - circulation, 321
 - electrometer, 689
- Capsule, internal, 475
 - functions of, 485
- Carbohydrates, 25
- Carbon monoxid hemoglobin, 252
- Cardiac cycle, 274
- Cardio-accelerator center, 296
- Cardio-inhibitor center, 295
- Cardio-pulmonary vessels, 267
- Caseinogen, 400
- Caudate nucleus, 475
- Cells, structure of, 41
 - manifestations of life by, 43
- Central organs of the nerve system, 440
- Cerebellum, 514

- Cerebellum, functions of, 516
 results of experimental lesions, 517
 Cerebrum, 486
 convolutions of, 488
 fissures of, 486
 functions of, 494
 localization of function in, 505
 motor area of the chimpanzee brain, 505
 motor area of the human brain, 506
 motor area of the monkey's brain, 498
 sensor areas of the human brain, 507
 sensor areas of the monkey's brain, 499
 structure of the gray matter, 491
 structure of the white matter, 493
 Chemic composition of the body, 24
 Chimpanzee brain, motor area of, 505
 Cholesterin, 205
 Chorda tympanum nerve, 546, 547
 Chorion, 663
 Chyle, 226
 Ciliary movement, 100
 muscle, 601
 functions of, 617
 Circulation of blood, 263
 forces concerned, 325
 Cochlea, 640
 functions of, 648
 Colostrum, 402
 Commutator, 677
 Connective tissues, 49
 Corpora quadrigemina, 473
 functions of, 482
 striata, 474
 functions of, 482
 Cranial nerves, 522
 Crura cerebri, 472
 functions of, 482
 Crystalline lens, 605

D.

- Daily ration of U. S. soldier, 150
 Decidual membrane, 659
 Defecation, 211
 nerve mechanism of, 212
 Deglutition, 169
 nerve mechanism of, 175
 Demarcation current, 91
 Depressor nerve, 296, 324, 555
 Dextroses, 26
 Diabetes, 409
 Diaphragm, 341
 Dietaries, 150
 Digestion, 131
 Dilator pupillæ muscle, 600
 Direct cerebellar tract, 449
 pyramidal tract, 446

- Ductless glands, 411
 Ductus arteriosus, 667
 venosus, 666
 Dyspnea, 378

E.

- Electrodes, non-polarizable, 674
 Electrotonic alterations in excitability of nerves, 122
 current, 122
 Electrotonus, 122
 Encephalon, 440
 Encephalo-spinal fluid, 441
 Endocardium, 267
 Enterokinase, 202
 Epididymis, 656
 Epinephrin, 416
 Epithelial tissues, functions of, 47
 Equilibration, mechanism of, 519
 Erythrocytes, 236
 Eupnea, 377
 Eustachian tube, 638
 Excretion, 420
 Expiratory forces and muscles, 351
 Expired air, composition of, 359
 Eye, cardinal points of, 609
 dioptric apparatus of, 607
 lids of, 636
 muscles of, 632
 physiologic anatomy of, 598
 reduced, 612
 schematic, 611

F.

- Facial nerve, 543
 paralysis of, 546
 Fallopian tube, 651
 Fat, 29
 absorption of, 226
 digestion of, 201
 emulsification of, 31
 saponification of, 30
 Feces, 211
 Fecundation, 658
 Fehling's solution, 27
 Female organs of generation, 650
 Fetal circulation, 665
 membranes, 662
 structures, 660
 Fibrin, 34
 Fibrinogen, 235
 Fillet, 468
 Follicle, Graafian, 650
 Food, 133
 animal, 146
 cereal, 147
 disposition of, 137
 heat value of, 141

Food, percentage composition of, 145
 principles, 136
 quantities required daily, 134
 vegetable, 148

Fovea, 602, 604

Funiculus cuneatus, 468
 gracilis, 468

G.

Gall-bladder, 203

Galvanic current, effect of, on nerves, 122

Galvanometer, 687

Ganglia, cephalic, 569, 570

Gaseous exchange in lungs, 369
 in tissues, 370

Gases of blood, relation of, 363
 tension of, 366

Gastric digestion, 176

glands, 178

juice, 181

mode of secretion, 184

physiologic action of, 186

Glossopharyngeal nerve, 550

Glycogen, 26, 407

Glycogenic function of the liver, 407

Gmelin's test for bile pigments, 206

Goll, columns of, 450

Gowers' antero-lateral tract, 449

Graafian follicle, 650

Graphic method, 683

Green vegetables, 149

H.

Hairs, 437

Hearing, sense of, 637

Heart, 263

action of sympathetic nerve on, 295

of vagus nerve on, 292

blood supply, 283

beat, causation, 285

frequency of, 282

course of blood through, 268

cycle of, 274

inhibition of, 293

intraventricular pressure of, 279

mechanics of, 273

muscle-fibers of, 271

negative pressure on, 282

nerve system of, 291

orifices and valves, 269, 276

physiologic anatomy of, 263

sounds, 282

synchronism of the two sides, 278

work done by, 326

Heart-muscle, properties of, 288

Heat dissipation, 391

income, 389

relation to work, 394

rigor, 79

Helmholtz's theory of color perception, 634

Hemianopsia, 530

Hemoglobin, 244

absorption spectra, 248

compounds of, 251

Hemoglobinometer, Gowers', 247

Hemometer, v. Fleischl's, 248

Hering's theory of color perception, 634

Horopter, 628

Hypermetropia, 621

Hyperpnea, 377

Hypoglossal nerve, 559

Hypophysis cerebri, 414

I.

Incus, 639

Induced currents, 680, 681

Inductarium, 678

Insalivation, 158

nerve mechanism of, 165

Inspiration, 347

movements of thorax, 347

muscles, 347

Insula, 491

Intercostal muscle, 347

Internal capsule, 475

functions of, 485

secretion, 411

Intestinal digestion, 193

juice, 195

physiologic action of, 202

movements, 208

Intracardiac pressure, 278

Intrapulmonary pressure, 343

Intrathoracic pressure, 344

Intravascular coagulation, 261

Iris, 599

functions of, 619

nerve mechanism of, 534, 620

Iron of the body, 39, 139

Irritability of muscles, 70

of nerves, 115

Island of Langerhans, 197

of Reil, 491

Isthmus of encephalon, 470

functions of, 480

J.

Jacobsen's nerve, 551

Joints, 58

classification of, 59

K.

Kidney, 424

histology of, 424

Knee-jerk, 459

Kymograph, 684

L.

- Labyrinth of ear, 640
- Lacrimal glands, 636
- Lactation, 401
- Lacteals, 227
- Language, 509
- Large intestine, 209
- Larynx, 572
 - nerve mechanism of, 582
 - structure of, 575
- Lateral columns of the spinal cord, 449
- Law of contraction, 126
- Lemniscus, 468
- Lens, crystalline, 605
- Lenticular nucleus, 475
- Leukocytes, 256
 - classification of, 256
- Levers, 94
- Limbic lobe, 490
- Liver, 203, 403
 - formation of urea in, 410
 - functions of, 405
 - production of glycogen, 407
 - secretion of bile, 406
- Localization of functions in cerebrum, 497
- Lungs, structure of the, 338
- Lymph, 219
 - composition of, 219
 - functions of, 221
 - movement of, 227
 - production of, 220
 - properties of, 219
- Lymph-glands, 216
- Lymph-vessels, 214
- Lymphocytes, 219, 256

M.

- Macula lutea, 602
- Malleus, 639
- Mammary gland, 399
- Mastication, 153
 - muscles of, 155
 - nerve mechanism of, 156
- Meats, composition of, 146
- Medulla oblongata, 467
 - reflex activities of, 481
- Meibomian glands, 636
- Membrana tympani, 638
- Menstruation, 654
- Metabolism on proteid diet, 145
 - on fat and carbohydrate diet, 145
- Methemoglobin, 252
- Micturition, 433
 - nerve mechanism of, 434
- Migration of leukocytes, 323
- Milk, 400
 - composition of, 146, 400
 - mechanism of secretion, 401

- Moist chamber, 686
- Mosso's plethysmograph, 320
- Motor area of chimpanzee brain, 505
 - of human brain, 506
 - of monkey brain, 499
- oculi nerve, 531
- Mouth digestion, 153
- Movements of the eyeball, 630
 - of the intestines, 208
 - of the stomach, 190
- Muscle action currents, 92
 - contraction, 75
 - chemic phenomena of, 86
 - electric phenomena of, 89
 - graphic record of, 76
 - modifying influences of, 78
 - physical phenomena of, 73
 - rigor mortis, 87
 - tetanus, 84
 - thermic phenomena of, 88
 - electric currents from, 89
 - electric currents, negative variation of, 91
 - energy, source of, 87
 - fatigue, 80
 - groups, special action of, 94
 - sense, 592
 - sound, 87
 - spindle, 592
 - stimuli, 71
 - tissue, 63
 - chemic composition of, 67
 - histology of, 64, 97
 - physical properties of, 68
 - physiologic properties of, 69
- Myopia, 621
- Myosinogen, 33, 67
- Myxedema, 412

N.

- Nerve, abducens, 542
 - auditory, 548
 - facial, 543
 - glossopharyngeal, 550
 - hypoglossal, 559
 - impulse, 117
 - irritability, 115
 - motor oculi, 531
 - olfactory, 525
 - optic, 527
 - patheticus, 536
 - pneumogastric, 552
 - spinal accessory, 557
 - stimuli, 115
 - tissue, histology of, 103
 - trigeminal, 537
- Nerve-muscle preparation, 118
- Nerves, classification of, 113
 - development of, 111

Nerves, electric currents of, 119
 electric currents of, negative variation of, 120
 effects of galvanic current on, 122
 peripheral endings of, 109
 physiologic properties of, 115
 pilo-motor, 438
 polar stimulation of, 126, 127
 relation of, to central nerve system, 108

Neuron, 103
 Nicotin, actions of, 168, 567
 Nucleus caudatus, 475
 cuneatus, 468
 gracilis, 468
 lenticularis, 475
 Nutrition of the embryo, 663

O.

Oculo-motor nerve, 531
 Ohm's law, 672
 Olein, 30
 Olfactory nerve, 525
 Oncograph, 431
 Oncometer, 431
 Operculum, 491
 Ophthalmic ganglion, 569
 Optic constants, 607
 thalamus, 474
 functions of, 484
 Optogram, 628
 Organ of Corti, 642
 Osazones, 29
 Ossicles of ear, 639, 644
 Otic ganglion, 570
 Ovary, 650
 Ovulation, 653
 Ovum, 651
 Oxygen in blood, 364
 in tissues, 368
 quantity absorbed daily, 374
 Oxyhemoglobin, 251

P.

Pacianian corpuscle, 589
 Palmitin, 30
 Pancreas, 196
 Pancreatic juice, 198
 physiologic action of, 200
 Partial pressure of gases, 363
 Parturition, 667
 Pathetic nerve, 536
 Pepsin, 182
 Peptones, 188
 Perspiration, 454
 Petrosal nerves, 546
 Pettenkofer-Voit respiration apparatus, 372

Pexin, 182
 Phagocytosis, 257
 Phloridzin diabetes, 410
 Phonation, 572
 mechanism of, 582
 Pilo-motor nerves, 438
 Pituitary body, 414
 Placenta, 664
 Plasma of blood, composition of, 233
 Pleura, 342
 Pneumatograph, 357
 Pneumogastric nerve, 552
 Pneumograph, 355
 Pons varolii, 470
 functions of, 481
 Portal vein, 224
 Presbyopia, 620
 Proteids, 31
 color tests for, 36
 Protoplasm, properties of, 44
 Ptyalin, 165
 Pulmonary vascular apparatus, 329
 ventilation, 301
 Pulse, 316
 frequency, 317
 wave, velocity of, 318
 Punctum proximum, 618
 vemtum, 618
 Pyramidal tracts of spinal cord, 449

R.

Reaction of degeneration, 131
 Red corpuscles, 236
 chemic composition of, 244
 function of, 242
 life history of, 243
 number of, 238
 of vertebrate animals, 241
 Reduced hemoglobin, 250, 251
 Reflex action, 131, 453
 laws of, 458
 Refractory period of the heart, 290
 Regnault's and Reisset's respiration apparatus, 373
 Relation of gases in the blood, 363
 Rennin, 182
 Reproduction, 650
 Reserve air, 356
 Residual air, 357
 Respiration, 335
 changes in composition of air during, 359
 changes in composition of blood, 362
 changes in tissues, 367
 chemistry of, 358
 complemental air, 356
 frequency of, 354
 mechanism of gaseous exchange, 379
 nerve mechanism of, 379

Respiration, total respiratory exchange, 371
 volumes of air breathed, 356
 Respiratory apparatus, 335
 movements, 347
 effects of, on arterial pressure, 383
 effects of, on the flow of blood through the thoracic vessel, 383
 pressures, 343, 344
 quotient, 360
 rhythm, 355
 sounds, 358
 types, 354
 Retina, 601
 Retinal image, 607
 size of, 613
 Rigor mortis, 87
 Rima glottidis, 573
 respiratoria, 578
 vocalis, 578
 Routes of the absorbed food, 27

S.

Saccharose, 28
 Saliva, 161
 physiologic action of, 163
 Salivary glands, 158
 histologic changes in during secretion, 162
 nerve mechanism of, 168
 Sebaceous glands, 438
 Secretin, 199
 Secretion, 394
 internal, 411
 Semen, 657
 Semicircular canals, 529
 Sensor areas of human brain, 507
 of monkey brain, 501
 Setchenow's center, 460
 Sight, sense of, 598
 Skeleton, physiology of, 58
 Skin, 435
 nerve endings in, 587
 Smell, sense of, 596
 Spectroscope, 249
 Speech, 572
 Spermatozoa, 657
 Spheno-palatine ganglion, 570
 Sphygmograph, 319
 Sphygmomanometer, 305
 Spinal accessory nerve, 557
 cord, 443
 encephalo-spinal conduction, 462
 functions of, 452
 as a conductor, 452
 as an independent center, 461

Spinal cord, nerve fibers of, 447
 nerve fibers of, classification of, 447
 reflex actions of, 453
 reflex irritability of, 459
 relation of spinal nerves to, 450
 spino-encephalic conduction, 463
 structure of gray matter, 444
 structure of white matter, 447
 tracts of, 448
 Spirometer, 356
 Splanchnic nerves, 568
 Spleen, 416
 Stapes, 639
 Starch, digestion of, 164
 Starvation, 142
 Stearin, 30
 Stereognostic area, 509
 Stomach, movements of, 190
 nerve mechanism of, 193
 Suprarenal capsules, 415
 Sweat-glands, 436
 Sympathetic nerve system, 561
 cephalic ganglia of, 569
 functions of the cervical portion, 567
 functions of the lumbo-sacral portions, 569
 functions of the thoracic portion, 568

T.

Taste buds, 595
 nerve of, 594
 sense of, 594
 Tears, 636
 Teeth, 153
 Tegmentum, 472
 Temperature of body, 386
 sense, 590
 Tension of gases in blood, 367
 Tensor tympani muscle, 639
 functions of, 646
 Testicles, 655
 Tetanus, 84
 Thoracic duct, 218
 Thorax, 340
 dynamic relations of, 345
 mechanic movements of, 342
 static relation of, 343
 Thyroid gland, 411
 functions of, 412
 Tidal air, 356
 Tongue, 594
 Total carbon-dioxid exhaled, 374
 oxygen absorbed, 374
 respiratory exchange, 371
 Touch, sense of, 586

Trachea, 337
Tracts of spinal cord, 449
Trigeminal nerve, 537
Trypsin, 200
Türk, column of, 448
Tympanum, 637

U.

Umbilical cord, 663
Upper air-passages, respiratory move-
ments of, 353
Urea, 410
 seat of formation, 422
Uric acid, 422
Urine, 421
 composition of, 421
 mechanism of secretion, 428
 influence of blood composi-
 tion, 435
 influence of nerve system,
 432
 relation of blood-pressure
 to, 429
Uterus, 652

V.

Vagus nerve, 552
 influence on heart, 292
Valves of heart, 276
Vasa deferentia, 656
Vascular apparatus, 296
 nerve mechanism of, 327
 glands, 411
Vaso-motor center, 331
 nerves, 327
Veins, 299
Velocity of blood, 312, 316
Vertebral column, 61
Vesiculæ seminales, 656
Villi, 222

Visceral muscle, 97
Vision, 598
 accommodation, 614
 astigmatism, 622
 binocular, 628
 color perception, 634
 functions of retina, 625
 hypermetropia, 621
 myopia, 621
 presbyopia, 620
Visual angle, 613
Vital capacity of lungs, 357
Vocal bands, 576
 sounds, 580
Voice and speech, 582
Volume of pulse, 320

W.

Walking, 97
Water, amount of, in the body, 37
Watery vapor in breath, 360
Wernicke's pupillary reaction, 531, 535
White blood-corpuscles, 254
 function of, 257
 migration of, 323
 origin of, 257
Wrisberg, nerve of, 545

Y.

Yellow spot, 602

Z.

Zona pellucida, 660
Zymogen, 165
 pepsinogen, 182
 ptyalogen, 165
 trypsinogen, 202

Catalogue of the Medical, Dental, Pharmaceutical, Chemical, and Scientific Books Published by P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1012 Walnut Street, Philadelphia.

Established 1843.

SPECIAL NOTE.

The prices as given in this catalogue are absolutely net—no discount will be allowed retail purchasers under any consideration. This rule has been established in order that every one will be treated alike, a general reduction in former prices having been made to meet previous retail discounts. Upon receipt of the advertised price any book will be forwarded by mail or express, **all charges prepaid.**

We keep a large stock of Miscellaneous Books relating to Medicine and Allied Sciences, published in this country and abroad. Inquiries in regard to prices, date of edition, etc., will receive prompt attention.

CATALOGUES AND CIRCULARS SENT FREE UPON APPLICATION:

Catalogue No. 1.—A complete list of the titles of all our publications on Medicine, Dentistry, Pharmacy, and Allied Sciences, with Classified Index.

Catalogue No. 3.—Pharmaceutical Books.

Catalogue No. 4.—Books on Chemistry and Chemical Technology.

Catalogue No. 5.—Books for Nurses and Lay Readers.

Catalogue No. 6.—Books on Dentistry and Books used by Dental Students.

Catalogue No. 7.—Books on Hygiene and Sanitary Science; Including Water and Milk Analysis, Microscopy, Physical Education, Hospitals, etc.

Catalogue No. 8.—List of about 300 Standard Books classified by Subjects.

Catalogue No. 9.—Books on Nervous and Mental Diseases.

Catalogue No. 10.—Books on Diseases of the Eye, Refraction, Spectacles, etc.

A General Catalogue.—Containing about 2500 titles of Standard Books on Medicine and Surgery. American and English.

Special Circulars.—Morris' Anatomy; Gould and Pyle's Cyclopaedia; Deaver's Surgical Anatomy; Tyson's Practice; Gould's Medical Dictionaries; Books on the Eye; Books on Diseases of the Nervous System; The ? Quiz-Compend? Series, Visiting Lists, etc. We can also furnish sample pages of most of our publications.

The Medical Book News. A Bi-Monthly Journal Devoted to Medical Literature; 25 cents per annum.

P. Blakiston's Son & Co.'s publications may be had through the booksellers in all the principal cities of the United States and Canada, or any book will be sent, postpaid, upon receipt of the price. Special terms of payment will be allowed to those of approved credit. No discount can be allowed retail purchasers under any circumstances. Money should be remitted by express or post-office money order, registered letter, or bank draft.

CLASSIFIED LIST, WITH PRICES,

OF ALL BOOKS PUBLISHED BY

P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO., PHILADELPHIA.

When the price is not given below, the book is out of print or about to be published.
Cloth binding, unless otherwise specified. For full descriptions see following Catalogue.

ANATOMY.

Ballou. Equine Anat.	\$0.80
Broomell. Anatomy and Histol. of Mouth and Teeth.	4.50
Davison. Mammalian Anatomy. Illus.	—
Deaver. Surgical Anatomy.	24.00
Gordinier. Anatomy of Nervous System. Illustrated.	6.00
Heath. Practical. 9th Ed.	4.25
Holden. Dissector. 2 Vols.	3.00
— Osteology. 8th Ed.	5.25
— Landmarks. 4th Ed.	.75
Hughes. Dissector. Part I.	3.00
— Part II.	3.00
— Part III.	3.00
McMurrich. Embryology.	3.00
Minot. Embryology.	4.50
Marshall's Phys. & Anatomical Diagrams.	\$40.00 and 60.00
Morris. Text-Book Anat. 3d Ed. 846 Ill. Clo., \$6.00; Sh., 7.00	
Potter. Compend of. 6th Ed. 133 Illustrations.	.80
Wilson's Anatomy. 11th Ed.	5.00
Yutzy. Dissector. Paper.	.25

ANESTHETICS.

Buxton. Anesthetics.	1.50
Turnbull. 4th Ed.	2.50

BACTERIOLOGY.

Conn. Agricultural Bacteriology. Illustrated.	2.50
— Bact. in Milk Products.	1.25
Emery. Bacteriology. Diag.	1.50
Hewlett. Manual of. Illus.	4.00
Williams. Student's Manual of. 3d Edition. 90 Illus.	1.75
Smith. Bacteriology.	1.50

BRAIN AND INSANITY.

Blackburn. Autopsies.	1.25
Chase. General Paresis.	1.75
Ireland. Mental Affections of Children.	4.00
Lewis. Mental Diseases.	7.00
Mann's Psychological Med.	3.00
Régis. Mental Medicine.	2.00
Stearns. Mental Dis. Illus.	2.75
Tuke. Dictionary of Psychological Medicine. 2 Vols.	10.00
Wood. Brain and Overwork.	.40

CHEMISTRY.

Technol'g'l Books, Water, Milk, etc.

Allan. Commercial Organic Analysis. Vol. I.	4.50
— Vol. II. Part I.	3.50
— Vol. II. Part II.	3.50
— Vol. II. Part III.	—
— Vol. III. Part I.	4.50
— Vol. III. Part II.	4.50
— Vol. III. Part III.	4.50
— Vol. IV.	4.50

Bailey and Cady. Chem. Analysis.	1.25
Bartley. Medical Chemistry. Clinical Chemistry.	3.00
Bloxam's Text-Book. 9th Ed.	—
Bunge. Physiologic and Pathologic Chemistry.	3.00
Caldwell. Qualitative and Quantitative Analysis.	1.00
Cameron. Soap and Candles.	2.00
Clowes and Coleman. Quantitative Analysis. 5th Ed.	3.50
Coblentz. Volumetric Anal.	1.25
Congdon. Laboratory.	1.00
Gardner. Brewing, etc.	1.50
Gray. Physics. Vol. I.	4.50
Groves and Thorp. Chemical Technology. Vol. I. Fuels.	5.00
— Vol. II. Lighting.	4.00
— Vol. III. Gas Lighting.	3.50
— Vol. IV. Elec. Lighting.	3.50
Hensler. The Terpenes.	—

Holland. Urine, Gastric Contents, Poisons and Milk Analysis. 6th Ed.	\$1.00
Leffmann's Medical Chem.	.80
— Food Analysis.	2.50
— Milk Analysis.	1.25
— Water Analysis.	1.25
— Structural Formulæ.	1.00
Muter. Pract. and Anal.	1.25
Oettel. Electro-Chem.	.75
— Electro-Chem. Exper.	.75
Richter's Inorganic. 5th Ed.	1.75
— Organic. 3d Ed. 2 Vols.	—
— Vol. I. Aliphatic Series.	3.00
— Vol. II. Carbocyclic.	3.00
Rockwood. Chemical Anal.	1.50
Smith. Electro-Chem. Anal.	1.25
Smith and Keller. Experiments. 4th Ed. Illus.	.60
Sutton. Volumetric Anal.	5.00
Symonds. Manual of.	2.00
Traube. Physico-Chem. Meth.	1.50
Thresh. Water Supplies.	2.00
Ulzer and Fraenkel. Technical Chemical Analysis.	1.25
Woody. Essentials of. 4th Ed.	1.50

CHILDREN.

Hatfield. Compend of. 3d Ed.	.80
Power. Surgical Diseases of.	2.50
Smith. Wasting Diseases of.	2.00
Starr. Digestive Organs of.	3.00
— Hygiene of the Nursery.	1.00
Taylor and Wells. Manual.	4.50

CLINICAL CHARTS, ETC.

Griffith's Temp't're Charts. Pads of 50	.50
Keen. Outline Drawings of Human Body. Pads.	.25

COMPENDS.

Ballou. Equine Anat.	.80
Brubaker's Physiol. 11th Ed.	.80
Cushing. Histology.	.80
Gould and Pyle. The Eye.	.80
Hatfield. Children. 3d Ed.	.80
Horwitz. Surgery. 5th Ed.	.80
Hughes. Practice. 2 Pts. Ea.	.80
Kyle. Ear, Nose, Throat.	.80
Landis. Obstetrics. 7th Ed.	.80
Leffmann's Chemistry. 4th Ed.	.80
Potter's Anatomy. 7th Ed.	.80
— Materia Medica. 6th Ed.	.80
Schamberg. Skin Diseases.	.80
Stewart. Pharmacy. 5th Ed.	.80
Thayer. General Pathology.	.80
— Special Pathology.	.80
Warren. Dentistry. 3d Ed.	.80
Wells. Gynecology. 2d Ed.	.80
Any of above, Interleaved.	\$1.00
Self-Examination. Questions on Medical Subjects.	3500 Paper, .10

CONSUMPTION.

Knopf. Pulmon. Tuberculosis.	3.00
Steell. Physical Signs of Pulmonary Disease.	1.25

DENTISTRY.

Barrett. Dental Surg.	1.00
Broomell. Anat. and Hist. of Mouth and Teeth.	4.50
Fillebrown. Op. Dent. Illus.	2.25
Gorgas. Dental Medicine.	4.00
— Questions and Answers.	6.00
Harris. Principles and Prac.	6.00
— Dictionary of. 6th Ed.	5.00
Richardson. Mech. Dent.	5.00
Smith. Dental Metallurgy.	2.00
Taft. Index of Dental Lit.	2.00
Tomes. Dental Surgery.	4.00
— Dental Anatomy.	4.00
Warren's Compend of.	.80
— Dental Prosthesis and Metallurgy. Illus.	1.25

DIAGNOSIS.

Brown. Medical. 4th Ed.	\$2.25
Tyson's Manual. 4th Ed. Illus.	1.50
DICTIONARIES, ETC.	
Gould's Illustrated Dictionary of Medicine, Biology, and Allied Sciences, etc. 5th Edition. Leather. \$10.00; Halt Russia. Thumb Index.	12.00
Gould's Student's Medical Dictionary. 11th Ed. Illus.	3.00
Gould's Pocket Dictionary—30,000 medical words. 4th Edition. Enlarged. Leather.	1.00
Gould and Pyle. Cyclopaedia of Med. and Surg. One Vol. Illus. Leather.	10.00
Gould and Pyle's Pocket Cyclopaedia of Medicine.	1.00
Harris' Dental. Clo. 5.00; Shp. 6.00	
Longley's Pronouncing.	.75
Treves. German-English. E.A.R.	3.25
Burnett. Hearing, etc.	.40
Hovell. Treatise on.	5.50
Kyle. Ear, Nose, Throat.	.80
Pritchard. Diseases of. 3d Ed.	—

ELECTRICITY.

Bigelow. Plain Talks on.	1.00
Hedley. Therapeutic Elec.	2.50
Jacobi. Electrotherapy. 2 Vols.	5.00
Jones. Medical Electricity.	3.00
— EYE.	

Darier. Ocular Therap.	3.00
Donders. Refraction.	1.25
Fick. Diseases of the Eye.	4.50
Gould and Pyle. Compend.	.80
Greeff. Microscopic Exam. of.	1.25
Harlan. Eyesight.	.40
Hartridge. Refraction. 12th Ed.	1.50
— Ophthalmoscope. 4th Ed.	1.50
Hansell and Sweet. Treatise on Diseases of.	—
Hansell and Reber. Muscular Anomalies of the Eye.	1.50
Hansell and Bell. Clinical Ophthalmology. 120 Illus.	1.50
Henderson. Notes on Eye. Illustrated.	1.50
Jennings. Ophthalmoscopy.	1.50
Morton. Refraction. 6th Ed.	1.00
Ohlmann. Ocular Therap.	1.75
Parsons. Optics.	2.00
Phillips. Spectacles and Eye-glasses. 49 Illus. 3d Ed.	1.00
Swanzy's Handbook. 8th Ed.	2.50
Thorington. Retinoscopy. Refraction. 200 Illus.	1.50
Walker. Student's Aid.	1.50
Worth. Squint.	2.00
Wright. Ophthalmology.	3.00

GYNECOLOGY.

Bishop. Uterine Fibromyomata. Illustrated.	3.50
Byford (H. T.). Manual. 3d Edition. 363 Illustrations.	3.00
Dührssen. Gynecological Practice. 105 Illustrations.	1.50
Lewers. Dis. of Women. Cancer of Uterus.	2.50
Montgomery. Text-book of. 570 Illus.	5.00
Roberts. Gynecological Pathology. Illustrated.	6.00
Wells. Compend. Illus.	.80
HEALTH AND DOMESTIC MEDICINE.	
Bulkeley. The Skin.	.40
Burnett. Hearing.	.40
Cohen. Throat and Voice.	.40
Dulles. Emergencies. 5th Ed.	1.00
Harlan. Eyesight.	.40
Hartshorne. Our Homes.	.40
Osgood. Dangers of Winter.	.40
Packard. Sea Air, etc.	.40
Richardson's Long Life.	.40
White. Mouth and Teeth.	.40

HISTOLOGY.

Cushing. Compend. - \$0.80
 Stirling. Histology. 2d Ed. 2.00
 Stöhr's Histology. Illus. - 3.00

HYGIENE.

Canfield. Hygiene of the Sick-Room. - 1.25
 Coplin. Practical Hygiene. - —
 Kenwood. Public Health Laboratory Guide. - 2.00
 Lincoln. School Hygiene. .40
 McFarland. Prophylaxis. 2.50
 Notter. Practical Hygiene. 7.00
 Parkes' (L. C.), Manual. 3.00
 Rosenau. Disinfection and Disinfectants. Illus. - 2.00
 Starr. Hygiene of the Nursery. 1.00
 Stevenson and Murphy. A Treatise on Hygiene. In 3 Vols. Circular Vol. I. 6.00
 upon application. Vol. II. 6.00
 Vol. III. 5.00
 Thresh. Water Supplies. 2.00
 Wilson's Handbook. 8th Ed. 3.00
 Weyl. Coal-Tar Colors. 1.25

MASSAGE, ETC.

Mitchell and Gulick. Mechanotherapy. Illustrated. 2.50
 Ostrom. Massage. 115 Illus. 1.00

MATERIA MEDICA.

Bracken. Materia Med. 2.75
 Coblenz. Newer Remedies. 1.00
 Gorgas. Dental. 5th Ed. 4.00
 Groff. Mat. Med. for Nurses. 1.25
 Heller. Essentials of. 1.50
 Potter's Compend of 6th Ed. .80
 Potter's Handbook of. 9th Ed. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep. 6.00
 Sayre. Organic Materia Med. and Pharmacognosy. - 4.50
 Tavera. Medicinal Plants of the Philippines. - 2.00
 White and Wilcox. Mat. Med., Pharmacy, Pharmacology, and Therapeutics. 5th Ed. Enlarged. Cl., \$3.00; Sh. 3.50

MEDICAL JURISPRUDENCE.
 Mann. Forensic Med. - 6.50
 Reese. Med. Jurisprudence and Toxicology. 6th Ed. \$3.00; Sh. 3.50

MICROSCOPE.

Carpenter. The Microscope. 8th Ed. 850 Illus. - 8.00
 Greenish. Microscopical Exam. of Foods and Drugs. - 3.50
 Lee. Vade Mecum of. 5th Ed. 4.00
 Oertel. Med. Microscopy. 2.00
 Reeves. Med. Microscopy. 2.50
 Wethered. Medical Microscopy. Illus. - 2.00

MISCELLANEOUS.

Burnet. Food and Dietaries. 1.50
 Cohen. Organotherapy. 2.50
 Da Costa. Hematology. - 5.00
 Davis. Alimentotherapy. 2.50
 Fenwick. Cancer of Stom. 3.00
 Goodall and Washbourn. Infectious Diseases. Illus. 3.00
 Gould. Borderland Studies. 2.00
 — Biographic Clinics. 1.00
 Greene. Medical Examination in Life Insurance. Illus. - 4.00
 Haig. Uric Acid. 6th Ed. 3.50
 — Diet and Food. 4th Ed. 1.00
 Hare. Mediastinal Disease. 2.00
 Hemmeter. Diseases of Stomach. 2d Edition. Illus. - 6.00
 — Diseases of Intestines. Illustrated. 2 Vols. - 10.00
 Henry. Anæmia. - .50
 McCook. Amer. Spiders. 40.00
 Medical Book News. Per annum. - .25
 New Sydenham Society's Publications, each year. - 8.00
 Scheube. Diseases of Warm Countries. Illustrated. - 8.00
 Thorne. Schott Methods in Heart Disease. - 2.00
 Tissier. Pneumatotherapy. 2.50
 Treves. Physical Education. .75
 Warden. Medical School of Paris. - Paper. .75
 Weber and Hinsdale. Climate. 2 Vols. Illustrated. 5.00
 Winternitz. Hydrotherapy. 2.50

NERVOUS DISEASES, ETC.

Dercum. Rest, Mental Therapeutics, Suggestion. - \$2 50
 Frenkel. Tabetic Ataxia. 3.00
 Gordinier. Anatomy of Central Nervous System. - 6.00
 Gowers. Manual of. 530 Illus. Vol. I, \$4.00; Vol. II, 4.00
 — Syphilis and the Nervous System. - 1.00
 — Epilepsy. New Ed. 3.00
 Ormerod. Manual of. - 1.00
 Pershing. Diagnosis of Nerv. and Mental Diseases. - 1.25
 Preston. Hysteria. Illus. 2.00

NURSING.

Canfield. Hygiene of the Sick-Room. - 1.25
 Cuff. Lectures on. 4th Ed. 1.25
 Davis. Bandaging. Illus. 1.50
 Domville's Manual. 8th Ed. .75
 Fullerton. Obst. Nursing. 1.00
 — Surgical Nursing. 1.00
 Gould. Pocket Medical Dictionary. Limp Morocco. 1.00
 Groff. Mat. Med. for Nurses. 1.25
 Hadley. Manual of. 1.25
 Humphrey. Manual. 23d Ed. 1.00
 Starr. Hygiene of the Nursery. 1.00
 Temperature Charts. Pads. 50
 Voswinkel. Surg. Nursing. 1.00
 Wilcox. Fever Nursing. —

OBSTETRICS.

Cazeaux and Tarnier. Text-Book of. Colored Plates. 4.50
 Edgar. Text-book of. 1221 Illustrations. - 6.00
 Landis. Compend. 6th Ed. .80
 Winckel's Text-book. 5.00

PATHOLOGY.

Barlow. Pathological Anat. 6.50
 Blackburn. Autopsies. 1.25
 Coplin. Manual of. 3d Ed. 3.50
 Da Costa. The Blood. 5.00
 MacLeod. Pathology of Skin. 6.00
 Martin. Pathology. —
 Roberts. Gynecological Pathology. Illustrated. 6.00
 Thayer. General Pathology .80
 — Special Pathology. .80
 — Manual of. - —
 Virchow. Post-mortems. .75
 Whitacre. Lab. Text-book. 1.50

PHARMACY.

Beasley's Receipt-Book. - 2.00
 — Formulary. - 2.00
 Coblenz. Manual of Pharm. 3.50
 Robinson. Latin Grammar of. 1.50
 Sayre. Organic Materia Med. and Pharmacognosy. 2d Ed. 4.50
 Scoville. Compounding. 2.50
 Stewart's Compend. 5th Ed. .80
 U. S. Pharmacopœia. 7th Revision. 1890 Cl. \$2.50; Sh., 3.00
 — Postage extra. .25
 Select Tables from U. S. F. .17
 Tavera. Medicinal Plants of the Philippines. - 2.00

PHYSIOLOGY.

Birch. Practical Physiology. 1.75
 Brubaker's Compend. 11th Ed. .80
 — Text-book. Illus. - —
 Jones. Outlines of. - 1.50
 Kirkes' New 17th Ed. (Halliburton.) Cloth, \$3.00; Sh., 3.75
 Landois' Text-book. Illus. —
 Starling. Elements of. - 1.00
 Stirling. Practical Phys. 2.00
 Tyson's Cell Doctrine. - 1.50

POISONS.

Reese. Toxicology. 4th Ed. 3.00
 Tanner. Memoranda of. .75

PRACTICE.

Beale. Slight Ailments. 1.25
 Fagge. Practice. Vol. I. 6.00
 — Vol. II. 6.00
 Fowler's Dictionary of. 3.00
 Gould and Pyle. Cyclopaedia of Medicine. Illustrated. 10.00
 Hughes. Compend. 2 Pts. ea. .80
 — Physician's Edition. —
 — Vol. Morocco. Gilt edge. 2.25
 Taylor's Manual of. 6th Ed. 4.00
 Tyson. The Practice of Medicine. Illus. Cl. \$5.50; Sheep 6.50

SKIN.

Bulkley. The Skin. - \$0.40
 Crocker. Dis. of Skin. Illus. 5.00
 MacLeod. Pathology of Skin. 6.00
 Schamberg. Compend. .80
 Van Harlingen. Diagnosis and Treatment of Skin Dis. 3d Ed. 60 Illus. - 2.75

SURGERY AND SURGICAL DISEASES.

Berry. Thyroid Gland. - 4.00
 Butlin. Surgery of Malignant Disease. - 4.50
 Davis. Bandaging. Illus. 1.50
 Deaver. Appendicitis. - —
 — Surgical Anatomy. - 24.00
 Douglas. Surgical Diseases of Abdomen. Illus. - 7.00
 Dulles. Emergencies. - 1.00
 Hamilton. Tumors. 3d Ed. 1.25
 Heath's Minor. 12th Ed. 1.50
 — Clinical Lectures. - 2.00
 Horwitz. Compend. 5th Ed. .80
 Jacobson. Operations of. - 10.00
 Keay. Gall-Stone Disease. 1.25
 Kehr. Gall Stone Disease. 2.50
 Makins. Surgical Experiences in South Africa. - 4.00
 Maylard. Surgery of the Alimentary Canal. - 3.00
 Morris. Renal Surgery. 2.00
 Moullin. Complete Text-book. 3d Ed. by Hamilton. 600 Illustrations. - 6.00
 Smith. Abdominal Surg. 10.00
 Voswinkel. Surg. Nursing. 1.00
 Walsham. Surgery. 7th Ed. 3.50

THERAPEUTICS.

Beasley's 3000 Prescriptions. 2.00
 Coblenz. New Remedies. 1.00
 Cohen. Physiologic Therapeutics. 11 Volumes. 27.50
 Hewlett. Serumtherapy. —
 Mays. Theine. .50
 Murray. Notes on Remedies. 1.25
 Potter's Compend. 6th Ed. .80
 — Handbook of Mat. Med. Phar. and Ther. 9th Ed. 5.00
 White and Wilcox. Mat. Med., Pharmacy, Pharmacology, and Therap. 5th Ed. 3.00

THROAT AND NOSE.

Cohen. Throat and Voice. .40
 Hall. Nose and Throat. - 2.75
 Holloper. Hay Fever. 1.00
 Knight. Throat. Illus. —
 Kyle. Ear, Nose, Throat. .80
 McBride. Clinical Manual. Colored Plates. 3d Ed. - 7.00
 Potter. Stammering, etc. 1.00

URINE & URINARY ORGANS.

Acton. Repro. Organs. - 1.75
 Caspar and Richter. Functional Kidney Disease. - 1.50
 Holland. The Urine, Milk and Common Poisons. 6th Ed. 1.00
 Kleen. Diabetes. - 2.50
 Memminger. Diagnosis by the Urine. 2d Ed. Illus. 1.00
 Morris. Renal Surgery. 2.00
 Moullin. The Prostate. - 1.75
 — The Bladder. - 1.50
 Scott. Clinical and Micros. Examination of Urine. - 5.00
 Tyson. Exam. of Urine. 1.50
 Van Nüys. Urine Analysis. 1.00

VENEREAL DISEASES.

Gowers. Syphilis and the Nervous System. - 1.00
 Sturgis. Manual of. 7th Ed. 1.25

VISITING LISTS.

Lindsay and Blakiston's Regular Edition. \$1.00 to 2.25
 — Perpetual Ed. \$1.25 to 1.50
 — Monthly Ed. .75 to 1.00

THIRD REVISED EDITION.

TYSON'S PRACTICE

A TEXT-BOOK FOR PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS

WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT

By JAMES TYSON, M.D.

Professor of Medicine in the University of Pennsylvania; Physician to the University and Philadelphia Hospitals, etc.

COLORED PLATES AND 124 OTHER ILLUSTRATIONS

Octavo. 1222 Pages. Cloth, \$5.50; Leather, \$6.50; Half Russia, \$7.50

The object of this book is—first, to aid the student and physician to recognize disease, and, second, to point out the proper methods of treatment. To this end **Diagnosis and Treatment receive special attention**, while pathology and morbid anatomy have such consideration as is demanded by their importance as fundamental conditions of a thorough understanding of disease. Dr. Tyson's qualifications for writing such a work are unequaled. **It is really the outcome of over thirty years' experience in teaching and in private and hospital practice.** As a teacher he has, while devoting himself chiefly to clinical medicine, occupied several important chairs, notably those of General Pathology and Morbid Anatomy, and Clinical Medicine in the University of Pennsylvania, an experience that has necessarily widened his point of view and added weight to his judgment. **This, the Third, Edition has been most thoroughly revised**, parts have been rewritten, new material and illustrations have been added, and in many respects it may be considered a new book.

"It is in the writing and preparation of a work of this character that Dr. Tyson stands pre-eminent. Those of the profession—and there are many at this time—who have been fortunate to have been his pupils during their medical student days, will remember that he brought to his lectures and to his writings an amount of industry and care which many other teachers failed to bring; and those who know him best as an author and teacher have expected that his book on the Practice of Medicine, when it appeared, would be a credit to himself, and would increase his reputation as a medical author. This belief has proved correct."—*Therapeutic Gazette, Detroit, Mich.*

"After a third of a century spent in the assiduous study, practice, and teaching of medicine, and the publication of successful books on various topics, theoretical and practical, the writing of a text-book is not only a proper ambition, but is really expected by students and the profession. So Professor Tyson best shows his modesty by making no apology for the present work."—*American Journal of Medical Sciences, Philadelphia.*

All prices are net. No discount can be allowed retail purchasers.

P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.'S

Medical and Scientific Publications.

Acton. The Functions and Disorders of the Reproductive Organs in Childhood, Youth, Adult Age, and Advanced Life, considered in their Physiological, Social, and Moral Relations. By WM. ACTON, M.D., M.R.C.S. 8th Edition. Cloth, \$1.75

Allen. Commercial Organic Analysis.

New Revised Editions. A Treatise on the Properties, Proximate Analytical Examination and Modes of Assaying the Various Organic Chemicals and Products employed in the Arts, Manufactures, Medicine, etc., with Concise Methods for the Detection and Determination of Impurities, Adulterations, and Products of Decomposition, etc. Revised and Enlarged. By ALFRED H. ALLEN, F.C.S., Public Analyst for the West Riding of Yorkshire; Past President Society of Public Analysts of Great Britain.

VOL. I. Preliminary Examination of Organic Bodies. Alcohols, Neutral Alcoholic Derivatives, Ethers, Starch and its Isomers, Sugars, Acid Derivatives of Alcohols and Vegetable Acids, etc. Third Edition, with numerous additions by the author, and revisions and additions by DR. HENRY LEFFMANN, Professor of Chemistry and Metallurgy in the Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery, and in the Wagner Free Institute of Science, Philadelphia, etc. With many useful tables. Cloth, \$4.50

VOL. II—PART I. Fixed Oils, Fats, Waxes, Glycerin, Soaps, Nitroglycerin, Dynamite and Smokeless Powders, Wool-Fats, Dégras, etc. Third Edition, with many useful tables. Revised by DR. HENRY LEFFMANN, with numerous additions by the author. Cloth, \$3.50

VOL. II—PART II. Hydrocarbons, Mineral Oils, Lubricants, Asphalt, Benzene and Naphthalene, Phenols, Creosote, etc. Third Edition, Revised by DR. HENRY LEFFMANN, with additions by the author. Cloth, \$3.50

VOL. II—PART III. Terpenes, Essential Oils, Resins, Camphors, Aromatic Acids, etc. Third Edition. *Nearly Ready.*

VOL. III—PART I. Tannins, Dyes, Coloring Matters, and Writing Inks. Third Edition, Revised, Rewritten, and Enlarged by I. MERRITT MATTHEWS, Professor of Chemistry and Dyeing at the Philadelphia Textile School; Member American Chemical Society. Cloth, \$4.50

VOL. III—PART II. The Amines and Ammonium Bases, Hydrazines and Derivatives. Bases from Tar. The Antipyretics, etc. Vegetable Alkaloids, Tea, Coffee, Cocoa, Kola, Cocaïne, Opium, etc. Second Edition. 8vo. Cloth, \$4.50

VOL. III—PART III. Vegetable Alkaloids concluded, Non-Basic Vegetable Bitter Principles. Animal Bases, Animal Acids, Cyanogen and its Derivatives, etc. Second Edition. Cloth, \$4.50

VOL. IV. Proteids and Albuminous Principles. Proteoids or Albuminoids. Second Edition, with elaborate appendices and a large number of useful tables. Cloth, \$4.50

Bailey and Cady. Chemical Analysis.

Laboratory Guide to the Study of Qualitative Analysis. By E. H. S. BAILEY, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry, and HAMILTON CADY, A.B., Assistant Professor of Chemistry in the University of Kansas. Fourth Edition. Cloth, \$1.25

Ballou. Equine Anatomy and Physiology.

By WM. R. BALLOU, M.D., late Professor of Equine Anatomy, New York College of Veterinary Surgeons. With 29 Graphic Illustrations. 12mo. *No. 12 ? Quiz-Compend? Series.* Cloth, .80 ; Interleaved for the Addition of Notes, \$1.00

Barrett. Dental Surgery

for General Practitioners and Students of Medicine and Dentistry. Extraction of Teeth, etc. By A. W. BARRETT, M.D. Third Ed. 86 Illus. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Bartley. Medical and Pharmaceutical Chemistry.

A Text-Book for Medical and Pharmaceutical Students. By E. H. BARTLEY, M.D., Professor of Chemistry and Toxicology at the Long Island College Hospital ; Dean and Professor of Chemistry, Brooklyn College of Pharmacy ; Chief Chemist, Board of Health of Brooklyn, N. Y. Fifth Edition, Revised and Improved. With Illustrations, Glossary, and Complete Index. 12mo. Cloth, \$3.00 ; Leather, \$3.50

"The subject-matter is excellent. The descriptions are detailed and very complete. All of these properties make the book an excellent one for a book of reference. Indeed, if the book be considered in the light of this purpose, it is hard to find anything in it for adverse criticism."—*Boston Medical and Surgical Journal.*

Clinical Chemistry.

The Chemical Examination of the Saliva, Gastric Juice, Feces, Milk, Urine, etc., with Notes on Urinary Diagnosis, Volumetric Analysis, and Weights and Measures. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Beale. On Slight Ailments.

Their Nature and Treatment. By LIONEL S. BEALE, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Practice, King's Medical College, London. Second Edition. 8vo. Cloth, \$1.25

Beasley's Book of Prescriptions.

Containing over 3100 Prescriptions, collected from the Practice of the most Eminent Physicians and Surgeons—English, French, and American ; a Compendious History of the Materia Medica, Lists of the Doses of all Official and Established Preparations, and an Index of Diseases and their Remedies. By HENRY BEASLEY. Seventh Edition. Cloth, \$2.00

Druggists' General Receipt Book.

Comprising a copious Veterinary Formulary ; Recipes in Patent and Proprietary Medicines, Druggists' Nostrums, etc. ; Perfumery and Cosmetics ; Beverages, Dietetic Articles, and Condiments ; Trade Chemicals, Scientific Processes, and an Appendix of Useful Tables. Tenth Edition. Cloth, \$2.00

Pharmaceutical Formulary

and Synopsis of the British, French, German, and United States Pharmacopœias. Comprising Standard and Approved Formulæ for the Preparations and Compounds Employed in Medical Practice. Twelfth Edition. Cloth, \$2.00

Berry. The Thyroid Gland.

The Diseases of the Thyroid Gland and Their Surgical Treatment. By JAMES BERRY, M.B., B.S., F.R.C.S., Surgeon to the Royal Free Hospital. 121 Illustrations, from Original Photographs of Cases. Cloth, \$4.00

Bigelow. Plain Talks on Medical Electricity and Batteries.

With a Therapeutic Index and a Glossary. By HORATIO R. BIGELOW, M.D. With 43 Illustrations and a Glossary. Second Edition. Cloth, \$1.00

Birch. Practical Physiology.

An Elementary Class-Book. Including Histology, Chemical and Experimental Physiology. By DE BURGH BIRCH, M.D., C.M., F.R.S.E., Professor of Physiology in the Yorkshire College of the Victoria University, etc. 62 Illus. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.75

Bishop. Uterine Fibromyomata.

Their Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment. By E. STANMORE BISHOP, F.R.C.S. (Eng.), President Manchester Clinical Society; Fellow British Gynecological Society. Full-page Plates and other Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.50

Blackburn. Autopsies. Illustrated.

A Manual of Autopsies, Designed for the Use of Hospitals for the Insane and other Public Institutions. By I. W. BLACKBURN, M.D., Pathologist to the Government Hospital for the Insane. Illustrated. Cloth, \$1.25

Bloxam. Chemistry (Inorganic and Organic).

With Experiments. By CHARLES L. BLOXAM. Late Professor of Chemistry, King's College, London, and in the Department of Artillery Studies, Woolwich, England. Edited by J. M. THOMPSON, Professor of Chemistry in King's College, London, and A. G. BLOXAM, Head of the Chemistry Department, Goldsmith's Institute, London. Ninth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 281 Engravings. 8vo. *Preparing.*

Bracken. Outlines of Materia Medica and Pharmacology.

By H. M. BRACKEN, Professor of Materia Medica and Therapeutics and of Clinical Medicine, University of Minnesota. 8vo. Cloth, \$2.75

Broomell. Anatomy and Histology of the Mouth and Teeth.

By DR. I. N. BROOMELL, Professor of Dental Anatomy, Dental Histology, and Prosthetic Technics in the Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged by 72 pages. 337 handsome Illustrations, the majority of which are original. Large Octavo. Cloth, \$4.50; Leather, \$5.50

Brown. Medical Diagnosis. Fourth Edition.

A Manual of Clinical Methods. By J. J. GRAHAM BROWN, M.D., F.R.C.P., Lecturer on Principles and Practice of Medicine in the School of Medicine of the Royal Colleges, Edinburgh. Fourth Edition. 112 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.25

Brubaker. A Text-Book of Physiology. Illustrated.

A Text-Book of Physiology, specially adapted for the use of Students. By A. P. BRUBAKER, M.D., Adjunct Professor of Physiology at Jefferson Medical College; Professor of Physiology, Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery, Philadelphia. With many Illustrations. Octavo. *Nearly Ready.*

Compend of Physiology. Eleventh Edition.

A Compend of Physiology, specially adapted for the use of Students and Physicians. Eleventh Edition, Revised, Enlarged, and Illustrated. *No. 4 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.* 12mo. Cloth, .80; Interleaved, \$1.00

Bulkley. The Skin in Health and Disease.

By L. DUNCAN BULKLEY, M.D. Illustrated. Cloth. .40

Bunge. Physiologic and Pathologic Chemistry.

By DR. C. BUNGE, Professor at Basel. Authorized Translation from the Fourth German Edition. Edited by E. A. STARLING, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology in University College, London. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.00

Burnet. Foods and Dietaries.

A Manual of Clinical Dietetics. By R. W. BURNET, M.D., M.R.C.P., Physician to the Great Northern Central Hospital. With Appendix on Predigested Foods and Invalid Cookery. Full Directions as to Hours of Taking Nourishment, Quantity, etc. Third Edition. Cloth, \$1.50

Burnett. Hearing and How to Keep It.

By CHAS. H. BURNETT, M.D., Professor of Diseases of the Ear at the Philadelphia Polyclinic. Illustrated. Cloth, .40

Butlin. The Operative Surgery of Malignant Disease.

By HENRY T. BUTLIN, F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon to, and Demonstrator of Surgery at, St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, etc., assisted by JAMES BERRY, F.R.C.S., WM. BRUCE-CLARKE, M.B., F.R.C.S., A. H. G. DORAN, F.R.C.S., PERCY FURNIVALL, F.R.C.S., W. H. H. JESSOP, M.B., F.R.C.S., and H. J. WARING, B.Sc., F.R.C.S. Second Edition, Revised and Rewritten. Illustrated. Octavo. Cloth, \$4.50

Buxton. On Anesthetics.

A Manual. By DUDLEY WILMOT BUXTON, M.R.C.S., M.R.C.P., Assistant to Professor of Medicine and Administrator of Anesthetics, University College Hospital, London. Third Edition, Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Byford. Manual of Gynecology. 363 Illustrations.

By HENRY T. BYFORD, M.D., Professor of Gynecology and Clinical Gynecology in the College of Physicians and Surgeons of Chicago, and in Post-Graduate Medical School, etc. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 363 Illustrations, many of which are from original drawings and several of which are Colored. 12mo. Cloth, \$3.00; Sheep, \$3.50

Caldwell. Chemical Analysis.

Elements of Qualitative and Quantitative Chemical Analysis. By G. C. CALDWELL, B.S., Ph.D., Professor of Agricultural and Analytical Chemistry in Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, etc. Third Edition. Octavo. Cloth, \$1.00

Cameron. Soap and Candles.

A Handbook for Manufacturers, Chemists, etc. By JAMES CAMERON, F.I.C. 54 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.00

Canfield. Hygiene of the Sick-Room.

Being a Brief Consideration of Asepsis, Antisepsis, Disinfection, Bacteriology, Immunity, Heating and Ventilation, and kindred subjects, for the Use of Nurses and other Intelligent Women. By WILLIAM BUCKINGHAM CANFIELD, A.M., M.D., late Lecturer on Clinical Medicine, University of Maryland. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25

Carpenter. The Microscope and Its Revelations.

By W. B. CARPENTER, M.D., F.R.S. Eighth Edition, by REV. DR. DALLINGER, F.R.S. Rewritten, Revised, and Enlarged. 817 Illustrations and 23 Plates. Octavo. 1136 pages. Cloth, \$8.00; Half Morocco, \$9.00

Caspar and Richter. Functional Diagnosis of Kidney Disease.

With special reference to Renal Surgery. Clinical Experimental Investigations. By DR. LEOPOLD CASPAR, Privatdocent an der Universität in Berlin, and DR. PAUL FRIEDERICH RICHTER, Assistent der III Med. Klinik, Berlin. Translated by permission by DR. ROBERT C. BRYAN, of Washington, D. C., and DR. HENRY L. SANFORD, Surgical Resident, Lakeside Hospital, Cleveland, O. 12mo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$1.50

Chase. General Paresis, Practical and Clinical.

By ROBERT H. CHASE, M.D., Physician-in-chief Friends' Asylum for the Insane, Frankford, Philadelphia; late Resident Physician State Hospital for Insane, Norristown, Pennsylvania, etc. Illustrated. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$1.75

Cazeaux and Tarnier's Midwifery. With Appendix, by Mundé.

The Theory and Practice of Obstetrics, including the Diseases of Pregnancy and Parturition, Obstetrical Operations, etc. By P. CAZEAUX. Remodeled, rearranged, and revised by S. TARNIER, M.D. Eighth American from the Eighth French and First Italian Edition. Edited by ROBERT J. HESS, M.D. With an Appendix by PAUL F. MUNDÉ, M.D. Illustrated by Lithographs, Full-page Plates, and numerous Engravings. 8vo.

Cloth, \$4.50 ; Full Leather, \$5.50

Clowes and Coleman. Quantitative Analysis.

Adapted for the Use of the Laboratories of Schools and Colleges. By FRANK CLOWES, Sc.D., Emeritus Professor of Chemistry, University College, Nottingham, and I. BERNARD COLEMAN, Assoc. R. C. Sci., Dublin, Professor of Chemistry, Southwest London Polytechnic. Fifth Edition. 122 Illustrations.

Cloth, \$3.50

Coblentz. Manual of Pharmacy.

A Text-Book for Students. By VIRGIL COBLENTZ, A.M., PH.D., F.C.S., Professor of Chemistry and Physics ; Director of Pharmaceutical Laboratory, College of Pharmacy of the City of New York. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 437 Illustrations. Octavo. 572 pages.

Cloth, \$3.50 ; Sheep, \$4.50

The Newer Remedies.

Including their Synonyms, Sources, Methods of Preparation, Tests, Solubilities, and Doses as far as known. Together with Sections on Organo-Therapeutic Agents and Indifferent Compounds of Iron. Third Edition, very much enlarged. Octavo.

Cloth, \$1.00

Volumetric Analysis.

A Practical Handbook for Students of Chemistry. Including Indicators, Test-Papers, Alkalimetry, Acidimetry, Analysis by Oxidation and Reduction, Iodometry, Assay Processes for Drugs with the Titrimetric Estimation of Alkaloids, Estimation of Phenol, Sugar, Tables of Atomic and Molecular Weights. Illustrated. 8vo.

Cloth, \$1.25

Cohen. System of Physiologic Therapeutics. Illustrated.

A Practical Exposition of the Methods Other than Drug-giving, Useful in the Treatment of the Sick and in the Prevention of Disease. Edited by SOLOMON SOLIS COHEN, A.M., M.D., Senior Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine at Jefferson Medical College ; formerly Professor of Medicine and Therapeutics in the Philadelphia Polyclinic ; Physician to the Philadelphia and Jewish Hospitals and to the Rush Hospital for Consumption ; formerly Lecturer on Therapeutics, Dartmouth Medical College. To be issued in Eleven Compact Octavo Volumes.

By Subscription only. Complete Set, Cloth, \$27.50 ; Half Morocco, \$38.50

Electrotherapy. 220 Illustrations. Two Volumes. *Ready.*

By GEORGE W. JACOBY, M.D., New York, Consulting Neurologist to the German Hospital, to the Infirmary for Women and Children, to the Craig Colony for Epileptics, etc. Special articles by EDWARD JACKSON, A.M., M.D., Denver, Col. ; Emeritus Professor of Diseases of the Eye in the Philadelphia Polyclinic ; Member American Ophthalmological Society ; Fellow and ex-President American Academy of Medicine, etc.—By WILLIAM SCHEPPEGRELL, M.D., New Orleans, ex-Vice-President American Laryngological, Rhinological, and Otological Society.—By J. CHALMERS DA COSTA, M.D., Clinical Professor of Surgery in Jefferson Medical College ; Surgeon to the Philadelphia and to St. Joseph's Hospitals, etc.—By FRANKLIN H. MARTIN, M.D., Professor of Gynecology, Post-Graduate Medical School of Chicago ; Gynecologist Chicago Charity Hospital ; Chairman Section of Obstetrics and Diseases of Women of the American Medical Association (1895), etc.—By A. H. OHMANN-DUMESNIL, M.D., Editor *St. Louis Medical and Surgical Journal* ; Member International Dermatological Congress ; formerly Professor of Dermatology, St. Louis Medical College, etc.

Cohen. Physiologic Therapeutics.—Continued.

Climatology and Health Resorts, Including Mineral Springs.
Two Volumes, with Colored Maps. *Ready.*

By F. PARKES WEBER, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P. (Lond.), Physician to the German Hospital, Dalston; Assistant Physician North London Hospital for Consumption; Author of "The Mineral Waters and Health Resorts of Europe;" and GUY HINSDALE, A.M., M.D., Secretary of the American Climatological Association; President of the Pennsylvania Society for the Prevention of Tuberculosis, etc. Including an article on Hawaii by TITUS MUNSON COAN, M.D., of New York. With Colored Maps, prepared by DR. W. F. R. PHILLIPS, of the U. S. Weather Bureau, Washington, D. C.

Prophylaxis—Personal Hygiene—Civic Hygiene—Care of the Sick. Illustrated. *Ready.*

By DR. JOSEPH MCFARLAND, Professor of Pathology, Medico-Chirurgical College, Philadelphia; DR. HENRY LEFFMANN, Professor of Chemistry in the Woman's Medical College, Philadelphia; ALBERT ABRAMS, A.M., M.D. (University of Heidelberg), formerly Professor of Pathology, Cooper Medical College, San Francisco; and DR. W. WAYNE BABCOCK, Lecturer on Pathology and Bacteriology, Medico-Chirurgical College, Philadelphia.

Dietotherapy: Food in Health and Disease. *Ready.*

By NATHAN S. DAVIS, JR., A.M., M.D., Professor of Principles and Practice of Medicine in Northwestern University Medical School; Physician to Mercy Hospital, Chicago; Member American Academy of Medicine, American Climatological Society, etc. With Tables of Dietaries, Relative Value of Foods, etc.

Mechanotherapy, Including Massage, Exercise, Orthopedics, and Ocular Corrections. Illustrated. *Nearly Ready.*

By JOHN KEARSLEY MITCHELL, M.D., Assistant Physician to the Orthopedic Hospital and Infirmary for Nervous Diseases; Assistant Neurologist Presbyterian Hospital, Philadelphia, etc.; formerly Lecturer on Symptomology at the University of Pennsylvania; and LUTHER GULICK, M.D., of Brooklyn, N. Y., formerly of Springfield, Mass., Mem. American Association for Advancement of Physical Education, Amer. Medical Association, etc. With a Chapter on Orthopedic Appliances by JAMES K. YOUNG, M.D., Professor of Orthopedic Surgery, Philadelphia Polyclinic; Instructor in Orthopedic Surgery, University of Pennsylvania; and an Article on Ocular Correction by Glasses and Exercises by WALTER L. PYLE, M.D.

Rest—Mental Therapeutics—Suggestion. *Ready.*

By FRANCIS X. DERCUM, M. D., Clinical Professor of Nervous Diseases in Jefferson Medical College; Neurologist to the Philadelphia Hospital; Consulting Neurologist to St. Agnes' Hospital; Neurologist to the Jewish Hospital of Philadelphia.

Hydrotherapy — Thermotherapy — Heliotherapy — Crounotherapy—Phototherapy—Balneology. *Ready.*

By DR. WILHELM WINTERNITZ, Professor of Clinical Medicine in the University of Vienna; Director of the General Polyclinic in Vienna, etc.; assisted by DR. ALOIS STRASSER, Instructor in Clinical Medicine, University of Vienna; and DR. B. BUXBAUM, Chief Physician of the Hydrotherapeutic Institute of Vienna; and DR. E. HEINRICH KISCH, Professor in the University of Prague; Physician at Marienbad Spa. With Special Chapters by DR. A. C. PEALE, of the National Museum, Washington, D. C., DR. J. H. KELLOGG, Battle Creek, Mich., and HARVEY CUSHING, M.D., Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore, and an Appendix by DR. COHEN.

Cohen. Physiologic Therapeutics.—Continued.

Pneumotherapy, Including Aërotherapy and Inhalation Methods, and Therapy. Illustrated. *Ready.*

By DR. PAUL TISSIER, Chief of Clinic of the Faculty of Medicine of the University of Paris ; Physician to Laennec and Lauboisier Hospitals, etc.

Serotherapy—Organotherapy—Blood-Letting, etc.—Principles of Therapeutics—Digest—Therapeutic Index to all Volumes.

By JOSEPH MCFARLAND, M.D., Professor of Pathology in the Medico-Chirurgical College, Philadelphia ; Pathologist to the Medico Chirurgical Hospital, etc.—O. T. OSBORNE, M.D., Professor of Materia Medica and Therapeutics, Medical Department, Yale University, New Haven.—FREDERICK A. PACKARD, M.D., Visiting Physician to the Pennsylvania and to the Children's Hospitals.—The Editor, and AUGUSTUS A. ESHNER, M.D., Professor of Clinical Medicine in the Philadelphia Polyclinic ; Physician to the Philadelphia Hospital, etc.

* * *Complete descriptive circular upon application.*

Cohen. The Throat and Voice.

By J. SOLIS COHEN, M.D. Illustrated. 12mo.

Cloth, .40

Congdon. Laboratory Instructions in General Chemistry.

By ERNEST A. CONGDON, Professor of Chemistry in the Drexel Institute, Philadelphia ; Member American Chemical Society ; Fellow of the London Chemical Society, etc. With an Appendix, useful Tables, and 56 Illustrations. Interleaved, Cloth, \$1.00

Conn. Agricultural Bacteriology.

Including a Study of Bacteria as Relating to Agriculture, with Special Reference to the Bacteria in Soil, in the Dairy, in Food Products, in Domestic Animals, and in Sewage. By H. W. CONN, PH.D., Professor of Biology, Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn. ; Author of "Evolution of To-day," "The Story of Germ Life," etc. With Illustrations. Cloth, \$2.50

Bacteria in Milk and Its Products.

Designed for Students of Dairying, Boards of Health, Bacteriologists, and all concerned in the Handling of Milk, Butter, and Cheese. Illustrated. 12mo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$1.25

Coplin. Manual of Pathology. Third Edition. 330 Illustrations.

Including Bacteriology, the Technic of Post-mortems, and Methods of Pathologic Research. By W. M. LATE COPLIN, M.D., Professor of Pathology and Bacteriology, Jefferson Medical College ; Pathologist to Jefferson Medical College Hospital and to the Philadelphia Hospital ; Bacteriologist to the Pennsylvania State Board of Health. Third Edition, Rewritten and Enlarged. 330 Illustrations, many of which are original, and 7 Colored Plates. 8vo. Cloth, \$3.50

Practical Hygiene.

With Special Articles on Plumbing, Ventilation, etc. 138 Illustrations. 8vo. Second Edition. *In Preparation.*

Crocker. Diseases of the Skin. Third Edition.

Their Description, Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment, with Special Reference to the Skin Eruptions of Children. By H. RADCLIFFE CROCKER, M.D., Physician to the Department of Skin Diseases, University College Hospital, London. Third Edition, Thoroughly Revised, with new Illus. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$5.00 ; Sheep, \$6.00

Cuff. Lectures on Medicine to Nurses.

By HERBERT EDMUND CUFF, M.D., late Assistant Medical Officer, Stockwell Fever Hospital, England. Fourth Edition, Revised. With 29 Illustrations. Cloth, \$1.25

Cushing. Compend of Histology.

Specially adapted for the use of Medical Students and Physicians. By H. H. CUSHING, M.D., Director of Histological and Embryological Laboratories, Woman's Medical College of Pennsylvania; Demonstrator of Histology and Embryology, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. Illustrated. *No. 17 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.* 12mo. *In Press.* Cloth, .80; Interleaved for Notes, \$1.00

Darier. Ocular Therapeutics.

According to the Most Recent Discoveries. By DR. A. DARIER, of Paris. Translated by SYDNEY STEPHENSON, M.B., C.M., Honorary Secretary of the Ophthalmological Society of the United Kingdom; Ophthalmic Surgeon to the Evelina Hospital, etc. 8vo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$3.00

Davis. Dietotherapy. Food in Health and Disease.

See COHEN, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 10.

Davis. The Principles and Practice of Bandaging.

By GWILYM G. DAVIS, M.D., M.R.C.S., Universities of Pennsylvania and Göttingen, Assistant Demonstrator of Surgery, University of Pennsylvania; Surgeon to the Out-Patient Departments of the Episcopal and Children's Hospitals; Assistant Surgeon to the Orthopædic Hospital. Second Edition, Revised and Rewritten. 163 Illustrations, Redrawn specially for this edition. Cloth, \$1.50

Davisson. Mammalian Anatomy.

With Special Reference to the Anatomy of the Cat. By ALVIN DAVISSON, A.M., PH.D., Professor of Biology, Lafayette College, Easton, Pennsylvania. With 110 Illustrations. *In Press.*

Domville. Manual for Nurses

and Others Engaged in Attending to the Sick. By ED. J. DOMVILLE, M.D. Ninth Edition, Revised. With Recipes for Sick-room Cookery, etc. 12mo. *In Press.*

Donders. Refraction. Portrait of Author.

An Essay on the Nature and the Consequences of Anomalies of Refraction. By F. C. DONDERS, M.D. Authorized Translation. Revised and Edited by CHARLES A. OLIVER, A.M., M.D. (Univ. Pa.), one of the Attending Surgeons to the Wills Eye Hospital. With a Portrait of the Author. Octavo. Half Morocco, Gilt, \$1.25

Da Costa. Clinical Hematology. Colored Plates.

A Practical Guide to the Examination of the Blood by Clinical Methods, with Reference to the Diagnosis of Disease. By JOHN C. DA COSTA, JR., M.D., Assistant Demonstrator of Clinical Medicine in the Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia; Assistant in the Medical Clinic, Jefferson Medical College Hospital; Hæmatologist to the German Hospital. With six Colored Plates and 48 other Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

Deaver. Surgical Anatomy. 499 Full-page Plates. Now Ready.

A Treatise on Human Anatomy in its Application to the Practice of Medicine and Surgery. By JOHN B. DEAVER, M.D., Surgeon-in-Chief to the German Hospital; Surgeon to the Children's Hospital and to the Philadelphia Hospital; Consulting Surgeon to St. Agnes', St. Timothy's, and Germantown Hospitals; formerly Assistant Professor of Applied Anatomy, University of Pennsylvania, etc. With 499 very handsome Full-page Illustrations engraved from original drawings made by special artists from dissections prepared for the purpose in the dissecting-rooms of the University of Pennsylvania. Three large volumes. Royal square octavo. Sold by Subscription. Orders taken for complete sets only. Description upon Application. Half Morocco or Sheep, \$24.00; Half Russia, \$27.00

DEAVER'S SURGICAL ANATOMY

THREE VOLUMES—NOW READY

SYNOPSIS OF CONTENTS.

VOLUME I.—Upper Extremity—Back of Neck, Shoulder, and Trunk—Cranium—Scalp—Face.

VOLUME II.—Neck—Mouth, Pharynx, Larynx, Nose—Orbit—Eyeball—Organ of Hearing—Brain—Female Perineum—Male Perineum.

VOLUME III.—Abdominal Wall—Abdominal Cavity—Pelvic Cavity—Chest—Lower Extremity.

The illustrations, which at the first glance appear as the prominent feature of the book—but which in reality do not overshadow the text—consist of a series of pictures absolutely unique and fresh. They will bear comparison from an artistic point of view with any other work, while from a practical point of view there is no other volume or series of volumes to which they can be compared. When originally announced, the book was to contain two hundred illustrations. As the work of preparation progressed, this number gradually increased to nearly five hundred full-page plates, many of which contain more than one figure. With the exception of a few minor pictures made from preparations in the possession of the author, they have all been drawn by special artists from dissections made for the purpose in the dissecting-rooms of the University of Pennsylvania. Their accuracy cannot be questioned, as each drawing has been submitted to the most careful scrutiny.

From *The Medical Record*, New York.

“The reader is not only taken by easy and natural stages from the more superficial to the deeper regions, but the various important regional landmarks are also indicated by schematic tracing upon the limbs. Thus the courses of arteries, veins, and nerves are indicated in a way that makes the lesson strikingly impressive and easily learned. No expense, evidently, has been spared in the preparation of the work, judging from the number of full-page plates it contains, not counting the smaller drawings. Most of these have been ‘drawn by special artists from dissections made for the purpose in the dissecting-rooms of the University of Pennsylvania.’ In summing up the general excellences of this remarkable work, we can accord our unqualified praise for the accurate, exhaustive, and systematic manner in which the author has carried out his plan, and we can commend it as a model of its kind, which must be possessed to be appreciated.”

From *The Philadelphia Medical Journal*.

“Many members of the profession to whom Dr. Deaver is well known either personally or by reputation as a surgeon, writer, teacher, and practical anatomist, have awaited the appearance of his *Surgical Anatomy* with the expectation of finding in it a guide in this difficult branch of medicine of much more than ordinary practical value, and their expectations will not be disappointed.”

From *The Journal of the American Medical Association*.

“In order to show its thoroughness, it is only necessary to mention that no less than twelve full-page plates are reproduced in order to accurately portray the surgical anatomy of the hand, and it is doubtful whether any better description exists in any work in the English language.”

From *The New Orleans Medical and Surgical Journal*.

“While the needs of the undergraduate have been fully kept in view, it has been the aim of the author to provide a work which would be sufficient for reference for use in actual practice. We believe the book fulfils both requirements. The arrangement is systematic and the discussion of surgical relations thorough.”

Large Descriptive Circular will be sent upon application

Deaver. Appendicitis. Third Edition.

Its History, Anatomy, Etiology, Pathology, Symptoms, Diagnosis, Prognosis, Treatment, Complications, and Sequelæ. With 22 Plates, 10 of which are Colored. Third Edition, Revised and Rewritten. *Preparing.*

Dercum. Rest—Mental Therapeutics—Suggestion.

See COHEN, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 10.

Douglas. Surgical Diseases of the Abdomen.

With Special Reference to Diagnosis. By RICHARD DOUGLAS, M.D., late Professor of Gynecology and Abdominal Surgery, Medical Department Vanderbilt University; Ex-President of the Southern Surgical and Gynecological Association, etc. Illustrated by 20 Full-page Plates. Large Octavo. 883 pages. *Just Ready.*

Cloth, \$7.00; Sheep, \$8.00

Dührssen. A Manual of Gynecological Practice.

By DR. A. DÜHRSEN, Privat-Docent in Gynecology in the University of Berlin. Translated from the Fourth German Edition and Edited by JOHN W. TAYLOR, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to the Birmingham and Midlands Hospital for Women; and FREDERICK EDGE, M.D., F.R.C.S. With 105 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Dulles. What to Do First In Accidents and Poisoning.

By C. W. DULLES, M.D., Surgeon to the Rush Hospital; formerly Assistant Surgeon 2d Regiment N. G. Pa., etc. Fifth Edition. With Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Edgar. The Practice of Obstetrics.

By J. CLIFTON EDGAR, M.D., Professor of Obstetrics and Clinical Midwifery, Medical Department of Cornell University, New York City; Attending Obstetrician to the New York Maternity Hospital, etc. With 1221 Illustrations, largely from Original Sources and many of which are printed in Colors. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00

Emery. A Handbook of Bacteriological Diagnosis.

By W. D'ESTE EMERY, M.D., B.Sc. Lond., Lecturer in Pathology and Bacteriology in the University of Birmingham. With two colored plates and 32 other illustrations. Cloth, \$1.50

Fagge. Practice of Medicine.

A Text-Book of Medicine by the late C. HILTON FAGGE, M.D. Fourth Edition, Revised and Edited by P. H. PYE-SMITH, M.D., Consulting Physician to Guy's Hospital, London, etc. Two Vols. 8vo. Vol. I, Cloth, \$6.00; Vol. II, Cloth, \$6.00

Fenwick. Cancer of Stomach.

By SAMUEL FENWICK, M.D., M.R.C.P., Physician to the London Hospital, etc., and W. SOLTAN FENWICK, M.D., B.S. Cloth, \$3.00

Fick. Diseases of the Eye and Ophthalmoscopy.

By DR. EUGEN FICK, University of Zurich. Authorized Translation by A. B. HALE, M.D., Consulting Ophthalmic Surgeon Charity Hospital, Chicago; late Vol. Assistant Imperial Eye Clinic, University of Kiel. Glossary and 158 Illustrations, many of which are in Colors. 8vo. Cloth, \$4.50; Sheep, \$5.50

Fillebrown. A Text-Book of Operative Dentistry.

Written by invitation of the National Association of Dental Faculties. By THOMAS FILLEBROWN, M.D., D.M.D., Professor of Operative Dentistry in the Dental School of Harvard University. Illustrated. 8vo. Cloth, \$2.25

Fowler's Dictionary of Practical Medicine.

By Various Writers. An Encyclopedia of Medicine. Edited by JAMES KINGSTON FOWLER, M.D., F.R.C.P., Senior Assistant Physician to the Middlesex Hospital, London. 8vo. Cloth, \$3.00; Half Morocco, \$4.00

Frenkel. Tabetic Ataxia.

Its Treatment by Systematic Exercise. By DR. H. S. FRENKEL. Authorized Translation by L. FREYBERGER, M.D., M.R.C.P. 132 Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.00

Fullerton. Obstetric Nursing.

By ANNA M. FULLERTON, M.D., Demonstrator of Obstetrics in the Woman's Medical College; Obstetrician and Gynecologist to the Woman's Hospital, Philadelphia, etc. 41 Illustrations. Fifth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Surgical Nursing.

Comprising the Regular Course of Lectures upon Abdominal Surgery, Gynecology, and General Surgical Conditions delivered at the Training School of the Woman's Hospital, Philadelphia. Third Edition. 69 Illus. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Gardner. The Brewer, Distiller, and Wine Manufacturer.

A Handbook for all interested in the Manufacture and Trade of Alcohol and its Compounds. Edited by JOHN GARDNER, F.C.S. Illustrated. Cloth, \$1.50

Goodall and Washbourn. A Manual of Infectious Diseases.

By EDWARD W. GOODALL, M.D. (London), Medical Superintendent Eastern (Fever) Hospital, London; and J. W. WASHBOURN, F.R.C.P., Physician to the London Fever Hospital. Illustrated with Charts, Diagrams, and Full-page Plates. Cloth, \$3.00

Gould. The Illustrated Dictionary of Medicine, Biology, and Allied Sciences. Fifth Edition.

Being an Exhaustive Lexicon of Medicine and those Sciences Collateral to it: Biology (Zoology and Botany), Chemistry, Dentistry, Pharmacology, Microscopy, etc. By GEORGE M. GOULD, A.M., M.D., Editor of *American Medicine*; President, 1893-94, American Academy of Medicine, etc. With many Useful Tables and numerous Fine Illustrations. Large Square Octavo. 1633 pages. Fifth Edition.

Full Sheep or Half Dark-Green Leather, \$10.00
With Thumb Index, \$11.00; Half Russia, Thumb Index, \$12.00

"Few persons read dictionaries as Théophile Gautier did—for pleasure; if, however, all dictionaries were as readable as the one under consideration, his taste for this kind of literature would be less singular. . . . The book is excellently printed, and the illustrations are admirably executed."—*The British Medical Journal, London.*

•The Student's Medical Dictionary. Eleventh Ed. Illustrated.

Enlarged. Including those Words and Phrases generally used in Medicine, with their proper Pronunciations and Definitions, based on Recent Medical Literature. With Tables of the Bacilli, Micrococci, Leukomains, Ptomaines, etc., of the Arteries, Muscles, Nerves, Ganglia, and Plexuses; Mineral Springs of the U. S., etc., and a new Table of Eponymic Terms and Tests. Rewritten, Enlarged, and Improved. **With many illustrations.** Small octavo. 840 pages.

Half Morocco, \$2.50; Thumb Index, \$3.00

Full Flexible Leather, Burnished Edges, Round Corners, Thumb Index, \$3.50

The Illustrations in this book, of which there are about 300, are extremely practical. Those of the Bones, Muscles, Nerves, etc., when taken together with the anatomical tables which they illustrate, will be found particularly useful for reference and for memorizing. There are 41 cuts of the Bones, 34 of the Muscles, 21 of Nerves, 18 of the Joints, 3 of the Heart, 10 of Ligaments, 12 of Pelvis, a plate of the Skeleton, a plate of the Veins, a plate of the Arteries, etc., 31 cuts of Bandages, 20 of Urinary Sediments, 10 of Postures, 6 of Motor Points, 6 of Surgical Knots, 8 of Hernia, 21 of Sutures, 2 of Tongue, 4 of Brain, and many others.

Altogether the student will find "Gould's Student's Dictionary" a most valuable book, not only as a dictionary but also as an atlas illustrative of many subjects which need pictures to thoroughly explain their details.

Gould. The Pocket Pronouncing Medical Lexicon. Fourth Edition. (30,000 Medical Words Pronounced and Defined.)

A Student's Pronouncing Medical Lexicon. Containing all the Words, their Definitions and Pronunciations, that the Student generally comes in contact with; also elaborate Tables of the Arteries, Muscles, Nerves, Bacilli, etc., etc.; a Dose List in both English and Metric Systems, **a new table of Clinical Eponymic Terms**, etc. arranged in a most convenient form for reference and memorizing. Thin 64mo. (6 x 3¾ inches.) 838 pages. *The System of Pronunciation used in this book is very simple.* Full Limp Leather, Gilt Edges, \$1.00; With Thumb Index, \$1.25

"This 'Dictionary' is admirably suited to the uses of the lecture-room, or for the purposes of a medical defining vocabulary—many of the words not yet being found in any other dictionary, large or small, while all of the words are those of the living medical literature of the day."—*The Virginia Medical Monthly*.

* * 145,000 copies of Gould's Dictionaries have been sold.

Sample pages and descriptive circulars of Gould's Dictionaries free upon application.

Biographic Clinics.

The Origin of the Ill-Health of DeQuincy, Carlyle, Darwin, Huxley, and Brown-ing. 12mo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$1.00

Borderland Studies.

Miscellaneous Addresses and Essays Pertaining to Medicine and the Medical Profession, and their Relations to General Science. 350 pages. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.00

Gould and Pyle. Cyclopedia of Practical Medicine and Surgery. 72 Special Contributors. Illustrated. One Volume.

A Concise Reference Handbook, Alphabetically Arranged, of Medicine, Surgery, Obstetrics, Materia Medica, Therapeutics, and the various specialties, with Particular Reference to Diagnosis and Treatment. Compiled under the Editorial Supervision of DRs. GEORGE M. GOULD and W. L. PYLE. Illustrated. Large Square Octavo. Uniform with Gould's "Illustrated Dictionary." Full Sheep or Half Dark-Green Leather, \$10.00; With Thumb Index, \$11.00; Half Russia, Thumb Index, \$12.00

* * The great success of Dr. Gould's "Illustrated Dictionary of Medicine" suggested the preparation of this companion volume, which should be to the physician the same trustworthy handbook in the broad field of general information that the Dictionary is in the more special one of the explanation of words and the statement of facts. The aim has been to provide in a one-volume book all the material usually contained in the large systems and much which they do not contain. Instead of long, discursive papers on special subjects there are short, concise, pithy articles alphabetically arranged, giving the latest methods of diagnosis, treatment, and operating—a working book in which the editors and their collaborators have condensed all that is essential from a vast amount of literature and personal experience.

The seventy-two special contributors have been selected from all parts of the country in accordance with their fitness for treating special subjects about which they may be considered expert authorities. They are all men of prominence, teachers, investigators, and writers of experience, who give to the book a character unequaled by any other work of the kind.

"The book is a companion volume to Gould's 'Illustrated Dictionary of Medicine,' which every physician should possess. With these two books in his library, every busy physician will save a vast amount of time in having at hand an instant reference cyclopedia covering every subject in surgery and medicine."—*Chicago Medical Recorder*.

Pocket Cyclopedia of Medicine and Surgery.

Based upon Gould and Pyle's Cyclopedia of Practical Medicine and Surgery. Uniform with Gould's Pocket Dictionary.

Full Limp Leather, Gilt Edges, \$1.00; With Thumb Index, \$1.25

See next page for List of Contributors.

Gould and Pyle's Cyclopedia of Medicine

LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS

- Samuel W. Abbott, A.M., M.D., Boston.
 James M. Anders, M.D., LL.D., Phila.
 Joseph D. Bryant, M.D., New York.
 James B. Bullitt, M.D., Louisville.
 Charles H. Burnett, A.M., M.D., Phila.
 J. Abbott Cantrell, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Archibald Church, M.D., Chicago.
 L. Pierce Clark, M.D., Sonyea, N. Y.
 Solomon Solis-Cohen, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Nathan S. Davis, Jr., M.D., Chicago.
 Theodore Diller, M.D., Pittsburg.
 Augustus A. Eshner, M.D., Philadelphia.
 J. T. Eskridge, M.D., Denver, Col.
 J. McFadden Gaston, A.B., M.D., Atlanta, Ga.
 J. McFadden Gaston, Jr., A.M., M.D., Atlanta, Ga.
 Virgil P. Gibney, M.D., New York.
 George M. Gould, A.M., M.D., Phila.
 W. A. Hardaway, A.M., M.D., St. Louis.
 John C. Hemmeter, M.B., M.D., Baltimore.
 Barton Cooke Hirst, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Bayard Holmes, M.D., Chicago.
 Orville Horwitz, B.S., M.D., Philadelphia.
 Daniel E. Hughes, M.D., Philadelphia.
 James Nevins Hyde, A.M., M.D., Chicago.
 E. Fletcher Ingals, A.M., M.D., Chicago.
 Abraham Jacobi, M.D., New York.
 William W. Johnston, M.D., Washington, D. C.
 Wyatt Johnston, M.D., Montreal.
 Allen A. Jones, M.D., Buffalo.
 William W. Keen, M.D., LL.D., Phila.
 Howard S. Kinne, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Ernest Laplace, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Benjamin Lee, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Charles L. Leonard, M.D., Philadelphia.
 James Hendrie Lloyd, A.M., M.D., Phila.
 J. W. MacDonald, M.D. (Edin.), F.R.C.S. Ed., Minneapolis.
 L. S. McMurtry, M.D., Louisville.
 G. Hudson Makuen, Philadelphia.
 Matthew D. Mann, M.D., Buffalo.
 Henry O. Marcy, A.M., M.D., LL.D., Boston.
 Rudolph Matas, M.D., New Orleans.
 Joseph M. Mathews, M.D., Louisville.
 John K. Mitchell, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Harold N. Moyer, M.D., Chicago.
 John H. Musser, M.D., Philadelphia.
 A. G. Nicholls, M.D., Montreal.
 A. H. Ohmann-Dusmesnil, M.D., St. Louis.
 William Osler, M.D., Baltimore.
 Samuel O. L. Potter, A.M., M.D., M.R.C.P. (London), San Francisco.
 Walter L. Pyle, A.M., M.D., Philadelphia.
 B. Alexander Randall, A.M., M.D., Phila.
 Joseph Ransohoff, M.D., F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Cincinnati.
 Jay F. Schamberg, A.M., M.D., Phila.
 Nicholas Senn, M.D., LL.D., Chicago.
 Richard Slee, M.D., Swiftwater, Pa.
 S. E. Solly, M.D., M.R.C.S., Colorado Springs, Col.
 Edmond Souchen, M.D., New Orleans.
 Ward F. Sprenkel, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Charles G. Stockton, M.D., Buffalo.
 John Madison Taylor, A.M., M.D., Phila.
 William S. Thayer, M.D., Baltimore.
 James Thorington, A.M., M.D., Phila.
 Martin B. Tinker, M.D., Philadelphia.
 James Tyson, M.D., Philadelphia.
 J. Hilton Waterman, M.D., New York.
 H. A. West, M.D., Galveston, Texas.
 J. William White, M.D., PH.D., Phila.
 Reynold W. Wilcox, M.A., M.D., LL.D., New York.
 George Wilkins, M.D., Montreal.
 DeForest Willard, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Alfred C. Wood, M.D., Philadelphia.
 Horatio C. Wood, M.D., LL.D., Phila.
 Albert Woldert, PH.G., M.D., Phila.
 James K. Young, M.D., Philadelphia.

"It is difficult to describe the volume before us, and one must imagine all that is clinical at the present day as being briefly and yet sufficiently set forth under an alphabetical arrangement, with frequent illustrations, with many formulæ and diagnostic distinctions, and with perfect homogeneity; then he will have a fair picture of the work. We feel sure, however, that many of our readers will make the better acquaintance of the book by becoming its possessors, and we commend it to them without hesitation. We have yet to find wherein it is erroneous or disappointing, and we regard it as of unlimited value to the average medical man."—*The New York Medical Journal*.

* * Sample pages and description upon application.

Gould and Pyle. Compend of Diseases of the Eye.

Including Refraction Treatment and Operations, with a Section on Local Therapeutics. With Formulæ, Glossary, and several Tables. By DRS. GEORGE M. GOULD and W. L. PYLE. Second Edition. 109 Illustrations, several of which are Colored. *No. 8 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.* Cloth, 80.; Interleaved for Notes, \$1.00

Gordinier. The Gross and Minute Anatomy of the Central Nervous System. 261 Illustrations.

By H. C. GORDINIER, A.M., M.D., Professor of Physiology and of the Anatomy of the Nervous System in the Albany Medical College; Member American Neurological Association. With 48 Full-page Plates and 213 other Illustrations, a number of which are printed in Colors and many of which are original. Large 8vo.

Cloth, \$6.00; Sheep, \$7.00

Gorgas' Dental Medicine.

A Manual of Dental Materia Medica and Therapeutics. By FERDINAND J. S. GORGAS, M.D., D.D.S., Professor of the Principles of Dental Science, Oral Surgery, and Dental Mechanism in the Dental Department of the University of Maryland. Seventh Edition, Revised and Enlarged, with many Formulæ. 8vo.

Cloth, \$4.00; Sheep, \$5.00; Half Russia, \$6.00

Questions and Answers.

Embracing the Curriculum of the Dental Student. Divided into three parts. By FERDINAND J. S. GORGAS, A.M., M.D., D.D.S., Author of "Dental Medicine," Editor of "Harris' Principles and Practice of Dentistry" and "Harris' Dictionary of Medical Terminology and Dental Surgery," Professor of the Principles of Dental Science, Oral Surgery, etc., in the University of Maryland, Dental Department, Baltimore. Octavo.

Cloth, \$6.00

Gray. A Treatise of Physics.

By ANDREW GRAY, LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Glasgow. In Three Volumes.

Vol. I. DYNAMICS AND PROPERTIES OF MATTER. 350 Illustrations. Octavo. 688 pages.

Cloth, \$4.50

Greeff. The Microscopic Examination of the Eye.

By Professor R. GREEFF. Surgeon to the Ophthalmic Department of the Royal Charité Hospital, Berlin. Translated from the Second German Edition by HUGH WALKER, M.A., M.D., Assistant Surgeon and Pathologist to the Ophthalmic Department of the Glasgow Royal Infirmary. 12mo.

Cloth, \$1.25

Greene. The Medical Examination for Life Insurance

and its Associated Clinical Methods. With Chapters on the Insurance of Sub-standard Risks and Accident Insurance. By CHARLES LYMAN GREENE, M.D., of St. Paul, Clinical Professor of Medicine and Physical Diagnosis in the University of Minnesota. With 99 Illustrations, many of which are original, several being printed in Colors. Second Edition, Revised. Octavo.

In Press.

Griffith's Graphic Clinical Chart.

Designed by J. P. CROZER GRIFFITH, M.D., Instructor in Clinical Medicine in the University of Pennsylvania. Sample copies free. Put up in loose packages of 50, .50 Price to Hospitals: 500 copies, \$4.00; 1000 copies, \$7.50.

Groff. Materia Medica for Nurses.

With Questions for Self-examination. By JOHN E. GROFF, Apothecary in the Rhode Island Hospital, Providence; Professor of Materia Medica, Botany, and Pharmacognosy in the Rhode Island College of Pharmacy. Second Edition, Revised and Improved. 12mo. *Just Ready.*

Cloth, \$1.25

Greenish. Microscopical Examination of Foods and Drugs.

Being a systematically arranged Course of Practical Instruction in the Methods adopted in the Analysis of Foods and Drugs by means of the Microscope, including a description of the structure of the more important. Designed for the use of Analysts, Pharmacists, and Students training for those Professions. By HENRY G. GREENISH, F.I.C., F.L.S., Professor of Pharmaceutics to the Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain. With 168 Illustrations. Octavo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$3.50

Groves and Thorp. Chemical Technology.

A New and Complete Work. The Application of Chemistry to the Arts and Manufactures. Edited by CHARLES E. GROVES, F.R.S., and WM. THORP, B.SC., F.I.C., assisted by many experts. With numerous Illustrations. *Each volume sold separately.*

Vol. I. FUEL AND ITS APPLICATIONS. 607 Illustrations and 4 Plates. Octavo. Cloth, \$5.00; ½ Mor., \$6.50

Vol. II. LIGHTING. Candles, Oils, Lamps, etc. By W. Y. DENT, L. FIELD, BOVERTON REDWOOD, and D. A. LOUIS. Illustrated. Octavo. Cloth, \$4.00; ½ Mor., \$5.50

Vol. III. GAS LIGHTING. By CHARLES HUNT, Manager of the Birmingham Gasworks. Illustrated. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.50; ½ Mor., \$4.50

Vol. IV. ELECTRIC LIGHTING AND PHOTOMETRY. By ARTHUR G. COOKE, M.A., Head of the Physics and Electric Engineering Department at the Battersea (London) Polytechnic; and W. J. DIBDIN, F.I.C., F.C.S., late Chemist and Superintending Gas Examiner, London County Council. With 10 Plates and 181 other Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.50; ½ Mor., \$4.50

Gowers. Manual of Diseases of the Nervous System.

A Complete Text-Book. By SIR WILLIAM R. GOWERS, M.D., F.R.S., Physician to National Hospital for the Paralyzed and Epileptic, etc. Revised and Enlarged. With many new Illustrations. Two volumes. Octavo.

Vol. I. Diseases of the Nerves and Spinal Cord.

Third Edition. Cloth, \$4.00; Sheep, \$5.00; Half Russia, \$6.00

Vol. II. Brain and Cranial Nerves; General and Functional Diseases.

Second Edition. Cloth, \$4.00; Sheep, \$5.00; Half Russia, \$6.00

* * This book has been translated into German, Italian, and Spanish. It is published in London, Milan, Bonn, Barcelona, and Philadelphia.

Syphilis and the Nervous System.

Being a Revised Reprint of the Lettsomian Lectures for 1890, delivered before the Medical Society of London. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Epilepsy and Other Chronic Convulsive Diseases.

Their Causes, Symptoms, and Treatment Second Edition. Cloth, \$3.00

Hadley. General Medical and Surgical Nursing.

A Manual for Nurses. By DR. W. G. HADLEY, Physician to, and Lecturer on Medicine to the Nurses at, the London Hospital. With an Appendix on Sick-Room Cookery. 12mo. 326 pages. Cloth, \$1.25

Haig. Causation of Disease by Uric Acid. Sixth Edition.

A Contribution to the Pathology of High Arterial Tension, Headache, Epilepsy, Mental Depression, Gout, Rheumatism, Diabetes, Bright's Disease, Anæmia, etc. By ALEXANDER HAIG, M.A., M.D. (Oxon.), F.R.C.P., Physician to Metropolitan Hospital, London. 75 Illustrations. Sixth Edition, Enlarged by 100 pages. 8vo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$3.50

Diet and Food.

Considered in Relation to Strength and Power of Endurance, Training and Athletics. Fourth Edition, Revised. 7 Illustrations. Cloth, \$1.00

Hall. Diseases of the Nose and Throat.

By F. DE HAVILLAND HALL, M.D., F.R.C.P. (Lond.), Physician to the Westminster Hospital; President of the Laryngological Society of London; Joint Lecturer on the Principles and Practice of Medicine at the Westminster Hospital; and HERBERT TILLEY, M.D., B.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Surgeon to the Throat Hospital, Golden Square; Lecturer on Diseases of the Nose and Throat, London Post-Graduate College and Polyclinic. Second Edition, Revised, with 2 Plates and 80 Illustrations. Cloth, \$2.75

Hamilton. Lectures on Tumors

from a Clinical Standpoint. By JOHN B. HAMILTON, M.D., LL.D., late Professor of Surgery in Rush Medical College, Chicago; Surgeon Presbyterian Hospital, etc. Third Edition, Revised. With New Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25

Hansell and Sweet. Diseases of the Eye.

A Treatise on the Principles and Practice of Ophthalmic Medicine and Surgery. By HOWARD F. HANSELL, A.M., M.D., Clinical Professor of Ophthalmology, Jefferson Medical College; Professor of Diseases of the Eye, Philadelphia Polyclinic and College for Graduates in Medicine; Ophthalmic Surgeon, Philadelphia Hospital, etc., and WILLIAM M. SWEET, M.D., Instructor in Ophthalmology, Jefferson Medical College; Assistant Attending Surgeon and Chief of Eye Clinic, Jefferson Medical College Hospital; Associate in Ophthalmology, Philadelphia Polyclinic; Ophthalmic Surgeon, Phoenixville Hospital, etc. With over 245 Illustrations. *Nearly Ready.*

Hansell and Reber. Muscular Anomalies of the Eye.

By HOWARD F. HANSELL, A.M., M.D., Clinical Professor of Ophthalmology, Jefferson Medical College; Professor of Diseases of the Eye, Philadelphia Polyclinic, etc.; and WENDELL REBER, M.D., Instructor in Ophthalmology, Philadelphia Polyclinic, etc. With 1 Plate and 28 other Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Hansell and Bell. Clinical Ophthalmology.

By HOWARD F. HANSELL, A.M., M.D., and JAMES H. BELL, M.D. With Colored Plate of Normal Fundus and 120 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Hare. Mediastinal Disease.

The Pathology, Clinical History, and Diagnosis of Affections of the Mediastinum other than those of the Heart and Aorta. By H. A. HARE, M.D., Professor of Mat. Med. and Therap. in Jefferson Med. College. 8vo. Illustrated. Cloth, \$2.00

Harlan. Eyesight

and How to Care for It. By GEORGE C. HARLAN, M.D., Professor of Diseases of the Eye, Philadelphia Polyclinic. Illustrated. Cloth, .40

Harris' Principles and Practice of Dentistry.

Including Anatomy, Physiology, Pathology, Therapeutics, Dental Surgery, and Mechanism. By CHAPIN A. HARRIS, M.D., D.D.S., late President of the Baltimore Dental College; Author of "Dictionary of Medical Terminology and Dental Surgery." Thirteenth Edition, Revised and Edited by FERDINAND J. S. GORGAS, A.M., M.D., D.D.S., Author of "Dental Medicine;" Professor of the Principles of Dental Science, Oral Surgery, and Dental Mechanism in the University of Maryland. 1250 Illustrations. 1180 pages. 8vo. Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00

Dictionary of Dentistry.

Including Definitions of such Words and Phrases of the Collateral Sciences as Pertain to the Art and Practice of Dentistry. Sixth Edition, Rewritten, Revised, and Enlarged. By FERDINAND J. S. GORGAS, M.D., D.D.S., Author of "Dental Medicine;" Editor of Harris' "Principles and Practice of Dentistry;" Professor of Principles of Dental Science, Oral Surgery, and Prosthetic Dentistry in the University of Maryland. Octavo. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00

Hartridge. Refraction.

The Refraction of the Eye. A Manual for Students. By GUSTAVUS HARTRIDGE, F.R.C.S., Senior Surgeon Royal Westminster Ophthalmic Hospital; Ophthalmic Surgeon to St. Bartholomew's Hospital, etc. 105 Illustrations and Sheet of Test Types. Twelfth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$1.50

On the Ophthalmoscope.

A Manual for Physicians and Students. Fourth Edition, Revised. With Colored Plates and 68 Wood-cuts. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Hartshorne. Our Homes.

Their Situation, Construction, Drainage, etc. By HENRY HARTSHORNE, M.D. Illustrated. Cloth, .40

Hatfield. Diseases of Children.

By MARCUS P. HATFIELD, Professor of Diseases of Children, Chicago Medical College. With a Colored Plate. Third Edition. *Being No. 14 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.* 12mo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, .80; Interleaved for the Addition of Notes, \$1.00

"Dr. Hatfield seems to have most thoroughly appreciated the needs of students, and most excellently has he condensed his matter into available form. It is in accord with the most recent teachings, and while brief and concise, is surprisingly complete."—*Annals of Gynecology and Pediatrics.*

Heath. Minor Surgery and Bandaging.

By CHRISTOPHER HEATH, F.R.C.S., Holme Professor of Clinical Surgery in University College, London. Twelfth Edition, Revised and Enlarged by BILTON POLLARD, F.R.C.S., Surgeon University College Hospital, London. With 195 Illustrations, Formulæ, Diet List, etc. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Practical Anatomy.

A Manual of Dissections. Ninth edition, Edited by H. ERNEST LANE, F.R.C.S. With 321 Illustrations, of which 32 are Colored. Cloth, \$4.25

Clinical Lectures on Surgical Subjects. Second series. Cloth, \$2.00

Hedley. Therapeutic Electricity and Practical Muscle Testing.

By W. S. HEDLEY, M.D., M.R.C.S., in charge of the Electrotherapeutic Department of the London Hospital. 99 Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$2.50

Heller. Essentials of Materia Medica, Pharmacy, and Prescription Writing.

By EDWIN A. HELLER, M.D., Quiz-Master in Materia Medica and Pharmacy at the Medical Institute, University of Pennsylvania. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Henderson. Notes on The Eye.

For Undergraduate Students. By FRANK LARAMORE HENDERSON, M.D., Professor of Ophthalmology in the Barnes Medical College, St. Louis, etc. With Colored Plates and 100 other Illustrations. Third Edition, Enlarged. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$1.50

Henry. Anæmia. A Practical Treatise.

By FRED'K P. HENRY, M.D. Half Cloth, .50

Heusler. The Terpenes.

By FR. HEUSLER, PH.D., Privatdocent of Chemistry in the University at Bonn. Authorized Translation and Revision by F. J. Pond, PH.D., Assistant Professor of Chemistry, Pennsylvania State College. Cloth, \$4.00

Hemmeter. Diseases of the Stomach. Third Edition.

Their Special Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment. With Sections on Anatomy, Analysis of Stomach Contents, Dietetics, Surgery of the Stomach, etc. By JOHN C. HEMMETER, M.D., PHILOS.D., Professor in the Medical Department of the University of Maryland; Consultant to the University Hospital; Director of the Clinical Laboratory, etc.; formerly Clinical Professor of Medicine at the Baltimore Medical College, etc. Third Edition, Revised. With 15 Plates and 41 other Illustrations, some of which are in Colors. Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00; Half Russia, \$8.00

Diseases of the Intestines.

A Complete Systematic Treatise on Diseases of the Intestines, including their Special Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment, with Sections on Anatomy and Physiology, Microscopic and Chemic Examination of the Intestinal Contents, Secretions, Feces, and Urine. Intestinal Bacteria and Parasites; Surgery of the Intestines; Dietetics, Diseases of the Rectum, etc. With many Full-page Plates, Colored and other Illustrations, most of which are Original. 2 vols. Octavo.

Vol. I. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

Vol. II. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

THE SECTION ON ANATOMY has been prepared by DR. J. HOLMES SMITH, Associate Professor and Demonstrator of Anatomy, and Lecturer on Clinical Surgery, University of Maryland, Baltimore. THE SECTION ON BACTERIA OF THE INTESTINES has been prepared by DR. WM. ROYAL STOKES, Associate Professor of Pathology and Bacteriology, and Visiting Pathologist to the University Hospital, University of Maryland, Baltimore. THE SECTION ON DISEASES OF THE RECTUM has been prepared by DR. THOMAS C. MARTIN, Professor of Proctology, Cleveland College of Physicians and Surgeons. THE SECTION ON EXAMINATION OF URINE AND FECES has been prepared by DR. HARRY ADLER, Demonstrator of Clinical Pathology, Associate Professor of Diseases of the Stomach and Intestines, University of Maryland, Baltimore. THE ILLUSTRATIONS form a most useful and practical series of pictures,—nearly all have been reproduced from pathological preparations and original drawings, a few being printed in several colors.

Hewlett. Manual of Bacteriology. 75 Illustrations.

By R. T. HEWLETT, M.D., M.R.C.P., Assistant Bacteriologist British Institute of Preventive Medicine, etc. Second Edition, Revised. Cloth, \$4.00

Serum-Therapy. Illustrated.

In Press.

Hollopeter. Hay Fever and Its Successful Treatment.

By W. C. HOLLOPETER, A.M., M.D., Clinical Professor of Pediatrics in the Medico-Chirurgical College of Philadelphia; Physician to the Methodist Episcopal, Medico-Chirurgical, and St. Joseph's Hospitals, etc. Second Edition. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Holden's Anatomy. Seventh Edition.

A Manual of the Dissections of the Human Body. By JOHN LANGTON, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Anatomy at, St. Bartholomew's Hospital. Carefully Revised by A. HEWSON, M.D., Demonstrator of Anatomy, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia, etc. 320 Illustrations. Two small compact volumes. 12mo.

Vol. I. Scalp, Face, Orbit, Neck, Throat, Thorax, Upper Extremity. 435 pages. 153 Illustrations. Oil Cloth, \$1.50

Vol. II. Abdomen, Perineum, Lower Extremity, Brain, Eye, Ear, Mammary Gland, Scrotum, Testes. 445 pages. 167 Illus. Oil Cloth, \$1.50

Human Osteology.

Comprising a Description of the Bones, with Colored Delineations of the Attachments of the Muscles. The General and Microscopical Structure of Bone and its Development. Eighth Edition, Carefully Revised. Edited by CHARLES STEWART, F.R.S., and R. W. REID, M.D., F.R.C.S. With Colored Lithographic Plates and Numerous Illustrations. Cloth, \$5.25

Landmarks.

Medical and Surgical. Fourth Edition. 8vo.

Cloth, .75

Holland. The Urine, the Gastric Contents, the Common Poisons, and the Milk. Illustrated.

Memoranda (Chemical and Microscopical) for Laboratory Use. By J. W. HOLLAND, M.D., Professor of Medical Chemistry and Toxicology in Jefferson Medical College of Philadelphia. Sixth Edition, Enlarged. Illustrated and Interleaved. 12mo.

Cloth, \$1.00

Horwitz's Compend of Surgery.

Including Minor Surgery, Amputations, Bandaging, Fractures, Dislocations, Surgical Diseases, etc., with Differential Diagnosis and Treatment. By ORVILLE HORWITZ, B.S., M.D., Professor of Genito-Urinary Diseases, late Demonstrator of Surgery, Jefferson Medical College. Fifth Edition. 167 Illustrations and 98 Formulæ. 12mo.

No. 9 ? *Quiz-Compend ? Series.* Cloth, .80; Interleaved for Notes, \$1.00

* * * *A Spanish translation of this book has been published in Barcelona.*

Hovell. Diseases of the Ear and Naso-Pharynx.

A Treatise including Anatomy and Physiology of the Organ, together with the treatment of the affections of the Nose and Pharynx which conduce to aural disease. By T. MARK HOVELL, F.R.C.S. (Edin.), M.R.C.S. (Eng.), Aural Surgeon to the London Hospital; Consulting Surgeon Hospital for Diseases of the Throat, Golden Square; etc. 128 Illustrations. Second Edition.

Cloth, \$5.50

Humphrey. A Manual for Nurses. Twenty-fourth Edition.

Including General Anatomy and Physiology, Management of the Sick-room, etc. By LAURENCE HUMPHREY, M.A., M.B., M.R.C.S., Assistant Physician to Addenbrook's Hospital, Cambridge, England. 23d Edition. 12mo. 79 Illustrations. Cloth, \$1.00

Hughes and Keith. Dissections. Illustrated.

A Manual of Dissections by ALFRED W. HUGHES, M.B., M.R.C.S. (Edin.), late Professor of Anatomy and Dean of Medical Faculty, King's College, London, etc., and ARTHUR KEITH, M.D., Lecturer on Anatomy, London Hospital Medical College, etc. In three parts, with many Colored and other Illustrations.

I. Upper and Lower Extremity. 38 Plates, 116 other Illustrations. Cloth, \$3.00

II. Abdomen. Thorax. 4 Plates, 149 other Illustrations. Cloth, \$3.00

III. Head, Neck, and Central Nervous System. 16 Plates and 204 other Illustrations. Cloth, \$3.00

Hughes. Compend of the Practice of Medicine. Sixth Edition.

Giving the Synonyms, Definition, Causes, Symptoms, Pathology, Prognosis, Diagnosis, Treatment, etc., of each Disease. The Treatment is especially full and a number of valuable Prescriptions have been incorporated. Sixth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. By DANIEL E. HUGHES, M.D., Chief Resident Physician Philadelphia Hospital; formerly Demonstrator of Clinical Medicine at Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. *Being Nos. 2 and 3 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.*

Quiz-Compend Edition, in two Parts.

PART I.—Continued, Eruptive, and Periodical Fevers, Diseases of the Mouth, Stomach, Intestines, Peritoneum, Biliary Passages, Liver, Kidneys, Blood, etc., Parasites, etc., and General Diseases, etc.

PART II.—Physical Diagnosis, Diseases of the Respiratory System, Circulatory System, Diseases of the Brain and Nervous System, Mental Diseases, etc.

Price of each Part, in Cloth, .80; Interleaved for the Addition of Notes, \$1.00

Physicians' Edition.

In one volume, including the above two parts, a Section on Skin Diseases, and an Index. *Sixth Revised and Enlarged Edition. 625 pages.*

Full Morocco, Gilt Edges, Round Corners, \$2.25

Ireland. The Mental Affections of Children.

Idiocy, Imbecility, Insanity, etc. By W. W. IRELAND, M.D. (Edin.), of the Home and School for Imbeciles, Mavisbush, Scotland; Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Cloth, \$4.00

Jacoby. Electrotherapy. Illustrated.

See COHEN, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 9.

Jacobson. The Operations of Surgery.

By W. H. A. JACOBSON, F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Surgeon Guy's Hospital, etc., and F. J. STEWARD, F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon Guy's Hospital and the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormand Street, London. With 550 Illustrations. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Two volumes. Octavo. 1524 pages.

Cloth, \$10.00; Leather, \$12.00

Jennings. A Manual of Ophthalmoscopy.

By J. E. JENNINGS, M.D. (Univ. Penna.), Formerly Clinical Assistant Royal London Ophthalmic Hospital, London; Fellow of the British Laryngological and Rhinological Association; Member of the American Medical Association; Member of the St. Louis Medical Society, etc. With 95 Illustrations and 1 Colored Plate. Cloth, \$1.50

Jones. Medical Electricity. Third Edition.

A Practical Handbook for Students and Practitioners of Medicine. By H. LEWIS JONES, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P., Medical Officer in Charge Electrical Department, St. Bartholomew's Hospital. Third Edition of Steavenson and Jones' Medical Electricity, Revised and Enlarged. 117 Illustrations. 532 pages. 12mo. Cloth, \$3.00

Jones. Outlines of Physiology.

By EDWARD GROVES JONES, M.D., Assistant Professor of Physiology and Pathological Anatomy, Atlanta College of Physicians and Surgeons. 96 Illustrations. 12mo.

Cloth, \$1.50

Keay. Gall-Stones.

The Medical Treatment of Gall-Stones. By J. H. KEAY, M.A., M.D., Physician to Trinity Hospital, Greenwich, London. 12mo.

Cloth, \$1.25

Keen. Clinical Charts.

A Series of Seven Outline Drawings of the Human Body, on which may be marked the course of any Disease, Fractures, Operations, etc. By W. W. KEEN, M.D., Professor of the Principles of Surgery and Clinical Surgery, Jefferson Medical College. Each Drawing may be had separately gummed on back for pasting in case book. 25 to the pad. Price, 25 cents. *Special Charts will be printed to order. Samples free.*

Kehr. Diagnosis of Gall-Stone Disease.

Including one hundred Clinical and Operative Cases illustrating Diagnostic Points of the Different Forms of the Disease. By PROF. DR. HANS KEHR, of Halberstadt. Authorized Translation by WILLIAM WOTKYNs SEYMOUR, A.B. (Yale), M.D. (Harvard), of Troy, N. Y. 12mo. 370 pages.

Cloth, \$2.50

Kenwood. Public Health Laboratory Work.

By H. R. KENWOOD, M.B., D.P.H., F.C.S., Assistant Professor of Public Health, University College, London, etc. 116 Illustrations and 3 Plates. Cloth, \$2.00

Kirkes' Physiology. 17th Edition. New Printing, with Additions.
(*The only Authorized Edition. 12mo. Dark Red Cloth.*) A Handbook of Physiology. Seventeenth London Edition, Revised and Enlarged. By W. D. HALLIBURTON, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology, King's College, London. Thoroughly Revised and in many parts Rewritten. *This is a New Printing of the 17th Edition, Enlarged and with New Illustrations.* 692 Illustrations, a number of which are printed in Colors. 912 pages. 12mo. Cloth, \$3.00; Leather, \$3.75

IMPORTANT NOTICE. This is the identical Edition of "Kirkes' Physiology," as published in London by John Murray, the sole owner of the book, and containing the revisions and additions of Dr. Halliburton, and the new and original illustrations included at his suggestion. This edition has been carefully and thoroughly revised.

Kleen. Diabetes Mellitus and Glycosuria.

Their Diagnosis and Treatment. By DR. EMIL KLEEN. Octavo. Cloth, \$2.50

Knight. Diseases of the Throat.

A Manual for Students. By CHARLES H. KNIGHT, M.D., Professor of Laryngology, Cornell University Medical College; Surgeon to Throat Department, Manhattan Eye and Ear Hospital, etc. 143 Illustrations. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$3.00

Knopf. Pulmonary Tuberculosis. Its Modern Prophylaxis and the Treatment in Special Institutions and at Home.

By S. A. KNOPF, M.D., Physician to the Lung Department of the New York Throat and Nose Hospital; former Assistant Physician to Professor Dettweiler, Falkenstein Sanatorium, Germany, etc. Illustrated. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.00

Kyle. Diseases of the Ear, Nose, and Throat.

A Compend for Students and Physicians. By JOHN J. KYLE, M.D. About 100 Illustrations. *No. 19 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.* Cloth, .80; Interleaved for Notes, \$1.00

Landis' Compend of Obstetrics.

By HENRY G. LANDIS, M.D. Seventh Edition, Revised by WM. H. WELLS, M.D., Demonstrator of Clinical Obstetrics, Jefferson Medical College; Member Obstetrical Society of Philadelphia, etc. With 52 Illustrations. *No. 5 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.* Cloth, .80; Interleaved for the Addition of Notes, \$1.00

Landois. A Text-Book of Human Physiology.

Including Histology and Microscopical Anatomy, with Special Reference to the Requirements of Practical Medicine. By DR. L. LANDOIS, Professor of Physiology and Director of the Physiological Institute in the University of Greifswald. Fifth American from the last German Edition. Translated and Edited by A. P. BRUBAKER, M.D., Adjunct Professor of Physiology at Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia; Professor of Physiology at the Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery, and AUGUSTUS A. ESHNER, Professor of Clinical Medicine at the Philadelphia Polyclinic. With many Illustrations. 8vo. *In Press.*

Lazarus-Barlow. Pathological Anatomy and Histology.

By W. S. LAZARUS-BARLOW, M.D., Demonstrator of Pathology at the University of Cambridge, England. With 7 Colored Plates containing 19 figures and 171 other Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$6.50

Lee. The Microtomist's Vade Mecum. Fifth Edition.

A Handbook of the Methods of Microscopic Anatomy. By ARTHUR BOLLES LEE, formerly Assistant in the Russian Laboratory of Zoology at Villefranche-sur-Mer (Nice). 894 Articles. Enlarged, Revised, and Rearranged. 532 pages. 8vo. Cloth, \$4.00

Leffmann and Beam. Food Analysis. Illustrated.

Select Methods in Food Analysis. By HENRY LEFFMANN, M.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Woman's Medical College of Pennsylvania and in the Wagner Free Institute of Science; Pathological Chemist, Jefferson Medical College Hospital, Philadelphia; Vice-President (1901) Society Public Analysts, etc.; and WILLIAM BEAM, A.M. With many Tables, 4 Plates and 53 other Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.50

Leffmann. Compend of Medical Chemistry.

Inorganic and Organic. Including Urine Analysis. By HENRY LEFFMANN, M.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Woman's Medical College of Pennsylvania and in the Wagner Free Institute of Science, Philadelphia; Pathological Chemist Jefferson Medical College Hospital, etc. *No. 10 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.* Fourth Edition, Rewritten. Cloth, .80; Interleaved for the Addition of Notes, \$1.00

The Coal-Tar Colors.

With Special Reference to their Injurious Qualities and the Restrictions of their Use. A Translation of Theodore Weyl's Monograph. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25

Examination of Water

for Sanitary and Technical Purposes. Fourth Edition, Enlarged. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25

Analysis of Milk and Milk Products.

Arranged to suit the needs of Analytical Chemists, Dairymen, and Milk Inspectors. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25

Handbook of Structural Formulæ

for the Use of Students, containing 180 Structural and Stereo-chemic Formulæ. 12mo. Interleaved. Cloth, \$1.00

Lewers. On the Diseases of Women.

A Practical Treatise. By DR. A. H. N. LEWERS, Obstetric Physician to the London Hospital. 146 Engravings. Fifth Edition, Revised. Cloth, \$2.50

Cancer of the Uterus.

A Clinical Monograph on its Diagnosis and Treatment, with the After-Results in Seventy-three Cases Treated by Radical Operation. With 51 Original Illustrations and 3 Colored Plates. 8vo. Cloth, \$3.00

Lewis (Bevan). Mental Diseases.

A Text-Book having Special Reference to the Pathological Aspects of Insanity. By BEVAN LEWIS, L.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., Medical Director West Riding Asylum, Wakefield, England. 26 Lithograph Plates and other Illustrations. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 8vo. Cloth, \$7.00

Lincoln. School and Industrial Hygiene.

By D. F. LINCOLN, M.D. Cloth, .40

Longley's Pocket Medical Dictionary.

Giving the Definition and Pronunciation of Words and Terms in General Use in Medicine. With an Appendix, containing Poisons and their Antidotes, Abbreviations Used in Prescriptions, etc. By ELIAS LONGLEY. Cloth, .75; Tucks and Pocket, \$1.00

MacLeod. Practical Handbook of the Pathology of the Skin.

An Introduction to the Histology, Pathology, and Bacteriology of the Skin, with special reference to Technique. By J. M. H. MACLEOD, M.A., M.D., M.R.C.P., Assistant in the Dermatological Department, Charing Cross Hospital; Physician to the Skin Department, Victoria Hospital for Children. With 8 Colored and 32 Black and White Plates. Octavo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$5.00

McBride. Diseases of the Throat, Nose, and Ear.

A Clinical Manual for Students and Practitioners. By P. McBRIDE, M.D., F.R.C.P. (Edin.); Lecturer on Diseases of Throat and Ear, Edinburgh School of Medicine, etc. With Colored Illustrations from Original Drawings. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Octavo. Cloth, Gilt Top, \$7.00

McCook. American Spiders and Their Spinning Work.

A Natural History of the Orbweaving Spiders of the United States. By HENRY C. MCCOOK, D.D., Vice-President of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, etc. Three volumes. Handsomely Illustrated in Colors. Cloth, \$40.00

McFarland. Prophylaxis—Personal Hygiene—Nursing and Care of the Sick.

See COHEN, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 10.

McMurrich. The Development of the Human Body.

A Manual of Human Embryology. By J. PLAYFAIR McMURRICH, A.M., PH.D., Professor of Anatomy, Medical Department of the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor. 276 Illustrations. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$3.00

Makins. Surgical Experiences in South Africa, 1899–1900.

Being mainly a Clinical Study of the Effects of Injuries Produced by Bullets of Small Calibre: By GEORGE HENRY MAKINS, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to St. Thomas's Hospital, London; and late one of the Consulting Surgeons to the South African Field Force. With 25 Plates and 96 other Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$4.00

Mann. Forensic Medicine and Toxicology.

By J. DIXON MANN, M.D., F.R.C.P., Professor of Medical Jurisprudence and Toxicology in Owens College, Manchester, etc. Illustrated. Octavo. Cloth, \$6.50

Mann's Manual of Psychological Medicine

and Allied Nervous Diseases. Their Diagnosis, Pathology, Prognosis, and Treatment, including their Medico-Legal Aspects. With Chapter on Expert Testimony and an Abstract of the Laws Relating to the Insane in all the States of the Union. By EDWARD C. MANN, M.D. With Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.00

Marshall's Physiological Diagrams, Life Size, Colored.

Eleven Life-size Diagrams (each 7 feet by 3 feet 7 inches). Designed for Demonstration before the Class. By JOHN MARSHALL, F.R.S., F.R.C.S., Professor of Anatomy to the Royal Academy; Professor of Surgery, University College, London, etc. In Sheets, \$40.00; Backed with Muslin and Mounted on Rollers, \$60.00
Ditto, Spring Rollers, in Handsome Walnut Map Case, \$100.00
Single Plates, Sheets, \$5.00; Mounted, \$7.50; Explanatory Key, 50 cents.
Purchaser must pay freight charges.

No. 1—The Skeleton and Ligaments. No. 2—The Muscles and Joints, with Animal Mechanics. No. 3—The Viscera in Position. No. 4—The Heart and Principal Blood-vessels. No. 5—The Lymphatics. No. 6—The Digestive Organs. No. 7—The Brain and Nerves. Nos. 8 and 9—The Organs of the Senses. Nos. 10 and 11—The Microscopic Structure of the Textures and Organs. (*Send for Special Circular.*)

Martin. A Manual of Pathology.

By SIDNEY HARRIS COX MARTIN, M.D., M.B., F.R.C.P., Professor of Pathology, University College, London, etc. Illustrated. *In Press.*

Maylard. The Surgery of the Alimentary Canal.

By ALFRED ERNEST MAYLARD, M.B., B.S., Senior Surgeon to the Victoria Infirmary, Glasgow. Second Edition. 97 Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.00

Mays' Theine in the Treatment of Neuralgia.

By THOMAS J. MAYS, M.D. 16mo. ½ bound, .50

Medical Book News.

A Bi-monthly Journal devoted to Medical Literature. Containing Lists of all New Books, Announcements, Reviews, etc. Per annum, .25

Memminger. Diagnosis by the Urine.

The Practical Examination of Urine, with Special Reference to Diagnosis. By ALLARD MEMMINGER, M.D., Professor of Chemistry and Hygiene; Clinical Professor of Urinary Diagnosis in the Medical College of the State of South Carolina; Visiting Physician in the City Hospital of Charleston, etc. Second Edition, Enlarged and Revised. 24 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Minot. Embryology.

A Laboratory Text-Book of Embryology. By CHARLES S. MINOT, S.D., LL.D., Professor of Histology and Human Embryology, Harvard University Medical School. 218 Illustrations. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$4.50

Montgomery. A Text-Book of Practical Gynecology.

By EDWARD E. MONTGOMERY, M.D., Professor of Gynecology in Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia; Gynecologist to the Jefferson and St. Joseph's Hospitals, etc. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 570 Illustrations, many of which are from original sources. Octavo. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00

"The author has a clear conception of his subject; this, with his manner of treatment, introduces the reader to questions otherwise intricate in such a manner as to make them easily comprehended. His introduction, together with his comments on diagnosis and examination of the patient are delightfully clear and instructive. Therapeutics, local and systematic, are clearly and intelligently discussed."—*Brooklyn Medical Journal.*

Morris. Text-Book of Anatomy. Third Edition. 846 Illustrations, 267 in Colors.

A Complete Text-Book. Edited by HENRY MORRIS, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Anatomy at, Middlesex Hospital, assisted by PETER THOMPSON, M.D., J. BLAND SUTTON, F.R.C.S., J. H. DAVIES-COLLEY, F.R.C.S., WM. J. WALSHAM, F.R.C.S., H. ST. JOHN BROOKS, M.D., R. MARCUS GUNN, F.R.C.S., ARTHUR HENSMAN, F.R.C.S., FREDERICK TREVES, F.R.C.S., WILLIAM ANDERSON, F.R.C.S., ARTHUR ROB-INSON, M.D., M.R.C.S., and PROF. W. H. A. JACOBSON. One Handsome Octavo Volume, with 846 Illustrations, of which 267 are printed in Colors. *Thumb Index and Colored Illustrations in all Copies.* Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00; Half Russia, \$8.00

"Of all the text-books of moderate size on human anatomy in the English language, Morris is undoubtedly the most up-to-date and accurate. . . . For the student, the surgeon, or for the general practitioner who desires to review his anatomy, Morris is decidedly the book to buy."—*The Philadelphia Medical Journal.*

* * MORRIS' ANATOMY is now the recognized standard text-book in a large number of medical schools throughout the United States, England, and Canada. It is in many respects the best book for students' use, and in its present edition is the latest and best illustrated of all books on anatomy. The revisions have been carefully made and edited, several sections having been almost entirely rewritten, old illustrations replaced and new ones added, a larger number being printed in colors.

Renal Surgery.

With Special Reference to Stone in the Kidney and Ureter, and to the Surgical Treatment of Calculous Anuria, together with a Critical Examination of Sub-parietal Injuries of the Ureter. Illustrated. 8vo. Cloth, \$2.00

Mitchell and Gulick. Mechanotherapy.

See COHEN, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 10.

Morton on Refraction of the Eye.

Its Diagnosis and the Correction of its Errors. With Chapter on Keratoscopy and Test Types. By A. MORTON, M.B. Sixth Edition, Revised. Cloth, \$1.00

Moullin. Surgery. Third Edition, by Hamilton.

A Complete Text-Book. By C. W. MANSELL MOULLIN, M.A., M.D. (Oxon.), F.R.C.S., Surgeon and Lecturer on Physiology to the London Hospital. Third American Edition, Revised and Edited by the late JOHN B. HAMILTON, M.D., LL.D., Professor of the Principles of Surgery and Clinical Surgery, Rush Medical College, Chicago. 600 Illustrations, over 200 of which are original, and many of which are printed in Colors. Octavo. 1250 pages. Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00

Enlargement of the Prostate.

Its Treatment and Radical Cure. Illustrated. Second Edition, Enlarged. Octavo. Cloth, \$1.75

Inflammation of the Bladder and Urinary Fever.

Octavo. Cloth, \$1.50

Murray. Rough Notes on Remedies.

By WM. MURRAY, M.D., F.R.C.P. (Lond.), Consulting Physician Newcastle-on-Tyne Hospital for Sick Children. Fourth Edition, Enlarged. Crown 8vo. Cloth, \$1.25

Muter. Practical and Analytical Chemistry.

By JOHN MUTER, F.R.S., F.C.S., etc. Third American from the Ninth English Edition. Revised to meet the Requirements of American Medical and Pharmaceutical Colleges. 56 Illustrations. Cloth, \$1.25

New Sydenham Society Publications.

From three to six volumes published each year. *List of Volumes upon application.* Per annum, \$8.00

Notter. The Theory and Practice of Hygiene. Second Edition.

A Complete Treatise by J. LANE NOTTER, M.A., M.D., F.C.S., Fellow and Member of Council of the Sanitary Institute of Great Britain; Professor of Hygiene, Army Medical School; Examiner in Hygiene, University of Cambridge, etc.; and W. H. HORROCKS, M.D., B. Sc. (Lond.), Assistant Professor of Hygiene, Army Medical School, Netley. Illustrated by 15 Lithographic Plates and 138 other Illustrations, and including many Useful Tables. Second Edition, Carefully Revised. Octavo. 1085 pages. Cloth, \$7.00

Oertel. Medical Microscopy.

A Guide to Diagnosis, Elementary Laboratory Methods, and Microscopic Technic. By T. E. OERTEL, M.D., Professor of Histology, Pathology, Bacteriology, and Clinical Microscopy, Medical Department, University of Georgia. 12mo. 131 Illustrations. Cloth, \$2.00

Oettel. Practical Exercises in Electro-Chemistry.

By DR. FELIX OETTEL. Authorized Translation by EDGAR F. SMITH, M.A., Professor of Chemistry, University of Pennsylvania. Illustrated. Cloth, .75

Introduction to Electro-Chemical Experiments.

Illustrated. By same Author and Translator. Cloth, .75

Ohlemann. Ocular Therapeutics for Physicians and Students.

By M. OHLEMAN, M.D., late Physician in the Ophthalmological Clinical Institute, Royal Prussian University of Berlin, etc. Translated and Edited by CHARLES A. OLIVER, A.M., M.D., Attending Surgeon to the Wills Eye Hospital; Ophthalmic Surgeon to the Philadelphia and to the Presbyterian Hospitals. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.75

Ormerod. Diseases of Nervous System.

By J. A. ORMEROD, M.D. (Oxon.), F.R.C.P., Physician to National Hospital for the Paralyzed and Epileptic, London. 66 Wood Engravings. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Osgood. The Winter and Its Dangers.

By HAMILTON OSGOOD, M.D.

Cloth, .40

Ostrom. Massage and the Original Swedish Movements.

Their Application to Various Diseases of the Body. A Manual for Students, Nurses, and Physicians. By KURRE W. OSTROM, from the Royal University of Upsala, Sweden, Formerly Instructor in Massage and Swedish Movements in the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania and in the Philadelphia Polyclinic and College for Graduates in Medicine, etc. Fifth Edition, Enlarged. 115 Illustrations, many of which were drawn especially for this purpose. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Packard's Sea Air and Sea Bathing.

By JOHN H. PACKARD, M.D.

Cloth, .40

Parkes and Kenwood. Hygiene and Public Health.

A Practical Manual. By LOUIS C. PARKES, M.D., D.P.H. (Lond. Univ.), Lecturer on Public Health at St. George's Hospital; Medical Officer of Health and Public Analyst, Borough of Chelsea, London, etc.; and HENRY KENWOOD, M.B., F.C.S., Assistant Professor of Public Health, University College, London, etc. Second Edition, Enlarged and Revised. 85 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$3.00

* * Upon the exhaustion of the fifth edition of what had been known for many years as "Parkes' Hygiene," Dr. Parkes associated with himself Prof. Kenwood. The whole work was recast and issued under this dual authorship as a new book. This edition is the second printed under the new arrangement, but is really the seventh revision.

"The style is good; dry facts, laws, and statistics are put in such a way that the reader does not tire of them and yet finds them easy to remember."—*University Medical Magazine*.

Parsons. Elementary Ophthalmic Optics.

By J. HERBERT PARSONS, M.B., M.R.C.S., Clinical Assistant, Royal London Ophthalmic Hospital. With Diagrammatic Illustrations. Cloth, \$2.00

Pershing. The Diagnosis of Nervous and Mental Diseases.

By HOWELL T. PERSHING, M.D., Professor of Nervous and Mental Diseases in the University of Denver; Neurologist to St. Luke's Hospital; Consultant in Nervous and Mental Diseases to the Arapahoe County Hospital; Member of the American Neurological Association. With colored and other Illustrations. Cloth, \$1.25

Phillips. Spectacles and Eyeglasses.

Their Prescription and Adjustment. By R. J. PHILLIPS, M.D., late Adjunct Professor of Diseases of the Eye, Philadelphia Polyclinic; Ophthalmic Surgeon, Presbyterian Orphanage. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 52 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

The Physician's Visiting List.

Published Annually. Fifty-Third Year (1904) of its Publication.

Hereafter all styles will contain the interleaf or special memoranda page, except the Monthly Edition, and the sizes for 75 and 100 Patients will come in two volumes only.

REGULAR EDITION.

For 25 Patients Weekly.				Tucks, pocket and pencil, Gilt Edges, \$1.00
50	"	"	"	1.25
50	"	"	2 vols. { Jan. to June } " " " " "	2.00
			{ July to Dec. }	
75	"	"	2 vols. { Jan. to June } " " " " "	2.00
			{ July to Dec. }	
100	"	"	2 vols. { Jan. to June } " " " " "	2.25
			{ July to Dec. }	

Perpetual Edition,

without Dates and with Special Memorandum Pages.

For 25 Patients, Interleaved, Tucks, Pocket, and Pencil, \$1.25

For 50 Patients, Interleaved, Tucks, Pocket, and Pencil, \$1.50

Monthly Edition, without Dates.

Can be commenced at any time and used until full. Requires only one writing of patient's name for the whole month.

Plain binding, without Flap or Pencil, .75; Leather cover, Pocket and Pencil, \$1.00

Extra Pencils

will be sent, postpaid, for 25 cents per half dozen.

This list combines the several essential qualities of strength, compactness, durability, and convenience. It is made in all sizes and styles to meet the wants of all physicians. It is not an elaborate, complicated system of keeping accounts, but a plain, simple record, that may be kept with the least expenditure of time and trouble—hence its popularity. A special circular, descriptive of contents, will be sent upon application.

Potter. A Handbook of Materia Medica, Pharmacy, and Therapeutics. Ninth Edition, Enlarged.

Including the Action of Medicines, Special Therapeutics of Disease, Official and Practical Pharmacy, and Minute Directions for Prescription Writing, etc. Including over 650 Prescriptions and Formulæ. By SAMUEL O. L. POTTER, M.A., M.D., M.R.C.P. (Lond.), formerly Professor of the Principles and Practice of Medicine, Cooper Medical College, San Francisco; Major and Brigade Surgeon, U. S. Vol. Ninth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 8vo. *Just Ready.*

With Thumb Index in each copy. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00; Half Russia, \$7.00

Compend of Anatomy, including Visceral Anatomy.

Seventh Edition, Revised and greatly Enlarged. With 16 Plates and 138 other Illustrations. *Being No. 1 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.*

Cloth, .80; Interleaved for Taking Notes, \$1.00

Compend of Materia Medica, Therapeutics, and Prescription Writing.

With Special Reference to the Physiological Action of Drugs. Sixth Revised and Improved Edition, with Index. *Being No. 6 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.*

Cloth, .80; Interleaved for Taking Notes, \$1.00

Potter. Speech and Its Defects.

Considered Physiologically, Pathologically, and Remedially; being the Lea Prize Thesis of Jefferson Medical College, 1882. Revised and Corrected. Cloth, \$1.00

Power. Surgical Diseases of Children

and their Treatment by Modern Methods. By D'ARCY POWER, M.A., F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Demonstrator of Operative Surgery, St. Bartholomew's Hospital; Surgeon to the Victoria Hospital for Children. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.50

Preston. Hysteria and Certain Allied Conditions.

Their Nature and Treatment. With Special Reference to the Application of the Rest Cure, Massage, Electrotherapy, Hypnotism, etc. By GEORGE J. PRESTON, M.D., Professor of Diseases of the Nervous System, College of Physicians and Surgeons, Baltimore; Visiting Physician to the City Hospital; Consulting Neurologist to Bay View Asylum and the Hebrew Hospital; Member American Neurological Association, etc. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.00

Pritchard. Handbook of Diseases of the Ear.

By URBAN PRITCHARD, M.D., F.R.C.S., Professor of Aural Surgery, King's College, London; Aural Surgeon to King's College Hospital; Senior Surgeon to the Royal Ear Hospital, etc. Fourth Edition. Many Illustrations and Formulæ. *In Press.*

Reese's Medical Jurisprudence and Toxicology.

A Text-Book for Medical and Legal Practitioners and Students. By JOHN J. REESE, M.D., Editor of "Taylor's Jurisprudence," formerly Professor of the Principles and Practice of Medical Jurisprudence, including Toxicology, in the University of Pennsylvania Medical Department. Sixth Edition, Revised and Edited by HENRY LEFFMANN, M.D., Pathological Chemist, Jefferson Medical College Hospital; Chemist, State Board of Health; Professor of Chemistry, Woman's Medical College of Pennsylvania, etc. 12mo. 660 pages. Cloth, \$3.00; Leather, \$3.50

"To the student of medical jurisprudence and toxicology it is invaluable, as it is concise, clear, and thorough in every respect."—*The American Journal of the Medical Sciences.*

Reeves. Medical Microscopy.

Including Chapters on Bacteriology, Neoplasms, Urinary Examination, etc. By JAMES E. REEVES, M.D., ex-President American Public Health Association, etc. Numerous Illustrations, some of which are printed in Colors. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.50

Régis. Mental Medicine.

A Practical Manual. By DR. E. RÉGIS, formerly Chief of Clinique of Mental Diseases, Faculty of Medicine of Paris. Authorized Translation by H. M. BANNISTER, M.D., late Senior Assistant Physician, Illinois Eastern Hospital for the Insane, etc. With an Introduction by the Author. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.00

Richardson. Long Life

and How to Reach It. By J. G. RICHARDSON, formerly Professor of Hygiene, University of Pennsylvania. Cloth, .40

Rockwood. Chemical Analysis.

Introduction to Chemical Analysis for Students of Medicine, Pharmacy, and Dentistry. By ELBERT W. ROCKWOOD, B.S., M.D., Professor of Chemistry, Toxicology, and Metallurgy in the Colleges of Medicine, Dentistry, and Pharmacy, University of Iowa, Iowa City. Illustrated. Cloth, \$1.50

Richardson's Mechanical Dentistry.

A Practical Treatise on Mechanical Dentistry. By JOSEPH RICHARDSON, D.D.S. Seventh Edition, Thoroughly Revised and in many parts Rewritten by GEO. W. WARREN, A.M., D.D.S., Professor of Clinical Dentistry and Oral Surgery; Chief of the Clinical Staff, Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery, Philadelphia. With 691 Illustrations. Octavo. 675 pages. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00

Richter's Inorganic Chemistry.

A Text-Book for Students. By PROF. VICTOR VON RICHTER, University of Breslau. Fifth American from Tenth German Edition by PROF. H. KLINGER, University of Königsberg. Authorized Translation by EDGAR F. SMITH, M.A., PH.D., SC.D., Professor of Chemistry, University of Pennsylvania; Member of the Chemical Society of Berlin, etc. With many Illustrations and a Colored Plate. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.75

Organic Chemistry.

The Chemistry of the Carbon Compounds. Third American Edition, Translated from PROF. ANSCHÜTZ's Eighth German Edition by EDGAR F. SMITH, M.A., PH.D., SC.D., Professor of Chemistry, University of Pennsylvania. Revised and Enlarged. Illustrated. 12mo. Two volumes.

Vol. I. Aliphatic Series. 625 pages. Cloth, \$3.00

Vol. II. Carbocyclic and Heterocyclic Series. 671 pages. Cloth, \$3.00

Roberts. Gynecological Pathology.

Gynecological Pathology. By CHARLES HURBERT ROBERTS, M.D., F.R.C.S., M.R.C.P., Physician Queen Charlotte's Lying-in Hospital and to the Samaritan Hospital for Women; Demonstrator of Practical Midwifery and Diseases of Women, and House Surgeon St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London. Elaborately Illustrated with 127 Full-Page Plates containing 151 Figures, several being printed in Colors. Octavo. Extra Cloth, Gilt Top, \$6.00

Robinson. Latin Grammar of Pharmacy and Medicine.

By D. H. ROBINSON, PH.D., Late Professor of Latin Language and Literature, University of Kansas. Introduction by L. E. SAYRE, PH.G., Professor of Pharmacy and Dean of the Department of Pharmacy in University of Kansas. Fourth Edition, with Elaborate Vocabularies, Thoroughly Revised by HANNAH OLIVER, A.M., Assistant Professor of Latin, School of Pharmacy, University of Kansas.

Cloth, \$1.50

"This method of preparing medical students and pharmacists for a practical use of the language is in every way to be commended. . . . Pharmacists should know enough to read prescriptions readily and understandingly."—*Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin.*

Rosenau. Disinfection and Disinfectants.

A Practical Guide for Sanitarians, Health and Quarantine Officers. By M. J. ROSENAU, M.D., Director of the Hygienic Laboratory and Passed Assistant Surgeon, U. S. Marine Hospital Service, Washington, D. C. Illustrated. Cloth, \$2.00

Sayre. Organic Materia Medica and Pharmacognosy.

An Introduction to the Study of the Vegetable Kingdom and the Vegetable and Animal Drugs. Comprising the Botanical and Physical Characteristics, Source, Constituents, Pharmacopœial Preparations; Insects Injurious to Drugs, and Pharmacal Botany. By L. E. SAYRE, B.S., PH.M., Dean of the School of Pharmacy and Professor of Materia Medica and Pharmacy in the University of Kansas; Member Committee of Revision of the United States Pharmacopœia, etc. With Sections on Histology and Microtechnique by WILLIAM C. STEVENS, Professor of Botany in the University of Kansas. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With 374 Illustrations, the majority of which are from Original Drawings. 8vo. Cloth, \$4.50

Schamberg. Compend of Diseases of the Skin.

By JAY F. SCHAMBERG, Professor of Diseases of the Skin, Philadelphia Polyclinic ; Fellow of the College of Physicians of Philadelphia ; Quiz-Master at University of Pennsylvania. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 106 Illustrations. ? *Quiz-Compend ? Series, No. 16.* Cloth, .80 ; Interleaved, \$1.00

Scheube. Diseases of Warm Countries.

A Handbook for Medical Men by DR. B. SCHEUBE, State Physician and Sanitary Adviser, Greiz ; late Professor at the Medical School in Kioto, Japan. Translated from the German by PAULINE FALCKE and edited by JAMES CANTLIE, M.A., M.B., F.R.C.S., Lecturer at the London School of Tropical Medicine ; Surgeon to the Seamen's Hospital Society Albert Dock Hospital, London ; Consulting Surgeon Alice Memorial Hospital, Hong Kong, etc., with Addenda on Yellow Fever by the Editor and on Malaria by C. W. DANIELS, M.R.C.S. With 19 Plates (containing many figures, 29 of which are in colors) and 38 other Illustrations together with 5 Colored Maps. Second Revised Edition. Large Octavo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$8.00

Scott. The Urine : Its Chemical and Microscopical Examination.

By LINDLEY MARCROFT SCOTT, M.A., M.D., etc. With 41 Colored Plates and other Illustrations. Quarto. Cloth, \$5.00

Scoville. The Art of Compounding. Second Edition.

A Text-Book for Students and a Reference Book for Pharmacists. By WILBUR L. SCOVILLE, PH.G., Professor of Applied Pharmacy and Director of the Pharmaceutical Laboratory in the Massachusetts College of Pharmacy. Second Edition, Enlarged and Improved. Cloth, \$2.50 ; Sheep, \$3.50

Self-Examination for Medical Students.

3500 Questions on Medical Subjects, with the proper References to Standard Books in which replies may be found, and including Complete Sets of Questions from two recent State Board Examinations of Penn., Ill., and N. Y. 64mo. Paper, 10 cents.

Smith. Abdominal Surgery. Sixth Edition.

Being a Systematic Description of all the Principal Operations. By J. GREIG SMITH, M.A., F.R.S.E., Surgeon to British Royal Infirmary. 224 Illustrations. Sixth Edition, Enlarged and Thoroughly Revised by JAMES SWAIN, M.D. (Lond.), F.R.C.S., Professor of Surgery, University College, Bristol, etc. Two vols. 8vo. Cloth, \$10.00

Smith. Bacteriology.

Lessons and Laboratory Exercises in Bacteriology. An Outline of Technical Methods Introductory to the Systematic Study and Identification of Bacteria. By ALLEN J. SMITH, M.D., Professor of Pathology in the University of Pennsylvania. 68 Illustrations. Interleaved. Octavo. Cloth, \$1.50

Smith. Electro-Chemical Analysis.

By EDGAR F. SMITH, M.A., PH.D., Sc.D., Professor of Chemistry, University of Pennsylvania. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 39 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

* * * This book has been translated and published in both Germany and France.

Smith and Keller. Experiments.

Arranged for Students in General Chemistry. By EDGAR F. SMITH, M.A., PH.D., Sc.D., Professor of Chemistry, University of Pennsylvania, and DR. H. F. KELLER, Professor of Chemistry, Philadelphia High School. Fourth Revised Edition. 8vo. Illustrated. Cloth, .60

Smith. Dental Metallurgy.

A Manual. By ERNEST A. SMITH, F.C.S., Assistant Instructor in Metallurgy, Royal College of Science, London. Illustrated. Second Edition. Cloth, \$2.00

Smith. Wasting Diseases of Infants and Children.

By EUSTACE SMITH, M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician to the East London Hospital for Children, etc. Sixth Edition, Revised. Cloth, \$2.00

Starling. Elements of Human Physiology.

By ERNEST H. STARLING, M.D. (Lond.), M.R.C.P., Joint Lecturer on Physiology at Guy's Hospital, London, etc. With 100 Illus. 12mo. 437 pages. Cloth, \$1.00

Starr. The Digestive Organs in Childhood.

The Diseases of the Digestive Organs in Infancy and Childhood, with Chapters on the Investigation of Disease, The Management of Children, Massage, etc. By LOUIS STARR, M.D., late Clinical Professor of Diseases of Children in the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania; Physician to the Children's Hospital, Philadelphia. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Illustrated. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.00

The Hygiene of the Nursery.

Including the General Regimen and Feeding of Infants and Children, and the Domestic Management of the Ordinary Emergencies of Early Life, Massage, etc. Sixth Edition, Enlarged. 25 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

* * General and specific rules for feeding are given, and Diet Lists from the first week up to the eighteenth month, with various recipes for artificial foods, peptonized milk, etc. Directions for the sterilization of milk, substitutes for milk, preparation of food for both well and sick children, nutritious enemata, etc., and the general management of the Nursery.

Stearns. Lectures on Mental Diseases.

By HENRY PUTNAM STEARNS, M.D., Physician-Superintendent at the Hartford Retreat; Lecturer on Mental Diseases in Yale University. With a Digest of Laws of the Various States Relating to Care of Insane. Illustrated. Cloth, \$2.75; Sheep, \$3.25

Steell. The Physical Signs of Pulmonary Disease.

By GRAHAM STEELL, M.D., F.R.C.P., Lecturer on Clinical Medicine and on Diseases of the Heart at Owens College, Manchester. Illustrated. Cloth, \$1.25

Stevenson and Murphy. A Treatise on Hygiene.

By Various Authors. Edited by THOMAS STEVENSON, M.D., F.R.C.P., Lecturer on Chemistry and Medical Jurisprudence at Guy's Hospital, London, and SHIRLEY F. MURPHY, Medical Officer of Health to the County of London. In three octavo volumes.

Vol. I. With Plates and Wood Engravings. Octavo. Cloth, \$6.00

Vol. II. With Plates and Wood Engravings. Octavo. Cloth, \$6.00

Vol. III. Sanitary Law. Octavo. Cloth, \$5.00

* * *Special Circular upon application.*

Stewart's Compend of Pharmacy.

Based upon "Remington's Text-Book of Pharmacy." By F. E. STEWART, M.D., PH.G., late Quiz-Master in Chemistry and Theoretical Pharmacy, Philadelphia College of Pharmacy; Lecturer on Pharmacology, Jefferson Medical College. Fifth Edition. Complete Tables of Metric and English Weights and Measures. ? *Quiz-Compend?* Series. Cloth, .80; Interleaved for the Addition of Notes, \$1.00

Stirling. Outlines of Practical Physiology.

Including Chemical and Experimental Physiology, with Special Reference to Practical Medicine. By W. STIRLING, M.D., Sc.D., Professor of Physiology and Histology, Owens College, Victoria University, Manchester; Examiner in Physiology, Universities of Edinburgh and London. Third Edition. 289 Illustrations. Cloth, \$2.00

Outlines of Practical Histology.

368 Illustrations. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With new Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.00

Stöhr. Text-Book of Histology, Including the Microscopical Technic. 353 Illustrations. New Fifth Edition.

By DR. PHILIP STÖHR, Professor of Anatomy at University of Würzburg. Authorized Translation by EMMA L. BILSTEIN, M.D., formerly Demonstrator of Histology, Woman's Medical College of Penna. Edited, with Additions, by DR. ALFRED SCHAPER, Professor of Anatomy, University of Breslau; formerly Demonstrator of Histology, Harvard Medical School, Boston. Fifth American based upon the Tenth German Edition, Enlarged and Revised. 353 Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$3.00

"This edition of an already well-known student's manual requires little but favorable comment. Its other editions have made it well and favorably known, and this one only makes the work's position more secure. The book is not only a useful one for the student, but makes a very good work of reference for its subject, and is thus entitled to a place upon the shelves of the practitioner."—*The Medical Record, New York.*

Sturgis. Manual of Venereal Diseases. Seventh Edition.

By F. R. STURGIS, M.D., Sometime Clinical Professor of Venereal Diseases in the Medical Department of the University of the City of New York; formerly one of the Visiting Surgeons to Charity Hospital, Blackwells Island, Department of Venereal Diseases; Member of the American Association of Genito-Urinary Surgeons, etc. Seventh Edition, Revised and in part Rewritten by F. R. STURGIS, M.D., and FOLLEN CABOT, M.D., Instructor in Genito-Urinary and Venereal Diseases in the Cornell University Medical College; Genito-Urinary Out-Patient Surgeon to Bellevue Hospital; Visiting Dermatologist to the New York City (Charity) Hospital; Lecturer on Genito-Urinary and Venereal Diseases, University of Vermont, 1900. 12mo. 200 pages. Cloth, \$1.25

Sutton's Volumetric Analysis.

A Systematic Handbook for the Quantitative Estimation of Chemical Substances by Measure, Applied to Liquids, Solids, and Gases. Adapted to the Requirements of Pure Chemical Research, Pathological Chemistry, Pharmacy, Metallurgy, Photography, etc., and for the Valuation of Substances Used in Commerce, Agriculture, and the Arts. By FRANCIS SUTTON, F.C.S. Eighth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With 116 Illustrations. 8vo. Cloth, \$5.00

Swanzy. Diseases of the Eye and their Treatment.

A Handbook for Physicians and Students. By HENRY R. SWANZY, A.M., M.B., F.R.C.S.I., Surgeon to the Royal Eye and Ear Hospital; Ophthalmic Surgeon to the Adelaide Hospital, Dublin; Ex-President of the Ophthalmological Society of the United Kingdom. Eighth Edition, Thoroughly Revised and Enlarged. 167 Illustrations, and a Zephyr Card of Holmgren's Tests for Color Blindness. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.50

"Is without doubt the most satisfactory manual we have upon diseases of the eye. It occupies the middle ground between the students' manuals, which are too brief and concise, and the encyclopedic treatises, which are too extended and detailed to be of special use to the general practitioner."—*Chicago Medical Recorder.*

Symonds. Manual of Chemistry

for Medical Students. By BRANDRETH SYMONDS, A.M., M.D., Assistant Physician Roosevelt Hospital, Out-Patient Department, New York. Second Edition. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.00

Taft. Index of Dental Periodical Literature.

By JONATHAN TAFT, D.D.S. 8vo.

Cloth, \$2.00

Tanner's Memoranda of Poisons

and their Antidotes and Tests. By THOS. HAWKES TANNER, M.D. Ninth Edition, Revised by HENRY LEFFMANN, M.D., Professor of Chemistry, Woman's Medical College of Penna.; Vice-President Society of Public Analysts. 12mo. Cloth, .75

Tavera. Medicinal Plants of the Philippines.

By T. H. PARDO DE TAVERA, Doctor of Medicine in Faculty of Paris; Scientific Commissioner S.M. in Philippine Islands, etc. Translated and Revised by JEROME B. THOMAS, JR., A.B., M.D., Captain and Assistant Surgeon United States Volunteers. Cloth, \$2.00

Taylor. Practice of Medicine.

By FREDERICK TAYLOR, M.D., Physician to, and Lecturer on Medicine at, Guy's Hospital, London; Physician to Evelina Hospital for Sick Children. Sixth Edition, Revised. Cloth, \$4.00

Taylor and Wells. Diseases of Children. Illustrated.

A Manual for Students and Physicians. By JOHN MADISON TAYLOR, A.M., M.D., Professor of Diseases of Children, Philadelphia Polyclinic; Pediatricist to the Philadelphia Hospital; Assistant Physician to the Children's Hospital; Consulting Physician to the Elwyn and the Vineland Training Schools for Feeble-minded Children; Neurologist to the Howard Hospital, etc.; and WILLIAM H. WELLS, M.D., Adjunct Professor of Obstetrics and Diseases of Infancy in the Philadelphia Polyclinic; Demonstrator of Clinical Obstetrics, Jefferson Medical College; Chief Gynecologist, Mt. Sinai Hospital. With Numerous Illustrations. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Octavo. Cloth, \$4.50

An Italian translation of this book is now being published in Turin.

Temperature Charts

for Recording Temperature, Respiration, Pulse, Day of Disease, Date, Age, Sex, Occupation, Name, etc. Put up in pads; each .50

Thayer. Compend of General Pathology.

Specially adapted for Medical Students and Physicians. By A. E. THAYER, M.D., Assistant Instructor in Pathology, Cornell Medical School; Pathologist to the City Hospital, New York City, etc. 78 Illustrations. No. 15 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series. 12mo. Cloth, .80; Interleaved for Notes, \$1.00

Compend of Special Pathology. 34 Illustrations.

No. 18 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.

Cloth, .80; Interleaved, \$1.00

A Manual of Pathology, General and Special.

Based upon above Compend, Revised and Enlarged with New Illustrations. One Volume. 12mo. *Nearly Ready.*

Thorington. Retinoscopy. Fourth Edition.

(The Shadow Test) in the Determination of Refraction at One Meter Distance with the Plane Mirror. By JAMES THORINGTON, A.M., M.D., Professor of Diseases of the Eye in the Philadelphia Polyclinic; Ophthalmologist to the Elwyn, Vineland, and New Jersey State Training Schools for Feeble-minded Children; Lecturer on the Anatomy, Physiology, and Care of the Eyes in the Philadelphia Manual Training Schools, etc. 51 Illustrations, several of which are Colored. Fourth Edition, Enlarged. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Refraction and How to Refract. Second Edition.

With 200 Illustrations, most of which are made from Original Drawings, and 13 of which are in Colors. Second Edition, Revised. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Thorne. The Schott Methods of the Treatment of Chronic Diseases of the Heart.

With an Account of the Nauheim Baths and of the Therapeutic Exercises. By W. BEZLY THORNE, M.D., M.R.C.P. With Plates and Numerous other Illustrations. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Octavo. Cloth, \$2.00

Thresh. Water and Water Supplies.

By JOHN C. THRESH, D.SC. (Lond.), M.D., D.P.H. (Cambridge), Medical Officer of Health to the Essex County Council; Lecturer on Public Health, King's College, London; Fellow of the Institute of Chemistry; Member Society Public Analysts, etc. Third Edition, Revised and very much Enlarged. Illustrated. 527 pages. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.00

Tissier. Pneumatotherapy and Inhalation Methods.

See COHEN, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 10.

Tomes' Dental Anatomy.

A Manual of Dental Anatomy, Human and Comparative. By C. S. TOMES, D.D.S. 263 Illustrations. Fifth Edition. 12mo. Cloth, \$4.00

Dental Surgery.

A System of Dental Surgery. By JOHN TOMES, F.R.S. Fourth Edition, Thoroughly Revised by C. S. TOMES, D.D.S. With 289 Illustrations. 12mo. 717 pages. Cloth, \$4.00

Traube. Physico-Chemical Methods.

By DR. J. TRAUBE, Privatdocent in the Technical High School of Berlin. Authorized Translation by W. D. HARDIN, Harrison Senior Fellow in Chemistry, University of Pennsylvania. With 97 Illustrations. 8vo. Cloth, \$1.50

Treves. German-English Medical Dictionary.

By FREDERICK TREVES, F.R.C.S., assisted by DR. HUGO LANG, B.A. (Munich). 12mo. Half Calf, \$3.25

Physical Education: Its Effects, Value, Methods, etc. 8vo.

Cloth, .75

Tuke. Dictionary of Psychological Medicine.

Giving the Definition, Etymology, and Synonyms of the Terms used in Medical Psychology, with the Symptoms, Pathology, and Treatment of the Recognized Forms of Mental Disorders, together with the Law of Lunacy in Great Britain and Ireland. Edited by D. HACK TUKE, M.D., LL.D., Examiner in Mental Physiology in the University of London. Two volumes. Octavo. Cloth, \$10.00

"A comprehensive, standard book."—*The British Medical Journal*.

"It is vastly more than a Dictionary. It is an elaborate and complete Encyclopædia of Psychological Medicine; in fact, a small library in itself on that subject. The high expectations which Dr. Tuke's work in this field had raised are more than fulfilled. . . . It will be found to be a most useful reference handbook for the alienist and student. The general physician also cannot fail to find the book exceedingly useful in special cases."—*Boston Medical and Surgical Journal*.

"We believe that the student might obtain a better knowledge of insanity from this work than from most of the text-books, besides a great deal of interesting and valuable information nowhere else accessible."—*American Journal of Insanity*.

Turnbull's Artificial Anesthesia.

A Manual of Anesthetic Agents in the Treatment of Diseases, also their Employment in Dental Surgery; Modes of Administration; Considering their Relative Risks; Tests of Purity; Treatment of Asphyxia; Spasms of the Glottis; Syncope, etc. By LAURENCE TURNBULL, M.D., PH.G., Aural Surgeon to Jefferson College Hospital, etc. Fourth Edition, Revised. 54 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.50

Tyson. The Practice of Medicine. Third Edition.

A Text-Book for Physicians and Students, with Special Reference to Diagnosis and Treatment. By JAMES TYSON, M.D., Professor of Medicine in the University of Pennsylvania; Physician to the University and to the Philadelphia Hospitals, etc. With Colored Plates and many other Illustrations. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 124 Illustrations. 8vo.

Cloth, \$5.50; Leather, \$6.50; Half Russia, \$7.50

* * This edition has been entirely reset from new type. The author has revised it carefully and thoroughly, and added much new material and new illustrations.

"This work not only represents the work of a practitioner of great experience, but of a careful culling of the facts set forth in contemporary literature by one who well understands the art of separating the true from the false."—*The Journal of the American Medical Association, Chicago.*

"Represents the outcome of much well-directed labor, and constitutes a reliable and useful text-book."—*The London Lancet.*

"Few teachers in the country can claim a longer apprenticeship in the laboratory and at the bedside, none a more intimate acquaintance with students, since in one capacity or another he has been associated with the University of Pennsylvania and the Philadelphia Hospital for nearly thirty years. Moreover, he entered medicine through the portal of pathology, a decided advantage in the writer of a text-book. . . . The typography is decidedly above works of this class issued from our publishing houses. There is no American Practice of the same attractive appearance. The print is unusually sharp and clear, and the quality of the paper particularly good. . . . It is a piece of good, honest work, carefully conceived and conscientiously carried out."—*University Medical Magazine.*

* * Sample Pages and Illustrations sent free upon application.

Guide to the Examination of Urine. Tenth Edition.

For the Use of Physicians and Students. With Colored Plate and Numerous Illustrations Engraved on Wood. Tenth Edition, Revised, Enlarged and partly Rewritten. 12mo.

Cloth, \$1.50

"The book is a reliable one and has no superior among the numerous manuals devoted to the subject."—*Boston Medical and Surgical Journal.*

"No similar treatise has been so long before the professional public, and none comes so near to being a classic on the subject of which it treats as does this one."—*Buffalo Medical Journal.*

Handbook of Physical Diagnosis.

Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With two Colored Plates and 55 other Illustrations. 298 pages. 12mo.

Cloth, \$1.50

Cell Doctrine.

Its History and Present State. Second Edition.

Cloth, \$1.50

United States Pharmacopœia, 1890.

Seventh Decennial Revision. Cloth, \$2.50 (Postpaid, \$2.77); Sheep, \$3.00 (Postpaid, \$3.27); Interleaved, \$4.00 (Postpaid, \$4.50). Printed on one side of page only, unbound, \$3.50 (Postpaid, \$3.90).

Select Tables from the U. S. P.

Being Nine of the Most Important and Useful Tables, printed on Separate Sheets. Carefully put up in Patent Envelope.

.25

Ulzer and Fraénkel. Introduction to Chemical-Technical Analysis.

By PROF. F. ULZER and DR. A. FRAENKEL, Directors of the Testing Laboratory of the Royal Technological Museum, Vienna. Authorized Translation by HERMANN FLECK, NAT.SC.D., Instructor in Chemistry and Chemical Technical Analysis in the John Harrison Laboratory of Chemistry, University of Pennsylvania, with an Appendix by the Translator relating to Food Stuffs, Asphaltum, and Paint. 12 Illustrations. 8vo. Cloth, \$1.25

Van Nüys on the Urine.

Chemical Analysis of Healthy and Diseased Urine, Qualitative and Quantitative. By T. C. VAN NÜYS. 39 Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$1.00

Van Harlingen on Skin Diseases.

A Practical Manual of Diagnosis and Treatment, with Special Reference to Differential Diagnosis. By ARTHUR VAN HARLINGEN, M.D., Emeritus Professor of Diseases of the Skin in the Philadelphia Polyclinic; Dermatologist to the Children's Hospital. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With Formulæ and Illustrations, several being in Colors. 580 pages. Cloth, \$2.75

Virchow's Post-mortem Examinations.

A Description and Explanation of the Method of Performing them in the Dead-House of the Berlin Charité Hospital, with Especial Reference to Medico-Legal Practice. By PROFESSOR VIRCHOW. Translated by DR. T. P. SMITH. Illustrated. Third Edition. Cloth, .75

Voswinkel. Surgical Nursing.

A Manual for Nurses. By BERTHA M. VOSWINKEL, Graduate Episcopal Hospital, Philadelphia; late Nurse-in-Charge Children's Hospital, Columbus, O. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 111 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.00

Walker. Students' Aid in Ophthalmology.

By GERTRUDE A. WALKER, A.B., M.D., Clinical Instructor in Diseases of the Eye at Woman's Medical College of Pennsylvania. 40 Illustrations and Colored Plate. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Walsham. Surgery: Its Theory and Practice. Seventh Edition.

For Students and Physicians. By WM. J. WALSHAM, M.D., F.R.C.S., Senior Assistant Surgeon to, and Demonstrator of Practical Surgery in, St. Bartholomew's Hospital; Surgeon to Metropolitan Free Hospital, London. Seventh Edition, Revised and Enlarged by 100 pages. With 483 Illustrations and 28 Skiagrams. Cloth, \$3.50

Warden. An English Handbook to the Paris Medical School.

By DR. A. A. WARDEN, Physician to the Hartford British Hospital, Paris. With Prefatory Notes by Lord Lister of London, and Professor W. W. KEEN of Philadelphia. *Just Ready.* Paper, .75

Warren. Compend of Dental Pathology and Dental Medicine.

Containing all the most Noteworthy Points of Interest to the Dental Student and a Chapter on Emergencies. By GEORGE W. WARREN, D.D.S., Professor of Clinical Dentistry and Oral Surgery; Clinical Chief, Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery, Philadelphia. Third Edition, Enlarged. Illustrated. *Being No. 13 of Quiz-Compend Series.* 12mo. Cloth, .80; Interleaved for the Addition of Notes, \$1.00

Dental Prosthesis and Metallurgy.

129 Illustrations.

Cloth, \$1.25

Weber and Hinsdale. Climatology—Health Resorts—Mineral Springs.

See COHEN, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 10.

Wells. Compend of Gynecology.

By WM. H. WELLS, M.D., Demonstrator of Clinical Obstetrics, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia; Chief Gynecologist Mt. Sinai Hospital; Fellow of the College of Physicians of Philadelphia. Third Edition, Revised. 140 Illustrations. *Being No. 7 ? Quiz-Compend ? Series.* 12mo. Cloth, .80; Interleaved for Notes, \$1.00

Wethered. Medical Microscopy.

A Guide to the Use of the Microscope in Practical Medicine. By FRANK J. WETHERED, M.D., Demonstrator of Practical Medicine, Middlesex Hospital Medical School, London. With a Colored Plate and 101 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$2.00

Weyl. Sanitary Relations of the Coal-Tar Colors.

By THEODORE WEYL. Authorized Translation by HENRY LEFFMANN, M.D., PH.D. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.25

Whitacre. Laboratory Text-Book of Pathology.

By HORACE J. WHITACRE, M.D., Demonstrator of Pathology, Medical College of Ohio, Cincinnati. 121 Original Drawings and Microphotographs. 8vo. Cloth, \$1.50

White. The Mouth and Teeth. Illustrated.

By J. W. WHITE, M.D., D.D.S. Cloth, .40

Wilcox. A Manual of Fever Nursing.

A Text-book for Nurses. By REYNOLD W. WILCOX, M.A., M.D., LL.D., Professor of Clinical Medicine and Therapeutics at the New York Post-Graduate Medical School and Hospital; Visiting Physician St. Mark's Hospital; Assistant Physician Bellevue Hospital, etc. With Illustrations. *Preparing.*

White and Wilcox. Materia Medica, Pharmacy, Pharmacology, and Therapeutics. Fifth Edition.

A Handbook for Students. By W. HALE WHITE, M.D., F.R.C.P., etc., Physician to, and Lecturer on Materia Medica and Therapeutics, Guy's Hospital; Examiner in Materia Medica to the Conjoint Board, etc. Fifth American Edition, Revised by REYNOLD W. WILCOX, M.A., M.D., LL.D., Professor of Clinical Medicine and Therapeutics at the New York Post-Graduate Medical School and Hospital; Visiting Physician, St. Mark's Hospital; Assistant Visiting Physician, Bellevue Hospital. Enlarged and Improved. 12mo. Cloth, \$3.00; Leather, \$3.50

Williams. Manual of Bacteriology. Third Edition.

By HERBERT U. WILLIAMS, M.D., Professor of Pathology and Bacteriology, Medical Department, University of Buffalo. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 88 Illustrations. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.75

Wilson. Handbook of Hygiene and Sanitary Science.

By GEORGE WILSON, M.A., M.D. Illustrated. 8th Edition. 12mo. Cloth, \$3.00

Wilson. The Summer and its Diseases.

By JAMES C. WILSON, M.D., Professor of the Practice of Medicine and Clinical Medicine, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. Cloth, .40

Wilson. System of Human Anatomy.

Eleventh Revised Edition, Edited by HENRY EDWARD CLARK, M.D., M.R.C.S. 492 Illustrations, 26 Colored Plates, and a Glossary of Terms. 12mo. Cloth, \$5.00

Winckel. Text-Book of Obstetrics.

Including the Pathology and Therapeutics of the Puerperal State. By DR. F. WINCKEL, Professor of Gynecology, Royal University Clinic for Women in Munich. Authorized Translation by J. CLIFTON EDGAR, A.M., M.D., Professor of Obstetrics and Clinical Midwifery, Cornell University Medical Department, New York. 190 Illustrations. Octavo. Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00

Winternitz. Hydrotherapy—Thermotherapy—Balneology.

See COHEN, Physiologic Therapeutics, page 10.

Wood. Brain Work and Overwork.By H. C. WOOD, Clinical Professor of Nervous Diseases, University of Pennsylvania.
12mo. Cloth, .40**Woody. Essentials of Medical and Clinical Chemistry.**

With Laboratory Exercises. By SAMUEL E. WOODY, A.M., M.D., Professor of Chemistry and Diseases of Children in the Medical Department, Kentucky University, Louisville. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50

Worth. Squint, Its Causes, Pathology, and Treatment.By CLAUD WORTH, F.R.C.S. 33 Illustrations. 12mo. *Just Ready.* Cloth, \$2.00**Wright. Ophthalmology. New Edition. 117 Illustrations.**

A Text-Book by JOHN W. WRIGHT, A.M., M.D., Professor of Ophthalmology and Clinical Ophthalmology in Ohio Medical University; Ophthalmologist to the Protestant and University Hospitals, etc. Second Edition, Revised, Rewritten, and Enlarged. With many new Illustrations. Cloth, \$3.00

Yutzy. Guide to the Dissection of the Human Body.

Based on Morris' Anatomy, By SIMON M. YUTZY, M.D., Instructor in Osteology and Demonstrator of Anatomy, University of Michigan. Paper Cover, .25

THE STANDARD TEXT-BOOK**MORRIS' ANATOMY****New Edition****Third Revised Edition, Enlarged and Improved****846 Illustrations, of which 267 are Colored****Octavo. 1328 Pages. Cloth, \$6.00; Leather, \$7.00****THUMB
INDEX
IN EACH
COPY**

"Morris' Anatomy" was published at a time when *methods of teaching, the art of engraving, and distinct advance in anatomical illustration* made desirable a *new and modern text-book*. The rapid sale of the first edition, its immediate adoption as a text-book by a large number of medical schools, and its purchase by physicians and surgeons proved its value and made it from the day of publication a standard authority.

In making this new edition the editors and publishers have used every endeavor to enhance its value. The text has been thoroughly revised and in many parts rewritten; the editor has devoted himself to the task of making it a harmonious whole; many new illustrations have replaced those used in the first edition, and a large number have been printed in colors, while the typographical appearance has been improved in several particulars.

The illustrations, in correctness and excellence of execution, are equaled by no similar treatise; about \$1000 having been expended on new and improved blocks for this edition alone.

"The evergrowing popularity of the book with teachers and students is an index of its value, and it may safely be recommended to all interested."—*Medical Record, New York.*

"Of all the text-books of moderate size on human anatomy in the English language, Morris is undoubtedly the most up-to-date and accurate."—*Philadelphia Medical Journal.*

**** CIRCULAR WITH SAMPLE PAGES AND ILLUSTRATIONS FREE.**

From the Southern Clinic.

"We know of no series of books issued by any house that so fully meets our approval as these ? Quiz-Compends?. They are well arranged, full, and concise, and are really the best line of text-books that could be found for either student or practitioner."

BLAKISTON'S ?QUIZ=COMPENDS?

The Best Series of Manuals for the Use of Students.

Price of each, Cloth, .80. Interleaved for taking Notes, \$1.00.

These Compends are based on the most popular text-books and the lectures of prominent professors, and are kept constantly revised, so that they may thoroughly represent the present state of the subject upon which they treat. The authors have had large experience as Quiz-Masters and attachés of colleges, and are well acquainted with the wants of students. They are arranged in the most approved form, thorough and concise, containing over 4500 pages, and more than 900 illustrations, inserted wherever they could be used to advantage. Can be used by students of any college, and contain information nowhere else collected in such a condensed practical shape.

- No. 1. **HUMAN ANATOMY.** Seventh Revised and Enlarged Edition. Including Visceral Anatomy. Can be used with either Morris's or Gray's Anatomy. 138 Illustrations and 16 Plates of Nerves and Arteries, with Explanatory Tables, etc. By SAMUEL O. L. POTTER, M.D., formerly Professor of the Practice of Medicine, Cooper Medical College, San Francisco; Major and Brigade Surgeon, U. S. Vol. *Just Ready.*
- No. 2. **PRACTICE OF MEDICINE. Part I.** Sixth Edition, Revised, Enlarged, and Improved. By DAN'L E. HUGHES, M.D., Physician-in-Chief, Philadelphia Hospital; late Demonstrator of Clinical Medicine, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia.
- No. 3. **PRACTICE OF MEDICINE. Part II.** Sixth Edition, Revised, Enlarged, and Improved. Same author as No. 2.
- No. 4. **PHYSIOLOGY.** Eleventh Edition, with new Illustrations. Enlarged and Revised. By A. P. BRUBAKER, M.D., Professor of Physiology in the Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery; Adjunct Professor of Physiology, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia.
- No. 5. **OBSTETRICS.** Seventh Edition. By HENRY G. LANDIS, M.D. Revised and Edited by WM. H. WELLS, M.D., Demonstrator of Clinical Obstetrics, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. Enlarged. 52 Illustrations.
- No. 6. **MATERIA MEDICA, THERAPEUTICS, AND PRESCRIPTION WRITING.** Sixth Revised Edition. Same author as No. 1.
- No. 7. **GYNECOLOGY.** Third Edition. By WM. H. WELLS, M.D., Demonstrator of Clinical Obstetrics, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. 140 Illustrations.
- No. 8. **DISEASES OF THE EYE AND REFRACTION.** Second Edition. Including Treatment and Surgery and a Section on Local Therapeutics. By GEORGE M. GOULD, M.D., Editor *American Medicine*, and W. L. PYLE, M.D., Assistant Surgeon, Wills Eye Hospital. With Formulæ, Glossary, several useful Tables, and 109 Illustrations.
- No. 9. **SURGERY, Minor Surgery, and Bandaging.** Fifth Edition, Enlarged and Improved. By ORVILLE HORWITZ, B.S., M.D., Clinical Professor of Genito-Urinary Surgery and Venereal Diseases in Jefferson Medical College; Surgeon to Philadelphia Hospital, etc. With 98 Formulæ and 167 Illustrations.
- No. 10. **MEDICAL CHEMISTRY.** Fourth Edition. Including Urinalysis, Chemistry of Milk, Blood, etc. By HENRY LEFFMANN, M.D., Professor of Chemistry in Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery and in the Woman's Medical College, Philadelphia.
- No. 11. **PHARMACY.** Fifth Edition. Based upon Professor Remington's Text-Book of Pharmacy. By F. E. STEWART, M.D., PH.G., late Quiz-Master in Pharmacy and Chemistry, Philadelphia College of Pharmacy; Lecturer at Jefferson Medical College.
- No. 12. **EQUINE ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY.** Illustrated. By WM. R. BALLOU, M.D., Professor of Equine Anatomy at New York College of Veterinary Surgeons; Physician to Bellevue Dispensary, etc. With 29 graphic Illustrations.
- No. 13. **DENTAL PATHOLOGY AND DENTAL MEDICINE.** Third Edition, Illustrated. By GEORGE W. WARREN, D.D.S., Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery.
- No. 14. **DISEASES OF CHILDREN.** Colored Plate. By MARCUS P. HATFIELD, Professor of Diseases of Children, Chicago Medical College. Third Edition. *Just Ready.*
- No. 15. **GENERAL PATHOLOGY.** Illustrated. By A. E. THAYER, M.D., etc.
- No. 16. **DISEASES OF THE SKIN.** By JAY F. SCHAMBERG, M.D., Professor of Skin Diseases, Philadelphia Polyclinic. Third Edition, Revised. 106 Illustrations.
- No. 17. **HISTOLOGY.** Illustrated. By H. H. CUSHING, M.D. *Preparing.*
- No. 18. **SPECIAL PATHOLOGY.** Illustrated. By same author as No. 15. *Just Ready.*
- No. 19. **KYLE—EAR, NOSE, AND THROAT.** 100 Illustrations. *Just Ready.*

SECOND EDITION REVISED

PRACTICAL GYNECOLOGY

A Modern Comprehensive Text-Book

By E. E. MONTGOMERY, M.D.

Professor of Gynecology, Jefferson Medical College; Gynecologist to the Jefferson Medical College and St. Joseph's Hospitals; Consulting Gynecologist to the Philadelphia Lying-in Charity

WITH FIVE HUNDRED AND SEVENTY
ILLUSTRATIONS

Nearly all of which have been Drawn and Engraved Specially for this
Work, for the most part from Original Sources

OCTAVO. CLOTH, \$5.00; LEATHER, \$6.00

From THE JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION.

"Fashion in medical book-making seems to be running to the composite, which may be advantageous and the means of producing a better book than one written by an individual. It may be the old-fashioned notions of the reviewer, but he believes in the old idea of one book, one author, and he should have all the responsibility, all the criticism, and all the glory that attach to it. The composite is likely to be written under a 'rush' order—so much space, in so much time, for so much money. The work before us is the work of one individual, and the personality of that individual is evident through the whole book. . . . The result shows painstaking effort in every detail, in conciseness of statements, in arrangement of subjects, and in the systematic order and completeness in which each is considered. . . . The author is neither too radical nor too conservative in his consideration of the conditions that may need radical operations. In the introduction he tells us that the true gynecologist must be 'so conservative that he will sacrifice no organ whose physiologic integrity is capable of being restored; so bold and courageous that his patient shall not forfeit her opportunity for life or restored health through his failure to assume the responsibility of any operative procedure necessary to secure the object.' This is the basal idea that permeates the book: the ultra-radical operator will find no endorsement, and the 'tinkering' gynecologist—he who treats all diseases of women by means of a pledget of cotton and a speculum—no encouragement in its pages.

"The book is one that can be recommended to the student, to the general practitioner—who must sometimes be a gynecologist to a certain extent whether he will or not—and to the specialist, as an ideal and in every way complete work on the gynecology of to-day—a practical work for practical workers."

DESCRIPTIVE CIRCULAR UPON APPLICATION.

NOW READY

DISEASES OF THE SKIN

Their Description, Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment, with
Special Reference to the Skin Eruptions of Children.

By H. RADCLIFFE CROCKER, M.D.

Physician to the Department of Skin Diseases, University College Hospital, London

MESSRS. P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO. take pleasure in announcing the publication of the new third revised edition of *Diseases of the Skin*, by Dr. H. Radcliffe Crocker. This announcement, coming at a time when recent progress in dermatology makes an authoritative work upon the subject a positive necessity, is considered of special importance by the publishers, and it is believed the same view will be taken by the profession. Crocker on the Skin is a book built entirely upon superior merit. It has been acknowledged by the American medical press as "the best text-book in the English language." The new third edition maintains this high standard of excellence.

It is a safe, accurate, eminently practical and strictly modern treatise, well and clearly written by a man of large experience and most excellent judgment. Though completely scientific, it is written in such a happy manner that the tyro may follow the writer almost as readily as the expert on diseases of the skin. It will be seen, therefore, that it appeals to general practitioners as well as specialists, while to the student it will serve as a valuable guide when he enters upon the more arduous task of practice.

The etiology, symptomatology, pathology and minute anatomy, constitutional conditions, diagnosis and treatment of each disease mentioned is fully entered upon, the therapeutics, dietetics, and general regimen coming in also for their due share of attention, great strength in the accuracy of statement and method and clearness of definition and differentiation being shown. The newer remedies and bacteriological researches, in their bearing upon dermatology, are carefully noted; and particular attention is paid to eruptions as they occur in childhood. This latter feature is one usually much neglected in general text-books, and its value is the greater from the known practical and extensive experience which the author has had in this field.

The book proves Dr. Crocker to be closely in touch with the work and teachings of modern dermatology; and he has sifted from the vast accumulations of recent literature the facts and opinions which have a definite value and are worthy of permanent record. The illustrations, too, showing as they do the morbid conditions of the different structures affected in diseases of the skin, are a not unimportant feature.

Many valuable additions to the text are noted in the new third edition of this standard work. The whole book has been systematically gone over and numerous changes made where recent progress in dermatology and a more exact knowledge of the subject has dictated. The result is a work every page of which bears the impress of honesty, thoroughness, and large personal experience.

Third Edition, Thoroughly Revised, with New Illustrations. Octavo; 1400 pages.
Cloth, \$5.00; Leather, \$6.00.

CARPENTER ON THE MICROSCOPE

AND ITS REVELATIONS

EIGHTH EDITION

Edited by W. H. Dallinger, D.Sc., D.C.L., F.R.S.

With 23 Plates and nearly 900 Engravings

OCTAVO. 1181 PAGES. CLOTH, \$8.00; HALF MOROCCO, \$9.00

*** Eight of the chapters have been entirely rewritten and the text throughout reconstructed, enlarged, and revised with the aid and advice of E. M. Nelson, ex-President of The Royal Microscopical Society; Arthur Bolles Lee, author of "The Microtometist's Vade Mecum"; Dr. E. Crookshank, the well-known Bacteriologist; Prof. T. Bonney, F.R.S.; W. J. Pope, F.I.C., F.C.S., etc., Chemist to the Goldsmith's Technical Institute; Prof. A. W. Bennett, Lecturer on Botany at St. Thomas' Hospital; and F. Jeffrey Bell, Professor of Comparative Anatomy and Zoology, King's College, London.

*** A thorough and complete revision of the entire text has been made; eight chapters have been entirely reconstructed, and everything of importance to Microscopy which has transpired in the interval has been noted. This applies to the theory of the Microscope as well as to its use. Many new illustrations have been included and it has been very materially increased in size.

"CARPENTER" is the only complete and exhaustive modern work on
the Science of Microscopy

Diseases of the Digestive Tract

Their Special Pathology, Diagnosis, and Treatment. With
Sections on Anatomy and Physiology, Analysis of Stomach
and Intestinal Contents, Secretions, Feces, Urine, Bacteria,
Parasites, etc., Surgery, Dietetics, Diseases of the Rectum, etc.

AN EXHAUSTIVE SYSTEMATIC TREATISE

By **JOHN C. HEMMETER, M.D.**

Professor in the Medical Department of the University of Maryland; Consultant to the University Hospital and
Director of the Clinical Laboratory, etc.; formerly Clinical Professor of Medicine
at the Baltimore Medical College, etc.

DISEASES OF THE STOMACH. Third Edition.

With 15 Plates and 41 other Illustrations, some of which
are printed in Colors. Octavo. 894 pages.

Cloth, \$6.00; Sheep, \$7.00

DISEASES OF THE INTESTINES. Two Volumes.

With 19 Plates and 110 other Illustrations, some of which
are printed in Colors. Octavo. 1421 pages.

VOL. I. Anatomy, Physiology, Pathology, Diagnosis, Thera-
peutics, Intestinal Clinic, etc. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

VOL. II. Appendicitis, Occlusions, Intestinal Surgery, En-
teroptosis, Infectious Granulomata, Neuroses, Parasites, Dis-
eases of the Rectum, etc. Cloth, \$5.00; Sheep, \$6.00

. These books form a complete treatise on Diseases of the Digestive Tract. The subject is covered thoroughly and systematically by an author of well-known reputation and ability. The results of recent investigation, by which so much progress has been made in the Pathology, Diagnosis, and Medical and Surgical Treatment of disorders of the intestinal tract, make their issue at this time of special importance. They are handsomely illustrated, exhaustive, and written for the general practitioner, taking into special consideration American habits of living, diet, and climate.

"We wish to express unqualified approval of the tendency which is shown to emphasize the simple and more practical methods of diagnosis."—*New York Medical Journal*, Review of "Diseases of the Stomach."

DESCRIPTIVE CIRCULAR UPON APPLICATION

NOW READY

EDGAR'S OBSTETRICS

A NEW TEXT-BOOK

By J. CLIFTON EDGAR, M.D.

Professor of Obstetrics and Clinical Midwifery in the Cornell University Medical College, New York City, and
Attending Obstetrician to the New York Maternity Hospital.

Octavo, 1100 Pages; 1221 Illustrations, many of which are in Colors.

Handsome Cloth, \$6.00; Full Leather, \$7.00.

EDGAR'S OBSTETRICS excels all other works on the subject in completeness, in uniformity and consistency in arrangement, thoroughness in handling details, and in the number and usefulness of its illustrations.

The author's fifteen years' experience in hospital and private practice and as a teacher, his cosmopolitan knowledge of literature and methods, and an excellent judgment based upon all of these fit him especially to prepare what must be a standard work for both students and physicians.

The author's effort has been to cover his subject thoroughly; to arrange his material systematically; to avoid unnecessary words, yet to be plain and distinct in all explanations; to present each section with a careful outline of the subject dealt with therein; to be uniform and consistent in amount of space devoted to subjects; to consider relative values and proportion in both text and illustrations; to illustrate the book in the best manner; to create a book which should not only equal but would surpass all others. Nothing of importance remains unsaid.

7 DAYS

MAY 07 1985